

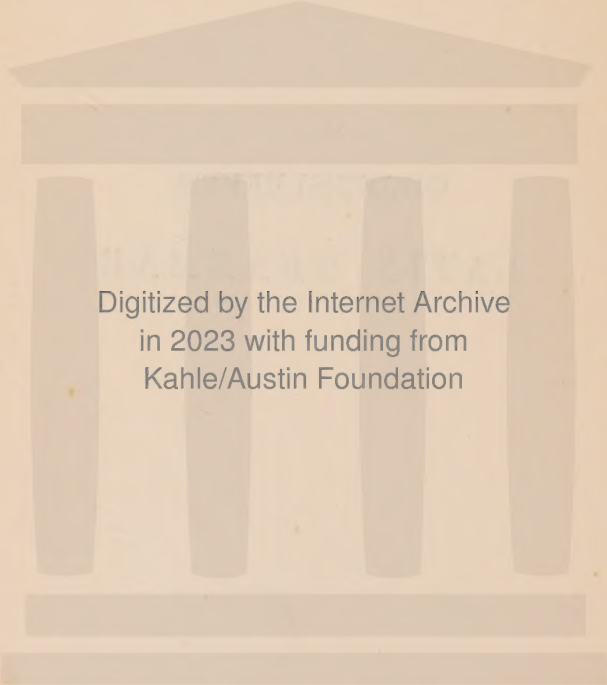




Winifred Borgani.

Bedford College. 1949.

Katie Ball, Worcester College, Oxford



Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2023 with funding from  
Kahle/Austin Foundation



GILDERSLEEVE'S  
LATIN GRAMMAR

*THIRD EDITION, REVISED AND ENLARGED*

BY

B. L. GILDERSLEEVE

PROFESSOR OF GREEK IN THE JOHNS HOPKINS UNIVERSITY

AND

GONZALEZ LODGE

ASSOCIATE PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN BRYN MAWR COLLEGE

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED  
ST. MARTIN'S STREET, LONDON

1948

COPYRIGHT

*First printed by Macmillan and Co. 1895*

*Reprinted 1902, 1908, 1913, 1921, 1925, 1930, 1936, 1943, 1948*

PRINTED IN GREAT BRITAIN

## PREFACE.

THE first edition of this LATIN GRAMMAR appeared in 1867, the second in 1872; the third edition, carefully revised and very much enlarged, is herewith presented to the public. In the preparation of this third edition the office of the senior collaborator has been chiefly advisory, except in the Syntax. In the syntax nearly everything that pertains to the history of usage has been brought together by Professor LODGE; but for all deviations from the theory of former editions we bear a joint responsibility.

A manual that has held its place, however modest, for more than a quarter of a century, hardly needs an elaborate exposition of the methods followed; but as the new grammar embraces a multitude of details that were not taken up in the old grammar, it has been thought fit that Professor LODGE should indicate the sources of the notes with which he has enriched the original work.

B. L. GILDERSLEEVE.

GONZALEZ LODGE.

August 1, 1895.

---

THE following supplementary note may serve to embody a partial bibliography of the more important works used in this revision, and some necessary explanations of the method:

Fairly complete bibliographies of works on Latin Etymology and Syntax may be found in REISIG'S *Vorlesungen über lateinische Sprachwissenschaft* (new edition, by HAGEN, SCHMALZ, and LANDGRAF, 1881-1888), and in the *Lateinische Grammatik* of STOLZ and SCHMALZ (in MÜLLER'S *Handbuch der klassischen Altertumswissenschaft*; 2d edition, 1890). Important also are the Grammars of KÜHNER (1877, 1878)\* and ROBY (1881, 1882); though many statements in both, but especially in the former, must be corrected in the light of more recent study. Some indications of more modern theories may be found in

---

\* A new Historical Grammar, by STOLZ, SCHMALZ, LANDGRAF, and WAGENER, was announced by TEUBNER in 1891.

the *Erläuterungen zur lateinischen Grammatik* of DEECKE (1893). Many matters of importance both in Etymology and Syntax are treated in the *Archiv für lateinische Lexicographie*, and the constructions with individual words are often well discussed in KREBS' *Antibarbarus der lateinischen Sprache* (6th edition, by SCHMALZ, 1886).

For the accentuation and pronunciation of Latin we have also CORSEN'S *Aussprache, Vocalismus und Betonung der lateinischen Sprache* (1868, 1870), and SEELMANN'S *Die Aussprache des Latein* (1885).

For the Etymology we must refer to BÜCHELER'S *Grundriss der lateinischen Declination* (2d edition, by WINDEKILDE, 1879) and to SCHWEIZER-SIDLER'S *Lateinische Grammatik* (1888); also to many articles in various journals, most of which are given by STOLZ. Indispensable is NEUE'S *Formenlehre der lateinischen Sprache*, of which the second volume of the third edition has already appeared (1892) and the first parts of the third volume (1894), under the careful revision of WAGENER; also GEORGES' *Lexikon der lateinischen Wortformen* (1890).

For the Formation of Words and the relation of Latin forms to those of the related languages we have HENRY'S *Précis de Grammaire Comparée* and BRUGMANN'S *Grundriss der vergleichenden Grammatik*, both now accessible in translations. On these, in connection with SCHWEIZER-SIDLER, the chapter on the Formation of Words has been based.

In the historical treatment of the Syntax we must still rely in large measure on DRAEGER'S *Historische Syntax der lateinischen Sprache* (2d edition, 1878, 1881), faulty and inaccurate though it often is: many of the false statements have been corrected on the basis of more recent individual studies by SCHMALZ; but even SCHMALZ is not always correct, and many statements of his treatise have been silently emended in the present book. For the theoretical study of some problems of Latin Syntax HAASE'S *Vorlesungen über lateinische Sprachwissenschaft* (1880) should not be overlooked. Since the appearance of the second edition of SCHMALZ, in 1890, considerable progress has been made in the various journals and other publications, as may be seen from DEECKE'S summary in BURSIAN'S *Jahresbericht* for 1893. Every effort has been made to incorporate in this grammar the main results of these studies as far as practicable. We may also draw attention to the following important articles, among others, some of which are mentioned in the books above referred to:

WÖLFFLIN'S numerous articles in the *Archiv*; THIELMANN'S articles in the *Archiv* on *habere* with Perfect Participle Passive, and on the Reciprocal Relation; LANDGRAF'S articles on the *Figura Etymologica*, in the second volume of the *Acta Seminarii Erlangensis*, and on the Future Participle and the Final Dative, in the *Archiv*; HALE'S treatise on *The Cum Constructions*, attacking the theories of HOFFMANN (*Lateinische Zeitpartikeln*, 1874) and LÜBBERT (*Die Syntax von Quom*, 1869);



HOFFMANN's reply to HALE (1891), and WETZEL's *Der Streit zwischen HOFFMANN und HALE* (1892); DAHL's *Die lateinische Partikel ut* (1882), with GUTJAHR-PROBST's *Der Gebrauch von ut bei Terenz* (1888); ZIMMERMANN's article on *quod und quia im älteren Latein* (1880); SCHERER's article on *quando*, in *Studemund's Studien*; MORRIS's articles on the *Sentence Question in Plautus and Terence* in the A.J.P. (vols. x. and xi.); HALE's articles on the *Sequence of Tenses* in the A.J.P. (vols. viii. and ix.), containing a discussion of the earlier Literature; ELMER's articles on the *Latin Prohibitive* in A.J.P. (vol. xv.)

A bibliography of the treatises on Prosody and Versification may be found in GLEDITSCH's treatise in the second volume of MÜLLER's *Handbuch*; this, with PLESSIS' *Métrique Grecque et Latine* (1889), has been made the basis of the chapter on Prosody; but in the treatment of early metres, regard has been had to KLOTZ (*Altrömische Metrik*, 1890), and to LINDSAY's recent papers on the Saturnian in the A.J.P. (vol. xiv.). In the matter of the order of words we have followed WEIL's treatise on the Order of Words, translated by SUPER (1887).

The question of the correct measurement of hidden quantities is still an unsettled one in Latin; for the sake of consistency the usage of MARX, *Hülfsbüchlein für die Aussprache der lateinischen Vokale in positionslangen Silben* (2d edition, 1889) has been followed.

The quotations have been made throughout from the Teubner Text editions except as follows: *Plautus* is cited from the Triumvirate edition of RITSCHL; *Vergil* from the Editio Maior of RIBBECK; *Ovid* and *Terence* from the Tauchnitz Texts; *Horace* from the Editio Minor of KELLER and HOLDER; *Lucretius* from the edition of MUNRO; *Ennius* and *Lucilius* from the editions of L. MÜLLER; fragmentary Scenic Poets from the edition of RIBBECK. Special care has been taken to make the quotations exact both in spelling and wording; and any variation in the spelling of individual words is therefore due to the texts from which the examples are drawn.

Where it has been necessary to modify the quotations in order to make them suitable for citation, we have enclosed within square brackets words occurring in different form in the text, and in parentheses words that have been inserted; where the passage would not yield to such treatment, *Cf.* has been inserted before the reference. We have not thought it necessary to add the references in the Prosody except in the case of some of the citations from early Latin.

In the spelling of Latin words used out of quotation, as a rule *u* and *v* have been followed by *o* rather than by *u*; but here the requirements of clearness and the period of the language have often been allowed to weigh. Otherwise we have followed in the main BRAMBACH'S *Hülfsbüchlein für lateinische Rechtschreibung* (translation by McCABE, 1877).

G. L.



# CONTENTS.

## ETYMOLOGY.

	SECTION
<b>Letters and Syllables . . . . .</b>	1-15
Alphabet, 1; Vowels, 2, 3; Diphthongs, 4; Consonants, 6, 7; Phonetic Variations, 8, 9; Syllables, 10, 11; Quantity, 12-14; Accentuation, 15.	
<b>Parts of Speech . . . . .</b>	16
<b>Inflection of the Substantive . . . . .</b>	17-71
Definitions, 18; Gender, 19-21; Number, 22; Cases, 23-25; Declensions, 26; Endings, 27; First Declension, 29, 30; Second Declension, 31-34; Third Declension, 35-60; Fourth Declension, 61, 62; Fifth Declension, 63, 64; Greek Substantives, 65, 66; Irregular Substantives, 67-71.	
<b>Inflection of the Adjective . . . . .</b>	72-90
Definition, 72; First and Second Declension, 73-76; Pronominal Adjectives, 76; Third Declension, 77-83; Irregular Adjectives, 84, 85; Comparison of Adjectives, 86-90.	
<b>Adverbs . . . . .</b>	91-93
Formation of Adverbs, 91, 92; Comparison, 93.	
<b>Numerals . . . . .</b>	94-98
Cardinals, 94; Ordinals, 94; Distributives, 97; Adverbs, 98.	
<b>Pronouns . . . . .</b>	99-111
Personal, 100-102; Determinative, 103; Demonstrative, 104; Relative, 105; Interrogative, 106; Indefinites, 107; Adjectives, 108; Correlative, 109-111.	
<b>Inflection of the Verb . . . . .</b>	112-175
Definitions, 112, 113; Endings, 114, 115; Inflection of <i>esse</i> , 116, 117; of <i>prœdesse</i> , 118; of <i>posse</i> , 119. Regular Verbs, 120-167; Division, 120; Rules for forming Tenses, 121. First Conjugation, 122; Second Conjugation, 123, 124; Third Conjugation, 125, 126; Fourth	

Conjugation, 127; Deponents, 128; Periphrastic, 129; Notes, 130, 131. Formation of the Stems, 132-135; Change in Conjugation, 136; List of Verbs, 137-167. Irregular Verbs, 168-174; *ire*, 169, 2; *quire*, *nequire*, 170; *ferre*, 171; *edere*, 172; *fieri*, 173; *velle*, *nolle*, *malle*, 174; Defective Verbs, 175.

**Formation of Words . . . . . 176-200**

Simple Words, 179-192; Substantives, 180, 181; Adjectives, 182; Substantives without Suffixes, 183; Suffixes, 184-189; Verbs, 190-192; Compound Words, 193-200; Substantives, 194-198; Verbs, 199, 200.

## SYNTAX.

**Simple Sentence . . . . . 202-471**

Subject, 203, 204; Predicate, 205-209; Concord, 210, 211; Voices, 212-221. Tenses, 222-252; Present, 227-230; Imperfect, 231-234; Perfect, 235-240; Pluperfect, 241; Future, 242, 243; Future Perfect, 244, 245; Periphrastic, 246-251; Tenses in Letters, 252. Moods, 253-283; Indicative, 254; Subjunctive, 255-265; Imperative, 266-275; Tenses in Moods and Verbal Substantives, 276-283.

**Simple Sentence Expanded . . . . . 284-471**

Multiplication of the Subject . . . . . 285-287

Qualification of the Subject . . . . . 288-325

Adjectives, 289-303; Numerals, 292-295; Comparatives and Superlatives, 296-303; Pronouns, 304-319; Personal, 304; Demonstrative, 305-307; Determinative and Reflexive, 308-311; Possessive, 312; Indefinite, 313-319; Apposition, 320-325; Predicative Attribution and Apposition, 325.

Multiplication of Predicate . . . . . 326

Qualification of Predicate . . . . . 327-449

The Cases . . . . . 328-418

Accusative, 328-343; Dative, 344-359; Genitive, 360-383; Ablative, 384-410; Locative, 411; Prepositions, 412-418; with Accusative, 416; with Ablative, 417; with Accusative and Ablative, 418.

Infinitive . . . . . 419-424

Subject, 422; Object, 423; Predicate, 424.



	SECTION
Gerund and Gerundive . . . . .	425-433
Genitive, 428; Dative, 429; Accusative, 430; Ablative, 431; with Prepositions, 432, 433.	
Supine . . . . .	434-436
Accusative, 435; Ablative, 436.	
Participles . . . . .	437, 438
Adverbs . . . . .	439-449
Negatives, 441-449.	
Incomplete (Interrogative) Sentence . . . . .	450-471
Direct Simple Questions, 453-457; Direct Disjunctive Questions, 458, 459; Indirect Questions, 460; Moods in Direct, 462-466; Moods in Indirect, 467.	
Compound Sentence . . . . .	472-670
Coördinate Sentence . . . . .	473-503
Copulative, 474-482; Adversative, 483-491; Disjunctive, 492-497; Causal and Illative, 498-503.	
Subordinate Sentences . . . . .	504-670
Moods in, 508; Sequence of Tenses, 509-519; Reflexive in, 520-522.	
Object Sentences . . . . .	523-537
Introduced by <i>quod</i> , 524, 525; in Accusative and Infinitive, 526, 527, 532-535; in Nominative and Infinitive, 528; in Participle, 536, 537.	
Causal Sentences . . . . .	538-542
Introduced by <i>quod</i> , <i>quia</i> , <i>etc.</i> , 539-541; by <i>quod</i> , with verbs of Emotion, 542.	
Sentences of Design and Tendency . . . . .	543-558
Final, 544-550; Pure Final, 545; Complementary Final, 546-549; After verbs of Fear, 550.	
Consecutive, 551; Pure Consecutive, 552; Complementary Consecutive, 553-557; Exclamatory Questions, 558.	
Temporal Sentences . . . . .	559-588
Antecedent Action, 561-567; Iterative Action, 566, 567; Contemporaneous Action, 568-573; Subsequent Action, 574-577; Sentences with <i>cum</i> , 578-588.	
Conditional Sentences . . . . .	589-602
Logical, 595; Ideal, 596; Unreal, 597; Incomplete, 598-601; Of Comparison, 602.	
Concessive Sentences . . . . .	603-609

	SECTION
Relative Sentences . . . . .	610-637
Concord, 614-621 ; Tenses, 622, 623 ; Moods, 624-637.	
Comparative Sentences . . . . .	638-644
Correlative, 642 ; with <i>atque</i> or <i>ac</i> , 643 ; with <i>quam</i> , 644.	
The Abridged Sentence . . . . .	645-663
Historical Infinitive, 647 ; <i>Ōrātiō Obliqua</i> , 648 ;	
Moods in, 650-652 ; Tenses in, 653-655 ; Conditional Sentences in, 656-659 ; Pronouns, 660 ; Partial Obliquity, 662, 663.	
Participial Sentences . . . . .	664-670
Arrangement of Words and Clauses . . . . .	671-687
Figures of Syntax and Rhetoric . . . . .	688-700
Principal Rules of Syntax . . . . .	Pp. 437-444

## PROSODY.

Quantity . . . . .	702-717
General Rules, 702-706 ; of Final Syllables, 707-713 ; of Stem Syllables, 714 ; of Compounds, 715 ; in Early Latin, 716, 717.	
Figures of Prosody . . . . .	718-728
Versification . . . . .	729-827
Definition, 729-754 ; Versus Italicus, 755 ; Saturnian Verse, 756 ; Iambic Rhythms, 757-767 ; Trochaic Rhythms, 768-776 ; Anapaestic Rhythms, 777-782 ; Dactylic Rhythms, 783-789 ; Logaedic Rhythms, 790-805 ; Cretic and Bacchiac Rhythms, 806-814 ; Ionic Rhythms, 815-819 ; Compound Verses, 820-823 ; Cantica, 824, 825 ; Metres of HORACE, 826, 827.	

---

	PAGES
Appendix . . . . .	491-493
Roman Calendar, Roman Weights and Measures, Roman Money, Roman Names.	
Index of Verbs . . . . .	494-502
General Index . . . . .	503-546

# LATIN GRAMMAR.

## ETYMOLOGY.

### Alphabet.

#### 1. THE Latin alphabet has twenty-three letters :

A B C D E F G H I K L M N O P Q R S T V X Y Z

REMARKS.—1. The sounds represented by C and K were originally distinct, C having the sound of G, but they gradually approximated each other, until C supplanted K except in a few words, such as **Kalendae**, **Kaesō**, which were usually abbreviated, *Kal.*, *K.* The original force of C is retained only in **C.** (for **Gāius**) and **Cn.** (for **Gnaeus**).

2. J, the consonantal form of I, dates from the middle ages. V represented also the vowel u in the Latin alphabet ; and its resolution into two letters—V for the consonant, and U for the vowel—also dates from the middle ages. For convenience, V and U are still distinguished in this grammar.

3. Y and Z were introduced in the time of Cicero to transliterate Greek υ and ζ. In early Latin υ was represented by u (occasionally by i or oi), and ζ by ss or s. Z had occurred in the earliest times, but had been lost, and its place in the alphabet taken by G, which was introduced after C acquired the sound of K.

NOTE.—The Latin names for the letters were : a, be, ce, de, e, ef, ge, ha, i, ka, el, em, en, o, pe, qu (= cu), er, es, te, u, ex (ix), to be pronounced according to the rules given in 3, 7. For Y the sound was used, for Z the Greek name (zēta)

### Vowels.

#### 2. The vowels are a, e, i, o, u, (y) ; and are divided :

1. According to their *quality* (i. e., the position of the organs used in pronunciation), into

*guttural* (or *back*), a, o, u ;      *palatal* (or *front*), e, i, (y).

2. According to their *quantity* or *prolongation* (i. e., the time required for pronunciation), into

*long*, (—) ;

*short*, (—).

REMARK.—Vowels whose quantity shifts in poetry are called *common* (see 13), and are distinguished thus :

◡, by preference *short*;                      ◡̄, by preference *long*.

### 3.                      Sounds of the Vowels.

ā = a in father.	ō = o in bone.
ē = e in prey.	ū = oo in moon.
ī = i in caprice.	ŷ = u in sŷr (French), German ū.

REMARK.—The short sounds are only less prolonged in pronunciation than the long sounds, and have no exact English equivalents.

## Diphthongs.

4. There are but few *diphthongs* or *double sounds* in Latin. The theory of the diphthong requires that both elements be heard in a slur. The tendency in Latin was to reduce diphthongs to simple sounds ; for example, in the last century of the republic *ae* was gliding into *ō*, which took its place completely in the third century A. D. Hence arose frequent variations in spelling : as *glæba* and *glēba*, *sod* ; so *oboēdre* and *obēdre*, *obey* ; *faenum* (*foenum*) and *fēnum*, *hay*.

ae = aye (ăh-eh).	ei = ei in feint (drawled).
oe = oy in boy.	eu = eu in Spanish deuda (ěh-oo).
au = ou in our.	(ui = we, almost).

NOTE. Before the time of the Gracchi we find *ai* and *oi* instead of *ae* and *oe*.

5. The sign ¨ (*Dieresis*—Greek = *separation*) over the second vowel shows that each sound is to be pronounced separately ; *āēr*, *air* ; *Oenomatĭs*, *aloē*.

## Consonants.

### 6. Consonants are divided :

1. According to the principal *organs* by which they are pronounced, into

<i>Labials</i> (lip-sounds):	b, p,	(ph), f, v, m.
<i>Dentals</i> (tooth-sounds):	d, t,	(th), l, n, r, s.
<i>Gutturals</i> (throat-sounds):	g, c, k, qu,	(ch), h, n (see 7)

NOTE. Instead of *dental* and *guttural*, the terms *lingual* and *palatal* are often used.

2. According to their *prolongation*, into

A. *Semi-vowels* : of which

l, m, n, r,	are <i>liquids</i> (m and n being <i>nasals</i> ).
h	is a <i>breathing</i> .
s	is a <i>sibilant</i> .



**B. Mutes:** to which belong

<b>P-mutes,</b>	<b>p,</b>	<b>b, (ph), f,</b>	<i>labials.</i>
<b>T-mutes,</b>	<b>t,</b>	<b>d, (th),</b>	<i>dentals.</i>
<b>K-mutes,</b>	<b>k, c, qu, g,</b>	<b>(ch),</b>	<i>gutturals.</i>

Those on the same line are said to be of the *same organ*.

*Mutes* are further divided into

<b>Tenuēs</b>	(thin, smooth):	<b>p, t, k, c, qu,</b>	<i>hard (surd).</i>
<b>Mediae</b>	(middle):	<b>b, d, g,</b>	<i>soft (sonant).</i>
<b>[Aspirātae]</b>	(aspirate, rough):	<b>ph, th, ch,]</b>	<i>aspirate.</i>

Those on the same line are said to be of the *same order*.

The aspirates were introduced in the latter part of the second century B. C. in the transliteration of Greek words, and thence extended to some pure Latin words; as, **pulcher, Gracchus**.

3. *Double consonants* are: **z = dz** in *adze*; **x = cs (ks), gs**; **i** and **u** between two vowels are double sounds, half vowel, half consonant.

### Sounds of the Consonants.

7. The consonants are sounded as in English, with the following exceptions:

**C** is hard throughout = **k**.

**Ch** is not a genuine Latin combination (6, 2). In Latin words it is a **k**; in Greek words a **kh**, commonly pronounced as **ch** in German.

**G** is hard throughout, as in *get, give*.

**H** at the beginning of a word is but slightly pronounced; in the middle of a word it is almost imperceptible.

**I consonant (J)** has the sound of a broad **y**; nearly like **y** in *yule*.

**N** has a guttural nasal sound before **c, g, q**, as in *anchor, anguish*.

**Qu = kw** (nearly); before **o**, **qu = c**. In early Latin **qu** was not followed by **u**. Later, when **o** was weakened to **u**, **qu** was replaced by **c**; thus **quom** became **cum**. Still later **qu** replaced **c**, yielding **quum**.

**R** is trilled.

**S** and **X** are always hard, as in *hiss, axe*.

**T** is hard throughout; never like **t** in *nation*.

**U consonant (V)** is pronounced like the vowel, but with a slur. In the third century A. D. it had nearly the sound of our **w**. In Greek it was frequently transliterated by **Ού**; so **Ούαλέριος = Valerius**.

### Phonetic Variations in Vowels and Consonants.

#### 8. Vowels.

1. *Weakening*.—In the formation of words from roots or stems short vowels show a tendency to weaken; that is, **a** tends to become **e**

and then **i**, or **o** and then **u**, while **o** tends towards **e** or **i**, and **u** towards **i**. This occurs most frequently in compound words, to a less degree in words formed by suffixes. Diphthongs are less frequently weakened and long vowels very rarely. The principal rules for these changes are as follows, but it must be remembered that to all there are more or less frequent exceptions :

- A.**—1. In the second part of compound words, and in reduplicated words, the root-vowel **ā** is weakened to **ə**, which usually passes over into **i** in open syllables (11, R.), and often to **ū** before **l** and labial mutes : **cōn-scendō** (**scandō**); **con-cidō** (**cadō**); **dē-sultō** (**saltō**); **fefelli** (**fallō**). 2. As final vowel of the stem **ā** is weakened in the first part of a compound word, usually to **i**, rarely to **ə** or **ū**: **aquili-fer** (**aquila-**); **causi-dicus** (**causa-**). 3. In or before suffixes, **ā** becomes **i**: **domi-tus** (**doma-**).

NOTE. **A** frequently resists change, especially in verbs of the First and Second Conjugations : as, **sē-parāre** (**parāre**); **circum-iacēre** (**iacēre**); so **satis-facere** (**facere**) and others.

**E.**—1. In the second part of compound words, root vowel **ē** is usually retained in a close (11, R.) syllable, and weakened to **i** in an open syllable ; but it is invariably retained before **r** : **in-flectō** (**flectō**); **ob-tineō** (**teneō**); **ad-vertō** (**vertō**). 2. In or before suffixes, and in the final syllable of a word, it also becomes **i** : **geni-tor** (**gene-**); **ūn-decim** (**decim**).

**I.**—At the end of a word **i** is changed to **ə** : **mare** (**mar-i**).

**O.**—1. In composition final stem-vowel **ō** is usually weakened to **i**; before labials sometimes to **ū**: **agri-cola** (**agro-**); **auru-fex** (usually **auri-fex**). 2. In suffixes, and in final syllables, it is weakened to **i**: **amici-tia** (**amico-**); **gracili-s** (also **gracilu-s**).

**U.**—In composition final stem-vowel **ū** is usually weakened to **i**; the same weakening occurs sometimes within a word or before a suffix : **mani-fēstus** (also **manu-fēstus**); **lacrima** (early **lacruma**).

**AE, AU.**—In the second part of a compound word root-diphthong **ae** is usually weakened to **i**, but often there is no change ; **au** is occasionally changed to **ū** : **ex-quirō** (**quaerō**); **con-clūdō** (**claudō**).

2. *Omission.*—Vowels are frequently omitted both in simple and compound words, either within the word (*syncope*) or at the end (*apocope*) : **dextera** and **dextra** ; **princeps** (for **primceps**, from **primiceps**) ; **pergō** (for **perregō**) ; **ut** (**utī**) ; **neu** (**nōve**).

3. *Epanthesis.*—Vowels are sometimes inserted to ease the pronunciation, but usually before liquids or in foreign words : **ager** (**agro-**) see 31 ; **Daphinē** (= **Daphnē**) ; **drachuma** (= **drachma**).

4. *Assimilation.*—Two vowels in adjoining syllables tend to become like each other; this assimilation is usually *regressive* (i. e., of the first to the second), especially when **l** separates them ; it is rarely *progressive*. Compare **facilis** with **facul**, **familia** with **famulus**, **bene** with **bonus**.

5. A vowel before a liquid tends to become *ũ*, less often *o* or *e*: *adulēscēns* and *adolēscēns*; *vulgus* and *volgus*; *decumus* (*decem*); compare *tempus* with *temporis*; *peperi* (from *pariō*), etc.

## 9. Consonants.

1. *Assimilation*.—When two consonants come together in Latin, they tend to assimilate one to the other. This assimilation is usually *regressive*; sometimes it is *progressive*. It is either *complete*, that is, the two consonants become the same; or *partial*, that is, the one is made of the *same order* or *same organ* as the other. These changes occur both in inflection and in composition, but they are especially noteworthy in the last consonant of prepositions in composition.

**Scrip-tum** for **scrib-tum** (regressive partial); **ac-cēdere** for **ad-cēdere** (regressive complete); **cur-sum** for **cur-tum** (progressive partial); **celer-imus** for **celer-simus** (progressive complete).

2. *Partial Assimilation*.—(a) The sonants **g** and **b**, before the surd **t**, or the sibilant **s**, often become surds (**c**, **p**); the surds **p**, **c**, **t** before liquids sometimes become sonants (**b**, **g**, **d**); the labials **p**, **b** before **n** become **m**; the labial **m** before the gutturals **c**, **q**, **g**, **h**, **i** (**j**), the dentals **t**, **d**, **s**, and the labials **f**, **v**, becomes **n**; the dental **n** before labials **p**, **b**, **m**, becomes **m**; **rēc-tum** (for **rēg-tum**); **scrip-sī** (for **scrib-sī**); **seg-mentum** (for **sec-mentum**); **som-nus** (for **sop-nus**); **prin-ceps** (for **prim-ceps**).

NOTE.—Similar is the change of **q** (**qu**) to **c** before **t** or **s**: **coc-tum** (for **coqu-tum**).

(b) After **l** and **r**, **t** of the suffixes **tor**, **tus**, **tum**, becomes **s** by *progressive assimilation*: **cur-sum** (for **cur-tum**).

3. *Complete Assimilation*.—There are many varieties, but the most important principle is that a mute or a liquid tends to assimilate to a liquid and to a sibilant: **puella** (**puer**); **cur-rere** (for **cur-sere**); **cēs-sī** (for **cēd-sī**); **corōlla** (**corōna**), etc.

4. *Prepositions*.—**Ab** takes the form **ā** before **m** or **v**, and in **ā-fui**; appears as **au** in **au-ferō**, **au-fugiō**; as **abs** before **c**, **t**; as **as** before **p**. **Ad** is assimilated before **c**, **g**, **l**, **p**, **r**, **s**, **t**, with more or less regularity; before **gn**, **sp**, **sc**, **st**, it often appears as **ā**. **Ante** appears rarely as **anti**. **Cum** appears as **com** before **b**, **m**, **p**; **con** before **c**, **d**, **f**, **g**, **i**, **q**, **s**, **v**; **cō** before **gn**, **n**; assimilated sometimes before **l** and **r**. **Ex** becomes **ē** before **b**, **d**, **g**, **i** (**j**), **l**, **m**, **n**, **r**, **v**; **ef** or **ec**, before **f**. **In** usually becomes **im** before **b**, **m**, **p**; before **l**, **r** it is occasionally assimilated; the same holds good of the negative prefix **in**. **Ob** is usually assimilated before **c**, **f**, **g**, **p**; appears as **o** in **o-mittō**, **o-periō**, **obs** in **obs-olēscō**, and **os** in **ostendō**. **Sub** is assimilated before **c**, **f**, **g**, **p**, **r**; appears as **sus** in a few words, as **sus-cipiō**; occasionally **sū** before **s**, as **sū-spiciō**. **Trāns** sometimes becomes **trā** before **d**, **i** (**j**), **n**; **trān** before **s**. **Amb-** (inseparable) loses **b** before a consonant, and **am** is sometimes assimilated. **Circum** sometimes drops **m** before **i**. **Dis** becomes **dif** before **f**; **dir** before **a**

vowel ; **dī** before consonants, except **c, p, q, t, s**, followed by a vowel, when it is usually unchanged. The **d** of **red** and **sēd** is usually dropped before consonants.

NOTE. In early Latin assimilation is much less common than in the classical period.

5. *Dissimilation*.—To avoid the harshness of sound when two syllables begin with the same letter, the initial letter of the one is often changed ; this is true especially of liquids, but occasionally of other letters : **singu-lā-ris** (for **singu-lā-lis**) ; **merī-diō** (for **medī-diō**).

NOTE. This principle often regulates the use of **-brum** or **-bulum**, and of **-crum** or **-culum** in word formation (181, 6) : compare **periculum** with **simulācrum**.

6. *Omission*.—(a) When a word closes with a doubled consonant or a group of consonants, the final consonant is regularly dropped in Latin ; sometimes after the preceding consonant has been assimilated to it. In the middle of a word, after a long syllable, **ss** and **ll** are simplified ; **ll** is sometimes simplified after a short vowel, which is then lengthened if the syllable is accented (*compensatory lengthening*) ; but if the syllable is unaccented, such lengthening need not take place. In this case other doubled consonants may also be simplified.

**fel** (for **fell**) ; **lac** (for **lact**) ; **vigil** (for **vigils**) ; **lapis** (for **lapid-s, lapiss**) ; **mīsi** (for **mīs-si**) ; **vīlla** and **vīlicus** ; but **currus** and **cūrūlis**.

NOTE. **-X** is retained, even after **l** and **r**, as in **calx, arx** ; also **ps, bs**, as in **stirps, urbs** ; **ms** is found in **hiems** only.

(b) In the tendency to easier pronunciation consonants are often dropped both at the beginning and in the middle of a word : **stimulus** (for **stigmulus**) ; **pāstor** (for **pāsector**) ; **āiō** (for **āhiō**) ; **nātus** (for **gnātus**, retained in early Latin, rarely later) ; **lātus** (for **tlātus**), etc.

7. *Epanthesis*.—Between **m** and **l**, **m** and **s**, **m** and **t**, a **p** is generated : **ex-em-p-lum** (**ex-imō**) ; **cōm-p-sī** (**cōmō**) ; **ēm-p-tus** (**emō**).

8. *Metathesis* or *transposition* of consonants occurs sometimes in Latin, especially in Perfect and Supine forms : **cernō** ; Pf. **crē-vī**, etc.

## Syllables.

10. The syllable is the unit of pronunciation ; it consists of a vowel, or a vowel and one or more consonants.

A word has as many syllables as it contains separate vowels and diphthongs.

In dividing a word into syllables, a consonant, between two vowels, belongs to the second : **a-mō**, *I love* ; **li-xa**, *a sutler*.



Any combination of consonants that can begin a word (including **mn**, under Greek influence) belongs to the following vowel; in other combinations the first consonant belongs to the preceding vowel: **a-sper**, *rough*; **fau-stus**, *lucky*; **li-bri**, *books*; **a-mnis**, *river*.

REMARKS.—I. The combinations incapable of beginning a word are (a) doubled consonants: **sic-cus**, *dry*; (b) a liquid and a consonant: **al-mus**, *fostering*; **am-bō**, *both*; **an-guis**, *snake*; **ar-bor**, *tree*.

2. Compounds are treated by the best grammarians as if their parts were separate words: **ab-igō**, *I drive off*; **rēs-pūblica**, *commonwealth*.

11. The last syllable of a word is called the *ultimate* (**ūl-tima**, *last*); the next to the last the *penult* (**paene**, *almost*, and **ūl-tima**); the one before the penult, the *antepenult* (**ante**, *before*, and **paenūl-tima**).

REMARK.—A syllable is said to be *open* when it ends with a vowel; *close*, when it ends with a consonant.

## Quantity.

12. 1. A syllable is said to be long *by nature*, when it contains a long vowel or diphthong: **mōs**, *custom*; **caelum**, *heaven*.

REMARKS.—I. A vowel before **nf**, **ns**, **gm**, **gn**, is long *by nature*: **infēlix**, *unlucky*; **mēnsa**, *table*; **āgmen**, *train*; **āgnus**, *lamb*. In many cases, however, the **n** has disappeared from the written word; so in some substantival terminations: **ōs** (Acc. Pl., 2d decl.), **ūs** (Acc. Pl., 4th decl.); in adjectives in **ōsus** (**fōrmōsus**, *shapely*, for **fōrmōnsus**); in the numerical termination **ēsimus** (= **ēnsimus**). See 95, N. 5.

2. Before **i** consonant (**j**) a vowel is long *by nature*: **Pompēius**, *Pompey*; except in compounds of **iugum**, *yoke* (**bī-iugus**, *two-horse*), and in a few other words.

NOTE.—From about 134 to about 74 B. C. **ā**, **ē**, **ū**, were often represented by **aa**, **ee**, **uu**; **i** by **ei**. From the time of Augustus to the second century **i** was indicated by a lengthened **i**. From Sulla's time until the third century long vowels (rarely, however, **i**) were indicated by an Apex (').

2. A syllable is said to be long *by position*, when a short vowel is followed by two or more consonants, or a double consonant: **ārs**, *art*; **cōllum**, *neck*; **ābrumpō**, *I break off*; **pēr mare**, *through the sea*; **nēx**, *murder*.

3. A syllable is said to be *short* when it contains a short vowel, which is not followed by two or more consonants: *lōcus*, *place*; *tābŭla*, *picture*.

REMARK.—A vowel is short *by nature* when followed by another vowel, or by *nt*, *nd*: *dēus*, *God*; *innocēntia*, *innocence*; *amāndus*, *to be loved*.

13. A syllable ending in a short vowel, followed by a mute with *l* or *r*, is said to be *common* (*anceps*, *doubtful*): *tenēbrae*, *darkness*.

REMARK.—In prose such syllables are always short. In poetry they were short in early times, common in the Augustan period.

14. Every diphthong, and every vowel derived from a diphthong, or contracted from other vowels, is *long*: *saevus*, *cruel*; *conclūdō*, *I shut up* (from *claudō*, *I shut*); *cōgō* (from *co-agō*), *I drive together*.

### Accentuation.

15. 1. Dissyllabic words have the accent or stress on the penult: *ēquōs* (= *equus*), *horse*.

2. Polysyllabic words have the accent on the penult, when the penult is long; on the antepenult, when the penult is short or common: *mandāre*, *to commit*; *māndere*, *to chew*; *intēgrum*, *entire*; *circūmdare*, *to surround*; *superstitēs*, *survivors*.

REMARKS.—1. The little appendages (*enclitics*), *que*, *ve*, *ne*, add an accent to the ultimate of words accented on the antepenult: *lūmināque*, *and lights*; *flūmināve*, *or rivers*; *vōmerēne* ? *from a ploughshare* ? Dissyllables and words accented on the penult are said to shift their accent to the final syllable before an enclitic: *egōmet*, *I indeed*; *amāreve*, *or to love*; but it is more likely that the ordinary rule of accentuation was followed.

2. Compounds (not prepositional) of *facere* and *dare* retain the accent on the verbal form: *calefācit*, *vēnumdāre*.

3. Vocatives and genitives of substantives in *ius* of the second declension, as well as genitives of substantives in *ium*, retain the accent on the same syllable as the nominative: *Vergīl*.

NOTE.—Other exceptions will be noted as they occur. In the older language the accent was not bounded by the antepenult: *āccipiō* (*accēpiō*), *cōcutiō* (*concūtīō*).

## Parts of Speech.

16. The Parts of Speech are the Noun (Substantive and Adjective), the Pronoun, the Verb, and the Particles (Adverb, Preposition, and Conjunction), defined as follows :

1. The *Substantive* gives a name : **vir**, a man ; **Cocles**, *Cocles* ; **dōnum**, a gift.

2. The *Adjective* adds a quality to the Substantive : **bonus vir**, a good man.

3. The *Pronoun* points out without describing : **hic**, *this* ; **ille**, *that* ; **ego**, *I*.

4. The *Verb* expresses a complete thought, whether assertion, wish, or command ; **amat**, *he loves* ; **amet**, *may he love* ; **amā**, *love thou* !

5. The *Adverb* shows *circumstances*.

6. The *Preposition* shows *local relation*.

7. The *Conjunction* shows *connection*.

REMARKS.—1. Substantive is short for noun-substantive, and adjective for noun-adjective. Substantives are often loosely called nouns.

2. The *Interjection* is either a mere cry of feeling : **āh** ! *ah* ! and does not belong to language, or falls under one of the above-mentioned classes.

3. The Particles are mainly mutilated forms of the noun and pronoun.

NOTES.—1. The difference between substantive and adjective is largely a difference of mobility ; that is, the substantive is fixed in its application and the adjective is general.

2. Noun and pronoun have essentially the same inflection ; but they are commonly separated, partly on account of the difference in signification, partly on account of certain peculiarities of the pronominal forms.

## Inflection.

17. *Inflection* (**inflexiō**, *bending*) is that *change* in the form of a word (chiefly in the end) which shows a change in the relations of that word. The noun, pronoun, and verb are inflected ; the particles are not capable of further inflection.

The inflection of nouns and pronouns is called *declension*, and nouns and pronouns are said to be *declined*.

The inflection of verbs is called *conjugation*, and verbs are said to be *conjugated*.

## The Substantive.

18. A Substantive is either *concrete* or *abstract* ; *concrete* when it gives the name of a person or thing ; *abstract* when it gives the name of a quality ; as **amicitia**, *friendship*.

Concrete substantives are either *proper* or *common* :

Proper when they are proper, or peculiar, to certain persons, places, or things: **Horātius**, *Horace*; **Neāpolis**, *Naples*; **Padus**, *Po*.

Common when they are common to a whole class: **dominus**, *a lord* ; **urbs**, *a city* ; **amnis**, *a river*.

## Gender of Substantives.

19. For the names of animate beings, the gender is determined by the signification ; for things and qualities, by the termination.

Names of males are masculine ; names of females, feminine. Masculine : **Rōmulus**; **Iūppiter**; **vir**, *man* ; **equus**, *horse*. Feminine : **Cornēlia** ; **Iūnō** ; **fēmina**, *woman* ; **equa**, *mare*.

20. Some classes of words, without natural gender, have their gender determined by the signification :

I. All names of *months* and *winds*, most names of *rivers*, and many names of *mountains* are *masculine* ; as : **Aprilis**, *April, the opening month* ; **Aquilo**, *the north wind* ; **Albis**, *the River Elbe* ; **Athōs**, *Mount Athos*.

REMARKS.—I. Names of months, winds, and rivers were looked upon as adjectives in agreement with masculine substantives understood (**mēnsis**, *month* ; **ventus**, *wind* ; **fluvius**, *amnis*, *river*).

2. Of the rivers, **Allia**, **Lēthē**, **Matrona**, **Sagra**, **Styx** are feminine ; **Albula**, **Acherōn**, **Garumna** vary, being sometimes masculine, sometimes feminine.

3. Of the mountains, **Alpēs**, *the Alps*, is feminine ; so, too, sundry (Greek) names in **a** (G. **ae**), **ē** (G. **ēs**) : **Aetna** (usually), **Calpē**, **Cyllēnē**, **Hybla**, **Īda**, **Ossa** (usually), **Oeta** (usually), **Rhodopē**, **Pholoē**, **Pȳrēnē**, and **Carambis**, **Pelōris**. **Pēlion** and **Sōracte** (usually), and names of mountains in **a** (G. **ōrum**), as **Maenala** (G. **Maenalōrum**), are neuter.

II. Names of *countries* (**terrae**, *fem.*), *islands* (**īnsulae**, *fem.*), *cities* (**urbēs**, *fem.*), *plants* (**plantae**, *fem.*), and *trees*

(*arborēs, fem.*), are *feminine*: **Aegyptus**, *Egypt*; **Rhodus**, *Rhodes*; **pirus**, *a pear-tree*; **abiēs**, *a fir-tree*.

REMARKS.—I. Names of countries and islands in **us (os)** (G. **i**) are masculine, except **Aegyptus**, **Chius**, **Chersonēsus**, **Cyprus**, **Dēlos**, **Ēpirus**, **Lēmnos**, **Lesbos**, **Peloponnēsus**, **Rhodus**, **Samos**, **Bosporus** (the country).

2. Many Greek names of cities follow the termination. Towards the end of the republic many feminine names change the ending **-us** to **-um** and become neuter: **Abȳdus** and **Abȳdum**, **Saguntus** and **Saguntum**.

3. Most names of trees with stems in **-tro** (N. **-ter**) are masculine: **oleaster**, *wild olive*; **pīnaster**, *wild pine*. So also most shrubs: **dūmus**, *bramble-bush*; **rhūs**, *sumach*. Neuter are **acer**, *maple*; **lāser**, *a plant*; **papāver**, *poppy* (also masc. in early Latin); **rōbur**, *oak*; **sīler**, *willow*; **sīser**, *skirret* (occasionally masc.); **sūber**, *cork-tree*; **tūber**, *mushroom*.

III. All indeclinable substantives, and all words and phrases treated as indeclinable substantives, are *neuter*: **fās**, *right*; **ā longum**, *ā long*; **scīre tuum**, *thy knowing*; **trīste valē**, *a sad "farewell."*

21. 1. Substantives which have but one form for masculine and feminine are said to be of *common* gender: **cīvis**, *citizen* (male or female); **comes**, *companion*; **iūdex**, *judge*.

2. **Substantīva mōbilia** are words of the same origin, whose different terminations designate difference of gender: **magister**, *master, teacher*; **magistra**, *mistress*; **servus**, *serva*, *slave* (masc. and fem.); **victor**, **victrix**, *conqueror* (masc. and fem.).

3. If the male and female of animals have but one designation, **mās**, *male*, and **fēmina**, *female*, are added, when it is necessary to be exact: **pāvō mās** (*masculus*), *peacock*; **pāvō fēmina**, *peahen*. These substantives are called *epīcene* (*ἐπίκοινα*, *utrīque generī commūnia*, common to each gender).

### Number.

22. In Latin there are two numbers: the *Singular*, denoting *one*; the *Plural*, denoting *more than one*.

REMARK.—The *Dual*, denoting *two*, occurs in Latin only in two words (**duo**, *two*; **ambō**, *both*), in the nominative and vocative of the masculine and neuter.



## Cases.

23. In Latin there are six cases :

1. Nominative (Case of the Subject).

Answers : *who ? what ?*

2. Genitive (Case of the Complement).

Answers : *whose ? whereof ?*

3. Dative (Case of Indirect Object or Personal Interest).

Answers : *to whom ? for whom ?*

4. Accusative (Case of Direct Object).

Answers : *whom ? what ?*

5. Vocative (Case of Direct Address).

6. Ablative (Case of Adverbial Relation).

Answers : *where ? whence ? wherewith ?*

NOTE.—These six cases are the remains of a larger number. The Locative (answers : *where ?*), is akin to the Dative, and coincident with it in the 1st and 3d Declensions ; in the 2d Declension it is lost in the Genitive ; it is *often* blended with the Ablative in *form*, *regularly* in *syntax*. The Instrumental (answers : *wherewith ?*), which is found in other members of the family, is likewise merged in the Ablative.

24. 1. According to their *form*, the cases are divided into *strong* and *weak* : The strong cases are Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative. The weak cases are Genitive, Dative, and Ablative.

2. According to their *syntactical use*, the cases are divided into **Cāsūs Rēctī**, or Independent Cases, and **Cāsūs Obliqui**, or Dependent Cases. Nominative and Vocative are **Cāsūs Rēctī**, the rest **Cāsūs Obliqui**.

25. The case-forms arise from the combination of the *case-endings* with the *stem*.

1. The stem is that which is common to a class of formations.

NOTES.—1. The stem is often so much altered by contact with the case-ending, and the case-ending so much altered by the wearing away of vowels and consonants, that they can be determined only by scientific analysis. So in the paradigm **mēnsa**, the stem is not **mēns**, but **mēnsā**, the final **ā** having been absorbed by the ending in the Dative and Ablative Plural **mēnsis**. So **-d**, the ending of the Ablative Singular, has nearly disappeared, and the locative ending has undergone many changes (**ē**, **ēl**, **i**, **ō**). The "crude form" it is often impossible to ascertain.

2. The root is an ultimate stem, and the determination of the root belongs to com-

**parative etymology.** The stem may be of any length, the root was probably a monosyllable. In **penna** the stem is **pennā-**; in **pennula**, **pennulā-**; in **pennātulus**, **pennātulo-**; the root is **PET** (**petna**, **pesna**, **penna**), and is found in **pet-ere**, *to fall upon, to fly at*; Greek, **πέτ-ομαι**, **πτερόν**; English, *feather*.

2. The case-endings are as follows, early forms being printed in parenthesis :

Sg.—N. V.	Wanting or m. f. -s; n. -m.	PL.—N. V.	-es (eis, is); -i; n. -a.
G.	-is (-os, -us, -es); -i.	G.	-um (om); -rum (som).
D.	-i (-ē, -ei).	D.	-bus; -is.
Ac.	-m, -em.	Ac.	-s (for -ns); n. -a.
Ab.	Wanting (or -d); -e.	Ab.	-bus; -is.

### Declensions.

26. There are five declensions in Latin, which are characterised by the final letter of their respective stems (*stem-characteristic*).

For practical purposes and regularly in lexicons they are also improperly distinguished by the ending of the Genitive Singular.

#### STEM CHARACTERISTIC. GENITIVE SINGULAR.

I.	ā (ā).	ae.
II.	ō.	i.
III.	ī, ū, a consonant.	is.
IV.	ū.	ūs.
V.	ē.	ēi.

**REMARK.**—The First, Second, and Fifth Declensions are called Vowel Declensions; the Third and Fourth, which really form but one, the Consonant Declension, i and u being semi-consonants.

27. The case-endings in combination with the stem-characteristics give rise to the following systems of terminations:

#### SINGULAR.

	I.	II.	III.
N.	a.	us (os); wanting; um (om).	s; wanting.
G.	ae (ās, āī, ai).	i (ēi).	is (us, es).
D.	ae (āī).	ō (oi).	i (ēi, i).
Ac.	am.	um (om).	em, im.
V.	a.	e; wanting; um (om).	s.
Ab.	ā (ād).	ō (ōd).	e, i (ēd, id).

		IV.	V.
N. V.		us ; ū.	ēs.
G.		ūs (uos, uis).	ēī, ē (es).
D.		ui, ū (uēl).	ēī, ē.
Ac.		um ; ū.	em.
Ab.		ū.	ē.

PLURAL.					
I.		II.		III.	
N. V.	ae.	I (oe, ē, ēī) ; ā.		ēs (ēīs, īs) ; a, ia.	
G.	ārum.	um (om), ōrum.		um, ium.	
D. A.	is (ēīs) ; ābus.	is (ēīs), ibus.		ibus.	
Ac.	ās.	ēs ; ā.		is, ēs ; a, ia.	

		IV.	V.
N. V.		ūs (ues, uus) ; ua.	ēs.
G.		uum.	ōrum.
D. A.		ubus, ibus.	ēbus.
Ac.		ūs ; ua.	ēs.

NOTE. Final -s and -m are frequently omitted in early inscriptions

## 28. General Rules of Declension.

### I. For the strong cases :

Neuter substantives have the Nominative and the Vocative like the Accusative ; in the Plural the strong cases always end in ā.

In the Third, Fourth, and Fifth Declensions the strong cases are alike in the Plural.

The Vocative is like the Nominative, except in the Singular of the Second Declension when the Nominative ends in -us.

### II. For the weak cases :

The Dative and the Ablative Plural have a common form.

## FIRST DECLENSION.

29. The stem ends in ā, which is weakened from an original ā. The Nominative has no ending.

Sg.—N.	mēnsa (f.),	the table,	a table.
G.	mēnsae,	of the table,	of a table.
D.	mēnsae,	to, for the table,	to, for a table.
Ac.	mēnsam,	the table,	a table.
V.	mēnsa,	O table !	table !
Ab.	mēnsā,	from, with, by, the table,	from, with, by, a table.

PL.—N.	mēnsae,	the tables,	tables.
G.	mēnsārum,	of the tables,	of tables.
D.	mēnsis,	to, for the tables,	to, for tables.
Ac.	mēnsās,	the tables,	tables.
V.	mēnsae,	O tables!	tables!
Ab.	mēnsis,	from, with, by, the tables,	from, with, by, tables.

REMARKS.—1. The early ending of the Gen., *ās*, found in a few cases in early poets, is retained in the classical period (but not in CAESAR or LIVY) only in the form *familiās*, *of a family*, in combination with *pater*, *father*, *māter*, *mother*, *filius*, *son*, *filia*, *daughter*, viz.: *paterfamiliās*, *māterfamiliās*, *filiusfamiliās*, *filiafamiliās*.

2. The Loc. Sing. is like the Genitive: *Rōmae*, *at Rome*; *militiae*, *abroad*.

3. The Gen. Pl. sometimes takes the form *-um* instead of *-ārum*; this occurs chiefly in the Greek words *amphora* (*amphora*, *measure of tonnage*), and *drachma*, *franc*—(*Greek coin*). The poets make frequent use of this form in Greek patronymics in *-āa*, *-dās*, and compounds of *-cola* (from *colō*, *I inhabit*) and *-gena* (from root *gen*, *beget*).

4. The ending *-ābus* is found (along with the regular ending) in the Dat. and Abl. Pl. of *dea*, *goddess*, and *filia*, *daughter*. In late Latin the use of this termination becomes more extended.

NOTES.—1. A very few masc. substantives show Nom. Sing. in *ās* in early Latin.

2. A form of the Gen. Sing. in *āī*, subsequent to that in *ās*, is found in early inscriptions, and not unfrequently in early poets, but only here and there in classical poetry (VERG., *A.*, 3, 354, etc.) and never in classical prose.

3. The early ending of the Dat. *āī* (sometimes contracted into *ā*), is found occasionally in inscriptions throughout the whole period of the language.

4. The older ending of the Abl., *ād*, belongs exclusively to early Latin. Inscriptions show *ēis* for *is* in Dat. and Abl. Pl., and once *ās* in the Dat. Plural.

30. *Rule of Gender*.—Substantives of the First Declension are feminine, except when males are meant.

*Hadria*, *the Adriatic*, is masculine.

## SECOND DECLENSION.

31. The stem ends in *ō*, which in the classical period is weakened to *ū*, except after *ū* (vowel or consonant), where *ō* is retained until the first century A.D. In combination with the case-endings it merges into *ō* or disappears altogether. In the Vocative (except in neuters) it is weakened to *ē*.

The Nominative ends in *s* (m. and f.) and *m* (n.). But many masculine stems in which the final vowel, *ō*, is preceded by *r*, drop the (os) *us* and *e* of the Nominative and Vocative, and insert *ē* before the *r* if it was preceded by a consonant.

**32. 1.** Stems in **-ro**. The following stems in **-ro** do not drop the (**os**) **us** and **e** of the Nom. and Voc.: **erus**, *master*; **hesperus**, *evening star*; **icterus**, *jaundice*; **iūniperus**, *juniper*; **mōrus**, *mulberry*; **numerus**, *number*; **taurus**, *bull*; **vīrus**, *venom*; **umerus**, *shoulder*; **uterus**, *womb*.

NOTE. **Socerus** is found in early Latin. Plautus uses **uterum** (n.) once.

**2.** In the following words the *stem* ends in **-ero** and the **e** is therefore retained throughout: **adulter**, *adulterer*; **gener**, *son-in-law*; **Liber**, *god of wine*; **puer**, *boy*; **socer**, *father-in-law*; **vesper**, *evening*; and in words ending in **-fer** and **-ger**, from **ferō**, *I bear*, and **gerō**, *I carry*, as, **signifer**, *standard-bearer*, **armiger**, *armor-bearer*.

Also **Ibēr** and **Celtibēr** (names of nations) have in the Plural **Ibēri** and **Celtibēri**.

**33. Hortus** (m.), *garden*; **puer** (m.), *boy*; **ager** (m.), *field*; **bellum** (n.), *war*: are thus declined:

Sg.—N.	<b>hortus</b> ,	<b>puer</b> ,	<b>ager</b> ,	<b>bellum</b> ,
G.	<b>horti</b> ,	<b>pueri</b> ,	<b>agri</b> ,	<b>belli</b> ,
D.	<b>hortō</b> ,	<b>puerō</b> ,	<b>agrō</b> ,	<b>bellō</b> ,
Ac.	<b>hortum</b> ,	<b>puerum</b> ,	<b>agrum</b> ,	<b>bellum</b> ,
V.	<b>horte</b> ,	<b>puer</b> ,	<b>ager</b> ,	<b>bellum</b> ,
Ab.	<b>hortō</b> .	<b>puerō</b> .	<b>agrō</b> .	<b>bellō</b> .
Pl.—N.	<b>horti</b> ,	<b>pueri</b> ,	<b>agri</b> ,	<b>bella</b> ,
G.	<b>hortōrum</b> ,	<b>puerōrum</b> ,	<b>agrōrum</b> ,	<b>bellōrum</b> ,
D.	<b>hortis</b> ,	<b>pueris</b> ,	<b>agris</b> ,	<b>bellis</b> ,
Ac.	<b>hortōs</b> ,	<b>puerōs</b> ,	<b>agrōs</b> ,	<b>bella</b> ,
V.	<b>horti</b> ,	<b>pueri</b> ,	<b>agri</b> ,	<b>bella</b> ,
Ab.	<b>hortis</b> .	<b>pueris</b> .	<b>agris</b> .	<b>bellis</b> .

REMARKS.—1. Stems in **-io** have Gen. Sing. for the most part in **i** until the first century A. D., without change of accent: **ingēni** (N. *ingenium*), *of genius*, **Vergīli**, *of Vergil*. See 15, R. 3.

**2.** Proper names in **-ius** (stems in **-io**) have Voc. in **i**, without change of accent: **Antōni**, **Tulli**, **Gāi**, **Vergīli**. **Filius**, *son*, and **genius**, *genius*, form their Voc. in like manner: **filii**, **geni**. In solemn discourse **-us** of the Nom. is employed also for the Vocative. (See Liv. i. 24, 7.) So regularly **deus**, *God*!

**3.** The Loc. Sing. ends in **i** (apparent Genitive), as **Rhodi**, *at Rhodes*, **Tarenti**, *at Tarentum*.

**4.** In the Gen. Pl. **-um** instead of **-ōrum** is found in words denoting coins and measures: as, **nummum**, *of moneys* (also **-ōrum**) = **sōstertium**, *of sestertees*; **dēnārium** (occasionally **-ōrum**); **talentum** (occasionally **-ōrum**); **tetrachmum**; **modium** (also **-ōrum**), *of measures*; **iūgerum**; **medimnum**; **stadium** (also **-ōrum**). Likewise in some names of persons: **deum** (also



**-ōrum**); **fabrum** (in technical expressions; as **praefectus fabrum**, otherwise **-ōrum**); **liberum** (also **-ōrum**); **virum** (poetical, except in technical expressions, as **triumvirum**); **socium** (also **-ōrum**). Some other examples are poetical, rare or late.

5. The Loc. Pl. is identical with the Dative: **Delphīs, at Delphī.**

6. **Deus, God**, is irregular. In addition to the forms already mentioned, it has in Nom. Pl. **deī, diī, dī**; in Dat. and Abl. Pl. **deīs, diīs, dīs.**

NOTES.—1. The ending **-ēī** for **-ī** in the Gen. Sing. is found only in inscriptions subsequent to the third Punic War.

2. **Puer, boy**, forms Voc. **puere** in early Latin.

3. The original Abl. ending **-d** belongs to early inscriptions.

4. In early inscriptions the Nom. Pl. ends occasionally in **ēs, ēīs, īs**: **magistrēs** (for **magistrī**) **virēs** (for **virī**). The rare endings **oe** and **ē** (**plōirumē** for **plūrimī**) and the not uncommon ending **ēī** belong to the same period.

5. Inscriptions often show **ēīs** for **īs** in Dat. and Abl. Plural.

**34. Rule of Gender.**—Substantives in **-us** are masculine; in **-um** neuter.

EXCEPTIONS.—Feminine are: 1st. Cities and islands, as, **Corinthus, Samus**. 2d. Most trees, as, **fāgus, beech**; **pirus, pear-tree**. 3d. Many Greek nouns, as, **atomus, atom**; **dialectus, dialect**; **methodus, method**; **paragraphus, paragraph**; **periodus, period**. 4th. **Alvus, belly** (m. in **PLAUT.**); **colus** (61, N. 5), **distaff** (also m.); **humus, ground**; **vannus, wheat-fan**.

Neuters are: **pelagus, sea**; **vīrus, venom**; **vulgus, the rabble** (sometimes masculine).

### THIRD DECLENSION.

**35. 1.** The stem ends in a consonant, or in the close vowels **i** and **u**.

2. The stems are divided according to their last letter, called the stem-characteristic, following the subdivisions of the letters of the alphabet:

#### I.—Consonant Stems.

A. Liquid stems, ending in **l, m, n, r**.

B. Sibilant stems, ending in **s**.

C. Mute stems, { 1. Ending in a P-mute, **b, p**.  
2. Ending in a K-mute, **g, c**.  
3. Ending in a T-mute, **d, t**.

#### II.—Vowel Stems.

1. Ending in **i**.

2. Ending in **u**,

(Compare the Fourth Declension.)

**36. 1.** The Nominative Singular, masculine and feminine, ends in **s**, which, however, is dropped after **l, n, r, s**, and combines with a K-mute to form **x**. The final vowel of the stem undergoes various changes.

The Vocative is like the Nominative.

In the other cases, the endings are added to the unchanged stem.

2. Neuters always form :

The Nominative without the case-ending *s*.

The Accusative and Vocative cases in both numbers like the Nominative.

The Nominative Plural in *ä*.

### Notes on the Cases.

#### 37. Singular.

1. GENITIVE. In old Latin we find on inscriptions the endings *-us* (Gr. *-oc*) and *-es*.

2. DATIVE. The early endings of the Dat. are *-ei* and *-e*. These were succeeded by *i* after the second century B. C., *e* being retained in formulas like *iurē dicundō* (Liv., 42, 28, 6), in addition to the usual form.

3. ACCUSATIVE. The original termination *-im*, in stems of the vowel declension, loses ground, and stems of this class form their Acc. more and more in *-em*, after the analogy of consonant stems. For the classical usage see 57, R. 1.

4. ABLATIVE. In inscriptions of the second and first centuries B. C. we find *-ei*, *-i*, and *-e*. But *-ei* soon disappears, leaving *e* and *i*. In general *e* is the ending for the consonant stems and *i* for the vowel. But as in the Acc., so in the Abl., the *e* makes inroads on the *i*, though never to the same extent. (See 57, R. 2.) On the other hand, some apparently consonant stems assume the ending *i*. Thus some in *-ās*, *-ātis*: *hērēditātī* (200 B. C.), *aetātī* (rare); *litī* (rare), *supellēctilī* (classical; early *e*); also the liquid stems which syncopate in the Gen., as *imber*. The ending *-d* is rare and confined to early inscriptions.

5. LOCATIVE. Originally coincident in form with the Dat., the Loc. of the Third Declension was finally blended with Abl., both in form and in syntax. In the following proper names the old form is frequently retained: *Karthāginī*, at *Carthage*, *Sulmōnī*, at *Sulmo*, *Lacedaemonī*, at *Lacedaemon*, *Sicyōnī*, *Troezēnī*, *Anxurī*, *Tiburī*. Also *Acheruntī*. In the case of all except *Anxur*, *Tibur*, *Acherūns*, the regular form is more common.

The following Loc. forms of common nouns are found: *herī*, *lūcī*, *noctū* (principally in early Latin), *orbi* (Cic.), *peregrī* (early Latin), *praefiscinī* (early Latin), *rūrī*, *temperī* (the usual form in early Latin), *vesperī*. In all cases the Abl. form in *e* is also found.

#### 38. Plural.

1. NOMINATIVE. Early Latin shows *-ēis*, *-is* in the masc. and feminine. The latter was usually confined to vowel stems, but also occurs occasionally in consonant stems (*ioudicis*). Later the ending was *-ēs* for all kinds of stems.

2. GENITIVE. The ending *-um*, uniting with the vowel in vowel stems, gives *-ium*. But many apparently consonant stems show their original vowel form by taking *-ium*: (1) Many fem. stems in *-tāt-* (N. *tās*) with *-ium* as well as *-um*. (2) Monosyllabic and polysyllabic stems in *-t*, *-c*, with preceding consonant. (3) Monosyllables in *-p* and *-b*, sometimes with, sometimes without, a preceding consonant. (4) Stems in *-ss-*; see 48, R.

3. ACCUSATIVE. Old Latin shows also *-ēis*. The classical form is *-ēs* for consonant and *-is* for vowel stems. But *-ēs* begins to drive out *-is* in some vowel stems and wholly supplants it in the early Empire. On the other hand, some apparently original consonant stems show *-is* in early Latin, but the cases are not always certain.

## I.—CONSONANT STEMS.

## A.—Liquid Stems.

1. LIQUID STEMS IN *l*.

**39.** Form the Nominative without *s* and fall into two divisions\* :

A. Those in which the stem characteristic is preceded by a vowel :

1. **-al, -alis** : *sāl* (with compensatory lengthening), *salt* ; Punic proper names like *Adherbal*, *Hannibal*.

2. **-il, -ilis** : *mūgil* (*mūgilis* is late), *mullet* ; *pugil* (*pugilis* in *VARRO*), *boxer* ; *vigil*, *watchman*. **-īl, -īlis** : *sīl*, *ochre* ; *Tanaquil* (with shortened vowel), a proper name.

3 **-ōl, -ōlis** : *sōl*, *sun*.

4. **-ul, -ulis** : *cōsul*, *consul* ; *exsul*, *exile* ; *praesul*, *dancer*.

B. Two neuter substantives with stems in *-ll*, one of which is lost in the Nominative : *mel*, *mellis*, *honey* ; *fel*, *fellis*, *gall*.

SG.—N.	cōsul, <i>consul</i> (m.).	PL.—N.	cōsulēs, <i>the consuls</i> .
G.	cōsulis,	G.	cōsulum,
D.	cōsulī,	D.	cōsulibus,
Ac.	cōsulem,	Ac.	cōsulēs,
V.	cōsul,	V.	cōsulēs,
Ab.	cōsule.	Ab.	cōsulibus.

*Rules of Gender.*—1. Stems in *-l* are masculine.

**EXCEPTIONS** : *Sīl*, *ochre*, and *sāl*, *salt* (occasionally, but principally in the Sing.), are neuter.

2. Stems in *-ll* are neuter

2. LIQUID STEMS IN *m*.

**40.** Nominative with *s*. One example only : *hiem(p)s*, *winter* (f.) ; Gen., *hiem-is*, Dat., *hiem-ī*, etc

3. LIQUID STEMS IN *n*.

**41.** *Most masculine and feminine stems form the Nominative Singular by dropping the stem-characteristic and changing a preceding vowel to o.*

---

\* In the following enumerations of stem-varieties, Greek substantives are as a rule omitted.

Some masculine and most neuter stems retain the stem-characteristic in the Nominative and change a preceding *i* to *e*.

The following varieties appear :

1. **-ēn, -ēnis** : the masculine substantives *liēn, splēn, spleen* ; *rēnēs* (pl.), *kidneys*.

2. **-ō, -inis** : *homō, man* ; *nēmō, no one* ; *turbō, whirlwind* ; *Apollō, Apollo*. Also substantives in **-dō** (except *praedō, G. -ōnis, robber*) ; and in **-gō** (except *harpagō, G. -ōnis, grappling-hook* ; *ligō, G. -ōnis, mattock*) ; as, *grandō, hail* ; *virgō, virgin*. **-en, inis** : the masc. substantives *flāmen, priest* ; *ōscen* (also f.), *divining bird* ; *pecten, comb* ; musical performers, *cornicen, fidicen, liticen, tibicen, tubicen*. Also many neuters : as *nōmen, name*.

3. **-o** (in early Latin *ō*, in classical period weakened), **-ōnis** : *leō, lion* ; and about seventy others. **-o, -onis** : *Saxo, Saxon* (late).

4. Irregular formations : *carō, G. carnis, flesh* ; *Aniō, G. Anienis, a river* ; *Nēriō, G. Neriōnis, a proper name*. *Sanguis, blood*, and *pollis, flour*, drop the stem characteristic and add *s* to form nominative ; G. *sanguinis, pollinis*.

42.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
Sg.—N.	<i>leō, lion (m.).</i>	<i>imāgō, likeness (f.).</i>	<i>nōmen, name (n.).</i>
G.	<i>leōnis,</i>	<i>imāginis,</i>	<i>nōminis,</i>
D.	<i>leōni,</i>	<i>imāgini,</i>	<i>nōmini,</i>
Ac.	<i>leōnem,</i>	<i>imāginem,</i>	<i>nōmen,</i>
V.	<i>leō,</i>	<i>imāgō,</i>	<i>nōmen,</i>
Ab.	<i>leōne,</i>	<i>imāgine,</i>	<i>nōmine,</i>
PL.—N.	<i>leōnēs,</i>	<i>imāginēs,</i>	<i>nōmina,</i>
G.	<i>leōnum,</i>	<i>imāginum,</i>	<i>nōminum,</i>
D.	<i>leōnibus,</i>	<i>imāginibus,</i>	<i>nōminibus,</i>
Ac.	<i>leōnēs,</i>	<i>imāginēs,</i>	<i>nōmina,</i>
V.	<i>leōnēs,</i>	<i>imāginēs,</i>	<i>nōmina,</i>
Ab.	<i>leōnibus,</i>	<i>imāginibus.</i>	<i>nōminibus.</i>

NOTE.—Early Latin shows *homōnem, etc.*, occasionally.

43. *Rules of Gender*.—1. Substantives in **-ō** are masculine, except *carō, flesh*, and those in **-dō, -gō**, and **-iō**.

EXCEPTIONS. Masculine are *cardō, hinge* ; *ōrdō, rank* ; *harpagō, grappling-hook* ; *ligō, mattock* ; *margō, border* (occasionally fem. in late Latin) ; and concrete nouns like *pūgiō, dagger*, *titiō, firebrand*, *vespertiliō, bat*.

2. Substantives in **-en (-men)** are neuter. See exceptions, 41, 1, 2.

4. LIQUID STEMS IN *r*.

44. Form Nominative without *s*.

Stems fall into the following classes :

1. **-ar, -aris** : *salar, trout* ; proper names like **Caesar, Hamilcar** ; the neuters *baccar, a plant* ; *iubar, radiance* ; *nectar, nectar*. **-ār, -āris** : *Lār, a deity*. **-ār, āris** : *Nār (ENN., VERG.), a river*. **-ār, arris** : *fār (n.) spelt*.

2. **-er, -eris** : *acipēns, a fish* ; *agger, mound* ; *āns, goose* ; *asser, pole* ; *aster, a plant* ; *cancer, the disease* ; *carcer, prison* ; *later, brick* ; *mulier (f.), woman* ; *passer, sparrow* ; *tūber (m. and f.), apple* ; *vesper, evening (68, 10)* ; *vōmer, ploughshare (47, 2)*. The neuters *acer, maple* ; *cadāver, dead body* ; *cicer, pea* ; *lāser, a plant* ; *laver, a plant* ; *papāver, poppy* ; *piper, pepper* ; *siler, willow* ; *siser, skirret* ; *sūber, cork* ; *tūber, tumor* ; *ūber, teat* ; [*verber*], *thong*. **-er, -ris** : four words, *accipiter, hawk* ; *frāter, brother* ; *māter, mother* ; *pater, father*. Also some proper names, as *Diēspiter, Falacer*, and the names of the months, *September, Octōber, November, December*. Also, *imber, shower*, *linter, skiff*, *ūter, bag*, *venter, belly*, which were probably vowel stems originally (see 45, R. 1). **-ēr, -eris** : *āēr, air* ; *aethēr, ether*. **-ēr, -ērīs** : *vēr, spring*.

3. **-or, -oris** : *arbor (f.), tree* (stem originally in *-os*) ; some Greek words in *-tor*, as *rhētor, rhetorician* ; slave names in *-por*, as *Mārcipor* ; the neuters : *ador, spelt* ; *aequor, sea* ; *marmor, marble*. **-or, -ōris** : very many abstract words, as *amor, love* ; *color, colour* ; *clāmor, outcry* ; *soror, sister* ; *uxor, wife* ; these may come from stems in *ōs* (see 47, 4) ; also verbals in *-tor*, as *victor*.

4. **-ur, -uris** : *augur, augur* ; *furfur, bran* ; *turtur, dove* ; *vultur, vulture* ; *lemurēs (pl.), ghosts*, and a few proper names ; also the neuters *fulgur, lightning* ; *guttur, throat* ; *murmur, murmur* ; *sulfur, sulphur*. **-ūr, -ūris** ; *fūr, thief*.

5. Four neuters, *ebur, ivory* ; *femur, thigh* ; *iecur, liver* ; *rōbur, oak*, show Gen. in *-oris* ; two of these, *femur, iecur*, have also the irregular forms *feminis* and *iecineris, iecinoris, iocinoris*. *Iter, way*, has (i. *itineris*) ; and *supellēx, furniture*, has G. *supellēctilis*.

45.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	<i>labor, toil (m.),</i>	<i>labōrēs,</i>	<i>pater, father (m.),</i>	<i>patrēs,</i>
G.	<i>labōris,</i>	<i>labōrum,</i>	<i>patris,</i>	<i>patrum,</i>
D.	<i>labōrī,</i>	<i>labōribus,</i>	<i>patri,</i>	<i>patribus,</i>
Ac.	<i>labōrem,</i>	<i>labōrēs,</i>	<i>patrem,</i>	<i>patrēs,</i>
V.	<i>labor,</i>	<i>labōrēs,</i>	<i>pater,</i>	<i>patrēs,</i>
Ab.	<i>labōre.</i>	<i>labōribus.</i>	<i>patre.</i>	<i>patribus.</i>



REMARKS.—1. *Imber, shower, linter, skiff, ūter, bag, venter, belly*, show the vowel nature of their stems by having Gen. Pl. in *-ium*. *Imber* has also sometimes Abl. Sing. in *I*. (See 37, 4.)

2. *Rōbur, strength*, also forms a Nom. *rōbus* (47, 4), and *vōmer, plough-share, vōmis* (47, 2).

NOTE.—*Arbor*, and many stems in *-ōr*, were originally stems in *-s*; the *s* became *r* (47) between two vowels in the oblique cases, and then reacted upon the Nominative. But many Nominatives in *-ōs* are still found in early Latin; and some are still retained in the classical times: *arbōs* (regularly in VERG., frequently in LUCR., HOR., OV.), *honōs* (regularly in VERG., commonly in CIC., LIVY), and others.

46. *Rules of Gender*.—1. Substantives in *-er* and *-or* are masculine. 2. Substantives in *-ar* and *-ur* are neuter.

EXCEPTIONS.—Masculine are *salar, trout*, and proper names in *-ar*; *augur, augur*; *furfur, bran*; names of animals in *-ur* and a few proper names in *-ur*.

Feminine are *arbor, tree*; *mulier, woman*; *soror, sister*; *uxor, wife*. Neuter are *acer, maple*; *ador, spell*; *aequor, sea*; *cadāver, dead body*; *cicer, pea*; *iter, way*; *lāser, a plant*; *laver, a plant*; *marmor, marble*; *papāver, poppy*; *piper, pepper*; *siler, willow*; *siser, skirret*; *sūber, cork*; *tūber, tumor*; *über, teat*; *vēr, spring*; [*verber*], *thong*.

#### B.—Sibilant Stems.

47. The Nominative has no additional *s*, and changes in masculines *e* to *i*, and in neuters *e* or *o* to *u* before *s*.

In the oblique cases, the *s* of the stem usually passes over, between two vowels, into *r* (*rhotacism*).

There are the following varieties of stems :

1. *-ās, -aris* : *mās, male*. *-ās, -āsis* : *vāe* (n.), *vessel*. *-ās, -assis* : *ās* (m.), *a copper* (vowel long in Nom. by compensatory lengthening), and some of its compounds (with change of vowel), as *bes, semis*.

2. *-ēs, -eris* : *Cerēs, Ceres*. *-is, -eris* : *cinis, ashes*; *cucumis, cucumber* (see 37, R. 1), *pulvis* (occasionally *pulvis*), *dust*; *vōmis, plough-share* (see 45, R. 2). *-us, -eris* : *Venus*, and occasionally *pignus, pledge* (see 4).

3. *-īs, -īris* : *glīs, dormouse*.

4. *-ōs, -ōsis* : old Latin *ianitōs, labōs, clāmōs* (see 45, N.). *-os, -ossis* : *os* (n.), *bone*. *-ōs, -ōris* : *fiōs, flower*; *glōs, sister-in-law*; *lepōs, charm*; *mōs* (m.), *custom*; *-ōs* (n.), *mouth*; *rōs, dew*. *-us, -oris* : *corpus, body*; *decus, grace*; *pignus, pledge*, and twelve others; on *rōbus* (see 45, R. 2).

5. *-us, -uris* : *Ligus, Ligurian*. *-ūs, -ūris* : *tellūs* (f.), *earth*; *mūs* (m.), *mouse*; the neuters : *crūs, leg*; *iūs, right*; *pūs, pus*; *rūs, country*; *tūs, incense*.

6. *aes, aeris, brass*.

48

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. A. V.	genus, <i>kind</i> (n.),	genera,	corpus, <i>body</i> (n.),	corpora,
G.	generis,	generum,	corporis,	corporum,
D.	generi,	generibus,	corpori,	corporibus,
Ab.	genere.	generibus.	corpore.	corporibus.

REMARK.—**Ās**, *a copper*, and **os**, *bone*, form the Gen. Pl. in **-ium**, after the usage of vowel stems (see 38, 2). So also **mūs**, *mouse*.

**49. Rule of Gender.**—Masculine are substantives in **-is** (**-eris**), and **-ōs**, **-ōris**: except **ōs**, *mouth* (G. **ōris**), which is neuter.

Neuter are substantives in **-us** (G. **-eris**, **-oris**), and in **-ūs** (G. **-ūris**); except **tellūs**, *earth* (G. **tellūris**), which is feminine; and the masculines, **lepus**, *hare* (G. **leporis**); **mūs**, *mouse* (G. **mūris**).

### C.—Mute Stems.

**50.** All masculines and feminines of mute stems have **s** in the Nominative. Before **s** a P-mute is retained, a K-mute combines with it to form **x**, a T-mute is dropped.

Most polysyllabic mute stems change their final vowel **i** into **e** in the Nominative.

The stems show variations as follows :

**51.** Stems in a P-mute.

1. **-abs, -abis** : trabs, *beam* ; Arabs. **-aps, -apis** : [daps], *feast*.
2. **-ēbs, ēbis** : plēbs, *commons*.
3. **-eps, -ipis** : princeps, *chief*, and fourteen others. **-ips, -ipis** : stips, *dole*.
4. **-ops, -opis** : [ops], *power*.
5. **-eps, upis** : auceps, *fowler*, and the old Latin manceps, *contractor*.
6. **-rbs, -rbis** : urbs, *city*.
7. **-rps, -rpis** : stirps, *stock*.

Sg.—N. princeps, *chief* (m.),  
 G. principis,  
 D. principī,  
 Ac. principem,  
 V. princeps,  
 Ab. principe.

Pl.—principēs,  
 principum,  
 principibus,  
 principēs,  
 principēs,  
 principibus.

**52.** Stems in a K-mute.

1. **-ax, -acis** : fax, *torch*, and many Greek words in **-ax**, **Atax**, proper name. **-āx, -ācis** : fornāx, *furnace* ; limāx, *snail* ; pāx, *peace* ; and Greek cordāx, thōrāx.

2. **-ex, -ecis** : faenisex, *mower* ; nex, *murder* : [prex], *prayer* ; [resex], *stump*. **-ēx, -ēcis** : āllēx (also āllēc), *brine* ; vervēx, *wether*.

**-ex, -egis** : grex, *herd* ; aquilex, *water-inspector*. **-ēx, -ēgis** : interrēx ; lēx, *law* ; rēx, *king*.

3. **-ex, -icis** : auspex, *soothsayer*, and about forty others. **-ex, -igis** : rēmex, *rower*. **-īx, -icis** : cervix, *neck*, and about thirty others ; verbals in **-ix**, as victrix. **-ix, -icis** : appendix, *appendix*, and ten others. **-ix, -igis** : strix, *screech-owl* ; also many foreign proper names, as Dumnorix, which may, however, be forms in **-ix, -igis**.

4. **-ōx, -ōcis** : celōx, *cutter* ; vōx, *voice*. **-ox, -ocis** : Cappadox, *Cappadocian*. **-ox, -ogis** : Allobrox, *Allobrogian*.

5. **-ux, -ucis** : crux, *cross* ; dux, *leader* ; nux, *nut*. **-ūx, -ūcis** : lūx, *light* ; ballūx, *gold-dust* ; Pollūx. **-ux, -ugis** : cōniux (**-unx**), *spouse*. **-ūx, -ūgis** : frūx, *fruit*.

6. **-rx, -rcis** : arx, *citadel* ; merx, *wares*. **-lx, -lcis** : falx, *sickle* ; calx, *heel*, *lime*. **-nx, -ncis** : lanx, *dish* ; compounds of **-unx**, as quincunx, and a few names of animals ; phalanx has G. phalangis.

7. Unclassified : nix (G. nivis), *snow* ; bōs (G. bovis ; see 71), *ox* ; [faux] (G. faucis), *throat* ; faex (G. faecis), *dregs*.

SG.—N.	rēx, <i>king</i> (m.).	PL.—rēgēs,
G.	rēgis,	rēgum,
D.	rēgi,	rēgibus,
Ac.	rēgem,	rēgēs,
V.	rēx,	rēgēs,
Ab.	rēge,	rēgibus.

### 53. Stems in a T-mute

1. **-ās, -ātis** : many feminine abstracts, as aetās, *age* ; some proper names, as Maccēnās. **-as, -atis** : anas, *duck*. **-as, -adis** : vas, *bail* ; lampas, *torch*.

2. **-es, -etis** : indiges, *patron deity* ; interpres, *interpreter* ; praepes, *bird* ; seges, *crop* ; teges, *mat*. **-ēs, -etis** : abiēs, *fir* ; ariēs, *ram* ; pariēs, *wall*. **-ēs, -ētis** : quiēs, *quiet* ; requiēs, *rest*. **-ēs, -edis** : pēs, *foot*, and its compounds. **-ēs, -ēdis** : hērēs, *heir* ; mercēs, *hire*.

3. **-es, -itis** : antistes, *overseer* ; caespes, *sod*, and some fifteen others. **-es, -idis** : obses, *hostage* ; praeses, *protector*. **-īs, -ītis** : lis, *suit*. **-is, -idis** : capis, *bowl* ; cassis, *helmet*, and nearly forty others, mostly Greek.

4. **-ōs, -ōtis** : cōs, *whetstone* ; dōs, *dowry* ; nepōs, *grandson* ; sacer-dōs, *priest*. **-ōs, -ōdis** : cūstōs, *guard*.

5. **-ūs, -ūtis** : glūs, *glue*, and some abstracts ; inventūs, *youth* ; salūs, *salutary* ; senectūs, *old age* ; servitūs, *servitude* ; virtūs, *manliness*.

**-us, -udis** : pecus, *sheep*. **-ūs, -ūdis** : incūs, *anvil* ; palūs, *marsh* ; subscūs, *tenon*.

6. **-aes, -aedis** : praes, surety. **-aus, -audis** : laus, praise ;  
fraus, fraud.

7. **-ls, -ltis** : puls, porridge. **-us, -ntis** : infāns, infant ; dēns,  
tooth ; fōns, fountain ; mōns, mountain ; frōns, brow ; pōns, bridge ; gēns,  
tribe ; lēns, lentil ; mēns, mind ; rudēns, rope ; torrēns, torrent. **-s,**  
**-ntis** : latinised Greek words like gigās, giant. **-rs, -rtis** : ars, art ;  
cohors, cohort ; fors, chance ; Mārs ; mors, death ; sors, lot.

8. Unclassified : cor (G. cordis), heart ; nox (G. noctis), night ; caput  
(G. capitis), head ; lac (G. lactis), milk.

Sg.—N.	aetās, age (f.).	PL.—aetātēs,	Sg.—pēs, foot (m.).	PL.—pedēs,
G.	aetātis,	aetātum,	pedis,	pedum,
D.	aetāti,	aetātibus,	pedī,	pedibus,
Ac.	aetātem,	aetātēs,	pedem,	pedēs,
V.	aetās,	aetātēs,	pēs,	pedēs,
Ab.	aetāte,	aetātibus.	pede,	pedibus.

54. Many substantives of this class were originally vowel stems (see 56), and show their origin by having the termination **-ium** in the Gen. Pl. and **-ī** in the Abl. Singular. Some not originally vowel stems do the same. (See 38, 2.)

Monosyllabic mute stems, with the characteristic preceded by a consonant, have the Gen. Pl. in **-ium** : urbium, of cities ; arcium, of citadels ; montium, of mountains ; partium, of parts ; noctium, of the nights. But **-um** is also found in gentum (ATTIUS), partum (ENNIUS) ; so always opum.

Monosyllabic mute stems, with characteristic preceded by a long vowel or diphthong, vary : dōt-ium, lit-ium, fauc-ium, fraud-um (**-ium**), laud-um (**-ium**). But praed-um, vōcum.

Monosyllabic mute stems with characteristic preceded by a short vowel have **-um** ; but fac-ium, nuc-um (**-ium**), niv-ium (**-um**).

The polysyllabic stems in **-nt** and **-rt** have more frequently **-ium**, as clientium (**-um**), of clients ; cohortium (**-um**), of companies. So adulēscēntium (**-um**), amantium (**-um**), infantium (**-um**), parentum (**-ium**), serpentium (**-um**), torrentium (**-um**) ; rudentum (**-ium**) ; but only quadrantum.

Of other polysyllabic stems feminine stems in **-āt** have frequently both **-um** and **-ium**, as aetātum and aetātium, civitātum and civitātium, etc. ; the rest have usually **-um** : but artifex, (h)aruspex, extispex, iūdex, supplex, cōniux, rēmex, and usually fornāx have **-ium**. Forceps, manceps, mūniceps, princeps have **-um**. Palūs has usually palūdium.

NOTES.—1. The accusative lentim from [lēns] is occasionally found, and partim from pars, as an adverb.

2. Sporadic ablatives in **-ī** occur as follows : animantī (CIC.), bidentī (LUCR.), tridentī (SIL., VERG.), capitī, cōnsonantī (gram.), hērēdī (inscr.), lēgī (inscr.), lentī (TITIN., COL.), lūcī (early), mentī (COL.), occipitī (PERS., AUS.), pācī (VARRO), partī, rudentī (VITR.), sortī, torrentī (SEN.).

**55. Rule of Gender.**—Mute stems, with Nominative in **s**, are feminine.

**1. Exceptions in a k-mute.**

Masculines are substantives in **-ex**, **-ēx**, **-ix**, and **-unx**; except **cortex**, *bark*, **forfex**, *shears*, **frutex**, *shrub*, **imbrex**, *tile*, **latex**, *fluid*, **ōbex**, *bolt*, **silex**, *flint*, **varix**, *varicose vein*, which are sometimes masculine, sometimes feminine; and **faex**, *dregs*, **forpex**, *tongs*, **lēx**, *law*, **nex**, *slaughter*, **vībēx**, *weal*, and forms of [**prex**], *prayer*, which are feminine. **Calx**, *heel*, and **calx**, *chalk*, are sometimes masculine, sometimes feminine.

**2. Exceptions in a t-mute.**

Masculine are substantives in **-es**, **-itis**, except **merges** (f.), *sheaf*; also **pēs**, *foot*, and its compounds; **pariēs**, *wall*; **lapis**, *stone*.

Masculines in **-ns** are: **dēns**, *tooth*, and its compounds; **fōns**, *spring*; **mōns**, *mountain*; **pōns**, *bridge*; **rudēns**, *rope*; **torrēns**, *torrent*; also some substantivised adjectives and participles.

Neuters are only: **cor**, *heart*, **lac**, *milk*, and **caput**, *head*.

## II.—VOWEL STEMS.

### 1.—Vowel Stems in **i**.

**56.** Masculines and feminines form their Nominative in **s**.

Some feminines change, in the Nominative, the stem-vowel **i** into **e**.

Neuters change, in the Nominative, the stem-vowel **i** into **e**. This **e** is generally dropped by polysyllabic neuters after **l** and **r**.

Stems in **i** have Genitive Plural in **-ium**.

Neuter stems in **i** have the Ablative Singular in **ī**, and Nominative Plural in **-ia**.

The varieties of stems are:

1. **-is, -is**: nearly one hundred substantives, like **civis**, *citizen*.
2. **-ēs, -is**: thirty-five, like **vulpēs**, *fox*. Some of these have also variant nominatives in **-is** in good usage.
3. **-e, -is**: some twenty neuters, as **mare**, *sea*.
4. **-, -is**: twenty-four neuters, which form Nominative by dropping the stem characteristic and shortening the preceding vowel: **animal**, **-ālis**, *animal*; **calcar** (G. **calcāris**), *spur*.
5. For substantives in **-er, -ris**, see 44, 2. Irregular is **senex**, (G. **senis**; see 57, R. 3), *old man*.



	M.	F.	F.	N.	N.
Sg.—N.	<b>collis</b> , <i>hill</i> .	<b>turris</b> , <i>tower</i> .	<b>vulpēs</b> , <i>fox</i> .	<b>mare</b> , <i>sea</i> .	<b>animal</b> , <i>living being</i> .
G.	<b>collis</b> ,	<b>turris</b> ,	<b>vulpis</b> ,	<b>maris</b> ,	<b>animālis</b> ,
D.	<b>collī</b> ,	<b>turri</b> ,	<b>vulpī</b> ,	<b>marī</b> ,	<b>animālī</b> ,
Ac.	<b>collem</b> ,	<b>turrim(em)</b> ,	<b>vulpem</b> ,	<b>mare</b> ,	<b>animal</b> ,
V.	<b>collis</b> ,	<b>turris</b> ,	<b>vulpēs</b> ,	<b>mare</b> ,	<b>animal</b> ,
Ab.	<b>colle</b> ,	<b>turri(e)</b> ,	<b>vulpe</b> ,	<b>marī</b> ,	<b>animālī</b> ,
Pl.—N.	<b>collēs</b> ,	<b>turrēs</b> ,	<b>vulpēs</b> ,	<b>maria</b> ,	<b>animālia</b> ,
G.	<b>collium</b> ,	<b>turri-um</b> ,	<b>vulpium</b> ,	<b>marum</b> ,	<b>animālium</b> ,
D.	<b>collibus</b> ,	<b>turri-bus</b> ,	<b>vulpibus</b> ,	<b>maribus</b> ,	<b>animālibus</b> ,
Ac.	<b>collis(ēs)</b> ,	<b>turris(ēs)</b> ,	<b>vulpis(ēs)</b> ,	<b>maria</b> ,	<b>animālia</b> ,
V.	<b>collēs</b> ,	<b>turrēs</b> ,	<b>vulpēs</b> ,	<b>maria</b> ,	<b>animālia</b> ,
Ab.	<b>collibus</b> .	<b>turri-bus</b> .	<b>vulpibus</b> .	<b>maribus</b> .	<b>animālibus</b> .

57. REMARKS.—I. The proper ending of the Acc. Sing. **-im**, is retained *always* in **amussis**, **būris**, **cucumis** (see 47, 2), **fūtis**, **mephitis**, **rāvis**, **rūmis**, **sitis**, **tussis**, **vīs**; and in names of towns and rivers in **-is**, as **Neāpolis**, **Tiberis**; *usually* in **febris**, **puppis**, **pelvis**, **restis**, **secūris**, **turris**; *occasionally* in **bipennis**, **clāvis**, **crātis**, **cutis**, **len(t)is** (see 54, N. 1), **messis**, **nāvis**, **neptis**, **praesaepis**, **sēmentis**, **strigilis**.

2. The Abl. in **-ī** is found in substantives that regularly have **-im** in Acc. (except perhaps **restis**): also not unfrequently in **amnis**, **avis**, **bipennis**, **canālis**, **cīvis**, **clāssis**, **finis** (in formulæ), **fūstis**, **ignis** (in phrases), **orbis**, **sēmentis**, **strigilis**, **unguis**; *occasionally* in **anguis**, **bīlis**, **clāvis**, **collis**, **convallis**, **corbis**, **messis**, **neptis**; regularly in neuters in **e**, **al**, and **ar**, except in **rāte**, and in the towns **Caere**, **Praeneste**.

NOTE.—So also the adjectives of this class, when used as substantives by ellipsis: **annālis** (sc. **liber**, *book*), **chronicle**; **nātālis** (sc. **diēs**, *day*), **birthday**; **Aprilis** (sc. **mēnsis**, *month*), and all the other months of the Third Declension: Abl. **annālī**, **nātālī**, **Aprīlī**, **Septembrī**, etc. But **iūvenis**, *young man*; and **aedilis**, *aedile*, have Abl., **iūvene**, **aedile**; adjectives used as proper nouns have generally Abl. in **-e**, as, **Iūvenālis**, **Iūvenāle**.

3. In the Gen. Pl., instead of the ending **-ium**, **-um** is found *always* in **canis**, *dog*, **iūvenis**, *young man*, **pānis**, *bread*, **senex**, *old*, **struēs**, *heap*, **volucris**, *bird*; *usually* in **apis**, *bee*, **sēdēs**, *seat*, **vātēs**, *bard*; *frequently* in **mēnsis**, *month*. On **imber**, etc., see 45, R. 1. Post-classical and rare are **ambāgum**, **caedum**, **clādum**, **veprum**, and a few others; **marum** (the only form found) occurs once.

4. In the Nom. Pl. **-ēs** and **-īs** are found in early Latin. So *occasionally* in consonant stems (see 38, 1), but in classical times such usage is doubtful.

5. The proper ending of the Acc. Pl., **-īs** (archaic, **-ēs**), is found *frequently* in the classical period along with the later termination **-ēs**, which supplants **-īs** wholly in the early empire. On the other hand, **-īs** for **-ēs** in consonant stems is confined to a few doubtful cases in early Latin.

58. *Rule of Gender.*—1. Vowel stems, with Nominative in *-ēs* are feminine : those with Nominative in *-is* are partly masculine, partly feminine.

*Masculine* are: *amnis*, river (f., early); *antēs* (pl.), rows; *axis*, axle; *būris*, plough-tail; *cassēs* (pl.), tails; *caulis*, stalk; *collis*, hill; *crinis*, hair; *ēnsis*, glaive; *fascis*, fagot; *follis*, bellows; *fūnis*, rope (f., LUCK.); *fūstis*, cudgel; *ignis*, fire; *mānēs* (pl.), Mares; *mēnsis*, month; *mūgilis*, mullet; *orbis*, circle; *pānis*, bread; *postis*, door-post; *torris*, fire-brand; *unguis*, nail; *vectis*, lever; *vermis*, worm.

*Common* are: *callis*, footpath; *canālis*, canal; *clūnis*, haunch; *corbis*, basket; *finis*, end; *rētis*, net (also *rēte*, n.); *sentis* (usually pl.), bramble; *scrobis*, ditch; *torquis* (es), necklace; *tōlēs* (pl.), gaiter; *veprēs* (pl.), bramble.

REMARK.—Of the names of animals in *-is*, some are masculine: *tigris*, tiger (fem. in poetry); *canis*, dog (also fem.); *piscis*, fish; others feminine: *apis*, bee; *avis*, bird; *ovis*, sheep; *fēlis*, cat (usually *fēlēs*).

2. Vowel stems, with Nominative in *-e*, *-al*, *-ar*, are neuter.

## 2. Vowel Stems in u.

59. Of stems in *u*, the *monosyllabic* stems, two in number, belong to the Third Declension.

SG.—N.	<i>grūs</i> , crane (f.)	PL.— <i>gruēs</i>
G.	<i>gruis</i>	<i>gruum</i>
D.	<i>grui</i>	<i>gruibus</i>
Ac.	<i>gruem</i>	<i>gruēs</i>
V.	<i>grūs</i>	<i>gruēs</i>
Ab.	<i>grue</i>	<i>gruibus</i> .

*Sūs*, swine (commonly f.), usually *subus*, in Dat. and Abl. Plural.

### TABLE OF NOMINATIVE AND GENITIVE ENDINGS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

The \* before the ending denotes that it occurs only in the one word cited.

## 60. A. NOMINATIVES ENDING WITH A LIQUID.

NOM.	GEN.		NOM.	GEN.	
-al	-āl-is	animal, animal.	-ār *	-arr-is	fār, spell.
	-āl-is	Hannibal, proper name.	-er	-er-is	ānser, goose.
-āl	*-āl-is	sāl, salt.		-r-is	pater, father.
-el	-ell-is	mel, honey.		*-iner-is	iter, journey.
-il	-il-is	pugil, boxer.	-ēr	*-ēr-is	vēr, spring.
	-il-is	Tanaquil, proper name.	-or	-ōr-is	color, colour.
-ōl	*-ōl-is	sōl, the sun.		-or-is	aequor, expanse.
-ul	-ul-is	cōnsul, consu.		*-ord-is	cor, heart.
-ēn	-ēn-is	rēnēs (pl.), kidneys.	-ur	-ur-is	fulgur, lightning
-ēn	-in-is	nōmen, name.		-or-is	robur, oak.
-ar	-āri-s	calcar, spur.	ūr	-ūr-is	fūr, thief
	-ari-s	nectar, nectar.			

## B. NOMINATIVES ENDING WITH S, OR X (cs, gs).

NOM.	GEN.		NOM.	GEN.			
-ās	*-ās-is	vās,	dish.	-ls	*-lt-is	puls,	porridge.
	*-ar-is	mās,	male.	-m(p)s	*-m-is	hiems,	winter.
	*ass-is	ās,	a copper.	-ns	-nd-is	frōns,	leafy branch.
	-āt-is	aetās.	age.		-nt-is	frōns,	forehead.
-as	*-ad-is	vas,	surety.	-rs	-rd-is	concors,	concordant.
	*-at-is	anas.	duck.		-rt-is	pars,	part.
-aes	*-aed-is	praes,	surety.	-bs	-b-is	urbs,	city.
	*aer-is	aes,	brass.	-ps	-p-is	stirps,	stalk.
-aus	-aud-is	fraus,	cheatery.	-eps	-ip-is	princeps,	chief.
-ēs	-is	nūbēs,	cloud.		*-up-is	auceps,	fowler.
	-ed-is	pēs,	foot.	-āx	-āc-is	pāx,	peace.
	*-er-is	Cerēs,	Ceres.	-ax	*-ac-is	fax,	torch.
	-et-is	abiēs,	fir.	-aex	-aec-is	faex,	dregs.
	-ēt-is	quiēs,	rest.	-aux	-auc-is	[faux,]	throat.
es	-et-is	seges,	crop.	-ex	-ec-is	nex,	death.
	-id-is	obses,	hostage.		-ic-is	iūdex,	judge.
	-it-is	miles,	soldier.		-eg-is	grex,	flock.
-is	-is	amnis,	river.		*-ig-is	rēmex,	rower.
	-id-is	lapis,	stone.	-ēx	*-ēc-is	allēx,	pickle.
	-in-is	sanguis,	blood.		*-ic-is	vībēx(īx),	weal.
	-er-is	cinis,	ashes.		-ēg-is	rēx,	king.
-is	*-it-is	lis,	suit at law.	-īx	-īc-is	cervīx,	neck.
	*-ir-is	glīs,	dormouse.	-ix	-ic-is	calix,	cup.
-ōs	*-ōd-is	cūstōs,	keeper.		*-ig-is	strix,	screech-owl.
	-ōr-is	flōs,	flower.		*-iv-is	nix,	snow.
	-ōt-is	cōs,	whetstone.	-ōx	-ōc-is	vōx,	voice.
	*-ov-is	bōs,	ox.	-ox	*-oc-is	praecox,	early-ripe.
-os	*-oss-is	os,	bone.		*-og-is	Allobrox,	Allobrogian.
-us	*-ud-is	pecus,	cattle, sheep.		*-oct-is	nox,	night.
	*-ur-is	Ligus,	a Ligurian.	-ux	-c-is	crux,	cross.
	-or-is	corpus,	body.		-ug-is	cōniux,	spouse.
	-er-is	scelus,	crime.	-ūx	-ūc-is	lūx,	light.
-ūs	-u-is	sūs,	swine.		-ūg-is	[frūx,]	fruit.
	-ūd-is	incūs,	anvil.	-lx	-lc-is	falx,	sickle.
	-ūr-is	iūs,	right.	-nx	-nc-is	lanx,	dish.
	-ūt-is	salūs,	weal.	-rx	-rc-is	arx,	citadel.

## C. NOMINATIVES ENDING WITH A MUTE.

-ac	*-act-is lac,	milk.	-ut	*-it-is caput,	head.
-ac	*-ēc-is allēc,	pickle (68, 12).			

## D. NOMINATIVES ENDING WITH A VOWEL.

-e	-i-s	mare, sea.
-o	-on-is	Saxo, Saxon.
-ō	-ōn-is	pāvō, peacock.
	-in-is	homō, man.
	*-n-is	carō, flesh.

## FOURTH DECLENSION.

61. The Fourth Declension embraces only dissyllabic and polysyllabic stems in **u**.

The endings are those of the Third Declension.

In the Genitive and Ablative Singular, and in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural (sometimes, too, in the Dative Singular), the **u** of the stem absorbs the vowel of the ending, and becomes long. In the Dative and Ablative Plural it is weakened to **i** before the ending **-bus**.

The Accusative Singular, as always in vowel stems, has the ending **-m**, without a connecting vowel (compare the Accusative in **-i-m** of the stems in **i**), hence **-u-m**.

MASCULINE.		NEUTER.	
SG.—N. <b>fructus</b> , <i>fruit.</i>	PL. <b>fructūs</b> ,	SG. <b>cornū</b> , <i>horn.</i>	PL. <b>cornua</b> ,
G. <b>fructūs</b> ,	<b>fructuum</b> ,	<b>cornūs</b> ,	<b>cornuum</b> ,
D. <b>fructui</b> ( <b>fructū</b> ),	<b>fructibus</b> ,	<b>cornū</b> ,	<b>cornibus</b> ,
Ac. <b>fructum</b> ,	<b>fructūs</b> ,	<b>cornū</b> ,	<b>cornua</b> ,
V. <b>fructus</b> ,	<b>fructūs</b> ,	<b>cornū</b> ,	<b>cornua</b> ,
Ab. <b>fructū</b> .	<b>fructibus</b> .	<b>cornū</b> .	<b>cornibus</b> .

REMARKS.—1. *Dat. Abl.* The original form **-u-bus** is retained always in **acus**, **arcus**, **quercus**, **tribus**, and in classical times in **partus**. But **artus**, **genu**, **lacus**, **portus**, **specus**, **tonitrū**, **verū**, have both forms.

2. **Domus**, *house*, is declined : G. **domu-os** (archaic), **domu-is** and **domī** (early), **domu-us** (late), **domūs**. D. **domō** (early), **domui**. Ac. **domum**. V. **domus**. Ab. **dom-ū** (sporadic), **domō**. Loc. **domī**. Pl. N. **domūs**. G. **domōrum** (LUCR. always, VERG., FLOR.), **domuum** (late). D. Ab. **domibus**. Ac. **domōs**, **domūs**. Classical forms are those in black-faced type. A classical variant for **domī** (Loc.) is **domui**.

NOTES.—1. *Singular: Genitive.* In early inscriptions we find the ending **-os**, as **senātuos**; and in early authors not infrequently **-is**, along with the contraction **-ūs** (**-uis**), which becomes the regular term in classical times. In inscriptions under the empire **-us** is occasionally found, as **exercituus**. The termination **-ī**, after the analogy of the Second Declension, is common in early Latin, and is still retained in some words even into the classical period; as **senātī** (CIC., SALL., LIVO), **tumultī** (SALL.).

2. *Dative.* In the early time **-uēi** is found very rarely for **-ui**. Also **ū**, as **senātū**, **fructū**, which became the only form for neuters. In classical times **-ū** in masc. and fem. is poetical only (CAESAR uses, however, **cāsū**, **exercitū**, **magistrātū**, **senātū**, **quaestū**), but extends to prose in the Augustan age and later.

3. *Plural: Nom., Acc., Voc.* In imperial inscriptions **-uus** occurs.

4. *Genitive.* The poets frequently contract **-uum** into **-um** for metrical reasons, and this usage was sometimes extended to prose (not by CICERO in common words), as **passūm** for **passuum**.

5. **Colus**, *distaff*, belongs properly to the Second Declension, but has variants : G. **colūs**, Ab. **colū**, Pl. N., Ac., **colūs**, from the Fourth.

**62. Rule of Gender.**—Substantives in **-us** are masculine ; those in **-ū** are neuter.

EXCEPTIONS.—*Feminines* are **acus**, *needle* (usually), **domus**, *house*, **idūs** (pl.), *the Ides*, **manus**, *hand*, **penus**, *viçtuals* (also m.), **porticus**, *piazza*, **quinqūatrūs** (pl.), *festival of Minerva*, **tribus**, *tribe*. Early and late Latin show some further variations.

## FIFTH DECLENSION.

**63.** The stem ends in **-ē** ; Nominative in **s**.

In the Genitive and Dative Singular **-ē** has been shortened after a consonant.

In the Accusative Singular we find always **ē**.

The ending in the Genitive Singular is that of the Second Declension, **-ī** ; the other endings are those of the Third.

	MASCULINE.		FEMININE.	
SG.—N.	<b>diēs</b> , <i>day</i> .	PL.— <b>diēs</b> ,	SG.— <b>rēs</b> , <i>thing</i> .	PL.— <b>rēs</b> ,
G.	<b>diēī</b> ,	<b>diērum</b> ,	<b>rei</b> ,	<b>rērum</b> ,
D.	<b>diēī</b> ,	<b>diēbus</b> ,	<b>rei</b> ,	<b>rēbus</b> ,
Ac.	<b>diem</b> ,	<b>diēs</b> ,	<b>rem</b> ,	<b>rēs</b> ,
V.	<b>diēs</b> ,	<b>diēs</b> ,	<b>rēs</b> ,	<b>rēs</b> ,
Ab.	<b>diē</b> .	<b>diēbus</b> .	<b>rē</b> .	<b>rēbus</b> .

REMARKS.—I. *Plural* : *Gen.*, *Dat.*, *Abl.* Common in but two substantives, **diēs**, **rēs**. Late Latin shows also **speciēbus**, and very rarely **spēbus** and **aciēbus**.

2. Many words of the Fifth Declension have a parallel form, which follows the First Declension, as **mollitiēs**, *softness*, and **mollitia**. Where this is the case, forms of the Fifth Declension are usually found only in the Nom., Acc., and Abl. Singular.

NOTES.—1. *Singular* : *Genitive*. The older ending **-ēs** is found sporadically in early Latin, but usually the ending **-ēī**, which became later **-ēi** after consonants, though early poets show numerous examples of **rēī**, **spēī**, **fidēī**. **ēī** was occasionally scanned as one syllable, whence arose the contraction **ē**, which is retained not unfrequently in the classical period ; so **aciē** (CAES., SALL.), **diē** (PL., CAES., SALL., LIVY, later), **fidē** (PL., HOR., OV., late Prose), and other less certain cases ; occurs very rarely, principally in early Latin (but **dii**, VERG., **perniciī**, CIC.). **Plēbēs**, in combination with **tribūnus**, **aedilis**, **scitum**, often shows a Gen. **plēbī** (**plēbēī**).

2. *Dative*. The contraction **-ē** is found, but less often than in the Gen. ; **acie** (SALL.) ; **diē**, **faciē** (early Latin) ; **fidē** (early Latin, CAES., SALL., LIVY), **perniciē** (LIVY), and a few other forms. The Dat. in **-ī** is found very rarely in early Latin.

**64. Rule of Gender.**—Substantives of the Fifth Declension are feminine except **diēs** (which in the Sing. is common, and in the Pl. masculine), and **meridiēs** (m.), *midday*.



## Declension of Greek Substantives.

65. Greek substantives, especially proper names, are commonly Latinised, and declined regularly according to their stem-characteristic. Many substantives, however, either retain their Greek form exclusively, or have the Greek and Latin forms side by side. These variations occur principally in the Singular, in the Plural the declension is usually regular.

## Singular Forms of Greek Substantives.

## First Declension.

N.	Pēnelopē,	Leōnidās,	Anchisēs,
G.	Pēnelopēs,	Leōnidae,	Anchisae,
D.	Pēnelopae,	Leōnidae,	Anchisae,
Ac.	Pēnelopēn,	Leōnidam, ān,	Anchisēn, am,
V.	Pēnelopē,	Leōnidā,	Anchisē, ā, ā,
Ab.	Pēnelopā,	Leōnidā.	Anchisā.

## Second Declension.

N.	Dēlos, us,	Īlion, um,	Panthūs,	Androgeōs, us,
G.	Dēli,	Īlii,	Panthi,	Androgei,
D.	Dēlō,	Īliō,	Panthō,	Androgeō,
Ac.	Dēlon, um,	Īlion, um,	Panthūn,	Androgeōn, ō, ōna
V.	Dēle,	Īlion, um,	Panthū,	Androgeōs,
Ab.	Dēlō.	Īliō.	Panthō.	Androgeō.

## Third Declension.

N.	Solōn, Solo,	āēr, air.	Xenophōn,	Atlās,
G.	Solōnis,	āeris,	Xenophōntis,	Atlantis,
D.	Solōni,	āeri,	Xenophōnti,	Atlanti,
Ac.	Solōna, em,	āera, em,	Xenophōnta, em,	Atlanta,
V.	Solōn,	āēr,	Xenophōn,	Atlā,
Ab.	Solōne.	āere.	Xenophōnte.	Atlante.

N.	Thalēs,	Paris,	hērōs, hero,
G.	Thalētis, -is,	Paridis, os,	hērōis,
D.	Thalēti, -i,	Paridi, i,	hērōi,
Ac.	Thalēta, -ēn, -em,	Par-ida, -im, -in,	hērōa, em,
V.	Thalē,	Pari, Paris,	hērōs,
Ab.	Thalē.	Paride.	hērōe.

## Mixed Declensions.

	II. III.		II. III.		II. III.
N.	Orphēūs,		Athōs,		Oedipūs,
G.	Orpheī, ēi,		Athō, ōnis,		Oedip-odis, -ī,
D.	Orpheō,		Athō,		Oedipodī,
Ac.	Orpheum, ea,		Athō, ōn, ōnem,		Oedip-um, -oda,
V.	Orphēū,		Athōs,		Oedipe,
Ab.	Orpheō.		Athōne.		Oedip-ode, -ō.

	II. III.	II. III.	III. IV.
N.	<b>Achillēs, eus,</b>	<b>Sōcratēs,</b>	<b>Didō,</b>
G.	<b>Achillis, ei, ī, eōs,</b>	<b>Sōcratis, ī,</b>	<b>Didūs, ōnis,</b>
D.	<b>Achilli,</b>	<b>Sōcratī,</b>	<b>Didō, ōnī,</b>
Ac.	<b>Achillem, ea, ēn,</b>	<b>Sōcratēn, em,</b>	<b>Didō, ōnem,</b>
V.	<b>Achillēs, ē, ēū, e,</b>	<b>Sōcratē, es,</b>	<b>Didō,</b>
Ab.	<b>Achille, ē, ī.</b>	<b>Sōcrate.</b>	<b>Didō, ōne.</b>

REMARKS.—I. In the Gen. Pl. **-ōn** and **-eōn** are found in the titles of books ; as, **Geōrgicōn, Metamorphōseōn.**

2. Many Greek names, of the Third Declension in Latin, pass over into the First Declension in the Plural ; as, **Thūcŷdidās, Hyperīdāe,** and many names in **-cratēs** ; as **Sōcratēs** ; Pl., **Sōcratae** (also **Sōcratēs**).

3. In transferring Greek words into Latin, the Accusative Singular was sometimes taken as the stem :

So **κρατήρ, Acc. κρατήρα, (punch) bowl.**

**crātēr, crātēris** (masc.), and **crātēra** (crēterra) **crātērae** (fem.).

**Σαλαμίς, Acc. Σαλαμίνα, Salamis.**

**Salamis, Salaminis, and Salamīna, ae.**

**66. NOTES.**—1. *Singular : Genitive.* The Greek termination **οο** (οο) appears rarely in early Latin, but **ū** (ου) is more frequent, especially in geographical names, *etc.* The termination **-os** (ος) is rare except in feminine patronymics in **-is, -as.** (G. **-idos, -ados**).

2. *Dative.* The ending **-ī** is very rare ; and rarer still is the Dat. in **-ō** from feminines in **-ō,** and Dat. in **-y** from Nominatives in **-ys.**

3. *Accusative.* **-a** is the most common termination in the Third Declension, and is found regularly in some words otherwise Latinised ; as **āera, aethera.** Stems in **-ō** usually have **-ō,** very rarely **-ōn.**

4. *Plural.* In the Second Declension **oe** is found occasionally in the Nom., in early Latin ; as, **adelphoe.** The Third Declension shows frequently **ēs** in the Nom. and **ās** in the Accusative ; also occasionally **ē** in the Nom. and Acc. of neuters, and **-si** (but only in the poets) in the Dative.

5. For other peculiarities, not observable in the paradigms, the dictionaries should be consulted. Sometimes the forms are merely transliterations of Greek cases.

## IRREGULAR SUBSTANTIVES.

### 1. Redundant Substantives. (Abundantia.)

**67. A. Heterogeneous Substantives,** or those whose gender varies :

i. The variation occurs in several cases in either number or in both.

<b>abrotonum,</b>	<b>-us,</b>	<b>a plant (rare),</b>	<b>clipeus,</b>	<b>-um,</b>	<b>shield,</b>
<b>aevom (um),</b>	<b>-us,</b>	<b>age,</b>	<b>collum,</b>	<b>-us,</b>	<b>neck,</b>
<b>baculum,</b>	<b>-us,</b>	<b>staff,</b>	<b>costum,</b>	<b>-us,</b>	<b>a plant (rare),</b>
<b>balteus,</b>	<b>-um,</b>	<b>girdle,</b>	<b>forum,</b>	<b>-us,</b>	<b>market,</b>
<b>buxus,</b>	<b>-um,</b>	<b>box-wood (rare),</b>	<b>gladius,</b>	<b>-um,</b>	<b>sword,</b>
<b>[calamister],</b>	<b>-um,</b>	<b>curling-iron (rare),</b>	<b>intibus,</b>	<b>-um,</b>	<b>succory (rare),</b>
<b>cāseus,</b>	<b>-um,</b>	<b>cheese,</b>	<b>iugulum,</b>	<b>-us,</b>	<b>collar-bone,</b>
<b>cavom (um),</b>	<b>-us,</b>	<b>cavity,</b>	<b>nardum,</b>	<b>-us,</b>	<b>nard (rare),</b>
<b>cingulum,</b>	<b>-us,</b>	<b>belt,</b>	<b>nāsus,</b>	<b>-um,</b>	<b>nose,</b>

palātum,	-us,	palate,	thēsauros,	-um,	treasure,
pilleus,	-um,	cap,	uterus,	-um,	womb,
sagum,	-us,	cloak,	vāllus,	-um,	palisade,
tergum,	-us,	back,	and many others.		

2. The gender varies in Singular and Plural. *a.* The Plural has -a sometimes, while the Singular ends in -us (or -er) : *clivus*, *hill*, *iocus*, *jest*, *locus* (*loca*, *localities* ; *loci*, usually *passages in books, topics*), and many others, especially names of places.

*b.* The Plural has -i, while the Singular ends in -um : *filum*, *thread*, *frēnum*, *bit*, *rāstrum*, *hoe*, and many others.

68. *B. Heteroclitēs*, or substantives which show different stems with the same Nominative ; *Metaplasts*, or those which have certain forms from another than the Nominative stem.

1. 1st, 2d. *essedā*, -um, *chariot*, *margarita*, -um, *pearl*,  
*ostrea*, -um, *oyster*,
2. 1st, 5th. *dūritia*, -ēs, *hardness*, *māteria*, -ēs, *matter*,  
 and many others. See 63, R. 2.
3. 2d, 1st. *mendum*, -a, *fault*, *sertum*, -a, *wreath*.

The following form their Plural according to the First Declension only : *balneum*, *bath*, *dēlicium*, *pleasure*, *epulum*, *banquet*, *fulmentum*, *prop*.

4. 2d, 3d. *sequester*, *trustee*, *Mulciber*, *Vulcan*.

5. 2d, 4th. Many names of trees of the Second Declension have certain cases according to the Fourth ; never, however, the Gen. and Dat. Pl. and very rarely the Dat. Sing. ; as *cornus*, *cupressus*, *fāgus*, *ficus*, *laurus*, *myrtus*, *pīnus*, and a few others.

Also *angiportus*, *alley*, *colus*, *distaff*, *domus*, *house*, and a large number of substantives of the Fourth Declension which have one or two cases of the Second ; so *arcus* has G. *arci* ; *cōnātus* (-um), *iūssus* (-um), *vultus* have Nom. Pl. in a ; *senātus* has Gen. Sing. *senātī*. See 61, RR, NN.

Finally, some substantives of the Second Declension form individual cases according to the Fourth : *fāsti* (Ac. Pl. *fāstūs*), *fretum* (N. *fretus*, Ab. *fretū*), *lectus* (G. *lēcūs*), *tribūtum* (N. *tribūtus*), and others.

6. 2d, 5th. *diluvium*, -ēs, *flood*.

7. 3d, 2d. *Vās*, *vessel*, and *vāsum* ; *palumbes*, *pigeon*, and *palumbus* ; *iūger*, *acre*, and *iūgerum* ; all Greek nouns in -a (G. *atis*), as *poēma*, *poem* (G. *poēmatīs*), but Pl. Gen. *poēmatōrum*, Dat. Abl. *poēmatīs*.

8. 3d, 5th. *Fames*, *hunger*, *tābes*, *corruption*, have Abl. *famē*, *tābē* ; *requiēs*, *quiet* (G. -ētis) has Acc. *requiem*, Abl. *requiē* ; *satiās* (G. *ātis*) is early and late for *satiētās*, *sufficiency*, and a form *satiēs* is cited from late authors ; *plēbs* (G. *plēbis*), *commons*, and *plēbēs* (G. *plēbeī*).

9. 4th, 3d. *Specus*, *cave*, has occasionally forms of the Third Declension.

10. 2d, 3d, 1st. *Vesper*, *evening*, has Acc. *vesperum* ; Dat. Abl. *vesperō* ; Pl. Nom. *vespera* of the Second Declension ; Acc. *vesperam* ; Abl. *vesperā* of the First ; Gen. *vesperis* ; Abl. *vespere* ; Loc. *vespere*, *vesperi* of the Third.

11. 4th, 2d, 3d. *Penus*, *food*, (G. *ūs*). Forms of the Second Declension are rare, of the Third early and late.

12. Variations in the same Declension : *femur* (G. *femoris*, *feminis*, *etc.*) ; *iecur* (G. *iecoris*, *iecinoris*, *etc.*) ; *pecus*, early, also *pecu* (G. *pecoris*, *pecudis*, *etc.*)

Also *āllēc* and *āllēx*, *baccar* and *baccaris*, *cassis* and *cassida*, *lac* and *lacte* (early), *pānis* and *pāne* (early), *rēte* and *rētis*, *satiās* and *satiētās*.

## II. Defective Substantives.

## I. SUBSTANTIVES DEFECTIVE IN NUMBER.

69. A. Substantives used in Singular only : **Singulāria tantum.**

Most abstract substantives, and names of materials ; such as

<b>iūstitia,</b>	<i>justice,</i>	<b>aurum,</b>	<i>gold.</i>
------------------	-----------------	---------------	--------------

B. Substantives used in Plural only : **Plūrālia tantum.**

<b>altāria, ium,</b>	<i>altar (sing. late).</i>	<b>insidiae,</b>	<i>ambuscade.</i>
<b>ambāgēs,</b>	<i>round about.</i>	<b>lactēs,</b>	<i>intestines.</i>
<b>angustiae,</b>	<i>straits.</i>	<b>lāmenta,</b>	<i>lamentations.</i>
<b>antae,</b>	<i>door-posts.</i>	<b>lautomiae,</b>	<i>stone-quarries.</i>
<b>antēs,</b>	<i>roues (of vines).</i>	<b>liberī,</b>	<i>children.</i>
<b>arma, ōrum,</b>	<i>arms.</i>	<b>mānēs,</b>	<i>shades of the dead.</i>
<b>armāmenta, ōrum,</b>	<i>tackle.</i>	<b>manubiae,</b>	<i>spoils.</i>
<b>bellāria, ōrum,</b>	<i>dessert.</i>	<b>minae,</b>	<i>threats.</i>
<b>bigae, quadrigae,</b>	<i>two-horse, four-horse chariot (sing. late).</i>	<b>moenia, ium,</b>	<i>town-wall.</i>
<b>cancelli,</b>	<i>lattice.</i>	<b>nūndinae (-num),</b>	<i>market.</i>
<b>cassēs,</b>	<i>toils (snare).</i>	<b>nūptiae,</b>	<i>wedding.</i>
<b>caulae,</b>	<i>opening.</i>	<b>palpebrae,</b>	<i>eyelids (sing. late).</i>
<b>cervicēs,</b>	<i>neck (sing. early, late, and poet.).</i>	<b>parentālia,</b>	<i>festival for dead rela- tions.</i>
<b>cibāria,</b>	<i>vituals.</i>	<b>parietinae,</b>	<i>ruins.</i>
<b>claustrum,</b>	<i>lock (sing. late).</i>	<b>penātēs,</b>	<i>the Penates.</i>
<b>clitellae,</b>	<i>pack-saddle.</i>	<b>phalerae,</b>	<i>trappings.</i>
<b>cōdicilli,</b>	<i>a short note.</i>	<b>praecordia, ōrum,</b>	<i>diaphragm.</i>
<b>compedēs,</b>	<i>fetters.</i>	<b>praestrigiae,</b>	<i>jugglers' tricks.</i>
<b>crepundia, ōrum,</b>	<i>rattle.</i>	<b>precēs, -um,</b>	<i>prayer.</i>
<b>cūnae,</b>	<i>cradle.</i>	<b>primitiae,</b>	<i>first-fruits.</i>
<b>dīvitiae,</b>	<i>riches.</i>	<b>quisquiliae,</b>	<i>rubbish.</i>
<b>dūmēta, ōrum,</b>	<i>thorn-bush.</i>	<b>reliquiae,</b>	<i>remains.</i>
<b>epulae (epulum),</b>	<i>banquet.</i>	<b>rēnēs,</b>	<i>kidneys.</i>
<b>excupiae,</b>	<i>watching.</i>	<b>salinae,</b>	<i>salt-pits.</i>
<b>exsequiae,</b>	<i>funeral procession.</i>	<b>scālae,</b>	<i>stairway.</i>
<b>exta, ōrum.</b>	<i>the internal organs.</i>	<b>sentēs,</b>	<i>brambles.</i>
<b>exuviae,</b>	<i>equipments.</i>	<b>spolia, ōrum,</b>	<i>spoils (sing. late, and poet.).</i>
<b>facētia,</b>	<i>witticism (sing. ear- ly and late).</i>	<b>spōnsālia, ium,</b>	<i>hetrotthal.</i>
<b>fāstī (fāstūs),</b>	<i>calendar.</i>	<b>suppetiae,</b>	<i>succor (early and late).</i>
<b>faucēs,</b>	<i>gullet.</i>	<b>tālāria, ium,</b>	<i>winged sandals.</i>
<b>fēriae,</b>	<i>holidays.</i>	<b>tenebrae,</b>	<i>darkness.</i>
<b>flābra,</b>	<i>breezes.</i>	<b>thermae,</b>	<i>warm baths.</i>
<b>forēs,</b>	<i>door (sing. early, late and poet.).</i>	<b>tōnsillae,</b>	<i>tonsils.</i>
<b>frāga, ōrum,</b>	<i>strawberries.</i>	<b>tormina,</b>	<i>colic.</i>
<b>grātēs,</b>	<i>thanks.</i>	<b>trīcae,</b>	<i>tricks.</i>
<b>hiberna,</b>	<i>winter quarters.</i>	<b>ūtēnsilia, ium,</b>	<i>necessaries.</i>
<b>īdūs, Kalendae,</b>	<i>Ides, Calends,</i>	<b>valvae,</b>	<i>folding-doors.</i>
<b>Nōnae,</b>	<i>Nones.</i>	<b>verbera, um,</b>	<i>scourging (sing. poet. and late).</i>
<b>incūnābula,</b>	<i>swaddling-clothes.</i>	<b>vindiciae,</b>	<i>a legal claim.</i>
<b>indūtiae,</b>	<i>truce.</i>	<b>virgulta, ōrum,</b>	<i>shrubby.</i>
<b>inferiae,</b>	<i>sacrifices for the dead.</i>	<b>vīscera,</b>	<i>entrails (sing. poet. and late).</i>

NOTES.—1. Four of these have the Abl. Sing. in *-e*: *ambāge*, *compede*, *fauce*, *prece*.

2. Names of persons or towns, and collectives and the like, may be either *singulāria tantum*, as *Iūppiter*; *Rōma*; *capillus*, *hair*; or *plūrālia tantum*, as *māiōrēs*, *ancestors*; *Quiritēs*; *liberī*, *children*; *pulmōnēs*, *lungs*. Many of these are not included in the above list, which is meant to contain only the principal forms.

Akin to *plūrālia tantum* are :

C. Substantives used in Plural with a special sense : *Heterologa*.

<i>aedēs</i> , is,	<i>temple</i> (better <i>aedis</i> ),	<i>aedēs</i> ,	<i>house, palace.</i>
<i>aqua</i> ,	<i>water</i> ,	<i>aquae</i> ,	<i>mineral springs.</i>
<i>auxilium</i> ,	<i>help</i> ,	<i>auxilia</i> ,	<i>auxiliaries, reinforcements.</i>
<i>carcer</i> ,	<i>prison</i> ,	<i>carcerēs</i> ,	<i>barriers.</i>
<i>castrum</i> ,	<i>fort</i> ,	<i>castra</i> ,	<i>camp.</i>
<i>cēra</i> ,	<i>wax</i> ,	<i>cērae</i> ,	<i>waxen tablets.</i>
<i>comitium</i> ,	<i>place of assemblage</i> ,	<i>comitia</i> ,	<i>assemblage for voting.</i>
<i>cōpia</i> ,	<i>abundance</i> ,	<i>cōpiae</i> ,	<i>forces, troops.</i>
<i>dēlicium</i> ,	<i>pleasure</i> ,	<i>dēliciae</i> ,	<i>pet.</i>
<i>facultās</i> ,	<i>capability</i> ,	<i>facultātēs</i> ,	<i>goods.</i>
<i>finis</i> ,	<i>end, limit</i> ,	<i>finēs</i> ,	<i>territory, borders.</i>
<i>fortūna</i> ,	<i>fortune</i> ,	<i>fortūnae</i> ,	<i>possessions.</i>
<i>habēna</i> ,	<i>strap</i> ,	<i>habēnae</i> ,	<i>reins.</i>
<i>impedimentum</i> ,	<i>hindrance</i> ,	<i>impedimenta</i> ,	<i>baggage.</i>
<i>littera</i> ,	<i>letter</i> (of the alphabet),	<i>litterae</i> ,	<i>epistle, literature.</i>
<i>lūdus</i> ,	<i>game, school</i> ,	<i>lūdī</i> ,	<i>public games.</i>
<i>opera</i> ,	<i>work</i> ,	<i>operae</i> ,	<i>workmen.</i>
<i>pars</i> ,	<i>part</i> ,	<i>partēs</i> ,	<i>also role.</i>
<i>rōstrum</i> ,	<i>beak</i> ,	<i>rōstra</i> ,	<i>the tribunal at Rome.</i>
<i>sors</i> ,	<i>lot</i> ,	<i>sortēs</i> ,	<i>also oracle.</i>
<i>tabula</i> ,	<i>board, tablet</i> ,	<i>tabulae</i> ,	<i>also accounts.</i>
<i>vigilia</i> ,	<i>a night-watch</i> ,	<i>vigiliae</i> ,	<i>pickets.</i>

## 2. SUBSTANTIVES DEFECTIVE IN CASE.

70. A. Substantives occurring in only one case : Gen. *dicis*, *form*; Acc. *infitiās* (*fre*, *to be*; *pessum fre*), (*too perish*); Abl. *pondō*, *in weight*; *sponte*, *of free will*; *tābō*, *corruption* (Gen. *late*), and many verbals in *ū*, as *accitū*, *admonitū*, *arcessitū*, *coactū*, *compressū*, *concessū*, *domitū*, *inductū*, *interpositū*, *invitatū*, *iussū* (other forms *late*), *iniussū*, *mandatū*, *missū*, *nātū*, *permissū*, *prōmptū*, *rogātū*. A few others occur occasionally in ante-classical and post-classical Latin.

B. Substantives with only two cases : *fās*, *nefās*, Sing. N. Ac.; *īnstar*, Sing. N. Ac.; *interneciō*, Sing. Ac. Ab.; *naucum*, Sing. G. Ac.; *secus*, Sing. N. Ac.; *spīnter*, Sing. N. Ac.; *suppetiae*, Plur. N. Ac., and a few others. Some verbals in *-us* have in Plural only Nom. and Acc., as *impetūs*, *monitūs*. Greek neuters in *-os* have only Nom. and Acc. Singular.

C. Substantives with three cases : *faex*, Sing. N., D., Plur. Ab.; *vīrus*, *slime*; Sing. N., G., Ab.

D. Defective substantives with more than three cases are numerous, but in the classical period the most important are : *calx*, *lime*, *cōs*, *daps*, *dica*, *diciō*, *flūmen*, *blood*, *forum*, *frūx*, *indāgo*, *later*, *lūx*, *ops*, *ōs*, *month*, *pāx*, *rēmex*, *vīs*, *vix*, and most substantives of the Fifth Declension. The Nominatives in brackets do not occur, but only oblique cases.

E. *Nēmō*, *nobody*, substantives for Gen. and Abl. *nūllius hominis*, and *nūllō homine*. In the Dat. and Acc. it is normal : *nēmīnī*, *nēmīnem*.



## 71.

## III. Peculiarities.

ās, assis (m.), *a copper.*auceps, aucupis, *fowler.*bōs (for bovs), bovis (c.), *ox, cow.*

G. Pl. boum.

D. Ab. būbus, bōbus.

caput, capitis (n.), *head.*anceps, ancipitis, *two-headed.*praeceps, -cipitis, *headlong.*carō, carnis (f.), *flesh.*

Pl. G. carnium.

Cērēs, Cereris, *Ceres.*fār, farris (n.) *spell.*fel, fellis (n.), *gall.*femur, femoris (n.), *thigh.*

feminis.

iter, itineris (n.), *way, route.*iecur, iecoris (n.), *liver.*

iecinoris, iecinoris, iocineris,

Iūppiter, Iovis.

mel, mellis (n.), *honey.*nix, nivis (f.), *snow.*os, ossis (n.), *bone (48 R.).*ōs, ōris (n.), *mouth.*pollis, pollinis (m.), *flour.*sanguis, sanguinis (m.), *blood.*senex, senis, *old man.*supellēx, supellēctilis (f.), *furniture.*Venus, Veneris, *Venus.*

## ADJECTIVES.

72. The adjective adds a quality to the substantive. Adjectives have the same declension as substantives, and according to the stem-characteristic are of the First and Second, or Third Declension.

## Adjectives of the First and Second Declension.

73. Stems in -o for masculine and neuter, -a for feminine; nominative in -us, -a, -um; (er), -a, -um. The same variations in termination occur as in the substantives; except that adjectives in -ius form Singular Genitive and Vocative regularly. See 33, R. 1 and 2.

Bonus, bona, bonum, *good.*

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Sg.—N.	bonus,	bona,	bonum.	PL.—bonī,	bonae,	bona.
G.	bonī,	bonae,	bonī.	bonōrum,	bonārum,	bonōrum.
D.	bonō,	bonae,	bonō.	bonīs,	bonīs,	bonīs.
Ac.	bonum,	bonam,	bonum.	bonōs,	bonās,	bona.
V.	bone,	bona,	bonum.	bonī,	bonae,	bona.
Ab.	bonō,	bonā,	bonō.	bonīs,	bonīs,	bonīs.

Miser, misera, miserum, *wretched.*

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Sg.—N.	miser,	misera,	miserum.	PL.—miserī,	miserae,	misera.
G.	miserī,	miserae,	miserī.	miserōrum,	miserārum,	miserōrum.
D.	miserō,	miserae,	miserō.	miserīs,	miserīs,	miserīs.
Ac.	miserum,	miseram,	miserum.	miserōs,	miserās,	misera.
V.	miser,	misera,	miserum.	miserī,	miserae,	misera.
Ab.	miserō,	miserā,	miserō.	miserīs,	miserīs,	miserīs.

Piger, pigra, pigrum, *slow*.

Sg.—N.	piger,	pigra,	pigrum.	Pl.—pigrī,	pigrae,	pigra.
G.	pigrī,	pigrae,	pigrī.	pigrōrum,	pigrārum,	pigrōrum.
D.	pigrō,	pigrae,	pigrō.	pigrīs,	pigrīs,	pigrīs.
Ac.	pigrum,	pigram,	pigrum.	pigrōs,	pigrās,	pigra.
V.	piger,	pigra,	pigrum.	pigrī,	pigrae,	pigra.
Ab.	pigrō,	pigrā,	pigrō.	pigrīs,	pigrīs,	pigrīs.

REMARK.—For irregularities in the declension of *ambō*, *both*, *duo*, *two*, see 95 ; for *meus*, *my*, see 100, R. 1.

74. Stems in *-ro* follow the same principle in the formation of the Nominative masculine as the substantives, except that *-us* is retained in *ferus*, *wild*, *properus*, *quick*, *praeproperus*, *praeposterus*, *absurd*, *īferus*, *lower* (*īfer* is early), *superus*, *upper* (*super* is early), and a few others in late Latin ; also when *-ro* is preceded by a long vowel : as, *austērus*, *harsh*, *mātūrus*, *early*, *prōcērus*, *tall*, *pūrus*, *pure*, *sevērus*, *serious*, *sincērus*, *sincere*, *sērus*, *late*, *vērus*, *true*.

REMARKS.—1. *Dextera*, *dexterum*, *etc.*, *right*, are found side by side with *dextra*, *dextrum*, *etc.*, throughout the language (see 8, 2). CAESAR uses only the shorter form.

2. A few adjectives of this class lack the Nom. Sing. wholly or in part : so there is no *cēterus* or *posterus* in the classical period.

75. NOTES ON THE CASES.—1. The Gen. Sing. in *-ī* from adjectives in *-ius* occurs occasionally in inscriptions and in late authors. The Gen. Sing. fem. in early Latin had sometimes *āī*, and in inscriptions occasionally *-aes* and *-es*.

2. The Dat. Sing. fem. in early Latin occasionally ended in *-āī*, and in the oldest inscriptions in *-ā*.

3. In early inscriptions the *-d* of the Abl. is occasionally retained.

4. Very rarely in early inscriptions does the Nom. Pl. masc. end in *-ēis*, and in one case the Nom. Pl. fem. of a perfect participle ends in *-āī*.

5. In poetry, but at all periods, we find *-um* alongside of *-ōrum* and *-ērum* in the Gen. Plural.

6. In the Dat. and Abl. Pl. *-iis* from adjectives in *-ius* is often contracted to *-is* ; usually in names of months and in adjectives formed from proper names. In early inscriptions *-ābus* is found occasionally for *-is* in the Dat. and Abl. Pl. feminine.

76. The so-called pronominal adjectives *alter*, *one of the two* ; *alteruter* (a combination of *alter* and *uter*), *either of the two* ; *alius*, *other* ; *neuter*, *neither* ; *nūllus*, *none* ; *sōlus*, *sole* ; *tōtus*, *whole* ; *ūllus*, *any* ; *ūnus*, *one* ; *uter*, *which of the two*, and their compounds, show the following variations in declension :

1. They usually make the Gen. Sing. in **-ius** for all genders.

REMARKS.—1. The Gen. **alīus** is very rare, and as a possessive its place is usually taken by **aliēnus**.

2. The **i** of the ending **-ius** (except in **alīus**) could be shortened in poetry. This was usually the case with **alter**, and regularly in the compounds of **uter**; as, **utriusque**.

NOTE.—The regular forms are early and rare; in classical prose only **nālli** (Cic. *Rosc. Com.* 16, 48) and occasionally **aliae**.

2. They usually make the Dat. Sing. in **-i**.

NOTE.—Regular forms are sometimes found, but in classical prose only **alterae**, **nāllō**, **tōtō**, and perhaps **tōtae**. **Alī** is found in early Latin for **alī**.

3. In the compound **alteruter** we find usually both parts declined; sometimes the second only.

4. **Alius** makes Nom. and Acc. Sing. neuter irregularly: **aliud**.

NOTE.—**Alis** and **alid**, for **alius** and **aliud**, are early and rare; the latter, however occurs several times in **Lucr.** and once in **Catullus**.

### Adjectives of the Third Declension.

77. The declension of the adjectives of the Third Declension follows the rules given for the substantives.

Most adjectives of the Third Declension are vowel stems in **-i**, with two (rarely three) endings in the Nominative.

The remaining adjectives of the Third Declension are consonant stems and have one ending only in the Nominative.

### ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS.

78. 1. These have (except stems in **-ri**) one ending in the Nominative for masculine and feminine, one for neuter.

Most stems in **-i** form the masculine and feminine alike, with Nominative in **s**; but the Nominative neuter weakens the characteristic **i** into **e**. (Compare **mare**, *sea*.)

2. Several stems in **-i**, preceded by **r** (**cr**, **tr**, **br**), form the Nominative masculine, not by affixing **s**, but by dropping the **i** and inserting short **e** before the **r**, as, stem **ācri**, *sharp*, Nom., **ācer** (m.), **ācris** (f.), **ācre** (n.).

These adjectives are **ācer**, **alacer**, **campester**, **celeber**, **celer**, **equester**, **palūster**, **pedester**, **puter**, **salūber**, **silvester**, **terrester**, **volucer**, and the last four months; and are sometimes called adjectives of *three endings*.

The **e** belongs to the stem in **celer**, **celeris**, **celere**, *swift*, and therefore appears in all cases.

	M. and F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Sg.—N.	facilis, <i>easy</i> .	facile,	ācer, <i>sharp</i> .	ācris,	ācre,
G.	facilis,	facilis,	ācris,	ācris,	ācris,
D.	facili,	facili,	ācri,	ācri,	ācri,
Ac.	facilem,	facile,	ācrem,	ācrem,	ācre,
V.	facilis,	facile,	ācer,	ācris,	ācre,
Ab.	facili.	facili.	ācri.	ācri.	ācri.
Pl.—N.	facilēs,	facilia,	ācrēs,	ācrēs,	ācria,
G.	facilium,	facilium,	ācrium,	ācrium,	ācrium,
D.	facilibus,	facilibus,	ācribus,	ācribus,	ācribus,
Ac.	facilēs (is),	facilia,	ācrēs (is),	ācrēs (is),	ācria,
V.	facilēs,	facilia,	ācrēs,	ācrēs,	ācria,
Ab.	facilibus.	facilibus.	ācribus.	ācribus.	ācribus.

REMARK.—Stems in -āli and -āri differ from the substantival declension in not suffering apocope in the Nom. Sing. neuter, except occasionally **capital**. See 56.

79. REMARKS.—I. Many adjectives of two endings (except stems in -ri) have also -e in the Ablative. This is found chiefly in the poets, very rarely, if ever, in classical prose, occasionally in early and pre-Augustan prose, and more often in inscriptions. When, however, these adjectives become proper names, -e is the rule. See 57, R. 2, N.

2. The Gen. Pl. in -um is found occasionally in inscriptions, frequently in the poets. In classical prose are found only **Titiēnsūm** and **familiārum**.

NOTES.—1. The Nom. Pl. has in early Latin not unfrequently -**is**.

2. In the Acc. Pl., masc. and fem., of adjectives, the ending -**is** (**ēis**) is found alongside of -**ēs** in every period of the language, though in decreasing proportion, and after the Augustan period principally in **omnis**.

#### ADJECTIVES OF ONE ENDING.

80. Adjective stems of one ending (consonant stems) close with l, r, s, a p mute, a k mute, or a t mute. Examples are :

vigil, *alert*, memor, *mindful*, pauper, *poor*. cicur, *luna*, pūbēs, *adult*, vetus, *old*,  
vigilis. memoris. pauperis. cicuris. pūberis. veteris.

particeps, *sharing*, caelebs, *unmarried*, inops, *poor*  
participis. caelibis. inopis.

audāx, *bold*, fēlix, *lucky*, duplex, *double*, ferōx, *fierce*, trux, *savage*  
audācis. fēlicis. duplicis. ferōcis. trucis.

dīves, *rich*, dēses, *slutful*, compos, *possessed of*, prūdēs, *wise*, concors, *harmonious*,  
dīvitis. dēsidis. compotis. prūdentis. concordia.

Present active participles are also consonant stems and follow the same declension.

### 81. The stem varieties are :

1. Liquid stems in (a) **-l**: **vigil** (G. **vigil-is**), *alert*, **pervigil**; (b) **-r**: **pār** (G. **par-is**), *equal*, **impār** (these two lengthen the vowel in the Nom.), **compar**, and three others; **pauper** (G. **pauper-is**), *poor*, **über**; **memor** (G. **memor-is**), *mindful*, **immemor**; **concolor** (G. **-ōr-is**), and three other compounds of **color**; **dēgener** (G. **-er-is**), from **genus** (G. **gener-is**).

2. Sibilant stems in (a) **-s**: **exos** (G. **exoss-is**), *boneless* (LUCR.); (b) **-r**: **gnārus** (G. **gnārur-is**; PLAUT.), **Ligus**, **vetus**; **pūbēs** (G. **pūber-is**), **impūbēs**.

3. Mute stems in (a) a K-mute : **audāx** (G. **audāc-is**), *bold*, and four others; **fēlix** (G. **fēlic-is**), **pernix**, **atrōx** (G. **atrōc-is**), **ferōx**, **vēlōx**; **exlēx** (G. **-lēg-is**); **trux** (G. **truc-is**), **redux**; the multiplicatives in **-plex** (G. **-plic-is**), as **simplex**, *etc.* (b) A P-mute : **inops** (G. **inop-is**); **caelebs** (G. **caelib-is**); compounds of **-ceps** (G. **-cip-is**, from **capere**), as **particeps**, and of **-ceps** (G. **-cipit-is**, from **caput**), as **anceps**, **praeceps** (PLAUT. sometimes uses, in the Nom., **ancipes**, **praecipēs**, *etc.*). (c) A T-mute : **hebes** (G. **hebet-is**) and three others; **locuplēs** (G. **-plēt-is**) and three others; **dives** (G. **divit-is**), for which in poetry **dis** (G. **dit-is**), **sōspes**; **compos** (G. **compot-is**), **impos**; **superstes** (G. **-sti-tis**), **āles**; **exhērēs** (G. **ēd-is**); **dēses** (G. **dēsid-is**), **reses**; compounds from substantives : **cōnsors** (G. **-sort-is**), **exsors**; **concors**, **discors**, **misericors**, **sōcors**, **vēcors**; **expers** (G. **-ert-is**), **iners**, **sollers**; **āmēns** (G. **āment-is**), **dēmēns**; **intercus** (G. **cut-is**); **pernox** (G. **-noct-is**); **bipēs** (G. **-ped-is**), **quadrupēs**, **ālīpēs**; adjectives and participles in **-āns**, **-ēns** (G. **-ant-is**, **-ent-is**); and proper names in **-ās** (G. **āt-is**), **-is** (G. **-it-is**), **-ns** (G. **-nt-is**), **-rs** (G. **-rt-is**), **Arpīnās**, **Samnīs**, **Veiēns**, **Camers**.

82. The consonant stems have the same forms in all the genders, except that in the Accusative Singular, and in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural, the neuter is distinguished from the masculine and feminine.

In the oblique cases they follow in part the declension of vowel stems ; thus,

1. In the Ablative Singular they have **ī** and **e**—when used as adjectives commonly **ī**; when used as substantives commonly **e**.

The participles, as such, have **e**; but used as substantives or adjectives, either **e** or **ī**, with tendency to **ī**.

2. In the neuter Plural they have **ia**; except **vetus**, *old*, which has **vetera**. Many have no neuter.

3. In the Genitive Plural they have : **ium**, when the stem-characteristic is preceded by a long vowel or a consonant; **um**, when the characteristic is preceded by a short vowel. The participles have **ium**.



	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
Sg.—N.	<i>fēlix, lucky.</i>	<i>fēlix,</i>	<i>prūdēns, wise.</i>	<i>prūdēns,</i>	<i>vetus, old.</i>	<i>vetus,</i>
G.	<i>fēlicis,</i>	<i>fēlicis,</i>	<i>prudentis,</i>	<i>prudentis,</i>	<i>veteris,</i>	<i>veteris,</i>
D.	<i>fēlici,</i>	<i>fēlici,</i>	<i>prudenti,</i>	<i>prudenti,</i>	<i>veteri,</i>	<i>veteri,</i>
Ac	<i>fēlicem,</i>	<i>fēlix,</i>	<i>prudentem,</i>	<i>prūdēns,</i>	<i>veterem,</i>	<i>vetus,</i>
V.	<i>fēlix,</i>	<i>fēlix,</i>	<i>prūdēns,</i>	<i>prūdēns,</i>	<i>vetus,</i>	<i>vetus,</i>
Ab.	<i>fēlici (e)</i>	<i>fēlici (e)</i>	<i>prudenti (e)</i>	<i>prudenti (e)</i>	<i>veterē (i)</i>	<i>veterē (i)</i>
Pl.—N.	<i>fēlicēs.</i>	<i>fēlicia,</i>	<i>prudentēs,</i>	<i>prudentia,</i>	<i>veterēs,</i>	<i>vetera,</i>
G.	<i>fēlicium,</i>	<i>fēlicium,</i>	<i>prudentium,</i>	<i>prudentium,</i>	<i>veterum,</i>	<i>veterum,</i>
D.	<i>fēlicibus,</i>	<i>fēlicibus,</i>	<i>prudentibus,</i>	<i>prudentibus,</i>	<i>veteribus,</i>	<i>veteribus,</i>
Ac	<i>fēlicēs,</i>	<i>fēlicia,</i>	<i>prudentēs,</i>	<i>prudentia,</i>	<i>veterēs,</i>	<i>vetera,</i>
V.	<i>fēlicēs,</i>	<i>fēlicia,</i>	<i>prudentēs,</i>	<i>prudentia,</i>	<i>veterēs,</i>	<i>vetera,</i>
Ab	<i>fēlicibus,</i>	<i>fēlicibus.</i>	<i>prudentibus,</i>	<i>prudentibus.</i>	<i>veteribus,</i>	<i>veteribus.</i>
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.		
Sg.—N	<i>amāns, loving.</i>	<i>amāns,</i>	Pl. <i>amantēs,</i>	<i>amantia,</i>		
G.	<i>amantis,</i>	<i>amantis,</i>	<i>amantium,</i>	<i>amantium,</i>		
D	<i>amanti,</i>	<i>amanti,</i>	<i>amantibus,</i>	<i>amantibus,</i>		
Ac	<i>amantem,</i>	<i>amāns,</i>	<i>amantēs (is),</i>	<i>amantia,</i>		
V.	<i>amāns,</i>	<i>amāns,</i>	<i>amantēs,</i>	<i>amantia,</i>		
Ab	<i>amante (i).</i>	<i>amante (i).</i>	<i>amantibus.</i>	<i>amantibus.</i>		

83. REMARK.—In early and late Latin, and at all periods in the poets, *-e* is often found for *-i* in the Abl. Singular. In classical prose we find regularly *compote*, *dēside*, *impūbere*, *participe*, *paupere*, *pūbere*, *superstite*, *vetere*, and frequently *dīvite* (but always *dītī*), *quadrupede*, *sapiente*. With participles, *-i* is usual when they are used as adjectives, but classical prose shows *-e* also in *antecēdēns*, *candēns*, *cōnsentiēns*, *dēspiciēns*, *effluēns*, *hiāns*, *imminēns*, *inflūēns*, *prōfluēns*, *cōnsequēns* (but *sequēns* not before *Livy*), *titubāns*, *vertēns*.

NOTES. 1. In the Nom. and Acc. Pl. *-is* for *ēs* belongs to early Latin and the poets, but a few cases of the Acc. are still found in *Cicero*. In the case of participles *-is* is very common, and is the rule in *Virgil* and *Horace*. In the neuter, *-a* for *-ia* is found only in *ūbera*, *vetera*; *dītia* is always used for the unsynocopated form *dīvitia*.

2. Compound adjectives, whose primitives had *-um* in Gen. Pl., have usually *-um* instead of *-ium*; *quadrupēs*, *quadrupedum*, and other compounds of *pēs*; *inops*, *inopum*; *supplex*, *supplicum*. Also, *cicur*, *cicurum*; *vetus*, *veterum*; *dives*, *divitum*; *locuplēs*, *locuplētum* (rare, usually *-ium*). In the poets and in later writers, *-um* is not unfrequently found where classical prose uses *-ium*.

### Irregular Adjectives.

#### 84. A. ABUNDANTIA.

1. Some adjectives which end in *-us*, *-a*, *-um*, in the classical times, show occasionally in early Latin, in the poets, and in later Latin, forms in *-is*, *-e*, *e. g.*, *imbēcillus* and *imbēcillis*; *infrēnus* and *infrēnis*; *biugus* and *biugis*; *violētus* and *violēns*; *indecōrus* and *indecoris*; so also *perpetuus* and *perpes*. In a number of other adjectives the variant forms are very rare or disputed.

2. Many adjectives which end in **-is**, **-e**, in the classical times, show parallel forms in **-us**, **-a**, **-um**, in early Latin, and more rarely in late Latin. Adjectives in **-us**, **-a**, **-um**, in early Latin, seem to have had a tendency to go over into forms in **-is**, **-e**. Thus, **hilarus** is the regular form in early Latin : in Cicerō it is used side by side with **hilaris**, and later **hilaris** is universal. Other examples in the classical period are **inermis** and **inermus**; **imberbis** and **imberbus**; **ālāris** and **ālārius**; **auxiliāris** and **auxiliārius**; **intercalāris** and **intercalārius**; **tālāris** and **tālārius**.

### 85. B. DEFECTIVE.

1. Several adjectives lack a Nom. Singular, wholly or in part : as, **cētera** (f.), **cēterum**, **perperum** (n.), **nūperum** (n.), **primōris** (G.), **bimaris** (G.), **bimātris** (G.), **tricorporis** (G.), and a few others.

2. Some adjectives are defective in other cases : thus, **expēs** and **perdius**, **-a** are found only in the Nom.; **exlēx** only in the Nom. and Acc. (**exlēgem**); **pernox** only in Nom., Abl. (**pernocte**), and Nom. Pl. (**pernoctēs**, rare); **centimanus** has only the Acc. Sing. (Hor., Ov.); also **ūnimanus** (Liv.), and a few others.

### C. INDECLINABLES.

**Nēquam**; **potis**, and **pote** (early); **frūgi**; **macte** (**mactus**, **-um**, very rare); **necesse**, **necessum**, and **necessus** (early and poetical); **volup** and **volupe** (early); and the judicial **damnās**.

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

86. The Degrees of Comparison are : Positive, Comparative, and Superlative.

The Comparative is formed by adding to the consonant stems the endings **-ior** for the masculine and feminine, and **-ius** for the neuter.

The Superlative is formed by adding to the consonant stems the endings **-is-simus**, **-a**, **-um** (earlier **-is-sumus**).

Vowel stems, before forming the Comparative and Superlative, drop their characteristic vowel.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.		SUPERLATIVE.
	M. and F.	N.	
<b>altus</b> , <b>a</b> , <b>um</b> , <i>high</i> ,	<b>altior</b> , <i>higher</i> ,	<b>altius</b> ,	<b>altissimus</b> , <b>a</b> , <b>um</b> , <i>highest</i> .
<b>fortis</b> , <b>e</b> , <i>brave</i> ,	<b>fortior</b> ,	<b>fortius</b> ,	<b>fortissimus</b> .
<b>ūtilis</b> , <b>e</b> , <i>useful</i> ,	<b>ūtilior</b> ,	<b>ūtilius</b> ,	<b>ūtilissimus</b> .
<b>audāx</b> , <i>bold</i> ,	<b>audācior</b> ,	<b>audācius</b> ,	<b>audācissimus</b> .
<b>prūdēns</b> , <i>wise</i> ,	<b>prūdentior</b> ,	<b>prūdentius</b> ,	<b>prūdentissimus</b> .

NOTE.—In early Latin we find very rarely **-iōs** for **ior**; also **-ior** used for the neuter as well.

## Peculiarities.

87. 1. Adjectives in *-er* add the Superlative ending (*-rumus*) *-rimus* (for *-simus* by assimilation : see 9, 1) directly to the Nominative masculine. The Comparative follows the rule.

POSITIVE.		COMPARATIVE.		SUPERLATIVE.
miser, a, um,	wretched,	miserior,	miserius,	miserrimus.
celer, is, e,	swift,	celerior,	celerius,	celerrimus.
acer, ācris, ācre,	sharp,	ācrior,	ācrius,	ācerrimus.

REMARKS.—1. *Dexter*, *right*, and *sinister*, *left*, have always *dexterior* and *sinisterior* in the Comparative. *Dēterior*, *worse*, *dēterrimus*, lacks a Positive.

2. *Vetus*, *old*, has Comp. *veterior* (archaic) or *vetustior*; Sup., *veterrimus*. *Mātūrus*, *ripe*, has occasionally Sup. *mātūrrimus* in addition to the normal *mātūrissimus*.

NOTE. In early Latin and in inscriptions this rule is occasionally violated. Thus *celerissimus* in *ENNIUS*; *integrissimus*, *miserissimus*, in inscriptions.

2. Some Comparatives in *-er-ior*, whose Positive is lacking or rare, form the Superlative either in *-rēmus* by metathesis; or in *-imus* or *-umus*; or in both. These are: *citerior*, *on this side*, *citimus* (rare); *exterior*, *outer*, *extrēmus*, *extimus* (latter not in Cic.); *dexterior* (87, 1, R. 1; once in Cic.), *dextimus* (rare; not in Cic.); *inferior*, *lower*, *infimus*, *imus*; *interior*, *inner*, *intimus*; *posterior*, *hinder*, *postrēmus*, *postumus*; *superior*, *upper*, *suprēmus*, *summus*.

3. Six adjectives in *-ilis* add *-limus* to the stem, after dropping *-i*, to form the Superlative; perhaps by assimilation: *facilis*, *easy*; *difficilis*, *hard*; *similis*, *like*; *dissimilis*, *unlike*; *gracilis*, *slender*, and *humilis*, *low*.

facilis,	Comp. faciliior,	Sup. facillimus.
----------	------------------	------------------

4. Adjectives in *-dicus*, *-ficus*, *-volus*, borrow the Comparative and Superlative from the participial forms in *-dicēns*, *-ficēns*, and *-volēns*.

benevolus, <i>benevolent</i> ,	Comp. benevolentior,	Sup. benevolentissimus.
maledicus, <i>scurrilous</i> .	maledicentior,	maledicentissimus.
māgnificus, <i>distinguished</i> .	māgnificentior,	māgnificentissimus.

NOTE.—*Benevolēns*, *malevolēns*, *maledicēns*, still occur in early Latin.

5. In like manner *egēnus* and *prōvidus* form their Comparative and Superlative.

egēnus, <i>needy</i> ,	egentior,	egentissimus.
prōvidus, <i>far-sighted</i> ,	prōvidentior,	prōvidentissimus.

6. Adjectives in **-us (os)**, preceded by a vowel (except those in **-quos**), form the Comparative and Superlative by means of **magis** and **māximē**, *more* and *most*.

**idōneus**, *fit*,                      Comp. **magis idōneus**,                      Sup. **māximē idōneus**.

But

**antīquos**, *old*,                      Comp. **antiquior**,                      Sup. **antīquissimus**.

REMARK.—But **pīus**, *pious*, which lacks the Comparative, forms the Superlative regularly, **piissimus** (in inscriptions also **pientissimus**); likewise in late Latin, **impius**.

NOTES.—1. A few words, chiefly in early Latin, show the normal comparison. In Cic. only, **assiduissimē** (adv.) and **alsius**.

2. Comparison by means of **plūs** and **plūrimum** is late.

7. Some Comparatives and Superlatives are in use, whilst the corresponding Positive is either lacking or rare.

So **dēterior** (87, 1, R. 1); **ōcior**, *swift*, **ōcissimus**; **potior**, *better*, **potissimus**; **exterior**, *outer* (87, 2), from **exterus**, *on the outside*, and prep. **extra**, *without*; **superior**, *upper* (87, 2), from **superus**, *on the top*, and prep. **suprā**, *above*; **inferior**, *lower* (87, 2), from **inferus**, *below*, and prep. **infrā**, *below*; **posterior**, *hinder* (87, 2), from **posterus**, *coming after*, and prep. **post**, *after*; **citerior**, *on this side* (87, 2), from **citer**, and prep. **citrā**, *on this side*.

8. The Positive stem of existing Comparatives is sometimes met with only in a preposition or an adverb: as, **ante**, *before*: **anterior**, *that is before*; **prope**, *near*; **propior**, *proximus*; **ūterior**, *further*, **ūtimus**, from **ūtrā**, *beyond*; **interior**, *inner*, **intimus**, from **intrā**, *within*; **prior**, *former*, **primus**, *first*, from **prō**, *before*; **sequior** (late), *worse*, from **secus**.

9. Many adjectives lack one or both of the degrees of comparison: especially those denoting *material, relationship, time, etc.*

**Novus**, *new*, **falsus**, *untrue*, **meritus**, *deserved*, have no Comparative.

**Longinquos**, *afar*, **propinquos**, *near*, **salūtāris**, *healthful*, **iuvenis**, *young* (Comparative **iūnior**), and **senex**, *old* (Comparative **senior**), have no Superlative.

"*Youngest*" and "*oldest*" are expressed by **minimus**, **māximus** (**nātū**).

NOTE.—The Plautine and late **medioximus**, *middlemost*, lacks Positive and Comparative.

10. **Dives**, *rich*, shows in Cic. only **divitior** and **divitissimus**; otherwise the Comparative and Superlative are found principally in poetry and later prose, the more usual forms being the syncopated **ditior**, **ditissimus**.

88. Participles used as adjectives are subject also to the same laws of comparison: as, **amāns**, *loving*, **amantior**, **amantissimus**; **apertus**, *open*, **apertior**, **apertissimus**.

89. The Superlative follows the declension of adjectives of Three Endings of the First and Second Declensions. The Comparative is declined according to the Third Declension, thus :

	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
Sg.—N.	<b>altior,</b>	<b>altius.</b>	Pl.— <b>altiōrēs,</b>	<b>altiōra.</b>
G.	<b>altiōris,</b>	<b>altiōris.</b>	<b>altiōrum,</b>	<b>altiōrum.</b>
D.	<b>altiōri,</b>	<b>altiōri.</b>	<b>altiōribus,</b>	<b>altiōribus.</b>
Ac.	<b>altiōrem,</b>	<b>altius.</b>	<b>altiōrēs,</b>	<b>altiōra.</b>
V.	<b>altior,</b>	<b>altius.</b>	<b>altiōrēs,</b>	<b>altiōra.</b>
Ab.	<b>altiōre and -i,</b>	<b>altiōre and -i.</b>	<b>altiōribus,</b>	<b>altiōribus.</b>

REMARKS.—1. In classical prose the Abl. Sing. ends in **-e**. In the poets and in early and late prose often in **-i**.

2. Extremely rare is the ending **-is** for **-ēs** in the Nom. Plural. In the Acc. Pl. this ending **-is** (**-ōis**) is more common but still not frequent, and confined mainly to **plūris**, **minōris**, **māiōris**, **meliōris**. The neuter in **-ia** is found rarely in **complūria**, and perhaps once in **plūria**.

3. The Gen. Pl. in **-ium** is found in **plūrium** and **complūrium** only.

## 90.

## Irregular Comparison.

<b>bonus,</b>	<i>good,</i>	<b>melior,</b>	<b>melius,</b>	<b>optimus.</b>
<b>malus,</b>	<i>bad,</i>	<b>pēior,</b>	<b>pēius,</b>	<b>pessimus.</b>
<b>māgnus,</b>	<i>great,</i>	<b>māior,</b>	<b>māius,</b>	<b>māximus.</b>
<b>parvus,</b>	<i>small,</i>	<b>minor,</b>	<b>minus,</b>	<b>minimus.</b>
<b>multus,</b>	<i>much,</i>	S. —	<b>plūs</b> (no Dat. nor Abl.),	<b>plūrimus.</b>
		Pl. <b>plūrēs,</b>	<b>plūra.</b>	
		<b>complūrēs,</b>	<b>complūra</b> and <b>-ia.</b>	
<b>nēquam,</b>	<i>worthless,</i>	<b>nēquior,</b>	<b>nēquius,</b>	<b>nēquissimus.</b>
<b>frūgi</b> (undecl.),	<i>frugal,</i>	<b>frūgālior,</b>		<b>frūgālissimus.</b>

## ADVERBS.

91. Most adverbs are either oblique cases or mutilated forms of oblique cases of nominal or pronominal stems.

The cases from which they are derived are principally the Accusative and the Ablative.

1. (a) From the Accusative are Substantival Adverbs in **-tim**. This was a favorite formation, and is used very often in all periods. In the classical times the adverbs of this form are :

**Acervātīm**, **articulātīm**, **centuriātīm**, **certātīm**, **generātīm**, **gradatīm**, **gregātīm**, **membrātīm**, **paulātīm**, **privātīm**, **sēparātīm**, **singulātīm**, **statīm**, **summātīm**, **virītīm**, **tribūtīm**, **strictīm**, **pedetemptīm**, **raptīm**, **fūrtīm**, **partīm**, **praesertīm**, **cōnfestīm**, and a few others ; disguised forms of **-tim** are : **caesīm**, **in-**  
**cisīm**, **sēnsīm**, **cursīm**, **passīm**, **vicissīm**, for **caed-tīm** (9. 1-3), *etc.*; also **interīm**.



(b) A few very common adverbs are, perhaps, from Accusative Singular feminine of adjectives and pronominal stems. Chiefly *clam*, *secretly*, *cōram*, *in one's presence*, *palam*, *openly*, *perperam*, *wrongly*, *tam*, *so*, *quam*, *as*, *aliquam*, *some*, *iam*, *already*; and forms in *-fāriam*, as *bi-fāriam*, *multifāriam*, etc.

(c) The Accusative Singular neuter of many adjectival and pronominal stems is used as an adverb. *This is true of all Comparatives.*

*Multum*, *much*; *paulum*, *a little*; *nimum*, *too much*; *cēterum*, *for the rest*; *primum*, *first*; *postrēmum*, *finally*; *potissimum*, *chiefly*; *facile*, *easily*; *dulce*, *sweetly*; *triste*, *sadly*; *impūne*, *scot-free*; *aliquantum*, *somewhat*, and others.

To the Comparatives belong *magis*, *more*; *nimis*, *too*; *satis*, *enough*.

(d) The Accusative Plural feminine is found in *aliās*, *at other times*, perhaps in *forās*, *out-of-doors*. The Accusative Plural neuter is found in *alia*, *cētera*, *omnia*, and occasionally in *reliqua* and a few others.

2. (a) From the Ablative are some substantival adverbs; the principal ones in classical Latin being *domō*, *at home*; *impendiō*, *greatly*; *initiō*, *at the outset*; *modo*, *only*; *oppidō*, *very*; *prīncipiō*, *in the beginning*; *privātō*, *privately*; *vulgō*, *commonly*; *forte*, *by chance*; *māgnopere*, *greatly*, and other compounds of *-opere*; *grātiis*, *for nothing*, and *ingrātiis*, and a few others.

(b) Ablatives are also adverbs in *ē* from adjectives in *-us* and *-er*: *altus*, *lofty*, *altē*; *pulcher*, *beautiful*, *pulchrē*; *miser*, *wretched*, *miserē*.

Also *ferē* and *fermē* (Sup.), *almost*.

(c) The Ablative of some adjectives and pronouns serves as an adverb:

*tūtō*, *safely*; *falsō*, *falsely*; *perpetuō*, *ceaselessly*; *continuō*, *forthwith*; *imprōvisō*, *unexpectedly*; *prīmō*, *at first*; *hōc*, *here*; *istō*, *there*, etc.

(d) In a few cases the adverbial form is the Abl. Sing. feminine:

*aliā*, *otherwise*; *aliquā*, *somehow*; *dexterā* and *dextrā*, *to the right*; *sinistrā* and *laevā*, *to the left hand*; *quā*, *on which side*; *rēctā*, *straightway*, and some others.

(e) A large number of these adjectives show adverbs in two endings, sometimes with a difference in meaning:

*cōsultē* and *cōsultō*, *purposely*; *certē*, *at least*, and *certō*, *certainly* (*certē sciō*, *I certainly know*; *certō sciō*, *I know for certain*); *rārē*, *thinly*, and *rārō*, *seldom*; *vērē*, *in truth*, and *vērō*, *true but*; *rēctē*, *correctly*, and *rēctā*, *straightway*; *dexterā* or *dextrā*, *to the right*; and *dexterē*, *skilfully*.

(f) Ablatives are also *quī*, *how* (archaic), *nēquīquam*, *to no purpose*; *aliōquī*, *otherwise*; perhaps also *diū*, *by day*, and its compounds.

3. Locative in origin are the following, in addition to those mentioned under 37, 5: *diē* (in combination with numeral adjectives in early Latin, as *diē septimī*) and its compounds *cottidiē*, *daily*, *hodiē*, *to-day*, *pridiē*, *the day before*, *postridiē*, *the day after*; *quotannis*, *yearly*; *foris*, *outside*. Also many forms from the pronominal stems, as *hic*, *illīc*, *istic* (*istī* belongs to early Latin and *Verg.*); *sic*, *so*, *ut* (*utī*, *utēī*), *as*; *ibi*, *there*, and its compounds *alibi*, *ibidem*; *ubi* (*cubi*), *where*, and its compounds.

4. A number of adverbs cannot be referred to a definite case, as: adverbs of *separation*: *hinc*, *hence*, *illinc* (*illim*), *istinc* (*istim*), *thence*; *temporal* adverbs: *tunc*, *then*, *cum*, *when*, *quondam*, *once*, *quandō*, *when* ? and its compounds; also, *ante*, *before*; *post* (*poste*), *after*; *paene*, *almost*; *prope*, *propter*, *near*; *saepe*, *often*; *circiter*, *around*; *praeter*, *past*; *ergō*, *therefore*; *crās*, *to-morrow*; *haud* (*hau*, *haut*), *not*; *item*, *likewise*; *susque dēque*, *up and down*; *vix*, *scarcely*.

92. 1. Adjectives and participles of the Third Declension form their adverbs by adding *-ter* (*-iter*) to the stem; stems in *-nt* dropping the *t*, and stems in a *k*-mute inserting the connecting vowel *i* before the ending; also a few adjectives of the Second Declension:

*fortis*, *brave*, *fortiter*; *ferōx*, *wild*, *ferōciter*; *prūdēns*, *forescēg*, *prūdentē*.

Exceptions: *audāx*, *bold*, *audāc-ter* (seldom *audāciter*); *difficilis*, *hard to do*, *difficulter*, *difficiliter* (but generally, *nōn facile*, *vix*, *aegrē*, and others).

2. A large number of adjectives of the Second Declension in *-us*, *-a*, *-um*, and *-er*, *-era*, *-erum*, form in early and late Latin their adverbs by dropping the stem vowel and adding *-iter* (those in *-tus* added *-er* only). Many of these occur in classical writers alongside of the normal form in *-ē*: *hūmāniter* and *hūmānē*, *humanly*; *largiter* and *largē*, *lavishly*; *turbulenter* and *turbulentē*, *riotously*.

3. Some adverbs of *origin* are formed from substantival or adjectival stems by the ending *-tus*. In classical Latin mainly *antīquitus*, *from early time*; *divīnitus*, *from the gods*; *funditus*, *from the foundation*; *penitus*, *from the depths*; *rādīcitus*, *from the roots*; also *intus*, *from within*.

4. The termination *-vorsus*, *-vorum*, is used to show *direction whither*; but in classical Latin it is found principally in the adverbs: *intrōrsus* (*intrōvorsus*), *towards*; *prōrsus* (*-um*), *onwards*; *rūrsus* (*-um*, *rūsum*), *back*; *sūrsus* (*sūsum*), *up*; *vorsum*, *towards*.

5. A very large number of adverbs are formed by adding various other terminations: as, *-de*: *inde*, *thence*, *unde*, *whence*; *-dem*: *prīdem*, *long ago*, *itidem*, *likewise*, etc.; *-dō*: *quandō*, *when*, etc.; *-dam*: *quondam*, *once*; *-dum*: *dūdum*, *a while ago*; *vixdum*, *hardly yet*, etc.; *-per*: *nūper*, *lately*, *parumper*, *a little*, *semper*, *always*, etc.; *-quam*: *umquam*, *ever*, *numquam*, *never*, etc.; *-secus*: *extrīnsecus*, *outside*, etc.; *-tenus*: *quātenus*, *how far* ? etc.

6. Syntactical and miscellaneous : *admodum*, *very (to a degree)*, *dēnuō*, *anew*, *imprimis* ; *super*, *above*, and its compounds, *dēs**super*, *insuper* ; *ex-templō*, *at once* ; *ūsque*, *to*, and its compounds ; *invicem*, *in turn* ; *adeō*, *so* ; *anteā*, *before* ; *intereā*, *meanwhile* ; *posteā*, *after* ; *praetereā*, *besides* ; *proptereā*, *on that account*, and a few others.

## COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

93. The Comparative of the adverb is the Accusative neuter of the Comparative of the adjective. The Superlative ends in *-is-simē*, *-er-rimē*, *etc.*, according to the Superlative of the adjective.

POSITIVE.		COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<i>altē</i> ,	<i>loftily</i> ,	<i>altius</i> ,	<i>altissimē</i> .
<i>pulchrē</i> ,	<i>beautifully</i> ,	<i>pulchrius</i> ,	<i>pulcherrimē</i> .
<i>miserē</i> ,	<i>poorly</i> ,	<i>miserius</i> ,	<i>miserrimē</i> .
<i>fortiter</i> ,	<i>bravely</i> ,	<i>fortius</i> ,	<i>fortissimē</i> .
<i>audācter</i> ,	<i>boldly</i> ,	<i>audācius</i> ,	<i>audācissimē</i> .
<i>tūtō</i> ,	<i>safely</i> ,	<i>tūtius</i> ,	<i>tūtissimē</i> .
<i>facile</i> ,	<i>easily</i> ,	<i>facilius</i> ,	<i>facillimē</i> .
<i>bene</i> ,	<i>well</i> ,	<i>melius</i> ,	<i>optimē</i> .
<i>male</i> ,	<i>ill</i> ,	<i>pōius</i> ,	<i>pessimē</i> .
[ <i>parvus</i> ],	<i>small</i> ,	<i>minus</i> , <i>less</i> ,	<i>minimē</i> , <i>least</i> .
[ <i>māgnus</i> ],	<i>great</i> ,	<i>magis</i> , <i>more</i> ,	<i>māximē</i> , <i>most</i> .
<i>multum</i> ,	<i>much</i> ,	<i>plūs</i> , <i>more</i> ,	<i>plūrimum</i> .
<i>cito</i> ,	<i>quickly</i> ,	<i>citius</i> ,	<i>citissimē</i> .
<i>diū</i> ,	<i>long</i> ,	<i>diūtius</i> ,	<i>diūtissimē</i> .
<i>saepe</i> ,	<i>often</i> ,	<i>saepius</i> ,	<i>saepissimē</i> .
<i>nūper</i> ,	<i>recently</i> ,	—,	<i>nūperimē</i> .
<i>satis</i> ,	<i>enough</i> ,	<i>satius</i> , <i>better</i> ,	

## NUMERALS.

## NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

94. The Cardinal numerals answer the question *quot*, *how many?* and are the numbers used in counting. The Ordinal numerals are derived from these and answer the question *quotus*, *which one in the series?* They are as follows :

## 1. CARDINAL NUMBERS.

1	I	<i>ūnus</i> , <i>ūna</i> , <i>ūnum</i>
2	II	<i>duo</i> , <i>duae</i> , <i>duo</i>
3	III	<i>trēs</i> , <i>tria</i>
4	IV	<i>quattuor</i>
5	V	<i>quīnque</i>
6	VI	<i>sex</i>
7	VII	<i>septem</i>

## 2. ORDINAL NUMBERS.

<i>primus</i> , -a, -um (prior)
<i>secundus</i> (alter)
<i>tertius</i>
<i>quārtus</i>
<i>quīntus</i>
<i>sextus</i>
<i>septimus</i>

1. CARDINAL NUMBERS.			2. ORDINAL NUMBERS	
8	VIII	octō	octāvus	
9	IX	novem	nōnus	
10	X	decem	decimus	
11	XI	ūndecim	ūndecimus	
12	XII	duodecim	duodecimus	
13	XIII	tredecim	tertius decimus	
14	XIV	quattuordecim	quārtus decimus	
15	XV	quīndecim	quīntus decimus	
16	XVI	sēdecim	sextus decimus	
17	XVII	septendecim	septimus decimus	
18	XVIII	duodēviginti	duodēvicēsimus	
19	XIX	ūndēviginti	ūndēvicēsimus	
20	XX	viginti	vicēsimus	
21	XXI	viginti ūnus	vicēsimus primus	
22	XXII	viginti duo	vicēsimus secundus	
23	XXIII	viginti trēs	vicēsimus tertius	
24	XXIV	viginti quattuor	vicēsimus quārtus	
25	XXV	viginti quīque	vicēsimus quīntus	
26	XXVI	viginti sex	vicēsimus sextus	
27	XXVII	viginti septem	vicēsimus septimus	
28	XXVIII	duodētrīgintā	duodētricēsimus	
29	XXIX	ūndētrīgintā	ūndētricēsimus	
30	XXX	trīgintā	tricēsimus	
40	XL	quadrīgintā	quadrāgēsimus	
50	L	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsimus	
60	LX	sexāgintā	sexāgēsimus	
70	LXX	septuāgintā	septuāgēsimus	
80	LXXX	octōgintā	octōgēsimus	
90	XC	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimus	
100	C	centum	centēsimus	
101	CI	centum et ūnus	centēsimus primus	[mus
115	CXV	centum et quīndecim	centēsimus (et) quīntus deci-	
120	CXX	centum et viginti	centēsimus vicēsimus	
121	CXXI	centum viginti ūnus	centēsimus vicēsimus primus	
200	CC	ducenti, -ae, -a	ducentēsimus	
300	CCC	trecenti	trecentēsimus	
400	CCCC	quadrīngenti	quadrīngentēsimus	
500	D (IO)	quīnḡenti	quīngentēsimus	
600	DC	sēscenti	sēscentēsimus	
700	DCC	septīngenti	septīngentēsimus	
800	DCCC	octīngenti	octīngentēsimus	
900	DCCCC	nōngenti	nōngentēsimus	
1000	M (CIO)	mille	millēsimus	

## 1. CARDINAL NUMBERS.

## 2. ORDINAL NUMBERS.

1001	MI	mille et ūnus	millēsīmus prīmus
1101	MCI	mille centum ūnus	millēsīmus centēsīmus prīmus
1120	MCXX	mille centum vīgintī [ūnus	millēsīmus centēsīmus vicē- [simus [simus prīmus
1121	MCXXI	mille centum vīgintī	millēsīmus centēsīmus vicē-
1200	MCC	mille ducentī	millēsīmus ducentēsīmus
2000	MM	duo milia (millia) bīna milia	bis millēsīmus
2222		duo milia ducentī vī- gintī duo	bis millēsīmus ducentēsīmus vicēsīmus secundus
5000	IOJ	quīque milia quīna milia	quīnquēs millēsīmus
10,000	CCIOJ	decem milia dēna milia	decīēs millēsīmus
21,000		ūnum et vīgintī milia	semel et vicīēs millēsīmus
100,000		centum milia centēna milia [milia	centīēs millēsīmus
1,000,000		decīēs centēna (centum)	decīēs centīēs millēsīmus

95. The Cardinal numerals are indeclinable, except : *ūnus*, *one*, *duo*, *two*, *trēs*, *three*, the hundreds beginning with *ducentī*, *two hundred*, and the plural *milia*, *thousands*, which forms *milium* and *milibus*.

				M and F.	N.
N.	duo, two,	duae,	duo,	trēs, three,	tria.
G.	duōrum,	duārum,	duōrum,	trium,	trium.
D.	duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus,	tribus,	tribus.
A.	duōs, duo,	duās,	duo,	trēs, trīs,	tria.
Ab.	duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus,	tribus,	tribus.

Like *duo* is declined *ambō*, -ae, -ō, *both*.

REMARKS.—1. For the declension of *ūnus* see 76. It occurs also in plural forms in connection with *plūrālia tantum*, as *ūnis litteris* (CIC. *Att.*, v. 9. 2), or with another numeral in the sense *only*; in the latter sense also with substantives.

2. The Gen. of the hundreds, *ducentī*, *etc.*, ends in -um and not -ōrum. This must be distinguished from the use of the neuter singular in -um as a *collective*, as *argentī sēscentum* (LUC.), *a six hundred of silver*.

3. The Pl. *milia*, *milium*, *milibus*, are treated almost always as substantives, the adjectival form being the Singular.

NOTES.—1. The form *oinos* for *ūnus* is found in early Latin. A Voc *ūne* is occasional (CAT., 37, 17).

2. For *duae* late Latin shows occasionally *duo*, and in inscriptions *dua*, for neuter



**duo**, is sometimes found. The Gen **duum** (old **duom**) for **duorum** is not unfrequent. In the Dat. and Abl., **duo** is found in inscriptions, and for **ambōbus** occasionally **ambis**. In the Acc. Pl. masc., **duo** and **ambō** for **duōs** and **ambōs** are quite common in early Latin, and also in classical times, but the better forms are **duōs**, **ambōs**.

3. **Quattor** is found for **quattuor** occasionally in inscriptions, and in early poetry **quattuor** was sometimes scanned as a dissyllable.

4. In inscriptions the forms **mēilia** and **millia** are also found.

5. In regard to spelling of the Ordinals we find in early Latin **quinctus** as well as **quintus**; **septumus** and **decumus** regularly, and often the endings **-ēnsimus** and **-ēnsumus** in Ordinals from **vicēsimus** on.

## 96.

### 1. Compound Numerals.

1. From 10 to 20, as in the tables, or separately : **decem et trēs**.

2. The numbers 18, 19, 28, 29, etc., are commonly expressed by subtraction ; occasionally, as in English, but never in Cicerō, and very rarely in other classical authors. **duodēcentum** is not found, and **ūndēcentum** but once (PLIN. MAL.).

3. From 20 to 100, the compound numerals stand in the same order as the English : *twenty-one*, **vīginti ūnus** ; or, *one and twenty*, **ūnus et (atque) vīginti** ; as, *twenty-one years old* : **annōs ūnum et vīginti (vīginti ūnum), ūnum et vīginti annōs nātus**. But compounds like **septuāgintā et trēs** are not uncommon, though avoided by good writers.

4. From 100 on, **et** may be inserted after the first numeral, if there be but two numbers ; as, **centum quattuor**, or **centum et quattuor**. If the smaller number precedes, the **et** should be inserted ; likewise in all cases where a word is inserted within the compound numeral, as **ducenti anni et vīginti**. If there be three numerals, the **et** is regularly omitted ; exceptions are very rare.

5. In compound ordinals **alter** is preferred to **secundus**.

6. **Centēna milia** is often omitted after the numeral adverb **decies** = 1,000,000 ; especially in stating sums of money.

7. Fractions are expressed by **pars** (omitted or expressed) in combination with **dīmidia** ( $\frac{1}{2}$ ), **tertia** ( $\frac{1}{3}$ ), **quārta** ( $\frac{1}{4}$ ), etc. A Plural numerator is expressed by a Cardinal : as, **duae quintae** ( $\frac{2}{5}$ ). The fraction is often broken up ; as, **pars dīmidia et tertia** ( $\frac{1}{2} = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{3}$ ). The even denominators could be divided ; as, **dīmidia tertia** ( $\frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{3} = \frac{1}{6}$ ). Instead of **dīmidia** without **pars**, **dīmidium** is used.

### 2. Numeral Signs.

I is short for **IO**, M for **CLIO**. Adding I on the right of IO multiplies by 10 ; **IOIO** = 5000 ; **IOIOIO** = 50,000. Putting C before as often as I stands after multiplies the right-hand number by 2 ; **CIO** = 1000 ; **CCIO** = 10,000 ; **CCCIOIO** = 100,000. A line above multiplies by 1000 ; **V** = 5000. A line above and at each side multiplies by 100,000. **XIII** = 1,400,000. These signs may be combined ; thus, **XIII** <sup>—</sup> **XXXX** <sup>—</sup> **IO** or **XIII** <sup>—</sup> **XXXX** <sup>—</sup> **MD** = 1,337,500. PLIN. V II IV. 12, 24. Other signs are  $\bigcirc$  = 1 (inserted for **IO**),  $\mathcal{L}$ ,  $\mathcal{R}$ ,  $\bigcirc$  (insert) for 1000, and  $\bigcirc$  for 100,000 (insert), and  $\mathcal{Q}$  for 500,000 (insert).

## 97.

## 3. Distributive Numerals.

1	singulī, -ae, -a, <i>one each.</i>	30	tricēnī
2	bīnī, -ae, -a, <i>two each.</i>	40	quadrāgēnī
3	ternī (trīnī)	50	quīnquāgēnī
4	quaternī	60	sexāgēnī
5	quīnī	70	septuāgēnī
6	sēnī	80	octōgēnī
7	septēnī	90	nōnāgēnī
8	octōnī	100	centēnī
9	novēnī	102	centēnī bīnī
10	dēnī	125	centēnī vicēnī quīnī
11	ūndēnī	200	ducēnī
12	duodēnī	300	trecēnī
13	ternī dēnī	400	quadrīngēnī
14	quaternī dēnī	500	quīngēnī
15	quīnī dēnī	600	sexcēnī (sēscēnī)
16	sēnī dēnī	700	septīngēnī
17	septēnī dēnī	800	octīngēnī
18	octōnī dēnī, duodēvicēnī	900	nōngēnī
19	novēnī dēnī, ūndēvicēnī	1000	singula milia
20	vicēnī	2000	bīna milia
21	vicēnī singulī	3000	trīna milia
22	vicēnī bīnī, bīnī et vicēnī	10,000	dēna milia
28	duodētricēnī	100,000	centēna milia
29	ūndētricēnī		

These answer the question **quotēnī**, *how many each?*

REMARKS.—1. The Gen. Pl. masc. and neuter ends usually in **-um**, except that **singulus** has always **singulōrum**, and CICERO uses **binōrum**.

2. The Distributives are used with an exactness which is foreign to our idiom, whenever repetition is involved, as in the multiplication table. But when **singulī** is expressed, the Cardinal may be used.

3. The Distributives are used with **plūrālia tantum**: **bīnae litterae**, *two epistles*. But with these **ūnī** is used for *one*, **trīnī** for *three*: **ūnae litterae**, **trīnae litterae**.

4. The same rules as to the insertion or omission of **et** apply to the Distributives as to the Ordinals (96, 1. 3, 4).

NOTES.—1. The poets and later prose writers occasionally use the Distributives for Cardinals, with words other than **plūrālia tantum** (N. 3); also some forms of the Singular. Especially noteworthy is the combination **trīnum nūndinum**, which is technical, and therefore found also in model prose.

2. Parallel forms not found in classical times are **quadrīnī** (early, late), and the late **du(o)centēnī**, **trecentēnī**, **quadrīngentēnī**, **quīngentēnī**, **ses(x)centēnī**, **millēnī**, *etc.*

## 4. Multiplicative Numerals.

Only the following forms occur :

1 simplex,	<i>single,</i>	5 quincuplex
2 duplex,	<i>double,</i>	7 septemplex
3 triplex,	<i>triple,</i>	10 decemplex
4 quadruplex,	<i>quadruple.</i>	100 centuplex

These answer the question, *how many fold ?*

## 5. Proportional Numerals.

Only the following forms occur :

1 simplex, -a, -um,	<i>single,</i>	4 quadruplus
2 duplus,	<i>double.</i>	7 septuplus
3 triplus		8 octuplus

These answer the question, *how many times as great ?*

## 98.

## NUMERAL ADVERBS.

1 semel,	<i>once,</i>	22 bis et viciēs, viciēs et bia,
2 bis,	<i>twice.</i>	viciēs bis *
3 ter		30 triciēs
4 quater		40 quadrāgiēs
5 quinquīēs (-ēns)		50 quinquāgiēs
6 sexiēs (-ēns)		60 sexāgiēs
7 septiēs (-ēns)		70 septuāgiēs
8 octiēs (-ēns)		80 octōgiēs
9 noviēs (-ēns)		90 nōnāgiēs
10 deciēs (-ēns)		100 centiēs
11 undeciēs (-ēns)		200 ducentiēs
12 duodeciēs, etc.		400 quadringentiēs
13 ter deciēs, tredeciēs		500 quingentiēs
14 quater deciēs, quattuordecīēs		600 sexcentiēs (sēscentiēs)
15 quinquīēs deciēs, quindecīēs		700 septingentiēs
16 sexiēs deciēs, sēdeciēs		800 octingentiēs
17 septiēs deciēs		900 nōngentiēs
18 duodēviciēs, octiēs deciēs	1,000	milliēs
19 undēviciēs, noviēs deciēs	2,000	bis milliēs
20 viciēs	100,000	centiēs milliēs
21 semel et viciēs, viciēs et semel,	1,000,000	milliēs milliēs, deciēs cen-
viciēs semel *		tiēs milliēs

These answer the question *quotiēs (ēs) : how often ?*

\* Not *semel viciēs, bis viciēs, etc.* because that would be *once twenty times = 20 times; twice twenty times = 40 times*, this, however, does not hold for numerals between 10 and 20.

REMARKS.—1. These adverbs, from **quīnquiēs** on, have an older form in **-ēns**; **quīnquiēns**. In **totiēns**, *so often*, and **quotiēns**, *how often*, this remained the more usual form in classical times.

2. The combination of an adverb with a distributive adjective was much liked by the Romans: as **bis bīna** for **quaterna**, *etc.* But the normal forms are not unfrequent.

NOTE.—For the adverbs from **undeciēs** on, examples are very rare, and some are cited only from the grammarians. So, when two forms are given, one is often due to the grammarians; thus **quīnquiēs deciēs**, **sexiēs deciēs**, are cited only from PRISCIAN. The order, too, of compound adverbs varies.

## PRONOUNS.

### 99. Pronouns point out without describing.

NOTE.—The pronoun is not a word used instead of a noun. The noun says too much, for all nouns (proper as well as common) are originally descriptive; the pronoun simply points out. The noun says too little, because it cannot express person, as **ego**, *I*, **tū**, *thou*; it cannot express local appurtenance, as **hic**, *this (here)*, **ille**, *that (there)*.

## A. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

### 100. I. Personal Pronouns of the First Person.

	SUBSTANTIVE.		POSSESSIVE.
SG.—N.	<b>ego</b> ,	<i>I</i> ,	
G.	<b>meī</b> ,	<i>of me</i> ,	<b>meus</b> , -a, -um, <i>mine or my</i> .
D.	<b>mihī</b> ,	<i>to, for me</i> ,	
Ac.	<b>mē</b> ,	<i>me</i> ,	
Ab.	<b>mē</b> ,	<i>from, with, by me</i> .	
PL.—N.	<b>nōs</b> ,	<i>we</i> ,	
G.	<b>nostrī</b> ,	<i>of us</i> ,	
	<b>nostrum</b> ,		<b>noster</b> , <b>nostra</b> , <b>nostrum</b> , <i>our or ours</i> .
D.	<b>nōbīs</b> ,	<i>to, for us</i> ,	
Ac.	<b>nōs</b> ,	<i>us</i> ,	
Ab.	<b>nōbīs</b>	<i>from, with, by us</i> .	

REMARKS.—1. The Voc. Sing. masc. of **meus** is **mī**, except when **meus** is used with a substantive which does not change its form in the Voc.; thus, **meus ocellus** (PLAUT.; possibly, however, appositional), but **mī anīme**.

2. **Nostrum** in the Gen. Pl. is the form for the Partitive Genitive.

NOTES.—1. Early Latin shows the following: Sg., N. **egō**; G. **mīs**; D. **mī**, **mihēī** (inscr.); **mihē** (inscr.); Ac. **mēd**, **mēmē**; Ab. **mēd** (**mēmē** is doubtful); Pl., N. Ac. **ēnōs** (in *Carmen Arvale* only); G. **nostrōrum**, **nostrārum** (for **nostrum**); D. Ab. **nōbēīs** (inscr.).

2. In late Latin **mī** also serves for the Voc. Sing. fem. and Voc. Pl. masc. **Meum**, **nostrum**, in the Gen. Pl. of the Possessives, are not unfrequent in early Latin.

3. The forms of **meus**, of **tui** and **tuos**, of **sui** and **suos**, very frequently suffer Synthesis (727) in early Latin.

4. On the combination of these pronouns with **-met** and **-pte** see 102, N. 2, 3.

## 101. II. Personal Pronouns of the Second Person.

	SUBSTANTIVE.	POSSESSIVE.
Sg.—N. V.	<i>tū</i> , <i>thou</i> ,	
G.	<i>tui</i> , <i>of thee</i> ,	
D.	<i>tibi</i> , <i>to, for thee</i> ,	<i>tuus</i> (-os), -a, -um (-om), <i>thy or thine</i> .
Ac.	<i>tē</i> , <i>thee</i> ,	
Ab.	<i>tē</i> , <i>from, with, by thee</i> .	
Pl.—N.	<i>vōs</i> , <i>ye or you</i> ,	
G.	<i>vestri</i> , <i>of you</i> ,	
	<i>vestrum</i> ,	<i>vester</i> (archaic <i>voster</i> ), <i>vestra</i> , <i>vestrum</i> ,
D.	<i>vōbis</i> , <i>to, for you</i> ,	<i>your or yours</i> .
Ac.	<i>vōs</i> , <i>you</i> ,	
Ab.	<i>vōbis</i> , <i>from, with, by you</i> .	

NOTES. 1. Early forms are : G. *tis* ; D. *tibēi* (inser.), *tibē* (inser.) ; Ac. Ab. *tēd*, *tētē* ; Pl. G. *vostrī*, *vostrōrum*, -ārum.

2. *Vestrum* is for the Partitive Genitive.

3. *Tuom* and *vostrom* in the Gen. Pl. of the Possessives are rare and confined to early Latin.

4. On Synizesis see 100, N. 3. On combination with -*met* or -*pte* see 102, N. 2, 3.

## III. Personal Pronouns of the Third Person.

102. The original personal pronoun of the third person, together with its possessive, is used only as a reflexive in Latin, and therefore lacks a Nominative. Its place is taken in the oblique cases by the Determinative *is* (103).

## DETERMINATIVE.

	SUBSTANTIVE.	POSSESSIVE.
Sg.—N.	[ <i>is</i> , <i>ea</i> , <i>id</i> ], <i>he, she, it</i> ,	supplied by the Genitive.
G.	<i>ēius</i> , <i>of him</i> ,	<i>ēius</i> , <i>his, hers, its</i> .
	<i>etc.</i>	
Pl.—N.	[ <i>ei</i> , <i>ii</i> , <i>i</i> ; <i>cae</i> , <i>ea</i> ], <i>they</i> ,	
G.	<i>eōrum</i> , <i>eārum</i> , <i>eōrum</i> , <i>of them</i> . <i>eōrum</i> , <i>eārum</i> , <i>eōrum</i> , <i>their or theirs</i> .	
	<i>etc.</i>	

## REFLEXIVE.

	SUBSTANTIVE.	POSSESSIVE.
Sg.—N.	—	
G.	<i>sui</i> , <i>of him, her, it(self)</i> ,	<i>suus</i> (-os), -a, -um (-om), <i>his</i> ,
D.	<i>sibi</i> , <i>to, for, him(self), her(self)</i> ,	<i>her(s), its (own)</i> .
Ac.	<i>sē, sēsē</i> , <i>him(self), her(self)</i> ,	
Ab.	<i>sē, sēsē</i> , <i>from, with, by him(self)</i> .	
Pl.—N.	—	
G.	<i>sui</i> , <i>of them(selves)</i> ,	<i>suus</i> (-os), -a, -um (-om), <i>their</i>
D.	<i>sibi</i> , <i>to, for them(selves)</i> ,	<i>(own), theirs</i> .
Ac.	<i>sē, sēsē</i> , <i>them(selves)</i> ,	
Ab.	<i>sē, sēsē</i> , <i>from, with, by them(selves)</i> .	



NOTES.—1. Inscriptions show *sibēī*. The use of *sēsē* in classical prose is regulated mainly by artistic reasons. *Suom* in Gen. Pl. from *suus* is rare and early.

2. The enclitic *-met* may be added to all the forms of *ego* (except *nostrum*), to all the forms of *tū* (except *tū* and *vestrum*), to *sibi*, *sē*, and some forms of *suus*; *egomet*, *I myself*. Instead of *tūmet*, *tūte* is found; from which early poets formed occasionally *tūtemet*, *tūtimet*. *Met* is also occasionally appended to forms of *meus* (early) and *tuus* (late).

3. The enclitic *-pte* is joined very rarely to forms of the Personal Pronoun (*mēpte*, Pl., *Men.* 1059); more often to the Abl. Sing. of the Possessives; it is especially common with *suō*; *suōpte ingeniō*, *by his own genius*.

4. From *noster* and *vester* and also from *cūius*, *whose?* are formed the Gentile adjectives of one ending: *nostrās*, *of our country*; *vestrās*, *of your country*; *cūiās*, *of whose country?* G. *nostrātis*, *vestrātis*, *cūiātis*.

## 103.

## B. DETERMINATIVE PRONOUNS.

I. *is*, *he*, *that*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N.	<i>is</i> ,	<i>ea</i> ,	<i>id</i> ,	<i>ii</i> , <i>eī</i> , <i>i</i> ,	<i>eae</i> ,	<i>ea</i> ,
G.	<i>ēius</i> ,	<i>ēius</i> ,	<i>ēius</i> ,	<i>eōrum</i> ,	<i>eārum</i> ,	<i>eōrum</i> ,
D.	<i>eī</i> ,	<i>eī</i> ,	<i>eī</i> ,		<i>iīs</i> , <i>eīs</i> , <i>is</i> ,	
Ac.	<i>eum</i> ,	<i>eam</i> ,	<i>id</i> ,	<i>eōs</i> ,	<i>eās</i> ,	<i>ea</i> ,
Ab.	<i>eō</i> ,	<i>eā</i> ,	<i>eō</i> .		<i>iīs</i> , <i>eīs</i> , <i>is</i> .	

NOTE.—The following variations in the forms are found: N. *it* for *id* (post-cl.); G. *ēius* (inscr.), *ēiūs* (early poetry); D. *ēiēī* (inscr.), *ēī*, *ēī* (early poetry), *eae* (f.); Ac. *em*, *im* (early), for *eum*; Pl. N. *ēīs*, *eīs*, *iēīs*, *iēī* (early and rare), for *eī*; the usual classical form is *ii*; G. *eum* (inscr.) for *eōrum*; D. *ēiēīs*, *ēēīs*, *iēīs* (inscr.), *ībus* (early poetry and rare); the usual classical form is *iīs*. The early forms *sum*, *sam*, *sōs*, *sās*, for *eum*, *eam*, *eōs*, *eās*, are cited by Festus. Acc. and Abl. Sing. and Gen. Pl. often suffer Synizesis in early poetry.

2. *idem* (*is* + *dem*), *the same*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N.	<i>idem</i> ,	<i>eadem</i> ,	<i>idem</i> ,	<i>idem</i> , <i>eīdem</i> , <i>iīdem</i> ,	<i>eaedem</i> ,	<i>eadem</i> ,
G.	<i>ēiusdem</i> ,	<i>ēiusdem</i> ,	<i>ēiusdem</i> ,	<i>eōrundem</i> ,	<i>eārundem</i> ,	<i>eōrundem</i> ,
D.	<i>eīdem</i> ,	<i>eīdem</i> ,	<i>eīdem</i> ,		<i>iīdem</i> , <i>eīdem</i> , <i>iīdem</i> ,	
Ac.	<i>eundem</i> ,	<i>eandem</i> ,	<i>idem</i> ,	<i>eōsdem</i> ,	<i>eāsdem</i> ,	<i>eadem</i> ,
Abl.	<i>eōdem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> ,	<i>eōdem</i> .		<i>iīdem</i> , <i>eīdem</i> , <i>iīdem</i> .	

NOTE.—Variations in form: N. *ēīdem*, *iīdem* (inscr., early) for *idem*; D. *īdem* (inscr.) for *eīdem*; Pl. N. *īdem* (more usual in poetry), *ēīsdem*, *iīsdem* (inscr.); D. Ab. *iīsdem* (rare), *eīsdem* (uncommon in classical prose). Synizesis is common.

3. *ipse* (perhaps *is* + *pse*), *he*, *self*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N.	<i>ipse</i> ,	<i>ipsa</i> ,	<i>ipsum</i> ,	<i>ipsī</i> ,	<i>ipsae</i> ,	<i>ipsa</i> ,
G.	<i>ipsius</i> ,	<i>ipsius</i> ,	<i>ipsius</i> ,	<i>ipsōrum</i> ,	<i>ipsārum</i> ,	<i>ipsōrum</i> ,
D.	<i>ipsī</i> ,	<i>ipsī</i> ,	<i>ipsī</i> ,	<i>ipsīs</i> ,	<i>ipsīs</i> ,	<i>ipsīs</i> ,
Ac.	<i>ipsum</i> ,	<i>ipsam</i> ,	<i>ipsum</i> ,	<i>ipsōs</i> ,	<i>ipsās</i> ,	<i>ipsa</i> ,
Ab.	<i>ipsō</i> ,	<i>ipsā</i> .	<i>ipsō</i> .	<i>ipsīs</i> ,	<i>ipsīs</i> ,	<i>ipsīs</i> .

NOTES.—1. In the earlier time the first part of **ipse** was also declined, thus: N. **eapse**; Ac. **eumpse**, **eampse**; Ab. **eōpse**, **eāpse**. Other forms are doubtful.

2. For **ipse** the form **ipsus** was very commonly employed in early Latin, but fades out with **TERENCE**, and later is only sporadic.

3. Inflectional variations are: D. **ipsō**, **ipsae** (late); Pl. N. **ipsēī** (inser.). The few other forms are uncertain. **Ipsius** is dissyllabic twice in **TERENCE**.

4. **PLAUTUS** shows **ipsissimus** (comp. Gr. *αὐτότατος*), and in late Latin **ipsimus** and **ipsima** are found. A post-Ciceronian colloquialism was **isse**, **issa**.

5. **Ipse** combines with **-met**: **ipsemet** and **ipsimet** (N. Pl.), both rare.

## 104. C. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

### I. Demonstrative Pronoun for the First Person.

**hic**, *this*.

Sg.—N.	<b>hic</b> ,	<b>haec</b> ,	<b>hōc</b> ,	Pl.— <b>hi</b> ,	<b>hae</b> ,	<b>haec</b> , <i>these</i> ,
G.	<b>hūius</b> ,	<b>hūius</b> ,	<b>hūius</b> ,	<b>hōrum</b> ,	<b>hārum</b> ,	<b>hōrum</b> ,
D.	<b>huic</b> ,	<b>huic</b> ,	<b>huic</b> ,	<b>his</b> ,	<b>his</b> ,	<b>his</b> ,
Ac.	<b>hunc</b> ,	<b>hanc</b> ,	<b>hōc</b> ,	<b>hōs</b> ,	<b>hās</b> ,	<b>haec</b> ,
Abl.	<b>hōc</b> ,	<b>hāc</b> ,	<b>hōc</b> .	<b>his</b> ,	<b>his</b> ,	<b>his</b> .

NOTES.—1. The full forms of **hic** in **-ce** are still found in limited numbers in early Latin: G. **hōiusce** (in the phrase **hūiusce modī**, the form is common in the classical period and later); D. **hōice** (inser.); Pl. N. **hēisce**, **hisce** (not uncommon); G. **hōrunc** (rare); D., Ab. **hisce** (in **PLAUT.** and **TER.** usually before vowels); Ac. **hōsce**, **hāsce** (not uncommon; occasionally in **CIC.**).

2. Other variations in form are: G. **hūius** and **hūiūs** (in early poetry for metrical reasons); D. **hae** (rare and early); Ac. **hunc**; Pl. N. **hēī**, **hēīs** for **hi**, **haec** for **hae** (in **PLAUT.** and **TER.** regularly before vowels or **h**, occasionally before consonants; occasionally also in classical times and later); G. **hōrunc**, **hārunc** (early). Pl. N. **hic** for **hi** and D. Ab. **hībus** for **his** are doubtful.

3. **Hic** combines with **-ne**. Usually **-ne** was appended to **hice**, *etc.*, and the **e** weakened to **i**. Sometimes **-ne** is added directly to the regular forms. The examples are frequent in early Latin, but occur also in **CIC.** and later writers: **hīcine**, **haecine**, **hōcine**, **huicine**, **huncine**, **hancine**, **hōcine**, **hācine**, **haecine** (N. Pl. fem.), **haecine** (N. Pl. neut.), **hīcine**, **hōscine**, **hāscine**; also **hīcne**, **haecne**, **hōcne**, **hūiusne**, **huncne**, **hancne**, **hōcne**, **hācne**, **haecne**, **hōsne**, **hāsne**.

### II. Demonstrative Pronoun for the Second Person.

**iste**, *that*.

Sg.—N.	<b>iste</b> ,	<b>ista</b> ,	<b>istud</b> ,	Pl.— <b>istī</b> ,	<b>istae</b> ,	<b>ista</b> ,
G.	<b>istius</b> ,	<b>istius</b> ,	<b>istius</b> ,	<b>istōrum</b> ,	<b>istārum</b> ,	<b>istōrum</b> ,
D.	<b>istī</b> ,	<b>istī</b> ,	<b>istī</b> ,	<b>istīs</b> ,	<b>istīs</b> ,	<b>istīs</b> ,
Ac.	<b>istum</b> ,	<b>istam</b> ,	<b>istud</b> ,	<b>istōs</b> ,	<b>istās</b> ,	<b>ista</b> ,
Abl.	<b>istō</b> ,	<b>istā</b> ,	<b>istō</b> .	<b>istīs</b> ,	<b>istīs</b> ,	<b>istīs</b> .

NOTES.—1. The Dat. Sing. shows **istō** in late and **istae** in early Latin.

2. **Iste** combines with **-ce**. In a very few cases (three times in early, once in late Latin) this **-ce** is retained unchanged, but usually it is shortened to **-c**. The following forms occur, all except **istuc** (more common than **istud** in classical Latin) and **istaec**

(neuter, occasionally in CICERO., *Ep.* and later), being wholly confined to early and late Latin. N. *istic, istaec, istuc* (*istoc*, once); D. *istic*; Ac. *istunc, istanc*; Ab. *istōc, istāc*. Pl. N. *istaec* (f.), *istaec* (n.).

3. In a few cases in PLAUT. and TER., -*ne* is appended to *istic*, *etc.*, the preceding *e* being weakened to *i*: *istucine, istōcine, istācine, istōscin*'.

### III. Demonstrative Pronoun for the Third Person.

S <small>G.</small> —N.	<i>ille</i> ,	<i>illa</i> ,	<i>illud</i> ,	PL.— <i>illi</i> ,	<i>illae</i> ,	<i>illa</i> ,
G.	<i>illius</i> ,	<i>illius</i> ,	<i>illius</i> ,	<i>illōrum</i> ,	<i>illārum</i> ,	<i>illōrum</i> ,
D.	<i>illi</i> ,	<i>illi</i> ,	<i>illi</i> ,	<i>illis</i> ,	<i>illis</i> ,	<i>illis</i> ,
Ac.	<i>illum</i> ,	<i>illam</i> ,	<i>illud</i> ,	<i>illōs</i> ,	<i>illās</i> ,	<i>illa</i> ,
Ab.	<i>illō</i> ,	<i>illā</i> ,	<i>illō</i> .	<i>illis</i> ,	<i>illis</i> ,	<i>illis</i> .

NOTES.—1. The older forms from stem *ollo-* occur on early inscriptions, in laws, and in the poets (except PLAUT. and TER.), even to a very late period, as follows: N. *ollus*, -*e* (early); D. *olli*; Pl. N. *olli, olla*; G. *ollom, ollārum* (early); D. *ollēs, ollis*; Ac. *ollōs* (early).

2. Inscriptions show *illut* occasionally for *illud*. Other rare forms are: G. *illi* (doubtful); D. *illae*; Pl. N. *illēi*. *Illius* is often dissyllabic in early Latin.

3. *Ille* often combines with -*ce*, which is, however, usually shortened to -*c*: *illūsce, illāce, illōce, illōsce, illāsce, illisce*, all in early Latin; shortened forms: N. *illic, illaec, illuc*; D. *illic*; Ac. *illunc, illanc*; Ab. *illōc, illāc*; Pl. N. *illaec* (f.), *illaec* (n.), all with rare exceptions confined to PLAUTUS and TERENCE.

4. A few cases of combination with -*ne*: *illicine, illancine* occur in PLAUTUS and TERENCE.

## 105.

### D. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

*quī* (Substantive and Adjective), *who*.

S <small>G.</small> —N.	<i>quī</i> ,	<i>quae</i> ,	<i>quod</i> ,	PL.— <i>quī</i> ,	<i>quae</i> ,	<i>quae</i> ,
G.	<i>cūius</i> ,	<i>cūius</i> ,	<i>cūius</i> ,	<i>quōrum</i> ,	<i>quārum</i> ,	<i>quōrum</i> ,
D.	<i>cui</i> ,	<i>cui</i> ,	<i>cui</i> ,	<i>quibus</i> ,	<i>quibus</i> ,	<i>quibus</i> ,
Ac.	<i>quem</i> ,	<i>quam</i> ,	<i>quod</i> ,	<i>quōs</i> ,	<i>quās</i> ,	<i>quae</i> ,
Ab.	<i>quō</i> ,	<i>quā</i> ,	<i>quō</i> .	<i>quibus</i> ,	<i>quibus</i> ,	<i>quibus</i> .

General Relatives are :

Substantive.	<i>quisquis, whoever,</i>	<i>quidquid, quicquid, whatever.</i>
Adjective.	( <i>quīquī, quaequae, quodquod</i> ),	<i>whosoever.</i>
	<i>quicunque, quaecunque, quodcunque,</i>	<i>whichever.</i>

NOTES.—1. Archaic and legal are *quis* and *quid* as relatives.

2. The prevalent form of Gen. on inscriptions of the Republican period and in early Latin is *quōius*; *quius, cuius*, and other variations are also found. Other archaic forms are: D., *quoi*. D. Pl., *quēis*. D. Pl. *quīs* is common in the poets at all periods; and also in prose writers; but not cited from CAESAR, and only from the letters of CICERO.

3. The Abl. Sing. *quī* for all genders is the prevalent form in early times, and in combination with *cum* is preferred to *quō, quā* by CICERO.

4. *Quisquis* is occasionally used as an adjective, but not in classical Latin. Occasionally, also, but rarely in CICERO, it is used for *quisque, quidque*. The Nom. Sing. of the adjective *quīquī, etc.*, probably does not occur. In the other cases the forms are

the same as those of **quisquis** and can be distinguished only by the usage. In combination with **modi** we find **cuius** in Gen. sometimes in CICERO. In the Plural the only form found is **quibusquibus**. (LIV. XLI., 8, 10.)

5 In **quicumque** the **-cumque** is often separated by tmesis. The only variations in form are **quēiquomque**, **quēscumque** in early Latin, and occasionally **quiscumque** for **quibuscumque** (several times in CICERO).

## 106.

## E. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

<i>Substantive.</i>	<b>quis ?</b> <i>who ?</i>	<b>quid ?</b> <i>what ?</i>
<i>Adjective.</i>	<b>qui ?</b>	<b>quae ?</b> <i>which ?</i>
<i>Subst. and Adj.</i>	<b>uter ?</b>	<b>utrum ?</b> <i>who, which of two ?</i>

Sg. N.	<b>quis ?</b>	<b>quid ?</b> <i>who ? what ?</i>	POSSESSIVE.
G.	<b>cūius ?</b>	<b>cūius ?</b> <i>whose ?</i>	<b>cūius, cūia, cūium, whose !</b>
D.	<b>cui ?</b>	<b>cui ?</b> <i>to, for whom ?</i>	
Ac.	<b>quem ?</b>	<b>quid ?</b> <i>whom ? what ?</i>	
Ab.	<b>quō ?</b>	<b>quō ?</b> <i>from, with, by whom or what ?</i>	

The plural of the substantive interrogative pronoun and both numbers of the adjective interrogative pronoun coincide with the forms of the relative **qui**, **quae**, **quod**, *who, which*.

## Strengthened Interrogatives.

<i>Substantive.</i>	<b>quisnam ?</b> <i>who, pray ?</i>	<b>quidnam ?</b> <i>what, pray ?</i>
	<b>ecquis ?</b> <i>is there any one who ?</i>	<b>ecquid ?</b>
<i>Adjective.</i>	<b>quīnam ?</b>	<b>quodnam ?</b> <i>which, pray ?</i>
	<b>ecqui ?</b>	<b>ecquod ?</b>
	<b>ecqua ?</b> ( <b>ecquae</b> ) ?	

REMARK.—In the poets **qui** is sometimes found as a substantive for **quis** in independent sentences. In dependent sentences the use always fluctuates. A difference in meaning can hardly be made other than that **qui** is generally used in much the same sense as **quālis**. On the other hand, **quis** is often used as an adjective for **qui**; usually, however, the substantive which follows is best looked upon as in apposition. In the classical period **qui** is the normal form for the adjective in dependent questions.

NOTES.—1. Inscriptions show here and there **quit** and **quof** for **quid** and **quod**. **Quid** is sometimes used for **quod**, but usually in the phrase **quid nōmen tibi est** and only in early Latin. Sometimes **quae** seems to be used as a substantive, but another explanation is always possible.

2. In the oblique cases the same variations occur as in the oblique cases of the relative. The Abl. **qui** means *how ?*

3. For the declension of **uter** see 76.

4. The possessive **cūius**, **quōius**, **-a**, **-um** was used both as relative and as interrogi-

tive. It is frequent in **PLAUT.** and **TER.**, but rare in other authors. Besides the Nom. the only forms found are Ac. **quōdium**, **quōdīam**; Ab. **quōdiā**; Pl. N. **quōdiāe**, and, perhaps, G. Pl. **quōdium**.

5. **Quisnam** is sometimes used as an adjective for **quīnam** and **quīnam** occasionally for **quisnam** as a substantive. The **-nam** may be separated by tmesis. **Ecquis** and **ecquī** are not common, and are subject to the same fluctuations as **quis** and **quī**. **Ecquis** combines with **-nam** to form **ecquisnam** and a few other occasional forms, as : **ecquaenam**, **ecquidnam**, **ecquodnam**, **ecquōnam**, **ecquōsnam**.

## 107.

## F. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

1. Substantive.	<b>aliquis</b> , <b>aliqua</b> (rare),	<b>aliquid</b> ,	{ <i>somebody, some one</i> <i>or other.</i>
	<b>quis</b> , <b>qua</b> ,	<b>quid</b> ,	
Adjective.	<b>aliquī</b> , <b>aliqua</b> ,	<b>aliquid</b> ,	{ <i>some, any.</i>
	<b>quī</b> , <b>quae</b> , <b>qua</b> ,	<b>quod</b> ,	

REMARK.—The common rule is that **quis** and **quī** occur properly only after **sī**, **nisi**, **nē**, **num**, or after a relative ; otherwise **aliquis**, **aliquī**.

NOTES.—1. **Aliquis** and **quis** are not unfrequently used as adjectives instead of **aliquī**, **quī**, but rarely in early Latin. Occasionally (not in early Latin) **aliquī** is used as a substantive. **Quī** is also so used, but only after **sī**, **sīn**, **sīve**, **nē**.

The use of **quid** and **aliquid** for **quod** and **aliquod**, and of **aliquod** for **aliquid**, is very rare and late.

2. Besides the variations in form mentioned under the relative and interrogative, the indefinite **quis** shows **quēs** as an early form for **quī** (N. Pl.), and in Pl. Nom. Acc. neut. **quae** and **qua** in equally good usage. **Aliquis** shows in Abl. Sing. **aliquī** (rare and early), in the Pl. Nom. Acc. neut. always **aliqua**, and not unfrequently in post-classical Latin **aliquis** for **aliquibus**.

2. **quidam**, **quaedam**, **quiddam** (and **quoddam**), *a certain, certain one.*

REMARK.—**Quidam**, **quaedam** occur both as substantives and adjectives, but **quiddam** is always substantive, **quoddam** always adjective. The Plural is rare in early Latin (never in **PLAUTUS**).

3. **quispiam**, **quaepiam**, **quidpiam** (and **quodpiam**), *some one, some.*  
**quisquam**, ———, **quicquam**, *any one (at all).* No plural.

NOTES.—1. **quispiam**, **quaepiam** are rare as adjectives. In the neuter, **quippiam** and **quoppiam** occur rarely. The comic poets do not use the Plural, and it is rare elsewhere.

2. **Quisquam** is seldom used as an adjective, except with designations of persons : **scriptor quisquam**, *any writer (at all)*, **Gallus quisquam**, *any Gaul (at all)*. The corresponding adjective is **ūllus**. The use of **quisquam** as a feminine is only in early Latin. **Quidquam** is a poor spelling for **quicquam**. In Abl. Sing. **quiquam** occurs occasionally. In Sing. Gen. Dat. Acc. frequently, and in Plural always, forms of **ūllus** were used.



4. *quivis, quaevis, quidvis* (and *quodvis*), } *any one you please,*  
*quilibet, quaelibet, quidlibet* (and *quodlibet*), } *you like.*

NOTE.—*Quivis, quaevis, quilibet* (archaic *-lubet*), *quaelibet* may be used either as substantives or adjectives, but *quidvis, quidlibet* are substantives only, *quodvis, quodlibet* are adjectives only. Peculiar forms of *quivis* are G. *quoivis* in *quoivis-modi* (PLAUT.); D. *quōvis* (late); Abl. *quīvis* (PLAUT., TER.), and the compounds *cūisvīscumque* (LUCR. III., 388) and *quōvīscumque* (MART. XIV., 2, 1). *Quilibet* may be separated by tmesis into *qui* and *libet* (SALL., *Cat.* 5, 4).

5. *quisque, quaeque, quidque* and *quodque*, *each one.*

*ūnusquisque, ūnaquaeque, ūnumquidque* and *ūnumquodque*, *each one severally.*

NOTE.—*Quisque* occurs occasionally in early Latin as a feminine, and with its forms is not unfrequently found in early and late Latin for *quisquis*, or *quicumque*. *Quidque* is substantive, *quodque* adjective. In the Abl. Sing. *quīque* occurs occasionally. The Plural is regular, but rare until post-classical times. In Nom. Pl. *quaeque* is either fem. or neuter.

108. The declension of the pronominal adjectives has been given in 76. They are :

*ūllus, -a, -um, any; nūllus, -a, -um, no one, not one.* The corresponding substantives are *nēmō* (76) and *nihil*, the latter of which forms only *nihili* (Gen.) and *nihilō* (Abl.), and those only in certain combinations.

*nōnnūllus, -a, -um, some, many a*, declined like *nūllus*.

*alius, -a, -ud, another*; the Possessive of *alius* is *aliēnus*.

*alter, -era, -erum, the other, one (of two).*

*neuter, neutra, neutrum, neither of two.*

*alteruter, alterutra, alterutrum, the one or the other of the two.*

*uterque, utraque, utrumque, each of two, either.* *ambō, -ae, -ō, both.*

*utervīs, utravīs, utrumvīs,* } *whichever you please of the two.*  
*uterlibet, utralibet, utrumlibet,* }

## CORRELATIVES.

### 109. I. CORRELATIVE PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

INTERROGATIVES.	DEMONSTRATIVES.	RELATIVES.
<i>quis ? who ?</i>	<i>is, that,</i>	<i>qui, who.</i>
<i>quālis ? of what kind ?</i>	<i>tālis, such (of that kind),</i>	<i>quālis, as (of which kind).</i>
<i>quantus ? how much ?</i>	<i>tantus, so much,</i>	<i>quantus, as much.</i>
<i>quot ? how many ?</i>	<i>tot, so many,</i>	<i>quot, as many.</i>

## 110. II. CORRELATIVE PRONOMINAL ADVERBS.

1. Pronominal adverbs of *place*.

ubi ?	where ?	ibī,	there.	ubi,	where.
quā ?	where, which way ?	hic, hāc,	here, this way.	quā,	where, which way.
		istic, istāc,	there, that way.		
		illic, illāc,	there, yonder way.		
unde ?	whence ?	inde,	thence.	unde,	whence.
		hinc,	hence.		
		istinc,	thence.		
		illinc,	thence, from yonder.		
quō ?	whither ?	eō,	thither.	quō,	whither.
		hūc, (hōc,)	hither.		
		istūc, (istōc,)	thither.		
		illūc, (illōc,)	thither, yonder.		

2. Pronominal adverbs of *time*.

quandō ?	when ?	tum,	then.	quandō,	when.
		tunc,	at that time.	quom, cum.	
		nunc,	now.		
quotiēns ?	how often ?	totiēns,	so often.	quotiēns,	as often as.

3. Pronominal adverbs of *manner*.

quōmodo ?	quī ?	how ?	ita, sic,	so, thus.	ut, utī,	as.
quam ?		how much ?	tam,	so much.	quam,	as.

## 111. III. COMPOUNDS OF THE RELATIVE FORMS.

1. The relative pronouns become *indefinite* by prefixing *ali-*:

*aliquantus*, somewhat great ; *aliquot*, several, some ; *alicubi*, some-where ; *alicunde*, from somewhere ; *aliquandō*, at some time.

2. The simple relatives become *universal* by doubling themselves, or by suffixing *-cunque* (*-cumque*), sometimes *-que*:

*quantuscunque*, however great ; *quālescunque*, of whatever kind ; *quot-quot*, however many ; *ubīcunque*, wheresoever ; *quandōcunque*, *quandōque*, whenever ; *quotiēscunque*, however often ; *utut*, in whatever way ; *utcun-que*, howsoever ; *quamquam*, however, although.

3. Many of the relatives are further compounded with *-vis* or *-libet*:

*quantuslibet*, *quantusvis*, as great as you please ; *ubīvis*, where you will ; *quamvis*, as you please, though.

## THE VERB.

112. The inflection given to the verbal stem is called *Conjugation*, and expresses :

1. Person and Number ;
2. Voice—Active or Passive.

The Active Voice denotes that the action proceeds from the subject : **amō**, *I love*.

The Passive Voice denotes that the subject receives the action of the Verb : **amor**, *I am loved*.

3. Tense—Present, Imperfect, Future,  
Perfect, Pluperfect, Future Perfect.

The Present, **amō**, *I love* ; Future, **amābō**, *I shall love* ; Pure Perfect, **amāvī**, *I have loved* ; Future Perfect, **amāverō**, *I shall have loved*, are called *Principal Tenses*.

The Imperfect, **amābam**, *I was loving* ; Historical Perfect, **amāvī**, *I loved* ; Pluperfect, **amāveram**, *I had loved*, are called *Historical Tenses*.

REMARK.—The Pure and Historical Perfects are identical in form.

4. Mood—Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative.

The Indicative Mood is the mood of the *fact* : **amō**, *I love*.

The Subjunctive Mood is the mood of the *idea* : **amem**, *may I love, I may love* ; **amet**, *may he love, he may love* : **sī amet**, *if he should love*.

The Imperative Mood is the mood of *command* : **amā**, *love thou !*

For further distinctions see Syntax.

5. These forms belong to the Finite Verb. Outside of the Finite Verb, and akin to the noun, are the verbal forms called Infinitive, Supine, Participle, Gerund.

The Infinitive active and the Supine are related to the noun, the former being originally a Dative or Locative and the Supine showing two cases, Accusative and Ablative.

No adequate uniform translation can be given, but for the general meaning see paradigms.

113. A large number of Verbs have the passive form but

are active in meaning : **hortor**, *I exhort*. These are called *deponent* (from **dēpōnere**, *to lay aside*).

**114.** The Inflection of the Finite Verb is effected by the addition of personal endings to the verb stems.

1. The personal endings are mostly pronominal forms, which serve to indicate not only person, but also number and voice. They are :

ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
<b>Sg.—1. -m</b> (or a vowel, coalescing with the characteristic ending); <b>Pf. 1.</b>	
<b>2. -s</b> ; <b>Pf. -s-tī</b> ; <b>Impv. -tō(d)</b> or wanting,	<b>-ris</b> or <b>-re</b> ; <b>Impv. -re</b> or <b>-tor</b> .
<b>3. -t</b> ; <b>Impv. tō(d)</b> ,	<b>-tur</b> ; <b>Impv. -tor</b> .
<b>Pl.—1. -mus</b> ,	<b>-mur</b> .
<b>2. -tis</b> ; <b>Pf. -s-tis</b> ; <b>Impv. -te</b> or <b>-tōte</b> ,	<b>-mini</b> .
<b>3. -nt</b> ; <b>Pf. ērunt</b> or <b>ēre</b> ; <b>Impv. -ntō(d)</b> ,	<b>-ntur</b> ; <b>Impv. -ntor</b> .

2. The personal endings are added directly to the stem in the Present Indicative and Imperative only, except in the third conjugation, in some forms of the Future Indicative. In the other tenses certain modifications occur in the stem, or tense signs are employed :

(a) In the Present Subjunctive final **ā** of the stem is changed to **ē** (e); final **ē** to **eā** (ea); final **ī** to **iā** (ia); final **e** to **ā** (a). In the Future Indicative final **e** is changed to **a** or **ē** (e); final **ī** to **ia** (iē, ie).

(b) The tense signs are : for the Imperfect Indicative, **bā** (ba); for the Imperfect Subjunctive, **rē** (re); for the Future Indicative in **ā** and **ē** verbs **bī** (b, bu); for the Perfect Indicative, **ī** (i); for the Perfect Subjunctive, **-erī**; for the Pluperfect Indicative, **erā** (era); for the Pluperfect Subjunctive, **issē** (isse); for the Future Perfect Indicative, **erī** (er).

3. The stem itself is variously modified ; either by change of vowel or by addition of suffixes, and appears in the following forms :

(a) The *Present* stem; being the stem of the Present, Imperfect, and Future tenses. These forms are called the *Present System*.

(b) The *Perfect* stem; being the stem of the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect tenses. These forms are called the *Perfect System*.

(c) The *Supine*\* stem; being the stem of the Future Active and Perfect Passive Participles and of the Supine. These forms are called the *Supine System*.

NOTE.—For details as to the formation of these stems, see 132 ff.

\* This designation is retained because it is an established *terminus technicus*; as a matter of fact the Supine stem is not the stem of the Participles.

**115.** 1. The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect tenses in the Passive are formed by the combination of the Perfect Passive Participle with forms of the verb *sum*, *I am*.

2. The Future Passive Infinitive is formed by the combination of the Supine with the Present Passive Infinitive of *eo*, *I go*.

3. The infinite parts of the verb are formed by the addition of the following endings to the stems :

	ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.
INFINITIVE.	Pr.	-re,	ri, i.
	Pf.	-isse,	-tus (-ta, -tum), esse.
	Fut.	-tūrum (-a, -um), esse,	-tum iri.
PARTICIPLES.	Pr.	-ns (G. -ntis),	
	Pf.	—	-tus (-ta, -tum).
	Fut.	-tūrus (-a, -um).	
	GERUND.	GERUNDIVE.	SUPINE.
	-ndi (-dō, -dum, -dō).	-ndus (-a, -um).	-tum ; -tū

## 116. THE VERB *sum*, *I am*.

(Pres. stem *es*-, Perf. stem *fu*-)

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
		PRESENT.	
Sg.—1.	<i>sum</i> , <i>I am</i> ,	<i>sim</i> ,	<i>I be</i> ,
2.	<i>es</i> , <i>thou art</i> ,	<i>sis</i> ,	<i>thou be</i> ,
3.	<i>est</i> , <i>he, she, it is</i> .	<i>sit</i> ,	<i>he, she, it be</i> .
Pl.—1.	<i>sumus</i> , <i>we are</i> ,	<i>simus</i> ,	<i>we be</i> ,
2.	<i>estis</i> , <i>you are</i> ,	<i>sitis</i> ,	<i>you be</i> ,
3.	<i>sunt</i> , <i>they are</i>	<i>sint</i> ,	<i>they be</i> .
		IMPERFECT.	
Sg.—1.	<i>eram</i> , <i>I was</i> ,	<i>essem</i> ,	<i>I were</i> (forem).
2.	<i>erās</i> , <i>thou wast</i> ,	<i>essēs</i> ,	<i>thou wert</i> (forēs),
3.	<i>erat</i> , <i>he was</i> .	<i>esset</i> ,	<i>he were</i> (foret).
Pl.—1.	<i>erāmus</i> , <i>we were</i> ,	<i>essēmus</i> ,	<i>we were</i> ,
2.	<i>erātis</i> , <i>you were</i> ,	<i>essētis</i> ,	<i>you were</i> ,
3.	<i>erant</i> , <i>they were</i> ,	<i>essent</i> ,	<i>they were</i> (forent).
		FUTURE.	
Sg.—1.	<i>erō</i> , <i>I shall be</i> ,		
2.	<i>eris</i> , <i>thou wilt be</i> ,		
3.	<i>erit</i> , <i>he will be</i> .		
Pl.—1.	<i>erimus</i> , <i>we shall be</i> ,		
2.	<i>eritis</i> , <i>you will be</i> ,		
3.	<i>erunt</i> , <i>they will be</i> .		



## PERFECT.

SG.—1. fui,	<i>I have been, I was,</i>	fuerim,	<i>I have, may have, been,</i>
2. fuisti,	<i>thou hast been, thou wast,</i>	fueris,	<i>thou have, mayest have, been,</i>
3. fuit,	<i>he has been, he was.</i>	fuerit,	<i>he have, may have, been.</i>
PL.—1. fuimus,	<i>we have been, we were,</i>	fuerimus,	<i>we have, may have, been,</i>
2. fuistis,	<i>you have been, you were,</i>	fueritis,	<i>you have, may have, been,</i>
3. fuerunt,	<i>fuere, they have been, they were.</i>	fuerint,	<i>they have, may have, been.</i>

## PLUPERFECT.

SG.—1. fueram,	<i>I had been,</i>	fuissem,	<i>I had, might have, been,</i>
2. fuerās,	<i>thou hadst been,</i>	fuissēs,	<i>thou hadst, mightst have, been,</i>
3. fuerat,	<i>he had been.</i>	fuisset,	<i>he had, might have, been.</i>
PL.—1. fuerāmus,	<i>we had been,</i>	fuissēmus,	<i>we had, might have, been,</i>
2. fuerātis,	<i>you had been,</i>	fuissētis,	<i>you had, might have, been,</i>
3. fuerant,	<i>they had been.</i>	fuissent,	<i>they had, might have, been.</i>

## FUTURE PERFECT.

SG.—1. fuerō,	<i>I shall have been,</i>
2. fuerīs,	<i>thou wilt have been,</i>
3. fuerit,	<i>he will have been.</i>
PL.—1. fuerimus,	<i>we shall have been,</i>
2. fueritis,	<i>you will have been,</i>
3. fuerint,	<i>they will have been.</i>

## IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.	FUTURE.
SG.—1. —,	—,
2. es, <i>be thou,</i>	estō, <i>thou shalt be,</i>
3. —,	estō, <i>he shall be.</i>

PL.—1. —,	
2. este, <i>be ye,</i>	estōte, <i>you shall be,</i>
3. —,	suntō, <i>they shall be.</i>

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. esse,	<i>to be,</i>
PERF. fuisse,	<i>to have been,</i>
FUT. futūrum (-am, -um) esse	<i>(fore), to be about to be.</i>

## PARTICIPLE.

FUT. futūrus, -a, -um,	<i>about to be.</i>
------------------------	---------------------

NOTES.—1. Early forms are :

(a) In the Pres. Ind. **ēs** for **es**; regularly in **PLAUTUS** and **TERENCE**, but the quantity of the vowel is disputed.

(b) In the Pres. Subjv. **siem**, **siēs**, **siet**, **sient**; regular in inscriptions until the first century B. C. and common in early poets chiefly for metrical reasons; side by side with this occur **fuam**, **fuās**, **fuat**, **fuant** (also **LUCR.** iv., 637, **VERG.** x., 108, **LIV.** xxv., 12, 6), which are taken up again by very late poets. **Sit** is also common.

(c) In the Impf. Subjv. the forms **forem**, **forēs**, **foret**, **forent** were probably in very early times equivalent to **futūrus essem**, *etc.*; and occasionally this force seems to be still present in the later period, especially in **SALLUST**; usually, however, they are equivalent to **essem**, **essēs**, **esset**, **essent**; in the Inf. **fore** always remained the equivalent of **futūrum esse**.

(d) In all the Perfect forms the original length was **fū-**, which is still found occasionally in early Latin.

(e) Early and principally legal are the rare forms **escit**, **escet**, **esit**, for **erit**; **-essint** for **erunt**.

2. The Pres. Part. is found only in the compounds; **ab-sēns**, *absent*, and **prae-sēns**, *present*.

### 117. COMPOUNDS OF **sum**, *I am*.

<b>ab-sum</b> , <i>I am away, absent.</i>	<b>Pf.</b>	<b>ob-sum</b> , <i>I am against, I hurt.</i>	<b>Pf</b>
( <b>abfui</b> ) <b>āfui</b> .		<b>obfui</b> or <b>offui</b> .	
<b>ad-sum</b> , <i>I am present.</i>	<b>Pf.</b>	<b>affui</b> .	<b>pos-sum</b> , <i>I am able.</i>
<b>dē-sum</b> , <i>I am wanting.</i>		<b>prae-sum</b> , <i>I am over, I superintend</i>	
<b>in-sum</b> , <i>I am in.</i>		<b>prō-sum</b> , <i>I am for, I profit.</i>	
<b>inter-sum</b> , <i>I am between.</i>		<b>sub-sum</b> , <i>I am under.</i>	<b>No Pf.</b>
		<b>super-sum</b> , <i>I am, or remain, over.</i>	

These are all inflected like **sum**; but **prōsum** and **possum** require special treatment by reason of their composition.

### **Prōsum**, *I profit*.

118. In the forms of **prōsum**, **prōd-** is used before vowels.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
<b>PRESENT.</b>	<b>prō-sum</b> , <b>prōd-es</b> , <b>prōd-est</b> , <b>prō-sumus</b> , <b>prōd-estis</b> , <b>prō-sunt</b> ,	<b>prō-sim</b> ,
<b>IMPERFECT.</b>	<b>prōd-eram</b> ,	<b>prōd-essem</b> ,
<b>FUTURE.</b>	<b>prōd-erō</b> ,	
<b>PERFECT.</b>	<b>prō-fui</b> ,	<b>prō-fuerim</b> ,
<b>PLUPERFECT.</b>	<b>prō-fueram</b> ,	<b>prō-fuissem</b> .
<b>FUT. PERF.</b>	<b>prō-fuerō</b> ,	
<b>INFINITIVE.</b>	<b>Pres.</b> <b>prōd-esse</b> ; <b>Fut.</b> <b>prō-futūrum esse</b> (-fore); <b>Perf.</b> <b>prō-fuisse</b> .	

### **Possum**, *I am able, I can*.

119. **Possum** is compounded of **pot** (**potis**, **pote**) and **sum**; **t** becomes **s** before **s**; in the perfect forms, **f** (**pot-fui**) is lost.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

SG.—1. pos-sum, <i>I am able, can,</i>	pos-sim, <i>I be able.</i>
2. pot-es,	pos-sis,
3. pot-est.	pos-sit.
PL.—1. pos-sumus,	pos-simus,
2. pot-estis,	pos-sitis,
3. pos-sunt.	pos-sint.

## IMPERFECT.

SG.—1. pot-eram, <i>I was able, could,</i>	pos-sem, <i>I were, might be, able.</i>
2. pot-erās,	pos-sēs,
3. pot-erat.	pos-set.
PL.—1. pot-erāmus,	pos-sēmus,
2. pot-erātis,	pos-sētis,
3. pot-erant.	pos-sent.

## FUTURE

SG.—1. pot-erō, <i>I shall be able.</i>
2. pot-eris,
3. pot-erit.
PL.—1. pot-erimus,
2. pot-eritis,
3. pot-erunt.

## PERFECT.

SG.—1. pot-ui, <i>I have been able,</i>	pot-uerim, <i>I have, may have, been able.</i>
2. pot-uistī,	pot-uerīs,
3. pot-uīt.	pot-uerit.
PL.—1. pot-uimus,	pot-uerīmus,
2. pot-uistis,	pot-uerītis,
3. pot-uērunt.	pot-uerint.

## PLUPERFECT.

SG.—1. pot-ueram, <i>I had been able.</i>	pot-uissem, <i>I had, might have, been able.</i>
2. pot-uerās,	pot-uissēs,
3. pot-uerat.	pot-uisset.
PL.—1. pot-uerāmus,	pot-uissēmus,
2. pot-uerātis,	pot-uissētis,
3. pot-uerant,	pot-uissent.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

Sg.—1. pot-uerō, <i>I shall have been</i>	Pl.—1. pot-uerimus,
2. pot-ueris, [able,	2. pot-ueritis,
3. pot-uerit.	3. pot-uerint.

INFINITIVE. PRES., *posse*, *to be able*. PERF., *potuisse*, *to have been able*.

NOTES.—1. In the early Latin the fusion of the two parts of the compound has not fully taken place; we accordingly find not unfrequently: *potis sum*, *potis es*, *potis est*, *potis sunt*; *potis siem*, *potis sis*, *potis sit*, *potis sint*; *potis erat*; *pote fuisset*; and sometimes (even in classical and Augustan poets) *potis* and *pote* alone, the copula being omitted. Partial fusion is seen in Inf. *pot-esse*, *potisse*; Subjv. *poti-sit* (inscr.), *poti-sset*.

2. Occasional passive forms (followed by a passive infinitive) are found in early Latin (not in PLAUT. or TER.) and LUCRETIVS: *potestur*, *possētur*, *possitur*, *poter-atur*. *Poterint* for *poterunt* is doubtful.

## REGULAR VERBS.

## SYSTEMS OF CONJUGATION.

120. 1. There are two Systems of Conjugation, the Thematic and the Non-thematic (132). The Non-thematic is confined to a small class. The Thematic System comprises four Conjugations, distinguished by the vowel characteristics of the present stem, *ā*, *ē*, *ē*, *ī*, which may be found by dropping *-re* from the Present Infinitive Active. The consonant preceding the short vowel stem-characteristic is called the consonant stem-characteristic.

2. From the *Present* stem, as seen in the Present Indicative and Present Infinitive active; from the *Perfect* stem, as seen in the Perfect Indicative active; and from the *Supine* stem, can be derived all the forms of the verb. These tenses are accordingly called the *Principal Parts*; and in the regular verbs appear in the four conjugations as follows:

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	SUPINE.	
I. <i>am-ō</i> ,	<i>amā-re</i> ,	<i>amā-vī</i> ,	<i>amā-tum</i> ,	<i>to love.</i>
II. <i>dēle-ō</i> ,	<i>dēlē-re</i> ,	<i>dēlē-vī</i> ,	<i>dēlē-tum</i> ,	<i>to blot out.</i>
<i>mone-ō</i> ,	<i>monē-re</i> ,	<i>mon-ui</i> ,	<i>mon-i-tum</i> ,	<i>to remind.</i>
III. <i>em-ō</i> ,	<i>eme-re</i> ,	<i>ēm-I</i> ,	<i>ēm(p)-tum</i> ,	<i>to buy.</i>
<i>statu-ō</i> ,	<i>statue-re</i> ,	<i>statu-I</i> ,	<i>statū-tum</i> ,	<i>to settle.</i>
<i>scrib-ō</i> ,	<i>scribe-re</i> ,	<i>scrip-sī</i> ,	<i>scrip-tum</i> ,	<i>to write.</i>
<i>capi-ō</i> ,	<i>cape-re</i> ,	<i>cēp-I</i> ,	<i>cap-tum</i> ,	<i>to take.</i>
IV. <i>audi-ō</i> ,	<i>audi-re</i> ,	<i>audi-vī</i> ,	<i>audi-tum</i> ,	<i>to hear.</i>

Rules for forming the Tenses.

**121. 1. The Present System.** From the Present stem as obtained by dropping **-re** of the Pres. Inf. Active, form

*a. Pres. Subjv.* by changing final **ā** to **e**, **ē** to **ea**, **e** to **a** (or **-ia**), **i** to **ia**, and adding **-m** for active, **-r** for passive ; *Pres. Impv. Passive* by adding **-re**; *Fut. Impv.* by adding **-to** for Active and **-tor** for the Passive ; *Pres. Part.* by adding **-ns** and lengthening preceding vowel ; *Gerund* by adding **-ndī** after shortening **ā** and **ē**, changing **i** to **ie**, and in a few verbs **e** to **ie**. *Pres. Impv. Active* is the same as the stem ; *Pres. Indic. Passive* may be formed from Pres. Indic. Act. by adding **-r** (after shortening **ō**).

*b. Impf. Indic.* by adding **-bam** for active and **-bar** for passive to the stem in the first and second conjugations ; to the lengthened stem in the third and fourth (**e** to **ē** or **iē**, **i** to **iē**) ; *Impf. Subjv.* by adding the endings **-rem** and **-rer**, or by adding **-m** and **-r** respectively to the Pres. Inf. Active.

*c. Future*, by adding **-bō** and **-bor** to the stem in the first and second conjugations ; **-m** and **-r** in the third and in the fourth (**e** being changed to **a** (**ia**) ; **i**, to **ia**).

**2. The Perfect System.** From the Perfect stem as obtained by dropping final **i** of the Perfect, form

*a. Perf. Subjv. Active* by adding **-erim** ; *Perf. Inf. Active* by adding **-isse**.

*b. Plupf. Indic. Active* by adding **-eram** ; *Plup. Subjv. Active* by adding **-issem**.

*c. Fut. Perf. Active* by adding **-erō**.

**3. The Supine System.** From the Supine stem as obtained by dropping final **-m** of the Supine, form

*a. Perf. Part. Passive* by adding **-s**.

*b. Fut. Part. Active* by adding **-rus** (preceding **u** being lengthened to **ū**).

*c. The Compound Tenses in the Passive and the Periphrastic forms* by combining these Participles with forms of **esse**, to *be*.

REMARK.—*Euphonic changes in the consonant stem-characteristic.* Characteristic **b** before **s** and **t** becomes **p** ; **g** and **qu** before **t** become **c** ; **c**, **g**, **qu**, with **s**, become **x** ; **t** and **d** before **s** are assimilated, and then sometimes dropped. See further, 9.

scrib-ō, scrip-sī, scrip-tum ; leg-ō, lēc-tum ; coqu-ō, coc-tum ; dīc-ō, dixī (dīc-sī) ; iung-ō, iūnx-i (iūng-sī) ; coqu-ō, coxī (coqu-sī) ; ed-ō, ē-sum (ed-sum) ; cēd-ō, cēs-sī (cēd-sī) ; mitt-ō, mī-sī (mit-sī), mis-sum (mit-sum).



## 122.

## First Conjugation.

CONJUGATION OF *amāre*, to love.PRIN. PARTS : *am-ō*, *amā-re*, *amā-vī*, *amā-tum*.

## ACTIVE.

## INDICATIVE.

## PRESENT.

*Am loving, do love, love.*

- Sg.—1. *am-ō*,  
 2. *amā-s*,  
 3. *amā-t*,

- Pl.—1. *amā-mus*,  
 2. *amā-tis*,  
 3. *amā-nt*,

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Be loving, may love*

- ame-m*,  
*amē-s*,  
*ame-t*.

- amē-mus*,  
*amē-tis*,  
*ame-nt*.

## IMPERFECT.

*Was loving, loved.*

- Sg.—1. *amā-ba-m*,  
 2. *amā-bā-s*,  
 3. *amā-ba-t*,

- Pl.—1. *amā-bā-mus*,  
 2. *amā-bā-tis*,  
 3. *amā-ba-nt*,

*Were loving, might love.*

- amā-re-m*,  
*amā-rē-s*,  
*amā-re-t*.

- amā-rē-mus*,  
*amā-rē-tis*,  
*amā-re-nt*.

## FUTURE.

*Shall be loving, shall love.*

- Sg.—1. *amā-b-ō*,  
 2. *amā-bi-s*,  
 3. *amā-bi-t*,

- Pl.—1. *amā-bi-mus*,  
 2. *amā-bi-tis*,  
 3. *amā-bu-nt*.

## PERFECT.

*Have loved, did love.*

- Sg.—1. *amā-v-ī*,  
 2. *amā-v-istī*,  
 3. *amā-v-it*,

- Pl.—1. *amā-v-imus*,  
 2. *amā-v-istis*,  
 3. *amā-v-ērunt* (-ēre),

*Have, may have, loved*

- amā-v-erī-m*,  
*amā-v-erī-s*,  
*amā-v-erī-t*.

- amā-v-erī-mus*,  
*amā-v-erī-tis*,  
*amā-v-erī-nt*.

## First Conjugation.

## ACTIVE.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PLUPERFECT.

*Had loved.**Had, might have, loved.*

Sg.—1. amā-v-erā-m,

amā-v-isse-m,

2. amā-v-erā-s,

amā-v-issē-s,

3. amā-v-erā-t,

amā-v-isse-t.

Pl.—1. amā-v-erā-mus,

amā-v-issē-mus,

2. amā-v-erā-tis,

amā-v-issē-tis,

3. amā-v-erā-nt,

amā-v-isse-nt.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*Shall have loved.*

Sg.—1. amā-v-er-ō,

2. amā-v-erī-s,

3. amā-v-erī-t.

Pl.—1. amā-v-erī-mus,

2. amā-v-erī-tis,

3. amā-v-erī-nt.

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

## FUTURE.

Sg.—1. —,

—,

2. amā, love thou, amā-tō, thou shalt love.

3. —, amā-tō, he shall love.

Pl.—1. —,

—,

2. amā-te, love ye, amā-tōte, ye shall love.

3. —, ama-ntō, they shall love.

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. amā-re, to love.

PERF. amā-v-isse, to have loved.

FUT. amā-tūr-um, -am, -um esse, to be about to love.

## GERUND.

## SUPINE

N. [amā-re], loving.

G. ama-nd-ī, of loving.

D. ama-nd-ō, to loving.

Ac. [amā-re],

Ac. amā-tum, to love.

(ad) ama-nd-um, loving, to love.

Ab. ama-nd-ō, by loving.

Ab. amā-tū, to love, in the loving

## PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT. N. amā-n-s (G. ama-nt-is), loving.

FUTURE. amā-tūr-us, -a, -um, being about to love.

## First Conjugation.

## PASSIVE.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*Am loved.**Be, may be, loved.*

- SG.—1. amo-r,  
 2. amā-ris (-re),  
 3. amā-tur,

- ame-r,  
 amē-ris (-re),  
 amē-tur.

- PL.—1. amā-mur,  
 2. amā-mini,  
 3. ama-ntur,

- amē-mur,  
 amē-mini,  
 ame-ntur.

## IMPERFECT.

*Was loved.**Were, might be, loved.*

- SG.—1. amā-ba-r,  
 2. amā-bā-ris (-re),  
 3. amā-bā-tur,

- amā-re-r,  
 amā-rē-ris (-re),  
 amā-rē-tur.

- PL.—1. amā-bā-mur,  
 2. amā-bā-mini,  
 3. amā-ba-ntur,

- amā-rē-mur,  
 amā-rē-mini,  
 amā-re-ntur.

## FUTURE.

*Shall be loved.*

- SG.—1. amā-bo-r,  
 2. amā-be-ris (-re),  
 3. amā-bi-tur.

- PL.—1. amā-bi-mur,  
 2. amā-bi-mini,  
 3. amā-bu-ntur.

## PERFECT.

*Have been loved, was loved.**Have, may have, been loved.*

- SG.—1. amā-t-us, -a, -um sum,  
 2. es,  
 3. est,

- amā-t-us, -a, -um sim,  
 sis,  
 sit,

- PL.—1. amā-t-i, -ae, -a sumus,  
 2. estis,  
 3. sunt.

- amā-t-i, -ae, -a simus,  
 sitis,  
 sint.

## First Conjugation.

## PASSIVE.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PLUPERFECT.

*Had been loved.**Had, might have, been loved.*

SG.—I.	amā-t-us, -a, -um	eram,
2.		erās,
3.		erat,

amā-t-us, -a, -um	essem,
	essēs,
	esset,

PL.—I.	amā-t-ī, -ae, -a	erāmus,
2.		erātis,
3.		erant.

amā-t-ī, -ae, -a	essēmus,
	essētis,
	essent.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*Shall have been loved.*

SG.—I.	amā-t-us, -a, -um	erō,
2.		eris,
3.		erit.

PL.—I.	amā-t-i, -ae, -a	erimus,
2.		eritis,
3.		erunt.

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

## FUTURE.

SG.—I.	—,	
2.	amā-re,	<i>be thou loved.</i>
3.	—,	

—,	
amā-tor,	<i>thou shalt be loved.</i>
amā-tor,	<i>he shall be loved.</i>

PL.—I.	—,	
2.	amā-mini,	<i>be ye loved.</i>
3.	—,	

—,	
—,	
ama-ntor,	<i>they shall be loved.</i>

## INFINITIVE.

PRES.	amā-rī,	<i>to be loved.</i>
PERF.	amā-t-um, -am, -um	<i>esse, to have been loved.</i>
FUT.	amā-tum irī,	<i>to be about to be loved.</i>
FUT. PF.	amā-t-um, -am, -um	<i>fore.</i>

## PARTICIPLE.

## GERUNDIVE.

PERF.	amā-t-us, -a, -um,	<i>loved.</i>	ama-nd-us, -a, -um,	<i>(one) to be loved.</i>
-------	--------------------	---------------	---------------------	---------------------------

## 123.

## Second Conjugation.

CONJUGATION OF *dēlēre*, *to destroy (blot out)*.PRIN. PARTS : *dēle-ō*, *dēlē-re*, *dēlē-vi*, *dēlē-tum*.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## INDIC.

## SUBJV.

## INDIC.

## SUBJV

## PRESENT.

Sg.— <i>dēle-ō</i> ,	<i>dēlea-m</i> ,	<i>dēle-o-r</i> ,	<i>dēlea-r</i> ,
<i>dēlē-s</i> ,	<i>dēleā-s</i> ,	<i>dēlē-ris (-re)</i> ,	<i>dēleā-ris (-re)</i> ,
<i>dēle-t</i> ,	<i>dēlea-t</i> ,	<i>dēlē-tur</i> ,	<i>dēleā-tur</i> ,
Pl.— <i>dēle-mus</i> ,	<i>dēleā-mus</i> ,	<i>dēlē-mur</i> ,	<i>dēle-ā-mur</i> ,
<i>dēlē-tis</i> ,	<i>dēleā-tis</i> ,	<i>dēlē-mini</i> ,	<i>dēle-ā-mini</i> ,
<i>dēle-nt</i> .	<i>dēlea-nt</i> .	<i>dēle-ntur</i> .	<i>dēle-a-ntur</i> .

## IMPERFECT.

Sg.— <i>dēlē-ba-m</i> ,	<i>dēlē-re-m</i> ,	<i>dēlē-ba-r</i> ,	<i>dēlē-re-r</i> ,
<i>dēlē-bā-s</i> ,	<i>dēlē-rē-s</i> ,	<i>dēlē-bā-ris (-re)</i> ,	<i>dēlē-rē-ris (-re)</i> ,
<i>dēlē-ba-t</i> ,	<i>dēlē-re-t</i> ,	<i>dēlē-bā-tur</i> ,	<i>dēlē-rē-tur</i> ,
Pl.— <i>dēlē-bā-mus</i> ,	<i>dēlē-rē-mus</i> ,	<i>dēlē-bā-mur</i> ,	<i>dēlē-rē-mur</i> ,
<i>dēlē-bā-tis</i> ,	<i>dēlē-rē-tis</i> ,	<i>dēlē-bā-mini</i> ,	<i>dēlē-rē-mini</i> ,
<i>dēlē-ba-nt</i> .	<i>dēlē-re-nt</i> .	<i>dēlē-ba-ntur</i> ,	<i>dēlē-re-ntur</i> .

## FUTURE.

Sg.— <i>dēlē-b-ō</i> ,	<i>dēlē-bo-r</i> ,
<i>dēlē-bi-s</i> ,	<i>dēlē-be-ris (re)</i> ,
<i>dēlē-bi-t</i> ,	<i>dēlē-bi-tur</i> ,
Pl.— <i>dēlē-bi-mus</i> ,	<i>dēlē-bi-mur</i> ,
<i>dēlē-bi-tis</i> ,	<i>dēlē-bi-mini</i> ,
<i>dēlē-bu-nt</i> .	<i>dēlē-bu-ntur</i> .

## PERFECT.

Sg.— <i>dēlē-v-i</i> ,	<i>dēlē-v-eri-m</i> ,	<i>dēlē-t-us sum</i> ,	<i>dēlē-t-us sim</i> ,
<i>dēlē-v-istī</i> ,	<i>dēlē-v-erī-s</i> ,	<i>es</i> ,	<i>sis</i> ,
<i>dēlē-v-it</i> ,	<i>dēlē-v-erī-t</i> ,	<i>est</i> ,	<i>sit</i> .
Pl.— <i>dēlē-v-imus</i> ,	<i>dēlē-v-erī-mus</i> ,	<i>dēlē-t-i sumus</i> ,	<i>dēlē-t-i simus</i> ,
<i>dēlē-v-istis</i> ,	<i>dēlē-v-erī-tis</i> ,	<i>estis</i> ,	<i>sitis</i> ,
<i>dēlē-v-ērunt (-ēre)</i> ,	<i>dēlē-v-erī-nt</i> ,	<i>sunt</i> ,	<i>sint</i> .



Second Conjugation.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
INDIC.	SUBJV.	INDIC.	SUBJV.
PLUPERFECT.			
SG.—dēlē-v-erā-m,	dēlē-v-is-se-m,	dēlē-t-us eram,	dēlē-t-us essem,
dēlē-v-erā-s,	dēlē-v-issē-s,	erās,	essēs,
dēlē-v-erā-t,	dēlē-v-is-se-t.	erat,	esset.
PL.—dēlē-v-erā-mus,	dēlē-v-issē-mus,	dēlē-t-i erāmus,	dēlē-t-i essēmus,
dēlē-v-erā-tis,	dēlē-v-issē-tis,	erātis,	essētis,
dēlē-v-erā-nt,	dēlē-v-is-se-nt.	erant,	essent.

FUTURE PERFECT.	
SG.—dēlē-v-er-ō,	dēlē-t-us erō,
dēlē-v-erī-s,	eris,
dēlē-v-er-i-t,	erit.
PL.—dēlē-v-erī-mus,	dēlē-t-i erimus,
dēlē-v-erī-tis,	eritis,
dēlē-v-er-i-nt,	erunt.

IMPERATIVE.			
PRESENT.	FUTURE.	PRESENT.	FUTURE.
SG. —,	—,	—,	—,
dēlē,	dēlē-tō,	dēlē-re,	dēlē-tor,
—,	dēlē-tō,	—,	dēlē-tor.
PL. —,	—,	—,	—,
dēlē-te,	dēlē-tōte,	dēlē-mini,	—,
—,	dēle-ntō.	—,	dēle-ntor.

INFINITIVE.	
PRES. dēlē-re.	PRES. dēlē-rī.
PERF. dēlē-v-is-se.	PERF. dēlē-t-um, -am, -um esse.
FUT. dēlē-tūr-um, -am, -um esse.	FUT. dēlē-tum frī.
	FUT. PF. dēlē-t-um, -am, -um fore.

GERUND.	SUPINE.	PARTICIPLES.
[dēlē-re].		PRES. N. dēlē-n-s ; G. dēle-nt-is.
dēle-nd-i.		FUT. dēlē-tūr-us, -a, -um.
dēle-nd-ō.		PERF. dēlē-t-us, -a, -um.
Ac. [dēlē-re]	Ac. dēlē-tum.	
(ad) dēle-nd-um.		GERUNDIVE.
b. dēle-nd-ō.	Ab. dēlē-tū.	dēle-nd-us, -a, -um.

124. Like *dēlēre*, *to destroy*, are conjugated only, *nēre*, *to spin*, *flēre*, *to weep*, and the compounds of *-plēre*, *fill*, and *-olēre* *grow* (the latter with Supine in *-itum*); also *ciēre*, *to stir up*. See 137(b).

All other verbs of the Second Conjugation retain the characteristic *e* in the Present System, but drop it in the Perfect System, changing *vī* to *uī*, and weaken it to *i* in the Supine System.

### Second Conjugation.

#### CONJUGATION OF *monēre*, *to remind*.

PRIN. PARTS : *mone-ō*, *monē-re*, *mon-uī*, *moni-tum*.

#### ACTIVE.

#### PASSIVE.

INDIC.	SUBJV.	INDIC.	SUBJV.
PRESENT.			
Sg.— <i>mone-ō</i> ,	<i>monea-m</i> ,	<i>mone-o-r</i> ,	<i>monea-r</i> ,
<i>monē-s</i> ,	<i>moneā-s</i> ,	<i>monē-ris (-re)</i> ,	<i>moneā-ris (-re)</i> ,
<i>mone-t</i> ,	<i>monea-t</i> ,	<i>monē-tur</i> ,	<i>moneā-tur</i> ,
Pl.— <i>monē-mus</i> ,	<i>moneā-mus</i> ,	<i>monē-mur</i> ,	<i>mone-ā-mur</i> ,
<i>monē-tis</i> ,	<i>moneā-tis</i> ,	<i>monē-mini</i> ,	<i>mone-ā-mini</i> ,
<i>mone-nt</i> .	<i>monea-nt</i> .	<i>mone-ntur</i> .	<i>mone-a-ntur</i> .
IMPERFECT.			
Sg.— <i>monē-ba-m</i> ,	<i>monē-re-m</i> ,	<i>monē-ba-r</i> ,	<i>monē-re-r</i> ,
<i>monē-bā-s</i> ,	<i>monē-rē-s</i> ,	<i>monē-bā-ris (-re)</i> ,	<i>monē-rē-ris (-re)</i> ,
<i>monē-ba-t</i> ,	<i>monē-re-t</i> ,	<i>monē-bā-tur</i> ,	<i>monē-rē-tur</i> ,
Pl.— <i>monē-bā-mus</i> ,	<i>monē-rē-mus</i> ,	<i>monē-bā-mur</i> ,	<i>monē-rē-mur</i> ,
<i>monē-bā-tis</i> ,	<i>monē-rē-tis</i> ,	<i>monē-bā-mini</i> ,	<i>monē-rē-mini</i> ,
<i>monē-ba-nt</i> .	<i>monē-re-nt</i> .	<i>monē-ba-ntur</i> .	<i>monē-re-ntur</i> .
FUTURE.			
Sg.— <i>monē-b-ō</i> ,		<i>monē-bo-r</i> ,	
<i>monē-bi-s</i> ,		<i>monē-be-ris (-re)</i> ,	
<i>monē-bi-t</i> ,		<i>monē-bi-tur</i> ,	
Pl.— <i>monē-bi-mus</i> ,		<i>monē-bi-mur</i> ,	
<i>monē-bi-tis</i> ,		<i>monē-bi-mini</i> ,	
<i>monē-bu-nt</i> .		<i>monē-bu-ntur</i> .	
PERFECT.			
Sg.— <i>mon-u-i</i> ,	<i>mon-u-eri-m</i> ,	<i>moni-t-us sum</i> ,	<i>moni-t-us sim</i> ,
<i>mon-u-isti</i> ,	<i>mon-u-erī-s</i> ,	<i>es</i> ,	<i>sis</i> ,
<i>mon-u-it</i> ,	<i>mon-u-eri-t</i> ,	<i>est</i> ,	<i>sit</i> ,
Pl.— <i>mon-u-imus</i> ,	<i>mon-u-erī-mus</i> ,	<i>moni-t-i sumus</i> ,	<i>moni-t-i simus</i> ,
<i>mon-u-istis</i> ,	<i>mon-u-erī-tis</i> ,	<i>estis</i> ,	<i>sitis</i> ,
<i>mon-u-erunt (-ēre)</i> .	<i>mon-u-eri-nt</i> .	<i>sunt</i> .	<i>sint</i> .

Second Conjugation.

ACTIVE.

PASSIVE.

INDIC.

SUBJV.

INDIC.

SUBJV.

PLUPERFECT.

G.—mon-u- <b>era-m</b> ,	mon-u- <b>isse-m</b> ,	moni-t-us <b>eram</b> ,	moni-t-us <b>essem</b> ,
mon-u- <b>erā-s</b> ,	mon-u- <b>issē-s</b> ,	<b>erās</b> ,	<b>essēs</b> ,
mon-u- <b>era-t</b> ,	mon-u- <b>isse-t</b> .	<b>erat</b> ,	<b>esset</b> ,
P.L.—mon-u- <b>erā-mus</b> ,	mon-u- <b>issē-mus</b> ,	moni-t- <b>i erāmus</b> ,	moni-t- <b>i essēmus</b> ,
mon-u- <b>erā-tis</b> ,	mon-u- <b>issē-tis</b> ,	<b>erātis</b> ,	<b>essētis</b> ,
mon-u- <b>era-nt</b> .	mon-u- <b>isse-nt</b> .	<b>erant</b> .	<b>essent</b> .

FUTURE PERFECT.

G.—mon-u- <b>er-ō</b> ,	moni-t-us <b>erō</b> ,
mon-u- <b>erī-s</b> ,	<b>eris</b> ,
mon-u- <b>erī-t</b> ,	<b>erit</b> ,
P.L.—mon-u- <b>erī-mus</b> ,	moni-t- <b>i erimus</b> ,
mon-u- <b>erī-tis</b> ,	<b>eritis</b> ,
mon-u- <b>erī-nt</b> .	<b>erunt</b> .

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.	FUTURE.	PRESENT.	FUTURE.
G. ———	———	———	———
monē,	monē-tō,	monē-re,	monē-tor,
———	monē-tō,	———	monē-tor,
P.L. ———	———	———	———
monē-te,	monē-tōte,	monē-mini,	———
———	mone-ntō.	———	mone-ntor.

INFINITIVE.

RES. monē-re.	PRES. monē-ri.
PERF. mon-u-isse.	PERF. moni-t-um, -am, -um esse.
UT. moni-tūr-um, -am, um esse.	FUT. moni-t-um iri.
	FUT. PF. moni-t-um, -am, -um fore.

GERUND.

SUPINE.

PARTICIPLES.

f. [monē-re].		PRES. N. monē-n-s ; G. mone-nt-is
f. mone-nd-i.		FUT. moni-tūr-us, -a, -um.
9. mone-nd-ō.		PERF. moni-t-us, -a, -um.
c. [monē-re]	Ac. moni-tum.	
(ad) mone-nd-um.		GERUNDIVE.
b. mone-nd-ō.	Ab. moni-tū.	mone-nd-us, -a, -um.

## 125.

## Third Conjugation.

CONJUGATION OF *emere*, to buy.PRIN. PARTS : *em-o*, *eme-re*, *ēm-i*, *ēm(p)-tum*.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## INDIC.

## SUBJV.

## INDIC.

## SUBJV.

## PRESENT.

Sg. --em-o,	ema-m,	em-o-r,	ema-r,
emi-s,	emā-s,	eme-ris (-re),	emā-ris (-re),
emi-t,	ema-t,	emi-tur,	emā-tur,
PL. --emi-mus,	emā-mus,	emi-mur,	emā-mur,
emi-tis,	emā-tis,	emi-mini,	emā-mini,
emu-nt,	ema-nt,	emu-ntur,	ema-ntur,

## IMPERFECT.

Sg. --emē-ba-m,	eme-re-m,	emē-ba-r,	eme-re-r,
emē-bā-s,	eme-rē-s,	emē-bā-ris (-re),	eme-rē-ris (-re),
emē-ba-t,	eme-re-t,	emē-bā-tur,	eme-rē-tur,
PL. --emē-bā-mus,	eme-rē-mus,	emē-bā-mur,	eme-rē-mur,
emē-bā-tis,	eme-rē-tis,	emē-bā-mini,	eme-rē-mini,
emē-ba-nt,	eme-rē-nt,	emē-ba-ntur,	eme-re-ntur,

## FUTURE.

Sg. --ema-m,	ema-r,
emē-s,	emē-ris (-re),
eme-t,	emē-tur,
PL. --emē-mus,	emē-mur,
emē-tis,	emē-mini,
eme-nt,	eme-ntur,

## PERFECT.

Sg. --ēm-i,	ēm-eri-m,	ēmp-t-us	sum,	ēmp-t-us	sim,
ēm-isti,	ēm-erī-s,		es,		sis,
ēm-it,	ēm-eri-t,		est,		sit,
PL. --ēm-imus,	ēm-erī-mus,	ēmp-t-i	sumus,	ēmp-t-i	simus,
ēm-istis,	ēm-erī-tis,		estis,		sitis,
ēm-erunt (-ēre),	ēm-eri-nt,		sunt,		sint,

## Third Conjugation.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## INDIC.

## SUBJV.

## INDIC.

## SUBJV.

## PLUPERFECT.

G. —ē̄m-erā-m,	ē̄m-is̄se-m,	ē̄mp-t-us	eram,	ē̄mp-t-us	essem,
ē̄m-erā-s,	ē̄m-issē-s,		erās,		essēs,
ē̄m-erā-t,	ē̄m-is̄se-t,		erat,		esset,
L. —ē̄m-erā-mus,	ē̄m-issē-mus,	ē̄mp-t-i	erāmus,	ē̄mp-t-i	essēmus,
ē̄m-erā-tis,	ē̄m-issē-tis,		erātis,		essētis,
ē̄m-erā-nt.	ē̄m-is̄se-nt.		erant.		essent.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

G. —ē̄m-er-ō,	ē̄mp-t-us	erō,
ē̄m-erīs,		eris,
ē̄m-erit,		erit,
L. —ē̄m-erī-mus,	ē̄mp-t-i	erimus,
ē̄m-erī-tis,		eritis,
ē̄m-erit.		erunt.

## IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.	FUTURE.	PRESENT.	FUTURE.
G. —	—	—	—
eme,	emi-tō,	eme-re,	emi-tor,
—	emi-tō,	—	emi-tor,
L. —	—	—	—
emi-te.	emi-tōte,	emi-mini.	—
—	emu-ntō.	—	emu-ntor.

## INFINITIVE.

RES. eme-re.	PRES. em-i.
PERF. ē̄m-is̄se.	PERF. ē̄mp-t-um, -am, -um esse.
UT. ē̄mp-tūr-um, -am, -um esse.	FUT. ē̄mp-tum iri.
	FUT. PF. ē̄mp-t-um, -am, -um fore.

## GERUND.

## SUPINE.

## PARTICIPLES.

a. [eme-re].		PRES. N. emē-n-s; G. eme-nt-is.
b. em-e-nd-i.		FUT. ē̄mp-tūr-us, -a, -um.
c. em-e-nd-ō.		PERF. ē̄mp-t-us, -a, -um.
d. [em-e-re]	Ac. ē̄mp-tum.	
(ad) em-e-ndum.		GERUNDIVE.
e. em-e-nd-ō.	Ab. ē̄mp-tū.	em-e-nd-us, -a, -um.



**126.** Many verbs of the third conjugation with stem in *ie* (Pres. Indic. in *iō*) weaken this *ie* to *e* before *-re*, and to *i* before *m*, *s*, and *t* in all tenses of the Present System except the Future. Otherwise they follow the inflection of *eme-re*.

These verbs are *capiō*, *cupiō*, *faciō*, *fodiō*, *fugiō*, *iaciō*, *pariō*, *quatiō*, *raziō*, *sapiō*, and their compounds; also compounds of *-liciō*, *-spiciō*, and the deponents *gradior* and its compounds, *morior* and its compounds, *patior* and its compounds.

SYNOPSIS OF PRESENT SYSTEM OF *cape-re*, *to take*.

PRIN. PARTS : *capi-ō*, *cape-re*, *cōp-i*, *cap-tum*.

ACTIVE.

PASSIVE.

INDIC.

SUBJV.

INDIC.

SUBJV.

PRESENT.

Sg.— <i>capi-ō</i> , <i>capi-s</i> , <i>capi-t</i> ,	<i>capia-m</i> , <i>capiā-s</i> , <i>capia-t</i> ,	<i>capi-o-r</i> , <i>cape-ris (-re)</i> , <i>capi-tur</i> ,	<i>capia-r</i> , <i>capiā-ris (-re)</i> , <i>capiā-tur</i> ,
Pl.— <i>capi-mus</i> , <i>capi-tis</i> , <i>capiu-nt</i> .	<i>capiā-mus</i> , <i>capiā-tis</i> , <i>capia-nt</i> .	<i>capi-mur</i> , <i>capi-mini</i> , <i>capiu-ntur</i> .	<i>capiā-mur</i> , <i>capiā-mini</i> , <i>capia-ntur</i> .

IMPERFECT.

Sg.— <i>capiē-ba-m</i> , <i>etc.</i>	<i>cap-e-re-m</i> , <i>etc.</i>	<i>capi-ē-ba-r</i> , <i>etc.</i>	<i>cape-re-r</i> , <i>etc.</i>
---	------------------------------------	-------------------------------------	-----------------------------------

FUTURE.

Sg.— <i>capia-m</i> , <i>capiē-s</i> , <i>etc.</i>	<i>capia-r</i> , <i>capiē-ris (-re)</i> , <i>etc.</i>
--	---

IMPERATIVE.

PR <small>ES.</small>	F <small>UT.</small>	PR <small>ES.</small>	F <small>UT.</small>
Sg.— <i>cape</i> ,	<i>cap-i-tō</i> , <i>cap-i-tō</i> ,	<i>cape-re</i> ,	<i>capi-tor</i> , <i>capi-tor</i> ,
<i>capi-te</i> .	<i>capi-tōte</i> , <i>capiu-ntō</i> .	<i>capi-mini</i> .	<i>capiu-ntor</i> .

INFINITIVE.

PRES. *cape-re*.

*cap-i*.

PARTICIPLE.

GERUND.

GERUNDIVE.

PRES. *capiē-n-s*.

GERUND *capie-nd-i*.

*capie-nd-us, -a, -um*.

127.

## Fourth Conjugation.

CONJUGATION OF *audire*, *to hear*.PRIN. PARTS : *audi-ō*, *audi-re*, *audi-vi*, *audi-tum*.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## INDIC.

## SUBJV.

## INDIC.

## SUBJV.

## PRESENT.

sg.— <i>audi-ō</i> , <i>audi-s</i> , <i>audi-t</i> ,	<i>audia-m</i> , <i>audiā-s</i> , <i>audia-t</i> ,	<i>audi-o-r</i> , <i>audi-ris (re)</i> , <i>audi-tur</i> ,	<i>audia-r</i> , <i>audiā-ris (-re)</i> , <i>audiā-tur</i> ,
pl.— <i>audi-mus</i> , <i>audi-tis</i> , <i>audiu-nt</i> .	<i>audiā-mus</i> , <i>audiā-tis</i> , <i>audia-nt</i> .	<i>audi-mur</i> , <i>audi-mini</i> , <i>audi-u-ntur</i> .	<i>audiā-mur</i> , <i>audiā-mini</i> , <i>audia-ntur</i> .

## IMPERFECT.

sg.— <i>audiē-ba-m</i> , <i>audiē-bā-s</i> , <i>audiē-ba-t</i> ,	<i>audi-re-m</i> , <i>audi-rē-s</i> , <i>audi-re-t</i> ,	<i>audiē-ba-r</i> , <i>audiē-bā-ris (re)</i> , <i>audiē-bā-tur</i> ,	<i>audi-re-r</i> , <i>audi-rē-ris (-re)</i> , <i>audi-rē-tur</i> ,
pl.— <i>audiē-bā-mus</i> , <i>audiē-bā-tis</i> , <i>audiē-ba-nt</i> .	<i>audi-rē-mus</i> , <i>audi-rē-tis</i> , <i>audi-re-nt</i> .	<i>audiē-bā-mur</i> , <i>audiē-bā-mini</i> , <i>audiē-ba-ntur</i> .	<i>audi-rē-mur</i> , <i>audi-rē-mini</i> , <i>audi-re-ntur</i> .

## FUTURE.

sg.— <i>audia-m</i> , <i>audiē-s</i> , <i>audie-t</i> ,	<i>audia-r</i> , <i>audiē-ris (-re)</i> , <i>audiē-tur</i> ,
pl.— <i>audiē-mus</i> , <i>audiē-tis</i> , <i>audie-nt</i> .	<i>audiē-mur</i> , <i>audiē-mini</i> , <i>audie-ntur</i> .

## PERFECT.

sg.— <i>audi-v-i</i> , <i>audi-v-istī</i> , <i>audi-v-it</i> ,	<i>audi-v-eri-m</i> , <i>audi-v-erī-s</i> , <i>audi-v-eri-t</i> ,	<i>audi-t-us sum</i> , <i>es</i> , <i>est</i> ,	<i>audi-t-us sim</i> , <i>sīs</i> , <i>sit</i> ,
pl.— <i>audi-v-imus</i> , <i>audi-v-istis</i> , <i>audi-v-ērunt (-ēre)</i> .	<i>audi-v-erī-mus</i> , <i>audi-v-erī-tis</i> , <i>audi-v-eri-nt</i> .	<i>audi-t-i sumus</i> , <i>estis</i> , <i>sunt</i> .	<i>audi-t-i simus</i> , <i>sītis</i> , <i>sint</i> .

## Fourth Conjugation.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## INDIC.

## SUBJV.

## INDIC.

## SUBJV.

## PLUPERFECT.

Sg.—audi-v- <b>era-m</b> ,	audi-v- <b>isse-m</b> ,	audi-t-us <b>eram</b> ,	audi-tu-s <b>essem</b> ,
audi-v- <b>erā-s</b> ,	audi-v- <b>issē-s</b> ,	<b>erās</b> ,	<b>essēs</b> ,
audi-v- <b>era-t</b> ,	audi-v- <b>isse-t</b> ,	<b>erat</b> ,	<b>esset</b> ,
Pl.—audi-v- <b>erā-mus</b> ,	audi-v- <b>issē-mus</b> ,	audi-t- <b>i</b> <b>erāmus</b> ,	audi-t- <b>i</b> <b>essēmus</b> ,
audi-v- <b>erā-tis</b> ,	audi-v- <b>issē-tis</b> ,	<b>erātis</b> ,	<b>essētis</b> ,
audi-v- <b>era-nt</b> .	audi-v- <b>isse-nt</b> .	<b>erant</b> .	<b>essent</b> .

## FUTURE PERFECT.

Sg.—audi-v- <b>er-ō</b> ,	audi-t-us <b>erō</b> ,
audi-v- <b>erī-s</b> ,	<b>eris</b> ,
audi-v- <b>eri-t</b> ,	<b>erit</b> ,
Pl.—audi-v- <b>erī-mus</b> ,	audi-t- <b>i</b> <b>erimus</b> ,
audi-v- <b>erī-tis</b> ,	<b>eritis</b> ,
audi-v- <b>eri-nt</b> .	<b>erunt</b> .

## IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.	FUTURE.	PRESENT.	FUTURE.
Sg.—	—	—	—
audi,	audi-tō,	audi-re,	audi-tor,
—	audi-tō,	—	audi-tor,
Pl.—	—	—	—
audi-to.	audi-tōte,	audi-mini.	—
—	audiu-ntō.	—	audiu-ntor.

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. audi-re.	PRES. audi-rī.
PERF. audi-v-isse.	PERF. audi-t-um, -am, um esse.
FUT. audi-tūr-um, -am, -um esse.	FUT. audi-tum iri.
	FUT. Pr. audi-t-um, -am, -um fore.

## GERUND.

## SUPINE.

## PARTICIPLES.

N. [audi-re].		PRES. N. audiē-n-s, G. audie-nt-is
G. audie-nd-i.		FUT. audi-tūr-us, -a, -um.
D. audie-nd-ō.		PERF. audi-t-us, -a, -um.
Ac. [audi-re]	Ac. audi-tum.	
(ad) audie-nd-um.		GERUNDIVE.
Ab. audie-nd-ō.	Ab. audi-tū.	audie-nd-us, -a, -um.

## DEPONENT VERBS.

**128.** Deponent verbs have the passive form, but are active in meaning. They have also the Present and Future Active Participles, and the Future Active Infinitive. Thus a deponent verb alone can have a Present, Future, and Perfect Participle, all with active meaning. The Gerundive, however, is passive in meaning as well as in form.

The conjugation differs in no particular from that of the regular conjugation.

## I. First Conjugation.

CONJUGATION OF *hortāri*, to exhort.

PRIN. PARTS: *hort-or*, *hortā-rī*, *hortā-tus sum*.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*Exhort.*

*Be exhorting, may exhort.*

Sg.—*hort-o-r*,  
*hortā-ris (-re)*,  
*hortā-tur*,

*hortē-r*,  
*hortē-ris (-re)*,  
*hortē-tur*,

Pl.—*hortā-mur*,  
*hortā-minī*,  
*horta-ntur*.

*hortē-mur*,  
*hortē-minī*,  
*hortē-ntur*.

## IMPERFECT.

*Was exhorting.*

*Were exhorting, might exhort*

Sg.—*hortā-ba-r*,  
*hortā-bā-ris (-re)*,  
*hortā-bā-tur*,

*hortā-re-r*,  
*hortā-rē-ris (-re)*,  
*hortā-rē-tur*,

Pl.—*hortā-bā-mur*,  
*hortā-bā-minī*,  
*hortā-ba-ntur*.

*hortā-rē-mur*,  
*hortā-rē-minī*,  
*hortā-re-ntur*.

## FUTURE

*Shall exhort.*

Sg.—*hortā-bo-r*,  
*hortā-be-ris (-re)*,  
*hortā-bi-tur*,

Pl.—*hortā-bi-mur*,  
*hortā-bi-minī*,  
*hortā-bu-ntur*.

## PERFECT.

<i>Have exhorted, exhorted.</i>		<i>Have, may have, exhorted.</i>	
Sg.—hortā-t-us, -a, -um	sum.	hortā-t us, -a, -um	sim.
	es,		sīs,
	est,		sit,
Pl.—hortā-t-i, -ae, -a	sumus.	hortā-t i, ae, -a	simus,
	estis,		sitis,
	sunt.		sint.

## PLUPERFECT.

<i>Had exhorted.</i>		<i>Had, might have, exhorted.</i>	
Sg.—hortā-t-us, -a, -um	eram,	hortā-t-us, -a, -um	essem,
	erās,		essēs,
	erat,		esset,
Pl.—hortā-t-i, -ae, -a	erāmus,	hortā-t-i, -ae, -a	essēmus,
	erātis,		essētis,
	erant.		essent.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

<i>Shall have exhorted.</i>	
Sg.—hortā-t-us, -a, -um	erō,
	eris,
	erit,
Pl.—hortā-t-i, -ae, -a	erimus,
	eritis,
	erunt.

## IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.		FUTURE.	
Sg. ———	hortā-re, <i>exhort thou.</i>	———	hortā-tor, <i>thou shalt exhort.</i>
———		———	hortā-tor, <i>he shall exhort.</i>
Pl. ———	hortā-mini, <i>exhort ye.</i>	———	
———		———	horta-ntor, <i>they shall exhort.</i>

## INFINITIVE.

PRES.	hortā-ri, <i>to exhort.</i>
FUT.	hortā-tūr-um, am, -um esse, <i>to be about to exhort.</i>
PERF.	hortā-t-um, -am, -um esse, <i>to have exhorted.</i>
F. P.	hortā-t-um, -am, -um fore.

## SUPINE.

Ac.	hortā-tum, <i>to exhort, for exhorting.</i>
Ab.	hortā-tū, <i>to exhort, in the exhorting.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	hortā-n-s, <i>exhorting.</i>
FUT.	hortā-tūr-us, -a, -um, <i>about to exhort.</i>
PERF.	hortā-t-us, -a, -um, <i>having exhorted.</i>

## GERUNDIVE.

horta-nd-us, -a, -um, <i>[one] to be exhorted.</i>
--

## GERUND.

G. horta-nd-i, <i>of exhorting.</i>
-------------------------------------



## 2. Second, Third, Fourth Conjugations.

SYNOPSIS OF *verēri*, to fear; *loquī*, to speak; *mentirī*, to lie.

PRIN. PARTS: *vere-or*, *verē-rī*, *veri-tus sum*; *loqu-or*, *loqu-ī*, *locū-tus sum*;  
*menti-or*, *menti-rī*, *mentī-tus sum*.

## INDICATIVE.

	II.	III.	IV.
PRES.	<i>vere-o-r</i> , <i>verē-ris (-re)</i> , etc.,	<i>loqu-o-r</i> , <i>loque-ris (-re)</i> , etc.,	<i>menti-o-r</i> , <i>menti-ris (-re)</i> , etc.,
IMPERF.	<i>verē-ba-r</i> ,	<i>loquē-ba-r</i> ,	<i>mentiē-ba-r</i> ,
FUT.	<i>verē-bo-r</i> ,	<i>loqua-r</i> ,	<i>mentia-r</i> ,
PERF.	<i>veri-t-us sum</i> ,	<i>locū-t-us sum</i> ,	<i>mentī-t-us sum</i> ,
PLUPF.	<i>veri-t-us eram</i> ,	<i>locū-t-us eram</i> ,	<i>mentī-t-us eram</i> ,
FUT. PF.	<i>veri-t-us erō</i> .	<i>locū-t-us erō</i> .	<i>mentī-t-us erō</i> .

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	<i>verea-r</i> , <i>verēā-ris (-re)</i> , etc.,	<i>loqua-r</i> , <i>loquā-ris (-re)</i> , etc.,	<i>mentia-r</i> , <i>mentiā-ris (-re)</i> , etc.,
IMPERF.	<i>verē-re-r</i> ,	<i>loque-re-r</i> ,	<i>menti-re-r</i> ,
PERF.	<i>veri-t-us sim</i> ,	<i>locū-t-us sim</i> ,	<i>mentī-t-us sim</i> ,
PLUPF.	<i>veri-t-us essem</i> .	<i>locū-t-us essem</i> .	<i>mentī-t-us essem</i> .

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	<i>verē-re</i> ,	<i>loque-re</i> ,	<i>mentī-re</i> ,
FUT.	<i>verē-tor</i> .	<i>loquī-tor</i> .	<i>mentī-tor</i> .

## INFINITIVE.

PRES.	<i>verē-rī</i> ,	<i>loqu-ī</i> ,	<i>menti-rī</i> .
FUT.	<i>veri-tūr-um esse</i> ,	<i>locū-tūr-um esse</i> ,	<i>mentī-tūr-um esse</i> ,
PERF.	<i>veri-t-um esse</i> ,	<i>locū-t-um esse</i> ,	<i>mentī-t-um esse</i> ,
FUT. PF.	<i>veri-t-um fore</i> .	<i>locū-t-um fore</i> .	<i>mentī-t-um fore</i> .

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	<i>verē-n-s</i> ,	<i>loquē-n-s</i> ,	<i>mentiē-n-s</i> ,
FUT.	<i>veri-tūr-us</i> ,	<i>locū-tūr-us</i> ,	<i>mentī-tūr-us</i> ,
PERF.	<i>veri-t-us</i> .	<i>locū-t-us</i> .	<i>mentī-t-us</i> .
GERUND.	<i>vere-nd-ī</i> , etc.,	<i>loque-nd-ī</i> ,	<i>mentie-nd-ī</i> ,
GERUNDIVE.	<i>vere-nd-us</i> ,	<i>loque-nd-us</i> ,	<i>mentie-nd-us</i> ,
SUPINE.	<i>veri-tum</i> ,	<i>locū-tum</i> ,	<i>mentī-tum</i> ,
	<i>veri-tū</i> .	<i>locū-tū</i> .	<i>mentī-tū</i> .

## Periphrastic Conjugation.

129. The Periphrastic Conjugation arises from the combination of the Future Participle active and the Gerundive with forms of the verb *sum*.

## ACTIVE.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRES.	<i>amātūrus</i> (-a, -um) <i>sum</i> , <i>Am about to love.</i>	<i>amātūrus</i> (-a, -um) <i>sim</i> , <i>Be about to love.</i>
IMPF.	<i>amātūrus</i> <i>eram</i> , <i>Was about to love.</i>	<i>amātūrus</i> <i>essem</i> , <i>Were about to love.</i>
FUT.	<i>amātūrus</i> <i>erō</i> , <i>Shall be about to love.</i>	
PERF.	<i>amātūrus</i> <i>fui</i> , <i>Have been, was, about to love.</i>	<i>amātūrus</i> <i>fuerim</i> , <i>Have, may have, been</i> <i>about to love.</i>
PLUPF.	<i>amātūrus</i> <i>fueram</i> , <i>Had been about to love.</i>	<i>amātūrus</i> <i>fuissem</i> , <i>Had, might have, been</i> <i>about to love.</i>
FUT. PERF.	<i>amātūrus</i> <i>fuerō</i> , <i>Shall have been about to love.</i>	
INFINITIVE.	PRES. <i>amātūr-um</i> (-am, -um) <i>esse</i> , <i>To be about to love.</i> PERF. <i>amātūr-um</i> <i>fuisse</i> , <i>To have been about to love.</i>	

## PASSIVE.

PRES.	<i>amandus</i> (-a, -um) <i>sum</i> , <i>Have to be loved.</i>	<i>amandus</i> (-a, -um) <i>sim</i> , <i>Have to be loved.</i>
IMPF.	<i>amandus</i> <i>eram</i> , <i>Had to be loved.</i>	<i>amandus</i> <i>essem</i> , <i>forem</i> . <i>Had to be loved.</i>
FUT.	<i>amandus</i> <i>erō</i> , <i>Shall have to be loved.</i>	
PERF.	<i>amandus</i> <i>fui</i> , <i>Have had to be loved.</i>	<i>amandus</i> <i>fuerim</i> , <i>Have had to be loved.</i>
PLUPF.	<i>amandus</i> <i>fueram</i> , <i>Had had to be loved.</i>	<i>amandus</i> <i>fuissem</i> , <i>Should have had to be</i> <i>loved.</i>
INFINITIVE.	PRES. <i>amandum</i> (-am, -um) <i>esse</i> , <i>To have to be loved.</i> PERF. <i>amandum</i> <i>fuisse</i> , <i>To have had to be loved</i>	

## Notes on the Four Conjugations.

130. *The Present System.*

1. PRESENT INDICATIVE.—(a) In the third person Singular active, early Latin, and occasionally later poets, often retain the original length of vowel in the endings **-āt**, **-ēt**, and **-it** of the first, second, and fourth conjugations. Final **-it** in the third conjugation is rare, and due, perhaps, to analogy or to metrical necessity. In the first person Plural the ending **-mūs** is found a few times in poetry. In third person Plural an earlier ending, **-onti**, is found only in a *Carmen Saliare*, and is disputed. The ending **-ont** is frequent in early Latin for **-unt**.

(b) In the second Singular, passive, in all tenses of the Present stem, the ending **-re** is much more common in early Latin than **-ris**, and is regular in Cic. except in the Pr. Indic., where he prefers **-ris** on account of confusion with Pr. Inf., admitting **-re** only in deponents, and then but rarely. In general, in the Pr. Indic. **-re** is rare in the first and second conjugations, more rare in the third, and never found in the fourth, in prose authors. Post-Ciceronian prose writers, *e. g.*, LIVY, TACITUS, prefer **-ris**, even in the other tenses of the Present stem. The poets use **-ris** or **-re** to suit the metre.

2. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.—In the fourth conjugation, instead of **-iē**, we find in early times **-ī**. This is common in early Latin (especially **scībam**), in the poets to suit the metre, and occasionally in later prose. In the verb **eō**, and its compounds (but **ambire** varies), this form was regular always.

3. FUTURE INDICATIVE.—PLAUTUS shows sporadic cases of **-it**, as **erit**, **vēnībīt** (**vēneō**). In the fourth conjugation **-ībō** for **-iam** is very common in early Latin (especially **scībō**), and forms in **-ībō** of the third conjugation are occasional.

4. PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.—Final **-āt** of the third person Singular active is occasional in early Latin and also in later poets. In early Latin the active endings **-im**, **-is**, **-it**, **-int** are found in **dare** (and some compounds), which forms very often **duim**, **duīs**, **duit**, **duint**. On similar forms from **esse**, see 116; from **edere**, see 172.

5. IMPERATIVE.—(a) Four verbs, **dīcere**, **dūcere**, **facere**, **ferre** (171), form the Pr. Impv. active **dīc**, **dūc**, **fac**, **fer**. But in early Latin **dīce**, **dūce**, **face** are not uncommon. The compounds follow the usage of the simple verbs, except non-prepositional compounds of **faciō**. **Scīre**, to know, lacks the Pr. Impv. **scī**.

(b) The original ending of the Fut. Impv. active **-tōd** is found in early inscriptions, but very rarely.

(c) The Pr. Impv. passive (second and third Singular) ends occasionally in early Latin in **-minō**.

6. PRESENT INFINITIVE PASSIVE.—The early ending **-rier** (**-ier**) is very common in early Latin and occasionally in poetry at all periods. PLAUTUS shows about 140 such formations. In literary prose it does not appear till very late.

7. THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE occurs sporadically in early Latin with the ending **-ās**, **-ēs**, the **n** having been omitted owing to its weak sound; see 12, R. 1.

8. The older ending of the GERUND and GERUNDIVE in the third and fourth conjugations was **-undus**; and **-endus** was found only after **u**. In classical times **-undus** is frequent, especially in verbs of third and fourth conjugations. Later, **-endus** is the regular form.

131. *The Perfect System.*

1. SYNCOPATED FORMS.—The Perfects in **-āvi**, **-ēvi**, **-īvi**, often drop the **v** before **s** or **r**, and contract the vowels throughout, except those in **-īvi**, which admit the contraction only before **s**.

The syncopated forms are found in all periods, and in the poets are used to suit the metre.

## PERFECT.

SING. 1.	—	—	—
2.	amāvistī, amāstī.	dēlēvistī, dēlēstī.	audīvistī, audīstī.
3.	—	—	—
PLUR. 1.	—	—	—
2.	amāvistis, amāstis.	dēlēvistis, dēlēstis.	audīvistis, audīstis.
3.	amāvērunt, amārunť.	dēlēvērunt, dēlērunt.	audīvērunt, audīērunt.
SUBJV.	amāverim, amārim, <i>etc.</i>	dēlēverim, dēlērim, <i>etc.</i>	audiverim, audierim, <i>etc.</i>

## PLUPERFECT.

INDIC.	amāveram, amāram, <i>etc.</i>	dēlēveram, dēlēram, <i>etc.</i>	audiveram, audieram, <i>etc.</i>
SUBJV.	amāvissem, amāssem, <i>etc.</i>	dēlēvissem, dēlēessem, <i>etc.</i>	audivissem, audissem, <i>etc.</i>

## FUTURE PERFECT.

amāverō, amārō, <i>etc.</i>	dēlēverō, dēlērō, <i>etc.</i>	audiverō, audierō, <i>etc.</i>
--------------------------------	----------------------------------	-----------------------------------

## INFINITIVE PERFECT.

amāvisse, amāsse.	dēlēvisse, dēlēsse.	audivisse, audisse.
-------------------	---------------------	---------------------

2. In the first and third persons Sing. and in the first person Pl. of the Perfect, syncope occurs regularly only in Perfects in *ivī*, and no contraction ensues. It is most common in the Perfects of *ire* (169) and *petere*. In other verbs this syncopeation is post-Ciceronian, except in a few forms. So CICERO uses *dormiit*, *ēruđiit*, *expediit*, *moliit*, *cupiit* (also PLAUTUS); CAESAR, *commūniit*, *resciit*, *quaesiit*. *Dēsinere* forms *desiī* and *dēsiit*, once each in early Latin (CICERO uses *dēstitī* and *dēstitit* instead), and then in post-Augustan Latin; *dēsiimus* is cited once from CICERO. The unsyncopeated forms are always common except those of *ire* (169), which are very rare in classical prose, but occur more often in the poets for metrical reasons.

NOTE. The forms *nōmus* (ENN. = *nōvimus*), *ēnārrāmus* (TER., *Ad.*, 365), *flēmus*, *mūtāmus*, and *nārrāmus* (PROP.), *suēmus* (LUCR.), in the Perfect, are sporadic and sometimes doubtful.

3. *nōvī*, *I know*, and *mōvī*, *I have moved*, are also contracted, in their compounds especially.

SING. 2. *nōstī*. PLUR. 2. *nōstis*. 3. *nōrunt*. SUBJV. *nōrim*, *etc.*

PLUPF. *nōram*, *etc.* SUBJV. *nōssem*, *etc.* INF. *nōsse*.

But the Fut. Perf. *nōrō* is found only in compounds.

Similar contractions are seen in *mōvī*, but not so often; *iūvī* shows also a few cases of syncope in poetry.

4. (a) In the early Latin poets frequently and occasionally in later, syncope takes place in Perfects in *-si*. These drop the *s* and contract. A few cases are found in CICERO, especially in the letters. Examples are *dixī* (found also in Cic. and probably an earlier formation, and not by syncope for *dixistī*; *dūxī*, principally in compounds, *intellexī* (once in Cic.), *scripsī*, *misī* (*misistī* and several others; also *scripsis*).

(b) Akin to these are a number of forms in *-sō* for Fut. Perfect, *-sim* for Pl. Subjv. and more rarely *-sem* for Plupf. Subjv. These forms are most usual in the third conjugation, but are also not unfrequent in the other three; thus,

1. *Future Perfect* : **faxō** (**facere**) ; **capsō** (**capere**) and compounds ; **iūssō** (**iubere**) ; **Vindō** ; **amāssō** (**amāre**) ; **servāssō** (**servāre**) and compounds, together with some others.

2. *Perfect Subjunctive* : **faxim** and compounds ; **dūxim** ; **ausim** (**audēre**, also used by *Cic.*) ; **iūssim** ; **ēmpsim** (**emere**) ; **locāssim** (**locāre**) ; **negāssim** (**negāre**). In the second and third persons Sing., where the Fut. Pf. Indic. and the Pf. Subjv. are identical, the forms are much more common. The plural forms are much less frequent.

3. *Pluperfect Subjunctive* : **faxem** ; **prō-missem** ; **intel-lexēs** ; **re-cēssēt** and a few other forms ; **ērēpsēmus** (*Hor.*, *S.*, i. 5, 79). These forms are rare.

4. *Infinitive* : **dīxe** ; **dē-spexe** ; **ad-dūxe**, *etc.* ; **intel-lexe** ; **dē-trāxe**, *etc.* ; **ad-vexe** ; **ad-mis-se**, and a few others. Also the Future forms **āveruncāssere**, **reconciliāssere**, **impetrāssere**, **oppugnāssere**.

The exact origin of these forms is still a matter of dispute, but the common view is that they are aoristic formations.

5. From the earliest times the third Plural of the Pf. Indic. active shows two endings, **-ērōnt** (later **-ērunt**) and **-ēre**. The form in **-ērunt** was always preferred, and in classical prose is the normal form. The form in **-ēre** seems to have been the popular form, and is much liked by *Livy* and later writers. *Tacitus* seems to have preferred **-ērunt** for the Pure Perfect, and **-ēre** for the Historical Perfect. The poets seem, according to the exigencies of the metre, at all periods also **ērunt**.

6. In regard to the other endings, we have to notice in early Latin **-is** occasionally in the Pf. Subjv. and Fut. Pf. Indic. active ; Perfects in **-iī** are always written with **-iēi-** on inscriptions ; in other Perfects the third person Singular in **-ēit** (older **-ēt**), or **-it** ; as **dedet** ; occasionally the first person ends in **-ēi** and the second in **-istei**. Peculiar forms are **dedrot** (**dedro**), (for **dederunt**), **fēcōd** (for **fēcit**), and a few others.

## THE STEM.

132. With the exception of the verbs **sum**, *I am*, **edō**, *I eat*, **eō**, *I go*, **ferō**, *I bear*, **volō**, *I wish* (perhaps **dō**, *I give*), and their compounds, most of whose forms come directly from the root, all verbs in Latin form their stems from the root by the addition of a vowel or of a combination of a vowel with a consonant. This vowel is called the *thematic vowel* ; see 190.

In the first, second, and fourth conjugations, and in some verbs of the third conjugation, the stem thus formed is found throughout the whole conjugation ; in other verbs the present stem shows different forms from the other stems.

### 1. THE PRESENT STEM.

133. I. *The Stem or Thematic class* : To this class belong those verbs whose stems are formed by the addition of a thematic vowel (usually **i**, sometimes **u**) to the root, as in the third conjugation, or to a stem formed by the addition of **ā**, **ē**, or **i** to the root, as in the first, second, and fourth conjugations. The stem thus formed is seen (with lengthened vowel sometimes) in all forms of the verb. To this class belong verbs of the first, second, and fourth conjugations, and in the



third (*a*) verbs formed from a strong root, *i. e.*, verbs with **i, ū, ā, ē, ō, ae, au**; and with **e** in the stem; as **dicō** (= **deicō**), **dūcō** (= **doucō**), **rādō**, **cēdō**, **rōdō**, **caedō**, **plaudō**; **vehō**, **vergō**, **pendō**, *etc.*; (*b*) verbs formed from a weak root, *i. e.*, those with vowel **i, ū, ō**, and probably those with **ā**: as **dī-vidō**, **furō**, **olō** (**olere**), **ago**.

II. *The Reduplicated class*: The Present stem is formed by reduplication, with **i** in the reduplicated syllable:

**gen-**, **gi-gnō** (for **gi-gen-o**), **gi-gne-re**, *to beget*: **sta-**, **si-stō**, **si-ste-re**, *to set, stand*. Compare **stāre**, *to stand*. Other forms, as **sīdō** (for **si-s(e)do**), **serō** (for **si-so**), and perhaps **bībō**, have the Reduplication concealed.

III. *The T class*: The root, which usually ends in a guttural, is strengthened by **to, te**: **flectō** (**FLEC-**), **flecte-re**, *to bend*.

IV. *The Nasal class*: In this class the root is strengthened by **no, ne**, the nasal being inserted

A. In vowel-stems: **sinō** (**si-**), **sine-re**, *to let*: **linō** (**li-**), **line-re**, *to besmear*.

B. After the characteristic liquid: **cernō** (**CER-**), **cerne-re**, *to sift, separate*; **temnō** (**TEM-**), **temne-re**, *to scorn*.

NOTES. 1. After **l** assimilation takes place: **pellō** (for **pel-nō**), **pelle-re**, *to drive*.

2. In a few verbs the strengthened forms (**-no** after a vowel, **-ino** after a liquid) are confined mainly to the third person Plural active of the Present, and are found not later than the close of the sixth century of the city: **danunt** (= **dant**), **explēnunt** (= **explent**), **nequīnont** (= **nequeunt**), and a few others.

C. Before the characteristic mute: **vincō** (**VIC-**), **vince-re**, *to conquer*; **frangō** (**FRAG-**), **frange-re**, *to break*; **fundō** (**FUD-**), **funde-re**, *to pour*.

Before a **p-mute n** becomes **m**: **rumpō** (**RUP-**), **rumpe-re**, *to rend*; **cumbō** (**CUB-**), **cumbe-re**, *to lie down*.

D. Here belong also those verbs in which the root is strengthened by **-nuō, nue**; as **sternuō** (**STER-**), **sternue-re**, *to sneeze*.

NOTE. In verbs like **tinguō**, *I soak*, the consonantal **u** disappears before a consonant in the **Pf.** and **Supine**: **tinxi**, **tinc-tum**.

V. *The Inchoative class*: The Present stem has the suffix **-sco, -sce**. **irā-scor**, *I am in a rage*; **crē-scō**, *I grow*; **ob-dormi-scō**, *I fall asleep*; **api-scor**, *I reach*; **pro-fici-scor**, *I set out*; **nanci-scor** (**NAC-**), *I get*; **nō-scō** (= **gnō-scō**), *I become acquainted*; **pō-scō** (= **pore-scō**), *I demand*; **mis-ceō** (= **mic-sc-eō**), *I mix*; **dīscō** (= **dī-dc-scō**), *I learn*. A number of Inchoatives are derivative formations from substantives; as, **lapidēscō** (from **lapis**), *I become stone*.

VI. *The I class*: Instead of the simple thematic vowel **i** the root is increased by the form **ie**. In some forms of the Present stem, *i. e.*, the **Pr. Inf.**, **Impf.**, **Subjv.**, second Sing., **Pr. Impv.**, this appears in the form **e**; in some other forms it appears as **i**: **capi-ō** (**CAU-**), **cape-re**, *to take*.



NOTE.—Verbs of the fourth conjugation also belong to the **i** class; but for convenience the **i** class is here restricted as above.

VII. *The Mixed class*: Some verbs that originally belong to the **i**-class have gone over in the Present stem to the forms of the stem class: as **veniō** (VEN-), **venī-re**, *to come*; **videō** (VID-), **vidē-re**, *to see*; **sonō** (SON-), **sonā-re**, *to sound*.

## II. THE PERFECT STEM.

134. I. *Perfect in -vī* (or *-uī*): These are formed by the addition

(a) Of **-vī** to the stem as it appears in the Present Inf. in combination with the thematic vowel. To this class belong the Perfects of the first and fourth conjugations, and the few verbs of the second conjugation mentioned in 124; **amā-re**, **amā-vī**; **audī-re**, **audī-vī**; **delē-re**, **delē-vī**.

(b) Of **-uī** to the Present stem after its characteristic vowel is dropped. Here belong the majority of the verbs of the second conjugation; **monē-re**, **mon-uī**.

II. *Perfect in -sī*: These are formed by the addition of **-sī** to the root; which is, as a rule, long either by nature or position. This class comprises a large number of verbs in the third conjugation in which the stem-characteristic consonant is a mute; three in which it is **-m** (**preme-re**, *to press*; **sūme-re**, *to take*; **con-tem(n)e-re**, *to scorn*); and a few in which it is **-s**, as **ūr-ō**, *I burn*, **ūs-sī**; **haereō**, *I stick*, **haesī** (= **haes-sī**).

Examples are **rēp-ō**, *I creep*, **rēp-sī**; **scrib-ō**, *I write*, **scrip-sī**; **dīc-ō**, *I say*, **dixī** (= **dīc-sī**); **carp-ō**, *I pluck*, **carp-sī**; **rād-ō**, *I scrape*, **rāsī** (= **rād-sī**).

NOTE.—But verbs in **-ndō**, take **ī** in the Perfect: **dēfend-ō**, *I strike (ward) off*, **dēfend-ī**; perhaps because they formed originally a *reduplicated perfect*; as, **mand-ō**, *I chew*, **man(di)dī**; so **(fe)fendī**, *I have struck*.

III. *Reduplicated Perfects*: These are formed by prefixing to the unstrengthened root its first consonant (or consonantal combination) together with the following vowel, **a** and **ae** being weakened to **e**, or, if the root began with a vowel, by prefixing **e**, and adding the termination **-ī**. In Latin but few of these forms remain, and they have been variously modified: **disc-ō**, *I learn*, **di-dīcī**; **sponde-ō**, *I pledge*, **spo(s)pondī**; **tang-ō**, *I touch*, **te-ti-gī**; **tund-ō**, *I strike*, **tu-tud-ī**; **ago**, *I act*, **ēgī** (= **e-ag-ī**); **emo**, *I buy*, **ēmī** (= **e-em-ī**).

In composition the reduplication is in many cases dropped; so always in compounds of **cade-re**, *to fall*; **caede-re**, *to fell*; **cane-re**, *to sing*; **falle-re**, *to deceive*; **pange-re**, *to fix*; **parce-re**, *to spare*; **pare-re**, *to bear*; **pende-re**, *to hang*; **punge-re**, *to prick*; **tange-re**, *to touch*; **tende-re**, *to stretch* (occasionally retained in late Latin); **tondē-re**, *to shear* (but occasionally retained in late Latin); **tunde-re**, *to strike*. **Disc-ere**, *to learn*, always retains it, and so **pōsce-re**, *to demand*, and **admordē-re**, *to bite*. Of compounds of **curre-re**, *to run*, **succurrere** always

drops the reduplication, *praecurrere* always retains it : the others vary. Of compounds of *dare*, *abscondere* usually drops it, but all trisyllabic compounds that change the *a*, and all quadrisyllabic compounds, retain it. Compounds of *sistere*, *to set*, and *stāre*, *to stand*, retain it.

IV. *Perfect in i*. Verbs of the third conjugation, with a *short* stem-syllable, take *i* in the Perfect, after lengthening the stem-syllable and changing *ā* into *ē*. In many cases these Perfects are the remains of reduplicated forms : *legō*, *I read*, *lēg-i*; *videō*, *I see*, *vid-i*; *fodiō*, *I stab*, *fōd-i*; *fugīō*, *I flee*, *fūg-i*; *frangō*, *I break*, *frēg-i*.

V. Denominative verbs in *-uō*, like *acuō*, *I sharpen*; *metuō*, *I fear*; also *sternuō*, *I sneeze*, form the Perfect in *-u-i* after the analogy of primary verbs, and the formation in *-ui* gradually extended in Latin.

### III. THE SUPINE STEM.

135. I. *Supine in -tum, Perfect Passive Participle in -tus*: The stems are formed by the addition of *-tu* or *-to*

(a) To the stem as it appears in the Present Infinitive active. Here belong most verbs of the first and fourth conjugations, and those verbs of the second conjugation that are mentioned in 124 : *amā-tum*, *dēlē-tum*, *audī-tum*. Those verbs of the second conjugation which form Perfect in *-ui*, form the Supine stem by weakening the thematic vowel *e* to *i*, and adding *-tu*, *-to*, except *cēnsē-re*, *to deem*, *docē-re*, *to teach*, *miscē-re*, *to mix*, *tenē-re*, *to hold*, *torrē-re*, *to scorch*, which omit the thematic vowel, and form *cēnsu-m*, *doctu-m*, *mīxtu-m*, (*tentu-m*), *tōstu-m*.

(b) To the unstrengthened stem. Here belong most verbs of the third conjugation and the five verbs of the second just given, with sporadic forms in the other conjugations : *cap-tum* (*capiō*, *I take*), *rēp-tum* (*rēpō*, *I creep*), *dic-tum* (*dicō*, *I say*), *fac-tum* (*faciō*, *I do*).

In combinations of *-t-* with a dental, assimilation took place, giving usually *ss* after a short vowel and *s* after a long vowel : *scissu-m* (*scindō*, *I cleave*), *caesu-m* (*caedō*, *I fell*). On the analogy of this and under the influence often of Perfect in *-si*, we find *-s-* also in some other stems :

1. In stems with a guttural characteristic ; as, *fix-um* (*figō*, *I fix*) ; often with a preceding liquid : *mersu-m* (*mergō*, *I dip* ; Pf. *mersi*) ; *tersu-m* (*tergō*, *I wipe* ; Pf. *tersi*) ; *parsu-m* (*paro*, *I spare* ; Pf. *parsi*, old) ; *spar-su-m* (*spargō*, *I sprinkle* ; Pf. *sparsi*) ; *mul-su-m* (*mulgō*, *I milk* ; Pf. *mul-si*) ; but *far-tum* (*farcio*, *I stuff* ; Pf. *farsi*) ; *tortu-m* (*torqueō*, *I twist* ; Pf. *torsi*) ; *indul-tum* (rare and post-classical, from *indulgeō*, *I indulge* ; Pf. *indulsi*).

2. In one with a labial characteristic : *lāp-su-m* (*lābor*, *I slip*).

3. In some stems with characteristic *s* ; as, *cēnsu-m* (*cēnsēō*, *I deem* ; see I. a.) ; *haesu-m* (*chaereō*, *I stick*) ; *pīnu-m* (*pīnsō*, *I point*).

4. In some stems with a nasal characteristic : *pressu-m* (*premō*, *I press* ; Pf. *pressi*) ; *mānsu-m* (*maneō*, *I remain* ; Pf. *mānsi*).

5. In stems where *ll*, *rr* has arisen by assimilation : *pulsu-m* (*pellō*, *I drive*) ; *falsu-m* (*fallō*, *I falsify*) ; *vulsu-m* (*vellō*, *I pluck*) ; *cursu-m* (*currō*, *I run*) ; *versu-m* (*verrō*, *I sweep*).

**II. FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE IN -tūrus.**—The same changes occur in the stem as are found in the case of the Supine.

1. In some stems ending in -u a thematic vowel *i* is inserted; as *arguitūrus* (*arguere, to prove*); *luitūrus* (*luere, to loose*); *abnuitūrus* (*abnuere, to deny*); *ruitūrus* (*ruere, to rush*); *ēruitūrus* (*ēruere, to root out*); *fruitūrus* (*frui, to enjoy*).

2. Some Future Participles are found without corresponding Perfect: *calitūrus* (*calēre, to be warm*); *caritūrus* (*carēre, to lack*); *dolitūrus* (*dolēre, to grieve*); *iacitūrus* (*iacēre, to lie*); *pāritūrus* (*pārēre, to obey*); *valitūrus* (*valēre, to be well*).

3. Irregular are: *āgnōtūrus*, *āgnitūrus* (*āgnōscere, to know well*); *discitūrus* (*discere, to learn*); *hausūrus*, *haustūrus* (*haurire, to drain*); *nīsūrus* (*nīti, to lean*); *moritūrus* (*mori, to die*); *nōscitūrus* (*nōscere, to know*); *oritūrus* (*oriri, to arise*); *paritūrus* (*parere, to bear*).

### Change of Conjugation.

**136.** A change of Conjugation occurs in verbs which show a long thematic vowel in the Present stem, but not in the Perfect stem, or the reverse.

1. Verbs with Perfect and Supine formed regularly, according to the third conjugation, have the Present stem formed according to one of the other three:

<i>auge-ō,</i>	<i>augē-re,</i>	<i>aux-ī,</i>	<i>auc-tum,</i>	<i>to increase.</i>
<i>senti-ō,</i>	<i>senti-re,</i>	<i>sēn-sī,</i>	<i>sēn-sum,</i>	<i>to feel.</i>
<i>saepi-ō,</i>	<i>saepi-re,</i>	<i>saep-sī,</i>	<i>saep-tum,</i>	<i>to hedge about.</i>
<i>veni-ō,</i>	<i>veni-re,</i>	<i>vēn-ī,</i>	<i>ven-tum,</i>	<i>to come.</i>
<i>vide-ō,</i>	<i>vidē-re,</i>	<i>vid-ī,</i>	<i>vī-sum,</i>	<i>to see.</i>
<i>vinci-ō,</i>	<i>vinci-re,</i>	<i>vinx-ī,</i>	<i>vinc-tum,</i>	<i>to bind.</i>

2. Verbs with Perfect and Supine formed according to the first, second, or fourth conjugations, have the Present stem formed according to the third, in consequence of strengthening:

<i>ster-n-ō,</i>	<i>ster-ne-re,</i>	<i>strā-vī,</i>	<i>strā-tum,</i>	<i>to strew.</i>
<i>crē-sc-ō,</i>	<i>crē-sce-re,</i>	<i>crē-vī,</i>	<i>crē-tum,</i>	<i>to grow.</i>
<i>li-n-ō,</i>	<i>line-re,</i>	<i>lē-vī (lī-vī),</i>	<i>li-tum,</i>	<i>to smear.</i>

3. Verbs with the Present formed regularly according to the third conjugation, have the Perfect and Supine formed according to (a) the second, or (b) the fourth conjugation:

(a) *accumbere, to recline, fremere, to rage, gemere, to grieve, gignere, to beget, molere, to grind, strepere, to resound, vomere, to vomit*, form Perfect in -*uī*, Supine in -*itum*.

*alere, to nourish, colere, to cultivate, cōnsulere, to consult, frendere, to show the teeth, oculare, to conceal, rapere, to snatch*, and its compounds form Perfect in -*uī*, Supine in -*tum* (-*sum*). For *ali-tus*, see 142, 3.

**compescere**, to check, **con-cinere**, to sing together, and other compounds of **canere**, to sing, **excellere**, to excel, **stertere**, to snore, **tremere**, to tremble, form Perfect in **-ui**, but no Supine.

(b) **arcessere**, to summon, **incessere**, to enter, **cupere**, to desire, **petere**, to seek, **quaerere**, to search, and its compounds, **rudere**, to roar, **sapere**, to savor, form Perfect in **-ivi**, Supine in **-itum**.

4. Stems vary among the first, second, and fourth conjugations.

(a) Verbs with the Present formed according to the first, and Perfect and Supine according to the second conjugation :

**crepāre**, to crackle, **cubāre**, to lie, **domāre**, to conquer, **micāre**, to flush, **plicāre**, to fold, **sonāre**, to sound, **tonāre**, to thunder, **vetāre**, to forbid, with Perfect in **-ui**, Supine in **-itum** :

**fricare**, to rub, **necāre**, to kill, **secāre**, to cut, with Perfect in **-ui**, Supine in **-tum** (but participles in **ātus** are occasional, principally in later Latin).

(b) Verbs with Present formed according to fourth, and Perfect and Supine according to the second : **amicire**, to wrap, **aperire**, to open, **operire**, to cover, **salire**, to leap, and compounds.

(c) Of the second and fourth conjugations is **cie-ō** (**ci-o**), **ciē-re** (**ci-re**), **civi**, **citum** (**ci-tum**), to stir up, and its compounds : while **pōtō**, **pōtāre**, to drink, forms Sup. **pō-tum** or **pō-tātum**, and Fut. Part. **pō-tūrus** or **pōtā-tūrus**.

5. **dare**, to give, and **stāre**, to stand, pass over to the third conjugation in the Perfect, in consequence of reduplication.

## LIST OF VERBS ACCORDING TO THE PERFECT FORM.

PERFECT: **-vi**; SUPINE: **-tum**.

### 137. Stem class :

(a) Verbs of first and fourth conjugations, except those mentioned in 136, 4. Irregular in Supine is

<b>sepeli-ō</b> ,	<b>sepeli-re</b> ,	<b>sepeli-vi</b> ,	<b>sepul-tum</b> ,	<i>to bury.</i>
-------------------	--------------------	--------------------	--------------------	-----------------

(b) In the second conjugation :

<b>dēle-ō</b> ,	<b>dēle-re</b> ,	<b>dēle-vi</b> ,	<b>dēle-tum</b> ,	<i>to destroy.</i>
<b>fle-ō</b> ,	<b>flē-re</b> ,	<b>flē-vi</b> ,	<b>flē-tum</b> ,	<i>to weep.</i>
<b>ne-ō</b> ,	<b>nē-re</b> ,	<b>nē-vi</b> ,	<b>nē-tum</b> ,	<i>to spin.</i>
<b>-ole-ō</b> ( <b>ab-, in-</b> ),	<b>-olē-re</b> ,	<b>-olē-vi</b> ,	—	<i>to grow.</i>

These compounds form Supine in **itum** ; **abolutum**, **inolutus**.

<b>-ple-ō</b> ,	<b>-plē-re</b> ,	<b>plē-vi</b> ,	<b>plē-tum</b> ,	<i>to fill.</i>
-----------------	------------------	-----------------	------------------	-----------------

So the compounds with **com-**, **in-**, **ex-**, **re-**, **sup-**.

<b>vie-ō</b> ,	<b>viē-re</b> ,	—	<b>viē-tus</b> ,	<i>to plait.</i>
----------------	-----------------	---	------------------	------------------

Irregular is

<b>cie-ō</b> ( <b>ci-ō</b> ),	<b>ciē-re</b> ( <b>ci-re</b> ),	<b>ci-vi</b> ,	<b>ci-tum</b> ( <b>ci-tum</b> ),	<i>to stir up.</i>
-------------------------------	---------------------------------	----------------	----------------------------------	--------------------

In the compounds we find the Participles **concitus** or **concius**, **percitus**, **excitus** or **excitus**, but **accitus**.

(c) In the *third* conjugation :

**arcess-ō,**      **arcesse-re,**      **arcessī-vī,**      **arcessī-tum,**      *to send for.*

So, too, **laccess-ō,** *I tease*, **capess-ō,** *I lay hold of*. In early Latin we often find **accersō**, the relation of which to **arcessō** is variously explained. The forms **arcessiri**, and later **arcessirētur**, from the fourth conjugation, also occur.

**in-cess-ō,**      **in-cesse-re,**      **in-cessī-vī** (**cessī**),      *to attack.*

So **facess-ō,** *I cause, make off.*

**pet-ō,**      **pete-re,**      **peti-vī,**      **peti-tum,**      *to seek (fly at).*

**quaer-ō,**      **quaere-re,**      **quaesi-vī,**      **quaesi-tum,**      *to seek.*

**con-quir-ō,**      **con-quire-re,**      **conquisi-vī,**      **con-quisi-tum,**      *to hunt up.*

So other compounds of **-quirō** (**quaerō**).

**rud-ō,**      **rude-re,**      **rudī-vī,**      **rudī-tum,**      *to roar.*

**ter-ō,**      **tere-re,**      **tri-vī,**      **tri-tum,**      *to rub.*

**TIB.**, I. 4, 48, has **at-teruisse**, and **APULEIUS** has similar forms.

138. *Reduplicated class :*

**ser-ō,**      **sere-re,**      **sē-vī,**      **sa-tum,**      *to sow.*

So **cōnsērō**, but with Sup. **cōn-situm**.

139. *Nasal class :*

A. **ii-n-ō,**      **li-ne-re,**      **lē-vī,**      **li-tum,**      *to besmear.*

So compounds of **linō**. Pf. **li-vī** is rare.

**si-n-ō,**      **si-ne-re,**      **sī-vī,**      **si-tum,**      *to let.*

So **dē-sinō**, *I leave off*, and in early Latin, **pōnō** (= **po-sinō**), *I put*.

B. **cer-n-ō,**      **cer-ne-re,**      **crē-vī,**      **(crē-tum),**      *to separate.*

So **dēcernō**, *I decide*.

**sper-n-ō,**      **sper-ne-re,**      **sprē-vī,**      **sprē-tum,**      *to despise.*

**ster-n-ō,**      **ster-ne-re,**      **strā-vī,**      **strā-tum,**      *to strew.*

140. *Inchoative class :*

**inveterā-sc-ō,**      **inveterā-sce-re,**      **inveterā-vī,**      **inveterā-tum,**      *to grow old.*

**pā-sc-ō,**      **pā-sce-re,**      **pā-vī,**      **pās-tum,**      *to graze (trans.).*

**vesperā-sc-ō,**      **vesperā-sce-re,**      **vesperā-vī,**      —      *to become evening.*

So **advesperāscō**.

**crē-sc-ō,**      **crē-sce-re,**      **crē-vī,**      **crē-tum,**      *to grow.*

So the compounds.

**con-cupī-sc-ō,**      **-cupī-sce-re,**      **-cupī-vī,**      **-cupī-tum,**      *to long for.*

**ob-dormī-sc-ō,**      **-dormī-sce-re,**      **-dormī-vī,**      **-dormī-tum,**      *to fall asleep.*

So **condormiscō**, **ēdormiscō**.

**ex-olē-sc-ō,**      **-olē-sce-re,**      **-olē-vī,**      **-olē-tum,**      *to get one's growth.*

So **ob-solēscō**, *I grow old*. But **ab-olēscō**, *I disappear*, has **abolutum**; **co-alēscō**, *I grow together*, **co-alitum**; **ad-olēscō**, *I grow up*, **ad-ultum** in the Sup.; and **inolēscō** lacks the Supine.

**quiē-sc-ō,**      **quiē-sce-re,**      **quiē-vī,**      **quiē-tum,**      *to rest.*

**sci-sc-ō,**      **sci-sce-re,**      **sci-vī,**      **sci-tum,**      *to decree.*

So **ad-sciiscō**, *I take on*.



**su-ēsc-ō,**      **suē-sce-re,**      **suē-vī,**      **suē-tum,**      *to accustom one's self.*  
 So compounds **as-, con-, dē-, man-**.

**(g)nō-sc-ō,**      **nō-sce-re,**      **nō-vī,**      **(nō-tum),**      *to know.*  
 So **ignōscō, I pardon;** but **cō-gnōsco, I recognise,** and other compounds of **nōsco,** have Sup. in **-itum.**

**re-sip-isc-ō,**      **-sipī-sce-re,**      **-sipī-vī,**      —      *to come to one's senses.*

#### 141. *I-class :*

**cupi-ō,**      **cupe-re,**      **cupī-vī,**      **cupī-tum,**      *to desire.*  
**sapi-ō,**      **sape-re,**      **sapī-vī (-uī),**      —      *to have a flavor.*

PERFECT : **-uī** ; SUPINE : **(i)tum.**

#### 142. *Stem class :*

1. The majority of the verbs of the *second* conjugation ; see 134, I, *b*, and 135, *a*. But

**sorbe-ō,**      **sorbē-re,**      **sorb-uī,**      —      *to sup up.*  
 Pl. **sorp-si** occurs in VAL. MAX. and LUCAN.

2. Of the *first* conjugation :

**crep-ō,**      **crepā-re,**      **crep-uī,**      **crepi-tum,**      *to rattle.*  
 So the compounds, but in early and late Latin the regular forms of **dis-crepāro** and **in-crepāre** are occasional.

**cub-ō,**      **cubā-re,**      **cub-uī,**      **cubi-tum,**      *to lie.*  
 Occasional regular forms in post-Ciceronian Latin.

**dom-ō,**      **domā-re,**      **dom-uī,**      **domi-tum,**      *to tame.*  
**fric-ō,**      **fricā-re,**      **fric-uī,**      **fric-tum (-ā-tum),**      *to rub.*

Occasionally in early and more often in post-classical Latin, the regular forms are found in the compounds ; so always **-fricā-tūrus.**

**mic-ō,**      **micā-re,**      **mic-uī,**      —      *to quiver, flash.*  
 But **di-micāre, to fight (out),** is regular, except occasionally in OVID.

**nec-ō,**      **necā-re,**      **necā-vī (nec-uī rare),**      **necā-tum,**      *to kill.*

The compound **ēnecā-re, to kill off,** has **ēnecā-vī** in early Latin, otherwise **ēnecui** (rare) ; and **ēnectus** (but PLIN. MAT., **ēnecātus**).

**plic-ō,**      **plicā-re,**      **(plicā-vī),**      **plici-tum,**      *to fold.*

The simple forms of **plicā-re** are rare. The compounds **ap-, com-, ex-, im-,** vary between **-ā-vī** and **-uī** in the Pl., and **-ātum** and **-itum** in the Sup. ; but CICERO uses always **applicā-vī, applicātum ; complicā-vī, complicātum ;** and usually **explicā-vī, explicātum ;** always **implicātum ;** **circumplicā-re** is always regular ; forms of **replicā-re** are rare.

**sec-ō,**      **secā-re,**      **sec-uī,**      **sec-tum,**      *to cut.*  
 Regular forms are early, late, and rare.

**son-ō,**      **sonā-re,**      **son-uī,**      **soni-tum,**      *to sound.*

But regularly **sonātūrus.** Regular forms are late. In early Latin the forms **sonere, sonit, sonunt, resonit, resonunt,** show that the simple verb was **sonere.**

**ton-ō,**      **tonā-re,**      **ton-uī,**      —      *to thunder.*  
 But **at-tonitus** and **intonātus** (HOR., *Epod.* 2, 51).



vet-ō,	vetā-re,	vet-ūī,	veti-tum,	to forbid.
But PERSIUS (5, 90) uses vetā-vī.				

3. Of the *third* conjugation:

frem-ō,	freme-re,	frem-ūī,	—	to roar, rage.
gem-ō,	geme-re,	gem-ūī,	—	to groan.
vom-ō,	vome-re,	vom-ūī,	vomi-tum,	to vomit.
al-ō,	ale-re,	al-ūī,	al-tum,	to nourish.
Participle ali-tus occurs from LIVY on.				
col-ō,	cole-re,	col-ūī,	cul-tum,	to cultivate.
con-cin-ō,	-cine-re,	-cin-ūī,	—	to sing together.
So occinere, praecinere.				
cōn-sul-ō,	cōn-sule-re,	cōn-sul-ūī,	cōn-sul-tum,	to consult.
deps-ō,	depse-re,	deps-ūī,	deps-tus,	to knead.
mol-ō,	mole-re,	mol-ūī,	moli-tum,	to grind.
occul-ō,	occule-re,	occul-ūī,	occul-tum,	to conceal.
pīns-ō,	pīnse-re,	pīns-ūī,	pīnsi-tum,	to pound.

Sup. also pīnsum, pīstum. Collateral forms of pīsō, pīsere, are early and rare; so also is pīnsibant.

ser-ō,	sere-re,	—	(ser-tum),	to string (out).
--------	----------	---	------------	------------------

Common in compounds: as, dēserō, dēserere, dēserui, dēsertum, to desert. The same forms are found occasionally in compounds of serere, to sow (138), but not in classical Latin.

stert-ō,	sterte-re,	stert-ūī,	—	to snore.
strep-ō,	strepe-re,	strep-ūī,	(strep-i-tum),	to make a din.
tex-ō,	texe-re,	tex-ūī,	tex-tum,	to weave.

Irregular are

met-ō,	mete-re,	mess-ūī,	mes-sum,	to mow.
vol-ō,	vel-le,	vol-ūī,	—	to wish.
So nōlō, mālō; see 174.				

4. In the *fourth* conjugation:

amici-ō,	amici-re,	amic-ūī (amixī),	amic-tum,	to clothe.
aperi-ō,	aperi-re,	aper-ūī,	aper-tum,	to open.
operi-ō,	operi-re,	oper-ūī,	oper-tum,	to cover up.
sali-ō,	sali-re,	sal-ūī,	sal-tum,	to leap.

The regular Perfects salivī, salii, are found in compounds, but usually in post-classical writers, and often syncopeated.

143. *Reduplicated class*:

gi-gn-ō (GEN-),	gi-gne-re,	gen-ūī,	geni-tum,	to beget.
-----------------	------------	---------	-----------	-----------

Early Latin has the Present forms genit, genunt, genat, genitur, genuntur, genendī, genī.

144. *Nasal class :*

**frend-ō,**                **frende-re,**                —                **frē-sum, frēs-sum,**    *to gnash.*  
Also in the form **frende-ō, frendē-re.**

**ac-cumb-ō,**        **-cumbe-re,**        **cub-ū,**        **cubi-tum,**        *to lie down.*  
So also the compounds **con-, dis-, in-;** but **re-cumbō** lacks the Supine.

**ex-cell-ō,**        **-celle-re,**        **(cell-ū),**        **(cel-sus),**        *to surpass.*

But **per-cellere, to beat down,** has Pf. **per-culi,** Sup. **per-culsum.** **Excelluērunt** is found in GELL. XIV. 3, 7, and in AUGUSTINE; otherwise forms of Pf. and Sup. do not occur.

145. *The Inchoative class :*

**dispēsc-ō,**        **dispēsce-re,**        **dispēsc-ū,**        —                *to let loose.*  
So **compēscere, to check.**

A large number of verbs are formed from verbs of the second conjugation, or from substantives or adjectives, and take Pf. in **-ū**; as,

**co-alēsc-ō,**        **alēsce-re,**        **al-ū,**        **ali-tum,**        *to grow together.*  
See 140.

**ē-vānēsc-ō,**        **vānēsce-re,**        **vān-ū,**        —                *to disappear.*

**con-valēsc-ō,**        **valēsce-re,**        **val-ū,**        **vali-tum,**        *to get well.*

**in-gemisc-ō,**        **gemisce-re,**        **gem-ū,**        —                *to sigh.*

**nōtēsc-ō,**        **nōtēsce-re,**        **nōt-ū,**        —                *to become known.*

**incalēsc-ō,**        **incalēsce-re,**        **incal-ū,**        —                *to get warm.*

146. *The I-class :*

**rapi-ō,**                **rape-re,**                **rap-ū,**                **rap-tum,**        *to snatch.*  
**cor-ripiō,**        **ripe-re,**                **rip-ū,**                **rep-tum,**        *to seize.*

So other compounds. In early Latin, **surripere** syncopates some of its forms, as **surpuit, surpere;** **surpuerat** occurs in Hor.; aoristic forms, as **rapsit, surrepsit,** belong also to the early period. 131, 4, b. 2.

PERFECT: **-si**; SUPINE: **-tum, -sum.**

147. *Stem class :*

1. In the *second* conjugation :

**iube-ō,**                **iubē-re,**                **iūs-si,**                **iūs-sum,**        *to order.*  
On **sorbeō** see 142, 1.

**ārde-ō,**                **ārdē-re,**                **ār-si,**                **ār-sum,**        *to be on fire.*

**ride-ō,**                **ridē-re,**                **ri-si,**                **ri-sum,**        *to laugh (at).*

**haere-ō,**                **haerē-re,**                **hae-si,**                **(hae-sum),**        *to stick (to).*

**mane-ō,**                **manē-re,**                **mān-si,**                **mān-sum,**        *to remain.*

**suāde-ō,**                **suādē-re,**                **suā-si,**                **suā-sum,**        *to counsel.*

With dental dropped before ending of Pf. and Supine.

**auge-ō,**                **augē-re,**                **auxi,**                **auc-tum,**        *to cause to warr.*

**frige-ō,**                **frigē-re,**                **(frīxi),**                —                *to be chilled.*

**lūce-ō,**                **lūcē-re,**                **lūxi,**                —                *to give light.*

<b>lūge-ō,</b>	<b>lūgē-re,</b>	<b>lūxi,</b>	—	<i>to be in mourning.</i>
<b>alge-ō,</b>	<b>algē-re,</b>	<b>al-sī,</b>	—	<i>to freeze.</i>
<b>fulge-ō,</b>	<b>fulgē-re,</b>	<b>ful-sī,</b>	—	<i>to glow.</i>

In early Latin, forms of the third conjugation occur : **fulgit, fulgere, effulgere** (VERG., *A*, VIII. 677).

<b>indulge-ō,</b>	<b>indulgē-re,</b>	<b>indul-sī,</b>	<b>(indul-tum),</b>	<i>to give way.</i>
<b>mulce-ō,</b>	<b>mulcē-re,</b>	<b>mul-sī,</b>	<b>mul-sum,</b>	<i>to stroke.</i>

Rarely **mulc-tus** in compounds.

<b>mulge-ō,</b>	<b>mulgē-re,</b>	<b>mul-sī,</b>	<b>mul-sum(etum),</b>	<i>to milk.</i>
<b>terge-ō,</b>	<b>tergē-re,</b>	<b>ter-sī,</b>	<b>ter-sum,</b>	<i>to wipe.</i>

Forms of the third conjugation : **tergit, tergitor, terguntur**, are occasionally found ; and so too in some late compounds. VARRO has **tertus**.

<b>torque-ō,</b>	<b>torquē-re,</b>	<b>tor-sī,</b>	<b>tor-tum,</b>	<i>to twist.</i>
<b>turge-ō,</b>	<b>turgē-re,</b>	<b>tur-sī,</b>	—	<i>to swell.</i>
<b>urge-ō,</b>	<b>urgē-re,</b>	<b>ur-sī,</b>	—	<i>to press.</i>
<b>cō-nīve-ō</b> (gnigv),	<b>-nīvē-re,</b>	<b>-nīxi</b> (ivī),	—	<i>to close the eyes.</i>

## 2. In the *third* conjugation :

<b>carp-ō,</b>	<b>carpe-re,</b>	<b>carp-sī,</b>	<b>carp-tum,</b>	<i>to pluck.</i>
<b>dē-cerp-ō,</b>	<b>dē-cerpe-re,</b>	<b>dē-cerp-sī,</b>	<b>dē-cerp-tum,</b>	<i>to pluck off.</i>
<b>clep-ō,</b>	<b>clepe-re,</b>	<b>clep-sī</b> (clēp-i),	<b>clep-tum,</b>	<i>to filch.</i>
Rare and ante-classic.				
<b>nūb-ō,</b>	<b>nūbe-re,</b>	<b>nūp-sī,</b>	<b>nūp-tum,</b>	<i>to put on a veil</i> <i>(as a bride).</i>
<b>rēp-ō,</b>	<b>rēpe-re,</b>	<b>rēp-sī,</b>	<b>rēp-tum,</b>	<i>to creep.</i>
<b>scalp-ō,</b>	<b>scalpe-re,</b>	<b>scalp-sī,</b>	<b>scalp-tum,</b>	<i>to scrape.</i>
<b>scrib-ō,</b>	<b>scribe-re,</b>	<b>scrip-sī,</b>	<b>scrip-tum,</b>	<i>to write.</i>
<b>sculp-ō,</b>	<b>sculpe-re,</b>	<b>sculp-sī,</b>	<b>sculp-tum,</b>	<i>to chisel.</i>
<b>serp-ō,</b>	<b>serpe-re,</b>	<b>serp-sī,</b>	<b>serp-tum,</b>	<i>to creep.</i>
<b>prem-ō</b> (-primō),	<b>preme-re,</b>	<b>pres-sī,</b>	<b>pres-sum,</b>	<i>to press.</i>

Some compounds of **emo**, *I take, buy*, have Pf. in **-sī**, Sup. in **-tum**, before which a euphonic **p** develops :

<b>cōm-ō,</b>	<b>cōme-re,</b>	<b>cōm-p-sī,</b>	<b>cōm-p-tum,</b>	<i>to adorn.</i>
<b>dēm-ō,</b>	<b>dēme-re,</b>	<b>dēm-p-sī,</b>	<b>dēm-p-tum,</b>	<i>to take away.</i>
<b>prōm-ō,</b>	<b>prōme-re,</b>	<b>prōm-p-sī,</b>	<b>prōm-p-tum,</b>	<i>to take out.</i>
<b>sūm-ō,</b>	<b>sūme-re,</b>	<b>sūm-p-sī,</b>	<b>sūm-p-tum,</b>	<i>to take.</i>

On **contemn-ō** see 149, c.

<b>dīc-ō,</b>	<b>dīce-re,</b>	<b>dīxi</b> (dic-sī),	<b>dic-tum,</b>	<i>to say.</i>
---------------	-----------------	-----------------------	-----------------	----------------

Impv. **dīc**, see 130, 5. Occasionally in old Latin **dīcēbō** for Future.

<b>dūc-ō,</b>	<b>dūce-re,</b>	<b>dūxi,</b>	<b>duc-tum,</b>	<i>to lead.</i>
---------------	-----------------	--------------	-----------------	-----------------

Imperative **dūc**, see 130, 5.

<b>fig-ō,</b>	<b>fige-re,</b>	<b>fixi,</b>	<b>fixum,</b>	<i>to fasten.</i>
---------------	-----------------	--------------	---------------	-------------------

Part. **fictus** for **fixus** is occasional in early Latin.

<b>-fig-ō</b> (con-, af-, in-),	<b>-fige-re,</b>	<b>-fixi,</b>	<b>-fic-tum,</b>	<i>to strike.</i>
---------------------------------	------------------	---------------	------------------	-------------------

Simple verb is found occasionally in early Latin.

<b>frig-ō,</b>	<b>frige-re,</b>	<b>fixi,</b>	<b>fric-tum,</b>	<i>to parch.</i>
----------------	------------------	--------------	------------------	------------------

sūg-ō,	sūge-re,	sūxī,	sūc-tum,	<i>to suck.</i>
Fut. <i>exsūgēbō</i> is found in <i>PLAUT., Ep.</i> 188.				
merg-ō,	merge-re,	mer-sī,	mer-sum,	<i>to plunge.</i>
sparg-ō,	sparge-re,	spar-sī,	spar-sum,	<i>to strew.</i>
cōn-sperg-ō,	cōn-sperge-re,	cōn-sper-sī,	cōn-sper-sum,	<i>to besprinkle.</i>
coqu-ō,	coque-re,	coxī,	coc-tum,	<i>to cook.</i>
[-lig-ō (leg-),	-lige-re,	-lēxī,	-lēc-tum.]	
di-lig-ō,	di-lige-re,	di-lēxī,	dilēc-tum,	<i>to love.</i>
intelligō, <i>or</i>				
intellegō,	intellege-re,	intel-lēxī,	intel-lēc-tum,	<i>to understand.</i>
negligō, <i>or</i>				
neg-leg-ō,	neg-lege-re,	neg-lēxī,	neg-lēc-tum,	<i>to neglect.</i>
Other compounds have <i>lēgi</i> . <i>SALL., J.</i> 40, 1, has <i>neglēgisset</i> .				
reg-ō,	rege-re,	rēxī,	rēc-tum,	<i>to keep right.</i>
di-rig-ō,	di-rige-re,	di-rēxī,	di-rēc-tum,	<i>to guide.</i>
per-g-ō,	per-ge-re,	per-rēxī,	per-rēc-tum,	<i>to go on.</i>
su-rg-ō,	su-rge-re,	sur-rēxī,	sur-rēc-tum,	<i>to rise up.</i>
But <i>expergō</i> formed <i>expergitus</i> in early and late Latin.				
teg-ō,	tege-re,	tēxī,	tēc-tum,	<i>to cover.</i>
claud-ō,	clau-de-re,	clau-sī,	clau-sum,	<i>to shut.</i>
con-, ex-clūd-ō,	ex-clūde-re,	ex-clū-sī,	ex-clū-sum,	<i>to shut up, out.</i>
Early Latin shows also <i>clūdō</i> , <i>clūdere</i> .				
laed-ō,	laede-re,	lae-sī,	lae-sum,	<i>to harm.</i>
col-lid-ō,	col-lide-re,	col-li-sī,	col-li-sum,	<i>to strike together.</i>
lūd-ō,	lūde-re,	lū-sī,	lū-sum,	<i>to play.</i>
plaud-ō (ap-plaud-ō),	plau-de-re,	plau-sī,	plau-sum,	<i>to clap.</i>
ex-plōd-ō,	ex-plōde-re,	ex-plō-sī,	ex-plō-sum,	<i>to hoot off.</i>
rād-ō,	rāde-re,	rā-sī,	rā-sum,	<i>to scratch.</i>
rōd-ō,	rōde-re,	rō-sī,	rō-sum,	<i>to gnaw.</i>
trūd-ō,	trūde-re,	trū-sī,	trū-sum,	<i>to push.</i>
vād-ō (in-, ā-),	-vāde-re,	-vā-sī,	-vā-sum,	<i>to go.</i>
cēd-ō,	cēde-re,	cēs-sī,	cēs-sum,	<i>to give way.</i>
quati-ō,	quate-re,	(quas-sī),	quas-sum,	<i>to shake.</i>
con-cutiō (per-, ex-),	con-cute-re,	con-cus-sī,	con-cus-sum,	<i>to shatter.</i>
mitt-ō,	mitte-re,	mi-sī,	mis-sum,	<i>to send.</i>
di-vid-ō,	di-vide-re,	di-vi-sī,	di-vi-sum,	<i>to part.</i>
ūr-ō,	ūre-re,	ūs-sī,	ūs-tum,	<i>to burn.</i>
com-būr-ō,	com-būre-re,	com-būs-sī,	com-būs-tum,	<i>to burn up.</i>
ger-ō,	gere-re,	ges-sī,	ges-tum,	<i>to carry.</i>
flu-ō (fluv-),	flue-re,	fluxī,	(flux-us),	<i>to flow.</i>
stru-ō (strugv-),	strue-re,	strūxī,	strūc-tum,	<i>to build.</i>
trah-o (tragh-),	trahe-re,	trāxī,	trāc-tum,	<i>to drag.</i>
veh-ō (vegh-),	vehe-re,	vexī,	vec-tum,	<i>to carry.</i>
viv-ō (vigv-),	vive-re,	vixī,	vic-tum,	<i>to live.</i>

148. *The T-class :*

flect-ō,	flecte-re,	flexī,	flexum,	<i>to bend.</i>
nect-ō,	necte-re,	nexī (nexuī),	nexum,	<i>to knot.</i>
The Pf. forms : in-nexuī (VERG., <i>A.</i> v., 425).				
pect-ō,	pecte-re,	plexī,	plexum,	<i>to comb.</i>
plect-ō,	plecte-re,	(plexī),	plexum,	<i>to plait.</i>

149. *The Nasal class :*

(a) Supine without N :

fung-ō,	finge-re,	finxī,	fic-tum,	<i>to form.</i>
ming-ō,	minge-re,	minxī,	mic-tum,	<i>to urinate.</i>
ping-ō,	pinge-re,	pinxī,	pic-tum,	<i>to paint.</i>
string-ō,	stringe-re,	strinxī,	stric-tum,	<i>to draw tight.</i>

(b) Supine with N :

ang-ō,	ange-re,	anxī,	—	<i>to throttle, vex.</i>
cing-ō,	cinge-re,	cinxī,	cinc-tum,	<i>to gird.</i>
ē-mung-ō,	ē-munge-re,	ē-munxī,	ē-munc-tum,	<i>to wipe the nose.</i>
iung-ō,	iunge-re,	iūnxī,	iūnc-tum,	<i>to yoke, join.</i>
ling-ō,	linge-re,	linxī,	linc-tum,	<i>to lick.</i>
ning-ō,	ninge-re,	ninxī,	—	<i>to snow.</i>
pang-ō,	pange-re,	panxī,	panc-tum,	<i>to drive in.</i>

Perfect also pēgī, and Supine pāctum. Compare 155 and paciscor, 165.

plang-ō,	plange-re,	planxī,	planc-tum,	<i>to smite.</i>
-stingu-ō,	-stingue-re,	-stinxī,	-stinc-tum,	<i>to put out.</i>
So the compounds ex-, dis-, re- ; the simple verb is ante-classic.				
ting-ō (tingu-ō),	ting(u)e-re,	tinxī,	tinc-tum,	<i>to wet, dye.</i>
ung-ō (ungu-ō),	ung(u)e-re,	ūnxī,	ūnc-tum,	<i>to anoint.</i>

(c) tem-n-ō (rare) and its compounds form the Pf. with a euphonic p:

con-tem-n-ō,	-temne-re,	-tem-p-sī,	-tem-p-tum,	<i>to despise.</i>
--------------	------------	------------	-------------	--------------------

150. *The I-class :*

i. In the *third* conjugation :

[-lici-ō (LAC),	lice-re,	-lexī,	-lec-tum],	<i>to lure.</i>
pel-lici-ō,	pel-lice-re,	pel-lexī,	pel-lec-tum,	<i>to allure.</i>
So <i>allicere</i> , <i>illicere</i> , which, however, have early Pf. in -uī, as does <i>pellicere</i> also. But <i>ē-licere</i> has -uī regularly in classical times, and <i>ē-lexī</i> only later.				

[-spici-ō (SPEC),	-spice-re,	-spexī,	-spec-tum],	<i>to peer.</i>
per-spici-ō,	per-spice-re,	per-spexī,	per-spec-tum,	<i>to see through.</i>
So the compounds with ad-, con-, dē-, in-.				

2. In the *fourth* conjugation :

saepi-ō,	saepi-re,	saep-sī,	saep-tum,	<i>to hedge in.</i>
sanci-ō,	sanci-re,	sānxi,	sānc-tum,	<i>to hallow.</i>

The Sup. **sanci-tum** is rare.

vinci-ō,	vinci-re,	vinxi,	vinc-tum,	<i>to bind.</i>
farci-ō (=ferci-ō),	farci-re,	far-sī,	far-tum,	<i>to stuff.</i>
fulci-ō,	fulci-re,	ful-sī,	ful-tum,	<i>to prop.</i>
sarci-ō,	sarci-re,	sar-sī,	sar-tum,	<i>to patch.</i>
senti-ō,	senti-re,	sōn-sī,	sōn-sum,	<i>to feel.</i>
hauri-ō,	hauri-re,	haus-sī,	haus-tum,	<i>to drain.</i>

VERB. I. iv., 383, has **hausūrus**. Early Latin shows **hauribant** (I. cii.) and **haurierint**; **hauritūrus** is very late.

rauci-ō,	rauci-re,	rau-sī,	rau-sum,	<i>to be hoarse.</i>
----------	-----------	---------	----------	----------------------

This verb is very rare.

**PERFECT: -I WITH REDUPLICATION; SUPINE: -sum, -tum.**

151. In the *first* conjugation :

1. d-ō,	da-re,	ded-i,	da-tum,	<i>to give, put, do.</i>
---------	--------	--------	---------	--------------------------

Everywhere **ā**, except in **dās**, *thou givest*, and **dā**, *give thou*.

1. Like **dō**, are conjugated the compounds with dissyllabic words, such as : **circum-d-ō**, *I surround* ; **satis-d-ō**, *I give bail* ; **pessum-d-ō**, *I ruin* ; **vēnum-d-ō**, *I sell* ; thus :

circum-d-ō,	circum-da-re,	circum-de-di,	circum-da-tum,	<i>to surround.</i>
-------------	---------------	---------------	----------------	---------------------

2. The compounds of **da-re** with monosyllabic words pass over wholly into the Third Conjugation.

ab-d-ō,	ab-de-re,	ab-did-i,	ab-di-tum,	<i>to put away.</i>
ad-d-ō,	ad-de-re,	ad-did-i,	ad-di-tum,	<i>to put to.</i>
con-d-ō,	con-de-re,	con-did-i,	con-di-tum,	<i>to put up (found).</i>
abs-con-d-ō,	abs-con-de-re,	abs-con-d-i,	abs-con-di-tum,	<i>to put far away.</i>

Pf. **abscondidī** is found in PL., *Mer.* 360, then not until late Latin.

crē-d-ō,	crē-de-re,	crē-did-i,	crē-di-tum,	<i>to put faith.</i>
dē-d-ō,	dē-de-re,	dē-did-i,	dē-di-tum,	<i>to give up.</i>
ē-d-ō,	ē-de-re,	ē-did-i,	ē-di-tum,	<i>to put out.</i>
in-d-ō,	in-de-re,	in-did-i,	in-di-tum,	<i>to put in.</i>
per-d-ō,	per-de-re,	per-did-i,	per-di-tum,	<i>to forfeit (ruin).</i>
prō-d-ō,	prō-de-re,	prō-did-i,	prō-di-tum,	<i>to betray.</i>
red-d-ō,	red-de-re,	red-did-i,	red-di-tum,	<i>to give back.</i>
trā-d-ō,	trā-de-re,	trā-did-i,	trā-di-tum,	<i>to give over.</i>
vēn-d-ō,	vēn-de-re,	vēn-did-i,	vēn-di-tum,	<i>to put up to sale.</i>

NOTE. In early Latin **dare** formed the Pr. Subjv., also **duim**. So in some of its compounds, as **perduim**. See 130, 4.

2. st-ō,	stā-re,	stet-i,	(stā-tū-rus),	<i>to stand.</i>
----------	---------	---------	---------------	------------------

So the compounds :

ad-st-ō,	ad-stā-re,	ad-stit-i,	—	<i>to stand by.</i>
cōn-st-ō,	cōn-stā-re,	cōn-stit-i,	—	<i>to stand fast.</i>



in-st-ō,	in-stā-re,	in-stit-I,	—	to stand upon.
ob-st-ō,	ob-stā-re,	ob-stit-I,	—	to stand out against.
per-st-ō,	per-stā-re,	per-stit-I,	—	to stand firm.
prae-st-ō,	prae-stā-re,	prae-stit-I,	—	to stand ahead.
re-st-ō,	re-stā-re,	re-stit-I,	—	to stand over.
dī-st-ō,	dī-stā-re,	—	—	to stand apart.
ex-st-ō,	ex-stā-re,	—	—	to stand out.

All compounds of **stāre** with dissyllabic prepositions have, however, **-stetī** in the Perfect, as : **ante-stō**, *I am superior* ; **inter-stō**, *I am between* ; **super-stō**, *I stand upon* ; thus :

**circum-st-ō**, **circum-stā-re**, **circum-stet-ī**, — *to stand round.*

NOTE.—Compare **sistō** and its compounds ; 154, 1.

### 152. In the *second* conjugation :

morde-ō,	mordē-re,	mo-mord-ī,	mor-sum,	to bite.
pende-ō,	pendē-re,	pe-pend-ī,	—	to hang (intr.).
sponde-ō,	spondē-re,	spo-pond-ī,	spōn-sum,	to pledge oneself.

Compounds omit the reduplication, but **PLAUT.** shows also **dē-spo-pondisse** and **dē-spo-ponderās**.

tonde-ō,	tondē-re,	to-tond-ī,	tōn-sum,	to shear.
----------	-----------	------------	----------	-----------

### 153. In the *third* conjugation :

#### (a) *Stem class.*

Reduplication lost in the compounds :

cad-ō,	cade-re,	ce-cid-ī,	cā-sum,	to fall.
oc-cid-ō,	oc-cide-re,	oc-cid-ī,	oc-cā-sum,	to perish.

**re-cidere** sometimes forms **reccidī**, as well as **recidī**, in the Perfect.

caed-ō,	caede-re,	ce-cid-ī,	cae-sum,	to fell.
oc-cid-ō,	oc-cide-re,	oc-cid-ī,	oc-ci-sum,	to kill.
can-ō,	cane-re,	ce-cin-ī,	(can-tum),	to sing.

Compounds form the Pf. in **-uī**. For (**cantum**), **cantātum** was used.

parc-ō,	parce-re,	pe-perc-ī (par-sī),	(par-sūrus),	to spare.
com-parcō (-percō),	com-parce-re,	com-pars-ī,	com-par-sum,	to save.

**parsi** is common in early Latin, and is the only form used by **PLAUTUS**. Early Latin shows rarely **parcuī**. **TER.** uses **compersit**.

### 154. (b) *Reduplicated class* :

1. **sistō** (= **si-st-ō**), as a simple verb, has the transitive meaning, *I (cause to) stand*, but in its compounds, the intransitive meaning, *I stand*. Compare **stō**, *I stand*, and its compounds (151) :

<b>sist-ō</b> ,	<b>siste-re</b> ,	( <b>stit-ī</b> ),	<b>sta-tum</b> ,	<i>to (cause to) stand.</i>
-----------------	-------------------	--------------------	------------------	-----------------------------

So the compounds :

cōn-sist-ō,	cōn-siste-re,	cōn-stit-ī,	cōn-sti-tum,	<i>to come to a stand.</i>
dē-sist-ō (ab-),	dē-siste-re,	dē-stit-ī,	dē-sti-tum,	<i>to stand off.</i>

ex-sist-ō,	ex-siste-re,	ex-stit-i,	ex-sti-tum,	to stand up.
ob-sist-ō,	ob-siste-re,	ob-stit-i,	ob-sti-tum,	to take a stand against.
re-sist-ō,	re-siste-re,	re-stit-i,	re-sti-tum,	to withstand.
ad-sist-ō,	ad-siste-re,	ad-stit-i,	—	to stand near.
in-sist-ō,	in-siste-re,	in-stit-i,	—	to stand upon.
circum-sist-ō,	circum-siste-re,	circum-stet-i,		to take a stand round.
2. bi-bō,	bi-be-re,	bi-bi,	(bi-bi-tus),	to drink.

No Supine. The Pf. Part. is late.

155. (c) *Nasal class:*

fall-ō,	falle-re,	fe-fell-i,	fal-sum,	to cheat.
---------	-----------	------------	----------	-----------

The compound *refellō* has the Perfect *refelli*, and lacks Supine.

pell-ō,	pelle-re,	pe-pul-i,	pul-sum,	to push, drive back.
---------	-----------	-----------	----------	----------------------

*repellō* loses the reduplicating vowel in Pf. *reppuli*.

toll-ō,	tolle-re,	—	—	to lift up.
---------	-----------	---	---	-------------

Pf. and Sup. are formed *sus-tuli* (from reduplicated Pf. *tetuli*, 171, s. 1) and *sub-lātum* (for *t'lā-tum*); a recent view makes *su-stuli* from (s)tollō.

(pang-ō),	(pange-re),	pe-pig-i,	pāc-tum,	to drive a bargain.
-----------	-------------	-----------	----------	---------------------

The Pr. forms are supplied by *paciscor*, 165. The Pf. *pēgi*, rare in the simple form, is regular in the compounds *com-*, *im-*, *op-*. See 149, δ.

tang-ō (TAG),	tange-re,	te-tig-i,	tāc-tum,	to touch.
at-ting-ō,	at-tinge-re,	at-tig-i,	at-tāc-tum,	to border upon.

So with other compounds.

pend-ō,	pende-re,	pe-pend-i,	pēn-sum,	to hang (trans.).
tend-ō,	tende-re,	te-tend-i,	tēn-sum and -tum,	to stretch.
ex-tend-ō,	ex-tende-re	ex-tend-i,	ex-tēn-sum and -tum,	to stretch out.
os-tend-ō,	os-tende-re,	os-tend-i,	os-tēn-sum (-tus),	to stretch at, show.

The compounds prefer the Sup. in -tum; so always *attentus*, *contentus*, usually *distentus* and *intentus*.

pung-ō,	punge-re,	pu-pug-i,	punc-tum,	to prick.
inter-pungō,	inter-punge-re,	inter-punxi,	inter-punc-tum,	to place points between.

tund-ō,	tunde-re,	tu-tud-i,	tūn-sum, tū-sum,	to thump.
---------	-----------	-----------	------------------	-----------

Simple form has usually *tūnsus* in the Participle; in the compounds more often *tūsus*. The reduplicating vowel is lost in *rettudi*.

curr-ō,	curre-re,	cu-curr-i,	cur-sum,	to run.
---------	-----------	------------	----------	---------

The compounds vary in their use of the reduplication; *praecurrere* always has the reduplication, *succurrere* always omits it; other compounds vary. See 134, iii.

156. (d) *Inchoative class:*

discō (= di-d e c-scō),	disce-re,	di-dic-i,	—	to learn.
-------------------------	-----------	-----------	---	-----------

A late form is Fut. Part. *discitūrus*. Compounds retain reduplication. See 134, iii.

pōsc-ō (= porc-scō),	pōsce-re,	po-pōsc-i,	—	to claim.
----------------------	-----------	------------	---	-----------

Compounds retain the reduplication. See 134, iii.

157. (e) *The I-class:*

pari-ō,	pare-re,	pe-per-i,	par-tum (paritūrus),	to bring forth.
---------	----------	-----------	----------------------	-----------------

The compounds drop the reduplication and form the Inf. in -ire. But *reperire*, to find, forms its P. *repperi*, with omission of the vowel of reduplication.

**PERFECT: -ī; SUPINE: -tum, -sum.**

**158.** In the *first* conjugation :

iuv-ō,	iuvā-re,	iūv-ī,	iū-tum (iuvātūrus),	to help.
ad-iuv-ō,	-iuvā-re,	-iūv-ī,	-iū-tum (-iū-tūrus),	to stand by as aid.
(lav-ō),	(lav-ere),	lāv-ī,	lau-tum (lō-tum),	to wash.
lav-ō,	lavā-re,	(lavā-vī),	lavā-tum,	to wash.

The Present forms of **lavere** belong principally to early Latin, with occasional forms in Augustan poets and late writers; **lautum** and **lōtum** are both used in classical times; but **lautum** belongs rather to early, **lōtum** to post-classical Latin. The form **lavātum** is early and poetical.

**159.** In the *second* conjugation :

cave-ō,	cavē-re,	cāv-ī,	cau-tum,	to take heed.
fave-ō,	favē-re,	fāv-ī,	fau-tum,	to be well-disposed.
ferve-ō (o),	fervē-re (ere),	ferv-ī (ferb-uī),	—	to seethe.

The Pr. forms of the third conjugation belong to early Latin and the poets. The Pf. in **-uī** is post-Ciceronian.

fove-ō,	fovē-re,	fōv-ī,	fō-tum,	to keep warm.
move-ō,	movē-re,	mōv-ī,	mō-tum,	to move.
pave-ō,	pavē-re,	pāv-ī,	—	to quake (with fear).
prande-ō,	prandē-re,	prand-ī,	prān-sum,	to breakfast.
sede-ō,	sedē-re,	sēd-ī,	ses-sum,	to sit.
strīde-ō (-dō),	strīdē-re (-e-re),	strīd-ī,	—	to whistle, screech.
vove-ō,	vovē-re,	vōv-ī,	vō-tum,	to vow.

The Present forms of the third conjugation belong almost entirely to Augustan poets and later writers.

vide-ō,	vidē-re,	vid-ī,	vī-sum,	to see.
---------	----------	--------	---------	---------

**160.** In the *third* conjugation :

With long vowel in the Perfect.

**1. The Stem class :**

ag-o,	age-re,	ēg-ī,	āc-tum,	to do, drive.
cō-g-ō,	cō-ge-re,	co-ēg-ī,	co-āc-tum,	to compel.
dē-g-ō,	dē-ge-re,	—	—	to pass (time).
red-ig-ō,	red-ige-re,	red-ēg-ī,	red-āc-tum,	to bring back.
em-o,	eme-re,	ēm-ī,	ēmp-tum,	to take, to buy.
inter-im-ō,	-ime-re,	-ēm-ī,	-ēmp-tum,	to make away with.
co-em-ō, I buy up, is conjugated like em-o. But the compounds with ad-, ex-, inter-, red-, take -im-ō. So, too, dir-im-ō, I sever.				
ed-ō,	ede-re,	ēd-ī,	ē-sum,	to eat.

NOTE.—In **agere, edere, emere**, the reduplication has coalesced with the root, as, **ēgī = eagī**.

cūd-ō,	cūde-re,	(cūd-ī),	(cū-sum),	to hammer.
--------	----------	----------	-----------	------------

The Pf. and Sup. occur in compounds only.

leg-o,	lege-re,	lēg-i,	lēc-tum,	<i>to pick up, read.</i>
col-lig-ō,	col-lige-re,	col-lēg-i,	col-lēc-tum,	<i>to gather.</i>

So the other compounds, except di-lig-ō, intel-leg-ō, neg-leg-ō, see 147, 2.

ic-ō (defective),	ice-re,	ic-i,	ic-tum,	<i>to strike.</i>
-------------------	---------	-------	---------	-------------------

Present stem rare: ic-it, ic-itur, ic-imur.

sid-ō,	side-re,	sid-i,		<i>to sit down.</i>
--------	----------	--------	--	---------------------

The Pf. was originally reduplicated as the Present; see 133, 11. In composition the Pf. is -sēdī, -sessum, from sede-ō, thus:

cōn-sid-ō,	cōn-side-re,	cōn-sēd-i,	cōn-ses-sum,	<i>to settle down.</i>
scab-ō,	scabe-re,	scāb-i,	—	<i>to scratch.</i>
solv-ō,	solve-re,	solv-i,	solū-tum,	<i>to loose, pay.</i>
vert-ō,	verte-re,	vert-i,	ver-sum,	<i>to turn.</i>
re-vert-or,	re-vert-i,	revert-i (active),	re-ver-sum,	<i>to turn back.</i>
verr-ō,	verre-re,	verr-i (rare),	ver-sum,	<i>to sweep.</i>
vis-ō,	vise-re,	vis-i,	—	<i>to visit.</i>
volv-ō,	volve-re,	volv-i,	volū-tum,	<i>to roll.</i>

On percellō, perculi, see 144. On tollō, sustuli, see 155.

## 2. The Nasal class:

psall-ō,	psalle-re,	psall-i,	—	<i>to play on the cithern.</i>
sall-ō,	salle-re,	(sall-i),	sal-sum,	<i>to salt.</i>

Very rare except in the past participle salsus.

vell-ō,	velle-re,	vell-i (vul-si),	vul-sum,	<i>to pluck.</i>
---------	-----------	------------------	----------	------------------

The Pf. vulsi is post-Augustan.

lamb-ō,	lambe-re,	lamb-i,	—	<i>to lick.</i>
rump-ō,	rumpe-re,	rūp-i,	rup-tum,	<i>to break.</i>
ac-cend-ō,	ac-cende-re,	ac-cend-i,	ac-cēn-sum,	<i>to kindle.</i>
dē-fend-ō,	dē-fende-re,	dē-fend-i,	dē-fēn-sum,	<i>to strike away, defend.</i>
fund-ō (FUD),	funde-re,	fūd-i,	fū-sum,	<i>to pour.</i>
mand-ō,	mande-re,	mand-i,	mān-sum,	<i>to chew.</i>
pand-ō,	pande-re,	pand-i,	pas-sum,	<i>to spread out.</i>

pān-sum in Supine is late.

prehend-ō,	prehende-re,	prehend-i,	prehēn-sum,	<i>to seize.</i>
------------	--------------	------------	-------------	------------------

Often shortened to prēndō, prēndere, prēndī, prēnsum.

scand-ō,	scande-re,	scand-i,	scān-sum,	<i>to climb.</i>
ād-), dē-scend-ō,	dē-scende-re,	dē-scend-i,	dē-scēn-sum,	<i>to climb up, down.</i>
frang-ō,	frange-re,	frēg-i,	frāc-tum,	<i>to break.</i>
per-fring-ō,	per-fringe-re,	per-frēg-i,	per-frāc-tum,	<i>to shiver.</i>
linqu-ō,	linque-re,	liqu-i,		<i>to leave.</i>
re-liqu-ō,	re-linque-re,	re-liqu-i,	re-lic-tum,	<i>to leave behind.</i>
pang-ō,	pange-re,	pēg-i,	pāc-tum,	<i>to drive in.</i>
com-ping-ō,	com-pinge-re,	com-pēg-i,	com-pāc-tum,	<i>to drive tight.</i>

See 149, b, 155.

vinc-ō (vic),	vince-re,	vic-i,	vic-tum,	<i>to conquer.</i>
---------------	-----------	--------	----------	--------------------

### 3. The *I*-class.

(a) With long vowel in the Perfect.

capi-ō (cap-),	cape-re,	cēp-ī,	cap-tum,	<i>to take.</i>
ac-cipi-ō,	ac-cipe-re,	ac-cēp-ī,	ac-cep-tum,	<i>to receive.</i>
faci-ō,	face-re,	fēc-ī,	fac-tum,	<i>to make.</i>
cale-faci-ō (calf.),	cale-face-re,	cale-fēc-ī,	cale-fac-tum,	<i>to make warm.</i>
per-fici-ō,	per-fice-re,	per-fēc-ī,	per-fec-tum,	<i>to achieve.</i>

The Pf. was originally reduplicated ; on Impv. **fac**, see 130, 5.

fodi-ō,	fode-re,	fōd-ī,	fos-sum,	<i>to dig.</i>
fugi-ō,	fuge-re,	fūg-ī,	(fug-i-tūrus),	<i>to flee.</i>
iaci-ō,	iaoe-re,	iēc-ī,	iac-tum,	<i>to cast.</i>
con-ici-ō,	con-ice-re,	con-iēc-ī,	con-iec-tum,	<i>to gather.</i>

(b) With short vowel in the Pf. due to the loss of the reduplication :

find-ō,	finde-re,	fid-ī,	fis-sum,	<i>to cleave.</i>
scind-ō,	scinde-re,	scid-ī,	scis-sum,	<i>to split.</i>

The reduplicated form **sci-cidi** is found in early Latin.

### 161. In the *fourth* conjugation :

**amici-ō** forms rarely in late Latin **amīci** ; see 142, 4.

com-peri-ō,	com-peri-re,	com-per-ī,	com-per-tum,	<i>to find out.</i>
re-peri-ō,	re-peri-re,	rep-per-ī,	re-per-tum,	<i>to find.</i>

See the simple verb **parere**, 157.

veni-ō,	veni-re,	vēn-ī,	ven-tum,	<i>to come.</i>
---------	----------	--------	----------	-----------------

In early Latin sporadic tenses from a form **venere** occur, as **advenat**, **ēvenat**.

**162.** A number of verbs of the *third* conjugation have a characteristic **-u-** ; these form the perfect in **-ī**.

ab-lu-ō,	ab-lue-re,	ab-lu-ī,	ab-lū-tum,	<i>to wash off.</i>
ab-nu-ō,	ab-nue-re,	ab-nu-ī,	(ab-nu-itūr-us),	<i>to dissent.</i>
acu-ō,	acue-re,	acu-ī,	acū-tum,	<i>to sharpen.</i>
ad-nu-ō(an-nu-ō),	ad-nue-re,	ad-nu-ī,		<i>to nod assent.</i>
argu-ō,	argue-re,	argu-ī,	argū-tum,	<i>to accuse.</i>
batu-ō,	batue-re,	batu-ī,	—	<i>to beat.</i>
con-gru-ō,	con-grue-re,	con-gru-ī,	—	<i>to agree.</i>
dē-libu-ō,	dē-libue-re,	dē-libu-ī,	dē-libū-tum,	<i>to amount.</i>
ex-u-ō,	ex-ue-re,	ex-u-ī,	ex-ū-tum,	<i>to put off, doff.</i>
im-bu-ō,	im-bue-re,	im-bu-ī,	im-bū-tum,	<i>to dip, dye.</i>
in-du-ō,	in-due-re,	in-du-ī,	in-dū-tum,	<i>to put on, don.</i>
lu-ō,	lue-re,	lu-ī,	lu-itūr-us,	<i>to atone for.</i>
metu-ō,	metue-re,	metu-ī,	—	<i>to fear.</i>
minu-ō,	minue-re,	minu-ī,	minū-tum,	<i>to lessen.</i>
plu-ō,	plue-re,	plu-it, plūv-it,	—	<i>to rain.</i>
ru-ō,	rue-re,	ru-ī,	ru-tum (ruitūrus),	<i>to rush down.</i>
spu-ō,	spue-re,	spu-ī,	spū-tum,	<i>to spew.</i>
statu-ō,	statue-re,	statu-ī,	statū-tum,	<i>to settle.</i>
sternu-ō,	sternue-re,	sternu-ī,	—	<i>to sneeze.</i>
su-ō,	sue-re,	su-ī,	sū-tum,	<i>to sew.</i>
tribu-ō,	tribue-re,	tribu-ī,	tribū-tum,	<i>to allot.</i>

## DEPONENTS.

163. The majority of the deponent verbs belong to the *first* conjugation. In many instances they have parallel active forms in early or in late Latin. The principal verbs are as follows :

In the *first* conjugation :

**adŭl-or,**            **adŭlā-rī,**            **adŭlā-tus sum,**            *to fawn upon.*

Occasionally active in ante-classical Latin (LUCR. v., 1070) and more often in later Latin.

**alterc-or,**            **altercā-rī,**            **altercā-tus sum,**            *to wrangle.*

In early Latin **altercāsti** (TER., *And.* 653), **altercās.** Active forms more common in late Latin.

**arbitr-or,**            **arbitrā-rī,**            **arbitrā-tus sum,**            *to think.*

PLAUT. uses this verb also as an active, but later this usage is rare.

**aucup-or,**            **aucupā-rī,**            **aucupā-tus sum,**            *to try to catch.*

Active forms are common in early Latin.

**augur-or,**            **augurā-rī,**            **augurā-tus sum,**            *to take the auguries.*

Active forms are early, legal, and late. Use as a passive is occasional in the classical period.

**auspic-or,**            **auspicā-rī,**            **auspicā-tus sum,**            *to take the auspices.*

Active forms are early and late. CIC. and LIVY use the verb as a passive in a few instances.

**comit-or,**            **comitā-rī,**            **comitā-tus sum,**            *to accompany.*

Poets (OY., PROP., etc.) use the active forms frequently. The Perfect Part. **comitātus** is common as a passive, also in classical Latin.

**comment-or,**            **commentā-rī,**            **commentā-tus sum,**            *to discuss.*

CIC. uses **commentātus** as a passive in *Br.* 83, 301, *Fam.* XVI., 26, 1.

**cōnflīct-or,**            **cōnflīctā-rī,**            **cōnflīctā-tus sum,**            *to struggle.*

Occasionally found for **cōnflīctāre.** See TER., *And.*, 93.

**cōnspic-or,**            **cōnspicā-rī,**            **cōnspicā-tus sum,**            *to desery.*

So **dēspicor, sūspicor.** But a few forms are occasionally (usually in early Latin) used as passives, especially **dēspicātus** (PLAUT., TER.), compared **dēspicātissimus** by CIC. (*Sext.* 16, 36, *Verr.* III., 41, 98). PLAUT., *Cas.* 391, **sūspicēs.**

**contempl-or,**            **contemplā-rī,**            **contemplā-tus sum,**            *to survey.*

The active forms are used frequently in early Latin (regularly by PLAUT.).

**cōpul-or,**            **cōpulā-rī,**            **cōpulā-tus sum,**            *to join.*

So PLAUT., *Aul.* 116. Otherwise everywhere **cōpulāre.**

**crimin-or,**            **criminā-rī,**            **criminā-tus sum,**            *to charge.*

PLAUT. uses **crimināret,** ENNIUS **crimināt.**

**cunct-or,**            **cunctā-rī,**            **cunctā-tus sum,**            *to delay.*

Active forms are occasional in early and late Latin.

**dign-or,**            **dignā-rī,**            **dignā-tus sum,**            *to deem worthy.*

This verb is predominantly post-classical and poetical. The active forms are early and rare; perhaps once in CICERO.



<b>fabric-or,</b>	<b>fabricā-rī,</b>	<b>fabricā-tus sum,</b>	<i>to forge.</i>
The active forms belong to poetry and to post-Augustan prose.			
<b>faener-or,</b>	<b>faenerā-rī,</b>	<b>faenerā-tus sum,</b>	<i>to lend on interest.</i>
Active forms occasional in early Latin and more frequent in late Latin.			
<b>fluctu-or,</b>	<b>fluctuā-rī,</b>	<b>fluctuā-tus sum,</b>	<i>to undulate.</i>
Active forms are rare in PLAUT. and in CIC., but not uncommon later. The deponent forms are post-Ciceronian.			
<b>(for),</b>	<b>fā-rī,</b>	<b>fā-tus sum,</b>	<i>to speak.</i>
See 175, 3.			
<b>frustr-or,</b>	<b>frustrā-rī,</b>	<b>frustrā-tus sum,</b>	<i>to deceive.</i>
Active forms rare, but at all periods.			
<b>illacrim-or,</b>	<b>illacrimā-rī,</b>	<b>illacrimā-tus sum,</b>	<i>to weep over.</i>
In CIC. and HOR. ; otherwise active.			
<b>interpret-or,</b>	<b>interpretā-rī,</b>	<b>interpretā-tus sum,</b>	<i>to interpret.</i>
CIC. uses <b>interpretātus</b> occasionally as a passive ; likewise LIVY and others.			
<b>luct-or,</b>	<b>luctā-rī,</b>	<b>luctā-tus sum,</b>	<i>to wrestle.</i>
PLAUT., TER., ENNIUS, VARRO show sporadic forms of the active.			
<b>lūdific-or,</b>	<b>lūdificā-rī,</b>	<b>lūdificā-tus sum,</b>	<i>to make sport.</i>
Active frequent in PLAUT., and occasionally later.			
<b>medic-or,</b>	<b>medicā-rī,</b>	<b>medicā-tus sum,</b>	<i>to heal.</i>
The active is once in PLAUT., and frequent in poets and post-Augustan prose.			
<b>medit-or,</b>	<b>meditā-rī,</b>	<b>meditā-tus sum,</b>	<i>to think over</i>
The form <b>meditātus</b> is very commonly found as a passive.			
<b>mūner-or,</b>	<b>mūnerā-rī,</b>	<b>mūnerā-tus sum,</b>	<i>to bestow.</i>
Active forms in early Latin and occasionally in CIC. and later.			
<b>nūtric-or,</b>	<b>nūtricā-rī,</b>	<b>nūtricā-tus sum,</b>	<i>to suckle.</i>
Active forms in early Latin.			
<b>odōr-or,</b>	<b>odōrā-rī,</b>	<b>odōrā-tus sum,</b>	<i>to smell.</i>
Active forms occasional at all periods.			
<b>opīn-or,</b>	<b>opīnā-rī,</b>	<b>opīnā-tus sum,</b>	<i>to think.</i>
<b>opīnō</b> is frequent in early Latin, and <b>opīnātus</b> as passive is common in CICERO.			
<b>palp-or,</b>	<b>palpā-rī,</b>	<b>palpā-tus sum,</b>	<i>to stroke.</i>
Is occasional (principally in early Latin) for <b>palpāre</b> .			
<b>popul-or,</b>	<b>populā-rī,</b>	<b>populā-tus sum,</b>	<i>to ravage.</i>
Active forms in simple verb and compounds are early, poetical, and post-classic			
<b>scīscit-or,</b>	<b>scīscitā-rī,</b>	<b>scīscitā-tus sum,</b>	<i>to inquire.</i>
PLAUT., <i>Merc.</i> 389, <b>scīscitāre</b> (active).			
<b>scrūt-or,</b>	<b>scrūtā-rī,</b>	<b>scrūtā-tus sum,</b>	<i>to search.</i>
PLAUT., <i>Aul.</i> 657, <b>perscrūtāvi</b> . The use as a passive occurs first in SENECA			
<b>sect-or,</b>	<b>sectā-rī,</b>	<b>sectā-tus sum,</b>	<i>to pursue.</i>
Active forms and passive usages are early.			
<b>stabul-or,</b>	<b>stabulā-rī,</b>	<b>stabulā-tus sum,</b>	<i>to stable.</i>
Active forms begin with VERGIL.			
<b>tūt-or,</b>	<b>tūtā-rī,</b>	<b>tūtā-tus sum,</b>	<i>to protect.</i>
Active forms and passive usages are early and rare.			

**tumultu-or,**      **tumultuā-rī,**      **tumultuā-tus sum,**      *to raise a riot.*

But PLAUTUS uses active forms; and passive uses are occasional later.

**vag-or,**      **vagā-rī,**      **vagā-tus sum,**      *to wander.*

Active forms belong to early Latin.

**vener-or,**      **venerā-rī,**      **venerā-tus sum,**      *to reverence.*

But PLAUT. uses **venerō, venerem**; VERG., HOR., and later writers show passive uses.

#### 164. In the *second* conjugation :

**fate-or,**      **fatē-rī,**      **fas-sus sum,**      *to confess.*

**cōn-fite-or,**      **cōn-fitē-rī,**      **cōn-fes-sus sum,**      *to confess.*

Both **fateor** and **cōnfiteor** are used occasionally as passives by CIC. and later.

**lice-or,**      **licē-rī,**      **lici-tus sum,**      *to bid (at a sale).*

**mere-or,**      **merē-rī,**      **meri-tus sum,**      *to deserve.*

Especially in the phrases **merēri bene dē aliquō**, *to deserve well of any one*. Otherwise the active is usual.

**misere-or,**      **miserē-rī,**      **miseri-tus sum,**      *to pity.*

In early Latin the active forms are found occasionally, *e. g.*, LUCR. III., 881.

**pollice-or,**      **pollicē-rī,**      **pollici-tus sum,**      *to promise.*

Occasionally used as a passive in post-classical Latin.

**re-or,**      **rē-rī,**      **ra-tus sum,**      *to think.*

Pr. Part. Active is wanting.

**tue-or,**      **tuē-rī,**      **tui-tus (tūtus) sum,**      *to protect.*

In early Latin and occasionally later, a parallel form, **tuor, tuī, tuitus sum**, occurs. For **tuitus** usually **tūtātus**.

**vere-or,**      **verē-rī,**      **veri-tus sum,**      *to fear.*

#### 165. In the *third* conjugation :

**apisc-or,**      **apisc-i,**      **ap-tus sum,**      *to get.*

Simple verb is frequent in early and late Latin. Of the compounds, **adipiscor**, **adipisci**, **adeptus sum**, is usually deponent in classical times, but occurs occasionally as a passive in SALL. and later writers. The compounds **ind-**, **red-**, are rare.

**am-plect-or,**      **am-plect-i,**      **am-plex-us sum,**      *to twine round, embrace.*

So the compounds **complector**, **circumplector**. In early Latin active forms are occasionally found; *e. g.*, **amplectitōte**, **circumplecte** (PLAUT.).

**com-min-isc-or,** **com-min-isc-i,**      **com-men-tus sum,**      *to think up, devise.*

Ovid and later writers use **commentus** as a passive.

**experg-isc-or,** **-reg-**      **ex-perg-isc-i,**      **ex-per-rēc-tus sum,**      *to wright one's self up awake.*

**fung-or,**      **fung-i,**      **fūnc-tus sum,**      *to discharge.*

This verb is used passively very rarely: TER. AD. 508. LUCR. III. 368. CIC., *Sest.* 4, 10.

**fru-or** **frugv-**, **fru-i,**      **frūc-tus (fru-i-tus) sum,**      *to enjoy.*

The form **fruitus** is rare and late.

<b>gradi-or,</b>	<b>grad-I,</b>	<b>gres-sus sum,</b>	<i>to step,</i>
<b>ag-gredi-or,</b>	<b>ag-gred-I,</b>	<b>ag-gres-sus sum,</b>	<i>to attack.</i>
Occasionally active forms of the fourth conjugation are found in early Latin.			

<b>lāb-or,</b>	<b>lāb-I,</b>	<b>lāp-sus sum,</b>	<i>to glide.</i>
<b>loqu-or,</b>	<b>loqu-I,</b>	<b>locū-tus sum,</b>	<i>to speak.</i>
<b>mori-or,</b>	<b>mor-I,</b>	<b>mortu-us sum,</b>	<i>to die.</i>

Early Latin shows parallel forms of the fourth conjugation, as **morīri, ēmorīri**. Fut. Part. **moritūrus**; see 135, II., 3.

<b>nanc-isc-or,</b>	<b>nanc-isc-I,</b>	<b>nac-tus (nanc-tus) sum,</b>	<i>to get.</i>
<b>nāsc-or (gnā-),</b>	<b>nāsc-I,</b>	<b>nā-tus sum,</b>	<i>to be born.</i>
Fut. Part. <b>nāscitūrus</b> .			

<b>nīt-or (gnict- from genū),</b>	<b>nīt-I,</b>	<b>nī-sus (nīx-us) sum,</b>	<i>to stay one's self on.</i>
		<b>nī-sūrus,</b>	

<b>ob-liv-isc-or,</b>	<b>ob-liv-isc-I,</b>	<b>ob-lī-tus sum,</b>	<i>to forget.</i>
-----------------------	----------------------	-----------------------	-------------------

<b>pac-isc-or,</b>	<b>pac-isc-I,</b>	<b>pac-tus sum (pepigī),</b>	<i>to drive (a bargain).</i>
--------------------	-------------------	------------------------------	------------------------------

Occasionally active forms are found in early Latin; in Cic. **pactus** is frequently used as a passive. See **pangō**.

<b>pati-or,</b>	<b>pat-I,</b>	<b>pas-sus sum,</b>	<i>to suffer.</i>
<b>per-peti-or,</b>	<b>per-pet-I,</b>	<b>per-pes-sus sum,</b>	<i>to endure to the end.</i>
<b>pro-fic-isc-or,</b>	<b>pro-fic-isc-I,</b>	<b>pro-fec-tus sum,</b>	<i>to (get forward) set out.</i>
But PLAUT., <i>M. G.</i> 1329, <b>proficiscō</b> .			

<b>quer-or,</b>	<b>quer-I,</b>	<b>ques-tus sum,</b>	<i>to complain.</i>
<b>sequ-or,</b>	<b>sequ-I,</b>	<b>secū-tus sum,</b>	<i>to follow.</i>
<b>ulc-isc-or,</b>	<b>ulc-isc-I,</b>	<b>ul-tus sum,</b>	<i>to avenge.</i>

Active forms are rare; so once in ENNIUS. But SALL., LIVY, and later writers use the verb as a passive sometimes.

<b>ūt-or,</b>	<b>ūt-I,</b>	<b>ū-sus sum,</b>	<i>to use.</i>
---------------	--------------	-------------------	----------------

PLAUT. shows the compound **abūsā** as a passive (*Asin.* 196).

<b>veh-or,</b>	<b>veh-I,</b>	<b>vec-tus sum,</b>	<i>to (wagon) ride.</i>
<b>vesc-or,</b>	<b>vesc-I,</b>	—	<i>to feed.</i>

## 166. In the fourth conjugation :

<b>assenti-or,</b>	<b>assenti-rī,</b>	<b>assēn-sus sum,</b>	<i>to assent.</i>
--------------------	--------------------	-----------------------	-------------------

Active forms are not uncommon in early Latin. Cic. uses the Pf. active forms frequently; likewise later writers.

<b>com-peri-or,</b>	<b>comperi-rī,</b>	—	<i>to find out.</i>
---------------------	--------------------	---	---------------------

Occasionally found (but rarely in classical Latin; as, SALL., *J.*, 45, 1; 108, 3) for **comperiō, comperire**. But **experior, experiri, expertus sum, to try**, is regularly deponent; though Cic. and others use often the Pf. active forms.

<b>largi-or,</b>	<b>largi-rī,</b>	<b>largi-tus sum,</b>	<i>to bestow.</i>
<b>menti-or,</b>	<b>menti-rī,</b>	<b>menti-tus sum,</b>	<i>to lie.</i>

The poets and later prose writers use this as a passive also.

<b>mēti-or,</b>	<b>mēti-rī,</b>	<b>mēn-sus sum,</b>	<i>to measure.</i>
-----------------	-----------------	---------------------	--------------------

Passive usage is common, especially in the compounds: **dēmēnsus, dīmēnsus, ēmēnsus, permēnsus, remēnsus**.

**ordi-or,**                    **ordi-rī,**                    **or-sus sum,**                    *to begin.*

**ōrsus,** and more commonly **exōrsus,** are also found as passives.

**ori-or,**                    **ori-rī,**                    **or-tus sum,**                    *to arise.*

The Pr. Indic. is usually formed according to the third conjugation; the Impf. Subjv. always **orerer**; but the Fut. Part. is **oritūrus**. The compounds follow the same usage except **adorirī**, *to rise up at, attack*, which follows the fourth conjugation.

**parti-or,**                    **parti-rī,**                    **parti-tus sum,**                    *to share.*

Active forms and passive uses are found in early Latin, and sporadically in Cic. and later.

**poti-or,**                    **poti-rī,**                    **poti-tus sum,**                    *to get possession of.*

The Pr. Indic., Impf. Subjv., and occasionally other forms, are also found in early Latin and the poets, inflected according to the third conjugation; so regularly after **PLAUT.** **potitur**, frequently **poterētur**, **poterēmur**.

**pūni-or,**                    **pūni-rī,**                    **pūni-tus sum,**                    *to punish.*

Occasionally in Cic. and late writers for **pūnīre**.

**sorti-or,**                    **sorti-rī,**                    **sorti-tus sum,**                    *to cast lots.*

Active occasionally in early Latin, and passive uses later of the Pf. Participle.

## SEMI-DEPONENTS.

167. 1. A few verbs form the Perfect forms only as deponents:

**aude-ō,**                    **audē-re,**                    **au-sus sum,**                    *to dare.*

On the aorist forms **ausim**, etc., see 131, 4, b.

**fīd-ō,**                    **fīd-ere,**                    **fī-sus sum,**                    *to trust.*

**gaude-ō,**                    **gaudē-re,**                    **gāv-isus sum,**                    *to rejoice.*

**sole-ō,**                    **solē-re,**                    **sol-itus sum,**                    *to be wont.*

The Pf. active is found in early Latin; but rarely.

2. The reverse usage is found in:

**re-vert-or,**                    **re-vert-i,**                    **re-vert-i,**                    *to turn back.*

So also **dēverti**, but without Pf. Part. **Reversus** is also used actively, but **reversus sum** for **reverti** is post-classic.

See also **assentior**, etc., 166.

NOTES. 1. Some active verbs have a Perfect Participle passive with active meaning, as: **cēnātus**, *one who has dined*, from **cēnāre**, *to dine*; **prānsus**, *having breakfasted*, from **prandeō**, *I breakfast*; **pōtus**, *drunken*, from **pōtō**, *I drink*; **iūrātus**, *having taken the oath, sworn*, from **iūrō**, *I swear*; **coniūrātus**, *a conspirator*, from **coniūrō**, *I conspire*. Many such are used purely as Adjectives: **cōsiderātus**, *circumspect*, from **cōsiderō**; **cautus**,  *wary*, from **caveō**, *I beware*.

2. The Perfect Participle of many deponent Verbs has both active and passive meaning: **adeptus** **adipiscor**, *having acquired, or being acquired*; **comitātus** **comitor**, *I accompany*; **effātus** **effor**, *I speak out*; **expertus** **experior**, *I try*; **exsecrātus** **exsecror**, *I curse*; **imitātus** **imitor**, *I copy*; **meritus** **mereor**, *I deserve*; **opinātus**, **necopinātus** **opinor**, *I think*; **pactus** **paciscor**, *I contract*; **partītus** **partior**, *I distribute*; **sortītus** **sortior**, *I cast lots*; **tueor**, *I protect*; **tūtus**, *safe*.

For others, see the list of deponents.

# IRREGULAR VERBS.

## 168. Irregular in the formation of the tense-stems :

1. Nine verbs of the third conjugation, which have, in spite of the short stem-syllable, the Pf. in **-si**, viz. :

**clepō**, *I filch* ; **rego**, *I keep right* ; **tego**, *I cover in* ; **coquō**, *I bake* ; and the compounds of **lego**, *I pick up* ; **laciō**, *I lure* ; **speciō**, *I spy* (-**ligō**, -**liciō**, -**spiciō**) ; **dividō**, *I part* ; **quatiō**, *I shake*. See 147, 2.

From **lego**, however, only **diligō**, *I love* ; **intellegō**, *I understand* ; and **neglegō**, *neglect*, are irregular. The other compounds are regular. See 147, 2.

2. Five verbs of the third conjugation, which, in spite of long stem-syllable, have the Pf. in **-i**, viz. :

**lambō** *I lick* ; **cūdō**, *I hammer* ; **sīdō**, *I sit* (160, 1) ; **strīdeō**, *I whistle* (159) ; **vertō**, *I turn* (160, 1).

3. Assimilation between **bs** and **ms** occurs in the Pf. and Sup. of

<b>iube-ō</b> ,	<i>I order.</i>	See 147, 1.
<b>prem-ō</b> (- <b>prim-ō</b> ),	<i>I press.</i>	See 147, 2.

4. Special irregularities occur in :

<b>bib-ō</b> ,	<i>I drink.</i>	154, 2.
<b>mane-ō</b> ,	<i>I remain.</i>	147, 1.
<b>mēti-or</b> ,	<i>I measure.</i>	166.
<b>met-ō</b> ,	<i>I move.</i>	142, 3.
<b>mori-or</b> ,	<i>I die.</i>	165.
<b>rauci-ō</b> ,	<i>I am hoarse.</i>	150, 2.
<b>re-or</b> ,	<i>I think.</i>	164.

5. Formed from different tense-stems, are the tenses of

<b>fer-ō</b> ,	<i>I bear.</i>	171.
<b>toll-ō</b> ,	<i>I lift.</i>	155.

## 169. Irregular in the conjugation of the Present-stem :

1. **ori-or**, **orī-rī**, **or-tus sum**, *to arise*.

See 166.

2. **ī-re**, *to go*.

The stem is **i**, which, before **a**, **o**, **u**, becomes **e**.

PRIN. PARTS : **eō**, **īre**, **ivī** (**īī**), **itum**.

INDICATIVE.

*I go.*

PRES. SG.—1. <b>e-ō</b> ,	PL.— <b>i-mus</b> ,
2. <b>i-s</b> ,	<b>i-tis</b> ,
3. <b>i-t</b> ,	<b>eu-nt</b> .

SUBJUNCTIVE.

*I be going.*

SG.— <b>ea-m</b> ,	PL.— <b>eā-mus</b> ,
<b>eā-s</b> ,	<b>eā-tis</b> ,
<b>ea-t</b> ,	<b>ea-nt</b> .

IMPF.	<b>i-ba-m</b> , <i>I went.</i>	<b>i-re-m</b> , <i>I were going.</i>
FUT.	<b>i-b-ō</b> , <i>I shall go.</i>	
PERF.	<b>i-v-i</b> ( <b>i-i</b> ), <i>I have gone.</i>	<b>i-v-eri-m</b> ( <b>i-eri-m</b> ).
PL. PF.	<b>i-v-era-m</b> ( <b>i-era-m</b> ), <i>I had gone.</i>	<b>i-v-isse-m</b> ( <b>i-isse-m</b> , <b>i-sse-m</b> ).
FUT. PF.	<b>i-v-er-ō</b> ( <b>i-er-ō</b> ), <i>I shall have gone.</i>	

## IMPERATIVE.

SG.—2.	<b>i</b> , <i>go thou.</i>	<b>i-tō</b> , <i>thou shalt go.</i>
3.	—	<b>i-tō</b> , <i>he shall go.</i>
PL.—2.	<b>i-te</b> , <i>go ye.</i>	<b>i-tōte</b> , <i>ye shall go.</i>
3.	—	<b>eu-ntō</b> , <i>they shall go.</i>

## INFINITIVE.

PRES.	<b>i-ro</b> .
FUT.	<b>i-tūr-um esse</b> .
PERF.	<b>i-v-isse</b> ( <b>i-sse</b> ).

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	<b>iō-ns</b> (G. <b>eu-nt-is</b> ).
FUT.	<b>i-tūr-us</b> .

## GERUND.

**eu-nd-i**, etc.

## SUPINE.

**i-tum**, *to go*.

REMARKS.—1. Like the simple verb are inflected most of the compounds, except in the Perfect system, where syncope regularly takes place (see 131, 2). **Vēn-eō**, *I am for sale*, and **per-eō**, *I perish*, serve as passives to **vēn-dō**, *I sell*, and **per-dō**, *I destroy*, whose regular passives occur only in the forms **vēnditus**, **vēndendus**, and **perditus** (but see Hor., *Sat.*, ii. 6, 59). **Amb-iō**, *I solicit*, follows the fourth conjugation throughout, but in post-Ciceronian writers (Livy, Tac., Plin. Min.) shows occasional forms like those of **eō**. Some compounds show occasionally Fut. in **-eam** after the time of SENECA.

2. The passive of the simple verb is found only in the impersonal forms **itur**, **ibātur**, **itum est**, **iri** (in combination with the Supine). But compounds with transitive force are conjugated regularly: so, **præter-eō** forms **præter-eor**, **-iris**, **itur**, **-imur**, **-iminī**, **-euntur**, **ibar**, etc., **-itus sum**, **eram**, **erō**, **-euntor**, **-itor**, **-iri**, **-eundus**.

### 3. **quīre**, *to be able*; **nequīre**, *to be unable*.

170. (a) **que-ō**, *I am able*, is found in the following forms, of which those in parenthesis are unclassical, occurring in early and late Latin and the poets; CÆSAR uses no form of **queō**.

PR. IND. **queō**, (**quīs**), (**quit**), **quīmus**, (**quītis**), **queunt**. PR. SUBJ. **queam**, **queās**, **queat**, **queāmus**, **queātis**, **queant**. IMPF. (**quibam**), (**quīrem**). FUT. (**quibō**). PR. QUIV. **quīvi**, etc.; **quīverim**, etc. PL. PF. **quīveram**, etc.; **quīvissem**, etc. FUT. PF. **quīverō**, etc. PR. INF. **quīre**. PR. PART. **quīvisse**. PART. **quīens**.

(b) **neque-ō**, *I am unable*, has the same forms, all of which seem to be classic excepting the Future Indicative, which is not cited.



4. **fer-re**, *to bear*.

171. The endings beginning with **t**, **s**, and **r** are added directly to the root (132). Some parts are supplied by **tul-** (**tol-**, **tla-**).

PRIN. PARTS : **ferō**, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātum**.

ACTIVE.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
PRES.	<i>I bear.</i>	<i>I be bearing.</i>	
SG.—1.	<b>fer-ō</b> ,	PL.— <b>fer-i-mus</b> ,	SG.— <b>fera-m</b> ,
	2. <b>fer-s</b> ,	<b>fer-tis</b> ,	<b>ferā-s</b> ,
	3. <b>fer-t</b> ,	<b>fer-u-nt</b> .	<b>fera-t</b> ,
			<b>fera-nt</b> .
IMPF.	<b>ferē-ba-m</b> , <i>I was bearing.</i>	<b>fer-re-m</b> , <i>I were bearing.</i>	
FUT.	<b>fera-m</b> , <i>I shall bear.</i>		
PERF.	<b>tul-ī</b> , <i>I have borne.</i>	<b>tul-eri-m</b> .	
PLUPF.	<b>tul-era-m</b> .	<b>tul-isse-m</b> .	
FUT. PF.	<b>tul-er-ō</b> .		

IMPERATIVE.

SG.—2.	<b>fer</b> ,	<i>bear thou.</i>	<b>fer-tō</b> ,	<i>thou shalt bear.</i>
	3. —		<b>fer-tō</b> ,	<i>he shall bear.</i>
PL.—2.	<b>fer-te</b> ,	<i>bear ye.</i>	<b>fer-tōte</b> ,	<i>ye shall bear.</i>
	3. —		<b>feru-ntō</b> ,	<i>they shall bear.</i>

INFINITIVE.  
 PRES. **fer-re**.  
 FUT. **lā-tūr-um esse**.  
 PERF. **tul-isse**.

PARTICIPLES.  
 PRES. **ferē-ns**, *bearing*.  
 FUT. **lā-tūr-us**.

GERUND.  
**fere-nd-ī**, *etc.*

SUPINE.  
**lā-tum** (**t(o)lā-tum**).

PASSIVE.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
<i>I am borne.</i>		<i>I be borne.</i>	
PRES.	SG.—1. <b>fer-o-r</b> ,	PL.— <b>feri-mur</b> ,	SG.— <b>fera-r</b> ,
	2. <b>fer-ris</b> ,	<b>feri-mini</b> ,	<b>ferā-ris</b> ,
	3. <b>fer-tur</b> ,	<b>feru-ntur</b> .	<b>ferā-tur</b> ,
			<b>fera-ntur</b> .
IMPF.	<b>ferē-ba-r</b> .	<b>fer-re-r</b> .	
FUT.	<b>fera-r</b> .		
PERF.	<b>lā-tus sum</b> .	<b>lā-tus sim</b> .	
PLUPF.	<b>lā-tus eram</b> .	<b>lā-tus essem</b> .	
FUT. PF.	<b>lā-tus erō</b> .		

## IMPERATIVE.

SG.—2.	fer-re,	<i>be thou borne.</i>	fer-tor,	<i>thou shalt be borne</i>
3.	—		fer-tor,	<i>he shall be borne.</i>
PL.—2.	feri-mini,	<i>be ye borne.</i>	—	
3.	—		feru-ntor,	<i>they shall be borne.</i>

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. fer-ri, *to be borne.*

FUT. lā-tum iri.

PERF. lā-tum esse, *to have been borne.*

## PARTICIPLE.

PERF. lā-t-us, -a, -um, *borne.*

## GERUNDIVE.

fere-nd-us.

## COMPOUNDS.

af-fer-ō,	af-fer-re,	at-tul-i,	al-lā-tum,	<i>to bear to.</i>
au-fer-ō,	au-fer-re,	abs-tul-i,	ab-lā-tum,	<i>to bear away.</i>
cōn-fer-ō,	cōn-fer-re,	con-tul-i,	col-lā-tum,	<i>to collect.</i>
dif-fer-ō,	dif-fer-re,	dis-tul-i,	dī-lā-tum,	<i>to put off.</i>
ef-fer-ō,	ef-fer-re,	ex-tul-i,	ē-lā-tum,	<i>to carry out.</i>
of-fer-ō,	of-fer-re,	ob-tul-i,	ob-lā-tum,	<i>to offer.</i>

NOTES. 1. The Pf. **tuli** was originally reduplicated **te-tuli**. See 134, iii., 155. Traces of this are seen in **rettuli**.

2. **Suf-ferō**, *I undergo*, has the Pf. **sus-tin-ui** (**sus-tul-i**, **sub-lā-tum**, being appropriated to **toll-ō**). (155.)

5. **ed-ere**, *to eat*.

**172.** In certain forms the endings beginning with **s**, **t**, and **r** are added directly to the root (132); **d** before **s** (**r**) is dropped or assimilated (as **ss**), and before **t** becomes **s**.

PRIN. PARTS: **edō**, **edere** (**esse**), **ēdi**, **esum**.

## ACTIVE.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*I eat.**I be eating.*

SG.—1.	ed-ō,	PL.—edi-mus,	SG.—eda-m,	PL.—edā-mus.
2.	edi-s, ē-s,	edi-tis, ēs-tis,	edā-s,	edā-tis,
3.	edi-t, ē-st,	edu-nt.	eda-t,	eda-nt.

IMPF. edē-ba-m, *I ate.*ede-re-m, ēs-se-m, *I were eating*

FUT. eda-m.

PERF. ēd-i.

ēd-eri-m.

PLUFF. ēd-era-m.

ēd-isse-m.

FUT. PF. ēd-er-ō.

## IMPERATIVE.

Sg.—2. <i>ede, ēs,</i>	<i>eat thou.</i>	<i>edi-to, ēs-tō,</i>	<i>thou shalt eat.</i>
3. —		<i>edi-to, ēs-tō,</i>	<i>he shall eat.</i>
Pl.—2. <i>edi-te, ēs-te,</i>	<i>eat ye.</i>	<i>edi-tōte, ēs-tōte,</i>	<i>ye shall eat.</i>
3. —		<i>edu-ntō,</i>	<i>they shall eat</i>

## INFINITIVE.

## PARTICIPLE.

PRES. <i>ede-re, ēs-se,</i>	<i>to eat.</i>
FUT. <i>ēs-ūr-um esse.</i>	
PERF. <i>ēd-isse.</i>	
GERUND.	
<i>ede-nd-i, etc.</i>	

PRES. ( <i>edē-ns</i> ).
FUT. <i>ēs-ūr-us.</i>

## SUPINE.

*ēs-um, ēs-ū.*

## PASSIVE.

In the passive voice the only peculiarities are as follows: Pr. Indic. Sing. Third, *editur* and *ēstur*. Impf. Subjv. Sing. Third, *ederētur* and *ēssētur*. The Pf. Part. is *ēsus* and the Gerundive *edendus*.

NOTE.—In the Pr. Subjv. Active, early Latin shows *edim, edis, edit, edimus, editis, edint*. Also *ēssum* and *ēssū* in the Sup., *ēssūrus* in the Fut. Part. *Come-dere* also shows *comestus* for *comēsus*.

6. *fi-erī, to become.*

**173.** *Fi-ō* is conjugated in the Present, Imperfect, and Future, according to the fourth conjugation, but in the Subjunctive Imperfect and in the Infinitive the stem is increased by *e*; thus, *fi-e-rem, I were becoming; fi-e-rī, to become*. In these forms the *i* is short, but elsewhere it is long even before another vowel.

The Infinitive ends in *-rī*, and the whole Verb in the Present-stem is treated as the Passive to *faciō, I make*. The rest of the Passive is formed regularly from *faciō*.

PRIN. PARTS : *fiō, fierī, factus sum.*

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

PRES. <i>faciō,</i>	<i>I make.</i>	INDIC. <i>fiō, I am made, I become.</i>
		<i>fis, fit (fimus, fitis), fiunt.</i>
IMPF. <i>faciēbam,</i>	<i>I made.</i>	<i>fiēbam, I was made, I became.</i>
FUT. <i>faciam,</i>	<i>I shall make.</i>	<i>fiam, I shall be made (become).</i>
PERF. <i>fēcī.</i>		<i>factus sum.</i>
PLUPF. <i>fēceram,</i>		<i>factus eram.</i>
FUT. PF. <i>fēcerō.</i>		<i>factus erō.</i>
		SUBJV. <i>fiam, fiās, fiat, etc.</i>
		<i>fierem, fierēs, etc.</i>
<i>etc.</i>		INFINITIVE.

## IMPERATIVE.

(*fi*), (*fi-tō*).  
(*fi-te*).

PRES. <i>fierī.</i>
PERF. <i>factum esse, to have become.</i>
FUT. <i>futūrum esse or fore.</i>
FUT. PF. <i>factum fore.</i>

NOTES.—1. Occasionally in early Latin the form **fiere** is found for the Infinitive, which indicates that the verb was originally active. The forms **fierī** and **fierem** are very common in early Latin, along with the normal forms. Of the forms in parenthesis **simus** and **stis** do not certainly occur, and the Imperative forms are early. Passive forms of **fiō** are very rare; never in **PLAUTUS** or **TERENCE**.

2. The compounds of **faciō** with Prepositions change the **a** of the stem into **i**, and form the Passive in classical Latin regularly from the same stem: **perficiō**, *I achieve*, Pass. **perficior**; **interficiō**, Pass. **interficior**, *I am destroyed*. But **interfieri**, **cōnfierent**, **cōnfieri**, and several other forms are found in early Latin, and occasionally in classical times. When compounded with words other than prepositions, **faciō** retains its **a**, and uses **fiō** as its Passive:

**patefaciō**, *I lay open*, Pass. **patefiō**; **calefaciō**, *I warm*, Pass. **calefiō**.

For the accent, see 15, 2, R. 2.

## 174.

7. **vel-le**, *to be willing*.

**nōlle**, *to be unwilling*; **mālle**, *to be willing rather*.

PRIN. PARTS: **volō**, **velle**, **volui**; **nōlō**, **nōlle**, **nōlui**; **mālō**, **mālle**, **mālui**.

INDICATIVE.			
PRES.	<b>volō</b> ,	<b>nōlō</b> ,	<b>mālō</b> ,
	<b>vis</b> ,	<b>nōn vis</b> ,	<b>māvīs</b> ,
	<b>vult</b> ,	<b>nōn vult</b> ,	<b>māvult</b> ,
	<b>volumus</b> ,	<b>nolumus</b> ,	<b>mālumus</b> ,
	<b>vultis</b> ,	<b>nōn vultis</b> ,	<b>māvultis</b> ,
	<b>volunt</b> .	<b>nolunt</b> .	<b>mālunt</b> .
IMPF.	<b>volēbam</b> ,	<b>nolēbam</b> ,	<b>mālēbam</b> .
FUT.	<b>volam</b> ,	<b>nōlam</b> ,	<b>mālam</b> ,
	<b>volēs</b> , etc.	<b>nolēs</b> , etc.	<b>mālēs</b> , etc.
PERF.	<b>volui</b> ,	<b>nōlui</b> ,	<b>mālui</b> , etc.
PLUPF.	<b>volueram</b> ,	<b>nolueram</b> ,	<b>mālueram</b> , etc.
FUT. PF.	<b>voluerō</b> ,	<b>noluerō</b> ,	<b>māluerō</b> , etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE.			
PRES.	<b>velim</b> ,	<b>nōlim</b> ,	<b>mālim</b> ,
	<b>velis</b> ,	<b>nōlis</b> ,	<b>mālis</b> ,
	<b>velit</b> ,	<b>nōlit</b> ,	<b>mālit</b> ,
	<b>velimus</b> ,	<b>nōlimus</b> ,	<b>mālimus</b> ,
	<b>velitis</b> ,	<b>nōlitis</b> ,	<b>mālitis</b> ,
	<b>velint</b> .	<b>nōlint</b> .	<b>mālint</b> .
IMPF.	<b>vellem</b> ,	<b>nōllem</b> ,	<b>māllem</b> .
PERF.	<b>voluerim</b> ,	<b>noluerim</b> ,	<b>māluerim</b> , etc.
PLUPF.	<b>voluissem</b> ,	<b>noluissem</b> ,	<b>māluissem</b> , etc.

IMPV.

SG.—*nōll, nōlitō.*PL.—*nōlite, nōlitōte, nōluntō.*INF. PR. *velle,**nōlle,**mälle.*PF. *voluisse,**nōluisse,**māluisse.*PART. *volēns,**nōlēns.*

NOTES.—1. To the time of Cicerō, and occasionally later, *volt, vultis*, are employed for *vult, vultis*. In familiar language *sī vīs, sī vultis*, were contracted to *sīs, sultis*; *vīs* was further combined with *-ne* into *vīn*.

2. *Nōlō* is a contraction of *nevolō* (= *nōn volō*), and in early Latin we find, along with the forms given above, also *nevis, nevult*; also occasionally we find *nōn velis, nōn velit, nōn velint, nōn vellem*, for *nōlis, etc.*; but the feeling is slightly different.

3. *Mālō* = *ma volō*, from *mag(mage, magis)-volō*. Frequently in PLAUT., but rarely in TER., we find *mavolō, mavolunt, mavolet, mavelim, -is, -it, mavellem*, instead of *mālō, mālīm, mālīs, etc.*

## 175.

## DEFECTIVE VERBS.

1. *āiō, I say aye.*INDIC. PRES. SG.—1. *āiō,* 2. *ais,* 3. *ait,* PL.—3. *āiunt.*IMPF. *āiēbam, etc.*

PERF.

3. *ait.*

SUBJV. PRES. SG.—

2. *āiās,*3. *aiat,*3. *āiant.*PART. *āiēns* (as adj.), *affirmative.*IMPV. *ai.*

NOTE.—In early Latin *ain* (= *aisne* ?) was scanned often as a monosyllable; and in the Impf., *āibam, āibās, āibat, āibant* were frequently employed along with the normal forms. The Impv. is rare, and found only in early Latin. Pr. Subjv. *āiam* is emended into PL., *Ep.*, 281.

2. *inquam, I say, quoth I.*INDIC. PRES. SG.—1. *inquam,* 2. *inquis,* 3. *inquit.*PL.—1. *inquimus,* 2. *inquitis,* 3. *inquiunt.*

IMPF. SG.—

3. *inquiēbat.*

FUT. SG.—

2. *inquiēs,* 3. *inquiet.*PERF. SG.—1. *inquit,*2. *inquisti,*3. *inquit.*IMPV. *inque, inquitō.*3. *fā-rī, to speak.*INDIC. PRES. *fātur.* FUT. *fābor, fābitur.* PERF. *fātus sum, etc.* IMPV. *fāre.*PART. PRES. *fāns, fantis, fanti, fantem.* GER. *fandi, fandō.* SUP. *fātū.*

NOTE.—In addition to these, compounds show also PRES. : *-fāris, -fāmur, -fāmini, -fantur*; IMPF. : *-fābar, -fābantur*; FUT. : *-fābere, -fābimur*; PART. : *-fante* and others. These forms, as well as the uncompounded forms, though occasionally found in prose, are peculiar to the poets until post-Augustan times. The Pt. Part. is sometimes used passively; so especially *fātum, fate*; *effātus, designated*.

## 4. havē-re (avē-re), salvē-re.

IMPV. havē,	salvē, salvēbis, hail thou !
havētō,	salvētō.
havēte,	salvēte, hail ye !
INF. havēre,	salvēre.

Corresponding to these are the forms of **valēre**, viz.: **valē**, **valēte**, **valēre**, *farewell*.

## 5. coepi, meminī, ōdī, nōvī.

In use only in the Perfect-stem are **coepi**, *I have begun*, which serves as a Perfect to **incipiō**, and **meminī**, *I remember*, **ōdī**, *I hate*, **nōvī** (from **nōscō**, see 131, 3, 140), *I know, am aware*, **cōnsuēvī** (from **consuēscō**), *I am wont*, which have the force of Presents.

a. INDIC. coepi,	<i>I have begun.</i>	SUBJV. coeperim.
coeperam.		coepissem.
coeperō.		INF. coepisse, to have begun.

NOTE.—Early Latin shows **coepiō**, **coepiās**, **coepiat**, **coepiam**, **coepere**, **coeperet**. Future Participle **coeptūrus** is Post-Augustan. **Incēpi** is ante-classical.

Passive forms **coeptus sum**, etc., occur with the same meaning in combination with a Passive Infinitive. See 423, N. 3.

b. INDIC. meminī,	<i>I remember.</i>	SUBJV. meminierim.
memineram.		meminissem.
meminerō.		INF. meminisse, to remember
IMPV. Sg.—mementō.		PL.—mementōte.
c. INDIC. ōdī,	<i>I hate,</i>	SUBJV. ōderim.
ōderam.		ōdissem.
ōderō.		INF. ōdisse, to hate.
FUT. PART. ōsūrus.		

NOTE.—Occasionally in early Latin, the poets, and later prose, deponent forms of the Perfect are found, **ōsus sum**, etc. For the Passive the phrase **odīō esse** is used.

d. INDIC. nōvī.	SUBJV. nōverim (nōrim).
nōveram (nōram).	nōvissem (nōssem).
nōverō (nōrō).	INF. nōvisse (nōsse) to know

## 6. cedo, quaesō.

Other defective forms are :

Sg.—cedo,	<i>give ! (old Impv.)</i>	PL.—cetto.
INDIC. PRES. quaesō,	<i>please (i. e., I seek, beg),</i>	quaesumus.

NOTE.—Other forms of **quaesō** are found occasionally in early Latin, and sporadically in Cic., Sall., and later ; the Pf. forms have been attached to **quaerere**, 137, c.



## FORMATION OF WORDS.

**176.** By the formation of words is meant the way in which stems are made of roots, new stems of old, and in which words are compounded.

**177.** All roots of the Latin language are probably monosyllabic.\* They can be ascertained only by scientific analysis.

The difference between Root and Stem has been set forth in 25, NN. Sometimes the Stem is the same as the Root ; so especially in the Root Verbs (132). But it is usually different.

**178.** Words are either *simple* or *compound*.

A *simple* word is one that is formed from a single root : *sōl*, *sun* ; *stā-re*, *stand*, *stay*.

A *compound* word is one that is made up of two or more roots : *sōl-stiti-um*, *sun-staying*, *solstice*.

## A.—Simple Words.

**179.** Simple words are partly *primitive*, partly *derivative* or *secondary*.

1. Primitive words come from the root, and as this usually appears in the simplest form of the verb-stem, primitive words are called *verbals*. Examples are the root-verbal forms (134, II., 132, 135, I.), some substantives of the third declension, as *dux* (*duc-s*), *leader*, root *duc* (see 183, I.), many substantives of the first, second, and fourth declensions, as : *scrib-a* (*scribō*, *I write*), *scribe*.

2. Derivative words are formed from a noun-stem ; hence called *denominatives* : *vetus-tās*, *age*, from *vetes-* (N. *vetus*), *old*.

NOTE.—Denominative verbs include many verbs which cannot definitely be referred to any substantive ; such as many frequentatives and intensives. In its narrower signification the term refers to the special class of verbs made from substantives in use.

**180.** Substantives are generally formed by means of a *suffix*. A suffix is an addition to a stem, and serves to define its meaning or show its relations. So from the verbal stem *scrib-* (*scribō*, *I write*) comes *scrip-tor*, *writ-er* ; *scrip-tiō(n)*, *writ-ing*.

\* The theory of monosyllabic roots is adopted here as being somewhat more convenient than the theory of polysyllabic roots, now held by some important scholars. Of course it will be understood that the actual existence of mere roots can be assumed only for a very early period in the development of language, long before the independent existence of Latin.

Suffixes are either *primary* or *secondary*. A primary suffix is one added to a root (or verb stem) to form primitive words. A secondary suffix is one used in the formation of derivative words. Thus, **-tor** in **scrip-tor** is a primary suffix ; **-tās** in **vetus-tās** is secondary.

NOTES.—1. By the fading out of the difference between primary and secondary suffixes, primary suffixes come to be used sometimes to form secondary derivatives.

2. Consonant stems before consonant suffixes undergo the usual changes (9). So **scrib-tor** becomes **scrip-tor**; **rēg-s** becomes **rēx**. Stems are sometimes extended by a vowel, usually **i**, less often **u**, to facilitate pronunciation : **val-i-dus**, *strong*; **doc-u-mentum**, *proof*; sometimes they change the stem vowel : **teg**, *cover*; **tog-a**, *toga*; **tug-urium**, *hut*.

3. Vowel stems lengthen the final vowel : **acu-**, *sharpen*; **acū-men**, *sharp part, point*.

The final vowel often disappears before the suffix : **opta-**, *choose*; **opt-iō**, *choice*.

## 181. FORMATION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

The suffixes, as applied to various roots, have often special functions, and form words of definite meaning. The most important are as follows :

### 1. Agency is indicated by

**-tor**, **-trix** (N. **tor** (*m.*), **trix** (*f.*)) : **amā-tor**, *lover*; **vic-trix**, *conquerress*; occasionally **-ter** (N. **ter**, G. **-trī**) : **ar-bi-ter** (= *ad* + *ba*, *step*), *umpire*; **-ōn** (N. **ō**, G. **ōnis**) : **com-bib-ō** (*fellow-drinker*), *boon companion*; occasionally **-o**, **-a** (N. **-us**, **-a**) : **serv-os**, *slave*; **scrib-a**, *scribe*; **-ōno**, **-ōna** (N. **ōnu-s**, **-ōna**) : **col-ōnu-s**, *settler*; **-(i)t** (N. **es**, G. **itis**) : **mil-es**, *soldier*, and a few others.

### 2. Action, Activity, and Event are indicated by

**a. -tu** (N. **tu-s**, **su-s**, G. **-ūs**) : **ad-ven-tus**, *arrival*; **-trī-na** (N. **trīna**) : **doc-trīna**, *instruction*; **-īn-a** (N. **-īna**) : **rap-īna**, *rapine*; **-men** (N. **men**, G. **min-is**) : **āg-men**, *train*; **-mento** (N. **mentum**) : **tor-mentu-m**, *torture*; **-ē-la** (*ella*) : **loqu-ēla**, *speech*; **quer-ēla**, *complaint*; **-cīnio** (N. **-u-m**) : **latrō-cīniu-m**, *highway robbery*; **-mōnio**, **-mōnia** (N. **mōnia**, **mōniu-m**) : **queri-mōnia**, *complaint*; **tēsti-mōniu-m**, *testimony*.

**b. Abstracts.** Masculine : **-ōs** (N. **-or**, G. **-ōr-is**) : **ang-or**, *anguish*. Feminine : **-on** (N. **dō**, **gō**, G. **in-is**) : **imā-gō**, *image*; **cup-i-dō**, *desire*; **-īa** : **audāc-īa**, *boldness*; **-iōn** (N. **iō**) : **leg-iō**, *legion*; **-tia** : **avāri-tia**, *avarice*; collateral are some with Nom. in **-tiēs**, as **dūri-tiēs**, *hardness*; **-tiōn** (N. **tiō**, **siō**) : **amb-i-tiō**, *ambition*; **cōn-fū-siō**, *confusion*; **-tāt** (N. **tās**) : **aequālī-tās**, *equality*; **-tūra** : **pic-tūra**, *painting*; **-tūt-** (N. **tūs**, **sus**) : **iūven-tūs**, *youth*; **-tu** (**-su**) (N. **tu-s**, **su-s**) : **sēn-sus**, *perception*; **-tūdon** (N. **tūd-ō**, G. **-inis**) : **aegri-tūdō**, *sickness of heart*. Neuter : **-tio** (N. **tiu-m**) : **servi-tiu-m**, *bondage*.

### 3. An Artisan or Tradesman is indicated by

**-ārio** (N. **āriu-s**) : **argent-āriu-s**, *money changer*.

4. The *Trade* is indicated by

**-āria** : argent-āria, *silver mine, bank*.

5. The *Locality* of the work (or trade) is indicated by

**-ārio** (N. āriu-m) : sēmin-āriu-m, *seed-plot* ; **-ōnio** (N. ōniu-m) : full-ōnium, *fuller's shop* ; **-īna** : offic-īna, *workshop* ; **-cro, -culo** (N. -cru-m, -culu-m) : lavā-cru-m, *bath* ; **-trīno, -trīna** (N. trīna, trīnu-m) : sū-trīna, *shoemaker's shop* ; pis-trīnu-m, *mill*.

6. *Instrument and Means* are indicated by

**-bro, -bra** (N. bra, bru-m) : li-bra, *balance* ; cri-brum, *sieve* ; **-cro, -culo** (N. cru-m, culu-m) : ba-culu-m, *walking stick* ; **-lo, -la** (N. -la, -lu-m) : pī-la, *pillar* ; tē-lu-m, *weapon* ; **-ulo, -ula** (N. ulu-s, ula, ulu-m) : cap-ulu-s, *handle* ; rēg-ula, *rule* ; cing-ulu-m, *girdle* ; **-mento** (N. mentu-m) : al-i-mentu-m, *nourishment* ; **-tro, -tra** (N. tra, tru-m) : fenes-tra, *window* ; arā-tru-m, *plough*.

7. *Relationship* is indicated by

**-ter** (N. ter, G. tr-is) : pa-ter, *father* ; mā-ter, *mother*.

8. *Condition or Relation* by

**-īna** : discipl-īna, *discipline* ; medic-īna, *medicine*.

9. *Function* is indicated by

**-tūra (sūra)** : cul-tūra, *cultivation*.

10. *Office* is indicated by

**-ātu** (N. ātus, G. ātūs) : cōsul-ātus, *consulship* ; **-tūra (-sūra)** : dictā-tūra, *dictatorship*.

11. *Dense Growths* are indicated by

**-ēto** (N. ētu-m) : murt-ētu-m, *myrtle grove* ; **-to** (N. tu-m) : virgul-tu-m, *brushwood*.

12. *Diminutives* are indicated by

**-lo, -la** (N. lu-s, etc.), before which a liquid is assimilated (9, 3) : (ager), agel-lu-s, *little field* ; (tabul-a), tabel-la, *tablet* ; (corōn-a), corōl-la, *chaplet* ; Catul-lu-s (= Catōn-lu-s) ; homul-lu-s (= homōn-lu-s), *manikin* ; **-olo, -ulo** : olo after e, i, v, otherwise -ulo (N. olu-s, ola, ulu-s, ula) : (alve-us), alve-olu-s, *little hollow* ; (fili-a), fili-ola, *little daughter* ; (valv-a), valv-olae, *pod (little flaps)* ; (circu-s), circ-ulu-s, *little ring*. **-culo, -cula** (N. culu-s, etc.), after e, i, u, and consonant stems : (spēs), spē-cula, *slight hope* ; (amni-s), amni-culu-s, *streamlet* ; (versu-s), versi-culu-s, *versicle* ; (homō, homin-), homun-culu-s, *manikin* ; (flōs), flōs-culu-s, *floweret* ; (cor, cord-), cor-culu-m, *dear heart*.

NOTE.—Diminutives have, as a rule, the gender of their primitives Exceptions are sometimes due to difference in signification.

## 182. FORMATION OF ADJECTIVES.

The significance of the most important adjective suffixes, which are often identical with the substantive suffixes, are as follows :

1. *Action* is indicated by

**-bundo, -bunda** : cunctā-bundu-s, *lingering*. Repeated action by **-ulo, -ula** : crēd-ulu-s, *quick to believe*; quer-ulu-s, *complaining*. Passive action is indicated by **-bili** : amā-bili-s, *lovable*; vënd-i-bili-s, *to be sold*.

2. *Capacity and Inclination* are indicated by

**-cundo, -cunda** : fā-cundu-s, *of ready speech*; verē-cundu-s, *modest*. Passive Capacity by **-ili** : ag-ili-s, *readily moved, quick*, doc-ili-s, *teachable*. The Capacity and Resulting Condition by **-tili** : duc-tili-s, *ductile*; fic-tili-s, *capable of being moulded, of clay*.

3. *Tendency* is indicated by

**-āci** (N. āx) : aud-āx, *bold*; rap-āx, *greedy*.

4. *Likeness and Composition or Material* are indicated by

**-āceo, -ācea** : arundin-āceu-s, *reedy*; crēt-āceu-s, *chalky*; **-icio** : later-iciu-s, *made of brick*; **-no, -na** : acer-nu-s, *of maple*; **-neo, -nea** : ae-neu-s, *brazen*.

5. *Belonging to* is indicated by

**-io, -ia** : imperātōr-iu-s, *belonging to a general*; **-icio, -icia** : aedil-iciu-s, *belonging to an aedile*; **-āno, -āna** : hūm-ānu-s, *human*; urb-ānu-s, *urbane, city*.

6. *Appurtenance and Medium* are indicated by

**-tico, -tica** : aquā-ticu-s, *aquatic*; **-tili-** : aquā-tili-s, *aquatic*; plūmā-tili-s, *(embroidered) like feathers*.

7. *Origin* is indicated by

**-io, -ia** : Cornēl-ia (lēx), *Corinth-iu-s*; **-āno, -āna, -īno, -īna** : Rōm-ānu-s, *Lat-inu-s*.

8. *Time* is indicated by

**-tino, -tina** : crās-tinu-s, *of to-morrow*; **-terno, -terna** : hes-ternu-s, *of yesterday*; **-urno, -urna** : noct-urnu-s, *by night*; **-tino, -tina** : mātū-tinu-s, *of early morning*.

9. *Locality, where, whence*, is indicated by

**-ia** : Gall-ia, *Gaul*; **-tino** : intes-tinu-s, *inner, intestine*; **-ēnsi** : circ-ēnsi-s, *from the circus*; Sicili-ēnsi-s, *Sicilian*; **-āti** (N. -ās) : cūi-ās, *of what country ?*

10. *Fulness* is indicated by

**-ōso, -ōsa** : anim-ōsu-s, *full of spirit* ; verb-ōsu-s, *wordy* ; **-lento, lenta** : sanguin-o-lentu-s, *bloody* ; op-u-lentu-s, *with abundant means*.

11. *Descent and Relationship* are indicated in Latin mainly by Greek adjectives, made by the addition of Greek suffixes to proper names. These suffixes are

M. **-idēs** (G. *idae*), F. **-is** (G. *idis*), from Nominatives in *us*, or, *ōs*, and *s* preceded by a consonant ; M. **-īdēs** (G. *idae*), F. **-ēis** (G. *ēidis*), from Nominatives in *-eus* ; M. **-adēs** (G. *adae*), F. **-ēis** (G. *ēidis*), from Nominatives in *ās* (G. *ae*) and *-ēs* (G. *-ae*) ; M. **-iadēs** (G. *iadae*), F. **-ias** (G. *iadis*), from Nominatives in *ius*, *ēs*, *ōn*, *o* ; F. **-īnē**, from Nominatives in *-us* and *-eus* ; F. **-iōnē**, from Nominatives in *ius* : (Tantalus) Tantal-idēs, *son of Tantalus* ; Tantal-is, *daughter of Tantalus* ; (Pelops) Pelopidēs ; (Thēs-eus) Thēs-idēs, Thēsēis ; (Aenēās) Aene-adēs (Aeneadae also) ; (Lāertēs) Lāert-iadēs ; (Neptūnus) Neptūn-inē ; (Acrisius) Acrisiōnē, etc.

12. *Diminutive* adjectives are formed by the same suffixes as diminutive substantives (181, 12) : albus, *white*, albu-lus, *whitish* ; miser, *wretched*, mis-ellus, *poor (little)* ; ācer, *sharp*, ācri-culu-s, *somewhat sharp*.

### 183. SUBSTANTIVES WITHOUT SUFFIXES.

(Root Substantives.)

A few substantives are formed from roots without a suffix :

1. With weak root : duc-s (dux), *leader*, from root duc, *lead* ; nec-s (nex), *killing*, from root nec, *kill*.

2. With strong root : lūc-s (lūx), *light*, from root lūc, *light* ; rēg-s (rēx), *king*, from root rēg, *rule*.

3. With reduplication : car-cer, *jail* ; mar-mor, *marble* ; mur-mur, *murmur*.

### THE SUFFIXES IN DETAIL.

#### 184

#### Vowels.

**-o, -a** (N. u-s, a, u-m). Primary and secondary adjectives, and primary substantives. The primary adjectives resemble somewhat active participles in meaning ; fer-u-s, *wild* ; vag-u-s, *wandering*. Secondary are especially adjectives in *-ōrus*, as dec-ōru-s, *graceful*, from decor, *grace*, and many others. Masculine substantives in *-u-s* are often nouns of *agency*, sometimes *nōmina actiōnis* and concretes therefrom : coqu-o-s, *cook* ; rog-u-s, *pyre*. Those in *-a* (ā) are regularly *nōmina agentis*, especially in composition ; scrib-a, *scribe* ; agri-cola, *husbandman (land-tiller)*. Feminines are in *-o* (which are principally names of *trees* : pir-us, *pear tree*) and in *-a* : lup-a, *she-wolf*, as well as lup-u-s. Neuters are those in *-u-m*, especially names of *fruits* : pir-u-m, *pear*.



**-i** (N. *i-s*, *e*). Substantives : M. *orb-i-s*, *circle* ; *pisc-i-s*, *fish*, *etc.* ; F. *av-i-s*, *bird* ; *nāv-i-s*, *ship* ; N. *mar-e*, *sea* ; *conclāv-e*, *room*. Adjectives : *dulc-i-s*, *sweet* ; *turp-i-s*, *ugly*.

NOTE.—In adjectives especially, *i* is often weakened from *-o*, as *inermis* and *inermus*, *etc.* Sometimes in substantives the Nom. shows *ēs* instead of *is*, as *caedēs* and *caedis*, *etc.*

**-io, -ia** (N. *iu-s*, *ia*, *iu-m*).—1. This is the principal secondary suffix, and is found in many combinations ; but it is also found as primary in substantives : M. *gen-iu-s*, *genius* ; *glad-iu-s*, *sword* ; F. *pluv-ia*, *rain* ; *tib-ia*, *life* ; N. *fol-iu-m*, *leaf* ; *od-iu-m*, *hate* ; and in adjectives *ex-im-iu-s*, *pre-eminent (taken out)* ; *sauc-iu-s*, *wounded*, *pluv-iu-s*, *rainy*.

2. The suffix occurs as secondary in the forms *-ēio* (*-aeo*), *-io*, *eo*, *io*, in a large number of Gentile names : *Flāv-ēiu-s*, *Flāv-iu-s* ; *Lūc-ēiu-s*, *Lūc-iu-s*, *Lūc-iu-s* ; similar to these are those in *ed-iu-s*, *id-iu-s*, *id-iu-s*, *-ēl-iu-s*, *fl-iu-s*, as *Lūc-id-iu-s*, *Corn-ēl-iu-s*, *Lūc-fl-iu-s*. Also in some adjectives of material in *eu-s*, as *aur-eu-s*, *golden* ; *ferr-eu-s*, *iron*. It occurs, moreover, in many compound adjective and substantive endings, to be discussed later, and in many abstract substantives in *-antia*, *-entia*, as *abundant-ia*, *abundance* ; *sci-ent-ia*, *knowledge*, *etc.*

NOTE.—Instead of *-ia*, we find *-ea* in a few words : *cav-ea*, *cage* ; *cochl-ea*, *snail*.

**-u** (N. *u-s*, *u*). M. *arc-u-s*, *bow* ; *curr-u-s*, *chariot* ; F. *ac-u-s*, *needle* ; *man-u-s*, *hand* ; N. *gel-ū*, *frost* ; *gen-u*, *knee*. Secondary is *socr-u-s*, *mother-in-law*. This suffix is found occasionally in adjectives compounded with *manus*, as *centi-manus*, *hundred-handed* ; also in the form *-ul* in a few adjectives, as *ten-ui-s*, *thin*.

NOTE.—The suffix *-o* often alternates with *-u*.

**-uo, -ua** (N. *uo-s*, *ua*, *uo-m*). Primary and secondary substantives and adjectives. Primary : M. *eq-uo-s*, *horse* ; F. *al-vo-s*, *belly* ; N. *ar-vo-m*, *field* ; *par-vo-s*, *small*. Secondary : M. *patr-uo-s*, *uncle* ; *cer-vo-s*, *stag* ; F. *iān-ua*, *gate* ; *cern-uo-s*, *stooping* ; *aestl-vo-s*, *of the summer*.

NOTE. *ivo-s* is found in *voc-ivo-s* (*vacuos*), *rediv-ivo-s*, *etc.* *-vo* is weakened to *-vi* in *pel-vi-s*, *basin*.

## 185.

### Suffixes with Gutturals.

1. **-co, -ca** (N. *cu-s*, *ca*, *cu-m*). This forms both adjectives and substantives, but is usually secondary. As primary it is found in : *io-cu-s*, *jest* ; *lo-cu-s*, *place* ; as secondary in : *medi-cu-s*, *physician* ; *ped-i-ca*, *fetter*. Adjectives are primary : *cas-cu-s*, *very old* ; or secondary : *civi-cu-s*, *civic*.

2. **-āco, -āca** (N. *ācu-s*, *āca*, *ācu-m*). Primary in *clo-āca*, *sewer* ; secondary in *ver-bēn-āca*, *vervain*, and in adjectives, as *mer-ācu-s*, *pure*.



3. **-īco, -īca** (N. *īcu-s, ica, īcu-m*). In substantives, such as : M. *umbil-īcu-s, navel* ; F. *lect-īca, litter* ; *urt-īca, nettle*. In adjectives, as : *am-īcu-s, friendly, etc.*

4. **-ūco, -ūca** (N. *ūcu-s, ūca, ūcu-m*). Primary in the adjectives : *cad-ūcu-s, tottering* ; *mand-ūcu-s, voracious* ; secondary in *alb-ūcu-s, asphodel* ; and in substantives in *-ūca*, as *ēr-ūca, caterpillar* ; *verr-ūca, wart*.

NOTE.—Similar is the secondary suffix *-inquo* in *long-inquo-s, distant* ; *propinquo-s, near*.

5. **-āc** (N. *āx*) forms substantives and adjectives ; the latter expressing *inclination*. Primary : *aud-āx, bold* ; *fug-āx, fleeing*. Secondary : F. *forn-āx, furnace* ; *lim-āx, snail* ; *vēr-āx, truthful*.

6. **-ēc** (N. *ēx*) is found in *verv-ēx, wether*.

7. **-ic** (N. *ex*) forms a number of substantives that are mainly *masculine*, except names of *plants* and *trees*. Primary : M. *ap-ex, point* ; *cort-ex, bark* ; F. *il-ex, holm-oak*. Secondary : F. *imbr-ex, gutter-tile*.

8. **-īc** (N. *ix*) forms substantives and adjectives. Primary : F. *rād-ix, root* ; *fēl-ix, happy*. Secondary : *corn-ix, crow*, and feminines in *-trix*.

9. **-ōc** (N. *ōx*) is found in the substantive *cel-ōx, yacht*, and in a number of adjectives : *atr-ōx, ferocious*.

10. **-āceo, -ācea** (N. *āceu-s, ācea, āceu-m*), forms adjectives of *material* or *likeness* : *crēt-āceu-s, chalk-like*.

NOTE.—Notice also the suffix *-āc-io*, especially in proper names : *Vēr-ācia*.

11. **-ic-eo, -ic-io** (N. *iceu-s, etc., icui-s, etc.*), form adjectives indicating *material*, the latter suffix also some indicating *relation* : *palm-iceu-s, of palms* ; *tribūn-icui-s, proceeding from a tribune*.

12. **-īc-io** (N. *iciu-s, etc.*) is found in *nov-iciu-s, new*, and in words of participial meaning coming from forms in *-to*, as *advent-iciu-s, stranger*.

13. **-ūc-eo, -ūc-io**, occurs in *pann-ūceu-s* or *pann-ūciu-s*.

14. **-ci-no** and ***ci-n'-io*** occur (perhaps) in *vāti-cinu-s, prophetic*, and in some secondary neuter substantives, which denote *action* or *event*, as *latrō-ciniu-m, robbery*.

15. **-cro, -cri, -clo, -culo** (N. *cer, cris, clu-m, culu-m*) are found in some adjectives with participial force, and in a few neuter substantives indicating *instrument* or *locality* ; as *ala-cer, quick* ; *medio-cris, mediocre* ; *peri-clum (-culu-m), danger* ; *ba-culu-m, stick* (also m.) ; *sepulcrum, grave*. Also the primary *ridi-culu-s, laughable*, and the secondary *anni-culu-s, aged*.

## 186.

## Suffixes with a Dental.

1. **-d** (N. (d)s). Substantives only : *frau-s, cheater-y ; mercē-s, pay ; cūstō-s, guard.*

2. **-do, -di** (N. du-s, etc., di-s). A secondary suffix used especially for the formation of adjectives : *frig-i-du-s, cold ; vir-i-dis, blooming.*

3. **-to (-so)** (N. tu-s, ta, tu-m). This forms substantives and adjectives, and is both primary and secondary. Primary : M. *cub-i-tu-s, elbow ; dig-i-tus, finger* ; also substantives in *-ta* after Greek analogy : *poē-ta, poet ; F. has-ta, spear ; am-i-ta, aunt ; N. lu-tu-m, mud ; tēc-tum, roof ; ap-tu-s, fit ; beā-tu-s, blessed.* Secondary : M. *nau-ta, sailor ; F. iuven-ta, youth ; N. dense growths in ē-tu-m : frutic-ē-tu-m, copse ; iūs-tu-s, just ;* and passive adjectives like *barb-ā-tus, bearded.*

4. **-ti (-si)** [N. tis (sis)] forms primary and secondary substantives and adjectives. Primary : M. *fūs-ti-s, club ; cas-si-s, hunting-net ; F. cu-ti-s, skin ; si-ti-s, thirst ; for-ti-s, brave ; mi-ti-s, mild.* Secondary : (1) in adjectives and substantives indicating *home, origin*, usually preceded by *ā, I*, more rarely *ē* : *Camer-s (Camer-ti-s), from Camerinum ; Arpinā-s (Arpinā-ti-s), of Arpinum ; nostr-ās, from our country ;* (2) in the form *-ēnsi* (for *ent-ti*) in adjectives of *origin and locality* : *Sicili-ēnsi-s, from Sicily ; castr-ēnsi-s, belonging to a camp.*

5. **-t** (N. (t)s) forms primary and secondary substantives and adjectives. Primary : M. *com-e-s, companion ; dēn-s, tooth ; F. qui-ē-s, rest ; ar-s, art ; locupl-ē-s, wealthy ;* with preceding *e* : *div-e-s, rich.* Note also the Participles in *-ns*. Secondary : M. *āl-e-s, bird ; eque-s, horseman.*

6. **-ento-** (N. -entu-s, etc.) forms substantives and adjectives ; the latter are participial in nature. M. *v-entu-s, wind ; F. pol-enta, cluster ; N. ungu-entu-m, salve ; cru-entu-s, bloody.* Secondary adjectives : *gracil-entu-s, slender ;* and by false analogy *corpul-entu-s, corpulent*, and the like.

7. **-tāt, -tūt** (M. tā-s, tū-s), forms secondary feminine abstracts and collectives : *civ-i-tā-s, citizenship ; liber-tā-s, freedom ; iuven-tū-s, youth ; vir-tū-s, manliness.*

8. **-tio, -tia, -tiē** (N. tiu-m, tia, tiē-s), likewise form abstracts and collectives, some neuter, most masculine : *servi-tiu-m, slavery ; molli-tia and molli-tiē-s, gentleness, etc.*

NOTES. 1. In *in-i-tiu-m, beginning*, and *spa-tiu-m, room*, the suffix is primary.

2. Many roots form various derivatives of similar meaning, thus : *dūr-i-tia, dūr-i-tiē-s, dūr-i-tā-s, hardness, etc.*

9. **-ti-co** (N. ti-cu-s, etc.) forms secondary adjectives signifying *pertaining to* ; *domes-ticu-s, domestic ; aquā-ticu-s, aquatic.*

NOTE.—In such substantives as *canti-cu-m*, *triti-c-um*, the ending *-co* has been added to a participial form in *-to* (*canto*, *trito*).

10. *-ter* forms primary substantives of *kinship*; as, *pa-ter*, *etc.* Different in formation is *soror*, which, like *ux-or*, has no feminine ending.

11. *-tor* (*-sor*), F. *-trīc* (N. *tor*, *trīx*), form substantives of *agency*, those in *trīx* being all secondary : *aud-i-tor*, *hearer* ; *vēnā-trīx*, *huntress* ; *-tor* is secondary in *gladiā-tor*, *etc.*

12. *-tūro-*, *-tūr-a* (N. *tūru-s*, *etc.*), forms participles in *tūru-s*, as *amā-tūru-s*, and feminine substantives denoting *activity* or *office* : *cul-tūr-a*, *cultivation* ; *cēn-sūr-a*, *ensorship*.

13. *-tōr-io* (*-sōr-io*) (N. *tōriu-s*, *etc.*), form neuter substantives of *place* and *instrument*, and adjectives denoting that *which pertains to the actor* : *audī-tōr-iu-m*, *lecture hall* ; *āleā-tōr-iu-s*, *pertaining to a dice-player*.

14. *-tro*, *-tra* (N. *tra*, *tru-m*), forms substantives, mostly neuter, of *means* : *arā-tru-m*, *plough* ; *fenes-tra* (f.), *window*. From words like *mōn-s-tru-m*, *monster*, come by false analogy those in *-ster*, as *pīn-aster*, *wild pine*.

15. *-tero*, *-tera* (N. *ter*, *tra*, *tru-m*) forms comparatives : *al-ter*, *other* ; *dex-ter*, *right* ; *nos-ter*, *our* ; perhaps also adjectives of *relation*, *appurtenance*, or *locality* in *-s-ter* (G. *stris*), such as : *palūs-ter* (= *palūd-ter*), *swampy* ; *eques-ter*, *equestrian* ; *campes-ter*, *champaign* ; *terres-ter*, *of the earth*, *terrestrial*.

16. *-trīno*, *-trīna* (N. *trīna*, *trīnu-m*), forms substantives of *activity* (f.), or of *locality* (f., n.) : *doc-trīna*, *instruction* ; *pīs-trīna*, *bakery* ; *pīs-trīnu-m*, (*pounding*) *mill*.

17. *-tili-* (*-sili*) (N. *tili-s*, *tile*) forms primary adjectives of *capacity* and *adaptation*, and with preceding *ā* secondary adjectives of *relation* or *belonging* : *duc-tili-s*, *ductile* ; *mis-sili-s*, *missile* ; *aquā-tili-s*, *belonging to the water*.

18. *-ter-no* (N. *ternu-s*, *etc.*) forms adjectives indicating *time* : *hes-ternu-s*, *of yesterday*.

19. *-tur-no* (N. *turnu-s*, *etc.*) forms substantives and adjectives indicating *continuance*, from which come proper names : *Sā-turnu-s*, *Vol-turnu-s*, *tac-i-turnu-s*, *silent*.

20. *-tino*, *-tīno* (N. *tinu-s*, *tīnu-s*, *etc.*), forms adjectives of *time*, the latter also of *place* : *crās-tinu-s*, *of to-morrow* ; *intes-tīnu-s*, *inner*, *intestine* ; *mātū-tīnu-s*, *of early morning*.

21. *-tu* (*-su*) (N. *tu-s*, *su-s*) forms substantives of *action* and its *result* : *adven-tu-s*, *arrival* ; *cur-su-s*, *course* ; *or-tu-s*, *rising*.

22. *-ā-tu* (N. *ā-tu-s*) forms secondary substantives of *office* : *cōsul-ā-tu-s*, *consulship* ; *sen-ā-tu-s*, *senate*.

## 187.

## Suffixes with a Labial.

1. **-bo, -ba** (N. *bu-s*, etc.), forms substantives and adjectives: M. *mor-bu-s*, *disease*; F. *bar-ba*, *beard*; N. *ver-bu-m*, *word*; *pro-bu-s*, *up-right*.

2. **-bro, -bra** (N. *bra*, *bru-m*), forms substantives indicating *means* or *instrument*. Primary: F. *dolā-bra*, *cell*; *li-bra*, *balance*; *ter-e-bra*, *borer*; N. *cri-bru-m*, *sieve*. Secondary: *candēlā-bru-m*, *candlestick*.

NOTE. Very rare are masculines; as, *fa-ber*, *wright*; *Mulci-ber*, *Vulcan*.

3. **-bulo, -bula** (N. *bula*, *bulu-m*), form substantives: F. *fā-bula*, *tale*; *fi-bula* (*fig-*), *brooch*; N. *pā-bulu-m*, *fodder*; *sta-bulu-m*, *stall*.

4. **-bili** (N. *bili-s*) forms adjectives, mostly of *passive* meaning in classical prose: *amā-bili-s*, *lovable*; *nō-bili-s*, *noble*; *flē-bili-s*, *weeping*.

## 188.

## Suffixes with an original S.

1. **-is** (N. *is*, G. *er-is*) forms a few substantives: *vōm-is* (also *vōm-er*), *ploughshare*; *cin-is*, *ashes*; *pulv-is*, *dust*; *cucum-is*, *cucumber*.

2. **-us** (N. *us*, G. *er-is*, or *-is*) forms primary and secondary neuter substantives. Primary: *foed-us*, *bond*; *gen-us*, *race*; *temp-us*, *time*. Secondary: *pect-us*, *breast*; *fūn-us*, *funeral*.

NOTE. Some such words have become monosyllable, as *aes*, *iūs*, *rūs*.

3. **-ōs (-ōr)** (N. *ōs*, or, G. *ōr-is*) forms many primary and a few secondary masculine abstracts. Primary: *fl-ōs*, *flower*; *am-or*, *love*. Secondary: *aegr-or*, *sickness*.

NOTE. Noteworthy are M. *lep-us*, *hare*; F. *arb-ōs*, *tree* (45 N.); *Ven-us* (G. *Veneris*), and the adjective *vet-us* (G. *veteris*), *old*.

4. **-es** (N. *es*, *ēs*, G. *is*, *ēl*) forms a few substantives of the third and fifth declension: *vāt-ēs*, *bard*; *fam-ēs*, *hunger*; *plēb-ēs*, *people*.

5. **-ōr-o** (N. *ōru-s*, etc.) forms secondary adjectives, as: *can-ōru-s*, *sounding*; *hon-ōru-s*, *honourable*; and a few substantives, as: *aur-ōra*, *morning*; *Flōra*, etc.

## 189.

## Suffixes with a Liquid.

1. **-lo, -la** (N. *lu-s*, etc.), forms many feminine and neuter, and a few masculine substantives: M. *mā-lu-s*, *mast*; F. *pi-la*, *pillar*; N. *cae-lu-m* (= *caed-lu-m*), *chisel*; *fi-lu-m*, *thread*.

2. **-i-lo, -i-la** (N. *ilu-s*, etc.), forms primary and secondary sub-

stantives and adjectives. M. *sib-i-lu-s*, *hissing*; N. *cae-lu-m* (= *cav-i-lu-m*, *hollow*), *heaven*; *nüb-i-lu-s*, *cloudy*.

3. *(-o-lo), -u-lo, -u-la* (N. *ulu-s*, etc.), form primary and secondary substantives, most of which indicate *instrument*, and primary adjectives indicating *repeated action* or *tendency*: M. *ang-u-lu-s*, *corner*; *oc-u-lu-s*, *eye*; F. *rēg-u-la*, *rule*; *tēg-u-la*, *tile*; N. *iac-u-lu-m*, *javelin*; *spec-u-lu-m*, *mirror*; *bib-u-lu-s*, *bibulous*; *crēd-u-lu-s*, *quick to believe*; *quer-u-lu-s*, *complaining*; *caer-u-lu-s*, *blue* (secondary), and *caer-u-leu-s*. Also *fam-u-lu-s*, *servant*, and the extension *fam-ili-a*, *family*.

4. *-li* (N. *li-s*, *le*) occurs in the substantive: M. *cau-li-s*, *stalk*; and in adjectives: *subtl-li-s*, *fine*; *inci-li-s*, *cut in*. Secondary in *fidē-li-s*, *faithful*.

5. *-i-li* (N. *ili-s*, *ile*) forms a few substantives and many adjectives indicating *passive capacity*: F. *strig-i-li-s*, *scraper*; N. *teg-i-le*, *roof*. Also *vig-il*, *watchman*; *ag-i-li-s*, *readily moved*; *doc-ili-s*, *teachable*. Secondary in *hum-i-li-s*, *low*, and in the terminations *-tili-s*, *-sili-s*.

6. *-olo, -ola* (after *e, i, v*), *-ulo, -ula* (N. *olu-s*, *ulu-s*, etc.), form diminutives: *alve-olu-s*, *little belly*; *fili-olu-s*, *little son*; *rīv-ulu-s*, *brooklet*; *rēg-ulu-s*, *chief*; *vōc-ula*, *voice*; *grān-ulu-m*, *grain*; *alb-ulu-s*, *whitish*; *parv-olu-s*, *small*.

7. *-ello, -ella* (N. *ellu-s*, etc.), forms diminutives after *l* and by assimilation after *n, r*: *pop-ellu-s*, *tribelet*; *tab-el-la*, *tablet*; *pu-el-la*, *girl*; *bel-lu-s* (*bonus*), *good*; *misel-lus* (*miser*), *wretched*. Doubly diminutive are *catel-lu-s*, *puppy*; *cistel-la*, *basket*; *capitel-lu-m*, *head*.

8. *-illo, -illa* (N. *illu-s*, etc.), forms diminutives, and is formed like *ello*, but usually after a preceding *i*: *pulv-illu-s*, *small cushion*; *pistr-illa*, *small mill*; *sig-illu-m*, *small image*; *bov-illu-s*, *bovine*. Also *cōdic-illi*, *billets*; *pau-x-illu-s*, *slight*; *pus-illu-s*, *tiny*.

9. *-olla* is found in *cor-ōl-la*, *wreath*; *ōl-la*, *jar* (*aula*).

10. *-ullo, -ulla*, occurs in *ūl-lu-s*, *any*. *Sul-la* (= *Sūr-u-la*), *Catul-lu-s* (*Catōn-lus*), *homullus* (= *homōn-lu-s*).

11. *(-co-lo), -cu-lo* (N. *culu-s*, etc.), forms diminutives, especially after consonantal and *e, i, u* stems: M. *flōs-culu-s*, *floweret*; *homun-culu-s*, *manikin* (irregular); *avu-n-culu-s*, *uncle* (*mother's brother*, irregular); F. *spē-cula*, *little hope*; *auri-cula*, *ear*; *arbus-cula*, *little tree* (irregular); *domu-n-cula*, *little house* (irregular); N. *cor-culu-m*, (*dear*) *heart*; *mūnus-culu-m*, *little gift*. Adjectives are *dulci-culu-s*, *sweetish*, and especially diminutives from comparative stems, *melius-culu-s*.

12. *-cello (-cillo)* (N. *cellu-s*, etc.) stands to *culo* as *ello* to *ulo*: M. *pēni-cillu-s, -m*, *painter's brush*; *ōs-cillu-m*, *little mouth*; *molli-cellu-s*, *softish*.



13. **-uleo** (N. ūleu-s) forms substantives that were originally adjectival : *acūleu-s*, *sting*.

14. **-āli**, **-āri** (N. āli-s, āri-s, etc.), form secondary adjectives, some of which are substantivised in the neuter, and a few substantives : *vēn-ālis*, *venal*; *mort-āli-s*, *mortal*; *singul-āri-s*, *unique*; *vulg-āri-s*, *common*; *can-āli-s*, *canal*; *animal*, *living being*; *calc-ar*, *spur*.

15. **-ēla** (**-ella**) forms primary and secondary substantives, most of which indicate *action* : *loqu-ēla* (*loqu-ella*), *talking*; *cand-ēla*, *candle*; *cūstōd-ēla*, *watching*.

16. **-ēli** (N. ēli-s, etc.) forms secondary substantives and adjectives : *cardu-ēli-s*, *linnet*; *crūd-ēli-s*, *cruel*.

REMARK.—A further development of **-ēli** is **-ēlio**, **-ēlia** : *Aur-ēli-us*, *contum-ēli-a*, *contumely*.

17. **-īli** (N. īli-s, īle) forms secondary substantives and adjectives : *M. aed-īli-s*, *adile*; *N. cub-īle*, *couch*; *sed-īle*, *seat*; *civ-īli-s*, *civic*; *erī-li-s*, *master's*.

18. **-mo**, **-ma** (N. mu-s, etc.), forms primary substantives and primary and secondary adjectives. The feminine substantives express usually the *result of an action* : *M. an-i-mu-s*, *spirit*; *cal-mu-s*, *cal-a-mu-s*, *stalk*; *F. fā-ma*, *fame*; *flam-ma*, *flame*; *N. ar-ma*, *arms*; *pō-mum*, *fruit*. Adjectives, primary : *al-mu-s*, *fostering*; *fir-mu-s*, *strong*. Secondary : *op-i-mu-s*, *fat*; *patr-i-mu-s*, *mātr-i-mu-s*, *with father, mother, living*.

19. **-men** (N. men, G. min-is) forms primary, neuter substantives, mostly indicating *activity* or *results of activity* : *āg-men*, *train*; *flū-men*, *river*; but *M. flā-men*, *priest*.

20. **-men-to** (N. mentu-m) forms substantives (mostly primary) indicating *instrument* : *al-i-mentu-m*, *nourishment*; *tor-mentu-m*, *torture*.

NOTES. 1. **-men** and **-mentum** are often formed from the same radical. In that case **mentu-m** is the more common : *teg-u-men*, *teg-u-mentu-m*, *covering*.

2. Rare and archaic are feminines in **-menta** : *armenta* = *armentu-m*.

3. **-menti** occurs in *sēmenti-s* (f.), *seed* = *sēmen* (n.).

21. **-met** (N. mes, G. mit-is) forms a few masculine substantives : *trā-mes*, *path*; *fō-mes*, *fuel*; *li-mes*, *cross-path*.

22. **-mino**, **-mina**, **-mno**, **-mna** (N. minu-s, etc.), form substantives : *M. ter-minu-s*, *boundary*; *F. al-u-mna*, *foster-daughter*; *fē-mina*, *woman*; *N. da-mnu-m*, *loss*.

23. **-mōn** (N. mō, G. mōn-is) forms primary and secondary masculine substantives : *pul-mō*, *lung*; *ser-mō*, *discourse*; *tē-mō*, *pole* (of a chariot).

24. **-mōn-io**, **-mōn-ia** (N. mōnia, mōniu-m), forms primary and



secondary substantives. Primary : F. *al-i-mōnia*, *nourishment* ; *quer-i-mōnia*, *complaint* ; N. *al-i-mōniu-m*, *nourishment*. Secondary : F. *ācri-mōnia*, *tartness* ; N. *mātr-i-mōniu-m*, *marriage*.

25. *-mōr* forms primary masculine substantives : *cre-mor*, *broth* ; *rū-mor*, *rumour*.

26. *-mic* (N. *mex*, G. *mic-is*) forms a few substantives : *ci-mex*, *bug* ; *pū-mex*, *pumice*.

27. *a. -no, -na* (N. *nu-s*, etc.), forms primary and secondary adjectives ; the primary are participial in meaning ; the secondary indicate *material* or *relation*, and occasionally *locality* ; when added to local comparatives and adverbs, *distributive numerals* are also formed with this suffix. Primary : *dig-nu-s*, *worthy* ; *plē-nu-s*, *full*. Secondary : *diur-nu-s*, *daily* ; *frāter-nu-s*, *brotherly* ; *acer-nu-s*, *maple* ; *ex-ter-nu-s*, *outer* ; *bi-ni*, *two each*.

NOTE.—Adjectives denoting *material* have also *-neo* (= *n'-eo*), as *ae-neu-s*, *brazen* ; *ilīg-neu-s*, *quer-neu-s*.

*b. -no, -na* (N. *nu-s*, etc.), forms primary and a few secondary substantives. Primary : M. *fur-nu-s*, *oven* ; *pūg-nu-s*, *fist* ; F. *cē-na*, *meal* ; *lā-na*, *wool*. N. *dō-nu-m*, *gift* ; *rēg-nu-m*, *kingdom*. Secondary : M. *tribū-nu-s*, *tribune* ; F. *fortū-na*, *fortune* ; *albur-nu-m*, *sap-wood*.

NOTE.—This suffix is extended in *pecū-nia*, *money*.

28. *-bundo-, -cundo* (N. *bundu-s*, etc., *cundu-s*, etc.), form adjectives of *activity* : *cunct-ā-bundu-s*, *delaying* ; *fā-cundu-s*, *eloquent*.

29. *-ni* (N. *ni-s*) forms primary substantives and adjectives : *am-ni-s*, *stream* ; *pē-ni-s*, *tail* ; *pā-ni-s*, *bread* ; *im-mā-ni-s*, *wild* ; *sēg-ni-s*, *lazy*.

30. *-ino, -ina* (N. *inu-s*, etc.), forms primary and secondary substantives and adjectives. Primary : M. *dom-inu-s*, *lord* ; F. *pāg-ina*, *page* ; *lic-inu-s*, *curled upwards*. Secondary : M. *ped-ic-inu-s*, *foot* ; F. *fisc-ina*, *basket* ; N. *sūc-inu-m*, *amber* ; *faec-inu-s*, *making dregs*.

NOTE.—The suffix is extended in the proper name *Lic-iniu-s*.

31. *-āno, -āna* (N. *ānu-s*, etc.), forms secondary adjectives, some of which are substantivised. They indicate *origin* or *appurtenance* ; *decum-ānu-s*, *belonging to the tenth* ; *hūm-ānu-s*, *human* ; *alt-ānu-s*, *sea-wind*. Primary in *Volc-ānu-s*, *Di-āna*.

32. *-ān-eo* (N. *āneu-s*, etc.) forms primary and secondary adjectives. Primary : *cōnsent-āneu-s*, *harmonious*. Secondary : *subit-āneu-s*, *sudden*. This suffix becomes *ānio* (= *ān'io*) in proper names : *Afr-āniu-s*, *Fund-āniu-s*.

33. *-ēno, -ēna* (N. *ēnu-s*, etc.), forms secondary substantives and

adjectives : M. **Vibidi-ēnu-s** ; F. **cat-ēna**, *chain* ; **hab-ēna**, *rein* ; N. **ven-ēnu-m**, *poison* ; **eg-ēnu-s**, *needy* ; **ali-ēnu-s**, *strange*.

NOTE.—This is extended to **ēn-on** in **toll-ēnō**, (*well*) *sweep*.

34. **-īno**, **-īna** (N. **īnu-s**, etc.), forms primary and secondary substantives and adjectives. Primary : M. **cat-īnu-s**, **-m**, *dish* ; F. **rap-īna**, *rapine* ; **ru-īna**, *ruin* ; **nec-op-īnu-s**, *unexpected*. Secondary : M. **pulv-īnu-s**, *cushion* ; **sal-īnu-m**, *salt-cellar*, and many feminines, especially those denoting *shops* and *factories* : **rēg-īna**, *queen* ; **cul-īna**, *kitchen* ; **offic-īna**, *workshop* ; **āgn-īnu-s**, *belonging to a lamb* ; **div-īnu-s**, *divine*.

NOTE.—An extension of this suffix is found in **ric-īniu-m**, *veil*.

35. **-en** (N. **-en**, (i. **-in-is**) forms a few substantives : M. **pect-en**, *comb* ; N. **glāt-en**, *glue*.

36. **-ōn** (N. **ō**, (i. **in-is**) forms a few substantives : M. **card-ō**, *hinge* ; **marg-ō**, *rim* ; **ōrd-ō**, *row* ; F. **a-sperg-ō**, *sprinkling* ; **virg-ō**, *maid* ; **car-ō**, *flesh*.

NOTES.—1. Noteworthy is **hom-ō**, **hom-in-is**, *man*.

2. This suffix occurs very commonly in compounds forming feminine abstracts :

**-ēdōn** (N. **ēdō**), **dulc-ēdō**, *sweetness* ; **-īdōn** (N. **īdō**), **cup-īdō**, *desire* ; **form-īdō**, *fear* ; **-ūdōn** (N. **ūdō**), **tēst-ūdō**, *tortoise* ; **-tūdōn** (N. **tūdō**), **aegri-tūdō**, *sickness* ; **-āgōn** (N. **āgō**), **im-āgō**, *image* ; **-ūgōn** (N. **ūgō**), **aer-ūgō**, *rust* ; **-īgōn** (N. **īgō**), **cāl-īgō**, *thick darkness* ; **or-īgō**, *origin*, etc.

37. **-ōn** (N. **ō**, (i. **ōnis**) forms primary and secondary substantives. The primary are nouns of *agency* : **combib-ō**, *fellow-drinker* ; **prae-c-ō**, *herald* ; **ti-rō**, *recruit*. The secondary indicate often the possession of some bodily or mental peculiarities ; **āle-ō**, *dice-player* ; **centuri-ō**, *centurion*.

38. **-iōn** (N. **iō**) forms a few masculine and many feminine primary and secondary substantives. Primary : M. **pūg-iō**, *dagger* ; F. **opīn-iō**, *opinion* ; **reg-iō**, *region*. Secondary : M. **pell-iō**, *furrier* ; **vespertil-iō**, *bat* ; F. **com-mūn-iō**, *communion*.

NOTE.—Especially frequent are feminine abstracts in **t-iō** (**s-iō**) : **amb-i-tiō**, *ambition* ; **op-pūgnā-tiō**, *siege*. Noteworthy are the secondary diminutives, **homunc-iō**, **senec-iō**.

39. **-ōno**, **-ōna** (N. **ōnu-s**, **ōna**), forms few primary and many secondary substantives ; the masculines indicate *agents*, especially *person employed* : M. **col-ōnu-s**, *settler* ; F. **mātr-ōna**, *matron* ; **Bell-ōna**.

40. **-ōnio**, **-ōnia** (N. **ōniu-s**, etc.), forms substantives and adjectives : M. **Fav-ōniu-s**, *zephyr* ; **Pomp-ōniu-s**, etc. ; **caup-ōniu-s**, *belonging to a host*. Neuters indicate the *trade* or *shop* : **full-ōniu-m**, *fuller's-shop*.

41. **-ro**, **-ra** (N. (**er**), **-ra**, **ru-m**), forms primary substantives and adjectives : M. **ag-e-r**, *field* ; **cap-e-r**, *goat* ; **mū-ru-s**, *wall* ; F. **lau-ru-s**, *laurel*.

**ser-ra**, *saw* ; N. **flag-ru-m**, *whip* ; **lab-ru-m**, *lip* ; **clā-ru-s**, *bright* ; **pū-rus**, *clean*.

Often a short vowel precedes : M. **num-e-ru-s**, *number* ; F. **cam-era**, *vault* ; N. **iūg-eru-m**, *measure of land*. So **hil-ar-u-s**, *joyous* ; **lib-er**, *free* ; **cam-uru-s**, *vaulted* ; **sat-ur**, *full*.

NOTES.—1. Extensions are **Mer-curiu-s**, *tug-uriu-m*, *hut*.

2. In a number of primary substantives and adjectives simple **r** is preceded by a short vowel : M. **late-r**, *tile* ; **āns-er**, *goose* ; F. **mul-i-er**, *woman* ; N. **ac-er**, *maple* ; **vēr** (= **ves-er**), *spring* ; **cic-ur**, *tame*.

42. **-ri** (N. **-(e)-r**, **-ris**, G. **ris**) forms substantives and adjectives : M. **imb-e-r**, *rain-storm* ; **āc-e-r**, *sharp* ; **fūneb-ri-s**, *funeral* ; perhaps **celeb-er**, *thronged*.

43. **-āro** forms adjectives, as : **av-āru-s**, *greedy* ; **am-āru-s**, *bitter*.

44. **-āri**, **-āli** (N. **āri-s**, **āli-s**, etc.), forms secondary substantives and adjectives ; **-āri** when the stem has **l**, **-āli** when it has an **r** : **pugill-ārē-s**, *tablets* ; **primipil-āri-s**, *one who has been primipilus* ; some neuters in **ar** (from **-āre**) : **calc-ar**, *spur* ; **ex-em-p-l-ar**, *pattern* ; **pulvin-ar**, *(sacred) couch* ; **auxili-āri-s**, *auxiliary* ; **milit-āri-s**, *military* ; **cōnsul-āri-s**, *consular*.

45. **-ārio**, **-āria** (N. **āriu-s**, etc.), forms substantives and adjectives. There are sometimes collateral forms in **-āri-s**. The substantives, when masculine, indicate *artisans* ; when feminine, *business* or *profession* ; when neuter, the *place* where the work is carried on. M. **argent-āriu-s**, *money-changer* ; **ferr-āriu-s**, *iron-worker* ; F. **argent-āria**, *silver mine, bank or banking* ; N. **api-āriu-m**, *beehive* ; **pōm-āriu-m**, *apple orchard*.

46. **-ēro** (N. **ēru-s**, etc.) forms **sev-ērus**, *earnest*, and the substantive **gal-ēru-s**, **-m**, *bonnet*.

47. **-ūri** forms the substantive **sec-ūri-s**, *axe*, and by extension **pēn-ūria**, *want*.

48. The letter **r** appears often in combination with other suffixes, as : **-er-co** in **lup-ercu-s**, *Pan* ; **nov-erca**, *step-mother* ; **-er-to** in **lac-ertu-s**, *arm* ; **lac-ertu-s**, *a lizard* ; **-er-bo** in **ac-erbu-s**, *sour* ; **sup-erbu-s**, *proud* ; **-er-vo** in **ac-ervo-s**, *heap* ; **cat-erva**, *crowd* ; **-er-na** in **cav-erna**, *hollow* ; **lu-cerna**, *lamp* ; **-ter-na** in **lan-ter-na**, *lantern* ; **-ur-no** in **alb-urnu-s**, *white fish* ; **lab-urnu-m**, *laburnum*.

## 190.

## FORMATION OF VERBS.

1. Primitives are confined to the Third Conjugation, to some forms of the Irregular verbs, and to some Inchoatives. The various stem-formations are shown in 133.

2. Derivatives comprise the verbs of the First, Second, and Fourth

Conjugations, and some verbs of the Third Conjugation. They are all (except the *Inchoatives* and the *Meditatives*) formed with the suffix **io**, **ie** (**yo**, **ye**), which is added either to simple verbal stems, or to noun (16) stems already existing or presupposed. The **i** in **io**, **ie**, contracts with the preceding vowels **ā**, **ē**, **i**, **u**, leaving the ordinary forms of the regular conjugations. Certain categories of these verbs have obtained special names according to their various meanings :

The *Causatives*, formed by a change in the stem-vowel.

The *Desideratives*, formed by the addition of **-io** to *nōmina agentis* in **-tor** ; afterwards a desiderative force was associated with the combination **-tor-io** (**-tar-io**), and it was applied indiscriminately.

The *Frequentatives* come originally probably from participial stems in **-to** ; Latin developed also the suffix **-ito** ; further, this being added again to **-to** gave rise to **-tito** (**-sito**).

The *Inchoatives*, formed by a special suffix, **-sco** (**sko**), are treated in conjugation as primitives belonging to the Third Conjugation.

The *Meditatives* have not been explained.

NOTE. Theoretically the *Verbālia* are all *Dēnōminātiva*, but owing to the wide working of Analogy, it has been impossible in many cases, as in **amā-re**, **monē-re**, to discover an original noun ; while in other cases, as the verbal is formed from a part of a denominative verb, it is convenient to retain the division.

## 191. A. *Verbālia* (derived from verb-stems, 190, N.):

1. *Frequentatives* or *Intensives*, denoting *repeated* or *intense Action*. These verbs end in **-tāre** (**-sāre**), **-itāre**, **-titāre** (**-sitāre**), and follow the supine stem (perfect passive form).

(a) **cantāre**, *sing* ; compare **canō** (**cantum**) : **cursāre**, *run to and fro* ; compare **currō** (**cursum**) : **dictāre**, *dictate* ; compare **dicō** (**dictum**) : **dormitāre**, *be sleepy* ; compare **dormiō** (**dormitum**) : **habitāre**, *keep, dwell* ; compare **habeō** (**habitus**) : **pollicitārī**, *promise freely* ; compare **polliceor** (**pollicitus**) : **pulsāre**, *beat* ; compare **pellō** (**pulsum**).

(b) **agitāre** (**ago**), **nōscitāre** (**nōscō**), **sciscitāre** (**sciscō**), **visitāre** (**visō**), **vocitāre** (**vocō**), **volitāre** (**volō**).

(c) **cantitāre** (**cantāre**), **dictitāre** (**dictāre**), **cursitāre** (**cursāre**).

NOTES. 1. The simple verb presupposed by the frequentative or intensive is often out of use, as in the case of : **gus-tāre**, *taste* : **hor-tārī**, *exhort*. The frequentative or intensive in **-tāre** is often out of use : **āctitāre**, *repeatedly or zealously agitate* (no **āctāre**), from **ago**, **āctum** : **lēctitāre**, *read carefully* (no **lēctāre**), from **legō**, **lēctum**.

2. The verbs of the Fourth Conjugation form no frequentatives except **dormiō**, *sleep*, **dormitō** ; **mūniō**, *fortify*, **mūnitō** (rare) : **saliō**, *leap*, **saltō** ; **apertō**, *lay bare*, and **opertō**, *cover*, and compounds of **veniō** (**veniō**, *come*).

2. *Inchoatives* indicate *entrance upon an action*. For their formation see 133, V.

3. *Desideratives* denote *Desire* or *Tendency*. They are formed

by means of the suffix *-turiō (-suriō)* : *ēsurire* (for *ed-t*), *to be sharp-set for eating, hungry* ; *ēm-p-turire*, *to be all agog for buying*.

4. **Causatives** signify the *Effecting* of the *Condition* indicated by their original verb. They are found mainly in the Second Conjugation, and show usually a change in the stem-vowel.

*Change* : *cadere*, *fall*, and *caedere*, *fell* ; *liquēre*, *melt* (trans.), and *liquere*, *melt* (intr.) ; from root *men-* (as in *me-men-tō*) comes *monēre*, *remind* ; *necāre*, *kill*, and *nocēre*, *be death to* ; *placēre*, *please*, and *plācāre*, *cause to be pleased, appease* ; *sedēre*, *sit*, and *sēdāre*, *settle*.

*No change* ; *fugere*, *flee*, and *fugāre*, *put to flight* ; *iacere*, *throw*, and *iacēre*, (*lie*) *thrown* ; *pendere* (*hang*) *weigh*, and *pendēre*, *hang* (intr.).

5. **Meditatives** : (verbs that look forward to an action). These end in *-essere* : *arcessere*, *to summon* ; *capessere*, *to catch at* ; *facessere*, *to do eagerly* ; *incessere*, *to enter* ; *lacessere*, *to irritate* (136, 3, b).

## 192. B. *Denominatives* (derived from noun-stems) :

1. These are most commonly found in the First Conjugation, even though the stem-vowel of the noun is *i* or *u*.

(a) *acervā-re*, *heap up* (from *acervo-s*) ; *aestuā-re*, *seethe* (*aestu-s*) ; *corōnā-re*, *wreathe* (*corōna*) ; *levā-re*, *lighten* (*lev-i-s*) ; *maculā-re*, *besmirch* (*macula*) ; *nōminā-re*, *name* (*nōmen*, *nōmin-is*) ; *onerā-re*, *load* (*onus*, *oner-is*).

The Deponents signify *Condition*, *Employment* : *ancillā-rī*, *be maid* (*ancilla*) ; *aquā-rī*, *be a drawer of water* (*aqua*) ; *fūrā-rī*, *thieve* (*fūr*) ; *laetā-rī*, *be glad* (*laetu-s*).

(b) *albē-re*, *be white* (*albu-s*) ; *flōrē-re*, *be in bloom* (*flōs*, *flōris*) ; *frondē-re*, *be in leaf* (*frōns*, *frondi-s*) ; *lūcē-re*, *be light* (*lūx*, *lūc-is*).

(c) *argue-re* (*be bright, sharp*), *prove* ; *laede-re*, *hurt* ; *metue-re*, *be in fear* (*metu-s*).

(d) *cūstōdi-re*, *guard* (*cūstōs*, *cūstōd-is*) ; *finī-re*, *end* (*fini-s*) ; *lēni-re* *soften* (*lēni-s*) ; *vesti-re*, *clothe* (*vesti-s*).

3. Noteworthy are the *Diminutives* formed by the suffix *-illāre* : *st-illāre*, *drop* (*st-illa*) ; *scint-illare*, *sparkle* (*scint-illa*) ; *ōsc-illāre*, *to swing* (*ōsc-illum*). Similar in function but of different formation are *pullulāre*, *sprout* (*pul-lus*) ; *fodic-āre*, *punch* (*fodere*, *dig*) ; *albicāre*, *whiten* (*albu-s*).

NOTES.—1. The *Denominatives* of the First, Third, and Fourth Conjugations are regularly *transitive*, those of the Second Conjugation are regularly *intransitive*.

2. These verbs are often found only in combination with prepositions : *ab-undāre*, *run over, abound* (from *unda*, *wave*) ; *ac-cūsāre*, *accuse* (from *causa*, *case*) , *ex-aggerāre*, *pile up* (from *agger*) ; *ex-stirpāre*, *root out* (*stirp-s*) ; *il-lūmināre*, *illumine* (from *lūmen*, *lūmin-is*).



## B.—Compound Words.

## I. FORMATION OF COMPOUND WORDS.

193. 1. By composition words are so put together that a new word is made with a signification of its own. The second word is regularly the fundamental word, the first the modifier.

NOTE. — Properly speaking, composition occurs only in the case of substantives, *i. e.* where two or more simple stems come together. In verbs, there is either juxtaposition, where the parts still retain their original force, or the combination of a verb with a preposition. Broadly speaking, however, composition applies to all combinations of words.

2. Composition is either *proper* or *improper*.

194. *Substantive.*

In *Composition Improper* there are either traces of construction or the first part is still inflected : **ē-nōrmis** = **ex nōrmā**, *out of all rule* ; **lēgis-lātor**, *lawgiver* ; **Senātūs-cōnsultum**, *decree of the Senate*.

Many of these compounds have gradually become inflectional : **dēlī-rus** (**dē-līra**), *crazy from fear* ; **ēgregius** (**ē-grege**), *distinguished (from the crowd)* ; **prōcōnsul** (for **prō cōnsule**) ; **trium-vir** (from **trium virum**), *etc.*

NOTE. From composition we must distinguish juxtaposition. So a preposition is brought into juxtaposition with a substantive, or a substantive with a substantive : **ad-mōdum**, *to a degree, very* ; **ob-viam**, *in the way, meeting* ; **ūsusfructus**, *usu-fruct* ; **Iūppiter**, *Father Jove*. Noteworthy are the *Copulative* compounds ; such are compound numerals like **ūn-decim**, **duo-decim**, *etc.*, and occasional others : **su-ove-taur-ilia**, *offerings of swine, sheep, and bulls*.

195. *Composition Proper.*

1. The first part of the compound may be a particle, as **ne-fār-iu-s**, *nefarious* ; **vē-sānu-s**, *mud, out of one's sound senses* ; or a substantive.

If it is a substantive—

(a) The stems in **-a**, **-o**, **-u** regularly weaken these vowels into **-i** before the consonants of the second part, which **i** may vanish : **causī-dicus**, *pleader, lawyer* (**causa**) ; **signī-fer**, *standard-bearer* (**signu-m**) ; **cornī-ger**, *horn-wearer* (**cornū**) ; **man-ceps** (**manu-** and **cap-**), *one who takes in hand, contractor*. The **i**-stems retain **i** or drop it : **ignī-vomu-s**, *fire-vomiting* (**igni-s**) ; **nau-fragu-s**, *shipwrecked* (**nāvi-s**).

(b) Vowel-stems drop their vowel before the vowel of the second part : **māgn-animu-s**, *great-souled* ; **ūn-animu-s**, *of one mind*.

(c) Consonant-stems either drop their consonants or add **i** : **homicīd-a**, *manslayer* (**homin-**) ; **lapi-cīd-a**, *stone-cutter* (**lapid-**) ; **mātr-i-cīd-a**, *mother-murderer, matricide*.

NOTE. The first part is rarely, if ever, a verb. **APULEIUS** uses the form **pōsci-nummius**.



2. The second part of the composition is a noun : **tri-enn-ia-m**, *space of three years* (**annus**) ; **miseri-cor-s**, *tender-hearted* (**cor**).

When the second part ends in a vowel, it adapts itself, if an adjective, to changes of gender, as **flāvi-comus**, *yellow-haired* (**coma**, *hair*), but more often this final vowel becomes **i** and the adjective follows the third declension : **tri-rēmi-s**, *trireme* (**rēmu-s**, *oar*) ; **ab-nōrmi-s**, *abnormal* (**nōrma**, *norm*).

When the second part ends in a consonant, the last term usually undergoes no change : **bi-dēn-s**, *two-pronged* ; **simplex** (**sim-plec-s**), *simple*.

NOTE.—From **genus** (G. **generis**), is formed **dē-gener**.

## II. SIGNIFICATION OF COMPOUNDS.

196. Compound substantives and adjectives are divided according to their signification into two main classes : Determinative and Possessive.

In Determinative compounds one of the terms is subordinate to the other. They fall into two classes : Attributive or Appositional, and Dependent.

197. 1. *Attributive compounds.* The first part is the attribute of the second.

The first word is, (1) a substantive : **ālī-pēs**, *wing-foot(ed)* ; (2) an adjective : **māgn-animus**, *great-hearted* ; **lāti-fundium**, *large estate* ; (3) a numeral : **bi-eni-um** (*i. e.*, *spatium*), *space of two years*.

2. *Dependent compounds.* In these the second word is simply limited by the other, its signification not being altered.

(a) The first word is : (1) an adjective : **merī-diēs** (from **medi-diēs** = **mediō diēs**), *mid-day* ; (2) an adverb : **bene-ficus** (*well-doing*), *beneficent* ; **male-ficus**, *evil-doing* ; (3) a numeral : **ter-geminus**, *triple* ; (4) a particle : **dis-sonus**, *harsh-sounding* ; **per-māgnus**, *very large* ; **in-dignus**, *unworthy* ; (5) a verb-stem : **horr-i-ficus**, *horrible* (*horror-stirring*).

(b) The first word gives a case relation, such as (1) the Accusative : **armi-ger** = **arma gerēns**, *armour-bearer* ; **agri-cola** = **agrum colēns** (*land-tiller*), *husbandman* ; (2) the Genitive : **sōl-stitium** = **sōlis statīō** (*sun-staying*), *solstice* ; (3) the Locative : **aliēni-gena** (*born elsewhere*), *alien* ; (4) the Instrumental : **tībi-cen** = **tībiā canēns**, *flute-player*.

198. *Possessive Compounds* are adjectival only, and are so called because they imply the existence of a Subject possessing the quality indicated.

The first term is, (1) a substantive : **angui-manus**, (*having a*) *snake-hand* (*elephant*) ; (2) an adjective : **flāvi-comus**, (*having*) *yellow hair* ; (3) a numeral : **bi-frōns**, (*having*) *two front(s)* ; (4) a particle : **dis-cors**, *discordant* ; **in-ers**, *inactive*.

NOTE.—Notice that these divisions run into each other ; thus **māgn-animus** is possessive, attributive, and dependent.

### 199. *Verb.*

In *Composition Improper* the verb is joined to a verb, substantive, or adverb. In *Composition Proper* the verb is combined with a preposition.

#### 200. I. *Composition Improper.*

(a) *Verb with verb* : This only takes place when the second part of the compound is **faciō** or **fiō** (173, N. 2). The first part of the compound is regularly an intransitive of the second conjugation : **cale-faciō**, **cale-fiō**, *warm, am warmed*.

(b) *Verb with substantive* : **anim-advertō** = **animum advertō**, *take notice* ; **manū-mittō**, *set free* ; **ūsū-capiō**, *acquire by use*.

(c) *Verb with adverb* : **bene-dicō**, *bless* ; **male-dicō**, *curse* ; **mālō**, **nōlō** (for **mage** (**magis**) **volō**, **ne-volō**), **satis-faciō**, *satisfy*.

#### 2. *Composition Proper.*

The verb combines with separable or inseparable prepositions. Compare 413, R. 3.

(a) *With inseparable prepositions* : **amb-eō**, *go about* ; **am-plector**, *enfold* ; **an-hēlō**, *draw deep breath, pant* ; **dis-currō**, *run apart* ; **dir-imō**, 160, 1, and 715, R. 1 ; **por-tendō**, *hold forth, portend* ; **red-dō**, *give back* ; **re-solvō**, *resolve* ; **sē-iungō**, *separate*.

(b) *With separable prepositions* : **ab-eō**, *go away* ; **ad-eō**, *come up* ; **ante-currō**, *run in advance* ; **com-pōnō**, *put together* ; **dē-currō**, *run down, finish a course* ; **ex-cēdō**, *overstep* ; **in-clūdō**, *shut in* ; **ob-dūcō**, *draw over* ; **per-agrō**, *wander through* ; **post-habēō**, *keep in the background* ; **prae-dicō**, *foretell* ; **praeter-eō**, *pass by* ; **prōd-eō**, *go forth* ; **prae-vidēō**, *foresee* ; **sub-iciō**, *put under* ; **subter-fugiō**, *flee from under* ; **super-sum**, *remain over* ; **trāns-gredior**, *pass beyond*.

# SYNTAX.

---

**201.** SYNTAX treats of the formation and combination of sentences.

A sentence is the expression of a thought (*sententia*) in words.

Sentences are divided into *simple* and *compound*.

A simple sentence is one in which the necessary parts occur but once; for the compound sentence see 472.

The necessary parts of the sentence are *the subject* and *the predicate*.

The predicate is that which is said of the subject.

The subject is that of which the predicate is said.

**Lūna fulget**, *The moon shines.*

**Lūna** is the *subject*; **fulget**, the *predicate*.

REMARKS.—1. The Interjection (16, R. 2) and the Vocative case (23, 5) stand outside the structure of the sentence, and therefore do not enter as elements into Syntax, except that the Vocative is subject to the laws of Concord. See R. 3.

2. The Vocative differs from the Nominative in form in the second declension only, and even there the Nominative is sometimes used instead, especially in poetry and solemn prose.

**Almae filius Māīae**, H., O., I. 2, 43; *son of mild Maia!* **Audī tū**, **populus Albānus**, L., I. 24, 7; *hear thou, people of Alba!*

**Ō** is prefixed to give emphasis to the address:

**Ō fōrmōse puer**, **nīmium nē crēde colōrī**, V., Ec. 2, 17; *O shapely boy! trust not complexion all too much.*

The Vocative is commonly interjected in prose, except in highly emotional passages.

3. On the use of the Vocative of an adjective or participle in apposition, attribution, or predication, see 289, 325, R. 1.

## SYNTAX OF THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

**202.** The most simple form of the sentence is the finite verb: **su-m**, *I am*; **docē-s**, *thou teachest*; **scribi-t**, *he writes*.

REMARK.—Here the form contains in itself all the necessary elements (compare 114), the persons being indicated by the endings. From the expansion and modification of the finite verb arise all the complicated forms of the compound sentence.

203. SUBJECT.—The subject of the finite verb is always in the Nominative Case, or so considered.

REMARKS.—1. The subj. of the Inf. is in the Accusative (343, 2).

2. The use of the Nom. in Latin is the same as in English.

204. The subject may be a substantive or a pronoun, or some other word, phrase, or clause used as a substantive :

*Deus mundum gubernat*, God steers the universe. *Ego rēgēs ēieci*, [C.] *ad Her.*, IV. 53, 66 ; I drove out kings. *Sapiēns rēs adversās nōn timet*, THE SAGE does not fear adversity. *Victi in servitūtem rediguntur*, THE VANQUISHED are reduced to slavery. *Contendisse decōrum est*, OY., *M.*, IX. 6 ; TO HAVE STRUGGLED is honourable. *Māgnū beneficium [est] nātūrae quod necesse est mori*, SEN., *E. M.*, 101, 14 ; it is a great boon of nature, THAT WE MUST NEEDS DIE. *Vidēs habet duās syllabās*, (the word) “VIDES” has two syllables.

NOTES 1. Masculine and feminine adjectives, and to a less degree participles, are used as substantives, but with the following limitations :

(a) Many adjectives in *-ārius* and *-icus* (the latter mostly Greek), designating office or occupation, and words expressing friendship, kinship, or other relationship, are used often as substantives both in the Sing. and the Pl. of the masculine and feminine : *aquārius*, waterman ; *librārius*, bookman (-seller, writer, etc.) ; *grammaticus*, grammarian ; *amicus*, friend ; *cōgnātus*, kinsman ; *socius*, partner. Many of these have become almost wholly fixed as substantives, as *amicus*, friend. See 16, n. 1.

(b) Adjectives are very often used as substantives in the masc. Pl. when they designate a class : *pauperēs*, the poor ; *divitēs*, the rich. In the oblique cases of the Sing., this use is also not uncommon ; but in the Nom. the substantive is generally expressed : *vir bonus*, a good man ; *mulier peregrina*, a foreign woman. So regularly, if used with a proper name : *Platō, doctissimus homō*, the learned Plato. Exceptions are rare and scattering in prose : *ego et suāvissimus Cicerō valēmus*, C., *Fam.*, XIV. 5, 1.

(c) On the use of participles as substantives see 437, n.

(d) When persons are not meant, a substantive is understood : *cāni* (*capilli*), gray hairs ; *calida* (*aqua*), warm water ; *dextra* (*manus*), right hand.

2. Neuter adjectives and participles are freely employed as substantives in both numbers ; in the Pl. usually in Nom. and Acc., in the Sing. in all cases, but especially in connection with prepositions : *medium*, the midst ; *extrēmum*, the end ; *reliquom*, the residue ; *futūrum*, the future ; *bonum*, good ; *bona*, blessings, possessions ; *malum*, evil ; *mala*, misfortunes. The Plural is frequently employed when the English idiom prefers the Singular : *vēra*, the truth ; *omnia*, everything.

3. Adjectives of the Second Declension are sometimes used as neuter substantives in the Gen., after words of quantity or pronouns : *aliquid boni*, something good ; *nihil mali*, nothing bad. Adjectives of the Third Declension are thus employed only in combination with those of the Second, and even then very rarely (369, R. 1).

Usually the adjective of the Third Declension draws the adjective of the Second

into its own construction : **Quid habet ista rēs aut laetābile aut glōriōsum ?** C., *Tusc.*, I. 21, 49 ; *what is there to be glad of or to brag about in that ?*

4. Instead of the neuter adjective, the word **rēs**, *thing*, is frequently used, especially in forms which are identical for different genders, and consequently ambiguous ; so **bonārum rērum**, *of blessings*, rather than **bonōrum** (masc. and neut.).

5. In Latin the Pl. of abstract substantives occurs more frequently than in English ; **adventūs imperātōrum**, *the arrival(s) of the generals* (because there were several generals, or because they arrived at different times). Pluralising abstract substantives often makes them concrete : **fortitūdinēs**, *gallant actions* ; **formidīnēs**, *bugbears* ; **irae**, *quarrels*.

6. Other Pl. expressions to be noted are : **nivēs**, *snow(-flakes)* ; **grandīnēs**, *hail (-stones)* ; **pluviae**, *(streams of) rain* ; **ligna**, *(logs of) wood* ; **carnēs**, *pieces of meat* ; **aera**, *articles of bronze* ; also symmetrical parts of the human body : **cervicēs**, *neck* ; **pectora**, *breast*.

The Pl. is freely used in poetry and in later prose : **Ōtia sī tollās, periēre Cupīdinis arcūs**, Ov., *Rem. Am.*, 139 ; *if you do away with holidays, Cupid's bow (and arrows) are ruined*.

7. The rhetorical Roman often uses the First Person Pl. for the First Person Singular. The usage originates in modesty, but mock modesty is the worst form of pomposity. It is never very common, and is not found before CICERO : **Librum ad tē dē senectūte mīsimus**, C., *Cat. M.*, I, 3 ; *we (I) have sent you a treatise on old age*.

In poetry there is often an element of shyness ; **Sitque memor nostrī necne, referte mihī**, Ov., *Tr.*, IV. 3, 10 ; *bring me back (word) whether she thinks of us (me among others) or no*.

8. (a) The Sing., in a collective sense, is also used for the Pl., but more rarely : **faba**, *beans* ; **porcus**, *pig (meat)* ; **gallīna**, *fowl* (as articles of food) ; **vestis**, *clothing*.

(b) The use of the Sing. in designations of nationalities and divisions of troops is introduced by LIVY : **Rōmānus**, *the Roman forces* ; **Poenus**, *the Carthaginians* ; **hostis**, *the enemy* ; **miles**, *the soldiery* ; **pedes**, *the infantry* ; **eques**, *the cavalry*.

**205. PREDICATE and COPULA.**—When the predicate is not in the form of a verb, but in the form of an adjective or substantive, or equivalent, the so-called copula is generally employed, in order to couple the adjective or substantive with the subject.

The chief copula is the verb **sum**, *I am*.

**Fortūna caeca est**, C., *Lael.*, 15, 54 ; *fortune is blind*. **Ūsus magister est optimus**, C., *Rab. Post.*, 4, 9 ; *practice is the best teacher*.

NOTE.—Strictly speaking, the copula is itself a predicate, as is shown by the translation when it stands alone or with an adverb : **est Deus**, *there is a God, God exists* ; **rēctē semper erunt rēs**, *things will always be (go on) well* ; **sic vīta hominum est**, C., *Rosc. Am.*, 30, 84 ; *such is human life* ; “ *So runs the world away.* ”

**206.** Other copulative verbs are : **vidērī**, *to seem* ; **nāscī**, *to be born* ; **fierī**, *to become* ; **ēvādere**, *to turn out* ; **creārī**, *to be created* ; **dēligī**, *to be chosen* ; **putārī**, *to be thought* ; **habērī**, *to be held* ; **dicī**, *to be said* ; **appellārī**, *to be called* ; **nōminārī**, *to be named*. Hence the rule :

Verbs of *seeming, becoming*, with the passive of verbs of



*making, choosing, showing, thinking, and calling, take two Nominatives, one of the subject, one of the predicate :*

**Nēmō nascitur dives**, *SEN., E. M., 20, 13; no one is born rich.* **Aristidēs iustus adpellātur**, *Aristides is called just.* [**Servius**] **rēx est dēclārātus**, *L., l. 46, 1; Servius was declared king.* [**Thūcŷdidēs**] **numquam est numerātus ōrātor**, *C., O., 9, 31; Thucydides has never been accounted an orator.*

REMARKS.—1. With **esse**, *serve as* : **vidēri**, *seem* ; **habēri**, *be held* ; **dūci**, *be deemed*, and rarely with other verbs, instead of the Predicate Nom., a phrase may be employed, as : **prō** with Abl., (in) **locō**, in **numerō**, with Gen., *etc.*

**Audācia prō mūrō habētur**, *S., C., 58, 17; boldness is counted as a bulwark.* **In filiī locō**, *C., Red. in Sen., 14, 35; as a son.*

2. The previous condition is given by **ex** or **dē** and the Abl. (396, N. 2).

**Ex ōrātōre arātor factus**, *C., Ph., III. 9, 22; a pleader turned plowman.*

3. All copulative verbs retain the Nom. with the Inf. after auxiliary verbs (423).

**Beātus esse sine virtūte nēmō potest**, *C., N. D., l. 18, 48; no one can be happy without virtue.*

4. On the Double Acc. after Active Verbs, see 340.

NOTES.—1. The verbs mentioned, with some others, are found in good prose. Others are either poetical or unclassical, thus : **perhibēri**, *to be held*, is early ; **appārēre**, *to appear*, is poetic and post classical for **vidēri** ; **reddi** is not used for **fierī** ; **sistī**, *to be set down*, is Plautine ; **manēre**, *to remain*, is late (**permanēre** once in Cicerō).

2. Noteworthy is the use of **audīre**, like the Greek *ἀκούειν*, *to be called*, which is confined to HORACE : **rēxque paterque audistī**, *Ep., l. 7, 38; S., II. 6, 20*, just as "hear" in this sense is said to be confined to MILTON.

207. SUBJECT OMITTED.—The personal pronoun is not expressed in classical prose, unless it is emphatic, as, for example, in contrasts :

**Amāmus parentēs**, *We love (our) parents.* **Ego rēgēs ēiēcī, vōs tyrannōs intrōdūcītis**, [*C.*] *ad Her., IV. 53, 66; I drove out kings, ye are bringing in tyrants.*

NOTE. The insertion of the pronoun without emphasis is very common in the comic poets, and seems to have been a colloquialism. Also common in CATULLUS, SALUST (as an archaism), and PETRONIUS.

208. IMPERSONAL VERBS.—Impersonal Verbs are verbs in which the agent is regularly implied in the action, the subject in the predicate, so that the person is not expressed. Chief of these are :

1. Verbs pertaining to the state of the weather : **tonat**, *it thunders, the thunder thunders*, or rather, *the Thunderer thunders*; **fulget**, *fulgu-*



rat (less common), *fulminat* (poet.), *it lightens*; *pluit* (poet.), *it rains*; *ningit*, *it snows*, etc.

Nocte *pluit* *tôtā*, V., (POET. LAT. MIN., IV. 155, B.); *all night it (he, Jupiter) rains*.

NOTE.—The divine agent is sometimes expressed; so, naturally, in religious or popular language: *Iove tonante, fulgurante*, C., *Div.*, II. 12, 43; *Iove fulgente*, C., *N. D.*, II. 25, 65.

2. The passive of intransitive verbs is often used impersonally; so regularly of verbs which in the active are construed with the Dat. (217): *vivitur*, *people live*; *curritur*, *there is a running*; *pugnātur*, *there is a battle*; *mihi invidētur*, *I am envied*. The subject is contained in the verb itself: *sic vivitur* = *sic vīta vivitur*, *such is life*; *pugnātur* = *pūgna pūgnātur*, *a battle is (being) fought*. In the same way explain *taedet*, *it wearies*; *miseret*, *it moves to pity*; *piget*, *it disgusts*; *pudet*, *it puts to shame*.

NOTES.—1. With all other so-called Impersonal Verbs an Inf. (422, 535) or an equivalent (523) is conceived as a subject: *Nōn lubet mihi dēplōrāre vītam*, C., *Cat. M.*, 23, 84. *Sed accidit perincommodē quod eum nūquam vīdisti*, C., *Att.*, I. 17, 2.

2. Other uses coincide with the English. So the Third Person Pl. of verbs of Saying, Thinking, and Calling. Also the ideal Second Person Singular (258). To be noticed is the occasional use of *inquit*, *quoth he*, of an imaginary person, but not by CAESAR, SALLUST, or TACITUS: *Nōn concēdō, inquit, Epicūrō*, C., *Ac.*, II. 32, 101; *I do not yield the point, quoth he (one), to Epicurus*.

209. COPULA OMITTED.—*Est* or *sunt* is often omitted in saws and proverbs, in short statements and questions, in rapid changes, in conditional clauses, and in tenses compounded with participles:

*Summum iūs summa iniūria*, C., *Off.*, I. 10, 33; *the height of right (is) the height of wrong*. *Nemo malus felix*, JUV., IV. 8; *no bad man (is) happy*. *Quid dulcius quam habere quicum omnia audeās loqui?* C., *Lael.*, 7, 22; *what sweeter than to have some one with whom you can venture to talk about everything?* *Sed haec vetera; illud vērō recēns*, C., *Ph.*, II. 11, 25. *Aliquamdiū certātum*, S., *Jug.*, 74, 3. *Cūr hostis Spartacus, si tū civis?* C., *Parad.*, 4, 30.

So also *esse*, with participles and the like:

*Caesar statuit exspectandam clāsem*, CAES., *B. G.*, III. 14, 1; *Caesar resolved that the fleet must be waited for*.

NOTES.—1. The omission of *esse* is not common with the Nom. and Infinitive.

2. Popular speech omits freely; so, *mīrum nī, mīrum quīn, factum*, in Latin comedy; likewise *potis* and *pote* for forms of *posse*. To a like origin are due *mīrum quantum, nimium quantum*, etc., found at all periods.

3. The ellipsis of other forms of the copula is unusual. Thus CICERO occasionally omits *sit* in the Indirect Question, and TACITUS other forms of the Subjv. besides. *Fuisse* is omitted by LIVY, and not unfrequently by TACITUS.

4. The Ellipsis of *esse* was sometimes due to the desire of avoiding the heaping up

of Infinitives. Thus sentences like *nōn dubitō tē esse sapientem dicere* (*to declare you to be wise*) were regularly cut down to *nōn dubitō tē sapientem dicere* (*to declare you wise*).

5. The ellipsis of other verbs, such as *facere, ire, venire, dicere, etc.*, is characteristic of popular speech; it is therefore not uncommon in CICERO's letters (*ad Att.*), in PLINY's letters, and in works involving dialogue, such as CICERO's philosophical writings. The historians avoid it, and it never occurs in CAESAR and VELLEIUS.

### CONCORD.

**210. THE THREE CONCORDS.**—There are three great concords in Latin:

1. The agreement of the predicate with the subject (211).
2. The agreement of attributive or appositive with the substantive (285, 321).
3. The agreement of the relative with antecedent (614).

### 211. Agreement of the Predicate with the Subject.

The verbal predicate agrees with its subject { in number and person.

The adjective predicate agrees with its subject { in number, gender, and case.

The substantive predicate agrees with its subject in case.

*Substantiva mōbilia* (21, 2) are treated as adjectives, and follow the number and gender of the subject.

*Ego rēgēs ēiēcī, vōs tyrannōs intrōdūcītis*, [C.] *ad Her.*, iv. 53, 66 (207). *Vērae amicitiae sempiternae sunt*, C., *Lael.*, 9, 32; *true friendships are abiding*. *Dōs est decem talenta*, TER., *And.*, 950; *the dowry is ten talents*. *Ūsus magister est optimus*, C., *Rab. Post.*, 4, 9 (205). *Arx est monosyllabum*, "Arx" is a monosyllable. Compare *Īgnis cōnfector est et cōnsūptor omnium*, C., *N.D.*, ii. 15, 41; *fire is the doer-up (destroyer) and eater-up (consumer) of everything*, with *cōnfectrix rērum omnium vetustās*, C., *Prag.*

REMARKS.—1. The violation of the rules of agreement is due chiefly to one of two causes; *either* the natural relation is preferred to the artificial (*cōnstructiō ad sēsum, per synesin, according to the sense*), or the nearer is preferred to the more remote. Hence the following

EXCEPTIONS.—(a) Substantives of multitude often take the predicate in the Plural: *pars, part*; *vis* (*power*), *quantity*; *multitūdō, crowd*; organized bodies more rarely. Also, but not often, such words as *quisque, uterque, nēmō, etc.*

*Pars maior recēperant sēsē*, L., xxxiv. 47, 6; *the greater part had retired*. *Omnis multitūdō abeunt*, L., xxiv. 3, 15; *all the crowd depart*.

**Māgna vis ēminus missa tēlōrum multa nostris vulnēra inferēbant**, CAES., *B.C.*, II. 6, 5. **Uterque eōrum ex castris exercitum ēdūcunt**, CAES., *B.C.*, III. 30, 3.

NOTE.—This usage is very common in comedy, but extremely rare in model prose. LIVY shows a greater variety and a larger number of substantives than any other author, and poets and late prose writers are free. Yet HORACE uses regularly the Sing. with a collective, while VERGIL varies, often employing first a Sing. and then a Pl. verb with the same substantive (as *A.*, II. 64). TACITUS often uses **quisque** with a Plural.

(b) The adjective predicate often follows the natural gender of the subject; so especially with **milia**. This usage belongs pre-eminently to the historians.

**Capita coniūratiōnis virgīs caesi** (sunt), L., X. 1, 3; *the heads of the conspiracy were flogged*. **Samnītiū caesi tria milia**, Cf. L., X. 34, 3; *of the Samnites (there) were slain three thousand*.

The passive verb often agrees in gender with the predicate: **Nōn omnis error stultitia dicenda est**, C., *Div.*, II. 43, 90; *not every false step is to be called folly*.

(c) The copula often agrees with the number of the predicate ("the wages of sin is death"):

**Amantium irae** (204, N. 5) **amōris integratiō est**, TER., *And.*, 555; *lovers' quarrels are love's renewal*.

2. A superlative adjective defined by a Partitive Gen. follows the gender of the subj. when it precedes:

**Indus, qui est omnium flūminum māximus**, C., *N.D.*, II. 52, 130; *the Indus, which is the greatest of all rivers*.

Otherwise it follows the Genitive; but this usage is post-classic:

**Vēlōcissimū omnium animāliū est delphīnus**, PLIN., *N.H.*, IX. 8, 20; *the dolphin is the swiftest of all animals*.

3. The Voc. is sometimes used by the poets in the predicate, either by anticipation or by assimilation. (See 325, R. 1.)

4. The neuter adjective is often used as the substantive predicate of a masculine or feminine subject:

**Triste lupus stabulis**, V., *Ec.*, 3, 80; *the wolf is a baleful thing to the folds*. **Varium et mutābile semper fēmina**, V., *A.*, IV. 569; *"a thing of moods and fancies" is woman ever*.

This construction is poetical; in CICERO it is used with a few words only; such as **extrēmum**, **commūne**:

**Omnium rērum** (204, N. 4) **mors [est] extrēmum**, Cf. C., *Fam.*, VI. 21, 1; *death is the end of all things*.

5. The demonstrative pronoun is commonly attracted into the gender of the predicate:

**Negat Epicūrus**; **hōc enim vostrum lūmen est**, C., *Fin.*, II. 22, 70; *Epicurus says No; for he is your great light*. **Ea nōn media sed nūlla via est**, L., XXXII., 21, 33; *that is not a middle course, but no course at all*.

But in negative sentences, and when the pronoun is the predicate, there is no change. So in definitions :

Quid aut quāle [est] Deus ? Cf. C., N.D., i. 22, 60 ; *what or what manner of thing is God ?* Nec sopor illud erat, V., A., iii. 173. Quod ita erit gestum, id lēx erit, C., Ph., i. 10, 26.

Exceptions are but apparent. C., O., ii. 38, 157.

6. The adjective predicate sometimes agrees with a substantive in apposition to the subject. So especially when the appositive is oppidum, civitās, and the like :

Corioli oppidum captum [est], L., ii. 33, 9 ; *Corioli-town was taken.* Corinthum, tōtius Graeciae lūmen, extinctum esse voluērunt, C., Imp., 5, 11 ; *they would have Corinth, the eye of all Greece, put out.*

NOTES. 1. Peculiar is the occasional use of the Fut. participle in -ūrum for feminines in early Latin : Alterō (gladiō) tē occisūrum ait (Casina), alterō villicum. Pl., Cas., 693. So Truc., 400.

2. Age is often used in early Latin as if it were an adverb, with the Plural ; occasionally also cavē : Age modo fabricāmini. Pl., Cas., 488.

Akin is the use of a Voc. Sing. with a Pl. verb, which is occasionally found in classical prose also : Tum Scaevola ; quid est, Cotta ? inquit, quid tacētis ? C., O., i. 35, 160.

The use of aliquis, *some one of you*, in this way is early : Aperite aliquis āctūtum ōstium, Ter., Ad., 634.

3. Other less usual constructions ad sēnsu are : the use of a neuter demonstrative where a substantive of a different gender is expected, and the construction of rēs as if it were neuter (both found also in Cicero) ; the neuter Singular summing up a preceding Plural :

In Graeciā mūsici floruērunt, discēbantque id (that [accomplishment]) omnēs, C., Tusc., i. 2, 4. Servitia repudiābat, cūius (of which [class]) initiō ad eum magnae cōpiaē concurrēbant, S., C., 56, 5. See also C., Div., ii. 57, 117.

## Forms of the Verbal Predicate.

### VOICES OF THE VERB.

212. There are two Voices in Latin—Active and Passive.

REMARK.—The Latin Passive corresponds to the Greek Middle, and, like the Greek Middle, may be explained in many of its uses as a Reflexive.

213. ACTIVE.—The Active Voice denotes that the *action proceeds from the subject*. Verbs used in the Active Voice fall into two classes, as follows :

Verbs are called *Transitive* when their action *goes over* to an object (trānseō, *I go over*) ; *Intransitive* when their action *does not go beyond* the subject : occidere, *to fell* = *to kill* (Transitive) ; occidere, *to fall* (Intransitive).

REMARK.—Properly speaking, a Transitive Verb in Latin is one that forms a personal passive, but the traditional division given above has its convenience, though it does not rest upon a difference of nature, and a verb may be trans. or intrans. according to its use. So

(a) Transitive verbs are often used intransitively, in which case they serve simply to characterize the agent. This is true especially of verbs of *movement*; as *dēclināre*, *inclināre*, *movēre*, *mūtāre*, *vertere*, and the like, and is found at all periods.

(b) On the other hand, many intrans. verbs are often used transitively. This occurs also at all periods, but the Acc. is usually the *inner* object (332).

(c) On the use of the Inf. active, where English uses the passive, see 532, N. 2.

**214. PASSIVE.**—The Passive Voice denotes that the *subject receives the action* of the verb.

The instrument is put in the Ablative.

*Virgīs caedātur*, C., *Verr.*, III. 28, 69; *he shall be beaten with rods.*  
*[Ignis] lūmine prōditur suō*, Ov., *Her.*, 15, 8; *the fire is betrayed by its own light.*

The agent is put in the Ablative with **ab** (**ā**).

*Ab amicis prōdimur*, C., *Cluent.*, 52, 143; *we are betrayed by friends.*  
*Virgīs caesi tribūnī ab lēgātō sunt*, L., XXIX. 18, 13; *the tribunes were beaten with rods by the lieutenant.*

REMARKS.—1. Intrans. verbs of passive signification are construed as passives: *famē perire*, C., *Inv.*, II. 57, 172, *to perish of hunger.* So *vēnīre*, *to be sold*; *vāpulāre* (chiefly vulgar), *to be beaten*, *ab aliquō*, *by some one.*

*Ab reo fūstibus [vāpulāvit]*, Cf. QUINT., IX. 2, 12; *he was whacked with cudgels by the defendant.* *Salvēbis ā meō Cicerōne*, C., *Att.*, VI. 2, 10; *greeting to you from Cicero.*

2. When the instrument is considered as an agent, or the agent as an instrument, the constructions are reversed:

*Vincī ā Voluptāte*, C., *Off.*, I. 20, 68; *to be overcome by Dame Pleasure.*  
*Patriciis iuvenibus saepserant latera*, L., III. 37, 6; *they had flanked him with a guard of patrician youths.*

The latter construction is very rare in CICERO, and seems to belong pre-eminently to the historians.

Animals, as independent agents, are treated like persons.

*Ā cane nōn māgnō saepe tenētur aper*, Ov., *Rem. Am.*, 422; *a boar is often held fast by a little dog.*

Animals, as instruments, are treated like things.

Compare *equō vehī*, *to ride a horse (to be borne by a horse)*, with *in equō*, *on horseback.*



**215.** The person in whose interest an action is done is put in the Dative. Hence the frequent inference that the person interested is the agent. See 354.

1. With the Perfect passive it is the *natural* inference, and common in prose.

**Mihī rēs tōta prōvīsa est**, (C., *Verr.*, iv. 42, 91; *I have had the whole thing provided for.* **Carmina nūlla mihi sunt scripta**, Ov., *Tr.*, v. 12, 35; *poems—I have none written* (I have written no poems).

2. With the Gerundive it is the *necessary* inference, and the Dative is the reigning combination.

**Nihil |est| hominī tam timendum quam invidia**, (C., *Cluent.*, 3, 7; *there is nothing that one has to fear to the same extent as envy.*

**216.** The Direct Object of the Active Verb (the Accusative Case) becomes the Subject of the Passive.

**Alexander Dārēum vicit**, *Alexander conquered Darius.*

**Dārēus ab Alexandrō victus est**, *Darius was conquered by Alexander.*

**217.** The Indirect Object of the Active Verb (Dative Case) cannot be properly used as the Subject of the Passive. The Dative remains unchanged, and the verb becomes a Passive in the Third Person Singular (Impersonal Verb). This Passive form may have a neuter subject corresponding to the Inner object (333, 1).

Active: **Miserī invident bonīs**, *The wretched envy the well-to-do.*

Passive: <b>mihī invidētur</b> , <i>I am envied,</i>	} <b>ab aliquō</b> , <i>by some one.</i>
<b>tibi invidētur</b> , <i>thou art envied,</i>	
<b>ei invidētur</b> , <i>he is envied,</i>	
<b>nōbīs invidētur</b> , <i>we are envied,</i>	
<b>vōbīs invidētur</b> , <i>you are envied,</i>	
<b>illis invidētur</b> , <i>they are envied,</i>	

**Nihil facile persuādētur invītīs**, QUINT., iv. 3, 10; *people are not easily persuaded of anything against their will.* **Ānulis nostrīs plūs quam animīs crēditur**, SEN., *Ben.*, iii. 15, 3; *our seals are more trusted than our souls.*

REMARKS. —1. In like manner a Gen. or Abl. in dependence upon an active verb cannot be made the subj. of the passive.

2. On the exceptional usage of personal Gerundives from intrans. verbs see 427, N. 5.

NOTES. —1. The poets and later prose writers sometimes violate the rule, under Greek influence or in imitation of early usage: **Cūr invidēor?** (for **cūr invidētur mihi?**) H., *A.P.*, 56; **vix equidem crēdar**, Ov., *Tr.*, iii. 10, 35; **persuāsus vidētur**



**esse**, [C.] *ad Her.*, I. 6, 9. (*Persuādeō hospitem*, *PETR.*, 62, 2, is perhaps an intentional solecism.)

2. Similar liberties are taken by poets and late prose writers with the passive of other intrans. verbs, such as *concēdere*, *permittere*, *praecipere*, *prōnūntiāre*: **Fā-tis numquam concēssa** (= *cui concēssum est*) *movērī Camarina*, *V., A.*, III. 700.

**218. REFLEXIVE.**—Reflexive relations, when emphatic, are expressed as in English :

**Omne animal sē ipsum diligit**, *C., Fin.*, v. 9, 24, *Every living creature loves itself*.

But when the reflexive relation is more general, the passive (middle) is employed : **lavor**, *I bathe*, *I bathe myself*.

**Pūrgārī** [*nequiverunt*], *Cf. L.*, XXIV. 18, 4 ; *they could not clear themselves*. **Cum in mentem vēnit**, *pōnor ad scribendum*, *C., Fam.*, IX. 15, 4 ; *when the notion strikes me I set myself to writing*.

NOTE.—Some of these verbs approach the deponents, in that the reflexive meaning of the passive extends also to some active forms ; thus, from **vehor**, *I ride*, we get the form **vehēns**, *riding* (rare) : **Adulēscēntiam per mediās laudēs quasi quadrīgīs vehentem**, *C., Br.*, 97, 331.

**219.** As the active is often used to express what the subject suffers or causes to be done, so the passive in its reflexive (middle) sense is often used to express an action which the subject suffers or causes to be done to itself : **trahor**, *I let myself be dragged* ; **tondeor**, *I have myself shaved*.

**Duōs Mysōs** [*insuisti*] *in cūleum*, *Cf. C., Q. F.*, I. 2, 2, 5 ; *you sewed two Mysians into a sack (had them sewn)*. **Sine gemitū adūrantur**, *C., Tusc.*, v. 27, 77 ; *they let themselves be burned without a moan*. **Diruit, aedificat**, *II., Ep.*, I. I, 100 ; *he is pulling down, he is building*. **Ipse docet quid agam** ; **fās est et ab hoste docērī**, *Ov., M.*, IV. 428 ; *he himself teaches (me) what to do ; it is (but) right to let oneself be taught even by an enemy (to take a lesson from a foe)*.

**220. DEPONENT.**—The Deponent is a passive form which has lost, in most instances, its passive (or reflexive) signification. It is commonly translated as a transitive or intransitive active : **hortor**, *I am exhorting* (trans.) ; **morior**, *I am dying* (intrans.).

NOTES.—1. A number of intrans. verbs show also a Perfect Part. passive used actively ; not, however, in classical prose combined with **esse** to take the place of the regular Perfect. On the use of such participles as substantives, see 167, N. 1.

**Quid causae excōgitārī potest, cur tē lautum voluerit, cēnātum nōluerit occidēre** ? *C., Del.*, 7, 20.

2. Many verbs show both active and deponent forms side by side. In this case the active forms belong more often to early authors. See 163-167.

**221. RECIPROCAL.**—Reciprocal relations (“one another”) are expressed by *inter*, *among*, and the personal pronouns, *nōs*, *us* ; *vōs*, *you* ; *sē*, *themselves*. *Inter sē amant*, *They love one another*.

REMARKS.—1. Combinations of *alter alterum*, *alius alium*, *uterque alterum*, and the like, also often give the reciprocal relation : sometimes there is a redundancy of expression.

*Placet Stōicis hominēs hominum causā esse generātōs, ut ipsi inter sē aliī aliis prōdesse possent*, C., *Off.*, i. 7, 22 ; *it is a tenet of the Stoics that men are brought into the world for the sake of men, to be a blessing to one another*.

2. Later writers use *invicem* or *mūtuō*, *inter sē*, *vicissim* ; and early Latin shows occasionally *uterque utrumque*.

*Quae omnia hūc spectant, ut invicem ārdentius diligāmus*, PLIN., *Ep.*, vii. 20, 7 ; *all these things look to our loving one another more fervently*. *Uterque utriquest cordi*, TER., *Ph.*, 800 ; *either is dear to other*.

## TENSES.

**222.** The Tenses express the relations of time, embracing :

1. The stage of the action (duration in time).
2. The period of the action (position in time).

The first tells whether the action is *going on*, or *finished*. The second tells whether the action is *past*, *present*, or *future*.

Both these sets of relations are expressed by the tenses of the Indicative or Declarative mood—less clearly by the Subjunctive.

**223.** There are six tenses in Latin :

1. The *Present*, denoting *continuance* in the *present*.
2. The *Future*, denoting *continuance* in the *future*.
3. The *Imperfect*, denoting *continuance* in the *past*.
4. The *Perfect*, denoting *completion* in the *present*.
5. The *Future Perfect*, denoting *completion* in the *future*.
6. The *Pluperfect*, denoting *completion* in the *past*.

**224.** An action may further be regarded simply as *attained*, without reference to its *continuance* or *completion*. *Continuance* and *completion* require a point of reference for definition ; *attainment* does not. This gives rise to the aoristic or *indefinite* stage of the action, which has no especial tense-

form. It is expressed by the Present tense for the present ; by the Future and Future Perfect tenses for the future ; and by the Perfect tense for the past.

Of especial importance are the *Indefinite* or *Historical* Present and the *Indefinite* or *Historical* Perfect (Aorist), which differ materially in syntax from the *Definite* or *Pure* Present and Perfect.

225. The Tenses are divided into *Principal* and *Historical*. The *Principal Tenses* have to do with the Present and Future. The *Historical Tenses* have to do with the Past.

The Present, Pure Perfect, Future, and Future Perfect are *Principal Tenses*.

The Historical Present, Imperfect, Pluperfect, and Historical Perfect are *Historical Tenses*.

The Historical Tenses are well embodied in the following distich :

Tālia tentābat, sic et tentāverat ante,

Vixque dedit victās ūtilitāte manūs. Ov., Tr., l. 3, 87.

## 226. Table of Temporal Relations.

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### ACTIVE.

	<i>Continuance.</i>	<i>Completion.</i>	<i>Attainment.</i>
PRES.	scribō, <i>I am writing.</i>	scripsi, <i>I have written.</i>	scribō, <i>I write.</i>
FUT.	scribam, <i>I shall be writing.</i>	scripserō, <i>I shall have written.</i>	scribam (scripserō), <i>I shall write.</i>
PAST.	scribēbam, <i>I was writing.</i>	scripseram, <i>I had written.</i>	scripsi, <i>I wrote.</i>

#### PASSIVE.

	<i>Continuance.</i>	<i>Completion.</i>	<i>Attainment.</i>
PRES.	scribitur (epistula), <i>The letter is written</i> <i>(writing).</i>	scripta est, <i>has been written,</i> <i>is written.</i>	scribitur, <i>is written.</i>
FUT.	scribētur, <i>The letter will be</i> <i>written (writing).</i>	scripta erit, <i>will have been,</i> <i>will be written.</i>	scribētur, <i>will be written.</i>
PAST.	scribēbātur, <i>The letter was writ-</i> <i>ten (writing).</i>	scripta erat. <i>had been written,</i> <i>was written.</i>	scripta est, <i>was written.</i>

REMARK.—The English passive is ambiguous. The same form is currently used for continuance, attainment, and completion. The context alone can decide. A convenient test is the substitution of the active.

*A letter was written :* { Continuance, *Some one was writing a letter.*  
 { Completion, *Some one had written a letter.*  
 { Attainment, *Some one wrote a letter.*

## Present Tense.

227. The Present Tense is used as in English of *that which is going on now* (Specific Present), and of statements *that apply to all time* (Universal Present).

### Specific Present :

**Auribus teneō lupum**, TER., Ph., 506 ; *I am holding a wolf by the ears.*

### Universal Present :

**Probitās laudātur et alget**, JUV., l. 74 ; *honesty is bepraised and freezes.*  
**Dulce et decōrum est prō patriā mori**, IL., O., III. 2, 13 ; *sweet and seemly 'tis to die for fatherland.*

So regularly of the quoted views of authors, the inscriptions of books, etc. :

**Dē iuvenum amōre scribit Alcaeus**, C., Tusc., IV. 33, 71 ; *Alcaeus writes concerning the love of youths.*

NOTES. — 1. The Specific Pr. is often to be translated by the English Progressive Present. The Universal Pr. is Aoristic, true at any point of time.

2. As continuance involves the notion of incompleteness the Pr. (see 233) is used of *attempted and intended action* (Present of Endeavor). But on account of the double use of the Pr. this signification is less prominent and less important than in the Impf. Do not mistake the Endeavor which lies in the *verb* for the Endeavor which lies in the *tense*.

**Periculum vitant**, C., Rosc. Am., i. 1 ; *they are trying to avoid danger.* In the example sometimes cited : **Quintus frāter Tūsculānum vēnditat**, C., Att., I. 14, 7 ; *Brother Quintus is 'trying to sell' his Tusculan villa* ; **vēnditāre** itself means *to offer for sale*. Translate : *intends to offer for sale*, if the notion lies in the Tense.

3. The Pr. when used with a negative often denotes *Resistance to Pressure* (233) ; this is, however, colloquial : **Tacē : nōn taceō**, PL., Cas., 8, 6 ; *keep quiet ! I won't.*

4. The ambiguity of our English passive often suggests other translations. Use and Went make Law ; hence the frequent inference that what is done is what ought to be done ; what is not done is not to be done : **Deus nec bene prōmeritis capitur, nec tangitur Irā**, LUCR., II. C. 1 ; *God is not to be incensed by good service, nor touched by anger.*

228. The Present Tense is used more rarely than in English *in anticipation of the future*, chiefly in compound sentences :

**Si vincimus, omnia tūta erunt**, S., C., 8, 9 ; *if we conquer (— shall conquer) everything will be safe.* **Antequam ad sententiam redeō dē mē pauca dicam**, C., Cat., IV. 10, 20 ; *before I return to the subject, I will*

say a few things of myself. *Exspectābō dum venit*, TER., *Fun.*, 206 ; *I will wait all the time that he is coming, or, until he comes.*

NOTES.—1. This construction is archaic and familiar. It is very common in the Comic Poets, very rare in CICERO and CAESAR, but more common later. Some usages have become phraseological, as *sī vivō, if I live, as I live.*

2. On the Pr. Indic. for the Deliberative Subjv., see 254, N. 2.

**229.** The Present Tense is used far more frequently than in English, as a lively representation of the past (Historical Present) :

*Cohortis incēdere iubet*, S., C., 60, 1 ; *he orders the cohorts to advance.*  
*Mātūrāt proficisci*, CAES., B. G., I. 7, 1 ; *he hastens to depart.*

REMARK.—*Dum*, while (yet), commonly takes a Pr., which is usually referred to this head. *Dum*, so long as, follows the ordinary law, 571, ff.

*Dum haec in colloquīō geruntur*, CAESARī nūntiātum est, CAES., B. G., I. 46, 1 ; *while these things were transacting in the conference, word was brought to Caesar.*

**230.** The Present is used in Latin of actions *that are continued into the present*, especially with *iam*, now ; *iam diū*, now for a long time ; *iam pridem*, now long since. In English we often translate by a Progressive Perfect.

(*Mithridātēs*) *annum iam tertium et vicēsimum rēgnat*, C., *Imp.*, 3, 7 ; *Mithridates has been reigning now going on twenty-three years.* *Liberrāre vōs ā Philippō iam diū magis vultis quam audētis*, L., XXXII. 21, 36 ; *you have this long time had the wish rather than (= though not) the courage to deliver yourselves from Philip.*

“How does your honor for this many a day?” SHAK., *Ham.*, III. I, 91.

NOTES.—1. The Pr. sometimes gives the resulting condition :

*Quī mortem nōn timet, māgnū is sibi praesidium ad beātā vītā comparat*, C., *Tusc.*, II. 1, 2 ; *he who fears not death gets for himself great warrant for a happy life.* (*Dicunt*) *vincere* (= *victōrem esse*) *bellō Rōmānum*, L., II. 7, 2.

2. More free is this usage in the poets, sometimes under Greek influence :

*Auctōre Phoebō gīgnor* (γίγνομαι = γόνος εἰμί) ; *haud generis pudet*. SEN., *Ag.*, 295.

VERGIL is especially prone to use a Pr. after a Past, denoting by the Past the *cause*, by the Pr. the *effect* : *Postquam altum tenuēre ratēs nec iam amplius ūllae adpārent terrae*, A., III. 192.

## Imperfect Tense.

**231.** The Imperfect Tense denotes *continuance in the past* : *pūgnābam*, *I was fighting.*

The Imperfect is employed to represent *manners, customs, situations* ; to describe and to particularise. A good example is TER., *And.*, 74 ff.



The Imperfect and the Historical Perfect serve to illustrate one another. The Imperfect dwells on the *process*; the Historical Perfect states the *result*. The Imperfect counts out the *items*; the Historical Perfect gives the *sum*. A good example is NEP., II. 1, 3.

232. The two tenses are often so combined that the general statement is given by the Historical Perfect, the particulars of the action by the Imperfect :

(Verrēs) in forum vēnit ; ardēbant oculi ; tōtō ex ōre crūdēlitās ēminēbat, C., *Verr.*, v. 62, 161 ; *Verrēs came into the forum, his eyes were blazing, cruelty was standing out from his whole countenance.*

233. The Imperfect is used of *attempted* and *interrupted*, *intended* and *expected* actions (*Imperfect of Endeavor*). It is the Tense of *Disappointment* and (with the negative) of *Resistance to Pressure*. (Mere negation is regularly Perfect.)

Cūriam relinquēbat, Tac., *Ann.*, II. 34, 1 ; *he was for leaving the senate-house.* [Lēx] abrogābātur, Cf. L., XXXIV. 1, 7 ; *the law was to be abrogated.* Simul ostendēbātur (an attempt was made to show) quōmodo cōstitūtiōnem reperiri oportēret, [C.] *ad Her.*, II. 1, 2. Dicēbat (positive) melius quam scripsit (negative) Hortēnsius, C., *Or.*, 38, 132 ; *Hortensius spoke better than he wrote.* Aditum nōn dabat, NEP., IV. 3, 3 ; *he would not grant access (dedit, did not).* See also MART., XI. 105.

NOTES.—1. The Impf. as the Tense of Evolution is a Tense of Vision. But in English, Impf. and Hist. Pf. coincide ; hence the various translations to put the reader in the place of the spectator.

2. The continuance is in the mind of the narrator ; it has nothing to do with the absolute duration of the action. The mind may dwell on a rapid action or hurry over a slow one. With definite numbers, however large, the Hist. Pf. must be used, unless there is a notion of continuance into another stage (overlapping).

(Gorgiās) centum et novem vixit annōs, QUINT., III. 1, 9 ; *Gorgias lived one hundred and nine years.* Biennium ibi perpetuom misera illum tuli, TER., *Hev.*, 87 ; *I bore him there—poor me!—for two long years together.*

3. As the Tense of Disappointment, the Impf. is occasionally used, as in Greek, to express a startling appreciation of the real state of things (*Imperfect of Awakening*). Greek influence is not unlikely.

Tū aderās, TER., *Ph.* 828 ; (so it turns out that) *you were here* (all the time). Peream male si nōn optimum erat, II., *S.*, II. 1, 6 ; *perdition catch me if that was not the best course (after all).*

Hence the modal use of *adēbam* and *poteram* (254, R. 2).

234. The Imperfect is used as the English Pluperfect, which often takes a progressive translation ; especially with *iam*, *iam diu*, *iam dudum*,



**Iam** dūdum tibi adversābar, PL., *Men.*, 420 ; *I had long been opposing you.* (**Archias**) domicilium Rōmae multōs iam annōs [habēbat], Cf. C., *Arch.*, 4, 7 ; *Archias had been domiciled at Rome now these many years.*

REMARK.—As the Hist. Pr. is used in lively narrative, so the Hist. Inf. is used in lively description, parallel with the Imperfect (647).

## Perfect Tense.

The Perfect Tense has two distinct uses :

1. Pure Perfect.
2. Historical Perfect (Aorist).

### 1. PURE PERFECT.

**235.** The Pure Perfect Tense expresses completion in the Present, and hence is sometimes called the Present Perfect.

1. The Pure Perfect differs from the Historical Perfect, in that the Pure Perfect gives from the point of view of the Present an instantaneous view of the development of an action from its origin in the Past to its completion in the Present, that is, it looks at both ends of an action, and the time between is regarded as a Present. The Historical Perfect obliterates the intervening time and contracts beginning and end into one point in the Past.

2. An intermediate usage is that in which the Perfect denotes an action in the Past (Historical), whose effect is still in force (Pure)

**236.** Accordingly, the Perfect is used :

1. Of an action that is now over and gone.

**Viximus**, C., *Fam.*, XIV. 4, 5 ; *we have lived* (life for us has been). **Filium ūnicum habeo**, **immo habui**, TER., *Heaut.*, 94 ; *I have an only son—nay, have had an only son.* **Tempora quid faciunt : hanc volo, tē volui**, MART., VI. 40, 4 ; *what difference times make !* (Time is) *I want her*, (Time has been) *I wanted you.*

2. Far more frequently of the present result of a more remote action (*resulting condition*) :

**Equum et mūlum Brundisiī tibi reliquī**, C., *Fam.*, XVI. 9, 3 ; *I have left a horse and mule for you at Brundisium*—(they are still there). **Perdidi spem quā mē oblectābam**, PL., *Rud.*, 222 ; *I've lost the hope with which I entertained myself.* **Actumst, peristī**, TER., *Eun.*, 54 ; *it is all over ; you're undone.*

REMARK.—The Pure Pf. is often translated by the English Present : **nōvī**, *I have become acquainted with, I know* ; **meminī**, *I have recalled, I remember* ; **odī**, *I have conceived a hatred of, I hate* ; **cōnsuēvī**, *I have made it a rule, I am accustomed, etc.*

**Ōdērunt hilarem tristēs tristemque iocōsi**, II., *Ep.*, i. 18. 89; *the long-faced hate the lively man, the jokers hate the long-faced man.*

But the Aorist force is sometimes found :

**Tacē**, inquit, ante hōc nōvi quam tū nātus es, **PHAED.**, v. 9. 4; *silence, quoth he, I knew this ere that you were born.*

NOTE. The Pl. is used of that which has been and shall be (Sententious or Gnomie Perfect, 242, N. 1), but usually in poetry, from CATULLUS on, and frequently with an indefinite adjective or adverb of number or a negative. It is seldom an Aorist (Greek).

**Ēvertēre domōs tōtās optantibus ipsis dī facilēs**, **JUV.**, x. 7; *whole houses at the masters' own request the (too) complant gods o'ertura.* **Nēmo repente fuit turpissimus**, **JUV.**, ii. 83; *none of a sudden (hath ever) reach(ed) the depth of baseness.*

237. As the Present stands for the Future, so the Perfect stands for the Future Perfect.

(Brūtus) **si cōservātus erit, vicimus**, **C.**, *Fam.*, xii. 6. 2; *Brutus !—if HE is saved, we are victorious, we (shall) have gained the victory.*

238. **Habeō** or **teneō**, *I hold, I have*, with the Accusative of the Perfect Participle Passive, is not a mere circumlocution for the Perfect, but lays peculiar stress on the *maintenance of the result*.

**Habeō statūtum**, **Cf. C.**, *Verr.*, iii. 41. 95; *I have resolved, and hold to my resolution.* **Perspectum habeō**, **Cf. C.**, *Fam.*, iii. 10. 7; *I have perceived, and I have full insight.* **Excūsātum habeās mē rogo, cēno domi**, **MART.**, ii. 79. 2; *I pray you have me excused, I dine at home.*

## 2. HISTORICAL PERFECT.

239. The Historical or Indefinite Perfect (Aorist) states a *past action, without reference to its duration, simply as a thing attained*.

**Milō domum vēnit, calceōs et vestimenta mūtāvit, paulisper commorātus est**, **C.**, *Mil.*, 10. 28; *Milo came home, changed shoes and garments, tarried a little while.* **Gorgiās centum et novem vixit annōs**, **QUINT.**, iii. 1. 9 (233. N. 2). **Vēni, vidī, vici**, **SUT.**, *Jul.*, 37; *I came, saw, overcame.*

NOTE. The Pl. as the "short hand" for the Plapf., is mainly post-Ciceronian, but begins with CAESAR. It is never common: **superiōribus diēbus nōna Caesaris legiō castra eō locō posuit**, **CAES.**, *B. C.*, iii. 66. 2.

240. The Historical Perfect is the great narrative tense of the Latin language, and is best studied in long connected passages, and by careful comparison with the Imperfect. See **C.**, *Off.*, iii. 27. 100; *Tusc.*, i. 2. 4.

## Pluperfect Tense.

**241.** The Pluperfect denotes *Completion in the Past*, and is used of an action that was completed before another was begun. It is, so to speak, the Perfect of the Imperfect. Hence it is used :

1. Of an action *just concluded* in the past.

**Modo Caesarem rēgnantem viderāmus**, C., *Ph.*, II. 42, 108 ; *we had just seen Caesar on the throne.*

2. Of an action that was *over and gone*.

**Fuerat inimicus**, C., *Red. in Sen.*, 10, 26 ; *he had been my enemy.*

3. Of a *resulting condition* in the past.

**Massiliēnsēs portās Caesarī clausērāt**, CAES., *B.C.*, I. 34, 4 ; *the Marseillse had shut their gates against Caesar.* (*Their gates were shut.*)

REMARK.—When the Pf. of Resulting Condition is translated by an English Pr. (236, 2, R.), the Plupf. is translated by an English Imperfect : **nōveram**, *I had become acquainted with, I knew* ; **memineram**, *I remembered* ; **ōderam**, *I hated* ; **cōnsuēveram**, *I was accustomed, etc.*

NOTES.—1. Not unfrequently in early Latin, rarely in classical prose, but more often in the poets, the Plupf. seems to be used as an Aorist ; so very often **dixerat** : **Nil equidem tibi abstulī**. EV. **At illud quod tibi abstulerās cedo**, PL., *Aul.*, 635. **Nōn sum ego quī fueram**, PROP., I. 12, 11. See OV., *Tr.*, III. 11, 25.

2. The Periphrastic Plupf. with **habēō** corresponds to the Perfect (238). It is rare, and shows two forms, one with the Imperfect and one with the Plupf., the latter being post-classical.

**Equitātum, quem ex omnī prōvinciā coāctum habēbat, praemittit**, CAES., *B.G.*, I. 15, 1. **Multōrum aurēs illa lingua attonitās habuerat**, VAL. M., III. 3.

## Future Tense.

**242.** The Future Tense denotes *Continuance in the Future* : **scribam**, *I shall be writing.*

The Future Tense is also used to express indefinite action in the Future : **scribam**, *I shall write.*

REMARKS.—1. In subordinate clauses the Latin language is more exact than the English in the expression of future relations.

**Dōnec eris fēlix, multōs numerābis amīcōs**, OV., *Tr.*, I. 9, 5 ; *so long as you shall be (are) happy, you will count many friends.*

2. Observe especially the verbs **volō**, *I will*, and **possum**, *I can*.

**Ōdero sī poterō ; sī nōn, invitus amābō**, OV., *Am.*, III. 11, 35 ; *I will hate if I shall be able (can) ; if not, I shall love against my will.* **Quī**

**adipisci vĕram glōriam volet, iūstitiæ fungātur officiis, C., Off., II. 13, 43 ;** *whoso shall wish to obtain true glory, let him discharge the calls of justice.*

3. The Fut. is often used in conclusions, especially in CICERO :

**Sunt illa sapientis ; aberit igitur ā sapiente aegritūdō, C., Tus., III. 8, 18.**

NOTES.—1. The Fut. is used sometimes as a gnomic (236, N.) tense :

**Haut facul fēmina inveniētur bona, AFR., 7 ; uncti (= hardly) a woman shall be found that's good. Et tremet sapiēns et dolēbit, et expallēscet, SEN., E.M., 71, 29.**

2. Observe the (principally comic) use of the Future to indicate likelihood :

**Verbum hercle hōc vĕrum erit, TER., Eun., 732 ; this will be God's own truth.**

243. The Future is used in an imperative sense, as in English, chiefly in familiar language.

**Tū nihil dicēs, II., A.P., 385 ; you will (are to) say nothing (do you say nothing). Cum volet accōdēs, cum tē vitābit abibis, Ov., A.A., II. 529 ; when she wants you, approach ; and when she avoids you, begone, sir. Nōn mē appellābis, si sapis, PL., Most., 515 ; see C., Fam., v. 12, 10. Compare ūtētur and ūtātur, CORN., II. 3, 5.**

Similar is the Future in Asseverations (comic).

**Ita mē amābit Iūppiter, PL., Trin., 447 ; so help me God !**

### Future Perfect Tense.

244. The Future Perfect is the Perfect, both Pure and Historical, transferred to the future, and embraces both *completion* and *attainment* : **fēcerō, TER., Ph., 882 ; I shall have done it, or I shall do it (once for all) ; viderō, TER., Ad., 538 ; I will see to it ; prōfēcerit, C., Fin., III. 4, 14 ; it will prove profitable.**

REMARKS.—1. Hence, when the Pf. is used as a Pr., the Fut. Pf. is used as a Future : **nōverō, I shall know ; cōsuēverō, I shall be accustomed ; ōdero, si poterō, Ov., Am., III. 11, 35 (242, R. 2).**

2. In subordinate sentences, the Latin language is more exact than the English in the use of the Fut. Perfect ; hence, when one action precedes another in the future, the action that precedes is expressed by the Fut. Perfect.

**Qui prior strinxerit ferrum, eius victōria erit, L., XXIV. 38, 5 ; who first draws the sword, his shall be the victory.**

3. The Fut. Pf. is frequently used in **volō, I will ; nōlō, I will not ; possum, I can ; licet, it is left free ; libet, it is agreeable ; placet, it is the pleasure** ; whereas the English idiom familiarly employs the Present.

**Si potuerō, faciam vōbis satis, C., Br., 5, 21 ; if I can, I shall satisfy you.**

4. The Fut. Pf. in both clauses denotes simultaneous accomplishment or attainment ; one action involves the other.

**Qui Antōnium oppresserit, is bellum cōnfecerit**, C., *Fam.*, x. 19, 2 ; *he who shall have crushed (crushes) Antony, will have finished (will finish) the war.* [**Ea**] **vitia quī fūgerit, is omnia ferē vitia vitāverit**, C., *Or.*, 69, 231 ; *he who shall have escaped these faults, will have avoided almost all faults.*

Sometimes, however, the first seems to denote *antecedence*, the second *finality*. An Impv. is often used in the first clause.

**Immūtā (verbōrum collocātiōnem), perierit tōta rēs**, C., *Or.*, 70, 232 ; *change the arrangement of the words, the whole thing falls dead.*

NOTES.—1. The independent use of the Fut. Pf. is characteristic of Comedy, but occurs occasionally later in familiar style. Sometimes it gives an air of positiveness :

**Bene merentī bene prōfuerit, male merentī pār erit**, PL., *Capt.*, 315 ; *good desert shall have good issue ; ill desert shall have its due.* **Ego crās hīc erō: crās habuerō, uxor, ego tamen convīvium**, PL., *Cas.*, 786. **Nūquam facilius hanc miserrimam vītam vel sustentābō vel abiēcerō**, C., *Att.*, III. 19, 1. See also C., *Ac.*, II. 44, 135 ; L., I. 58, 10.

2. The Periphrastic Fut. Pf. with **habeō** is rare. It corresponds to the Pf. and Pluperfect.

**Quod sī fēcerīs, mē māximō beneficiō dēvinctum habēbis**, C., *Att.*, XVI. 16 B. 9.

245. As the Future is used as an Imperative, so the Future Perfect approaches the Imperative.

**Dē tē tū viderīs ; ego dē mē ipse profitēbor**, C., *Ph.*, II. 46, 118 ; *do you see to yourself ; I myself will define my position.*

NOTE.—This is confined in CICERO almost entirely to **viderīs**, which is suspiciously like the familiar Greek future  $\delta\psi\epsilon\iota$ , and is used in the same way.

## Periphrastic Tenses.

246. The Periphrastic Tenses are formed by combining the various tenses of **esse**, *to be*, with participles and verbal adjectives. See 129.

### I. PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.

247. The Periphrastic Tenses of the Active are chiefly combinations of **esse** and its forms with the so-called Future Participle Active. The Future Participle is a verbal adjective denoting *capability* and *tendency*. Compare **amātor** and **amātūrus**. The translation is very various :

1. **Scriptūrus sum**, *I am about to write, I am to write, I purpose to write, I am likely to write.*

2. **Scriptūrus eram**, *I was about to write, etc.*



3. **Scriptūrus fui**, *I have been or was about to write* (often = *I should have written*).

4. **Scriptūrus fueram**, *I had been about to write, etc.*

5. **Scriptūrus erō**, *I shall be about to write, etc.*

6. **Scriptūrus fuerō**, *I shall have made up my mind to write, etc.* (of course very rare).

1. **Fiet illud quod futurum est**, C., *Div.*, II. 8, 21; *what is to be, will be*.

2. **[Rēx] nōn interfutūrus nāvālī certāminī erat**, L., XXXVI. 43, 9; *the king did not intend to be present at the naval combat*.

3. **Fascis ipsi ad mē delātūrī fuērunt**, C., *Ph.*, XIV. 6, 15; *they themselves were ready to tender the fasces to me*. **Deditōs ūltimis cruciātibus adfectūrī fuērunt**, L., XXI. 44, 4; *they would have put the surrendered to extreme tortures*.

4. **Māior Rōmānōrum grātia fuit quam quanta futūra Carthāginiēnsium fuerat**, L., XXII. 22, 19; *the Romans' credit for this was greater than the Carthaginians' would have been*.

5. **Eōrum apud quōs aget aut erit āctūrus, mentēs sēnsūsque dēgustet**, C., *Or.*, I. 52, 223; *he must taste-and-test the state of mind of those before whom he will plead or will have to plead*.

6. **(Sapiēns) nōn vivet, sī fuerit sine homine victūrus**, SEN., *E. M.*, 9, 17; *The wise man will not continue to live, if he finds that he is to live without human society*. (The only example cited, and that doubtful.)

REMARKS.—1. The forms with **sum**, **eram**, and the corresponding Subjv. forms with **sim**, **essem**, are much more common than those with **fui**, *etc.*, probably for euphonic reasons.

2. The Subjv. and Inf. **scriptūrus sim**, **essem**, **fuerim**, **fuissem**, **scriptūrum esse**, **fuisse**, are of great importance in subordinate clauses. (656.)

NOTES.—1. The use of **forem** for **essem** appears first in SALUST., but is not uncommon in LILY., and occurs sporadically later. **Fore** for **esse** is post classical.

**Dicit sē vēnisse quaesitum pācem an bellum agitātūrus foret**, S., *Inq.*, 109, 2.

2. The periphrastic use of the Pr. Part. with forms of **esse** is rare, and in most cases doubtful, as the question always arises whether the Part. is not rather a virtual substantive or adjective. So with the not uncommon **ut sis sciēns** of the Comic Poets. The effect of this periphrasis is to emphasise the continuance.

**Nēmō umquam tam suī dēspiciēns** (*despiser of self, self-depreciator*) **fuit quin spērāret melius sē posse dicere**, C., *Or.*, II. 89, 364.

## II. PERIPHRASTIC TENSES OF THE PASSIVE.

### A.—Of Future Relations.

248. The periphrases **futurum esse** (more often **fore**) **ut**, (*that*) *it is to be that*, and **futurum fuisse ut**, (*that*) *it was to be that*, with the Subjunctive, are very commonly used to take the place of the Future Infinitive active; necessarily so



when the verb forms no Future Participle. In the passive they are more common than the Supine with *iri*.

**Spērō fore ut contingat id nōbis**, C., *Tusc.*, I. 34, 82 ; *I hope that we shall have that good fortune.* In **fātis scriptum Vēientēs** [**habēbant**] **fore ut brevī ā Gallis Rōma caperētur**, C., *Div.*, I. 44, 100 ; *the Veientes had it written down in their prophetic books that Rome would shortly be taken by the Gauls.*

REMARK.—**Posse**, *to be able*, and **velle**, *to will*, on account of their future sense, do not require a periphrasis. In the absence of periphrastic forms, the forms of **posse** are often used instead. (656, R.)

NOTES.—1. These periphrases do not occur in early Latin.

2. **Fore ut** is used chiefly with Pr. and Impf. Subjv. ; Pf. and Plupf. are very rare. (C., *Att.*, XVI. 16 E. 16.)

3. The form **futūrum fuisse ut** is used with passive and Supineless verbs, to express the dependent apodosis of an unreal conditional sentence.

**Nisi eō ipsō tempore nūtiū dē Caesaris victoriā essent allātī, existimābant plērique futūrum fuisse utī (oppidum) amitterētur**, CAES., *B. C.*, III. 101, 3. (656, 2.)

4. The Subjv. forms **futūrum sit, esset, fuerit ut**, are used in the grammars to supply the periphrastic Subjv. of passive and Supineless verbs (see 515, R. 2). Warrant in real usage is scarce.

**An utique futūrum sit ut Carthāginem superent Rōmānī?** QUINT. III. 8, 17 (not merely periphrastic).

249. In **eō est**, *it is on the point*, } **ut**, *that (of)*, with  
**erat**, } *was* (Impersonal), }  
**fuit**, }

In **eō [erat] ut (Pausaniās) comprehenderētur**, NEP., IV. 5, 1 ; *it was on the point that Pausanias should be (P. was on the point of being) arrested.*

NOTE.—This phrase occurs in NEPOS and LIVY, seldom in earlier writers.

## B.—Of Past Relations.

250. The Perfect Participle passive is used in combination with **sum**, *I am*, and **fui**, *I have been, I was*, to express the Pure Perfect and Historical Perfect of the Passive Voice. **Eram**, *I was*, and **fueram**, *I had been*, stand for the Pluperfect ; and **erō**, *I shall be*, and **fuerō**, *I shall have been*, for the Future Perfect.

REMARKS.—1. **Fui** is the favorite form when the participle is frequently used as an adjective : **convivium exornātum fuit**, *the banquet was furnished forth* ; **fui** is the necessary form when the Pf. denotes that the action is over and gone ; **amātus fui**, *I have been loved* (but I

am loved no longer). The same principle applies to **fueram** and **fuerō**, though not so regularly.

**Simulācrum ē marmore in sepulcrō positum fuit; hōc quīdam homō nōbilis dēportāvit**, C., *Dom.*, 43, 111; *a marble effigy was deposited in the tomb; a certain man of rank has carried it off*. **Arma quae fixa in parietibus fuerant, ea sunt humi inventa**, C., *Div.*, I, 34, 74; *the arms which had been fastened to the walls were found on the ground*. **Quod tibi fuerit persuāsum, huic erit persuāsum**, C., *Rosc. Com.*, I, 3; *what is (shall have proved) acceptable to you will be acceptable to him*.

2. To be distinguished is that use of the PT. where each element has its full force, the Participle being treated as an adjective. In this case the tense is not past.

**Gallia est omnis dīvisa in partēs trēs**, CAES., *B.G.*, I, 1.

NOTES. 1. The **fui**, etc., forms are rarely found in CICERO, never in CAESAR, but are characteristic of LIVY and SALLUST.

2. **Forem** for **essem** is common in the Comic Poets, occurs twice in CICERO's letters (*Att.*, VII, 21, 2; *N.*, 14, 3), never in CAESAR, but in LIVY and NEPOS is very common, and practically synonymous with **essem**.

### C. Periphrastic Conjugation—Passive Voice.

251. 1. The combination of the Tenses of **esse**, *to be*, with the Gerundive (verbal in **-ndus**), is called the Periphrastic Conjugation of the Passive, and follows the laws of the simple conjugation (129). The idea expressed is usually one of *necessity*.

**Praepōnenda [est] divitiis glōria**, C., *Top.*, 22, 84; *glory is to be preferred to riches*.

2. According to the rule (217) the Gerundive of intransitive verbs can be used only in the Impersonal form :

**Parcendum est victis**, *The vanquished must be spared*.

NOTES.—1. The Gerundive is a verbal adjective, which produces the effect of a Progressive Participle. Whenever a participle is used as a predicate it becomes characteristic, and good for all time. As **amāns** not only = **qui amat**, but also = **qui amet**, so **amandus** = **qui amētur**. Compare 438, R.

2. **Forem** for **essem** is post classical and comparatively uncommon.

### TENSES IN LETTERS.

252. The Roman letter-writer not unfrequently puts himself in the position of the receiver, more especially at the beginning and at the end of the letter, often in the phrase **Nihil erat (habēbam) quod scriberem**, *I have nothing to write*. This permutation of tenses is never kept up long, and applies only to temporary situations, never to general statements.

## Table of Permutations.

scribō,	<i>I am writing,</i>	becomes	scribēbam.
	<i>I write,</i>	“	scripsi.
scripsi,	<i>I have written,</i>	“	scripseram.
	<i>I wrote,</i>	“	scripseram.
	or remains unchanged.		
scribam,	<i>I shall write,</i>	“	scripturus eram.

The adverbial designations of time remain unchanged—or

heri,	<i>yesterday,</i>	becomes	pridiē.
hodiē,	<i>to-day,</i>	“	quō diē hās litterās dedī, dabam.
crās,	<i>to-morrow,</i>	“	posterō diē, postridiē.
nunc,	<i>now,</i>	“	tum.

Formiās mē continuō recipere cōgitābam, C., *Att.*, VII. 15, 3 ; *I am thinking of retiring forthwith to Formiæ.* Cum mihi dīxisset Caecilius puerum sē Rōmam mittere, haec scripsi raptim, C., *Att.*, II. 9, 1 ; *as Caecilius has told me that he is sending a servant to Rome, I write in a hurry.* (Litterās) eram datūrus postridiē ei quī mihi primus obviam vēnisset, C., *Att.*, II. 12, 4 ; *I will give the letter to-morrow to the first man that comes my way.*

NOTE.—CICERO is much more consistent in this tense-shifting than PLINY ; and exceptions are not numerous proportionally : Ego etsi nihil habeo quod ad te scribam, scribō tamen quia tecum loqui video, C., *Att.*, XII. 53.

## MOODS.

**253.** Mood signifies manner. The mood of a verb signifies the manner in which the predicate is said of the subject.

There are three moods in Latin :

1. The Indicative.
2. The Subjunctive.
3. The Imperative.

NOTE.—The Infinitive form of the verb is generally, but improperly, called a mood.

## The Indicative Mood.

**254.** The Indicative Mood represents the predicate *as a reality*. It is sometimes called the Declarative Mood, as the mood of direct assertion.

The use of the Latin Indicative differs little from the English.

REMARKS.—I. The Latin language expresses *possibility* and *power*, *obligation* and *necessity*, and abstract relations generally, as *facts* ; whereas, our translation often *implies the failure to realise*. Such ex-

pressions are : *dēbeō*, *I ought, it is my duty* ; *oportet*, *it behooves* ; *necesse est*, *it is absolutely necessary* ; *possum*, *I can, I have it in my power* ; *convenit*, *it is fitting* ; *pār, aequom est*, *it is fair* ; *infinitum*, *endless* ; *difficile*, *hard to do* ; *longum*, *tedious* ; and many others ; also the Indic. form of the passive Periphrastic Conjugation. Observe the difference between the use of the Inf. in Eng. and in Latin after past tenses of *dēbeō*, *possum*, *oportet*, etc.

*Possum persequi permulta oblectāmenta rērum rūsticārum*, C., *Cat. M.*, 16, 55 ; *I might rehearse very many delights of country life*. *Longum est persequi utilitatēs asinōrum*, C., *N. D.*, 11. 64, 159 ; *it would be tedious to rehearse the useful qualities of asses* (I will not do it). *Ad mortem tē dūci oportēbat*, C., *Cat.*, 1. 1, 2 ; *it behooved you to be* (you ought to have been) *led to execution* (you were not). *Volumnia dēbuit in tē officiōsior esse, et id ipsum, quod fēcit, potuit diligentius facere*, C., *Fam.*, xiv. 16 ; *it was Volumnia's duty to be* (V. ought to have been) *more attentive to you* ; and the little she did do, she had it in her power to do (she might have done) *more carefully*. *Quae condiciō nōn accipienda fuit potius quam relinquenda patria?* C., *Att.*, viii. 3, 3 ; *what terms ought not to have been accepted in preference to leaving thy country?* [*Eum*] *vivum illinc exire non oportuerat*, C., *Mur.*, 25, 51 ; *he ought never to have gone out thence alive*.

The Pf. and Plupf. always refer to a special case.

2. The Impf. as the Tense of Disappointment is sometimes used in these verbs to denote opposition to a present state of things : *dēbēbam*, *I ought* (but do not) ; *poterās*, *you could* (but do not). These may be considered as conditionals in disguise. (See R. 3.)

*Poteram morbos appellāre, sed nōn conveniret ad omnia*, C., *Fin.*, iii. 10, 35 ; *I might translate* (that Greek word) "*diseases*," *but that would not suit all the cases* (*poteram si conveniret*). *At poterās, inquis, melius mala ferre silendō*, Ov., *Tr.*, v. 1, 49 ; "*But*," you say, "*you could* (you do not) *bear your misfortunes better by keeping silent*" (*poterās si silērēs*).

3. The Indic. is sometimes used in the leading clause of conditional sentences (the Apodosis), thereby implying the certainty of the result, had it not been for the interruption. The Indic. clause generally precedes, which is sufficient to show the rhetorical character of the construction.

With the Impf. the action is often really begun :

*Lābēbar longius, nisi mē retinuissem*, C., *Leg.*, 1. 19, 52 ; *I was letting myself go on* (should have let myself go on) *too far, had I not checked myself*. *Omninō supervacua erat doctrīna, si nātūra sufficeret*, QUINT., 11. 8, 8 ; *training were wholly superfluous, did nature suffice*. *Praeclārē vicerāmus, nisi Lepidus recēpisset Antōnium*, C., *Fam.*, xii. 10, 3 ; *we had* (should have) *gained a brilliant victory, had not Lepidus received Antony*.

In all these sentences the English idiom requires the Subjv., which is disguised by coinciding with the Indic. in form, except in "were."

4. In general relative expressions, such as the double formations, *quisquis*, *no matter who*, *quotquot*, *no matter how many*, and all forms in *-cumque*, *-ever*, the Indic. is employed in classical Latin where we may use in English a Subjv. or its equivalent : *quisquis est*, *no matter who he is, be, may be* ; *quālecumque est*, *whatever sort of thing it is, be, may be*.

*Quidquid id est, timeō Danaōs et dōna ferentēs*, V., A., II. 49 ; *whatever it (may) be, I fear the Danai even when they bring presents*.

CICERO has occasional exceptions (Ideal Second Person or by attraction) to this rule, and later writers, partly under Greek influence, frequently violate it. Exceptions in early Latin are not common.

NOTES.—1. CICERO introduces (*nōn*) *putāram*, "*I should (not) have thought so*," and *mālueram*, *I could have preferred*. LUCAN and TACITUS alone imitate the latter ; the former was never followed.

*Mālueram, quod erat susceptum ab illis, silentiō trānsiri*, C., *Att.*, II. 19, 3. *Feriam tua viscera, Māgne* ; *mālueram socerī*, LUCAN, VIII. 521.

2. In early Latin, occasionally in the more familiar writings of CICERO, and here and there later we find the Pr. Indic. (in early Latin occasionally the Fut.) used in place of the Subjv. in the Deliberative Question.

*Compressān palmā an porrēctā feriō ?* PL., *Cas.*, 405. *Advolōne an maneō ?* C., *Att.*, XIII. 40, 2. *Quoi dōnō lepidum novom libellum*, CAT., I. 1.

## Subjunctive Mood.

**255.** The Subjunctive Mood represents the predicate *as an idea*, as something merely conceived in the mind (abstracts from reality).

REMARK.—The Latin Subjv. is often translated into English by the auxiliary verbs *may*, *can*, *must*, *might*, *could*, *would*, *should*. When these verbs have their full signification of *possibility* and *power*, *obligation* and *necessity*, they are represented in Latin by the corresponding verbs, thus : *may*, *can*, *might*, *could* by the forms of *posse*, *to be able*, *licet*, *it is left free* ; *will* and *would* by *velle*, *to will*, *to be willing* ; *must*, by *dēbeō* or *oportet* (of moral obligation), by *necesse est* (of absolute obligation).

*Nostrās iniūriās nec potest nec possit alius ulcisci quam vōs*, L., XXIX. 18, 18 ; *our wrongs no other than you has the power or can well have the power to avenge.\**

NOTE.—In the Latin Subjv. are combined two moods, the Subjv. proper, and the Optative, sometimes distinguished as the moods of the *will* and the *wish*. This fusion has rendered it difficult to define the fundamental conceptions of certain constructions.

---

\* In this unique passage *nec potest* denies with the head, *nec possit* refuses to believe with the heart.



**256. 1.** The realisation of the idea may be *in suspense*, or it may be *beyond control*. The first, or purely Ideal Subjunctive, is represented by the Present and Perfect Tenses; the second, or Unreal, is represented by the Imperfect and Pluperfect.

NOTES. 1. The Subj., as the name implies (*subiungō, I subjoin*), is largely used in dependent sentences, and will be treated at length in that connection.

2. The following modifications of the above principles must be carefully observed:

(a) The Romans, in lively discourse, often represent the unreal as ideal, that which is beyond control as still in suspense. (506, R. 1.)

(b) In transfers to the past, the Impf. represents the Pr., and the Plupf. the Pf. Subjunctive. (510.)

2. The idea may be a *view*, or a *wish*. In the first case the Subjunctive is said to be Potential, in the second case Optative. The Potential Subjunctive is nearer the Indicative, from which it differs in tone; the Optative Subjunctive is nearer the Imperative, for which it is often used.

### Potential Subjunctive.

**257. 1.** The Potential Subjunctive represents the opinion of the speaker as an opinion. The tone varies from vague surmise to moral certainty, from “may” and “might” to “must.” The negative is the negative of the Indicative, *nōn*.

2. The Potential of the Present or Future is the Present or Perfect Subjunctive. The verification is in suspense, and so future; the action may be present or future: with Perfect sometimes past.

*Velim, I should wish; nōlim, I should be unwilling; mālim, I should prefer; dicās, you would say; crēdās, you would believe, you must believe; dicat, dixerit aliquis, some one may undertake to say, go so far as to say.*

*Caedi discipulōs minimē velim. QUINT., l. 3, 13; I should by no means like pupils to be flogged. Tū Platōnem nec nimis valdē nec nimis saepe laudāveris, C., Leg., III. 1, 1; you can't praise Plato too much nor too often.*

NOTES. 1. The Pf. Subj. as a Potential seems to have been very rare in early Latin. CICERO extended the usage slightly and employed more persons; thus First Person Pl. and Second Sing. occur first in CICERO. From CICERO's time the usage spreads, perhaps under the influence of the Greek Aorist. It was always rare with Deponents and Passives. Another view regards this *dixerit* as a Fut. Pf. Indicative.

2. The Potential Subj. is sometimes explained by the ellipsis of an Ideal or of an



**Unreal Conditional Protasis.** But the free Potential Subjv. differs from an elliptical conditional sentence in the absence of definite ellipsis, and hence of definite translation. Compare the two sentences above with :

**Eum qui palam est adversarius facile cavendō (sī caveās) vitāre possis,** C., *Verr.*, I. 15, 39 ; *an open adversary you can readily avoid by caution (if you are cautious).* **Nil ego contulerim iucundō sānus (= dum sānus erō) amicō,** II., *S.*, I. 5, 44 ; *there is naught I should compare to an agreeable friend, while I am in my sound senses.*

3. The Potential Subjv., as a modified form of the Indic., is often found where the Indic. would be the regular construction. So after **quanquam** (607, R. 1).

**258.** The Potential of the Past is the Imperfect Subjunctive, chiefly in the Ideal Second Person, an imaginary "you."

**Crēderēs victōs,** L., II. 43, 9 ; *you would, might, have thought them beaten.* **Haud facile discernerēs utrum Hannibal imperātōrī an exercitui cārīor esset,** L., XXI. 4, 3 ; *not readily could you have decided whether Hannibal was dearer to general or to army.* **Mirārētur qui tum cerneret,** L., XXXIV. 9, 4 ; *any one who saw it then must have been astonished.*

**Vellem,** *I should have wished* ; **nōllem,** *I should have been unwilling* ; **māllem,** *I should have preferred* (it is too late).

NOTES.—1. With **vellem, nōllem, māllem**, the inference points to non-fulfilment of the wish in the Present (261, R.) ; with other words there is no such inference.

2. The Unreal of the Present and the Ideal of the Past coincide. What is unreal of a real person is simply ideal of an imaginary person. The Impf. is used as the tense of Description.

The Aoristic Pf. Subjv. and the Plupf. Subjv. are rarely used as the Ideal of the Past:

**Hī ambō saltūs ad Libuōs Gallōs dēdūxerint** (var. **dēdūxissent**), L., XXI. 38, 7. **Eā quā minimum crēdidisset** (cōsul) **resistēbant hostēs,** L., XXXII. 17, 4.

**259.** The Mood of the Question is the Mood of the expected or anticipated answer (462). Hence the Potential Subjunctive is used in questions which serve to convey a negative opinion on the part of the speaker.

**Quis dubitet (= nēmō dubitet) quī in virtūte dīvitiasint ?** C., *Parad.*, VI. 2, 48 ; *who can doubt that true wealth consists in virtue ?* (No one.)

**Quis tulerit Gracchōs dē sēditione querentēs ?** JUV., II. 24 ; *who could bear the Gracchi complaining of rebellion ?* (No one.) **Apud exercitum fueris ?** C., *Mur.*, 9, 21 ; *can you have been with the army ?* **Hōc tantum bellum quis umquam arbitrārētur ab ūnō imperātōre cōfici posse ?** C., *Imp.*, II. 31 ; *who would, could, should have thought that this great war could be brought to a close by one general ?*

### Optative Subjunctive.

**260.** The Subjunctive is used as an *Optative* or *wishing* mood.

The regular negative is **nē**. **Nōn** is used chiefly to negative a single word ; but very rarely in the classical period. A second wish may be added by **neque** or **nec** (regularly if a positive wish precedes), but this is also rare in the classical period, and is denied for CAESAR.

The Pr. and Pf. Subjv. are used *when the decision is in suspense*, no matter how extravagant the wish ; the Impf. and Plupf. are used *when the decision is adverse*. The Pf. is rare and old.

**Stet haec urbs**, C., *Mil.*, 34, 93 ; *may this city continue to stand !* **Quod dī ōmen āvertant**, C., *Ph.*, III. 14, 35 ; *which omen may the gods avert.* **Ita dī faxint** (= **fēcerint**), PL., *Poen.*, 911 ; *the gods grant it !* **Nē istūc Iūppiter optimus māximus sīrit** (= **sīverit**) ! L., XXXIV. 24, 2 ; *may Jupiter, supremely great and good, suffer it not !*

261. The Optative Subjunctive frequently takes **ut** (archaic and rare), **utinam**, **utinam nē**, **utinam nōn** ; also **ō sī**, *oh if* (poetical and very rare) ; **quī** (chiefly in early Latin and in curses).

**Valeās beneque ut tibi sit**, PL., *Poen.*, 912 ; *farewell ! God bless you !* **Utinam modo cōnāta efficere possim**, C., *Att.*, IV. 16 ; *may I but have it in my power to accomplish my endeavours.* **Utinam reviviscat frāter !** GELL., X. 6, 2 ; *would that my brother would come to life again !* **Utinam inserere iocōs mōris esset**, QUINT., II. 10, 9 ; *would that it were usual to introduce jokes !* **Illud utinam nē vērē scriberem**, C., *Fam.*, V. 17, 3 ; *would that what I am writing were not true !* **Utinam susceptus nōn essem**, C., *Att.*, III.-II. 8 ; *would I had not been born !* (CICERO'S only example of **nōn**.) **Ō mihi praeteritōs referat sī Iūppiter annōs**, V., *A.*, VIII. 560 ; *O if Jove were to bring me back the years that are gone by !*

REMARK.—For the wish with adverse decision, **vellem** and **māllem** (theoretically also **nōllem**) may be used with the Impf. and sometimes (especially **vellem**) with the Plupf. Subjunctive.

**Vellem adesse posset Panaetius !** C., *Tusc.*, I. 33, 81 ; *would that Panaetius could be present !* **Vellem mē ad cēnam invitāssēs**, C., *Fam.*, XII. 4, 1 ; *would that you had invited ME to your dinner-party.*

So **velim**, **nōlim**, etc., for the simple wish (546, R. 2).

**Tuam mihi darī velim eloquentiam**, C., *N. D.*, II. 59, 147 ; *I could wish your eloquence given to me.*

NOTES. 1. **Utinam** was perhaps originally an interrogative, *How, pray ?* If so, it belongs partly to the potential ; hence the frequent occurrence of **nōn**. **Ō sī** (occasionally **sī**, V., *A.*, VI. 187) introduces an elliptical conditional sentence, which is not intended to have an Apodosis. When the Apodosis comes, it may come in a different form ; as in the example : V., *A.*, VIII. 560, 568.

2. The Impf. Subjv. is occasionally used in early Latin to give an unreal wish in the Past. This is almost never found in the later period.

**Utinam tē dī prius perderent, quam periisti ō patriā tuā**, PL., *Capt.*, 537. **Tunc mihi vita foret**, TIB., I. 10, 11.

**262.** The Optative Subjunctive is used in *asseverations* :

*Ita vivam ut m̄ximōs sūptūs faciō*, C., *Att.*, v. 15, 2 ; *as I live, I am spending very largely* (literally, *so may I live as I am making very great outlay*). *Moriar, sī magis gaudērem sī id mihī accidisset*, C., *Att.*, VIII. 6, 3 ; *may I die if I could be more glad if that had happened to me*.

NOTE.—The Fut. Indic. in this sense is rare : *Sic mē dī amābunt ut mē tuārum miseritumst fortūnārum*, TER., *Heaut.*, 463.

**263.** The Subjunctive is used as an *Imperative* :

1. In the First Person Plural Present, **which** has no Imperative form :

*Amēmus patriam*, C., *Sest.*, 68, 143 ; *let us love our country*. *Nē difficilia optēmus*, C., *Verr.*, IV. 7, 15 ; *let us not desire what is hard to do*.

NOTE.—In the First Person Singular, the command fades into the wish.

2. In the Second Person.

(a) In the Present chiefly in the Singular, and chiefly of an imaginary “you” :

*Istō bonō ūtāre, dum adsit, cum absit, nē requirās*, C., *Cat. M.*, 10, 33 ; *you must enjoy that blessing so long as 'tis here, when it is gone you must not pine for it*.

NOTE.—The Comic Poets use the Pr. negatively very often of a definite person, sometimes combining it with an Impv. : *ignōsce, irāta nē siēs*, PL., *Am.*, 924 ; but in the classical period such usage is rare, and usually open to other explanations ; a definite person may be used as a type, or the sentence may be elliptical.

(b) In the Perfect negatively :

*Nē trānsierīs Hiberum*, L., XXI. 44, 6 ; *do not cross the Ebro*. *Nē vōs mortem timuerītis*, C., *Tusc.*, I. 41, 98 ; *have no fear of death !*

3. In the Third Person Present (regularly) :

*Suum quisque nōscat ingenium*, C., *Off.*, I. 31, 114 ; *let each one know his own mind*. *Dōnis impiī nē plācāre audeant deōs*, C., *Leg.*, II. 16, 41 : *let the wicked not dare to try to appease the gods with gifts*.

NOTE.—The Pf. in this usage is very rare. S., *Iug.*, 85, 47 ; TAC., *Ann.*, IV. 32, 1.

**264.** The Subjunctive is used as a *Concessive* :

*Sit fūr*, C., *Verr.*, v. 1, 4 ; *(granted that) he be a thief*. *Fuerit (malus civis)*, C., *Verr.*, I. 14, 37 ; *(suppose) that he was a bad citizen*.

For other examples with *ut* and *nē*, see 608.

NOTE.—The past tenses are very rarely used concessively ; see C., *Tusc.*, III. 19, 75 (Impf.) ; *Sest.*, 19, 43 (Plupf.).

**265.** The Subjunctive is used in Questions which expect an Imperative answer (*cōniūctivus dēliberātivus*).

Genuine questions are commonly put in the First Person, or the representative of the First Person :

*Utrum superbiam prius commemorem an crudelitatem*, C., *Verr.*, I. 47, 122 ; *shall I mention the insolence first or the cruelty ?* *Magna fuit contentio utrum moenibus se defenderent an obviam irent hostibus*, NEP., I. 4, 4 ; *there was a great dispute whether they should defend themselves behind the walls or go to meet the enemy.* (*Utrum nos defendamus an obviam eamus ?*) [Example of Third Person, 428, N. 1.]

Rhetorical questions (questions which anticipate the answer), under this head, are hardly to be distinguished from Potential.

*Quo me nunc vertam ? Undique custodior*, C., *Att.*, x. 12, 1 ; *whither shall I now turn ? Sentinels on every side.* *Quid agerem ?* C., *Sest.*, 19, 42 ; *what was I to do ?*

REMARK.—The answer to the Deliberative Question is the Impv. or the Imperative Subjv. of the Present (263, 2) or Past (272, 3).

### Imperative Mood.

**266.** The Imperative is the mood of the will. It wills that the predicate be made a reality. The tone of the Imperative varies from stern command to piteous entreaty. It may appear as a demand, an order, an exhortation, a permission, a concession, a prayer.

*Abi in malam rem*, PL., *Capl.*, 877 ; *go (to the mischief), and be hanged.* *Compesce mentem*, H., *O.*, I. 16, 22 ; *curb your temper.* *Dā mihi hōc, mel meum !* PL., *Trin.*, 244 ; *give me this, honey dear !*

**267.** The Imperative has two forms, known as the First and the Second Imperative (also, but less accurately, as the Present and Future Imperative). The First Imperative has only the Second Person ; the Second Imperative has both Second and Third Persons. The First Person is represented by the Subjunctive (263, 1).

REMARK.—Some verbs have only the second form. This may be due to the signification : so *scitō*, *know thou* ; *mementō*, *remember thou* ; and *habētō*, in the sense of *know, remember*.

On violation of Concord with the Imperative, see 211, N. 2.

NOTE.—The use of the Pronouns **tū**, **vōs**, *etc.*, with the Impv., is colloquial, hence common in Comedy ; or solemn : see V., *A.*, VI. 95, 365, 675, 834, *etc.*

**268.** 1. The First Imperative looks forward to immediate fulfilment (Absolute Imperative) :

*Special* : **Patent portae ; proficiscere**, *C.*, *Cat.*, I. 5, 10, *Open stand the gates ; depart.*

*General* : **Iūstitiam cole et pietātem**, *C.*, *Rep.*, VI. 16, 16, *Cultivate justice and piety.*

2. The Second Imperative looks forward to contingent fulfilment (Relative Imperative), and is chiefly used in laws, legal documents, maxims, recipes, and the like ; likewise in familiar language.

**RĒGIŌ IMPERIŌ DUO SUNTŌ ; IĪQUE CŌNSULĒS APPELLĀMINŌ** (130, 5, c) ; **NĒMINĪ PĀRENTŌ ; OLLĪS** (104, III. N. 1) **SALŪS POPULĪ SUPRĒMA LĒX ESTŌ**, *C.*, *Leg.*, III. 3, 8 ; *there shall be two (officers) with royal power ; they shall be called consuls ; they are to obey no one ; to them the welfare of the people must be the paramount law.* **Rem vōbīs prōpōnam : vōs eam penditōte**, *C.*, *Verr.*, IV. I. 1 ; *I will propound the matter to you ; do you thereupon perpend it.* **Percontātōrem fugitō, nam garrulus idem est**, *H.*, *Ep.*, I. 18, 69 ; *avoid your questioner, for he is a tell-tale too.*

**269.** STRENGTHENING WORDS.—The Imperative is often strengthened and emphasised by the addition of Adverbs, fossilised Imperatives, Phrases, *etc.* : **age**, **agite**, **agedum**, **agitedum**, *come* ; enclitic **dum**, *then* ; **modo**, *only* ; **iamdūdum**, *at once* ; **proinde**, *well, then* ; **quīn**, *why not ?* **sānē**, *certainly* ; **amābō**, **obsecrō**, **quaesō**, *please* ; **sīs** (= **sī vīs**), **sultis** (= **sī voltis**), **sōdēs** (= **sī audēs**), *if you please*. Most of these belong to familiar language, and are therefore found in great numbers in Comedy and in CICERO's letters. In the classical prose, and even later, they are not common. **Dum** in classical times is confined to **agedum** ; **quīn** is cited twice in CICERO (*Mil.*, 29, 79 ; *Rosc. Com.*, 9, 25), and rarely later. **Iamdūdum** begins with VERGIL, and belongs to poetry and late prose. **Sānē** is not cited for the classical period. **Sultis** is confined to early Latin ; and **sōdēs** occurs but once in CICERO (*Att.*, VII. 3, 11).

**Mittite**, **agedum**, **lēgātōs**, *L.*, XXXVIII. 47, 11. **Quīn tū i modō**, *Pl.*, *Cur.*, 755.

NOTE.—On the violation of Concord with **age**, see 211, N. 2.

**270.** NEGATIVE OF THE IMPERATIVE.—1. The regular negative of the Imperative is **nē** (**nēve**, **neu**), which is found with the Second Imperative ; with the First Imperative, it is poetical or colloquial.

**Hominem mortuum in urbe nē sepelitō nēve ūritō**, *C.*, *Leg.*, II. 23, 58 ; *thou shalt not bury nor burn a dead man in the city.* **Impius nē audētō plācāre dōnīs iram deōrum**, *C.*, *Leg.*, II. 9, 22 ; *the impious man must not*



*dare attempt to appease by gifts the anger of the gods. Tū nē cēde malis, sed contrā audentior itō, V., A., VI. 95 ; yield not thou to misfortunes, but go more boldly (than ever) to meet them.*

REMARKS.—1. **Nōn** may be used to negative a single word:

**Ā lēgibus nōn recēdāmus, C., Cluent., 57. 155 ; let us not recede from (let us stick to) the laws. Opus poliat lima, nōn exerat, C.J. QUINT., X. 4, 4 ; let the file rub the work up, not rub it out.**

2. Instead of **nē** with the First Imperative was employed either **nōlī** with the Infinitive (271, 2) ; or **nē** with the Pf. Subjv., but the latter is very rare in elevated prose (263, 2, b). On **nē** with Pr. Subjv. see 263, 2, a.

NOTE. The use of **nōn** with the actual Impv. is found only in OVID ; but the addition of a second Impv. by **neque, nec**, instead of **nēve, neu**, begins in classical times (C., Att., XII. 22, 3), and becomes common later. The use of **neque (nec), nihil, nēmō, nūllus** with the Subjv. in an Impv. sense has recently been claimed for the Potential Subjv. (*must*, 257, 1) on account of the negative.

271. PERIPHRASES.—1. **Cūrā (cūrātō) ut, take care that ; fac (facitō) ut, cause that ; fac (facitō), do**, with the Subjunctive, are common circumlocutions for the Positive Imperative.

**Cūrā ut quam primum (303, R. 1) veniās, C., Fam., IV. 10, 1 ; manage to come as soon as possible. Fac cōgitēs, C., Fam., XI. 3, 4, Do reflect !**

NOTES. 1. **Facitō** is almost wholly confined to early Latin, especially PLAUTUS ; so also **cūrātō**.

2. Early Latin also shows **vidē** and **vidētō** with Subjv. TERENCE introduces **volō, velim**, with Subjv., which is found also in later times ; as, C., Fam., IX. 12, 2.

2. **Cavē** and **cavē (cavētō) nē, beware lest**, with the Subjunctive, and **nōlī, be unwilling**, with the Infinitive, are circumlocutions for the Negative Imperative (Prohibitive). **Fac nē** is also familiarly used.

**Cavē fēstīnēs, C., Fam., XVI. 12, 6 ; do not be in a hurry. Tantum cum fingēs nē sis manifestā cavētō, Ov., A.A., III. 801 ; only when you pretend, beware that you be not detected. Nōlī, amābō, verberāre lapidē, nē perdās manum, Pl., Cure., 197 ; don't beat a slave, I pray you, lest you spoil your hand. Fac nē quid aliud cūrēs hōc tempore, C., Fam., XVI. 11, 1 ; see that you pay no attention to anything else, at this time.**

NOTES. 1. Rare and confined to early Latin is the use of **cavē** with any but the second person. Cf. Pl., *Aul.*, 660 ; Ter., *And.*, 403.

2. Other phrases are those with **vidē nē** and **cūrātō nē**, with Subjv. ; **comperce, compēsce** with Inf. (all ante-classical) ; **parce, mitte, omitte** with Inf. (poetical and post-classical) ; **nōlīm** with Subjv. (Cic.) ; **fuge** with Inf. (Hor.) ; **absiste** with Inf. (VERG.).



**272. REPRESENTATIVES OF THE IMPERATIVE.**—1. Instead of the Positive Imperative, may be employed :

- (a) The Second Person of the Present Subjunctive (263, 2).
- (b) The Second Person of the Future Indicative (243).
- (c) The Third Person of the Present Subjunctive (263, 3).

2. Instead of the Negative Imperative (Prohibitive), may be employed :

- (a) The Second Person of the Present Subjunctive, with **nē** (263, 2, N.).
- (b) The Second Person of the Perfect Subjunctive, with **nē** (263, 2).
- (c) The Second Person of the Future, with **nōn** (243).
- (d) The Third Person of the Present or Perfect Subjunctive, with **nē** (263, 3).

REMARK.—The Pr. Subjv. is employed when stress is laid on the *continuance of the action* ; the Pf., when stress is laid on the *completion*. Hence the use of the Pf. Subjv. in total prohibitions and passionate protests.

3. The Imperative of the Past is expressed by the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive (unfulfilled duties). Compare 265, R.

**Dōtem darētis ; quaereret alium virum**, TER., *Ph.*, 297 ; *you should have given her a portion ; she should have sought another match.* **Crās Irēs potius, hodiē hic cēnārēs. Valē**, PL., *Pers.*, 710 ; *you ought rather to have put off going till to-morrow, you ought to (have) dine(d) with us to-day. Good-bye.* (Anything decided is regarded as past.) **Potius docēret (causam) nōn esse aequam**, C., *Off.*, III. 22, 88 ; *he should rather have shown that the plea was not fair.* **Nē popōscissēs (librōs)**, C., *Att.*, II. 1, 3 ; *you ought not to have asked for the books.*

Observe the difference between the Unfulfilled Duty and the Unreal of the Past (597).

**Morerētur ; fecisset certē sī sine māximō dēdecōre potuisset**, C., *Rab. Post.*, 10, 29 ; *he ought to have died ; he would certainly have done so, could he have (done so) without the greatest disgrace.*

NOTE.—The Plupf. tense in this usage is not ante-classical.

**273.** Passionate questions are equivalent to a command :

**Nōn tacēs ?** PL., *Am.*, 700 ; *won't you hold your tongue ?* **Quīn tacēs ?** *Why don't you hold your tongue ?* **Quīn datis, sī quid datis ?** PL., *Cas.*, 765 ; *why don't you give, if you are going to do it ?* (Compare **Fac, sī quid facis**, MART., 1. 46, 1.) **Cūr nōn ut plēnus vitāe convīva recēdis ?** LUCR., III. 938 ; *why do you not withdraw as a guest sated with life ?*

**274.** *Putā, ut putā*, for example, begins with [C.] *ad Her.*, II. 11, 16 (reading doubtful); then *II.*, *S.*, II. 5, 32. *Quinte, putā, aut Pūbli.* Later it becomes more common, especially with the Jurists. See *C.*, *Ph.*, II. 6, 15.

## 275. Summary of Imperative Constructions.

### Positive.

2d P. **Audī**, *hear thou*; **auditō** (legal or contingent); **audiēs** (familiar); **audiās** (ideal Second Person chiefly).

3d P. **Auditō** (legal), *let him hear*; **audiat**.

### Negative.

2d P. **Nē audī**, *hear not* (poetic); **nē auditō** (legal); **nōn audiēs** (familiar); **nē audiās** (chiefly ideal); **nōlī audire** (common); **nē audiveris** (rare).

3d P. **Nē auditō** (legal), *let him not hear*; **nē audiat**; **nē audiverit**.

## Tenses of the Moods and Verbal Substantives.

**276.** The Indicative alone expresses with uniform directness the period of time.

**277.** 1. The Present and Imperfect Subjunctive have to do with *continued* action, the Perfect and Pluperfect with *completed* action. The Perfect Subjunctive is also used to express the *attainment*.

2. In simple sentences Present and Perfect Subjunctive postpone the ascertainment of the Predicate to the Future. The action itself may be Present or Future for the Present Subjunctive; Present, Past, or Future for the Perfect Subjunctive.

**Crēdat.** *He may believe* (now or hereafter).

**Crēdiderit.** *Let him have had the belief* (heretofore), *he may have come to the belief* (now), *he may come to the belief* (hereafter).

3. In simple sentences the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive are Past Tenses, and regularly serve to indicate unreality. (See 597.)

NOTE.—A Subjv. of the Past, being a future of the past, gives a prospective (or future) action the time of which is over (or past), so that the analysis of the past tenses of the Subjv. shows the same elements as the Periphrastic Conjugation with **eram** and **ful**. Hence the frequent parallel use. See 254, II. 2, and 597, II. 3.

4. In dependent sentences the Subjunctive is future if the leading verb has a future signification (515, II. 3); otherwise

the Subjunctive represents the Indicative. The tense is regulated by the law of sequence. (See 509.)

278. The Imperative is necessarily Future.

279. The Infinitive has two uses :

1. Its use as a Substantive.
2. Its use as a representative of the Indicative.

280. THE INFINITIVE AS A SUBSTANTIVE.—As a Substantive the Infinitive has two tenses, Present and Perfect. (See 419.)

1. The Present Infinitive is the common form of the Infinitive, used as a Substantive. It has to do with *continued* action.

(a) The Present Infinitive is used as a subject or predicate. (See 423, 424.)

*Quibusdam tōtum hōc displicet philosophārī, C., Fin., I. I. 1 ; to some this whole business of metaphysics is a nuisance.*

(b) The Present Infinitive is used as the object of Verbs of Creation (*Auxiliary Verbs*, Verbs that *help* the Infinitive into being ; see 423.)

*Catō servīre quam pūgnāre māvult, C., Att., VII. 15, 2 ; Cato prefers to be a slave rather than to fight (being a slave to fighting).*

2. The Perfect Infinitive is comparatively little used as a Substantive. It has to do with *completed* action, and is also used to express *attainment*.

(a) As a subject, it is used chiefly in fixed expressions or in marked opposition to the Present.

*Plūs prōderit dēmōnstrāsse rēctam prōtinus viam quam revocāre ab errōre iam lāpsōs, QUINT., II. 6, 2 ; it will be more profitable to have pointed out the right path immediately than to recall from wandering those that have already gone astray. [Nōn] tam turpe fuit vincī quam contendisse decōrum est, Ov., M., IX. 5 ; 'twas not so much dishonour to be beaten as 'tis an honour to have struggled.*

REMARKS.—I. By a kind of attraction *decurit*, *became*, takes occasionally a Pf. Inf. (*emotional*).

*Tunc flēsse decuit, L., XXX. 44, 7 ; that was the time when it would have been becoming to weep (to have wept). Et erubuisse decēbat, Ov., M., IV. 330 ; the very flush of shame was becoming.*

2. So *oportuit*, *behooved*, is frequently followed by the Pf. Part. passive, with or without *esse*. This seems to have belonged to familiar style ; it is accordingly very common in early Latin.

[Hōc] *iam pridem factum esse oportuit*, C., *Cat.*, i. 2, 5 ; *this ought to have been done long ago*.

(b) As an object, the Perfect Infinitive is seldom found in the active, except after *velle*, *to wish*, which seems to have been a legal usage.

*Nēmīnem notā strēnuī aut ignāvi militis notāsse voluī*, L., XXIV. 16, 11 ; *I wished to have marked (to mark finally, to brand) no soldier with the mark of bravery or of cowardice*. *Annālēs, quibus crēdidisse mālīs*, L., XLII. 11, 1. *NEIQUIS EORUM BACANAL HABUISE VELET*, S. C. DE BAC.

Otherwise it is found mainly in the poets (after the fashion of the Greek Aorist Inf.), and usually with the Pf. and Plupf. tenses, *voluī, etc., potuī, dēbueram (dēbui)*.

*Frātrēs tendentēs opacō Pēlion imposuisse Olympō*, H., O., III. 4, 52 ; *The brothers striving to pile Pelion on shady Olympus*.

NOTES. 1. This usage with *velle* seems to have approached often the Fut. Pf. in force. A Pf. Inf. after the Pr. of *posse* occurs very rarely : *Nōn potes probāsse nūgās*, Pl., *Aul.*, 828 ; see V., I., VI. 78, and several cases in OVID and MARTIAL.

2. The Pf. Inf. act. (subj. or obj.) is often found in the poets, especially in elegiac poetry, as the first word in the second half of a pentameter, where it can hardly be distinguished from a Present. This usage may be due partly to analogy with verbs of wishing, partly to the exigencies of the metre, partly to the influence of the Greek Aorist. It must be distinguished from the normal use of the Perfect : *Quam iuvat immītēs ventōs audire cubantem Et dominam tenerō dētīnuisse sinū!* TIB., i. 1, 45.

3. Noteworthy is the occasional use of *dēbeō* with the Pf. Inf. act. in the sense "must have" : *statim viciisse dēbeō*, C., *Rosc. Am.*, 23, 73 ; *dēbēs adnotāsse*, PLIN., *Ep.*, VII. 20, 6.

(c) In the Passive, the Perfect Infinitive is used after verbs of Will and Desire, to denote impatience of anything except entire fulfilment. See 537.

[*Patriam*] *exstinctam cupit*, C., *Fin.*, IV. 24, 66 ; *he desires his country blotted out*.

Here the Infinitive *esse* is seldom expressed.

*Corinthum patrēs vestri tōtius Graeciae lūmen exstinctum esse voluērunt*, C., *Imp.*, 5, 11 (211, R. 6).

NOTE. This usage is common in Comedy and in CICERO, rare, if at all, in CAESAR and SALLUST ; and later also it is rare, surviving chiefly in phrases. The principal verb is *volō*, less often *cupiō*, very rarely *expetō* and *nōlō*.

281. THE INFINITIVE AS THE REPRESENTATIVE OF THE INDICATIVE.—As the representative of the Indicative, the

Infinitive has all its Tenses : Present, Past, Future, and Future Periphrastics.

1. The Present Infinitive represents *contemporaneous action*—hence the Present Indicative after a Principal Tense, and the Imperfect after a Historical Tense :

**Dicō eum venīre**, *I say that he is coming* ; **dīcēbam eum venīre**, *I said that he was coming*.

2. The Perfect Infinitive represents *Prior Action*—hence the Perfect and Imperfect Indicative after a Principal Tense, and the Pluperfect, Imperfect, and Historical Perfect Indicative after a Historical Tense :

**Dicō eum vēnisse**, *I say that he came, has come, used to come*.

**Dixi eum vēnisse**, *I said that he had come, used to come, did come*.

NOTE.—**Memini**, *I remember*, when used of personal experience, commonly takes the Present : **Tum mē rēgem appellārī ā vōbīs memini, nunc tyrannum vocārī videō**, L., XXXIV. 31, 13 ; *I remember being styled by you a king then, I see that I am called a tyrant now*.

So also rarely **memoriā teneō, recordor**, *I remember, I recall*, and **fugit mē**, *I do not remember*. When the experience is not personal, the ordinary construction is followed : **Memineram Marium ad infimōrum hominum misericordiam cōnfūgis**, C., Sest., 22, 50 ; *I remembered that Marius had thrown himself on the mercy of a set of low creatures*.

The peculiar construction with the Pr. arises from the liveliness of the recollection. When the action is to be regarded as a bygone, the Pf. may be used even of personal experience : **Mē memini irātum dominae turbāsse capillōs**, Ov., A. A., II. 169 ; *I remember in my anger having tousled my sweetheart's hair*.

**282.** The Present Participle active denotes *continuance* ; the Perfect passive, *completion or attainment*.

NOTE.—The Latin is more exact than the English in the use of the tenses. So the Pf. Part. is frequently employed when we use the Present ; especially in classical prose, with verbs that indicate a condition, mental or physical, where the action of the participle is conceived as continuing *up to*, and sometimes *into*, that of the leading verb, as **ratus**, *thinking* ; **veritus**, *fearing* ; **gāvīsus**, *rejoicing*, etc. This usage spreads later : **complexus**, *embracing* ; **hortātus**, *exhorting*.

**283.** The Future Participle (active) is a verbal adjective, denoting capability and tendency, chiefly employed in the older language with **sum**, *I am*, as a periphrastic tense. In later Latin it is used freely, just as the Present and Perfect Participles, to express subordinate relations.

NOTES.—1. The so-called Fut. Part. passive is more properly called the Gerundive, and has already been discussed (251).

2. The Supine, being without tense relations, does not belong here.



## SIMPLE SENTENCE EXPANDED.

284. The sentence may be expanded by the *multiplication* or by the *qualification*, A, of the subject, B, of the predicate.

## A.

## 1. Multiplication of the Subject.

## Concord.

285. NUMBER.—The common predicate of two or more subjects is put in the Plural number :

**Lūcius Tarquinius et Tullia minor iunguntur nūptiis**, L., I. 46, 9 ; *Lucius Tarquinius and Tullia the younger are united in marriage.* **Pater et māter mortui** [sunt], TER., *Eun.*, 518 ; *father and mother are dead.*

EXCEPTIONS.—1. The common predicate may agree with a Sing. subject when that subject is the nearest or the most important: "My flesh and my heart *faileth*," PSA., LXXIII. 26.

**Aetās et fōrma et super omnia Rōmānum nōmen tē ferōciōrem facit**, L., XXXI. 18, 3 ; *your youth and beauty, and, above all, the name of Roman, makes you too mettlesome.* **Latagum saxō occupat dēs faciemque adversam** V., A., x. 698 (323, n. 2).

The agreement depends largely also upon the position of the verb. If it precedes or follows the first subj., the Sing. is more apt to stand.

2. Two abstracts in combination, when conceived as a unit, take a Sing. verb: "When distress and anguish *cometh* upon you," PROV., I. 27.

**Religiō et fidēs antepōnātur amicitiae**, C., *Off.*, III. 10, 46 ; *let the religious obligation of a promise be preferred to friendship.*

So any close union: "Your gold and silver is cankered," JAS., v. 3.

**Senātus populusque Rōmānus intellegit**, C., *Fam.*, v. 8, 2 ; *the senate and people of Rome perceives* (= *Rome perceives*). **Tua fāma et gnātae vīta in dubium veniet**, TER., *Ad.*, 340 ; *your good name will be jeopardized and your daughter's life.*

3. When the same predicate is found with two or more subjects, who are conceived as acting independently, classical usage requires that the predicate be in the Singular. LIVY introduces the Pl., which grows, and becomes the rule in TACITUS: **Palātium Rōmulus, Remus Aventinum ad inaugurandum templa capiunt**, L., I. 6, 4.

NOTES. 1. **Neque neque**, *neither nor*, allows the Pl. chiefly when the Persons are different: **Haec neque ego neque tū fēcimus**, TER., *Ad.*, 103 ; *neither you nor I did this.*



The same is true, but not so common, of **et—et** (*as well as*), **aut—aut**, *either—or*.

2. A Sing. subj. combined with another word by **cum**, *with*, is treated properly as a Singular. It is treated as a Pl. once each by CATO, TERENCE (*Heaut.*, 473), CICERO (by anacoluthon), CAESAR (*B.C.*, III. 88), more often by SALLUST and his imitators, LIVY, and later writers. VELLEIUS, VALERIUS M., and TACITUS follow the classical usage.

**Sulla cum Scīpiōne . . . lēgēs inter sē contulērunt**, C., *Ph.*, XII. 11, 27. **Ipse dux cum aliquot prīncipibus capiuntur**, L., XXI. 60, 7; *the general himself with some of the leading men are captured*.

3. In the Abl. Abs. the Part. stands usually in the Pl. with persons, usually in the Sing. with things. **C. Gracchō et M. Fulviō Flaccō interfectīs**, S., *Iug.*, 16, 2. **Cāritāte benevolentīāque sublātā**, C., *Lael.*, 27, 102.

**286. GENDER.**—When the Genders of combined subjects are the same, the adjective predicate agrees in gender; when the genders are different, the adjective predicate takes either the strongest gender or the nearest.

1. In things with life, the masculine gender is the strongest; in things without life, the neuter.

(a) The strongest :

**Pater et māter mortuī [sunt]**, TER., *Eun.*, 518 (285). **Mūrus et porta dē caelō tācta erant**, L., XXXII. 29, 1; *wall and gate had been struck by lightning*. **Hōc anima atque animus vincti sunt foedere semper**, LUCR., III. 416.

(b) The nearest :

**Convicta est Messālina et Silius**, Cf. TAC., *Ann.*, XII. 65; *Messalina was convicted and (so was) Silius*. **Hippolochus Lārissaeōrumque deditum est praesidium**, L., XXXVI. 9, 14; *Hippolochus and the Larissaeon garrison (were) surrendered*.

2. When things with life and things without life are combined, the gender varies.

(a) Both as persons :

**Rēx rēgiaque clāssis profecti (sunt)**, L., XXI. 50, 11; *the king and the king's fleet set out*.

(b) Both as things :

**Nātūrā inimica [sunt] libera civitās et rēx**, Cf. L., XLIV. 24, 2; *a free state and a king are natural enemies*.

3. When the subjects are feminine abstracts the predicate may be a neuter Plural (211, R. 4).

**Stultitiam et intemperantiam dicimus esse fugienda**, C., *Fin.*, III. 11, 39; *folly and want of self-control (we say) are (things) to be avoided*.

NOTE.—This usage does not appear in early Latin, nor in CAESAR or SALLUST.

**287. PERSONS.**—When the persons of combined subjects are different, the First Person is preferred to the Second, the Second to the Third :

*Si tū et Tullia, lūx nostra, valētis, ego et suāvissimus Cicerō valēmus,* C., *Fam.*, xiv. 5. 1; *if Tullia, light of my life, and you are well, dearest Cicero and I are well.*

REMARK.—(a) In contrasts, and when each person is considered separately, the predicate agrees with the person of the nearest subject.

*Et ego et Cicerō meus flāgitābit,* C., *Att.*, iv. 18, 5; *my Cicero will demand it and (so will) I.* *Beātō vivere alii in aliō, vōs in voluptāte pōnitis,* C., *Fin.*, ii. 27, 86; *some make a blessed life to rest on one thing, some on another, you on pleasure.*

So regularly with disjunctives, see 285, n. 1.

(b) The order is commonly the order of the persons, not of modern politeness: *Ego et uxor mea, Wife and I.*

## 2. Qualification of the Subject.

**288.** The subject may be qualified by giving it an attribute. An attribute is that which serves to give a specific character.

The chief forms of the attribute are :

I. The adjective and its equivalents : *amicus certus, a sure friend.*

REMARK.—The equivalents of the adjective are : 1. The pronouns *hic, this, ille, that, &c.* 2. Substantives denoting *rank, age, trade* : *servus homō, a slave person* ; *homō senex, an old fellow* ; *homō gladiātor, a gladiator-fellow* ; *mulier ancilla, a servant-wench.* 3. The Genitive (360. 1). 4. The Ablative (400). 5. Preposition and case : *excēssus ā vitā, departure from life.* 6. Adverbs, chiefly with substantival participles : *rēctē facta, good actions.* 7. Relative clauses (505).

II. The substantive in apposition : *Cicerō orātor, Cicero the orator.*

## I. ADJECTIVE ATTRIBUTE.

### Concord.

**289.** The Adjective Attribute agrees with its substantive in gender, number, and case :

GENDER.	NUMBER.
<i>Vir sapiēns, a wise man,</i>	<i>virī sapiētēs, wise men.</i>
<i>Mulier pulchra, a beautiful woman,</i>	<i>mulierēs pulchrae, beautiful women.</i>
<i>Rēgium dōnum, royal gift,</i>	<i>rēgia dōna, royal gifts.</i>

## CASE.

Viri sapientis, of a wise man.

Mulieri pulchrae, for a beautiful woman.

Virum sapientem, wise man.

bone fili! good son!

rēgiō dōnō, by royal gift.

mulierēs pulchrās, beautiful women.

290. The common attribute of two or more substantives agrees with the nearest ; rarely with the most important.

Volusēnus, vir et cōsiliī māgnī et virtūtis, CAES., B.G., III. 5, 2 ; *Volusenus, a man of great wisdom and valour.* Cūncta maria terraeque patēbant, S., C., 10, 1 ; *all seas and lands lay open.* Multa alia castella vicique aut dēlēta hostiliter aut integra in potestātem vēnere, L., IX. 38, 1.

REMARKS.—I. For emphasis, or to avoid ambiguity, the adj. is repeated with every substantive. Sometimes also for rhetorical reasons simply.

(Semprōniae) multae facētiaē, multusque lepōs inerat, S., C., 25, 5 ; *Sempronia had a treasure of witticisms, a treasure of charming talk.*

2. When a substantive is construed with several similar adjectives in the Sing., it may be in agreement with one in the Sing. or may stand in the Pl., according to its position :

Quārta et Mārtia legiōnēs, C., Fam., XI. 19, 1, but Legiō Mārtia quārtaque, C., Ph., v. 17, 46, *The fourth and Martian legions.*

NOTES.—1. A common surname is put in the Plural : M. (et) Q. Cicerōnēs, *Marcus and Quintus Cicero* ; C., Cn., M. Carbōnēs, *Gaius, Gnaeus (and) Marcus Carbo* ; otherwise, M. Cicerō et Q. Cicerō, *Marcus and Quintus Cicero.*

2. Poets are free in regard to the position of the adjective : Semper honōs nōmenque tuum laudēsque manēbunt, V., A., I. 609.

291. *Position of the Attribute.*—I. When the attribute is emphatic, it is commonly put before the substantive, otherwise in classical Latin ordinarily after it. But see 676.

1. Fugitīvus servus, a runaway slave (one complex).

2. Servus fugitīvus, a slave (that is) a runaway (two notions).

Many expressions, however, have become fixed formulæ, such as civis Rōmānus, *Roman citizen* ; populus Rōmānus, *people of Rome.*

Compare *body politic, heir apparent* in English.

REMARKS.—I. Variation in the position of the adj. often causes variation in the meaning of the word. Thus rēs bonae, *good things* ; bonae rēs, *articles of value, or good circumstances* ; rēs urbānae, *city matters* ; urbānae rēs, *witticisms* ; mēsa secunda, *a second table* ; secunda mēsa, *dessert.*

2. Superlatives which denote order and sequence in time and space are often used partitively, and then *generally* precede their substantive : *summa aqua*, *the surface of the water* : *summus mōns*, *the top of the mountain* : *vēre primō, primō vēre*, *in the beginning of spring*. Similarly in *mediā urbe*, *in the midst of the city* ; *reliqua, cētera Graecia*, *the rest of Greece*, and the like.

2. When the attribute belongs to two or more words, it is placed sometimes after them all, sometimes after the first, sometimes before them all.

*Divitiae, nōmen, opēs vacuae cōsiliō dēdecoris plēnae sunt*, C., *Rep.*, i. 34, 51 : *riches, name, resources (when) void of wisdom are full of dishonour*.

For examples of the other positions see 290.

### Numerals.

**292. Duo** means simply *two*, *ambō*, *both* (two considered together), *uterque*, *either* (two considered apart, as, “ They crucified two other with him, on either side one,” JOHN, XIX. 18) :

*Supplicatiō ambōrum nōmine et triumphus utrīque dēcrētus est*, L., XXVIII. 9, 9 ; *a thanksgiving in the name of both and a triumph to either (each of the two) was decreed*. *Qui utrumque probat, ambōbus dēbuit ūti*, C., *Fin.*, II. 7, 20 ; *he who approves of either ought to have availed himself of both*.

REMARK.—*Uterque* is seldom Pl., except of sets ; so with *plūrālia tantum*.

*Utrīque (i.e., plēbis fautōrēs et senātus) victōriam crudēliter exercēbant*, S., C., 35, 4 ; *either party (democrats and senate) made a cruel use of victory*. *Duae fuērunt Ariovisti uxōrēs : utraeque in eā fugā periērunt*, CAES., *B.G.*, I. 53, 4 ; *Ariovistus's wives were two in number ; both perished in that flight*. *Proximō diē Caesar ē castris utrīque cōpiās suās edūxit*, CAES., *B.G.*, I. 50, 1.

On *uterque* with the Pl., see 211, R. I ; with Gen., see 371, R.

**293. Mille**, *a thousand*, is in the Sing. an indeclinable adj. and is less frequently used with the Genitive : *mille militēs*, rather than *mille militum*, *a thousand soldiers* ; in the Pl. it is a declinable substantive, and must have the Genitive : *duo milia militum*, *two thousand(s) of soldiers* = *two regiments of soldiers*. If a smaller number comes between, the substantive usually follows the smaller number :

3500 cavalry, { tria milia quingentī equitēs,  
 tria milia equitum et quingentī, but  
 equitēs tria milia quingentī, or  
 equitum tria milia quingentī.

But duo milia quingentī hostium in aciē periēre, L., XXII. 7, 3.

NOTE.—The use of **mille** as a substantive with the Part. Gen. is found mostly in ante-classical and post-classical Latin. CICERO and CAESAR use it but rarely, and in phrases such as **mille nummum**, **mille passuum**. LIVY is fonder of it.

**294. ORDINALS.**—The Ordinals are used more often in Latin than in English ; thus always in dates : **annō ducentēsimō quārtō**, *in the year 204*. Sometimes they are used for the cardinals with a carelessness that gives rise to ambiguity :

**Quattuor anni sunt, ex quō tē nōn vidi,**

*It is four years, that I have not seen you (since I saw you).*

**Quārtus annus est, ex quō tē nōn vidi.**

*It is the fourth year (four years, going on four years).*

NOTE.—To avoid this ambiguity forms of **incipere**, *to begin*, and **exigere**, *to finish*, seem to have been used. Cf., PL., *Capt.*, 980 ; *Cist.*, 161.

On **quisque** with the ordinal, see 318, 2.

**295. DISTRIBUTIVES.**—The distributives are used with an exactness which is foreign to our idiom wherever repetition is involved, as in the multiplication table.

**Bis bīna quot [sunt] ?** C., *N. D.*, II. 18, 49 ; *how many are twice two ?*  
**Scriptum eculeum cum quinque pedibus, pullōs gallināceōs trīs cum ternis pedibus nātōs esse**, L., XXXII. 1, 11 ; *a letter was written to say that a colt had been foaled with five feet (and) three chickens hatched with three feet (apiece).*

With **singuli** the distributive is preferred, but the cardinal may be used.

**Antōnius (pollicitus est) dēnāriōs quingēnōs singulis militibus datūrum**, C., *Fam.*, x. 32, 4 ; *Antonius promised to give five hundred denarii to each soldier*. **Singulis cēnsōribus dēnārii trecenti** (so all MSS.) **imperāti sunt**, C., *Verr.*, II. 55, 137 ; *the censors were required to pay three hundred denarii apiece*.

NOTE.—Poets and later prose writers often use the distributive when the cardinal would be the rule ; thus **bīnī** is not unfrequently used of a pair even in CICERO : **bīnōs (scyphōs) habēbam**, *Verr.*, IV. 14, 32. When there is an idea of grouping, the distributive is often broken up into a multiplicative and a distributive ; as,

**Carmen ab ter novēnis virginibus canī iussērunt**, L., XXXI. 12, 9 ; *they ordered a chant to be sung by thrice nine virgins*.



On the other hand, prose sometimes shows a cardinal when exact usage would require a distributive. So regularly *milīa*.

*Milīa talentum per duodecim annōs dabitīs*, L., XXXVII. 45, 15.

On the distributives with *plūrālīa tantum*, see 97, R. 3.

## Comparatives and Superlatives.

**296. COMPARATIVE.**—The comparative degree generally takes a term of comparison either with *quam*, *than*, or in the Ablative :

*Ignorātiō futūrōrum malōrum ūtilior est quam scientia*, C., *Div.*, II. 9, 23; *ignorance of future evils is better than knowledge (of them)*. *Nihil est virtūte amābilius*, C., *Lael.*, 8, 28; *nothing is more lovable than virtue*.

REMARKS.—I. (a) The Abl. is used only when the word with *quam* would stand in the Nom. or Acc. (644).

*Caesar minor est* { *quam Pompēius*, } *Caesar is younger than Pompey.*  
                                  { *Pompēiō*, }

*Caesarem plūs amāmus* { *quam Pompēium*, } *we love Caesar more than*  
                                  { *Pompēiō*, } *Pompey.*

In the second example the use of the Abl. may give rise to ambiguity, as the sentence may also mean "*we love Caesar more than Pompey loves him*." This ambiguity is always present when adverbs are used, and hence good prose avoids using a comparative adv. with an Ablative. See II., S., I. 1, 97.

(b) With cases other than Nom. or Acc., *quam* is regularly used to avoid ambiguity.

*Annis nostrīs plūs quam animīs crēditur*, SEN., *Ben.*, III. 15, 3 (217).

2 The Abl. is very common in negative sentences, and is used exclusively in negative relative sentences.

*Polybium sequāmur, quō nēmō fuit diligentior*, C., *Rep.*, II. 14, 27; *let us follow Polybius, than whom no one was more careful*.

3 Measure of difference is put in the Ablative (403).

4. *Quam* is often omitted after *plūs*, *amplius*, *more*, and *minus*, *less* and the like, without affecting the construction :

*Homīni miserō plūs quīngentōs colaphōs infrēgit mihī*, TER., *Ad.*, 199; *he has dealt me, luckless creature, more than five hundred crushing blows on the ear*. *Spatium est nōn amplius pedum sēscentōrum*, CAES., *B. C.*, I. 38, 5; *the space is not more than (of) six hundred feet*.

But the normal construction is not excluded :

*Palūs nōn lātior pedibus quinquāgintā*, CAES., *B. G.*, VII. 19, 1; *a swamp not broader than fifty feet (or pedēs quinquāgintā)*. *Nostrī millitēs amplius hōris quattuor pūgnāverunt*, CAES., *B. G.*, IV. 37, 3.



5. In statements of age we may have a variety of expressions ; thus, *more than thirty years old* may be :

1. **Nātus plūs (quam) trīgintā annōs.** 3. **Māior (quam) trīgintā annōs nātus.**
2. **Nātus plūs trīgintā annis (rare).** 4. **Māior trīgintā annis (nātus).**
5. **Māior trīgintā annōrum.**

6. On the combination of the comparative with **opiniōne**, *opinion*, **spēs**, *hope*, and the like, see 398, N. 1.

NOTES.—1. Verbs and other words involving comparison sometimes have the Abl. where another construction would be more natural. Thus, **mālle**, *to prefer* (poet. and post-classical), **aequē**, **adaequē**, *equally* (early and late), **alius**, *other* (mainly poetic and rare): **Nullōs his māllem lūdōs spectāsse**, II., S., II. 8, 79. **Quī mē in terrā aequē fortūnātus erit?** PL., *Curc.*, 141. **Nē putēs alium sapiente bonōque beātum**, *Ep.*, I. 16, 20.

2. Instead of the Abl., the Gen. is found occasionally in late Latin.

3. Instead of **quam** or the Abl., prepositional uses with the positive are often found; as **prae**, *in comparison with*, **praeter**, *ante, beyond*; also **suprā quam**. Poetical is the circumlocution with **quālis**, as HOR., *Epod.*, 5, 59. **Inferior** is sometimes constructed with the Dat., according to the sense; *inferior to* instead of *lower than*.

4. **Atque** for **quam** is mainly poetical; see 644, N. 2.

**297. Standard of Comparison omitted.**—When the standard of comparison is omitted, it is supplied: 1. By the context; 2. By the usual or proper standard; 3. By the opposite.

1. By the context:

**Solent rēgēs Persārum plūrēs uxōrēs habēre**, *Cf. C., Verr.*, III. 33, 76; *the kings of Persia usually have more wives [than one]*.

2. By the proper standard:

**Senectūs est nātūrā loquāciōr**, *C., Cat. M.*, 16, 55, *Old age is naturally rather (or too) talkative*.

3. By the opposite:

**Quiēsse erit melius**, *L.*, III. 48, 3; *it will be better to be perfectly-quiet (than to make a disturbance)*.

**298. Disproportion.**—Disproportion is expressed by the comparative with **quam prō**, *than for*, and the Ablative, or with **quam ut**, *that*, or **quam quī**, *who*, and the Subjunctive:

**Minor caedēs quam prō tantā victōriā fuit**, *L.*, X. 14, 21; *the loss was (too) small for so great a victory*. **Quis nōn intellegit Canachī signa rigidiōra esse quam ut imitentur vērītatem?** *C., Br.*, 18, 70; *who does not perceive that Canachus' figures are too stiff to imitate the truth of nature?* **Māior sum quam cui possit Fortūna nocēre**, *Ov., M.*, VI. 195; *I am too great for Fortune possibly to hurt me*.

REMARK.—Disproportion may also be expressed by the positive in combination with prepositional phrases, *etc.*: **prō multitūdine angusti finēs**, CAES., *B.G.*, 1. 2. 5; *boundaries too small for their multitude*.

NOTES. 1. The constructions **quam prō** and **quam quī** are both post-Ciceronian.  
2. The **ut** is frequently omitted after **quam**, as: **Dolābella celerius Asiā [ex]cēssit, quam eō praesidium addūci potuisset**, C., *Fam.*, XII. 15. 1. This is especially common after **potius quam**.

299. *Two Qualities compared*.—When two qualities of the same substantive are compared, we find either **magis** and **quam** with the positive, or a double comparative:

**Celer tuus disertus magis est quam sapiēns**, C., *Att.*, x. 1. 4; *your (friend) Celer is eloquent rather than wise—more eloquent than wise*.  
**Acūtiorē sē quam ōrnatiorē [vult]**, C., *Opt. Gen.*, 2. 6; *he wishes to be acute rather than ornate*.

NOTES. 1. There is no distinction to be made between the two expressions. In the latter turn, which is found first, but rarely, in Cicerio, the second comparative is merely attracted into the same form as the first. The same rule applies to the adverb: **fortius quam felicius**, *with more bravery than good luck*.

2. Post-Augustan Latin shows occasionally the comparative followed by **quam**, and the positive: **Nimīa pietās vestra ācrius quam cōsideratē excitāvit**, TAC., *II.*, 1. 83.

300. *Restriction to the Comparative*.—When but two objects are compared, the comparative exhausts the degrees of comparison, whereas, in English, the superlative is employed, unless the idea of duality is emphatic.

**Nātū māior**, *the eldest (of two), the elder*; **nātū minor**, *the youngest, the younger*. **Prior**, *the first*; **posterior**, *the last*.

**Posteriorēs cōgitatiōnēs, ut aiunt, sapientiōrēs solent esse**, C., *Ph.*, XII. 2. 5; *afterthoughts, as the saying is, are usually the wisest*.

REMARK.—The same rule applies to the interrogative **uter**, *which of two ? (whether ?)*: **Ex duobus uter dignior? ex pluribus, quis dignissimus?** QUINT., VII. 4. 21; *of two, which is the worthier? of more (than two), which is the worthiest?*

NOTE. **Quis** is rarely used instead of **uter**, as C., *Fam.*, VI. 3. 1; V., *A.*, XII. 725.

301. *Comparative Strengthened*. The comparative is often strengthened during the classical period by the insertion of **etiam**, *even*; later also by **adhūc**, *still*. **Multō** is properly the Ablative of difference, and is the normal form until the time of VIRGIL, when its place is taken largely by **longē**, except in HORACE, who retains **multō**. Ante-classical and post-classical Latin occasionally doubles the comparative: **magis dulcius**, PL., *Stich.*, 699. **Nihil inveniēs magis hōc certō certius**, PL.,

*Capt.*, 643. Even in CICERO a word involving Preference is sometimes strengthened by *potius* :

[*Themistocli fuit*] *optābilius oblivisci posse potius quam meminisse*, C., *Or.*, II. 74, 300 ; *Themistocles thought it (more) preferable to be able to forget (rather) than to be able to remember.*

**302. Superlative.**—The Latin superlative is often to be rendered by the English positive, especially of persons :

*Quintus Fabius Māximus*, *Quintus Fabius the Great*. *Māximō impetū, māiōre fortunā*, L., XXVIII. 36, 2 ; *with great vigour, with greater luck*. *Tam fēlix essēs quam fōrmōssima vellem*, Ov., *Am.*, I. 8, 27 ; *would thou wert fortunate as (thou art) fair.*

**303. Superlative Strengthened.**—The superlative is strengthened by *multō*, *much* (especially in early Latin) ; *longē*, *by far* (the normal usage in the classical period) ; *vel*, *even* ; *ūnus*, *ūnus omnium*, *one above all others* ; *quam* (with adverbs and adjectives), *quantus* (with *māximus*), *ut* (with adverbs)—*potest*, *potuit*, *as—as possible.*

*Ex Britannis omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī quī Cantium incolunt*, CAES., *B.G.*, V. 14, 1 ; *of all the Britons by far the most cultivated are those that inhabit Kent*. *Prōtagorās sophistēs illis temporibus vel māximus*, C., *N.D.*, I. 23, 63 ; *Protagoras, the very greatest sophist (= professor of wisdom) in those times*. *Urbem ūnam mihi amīcissimam dēclīnāvī*, C., *Planc.*, 41, 97 ; *I turned aside from a city above all others friendly to me*. (*Caesar*) *quam aequissimō locō potest castra commūnit*, CAES., *B.G.*, V. 49, 7 ; *Caesar fortifies a camp in as favourable a position as possible.*

REMARKS.—I. The omission of *potest* leaves *quam* with the superlative, which becomes a regular combination : *as (great) as possible.*

2. For *tam*, *tantum*, with positive followed by *quam*, *quantum quī*, and the superlative, see 642, R. 5.

## PRONOUNS.

### I. Personal Pronouns.

**304. 1.** The personal Pronoun is usually omitted when it is the subject of a verb ; see 207.

2. The Genitive forms, *meī*, *tūī*, *suī*, *nostrī*, *vestrī*, are used mainly as *Objective Genitives* ; see 364, N. 2.

(*Mārcellīnus*) *sē ācerrimum tui dēfēnsōrem fore ostendit*, C., *Fam.*, I. 1, 2 ; *Marcellinus showed that he would be your keenest defender.*

NOTES.—1. *Nostrum* and *vestrum* for *nostrī*, *vestrī*, are very rare : [*Iūppiter, cūstōs*] *hūius urbis āc vestrum*, Cf. C., *Cat.*, III. 12, 29.

2. The Possessive pronouns sometimes are found in place of this Genitive : *Neque neclegentiā tuā neque odiō id fēcit tuō*, TER., *Ph.*, 1016 ; *he did this neither from*

*neglect of thee nor from hatred of thee.* **Vester cōspectus reficit et recreat mentem meam**, C., *Planc.*, i. 2; *the sight of you refreshes and renews my spirits.*

"If I be a master, where is my fear?" **MAL.**, i. 6.

3. The Genitive forms, **nostrum** and **vestrum**, are used *partitively*; see 364, R.

**Tē ad mē venire uterque nostrum cupit**, C., *Att.*, XIII. 33. 2; *each of us two desires that you should come to me.*

NOTES.—1. So regularly also in certain phraseological uses which may be partitive at basis. **Frequentia vestrum, cōsēnsus vestrum**, regularly in combination with **omnium** (364, R.), and occasionally when the Possessive is more natural; **is enim splendor est vestrum**, C., *Att.*, VII. 13A, 3.

2. For a Part. Gen. of the third person (reflexive) a circumlocution must be used, such as **ex sē** or the Possessive **suūrum**.

## 2. Demonstrative Pronouns.

**305. Hic**, *this* (the Demonstrative of the First Person), refers to *that which is nearer the speaker*, and may mean .

1. The speaker himself: **hic homō** = **ego**, Pl., *Trin.*, 1115.

2. The persons with whom the speaker identifies himself, *e. g.*, the judges in a suit at law: **sī ego hōs nōvī**, *if I know these men* (= the jury).

3. The most important subject immediately in hand: **hic sapiēns dē quō loquor**, C., *Ac.*, II. 33, 105; *this (imaginary) wise man of whom I am speaking.*

4. That in which the speaker is peculiarly interested: **hōc studium**, *this pursuit of mine, of ours.*

5. That which has just been mentioned: **haec hāctenus**, *these things thus far = so much for that.*

6. Very frequently, that which is about to be mentioned: **his cōdiciōnibus**, *on the following terms.*

7. The current period of time: **hic diēs**, *to-day*; **haec nox**, *the night just past or just coming*; **hic mēsis**, *the current month.*

**306. Iste**, *that* (of thine, of yours), refers to *that which belongs more peculiarly to the Second Person* (Demonstrative of the Second Person):

**Perfer istam militiam**, C., *Fam.*, VII. 11, 2; *endure that military service of yours.* **Adventū tuō ista subsellia vacuēfacta sunt**, C., *Cat.*, i. 7, 16; *at your approach the benches in your neighbourhood were vacated.*

NOTE. The supposed contemptuous character of **iste** arises from the refusal to take any direct notice of the person under discussion, "the person *at* whom one speaks or points," and precisely the same thing is true of **hic** and **ille**, but less common.

**307. Ille**, *that* (the Demonstrative of the Third Person), denotes *that which is more remote from the speaker*, and is often used in contrast to **hic**, *this*.

**Sōl mē ille admonuit**, C., *Or.*, III., 55, 209 ; *that (yon) sun reminded me*.  
**Q. Catulus nōn antiquō illō mōre sed hōc nostrō ērudītus**, C., *Br.*, 35, 132 ;  
*Q. Catulus, a cultivated man, not after the old-fashioned standard of a by-gone time (illō) but by the standard of to-day (hōc).*

**Ille** may mean :

1. That which has been previously mentioned (often **ille quidem**) : **illud quod initio vōbīs prōposui**, C., *Font.*, 7, 17 ; *that which I propounded to you at first.*

2. That which is well known, notorious (often put after the substantive) : **tēstula illa**, *that (notorious) potsherd = institution of ostracism ; illud Solōnis*, *that (famous saying) of Solon's.*

3. That which is to be recalled : **illud imprimis mirābile**, *that (which I am going to remind you of) is especially wonderful.*

4. That which is expected :

**Illa diēs veniet mea quā lūgubria pōnam**, Ov., *Tr.*, IV. 2. 73 ; *the day will come when I shall lay aside (cease) my mournful strains.*

REMARKS.—I. **Hic** and **ille** are used together in contrasts : as, *the latter—the former, the former—the latter.*

(a) When both are matters of indifference the natural signification is observed : **hic**, *the latter ; ille*, *the former.*

**Īgnāvia corpus hebetat, labor fīrmat ; illa mātūram senectūtem, hic longam adolēscēntiam reddit**, CELS., I. 1 ; *laziness weakens the body, toil strengthens it ; the one (the former) hastens old age, the other (the latter) prolongs youth.*

(b) When the former is the more important, **hic** is *the former*, **ille**, *the latter* :

**Melior tūtiorque est certa pāx quam spērāta victōria ; haec in nostrā, illa in deōrum manū est**, L., xxx. 30, 19 ; *better and safer is certain peace than hoped-for victory ; the former is in our hand(s), the latter in the hand(s) of the gods.*

2. **Hic et ille ; ille et ille ; ille aut ille**, *this man and (or) that man = one or two.*

**Nōn dicam hōc sīgnum ablātum esse et illud ; hōc dīcō, nūllum tē sīgnum reliquisse**, C., *Verr.*, I. 20, 53 ; *I will not say that this statue was taken off and that ; (what) I say (is) this, that you left no statue at all.*

3. The derived adverbs retain the personal relations of **hic**, **iste**, **ille** : **hic**, *here* (where I am) ; **hinc**, *hence* (from where I am) ; **hūc**, *hither* (where I am) ; **istīc**, *there* (where you are) ; **illīc**, *there* (where he is), *etc.*

4. The Demonstratives **hic**, **iste**, **ille**, and the Determinative **is**, are often strengthened by **quidem**, *indeed*. The second member is then introduced by **sed**, **sed tamen** (more rarely **tamen**, **vērūm**, **autem**, **vērō**), **vērūm-tamen**, and sometimes is added asyndetically. The sentence often requires that either the demonstrative or the particle be left untranslated.



Optāre hōc quidem est, nōn docēre, C., *Tusc.*, II. 13, 30 : THAT *is a* (pious) *wish, not a* (logical) *proof*. Nihil perfertur ad nōs praeter rūmōrēs satis istōs quidem cōstantēs sed adhūc sine auctōre, C., *Fam.* XII. 9, 1 : *nothing is brought to us except reports, consistent enough, it is true, but thus far not authoritative.*

Ille is most often used thus : *is, iste, hic*, more rarely.

NOTES. 1. *Hic* and *ille* are sometimes employed to add a qualification to a substantive by means of a contrast : *Orātor nōn ille vulgāris sed hic excellēns*, C., *Or.*, 14, 45 : *an orator, not of the (good) common type, but of the ideal excellence (we seek).*

2. Not unfrequently in poetry, very rarely in prose, in a long sentence a substantive is repeated by means of *ille* : V., *I.*, 1, 3, *ille et terris iactātus* ; II., *O.*, IV. 9, 51.

3. Sometimes two forms of *hic, ille, or is* are found in the same clause referring to different substantives. *Ēvolve diligenter eius [i. e., Platōnis] eum librum, qui est dē animō*, C., *Tusc.*, I. 11, 24.

4. *Ille* may refer to an oblique form of *is* : *Nōn est amīci tālem esse in eum, quālis ille in sē est*, C., *Lael.*, 16, 59.

5. *Ille* is found chiefly in poetry with the personal pronouns *ego, tū*, and occasionally with *hic*, and when so used takes its fullest force. *Hunc illum fātis externā ab sēde profectum portendī generum*, V., *A.*, VII. 255.

### 3. Determinative and Reflexive Pronouns.

308. *Is, that*, is the determinative pronoun, and serves as the lacking pronoun of the Third Person. It furnishes the regular antecedent of the relative :

*Mihī vēnit obviam tuus puer ; is mihī litterās abs tē reddidit*, C., *Att.*, II. 1, 1 : *I was met by your servant ; he delivered to me a letter from you.* *Is minimō eget mortālis qui minimum cupit*, SYRUS, 286 (Fr.) : *that mortal is in want of least, who wanteth least.*

REMARKS — 1. *Is*, as the antecedent of the relative, is often omitted, chiefly in the Nom., more rarely in an oblique case (619).

*Bis dat qui dat celeriter*, SYRUS, 235 (Fr.) : *he gives twice who gives in a trice.*

Often it has the force of *tālis* (631, 1) in this connection :

*Ego is sum qui nihil umquam meā potius quam meōrum civium causā fecerim*, C., *Fam.*, V. 21, 2 : *I am a man never to have done anything for my own sake, rather than for the sake of my fellow-citizens.*

2. *Is*, with a copulative or adversative particle, is used as *he* or *that* in English, for the purpose of emphasis. Such expressions are : *et is, atque is, isque, and he too, and that too ; neque is, et is nōn, and he not, and that not ; sed is, but he*, further strengthened by *quidem, indeed*. To refer to the whole action *id* is employed.

*Exempla quaerimus et ea nōn antiqua*, C., *Verr.*, III. 90, 210 : *we are looking for examples, and those, too, not of ancient date.* *Epicūrus unā in domō et eā quidem angusta quam magnōs tenuit amicōrum gregēs*, C., *Fin.*, I. 20, 65 : *what shoals of friends Epicurus had in one house, and*



*that a pinched-up one !* *Negōtium māgnū est nāvīgāre atque id mēse Quīntili, C., Att. v. 12, 1 ; it is a big job to take a voyage and that in the month of July.*

3. *Is* does not represent a substantive before a *Gen.*, as in the English *that of*. In Latin the substantive is omitted, or repeated, or a word of like meaning substituted.

*Nōn iūdicīō discipulōrum dicere dēbet magister sed discipulī magistrī, QUINT., II. 2, 13 ; the master is not to speak according to the judgment of the pupils ; but the pupils according to that of the master. Nulla est celeritās quae possit cum animī celeritātē contendere, C., Tusc., I. 19, 43 ; there is no speed that can possibly vie with that of the mind. M. Coelius tribūnāl suū iūxtā C. Trebōnī sellam collocāvit, CAES., B.C., III. 20, 1 ; Marcus Coelius placed his chair of office next to that of Gaius Trebonius.*

Of course *hic*, *ille*, and *iste* can be used with the *Gen.* in their proper sense.

**309. REFLEXIVE.** Instead of forms of *is*, the Reflexive Pronoun *suī*, *sibī*, *sē*, together with the Possessive of the Reflexive *suos* (-*us*), *sua*, *suū* (-*um*) is used. (See 521.)

1. *Regularly* when reference is made to the *grammatical* subject of the sentence :

*Ipse sē quisque diligit quod sibī quisque cārus est, C., Lael., 21, 80 ; every one loves himself, because every one is dear to himself. (Fadius) ā mē diligitur propter summā suā hūmānitātem, C., Fam., XV. 14, 1 ; Fadius is a favourite of mine by reason of his exceeding kindness.*

The subject may be indefinite or (occasionally) impersonal.

*Contentum suis rēbus esse māximae sunt divitiae, C., Par., VI. 3, 51 ; to be content with one's own things (with what one hath) is the greatest riches. Perventum ad suōs erat, L., XXXIII. 8, 6.*

"Pure religion and undefiled is this . . . to keep himself unspotted from the world." JAMES, I. 27.

2. *Frequently* when reference is made to the *actual* subject (521, R. 2) :

*Suos rēx rēginae placet, PL., St., 133 ; every queen favours her own king (every Gill loves her own Jack). Osculātur tigrim suos cūstōs, SEN., E.M., 85, 41 ; her own keeper kisses the tigress (the tigress is kissed by her own keeper). Cui prōposita sit cōservātiō suī necesse est huic partēs quoque suī cārās esse, C., Fin., V. 13, 37 ; he who has in view the preservation of himself (self-preservation) must necessarily hold dear the parts of (that) self also.*

This is especially common with *suos*, which when thus employed has usually its emphatic sense: *own*, *peculiar*, *proper*.

3. **Sui, sibi, sē** are the regular complements of the infinitive and its equivalents when a reflexive idea is involved ; they are also used with prepositions **ergā, inter, propter, per**, for especial emphasis.

(*Rōmāni*) *sui colligendi hostibus facultātem (nōn) relinquunt*, CAES., *B.G.*, III. 6, 1 ; *the Romans do not leave the enemy a chance to rally.* *Ipsū Furniū per sē vidī libentissimē*, C., *Fam.*, x. 3, 1.

4. **Suos (-us)** is also used in prepositional phrases that are joined closely with the substantives ; so after **cum, inter**, and more rarely after **in, intrā**, and **ad**.

*Māgōnem cum clāsse suā in Hispāniā mittunt*, L., XXIII. 32, 11 ; *they sent Mago with his fleet to Spain.* *Helvētiōs in finēs suōs revertī iussit*, CAES., *B.G.*, I. 28, 3 ; *he ordered the Helvetians to return to their own country.*

So the phrases **suō tempore**, *at the right time* ; **suō locō**, *at the right place*.

*Cōmoediāe quem ūsum in pueris putem suō locō dicam*, QUINT., I. 8, 7 ; *what I consider to be the good of comedy in the case of boys I will mention in the proper place.*

NOTES.—1. The writer may retain forms of **is**, if he desires to emphasise his own point of view. So too in prepositional combinations.

(*Caesar*) *Cicerōnem prō eius meritō laudat*, CAES., *B.G.*, v. 52, 4 ; *Caesar praises Cicero according to his desert.* [*Pompēius cum dēcrētum dē mē Capuāe fecit, ipse cūctae Itāliae eius fidem implōrantī signum dedit*, C., *Mil.*, 15, 39.

2. In early comedy and then again in late Latin, **suos** is sometimes strengthened by **sibi** : **Suō sibi gladiō hunc iugulō**, TER., *Ad.*, 958, very rarely in classical Latin (C., *Ph.*, II. 37, 96). Similarly **meā mihi**, PL., *Truc.*, 698.

3. On **suum quisque**, see 318, 3.

4. In dependent clauses the reflexive is used with reference either to the principal or to the subordinate subject. See for fuller treatment 521.

310. **Idem**, *the same*, serves to unite two or more attributes or predicates on a person or thing ; it is often to be translated by *at the same time* ; *likewise, also* ; *yet, notwithstanding*.

(*Cimōn*) *incidit in eandem invidiam quam pater suus*, NEP., v. 3, 1 ; *Cimon fell into the same odium as his father.* **Quidquid honestum [est] idem [est] ūtile**, C., *Off.*, II. 3, 10 ; *whatever is honourable is also (at the same time) useful.* **Nīl prōdest quod nōn laedere possit idem**, OV., *Tr.*, II. 266 ; *nothing helps that may not likewise hurt.* (*Epicūrus*), **cum optimam et praestantissimam naturam dei dicat esse, negat idem esse in deō grātiā**, C., *N.D.*, I. 43, 121 ; *although Epicurus says that the nature of God is*

*transcendently good and great, yet (at the same time) he says that there is no sense of favour in God.* **Difficilis facilis, iūcundus acerbus, es idem,** MART., XII. 47, 1; *crabbed (and) kindly, sweet (and) sour, are you at once.*

REMARKS.—I. When a second attribute is to be added to a substantive it is often connected by **idemque, et idem, atque idem**: **Vir doctissimus Platō atque idem gravissimus philosophōrum omnium**, C., *Leg.*, II. 6, 14; *Plato, a most learned man, and at the same time weightiest of all the philosophers.*

2. *The same as* is expressed by **idem** with **quī**, with **atque** or **ac**, with **ut**, with **cum**, and poetically with the Dative. See 359, N. 6, 642, 643.

**Tibī mēcum in eōdem est pīstrinō vivendum**, C., *Or.*, II. 33, 144; *you have to live in the same treadmill with me.*

3. **Idem** cannot be used with **is**, of which it is only a stronger form (**is + dem**).

**311. I. Ipse, self**, is the distinctive pronoun, and separates a subject or an object from all others:

**Ipse fecī**, *I myself did it and none other, I alone did it, I did it of my own accord, I am the very man that did it.* **Nunc ipsum**, *at this very instant, at this precise moment.*

**Valvae subitō sē ipsae aperuērunt**, C., *Div.*, I. 34, 74; *the folding-doors suddenly opened of their own accord.* (**Catō mortuus est annis octōgintā sex ipsis ante [Cicerōnem] cōsulem**, C., *Br.*, 15, 61; *Cato died just eighty-six years before Cicero's consulship.* **Huic rei quod satis esse visum est militum reliquit** (Caesar); **ipse cum legiōnibus in finēs Trēverōrum proficiscitur**, CAES., *B. G.*, v. 2, 4.

REMARKS.—I. Owing to this distinctive character, **ipse** is often used of *persons* in opposition to *things*; *riders* in opposition to *horses*; *inhabitants* in opposition to the *towns* which they inhabit; the *master* of the house in opposition to his *household*, etc.

**Eō quō mē ipsa mīsit**, PL., *Cas.*, 790; *I am going where mistress sent me.* **Ipse dixit**, C., *N. D.*, I. 5, 10; *the master said* (αὐτὸς ἔφα).

2. **Et ipse**, *likewise, as well*, is used when a new subject takes an old predicate:

[**Locrī urbs**] **dēscīverat et ipsa ad Poenōs**, L., XXIX. 6, 1; *Locri-city had likewise (as well as the other cities) revolted to the Carthaginians.* [**Camillus**] **ex Volscīs in Aequōs trānsiit et ipsōs bellum mōlientēs**, L., VI. 2, 14; *Camillus went across from the Volscians to the Aequians, who were likewise (as well as the Volscians) getting up war.*

CICERO prefers in this meaning **ipse** alone, but **et ipse** occurs occasionally (not in CAESAR or SALLUST), and becomes the prevailing form in LIVY and later.

2. **Ipse** is used to lay stress on the reflexive relation; in

the Nominative when the subject is emphatic, in the Oblique Cases when the object is emphatic.

**Sē ipse laudat**, *he* (and not another) *praises himself*. **Sē ipsum laudat**, *he praises himself* (and not another).

**Piger ipse sibi obstat**, *PROV. (SEN., E.M., 94, 28) ; the lazy man stands in his own way, is his own obstacle*. **Nōn egeō medicinā ; mē ipse cōsōlor**, *C., Lael., 3, 10 ; I do not need medicine ; I comfort myself* (I am my only comforter). **Eōdem modō sapiēs erit affectus ergā amicum quō in sē ipsum**, *C., Fin., 1. 20, 68 ; the wise man will feel towards his friend as he feels towards himself*.

Exceptions are common :

**Quique aliis cāvit, nōn cavet ipse sibi**, *Ov., A.A., 1. 84 ; and he who cared for others, cares not for himself*.

NOTE.—LIVY seems to use sometimes **ipse** in connection with a reflexive as if it were indeclinable or absolute : **cum diēs vēnit, causā ipse prō sē dictā, damnātur**, *L., iv. 44, 10 ; when the appointed day came he pleaded his own cause and was condemned*.

#### 4. Possessive Pronouns.

**312.** The Possessive Pronouns are more rarely used in Latin than in English, and chiefly for the purpose of contrast or clearness.

**Manūs lavā et cēnā**, *C., Or., 11. 60, 246 ; wash (your) hands and dine*. **Praedia mea tū possidēs, ego aliēnā misericordiā vivō**, *C., Rosc. Am., 50, 145 ; you are in possession of my estates, (while) I live on the charity of others*.

REMARKS.—I. Observe the intense use of the Possessive in the sense of *property, peculiarity, fitness* : **suum esse**, *to belong to one's self, to be one's own man*.

**Tempore tuō pūgnāstī**, *L., XXXVIII. 45, 10 ; you have fought at your own time (= when you wished)*. **Hōc honōre mē adfēcistis annō meō**, *C., Leg. Agr., 11. 2, 4 ; you visited me with this honour in my own year (= the first year in which I could be made consul)*. **Pūgna suum finem, cum iacet hostis, habet**, *Ov., Tr., III. 5, 34 ; a fight has reached its fit end when the foe is down*.

2 On the use of the Possessive Pronouns for the Gen., see 364.

#### 5. Indefinite Pronouns.

**313.** **Quidam** means *one, a, a certain one*, definite or indefinite to the speaker, but not definitely designated to the hearer. In the Plural, it is equivalent to *some, sundry*, without emphasis.

**Intereā** mulier quaedam commigrāvit hūc, TER., *And.*, 69 ; *meanwhile a certain woman took up her quarters here.* Intellegendum est quibusdam quaestiōnibus aliōs, quibusdam aliōs esse aptiōrēs locōs, C., *Top.*, 21, 79 ; *it is to be observed that some grounds are more suitable for some questions, for some, others.* Tam nescire quaedam militēs quam scire oportet, TAC., *H.*, 1. 83.

REMARKS.—1. With an adjective **quīdam** often serves to heighten the attribute by adding a vagueness to it. (Gr. *τις*).

**Est quōdam** incredibīlī rōbre animī, C., *Mil.*, 37, 101 ; *really he is endowed with a strange strength of mind (one that is past belief).*

2. **Quīdam** is often used with or without **quasi**, *as if*, to modify an expression :

**Nōn sunt istī** audiendī quī virtūtem dūram et quasi ferream esse quandam volunt, C., *Lael.*, 13, 48 ; *those friends of yours are not to be listened to who will have it (maintain) that virtue is hard, and, as it were, made of iron.* **Est quaedam** virtūtum vitiōrumque vicīnia, QUINT., II. 12, 4 (*cf.* III. 7, 25) ; *there is a certain neighborly relation between virtues and vices.*

3. **Quīdam** may be strengthened by the addition of **certus** or **ūnus** :

**Vita agenda est certō** genere quōdam, nōn quōlibet, C., *Fin.*, III. 7, 24. **Est eloquentia ūna** quaedam dē summīs virtūtibus, C., *Or.*, III. 14, 55.

**314. Aliquis (aliquī)** means, *some one, some one or other*, wholly indefinite to the speaker as well as to the hearer :

[**Dēclāmābam**] cum aliquō cottīdiē, C., *Br.*, 90, 310 ; *I used to declaim with somebody or other daily.*

In the predicate it is often emphatic (by Litotēs, 700) : **sum aliquis, aliquid**, *I am somebody = a person of importance, something = of some weight* ; opposed to : **nūllus sum, nihil sum**, *I am a nobody, nothing.*

This force is often heightened by a following contrast :

**Est hōc aliquid**, tametsī nōn est satis, C., *Div. in Caec.*, 15, 47 ; *this is something, although it is not enough.* **Fac, ut mē velis esse aliquem, quoniam, quī fui et quī esse potui, iam esse nōn possum**, C., *Att.*, III. 15, 8 ; *do make out that I am somebody, since I can no longer be the man I was and the man I might have been.*

REMARKS.—1. **Aliquis** and **aliquī** are distinguished as substantive and adjective ; accordingly, when **aliquis** is used with a substantive the relation is appositional. This always occurs with Proper names ; and even with other substantives the Romans seem to have preferred **aliquis** to **aliquī**. (See 107, N. 1.)

2. With numerals, **aliquis** is used like English *some*. Occasionally also it has the force of *many a*. So in CAES., *B. C.*, I. 2, 2, **dixerat aliquis lēniōrem sententiam**, where **aliquis** refers to three persons, named later.



**315.** *Quis* (*qui*), fainter than *aliquis*, is used chiefly after *sī*, *if*; *nisi*, *unless*; *nē*, *lest*; *num*, *whether*, and in relative sentences. See 107, R.

*Nē quid nimis!* TER., *And.*, 61; *nothing in excess!* *Fit plērumque ut ii qui boni quid volunt adferre, adfingant aliquid, quō faciant id, quod nūntiant, laetius*, C., *Ph.*, 1. 3, 8; *it often happens that those who wish to bring (some) good tidings, invent something more, to make the news more cheering.*

NOTES. — 1. *Aliquis* is used after *sī*, *etc.*, when there is stress: *sī quis*, *if any*; *sī aliquis*, *if some*; *sī quid*, *if anything*; *sī quidquam*, *if anything at all*.

*Sī aliquid dandum est voluptātī, senectūs modicis conviviis dēlectārī potest*, C., *Cato. M.*, 14. 44; *if something is to be given to pleasure (as something or other must), old age can take delight in mild festivities.*

*Aliquis* is regular if the sentence contains two negatives: [*Verrēs*] *nihil umquam fecit sine aliquō quaestū*, C., *Verr.*, v. 5. 11. (446.)

2. *Quis* and *qui* are distinguished as *aliquis* and *aliqui*, but the distinction is often neglected, even in classical Latin. See 107, N. 1.

**316.** *Quispiam* is rarer than *aliquis*, but not to be distinguished from it, except that *quispiam* never intimates importance. *Dixerit quispiam*, C., *Cal. M.*, 3, 8; *some one may say.*

**317.** 1. *Quisquam* and *ullus* (adjective) mean *any one* (at all), and are used chiefly in negative sentences, in sentences that imply total negation, and in sweeping conditions:

[*Iūstitia*] *numquam nocet cuiquam*, C., *Fin.*, 1. 16, 50; *justice never hurts anybody.* *Quis umquam Graecōrum rhētorum ā Thūcēdide quidquam dūxit?* C., *Or.*, 9, 317; *what Greek rhetorician ever drew anything from Thucydides?* [None]. *Sī quisquam, ille sapiēns fuit*, C., *Lael.*, 2, 9; *if any one at all (was) wise, he was.* *Quamdū quisquam erit qui tē dēfendere audeat, vivēs*, C., *Cal.*, 1. 2, 6; *so long as there shall be any one to dare defend you, live on.* *Hostem esse in Syriā negant ūllum*, C., *Flam.*, III. 8. 10; *they say that there is not any enemy in Syria.* *Omnīnō nēmō ūllus rei fuit ēmptor cui dēfuerit hic vēnditor*, C., *Ph.*, II. 38, 97; *generally there was never a buyer of anything who lacked a seller in him (no one ever wanted to buy anything that he was not ready to sell).*

So after comparatives:

*Sōlis candor inlūstrior est quam ūllius ignis*, C., *N. D.*, II. 15, 40; *the brilliancy of the sun is more radiant than that of any fire.*

NOTES. — 1. *Quisquam* is occasionally (principally in Livi) strengthened by *ūnus*, especially after a negative. *Cum multī magis fremerent, quam quisquam unus recūsāre auderet*, L., III. 45, 4.

2. After *sine*, *without* *omnī* is often used instead of *ūllō* (*ūllā*) in early Latin: *Sine omnī cūrā dormiās*, Pl., *Trin.*, 621.

3. On the use of *quisquam* as an adj., see 107, 3, N. 2.



2. The negative of **quisquam** is **nēmō**, *nobody*; **nihil**, *nothing* (108). The negative of **ūllus** is **nūllus**, *no, none*, which is also used regularly as a substantive in the Genitive and Ablative instead of **nēminis** and **nēmine**.

**Nēmō** is also sometimes used apparently as an adjective, though the conception is usually appositional.

**Nēmō vir māgnus**, C., *N.D.*, II. 66, 167; *no great man, no one (who is) a great man*.

NOTES.—1. On **neque quisquam** and **et nēmō**, see 480.

2. **Nūllus** is used in familiar language instead of **nōn** (so sometimes in English): **Philippus nūllus ūsquā**, L., XXXII. 35, 2; *no Philip anywhere*. **Quis** is also used familiarly: **Prōspectum petit, Anthea sī quem videat**, V., A., I. 181; *an Antheus, i.e., Antheus or somebody who would answer for him*.

3. **Nēmō** and **nūllus** are occasionally strengthened by **ūnus**.

**318. 1. Quisque** means *each one*, as opposed to **omnis**, *every*, and is usually post-positive.

**Mēns cūiusque, is est quisque**, C., *Rep.*, VI. 24, 26; *each man's mind is each man's self*. **Laudāti omnēs sunt dōnātique prō meritō quisque**, L., XXXVIII. 23; *all were praised and rewarded, each one according to his desert*. **Quam quisque nōrit artem in hāc sē exerceat**, [C.], *Tusc.*, I. 18, 41. (616.)

2. With superlatives and ordinals **quisque** is loosely translated *every*:

**Optimum quidque rārissimum est**, C., *Fin.*, II. 25, 81; *every good thing is rare; more accurately, the better a thing, the rarer it is*. (645, R. 2.) **Quintō quōque annō Sicilia tōta cēnsētur**, C., *Verr.*, II. 56, 139; *every fifth year all Sicily is assessed*.

3. **Quisque** combines readily with the reflexives, **suī**, **sibī**, **sē**, **suus**, in their emphatic sense (309, 2). Here, except for special reasons, the reflexive precedes. **Suum cuique** has become a standing phrase.

**Sua quemque fraus et suus terror vexat**, C., *Rosc.Am.*, 24, 67; *it is his own sin and his own alarm that harasses a man*.

NOTES.—1. After CICERO's time, owing to the phraseological character of the combination, **suī etc. quisque**, we find it used without agreement.

**Exercitus āmissō duce āc passim multis sibī quisque imperium petentibus brevī dilābitur**, S., *Iug.*, 18, 5. **Instigandō suōs quisque populōs effēcere ut omne Volscum nōmen dēficeret**, L., II. 38, 6.

2. Classical but not common is the attraction of **quisque** into the case of the reflexive. **Haec prōclivitās ad suum quodque genus ā similitūdine corporis aegrōtātiō dicātur**, C., *Tusc.*, IV. 12, 28.

3. **Quisque** combined with **primus** has two meanings : (a) *as early as possible, (b) one after the other in order (deinceps)*.

**Primō quōque tempore**, C., *Ph.*, III. 15, 39 ; *at the earliest time possible*. **Primum quidque** (*each thing in order*) **cōsiderā quāle sit**, C., *N.D.*, I. 27, 77.

4. The various uses of **quisque** are well summed up in NAGELSBACH'S formulæ :

a. **Nōn omnia omnibus tribuenda sunt, sed suum cuique** ;

b. **Omnēs idem faciunt, sed optimus quisque optimē** ;

c. **Nōn omnibus annis hōc fit, sed tertiō quōque annō** ;

d. **Nōn omnēs idem faciunt, sed quod quisque vult**.

**319. Alter** and **alius** are both translated *other, another*, but **alter** refers to one of two, **alius** to diversity. They are used in various phraseological ways, which can be best shown by examples :

**Sōlus aut cum alterō**, *alone or with (only) one other* ; **alter Nerō**, *a second Nero*.

**Alter alterum quaerit**, *one (definite person) seeks the other (definite person)* ; **alius alium quaerit**, *one seeks one, another another* ; **alterī—alterī**, *one party—another party (already defined)* ; **alii—alii**, *some—others*. **Alter** often means *neighbor, brother, fellow-man* ; **alius**, *third person*.

### Alter :

(**Āgēsilāūs**) **fuit claudus alterō pede**, *NER.*, XVII. 8, 1 ; *Agesilaüs was lame of one foot*. **Alterā manū fert lapidem, pānem ostentat alterā**, *PL.*, *Aul.*, 195 ; *in one hand a stone he carries, in the other holds out bread*. **Mors nec ad vivōs pertinet nec ad mortuōs : alterī nulli** (317, 2, N. 2) **sunt, alterōs nōn attinget**, C., *Tusc.*, I. 38, 91 ; *death concerns neither the living nor the dead : the latter are not, the former it will not reach*.

### Alius :

**Fallācia alia aliam trūdit**, *TER.*, *And.*, 779 ; *one lie treads on the heels of another (indefinite series)*. **Alii voluptātis causā omnia sapientēs facere dixerunt ; alii cum voluptāte dignitātem cōiungendam putāvērunt**, C., *Carl.*, 15, 41 ; *some have said that wise men do everything for the sake of pleasure, others have thought that pleasure is to be combined with dignity*. **Divitiās alii praepōnunt, alii honōres**, C., *Lacl.*, 6, 20 ; *some prefer riches, others honors*. **Alii vestrum ānserēs sunt, alii canēs**, C., *Rosc. Am.*, 20, 57 ; *some of you are geese, others dogs*. **Aliud alii nātūra iter ostendit**, S., C., 2, 9 ; *nature shows one path to one man, another path to another man*.

### Alter and alius :

**Ab aliō expectēs alterī quod fecerīs**, *SYRUS*, 2 (Fr.) ; *you may look for from another what you've done unto your brother (from No. 3, what No. 1 has done to No. 2)*.

NOTES.—1. **Alius** is found occasionally, especially in late Latin, for **alter**: **alius Nerō**, Suet., *Tit.* 7; but in **CAES.**, *B.G.*, I. I. 1, **alius** follows **ūnus**. **Alii** for **reliqui** or **cēteri** is occasional, in the earlier times, but more common in **LIVY** and later.  
2. The Greek usage of **alius** in the meaning *besides*, is post-Ciceronian and rare.  
**Eō missa plaustra iūmentaue alia**, L., IV. 41, 8.

## APPOSITION.

**320.** By apposition one substantive is placed by the side of another, which contains it :

**Cicerō orātor**, *Cicero the orator*. **Rhēnus flūmen**, *the river Rhine*.

## CONCORD.

**321.** The word in apposition agrees with the principal word (or words) in case, and as far as it can in gender and number :

Nom. **Hērodotus pater historiae**, *Herodotus the father of history*;  
Gen. **Hērodotī patris historiae**; Dat. **Hērodotō patrī historiae**.

**Cnidus et Colophōn, nōbilissimae urbēs, captae sunt**, Cf. C., *Imp.*, 12, 33; *Cnidus and Colophon, most noble cities, were taken*. **Omnium doctrinārum inventricēs Athēnae**, Cf. C., *Or.*, I. 4, 13; *Athens, the inventor of all branches of learning*.

REMARKS.—I. Exceptions in *number* are due to special uses, as, for example, when **dēliciae** or **amōrēs**, etc., are used of a Singular :

**Pompēius, nostrī amōrēs, ipse sē affixit**, C., *Att.*, II. 19, 2; *Pompey, our special passion, has wrecked himself*.

2. The Possessive Pronoun takes the Gen. in apposition :

**Tuum, hominis simplicis, pectus vidimus**, C., *Ph.*, II. 43, 111; *we have seen your bosom bared, you open-hearted creature!* **Urbs meā ūnius operā fuit salva**, Cf. C., *Pis.*, 3, 6; *the city was saved by my exertions alone*.

3. On the agreement of the predicate with the word in apposition, see 211, R. 6.

NOTES.—1. In poetry, instead of the Voc. in apposition, the Nom. is often found. **Semper celebrābere dōnis, Corniger Hesperidum, fluvius rēgnātor aquārum**, V., *A.*, VIII. 77. In prose not before **PLINY**.

2. Very rarely persons are looked upon as things, and the Appositives used in the neuter: **Dum patrēs et plēbem, invalida et inermia, lūdificētur**, Tac., *Ann.*, I. 46.

**322. Partitive Apposition.**—Partitive Apposition is that form of Apposition in which a part is taken out of the whole. It is sometimes called Restrictive Apposition.

**Māxuma pars ferē mōrem hunc hominēs habent**, Pl., *Capt.*, 232; *man-kind—pretty much the greatest part of them—have this way*. **Cētera multitudō sorte decumus quisque ad supplicium lēcti (sunt)**, L., II. 59, 11; (of) *the rest of the crowd every tenth man was chosen by lot for punishment*.

**323. Distributive Apposition.**—Distributive Apposition is that form of Apposition in which the whole is subdivided into its parts, chiefly with **alter—alter, the one—the other ; quisque, uterque, each one ; alii—alii, pars—pars, some—others.** (It is often called Partitive Apposition.)

**Duae filiae altera occisa altera capta est, CAES., B.G., I. 53. 4 ; (of) two daughters, the one was killed, the other captured.**

REMARK.—The Part. Gen. is more commonly employed than either of these forms of apposition.

NOTES.—1. Partitive Apposition is not found in CICERO or CAESAR, and Distributive Apposition rarely. They are more frequent in SALLUST, and not uncommon in LIVY.

2. The Greek figure of *the whole and the part* (σχήμα καθ' ὅλον καὶ μέρος) is rare and poetical in Latin. **Latagum saxo occupat os faciemque adversam, V., A., X. 698 ; snātes Latagus with a boulder, full (his) mouth and face (Cf. Eng. "hand and foot").**

**324. Apposition to a Sentence.**—Sometimes an Accusative stands in apposition to a whole preceding sentence ; either explaining the contents of the sentence or giving the end or the aim of the action involved in the sentence. The latter usage, however, is not found in CICERO or CAESAR.

**Admoneor ut aliquid etiam de sepultūrā dicendum existimem, rem nōn difficile, C., Tusc., I. 43. 102 ; I am reminded to take into consideration that something is to be said about burial also—an easy matter. Dēserunt tribūnal, ut quis praetōriānōrum militum occurreret manūs intentātes, causam discordiae et initium armōrum, TAC., Ann., I. 27.**

If the main verb is passive the Appositive may be in the Nominative: **TAC., Ann., III. 27.**

NOTES.—1. Neuter adjectives and participles are occasionally used in the same way, and some regard such neuters as Nominatives.

2. This Acc. is to be regarded as the object effected (230) by the general action of the sentence.

## Predicative Attribution and Predicative Apposition.

**325.** Any case may be attended by the same case in Predicative Attribution or Apposition, which differ from the ordinary Attribution or Apposition in translation only.

NOMINATIVE : **Filius aegrōtus rediit.**

Ordinary Attribution : *The sick son returned.*

Predicative Attribution : *The son returned sick — he was sick when he returned.*

**Herculēs iuvenis leōnem interfēcit.**

Ordinary Apposition : *The young man Hercules slew a lion.*

Predicative Apposition : *Hercules, when a young man, slew a lion = he was a young man when he slew a lion.*

GENITIVE : *Potestās eius adhibendae uxōris, the permission to take her to wife.*

DATIVE : *Amicō vivō nōn subvēnistī, you did not help your friend (while he was) alive.*

ACCUSATIVE : *Herculēs cervam vivam cēpit.*

Ordinary Attribution : *Hercules caught a living doe.*

Predicative Attribution : *Hercules caught a doe alive.*

ABLATIVE : *Aere ūtuntur importātō, they use imported copper = the copper which they use is imported.*

REMARKS.—I. The Voc., not being a case proper, is not used predicatively. Exceptions are apparent or poetical.

*Quō, moritūre, ruis ?* V., A., x. 810 ; “ *whither dost thou rush to die* ” (thou doomed to die) ? *Sic veniās, hodiernē*, TIB., i. 7, 53.

Notice here the old phrase : *Macte virtūte estō*, H., S., i. 2. 31 ; *increase in virtue = heaven speed thee in thy high career.*

*Macte* is regarded by some as an old Voc., from the same stem as *māgnus* ; by others as an adverb. A third view is that *macte* with *estō* is an adverb, and only when used absolutely a Vocative.

2. *Victōrēs rediērunt* may mean, *the conquerors returned*, or, *they returned conquerors* ; and a similar predicative use is to be noticed in *idem*, *the same* : *Iidem abeunt quī vēnerant*, C., *Fin.*, iv. 3. 7 ; *they go away just as they had come* (literally, *the same persons as they had come*).

3. Predicative Attribution and Apposition are often to be turned into an abstract substantive :

*Dēfendī rem publicam adulēscēns, nōn dēseram senex*, C., *Ph.*, ii. 46, 118 ; *I defended the state in my youth, I will not desert her in my old age.*

So with prepositions :

*Ante Cicerōnem cōsulem, before the consulship of Cicero : ante urbem conditam, before the building of the city.*

4. Do not confound the “ *as* ” of apposition with the “ *as* ” of comparison—*ut, quasi, tamquam, sicut, velut* (602, N. 1, 642) : *Hanc (virtūtem) vōbīs tamquam hērēditātem māiores vestri reliquērunt*, C., *Ph.*, iv. 5, 13 : *your ancestors left you this virtue as (if it were) a legacy.*

5. When especial stress is laid on the adjective or substantive predicate, in combination with the verbal predicate, the English language is prone to resolve the sentence into its elements :

*Fragilem trucī commisit pelagō ratem primus*, H., *O.*, i. 3, 10 ; *his frail bark to the wild waves he trusted first = to trust his frail bark to the wild waves he was first.* *Ūna salūs victīs nullam spērāre salutem*, V., A., ii. 353 ; *sole safety for the vanquished 'tis, to hope for none—the only safety that the vanquished have is to hope for none.*



6. The English idiom often uses the adverb and adverbial expressions instead of the Latin adjective : so in adjectives of *inclination* and *disinclination*, *knowledge* and *ignorance*, of *order* and *position*, of *time* and *season*, and of *temporary condition* generally : *libēns*, *with pleasure* : *volēns*, *willing(ly)* : *nōlēns*, *unwilling(ly)* : *invītus*, *against one's will* : *prūdēns*, *aware* : *imprūdēns*, *unawares* : *sciēns*, *knowing(ly)* : *primus*, *prior*, *first* : *ūltimus*, *last* : *medius*, *in, about the middle* : *hodiernus*, *to-day* : *mātūtīnus*, *in the morning* : *frequēns*, *frequent(ly)* : *sublīmis*, *aloft* : *tōtus*, *wholly* : *sōlus*, *ūnus*, *alone*, and many others.

Ego eum ā mē invītissimus dimīsi, C., *Fam.*, XIII. 63, 1 ; *I dismissed him most unwillingly*. Plūs hodiē boni fēci imprūdēns quam sciēns ante hunc diem umquam, TER., *Hec.*, 880 ; *I have done more good to-day unawares than I have ever done knowingly before*. Adcurrit, mediam mulierem complectitur, TER., *And.*, 133 ; *he runs up, puts his arms about the woman's waist*. Quī prior strinxerit ferrum ēius victōria erit, L., XXIV. 38, 5 (244, R. 2). Vespertīnus pete tēctum, H., *Ep.*, I. 6, 20 ; *seek thy dwelling at eventide*. Rārus venit in cēnācula milles, JUV., X. 18 ; *the soldiery rarely comes into the garret*. Sē tōtōs trādidērunt voluptātibus, C., *Lael.*, 23. 86 ; *they have given themselves wholly to pleasure*. Sōli hōc contingit sapientī, C., *Par.*, V. 1, 34 ; *this good luck happens to the wise man alone = it is only the wise man who has this good luck*.

7. Carefully to be distinguished are the uses of *primus*, and the adverbs *primum*, *first, for the first time*, and *primō*, *at first*. *Primum* means first in a series ; *primō*, first in a contrast. But these distinctions are not always observed.

*Primum* docent esse deōs, deinde quālēs sint, tum mundum ab iis administrārī, postrēmō cōsultare eōs rēbus hūmānis, C., *N.D.*, II. 1, 3 ; *first, they teach us that there are gods, next of what nature they are, then that the world is ruled by them, finally, that they take thought for human affairs*. *Primō* Stōicōrum mōre agāmus, deinde nostrō institūtō vagādimur, C., *Tusc.*, III. 6, 13 ; *let us treat the subject at first after the manner of the Stoics, afterwards we will ramble after our own fashion*.

## B.

### 1. Multiplication of the Predicate.

326. The Multiplication of the Predicate requires no further rules than those that have been given in the general doctrine of Concord.

### 2. Qualification of the Predicate.

327. The Qualification of the Predicate may be regarded as an External or an Internal change :



I. External change : combination with an object.

1. Direct Object, Accusative. 2. Indirect Object, Dative.

II. Internal change : combination with an attribute which may be in the form of

- |                       |                             |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. The Genitive case. | 3. Preposition with a case. |
| 2. The Ablative.      | 4. An Adverb.               |

NOTE. The Infinitive forms (Infinitive, Gerund, Gerundive, and Supine) appear now as objects, now as attributes, and require a separate treatment.

## I. External Change.

### Accusative.

The great function of the Accusative is to form temporary compounds with the verb, as the great function of the Genitive is to form temporary compounds with the noun. Beyond this statement everything is more or less extra-grammatical, and sharp subdivisions are often unsatisfactory. Still it may be said that

**328.** The Accusative is the case of the Direct Object.

The Direct Object is the object which defines directly the action of the verb.

REMARK.—The Dative defines indirectly because it involves an Accusative ; and the Genitive with the verb depends upon the nominal idea contained in the verb.

1. (a) 'The Object may be contained in the verb (Inner Object, Object Effected) :

*Deus mundum creāvit, God made a creation—the universe.*

(b) Akin to this is the Accusative of Extent :

*Ā rēctā cōnscentiā trāversum unguem nōn oportet discēdere, C., Att., XIII. 20, 4 ; one ought not to swerve a nailbreadth from a right conscience. Decem annōs (Trōia) oppūgnāta est, L., v. 4, 11 ; ten years was Troy besieged. Māximam partem lacte vivunt, CAES., B.G., IV. I, 8 ; for the most part they live on milk.*

2. The object may be distinct from the verb (Outer Object, Object Affected) :

*Deus mundum gubernat, God steers the universe.*

## General View of the Accusative.

## 329. I. Inner Object : Object Effected :

Cognate Accusative.

Accusative of Extent.

1. In Space.

2. In Time.

3. In Degree.

Terminal Accusative (Point Reached).

## II. Outer Object: Object Affected :

1. Whole.

2. Part (so-called Greek Accusative).

## III. Inner and Outer Objects combined :

1. Asking and Teaching.

2. Making and Taking.

## IV. Accusative as the most general form of the object (object created or called up by the mind) :

1. In Exclamations.

2. Accusative and Infinitive.

## DIRECT OBJECT (Inner and Outer).

NOTE. The Accusative is the object reached by the verb. This object is either in apposition to the result of the action of the verb, and then it is called the Inner Object or Object Effected ; or it is in attribution to the result of the action, and then it is said to be the Outer Object or Object Affected. The Inner Object is sometimes called the Voluntary Accusative, because it is already contained in the verb ; the Outer Object is sometimes called the Necessary Accusative, because it is needed to define the character of the action ; both verb and substantive contribute to the result ; compare **hominem caedere** (**occidere**), *to slay a man* (Object Affected), with **homicidium facere** (Cf. QUINT., v. 9, 9), *to commit manslaughter* (Object Effected).

## 330. Active Transitive Verbs take the Accusative case :

**Rōmulus Urbem Rōmam condidit**, (Cf. C., *Div.*, i. 17, 30 ; *Romulus founded the City of Rome*. (Object Effected.)

[**Mēns**] **regit corpus**, C., *Rep.*, vi. 24, 26 ; *mind governs body*. (Object Affected.)

REMARK. Many verbs of Emotion which are intrans. in English are trans. in Latin, as : **dolēre**, *to grieve* (for) ; **dēspērāre**, *to despair* (of) ; **horrēre**, *to shudder* (at) ; **mirārī**, *to wonder* (at) ; **ridēre**, *to laugh* (at).

**Honōrēs dēspērānt**, C., *Cat.*, ii. 9, 19 ; *they despair of honours* (give them up in despair). **Necāta est Vitia quod filii necem flēvisset** (541). Tac., *Ann.*, vi. 10, 1 ; *Vitia was executed for having wept* (for) *her son's execution*. **Cōnschia mēns rēcti Fāmae mendācia risit**, Ov., *F.*, iv. 311 ; *conscious of right, her soul* (but) *laughed* (at) *the falsehoods of Rumour*.

NOTES.—1. From the definition of transitive given above (213, R.) it will be seen that this traditional rule reverses the poles ; it is retained merely for practical purposes.

2. This Acc. with verbs of Emotion is very rare in early Latin, and is not widely extended even in the classical period. With most verbs an Abl. of Cause or a prepositional phrase is much more common, as : *Cūr dē suā virtūte dēspērārent ?* CAES., *B. G.*, I. 40, 4.

3. The Acc. with verbal substantives is confined to PLAUTUS : *quid tibi nōs tāctiōst, mendice homō ?* *Aul.*, 423.

4. The Acc. with verbal adjectives in *-undus* is rare and mainly post-classical : *Haec prope cōntiōnābundus circumibat hominēs*, *L.*, III. 47, 2.

**331.** Verbs compounded with the prepositions *ad*, *ante*, *circum*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *per*, *praeter*, *sub*, *subter*, *super*, and *trāns*, which become transitive, take the Accusative.

All with *circum*, *per*, *praeter*, *trāns*, and *subter*.

Many with *ad*, *in*, and *super*.

Some with *ante*, *con*, *inter*, *ob*, and *sub*. See 347.

*Pythagorās Persārum magōs adiit*, *C.*, *Fin.*, v. 29, 87 ; *Pythagoras applied to (consulted) the Persian magi.* *Stella Veneris antegreditur sōlem*, *C.*, *N. D.*, II. 20, 53 ; *the star Venus goes in advance of the sun.* *Omnēs Domitium circumsistunt*, *CAES.*, *B. C.*, I. 20, 5 ; *all surround Domitius.* *Eam, si opus esse vidēbitur, ipse conveniam*, *C.*, *Fam.*, v. II, 2 ; *I will go to see her, myself, if it shall seem expedient.* *Convīvia cum patre nōn inibat*, *C.*, *Rosc. Am.*, 18, 52 ; *he would not go to banquets with his father.* *Fretum, quod Naupactum et Patrās interfluit*, *L.*, XXVII. 29, 9 ; *the frith that flows between Naupactus and Patrae.* *Alexander tertiō et tricēsimo annō mortem obiit*, *C.*, *Ph.*, v. 17, 48 ; *Alexander died in his thirty-third year.* *Caesar omnem agrum Picēnum percurrit*, *CAES.*, *B. C.*, I. 15, 1 ; *Caesar traversed rapidly all the Picenian district.* [*Populus*] *solet dignōs praeterire*, *C.*, *Planc.*, 3, 8 ; *the people is wont to pass by the worthy.* *Epaminōndās poenam subiit*, *Cf. NEP.*, XV. 8, 2 ; *Epaminondas submitted to the punishment.* *Criminum vim subterfugere nullō modō poterat*, *C.*, *Verr.*, I. 3, 8 ; *he could in no way evade the force of the charges.* *Rōmānī ruīnās mūrī supervādēbant*, *L.*, XXXII. 24, 5 ; *the Romans marched over the ruins of the wall.* *Crassus Euphrātem nullā bellī causā trānsiit*, *Cf. C.*, *Fin.*, III. 22, 75 ; *Crassus crossed the Euphrates without any cause for war.*

REMARKS.—1. If the simple verb is trans., it can take two Accusatives : *Equitum māgnam partem flūmen trāiēcīt*, *CAES.*, *B. C.*, I. 55, 1 ; *he threw a great part of the cavalry across the river.*

2. With many of these verbs the preposition may be repeated ; but never *circum* : *Cōpiās trāiēcīt Rhodanum*, or *trāns Rhodanum*, *he threw his troops across the Rhone.*

3. Sometimes a difference of signification is caused by the addition of the preposition :

**Adire ad aliquem**, to go to a man : **adire aliquem**, to apply to (to consult) a man.

### INNER OBJECT.

**332.** Any verb can take an Accusative of the Inner Object, when that object serves to define more narrowly or to explain more fully the contents of the verb.

The most common form of this object is a neuter pronoun or adjective.

The most striking form is the so-called Cognate Accusative.

**333. 1.** Neuter Pronouns and Adjectives are often used to define or modify the substantive notion that lies in the verb.

**Xenophōn eadem ferē peccat**, C., *N.D.*, I. 12, 31 ; *Xenophon makes very much the same mistakes.* **Vellem equidem idem possem glōriārī quod Cŷrus**, C., *Cat.M.*, 10, 32 ; *for my part I could wish that it were in my power to make the same boast as Cyrus.*

With trans. verbs an Acc. of the person can be employed besides :

**Discipulōs id ūnum moneō ut praeceptōrēs suōs nōn minus quam ipsa studia ament**, QUINT., II. 9, 1 ; *I give pupils this one piece of advice, that they love their teachers no less than their studies themselves.*

REMARKS.—1. The usage is best felt by comparing the familiar English *it* after intrans. verbs, “to walk it, to foot it,” etc., where “it” represents the substantive that lies in “walk, foot,” etc.

2. In many cases the feeling of the case is lost to the consciousness, so especially with the interrogative **quid**, which has almost the force of **cūr**. **Quid ridēs ?** *what (laughter) are you laughing — what means your laughter ?*

**Id nōs ad tē, si quid vellēs, vēnimus**, PL., *M.G.*, 1158 ; *that's why we have come to you, to see if you wanted anything.*

NOTES.—1. With verbs of Emotion this Acc. gives the ground of the emotion :

**Utrumque laetor** (*I have a double gladness, I am doubly glad*), **et sine dolore tē fuisse et animō valuisse**, C., *Fam.*, VII. 1, 1. **Laetae exclāmant : vēnit ! id quod** (*in this that, for this that*) **mē repente aspexerant**, TER., *Heu.*, 368.

From this arises the causal force of **quod**, *in that = because*.

2. Occasionally, but at all periods, the relative is used thus, to facilitate connection with a demonstrative clause :

**Quae hominēs arant** (*what men do in the way of plowing, etc.*), **nāvigant, aedificant, omnia virtūtī pārent**, S., C., 2, 7. **Id ipsum quod maneam in vitā** (*in the very fact of my remaining in life*) **peccāre mē [existimō]**, C., *Fam.*, IV. 13, 2.

2. *Cognate Accusative*.—When the dependent word is of the same origin or of kindred meaning with the verb, it is called the Cognate Accusative, and usually has an attribute.

**Faciam ut mei memineris dum vitam vivās**, PL., *Pers.*, 494 ; *I'll make you think of me the longest day you live.* **Mirum atque inscitum somniāvi somnium**, PL., *Rud.*, 597 ; *a marvellous and uncanny dream I've dreamed.* **Iūrāvī vērissimum iūs iurandum**, C., *Fam.*, v. 2, 7 ; *I swore the truest of oaths.*

REMARK.—After the analogy of the Cognate Acc. are many phraseological usages, such as **rem certāre**, *to fight a case* ; **foedus ferire**, *to make a treaty* (compare, *to strike a bargain*) ; **iūs respondere**, *to render an opinion* ; **causam vincere**, *to win a case, etc.* Also the phrases with **ire** : **exsequiās ire**, *to attend a funeral* ; **infitiās ire**, *to deny, etc.*

NOTES.—1. The omission of the attribute is found most often in legal phraseology, proverbs, and the like :

**Maiōrum nēmō servitūtem servivit**, C., *Top.*, 6, 29 ; *of our ancestors no one ever slaved (what you would call) a slavery.* **Sī servos fūrtum faxit noxiamve noxit**, XII. Tab.

2. When the Cognate Acc. is replaced by a word of similar meaning, but of a different root, the effect is much the same as when an adjective is employed with the normal Accusative. This usage, however, is rare, and mainly poetical.

**Tertiam iam aetātem hominum (Nestor) vivēbat**, C., *Cat. M.*, 10, 31 (reading doubtful). **Omne militābitur bellum**, H., *Epod.*, 1, 23.

3. Interesting extensions are found in the poets, and rarely in prose.

**Quī Curiōs simulant et Bacchānālia vivunt**, JUV., II. 3. **Nunc Satyrum, nunc agrestem Cyclōpa movētur**, H., *Ep.*, II. 2, 125.

4. Instead of the Inner Acc. the Abl. is occasionally found : **lapidibus pluere**, *to rain stones* ; **sanguine sūdāre**, *to sweat blood.*

**Herculis simulācrum multō sūdōre mānāvit**, C., *Div.*, I. 34, 74 ; *the statue of Hercules ran freely with sweat.*

5. Verbs of Smell and Taste have the Inner Object, which is an extension of the Cognate variety.

**Piscis sapit ipsum mare**, Cf. SEN., *N. Q.*, III. 18, 2 ; *the fish tastes of the very sea.* **Nōn omnēs possunt olēre unguenta exōtica**, PL., *Most.*, 42 ; *it is not every one can smell of foreign perfumes.*

6. A poetical and post-classical construction is that which makes a substantival neuter adjective the object of a verb. This occurs chiefly with verbs of sound : **nec mortāle sonāns**, V., *A.*, VI. 50 ; **māgna sonātūrum**, H., *S.*, I. 4, 44. Yet bolder is **nec vōx hominem sonat**, V., *A.*, I. 328. A verb of sight is found in **tam cernis acūtum**, H., *S.*, I. 3, 26. Cf. **dulce ridentem**, H., *O.*, I. 22, 23.

### Accusative of Extent.

The Accusative of Extent has to do with Degree, Space, or Time.

334. The Accusative of Extent in Degree is confined to neuter adjectives and pronouns used substantively, **multum**, **plūs**, **tantum**, **quantum**, *etc.*

**Sī mē amās tantum quantum profectō amās**, C., *Att.*, II. 20, 5 ; *if you love me as much as in fact you do love me.*



REMARKS.—1. The number of adjectives and pronouns so used is large, and in many cases the form is felt more as an adverb than as a substantive.

2. Here belong the adverbial Accusatives *tuam, etc., partem, vicem*, which occur occasionally at all periods.

**335.** The Accusative of Extent in Space is used properly only with words that involve a notion of space. When space is not involved in the governing word the idea of extent is given by the use of *per, through*.

*Trabēs, distantēs inter sē binōs pedēs, in solō collocantur*, CAES., *B.G.*, VII. 23. 1; *beams two feet apart are planted in the ground*. *Ā rēctā cōn-scientiā trāversum unguem nōn oportet discēdere*, C. *Att.*, XIII. 20. 4 (328. b). *Equitēs per ōram maritimam dispositi sunt*, (Cf. CAES., *B.C.*, III. 24. 4; *cavalry were posted along the sea shore*. *Phoebidās iter per Thēbās [fēcit]*, NEP., XVI. 1. 2; *Phoebidas marched through Thebes*. *Militēs aggerem lātum pedēs trecentōs trīgintā altum pedēs octōgintā extrūxērunt*, CAES., *B.G.*, VII. 24. 1; *the soldiers raised an embankment three hundred and thirty feet wide (and) eighty feet high*.

REMARKS.—1. The adjectives in most common use with this Accusative are *longus, long, lātus, wide, altus, deep, high*. *Thickness*, which was indicated in early times by *crassus*, is expressed by phrases with *crassitūdō*. Similarly occur phrases with *māgnitūdō, longitūdō, lātitūdō, altitūdō*. *Profundus, deep*, never occurs with the Accusative.

2. With *abesse* and *distāre*, an Abl. of Measure may also be used:

*Milibus passuum quattuor et viginti abesse*, CAES., *B.G.*, I. 41. 5; *to be twenty-four miles from....*

NOTE.—When the point of reference is taken for granted, *ab* (*ā*) with the Abl. is occasionally used; but only by CAESAR and LIVY. Here it has been suggested that *ab* is used adverbially, and the Abl. is one of Measure.

(*Hostēs*) *ab milibus passuum minus duōbus castra posuērunt*, CAES., *B.G.*, II. 7. 3; *the enemy pitched their camp less than two miles off*.

**336.** The Accusative of Extent in Time accompanies the verb, either with or without *per*, in answer to the question, *How long?*

*Duodēquadrāgintā annōs tyrannus Syracūsānōrum fuit Dionysius*, C. *Tusc.*, V. 20. 57; *thirty-eight years was Dionysius tyrant of Syracuse*. (*Gorgiās*) *centum et novem vixit annōs*, QUINT., III. 1. 9 (233. N. 2). *Lūdī per decem diēs facti sunt*, C. *Cat.*, III. 8. 20; *games were performed for ten days*. *Est mēcum per diem tōtum*, PLIN., *Ep.*, I. 16. 7; *he is with me the livelong day*. *Sedet aeternumque sedēbit infēlix Thēseus*, V. *A.*, VI. 617; *there sits and shall forever sit unhappy Theseus*.



REMARKS.—1. In giving definite numbers with *iam*, *iam diū*, *iam dūdum*, etc., the Latin often employs the ordinal where the English prefers the cardinal. Compare the Ablative of Measure (403).

*Mithridātēs annum iam tertium et vicēsimum rēgnat*, C., *Imp.*, 3, 7 (230).

2. *Per* with the Acc. is frequently used like the Abl. of Time Within Which. *Per illa tempora = illis temporibus*, *in those times*.

So especially with the negative :

*Nūlla rēs per triennium nisi ad nūtum istius iūdicāta est*, C., *Verr.*, 1. 5, 13 ; *no matter was decided during (in) the three years except at his beck*.

3. With an Aoristic tense the dating point is given by *abhinc*, which usually precedes the temporal designation.

*Abhinc annōs factumst sēdecim*, PL., *Cas.*, 39 ; *'twas done sixteen years ago*. *Dēmōsthēnēs abhinc annōs prope trecentōs fuit*, C., *Div.*, II. 57, 118 ; *Demosthenes lived nearly three hundred years ago*.

The use of an Acc. with an Aoristic tense without a dating word, like *abhinc*, is very rare and doubtful. CAES., *B. G.*, II. 35, 4, has been emended.

4. *Nātus*, *old (born)*, seems to be an exception to R. 3, but it is only an apparent one, as the dating point is involved in the verb with which it is construed. For various constructions with *nātus*, see 296, R. 5.

*Puer decem annōs nātus est*, *the boy is ten years old*. *Quadrāgintā annōs nātus rēgnāre [coepit]*, C., *Div.*, I. 23, 46 ; (he was) *forty years old (when) he began to reign*.

NOTES.—1. The use of the indefinite substantival adjective is rare. PLAUTUS uses *sempiternum*, VERGIL introduces *aeternum* (see example above), while *perpetuum* does not appear until APULEIUS.

2. Here belong the phrasological uses *id temporis*, *id aetātis*, which belonged to the popular speech, and never became firmly rooted in literature. Thus CICERO rarely uses them, except in his earliest works and his letters. *Id genus* is used after the same general analogy, but is not temporal. This occurs in CICERO but once, *Att.*, XIII. 12, 3. CAESAR never uses any of these forms.

3. Poetical and rare is the extension which makes the Accusative of Extent the subject of a passive verb.

*Nunc tertia vivitur aetās*, OV., *M.*, XII. 188 = *nunc tertiam vivitur aetātem*. *Tōta mihi dormitur hiems*, MART., XIII. 59, 1 = *tōtam dormiō hiemem*.

Normally the verb becomes impersonal or is regularly used with a proper subject, and the Accusative of Extent is unchanged : [*Bellum*] *quō duodecimum annum Italia ūrēbātur*, L., XXVII. 39, 9.

### Accusative of the Local Object.

#### *Terminal Accusative.*

337. The activity of a verb may be defined by the Point Reached. Hence the rule : Names of Towns and small Islands, when used as limits of Motion Whither, are put in the Accusative.

So also *rūs, into the country, domum, domōs, home.*

**Missi lēgātī Athēnās sunt**, L., III. 31, 8; *envoys were sent to Athens.* **Lātōna cōfūgit Dēlum**, (J. C. Verr., I. 18, 48; *Latona took refuge in Delos.* **Ego rūs ibō atque ibi manēbō**, TER., *Eun.*, 216; *I shall go to the country and stay there.* **Innumerābilēs (philosophi) numquam domum revertērunt**, C., *Tusc.*, v. 37, 107; *innumerable philosophers never returned home.*

REMARKS.—1. Countries and large islands being looked upon as areas, and not as points, require prepositions, such as : **in, into; ad, to; versus, -ward; in Graeciam proficisci**, *to set out for Greece.*

2. When **urbem, city, or oppidum, town**, precedes the name of the city or town, the idea of area is emphasised, and the preposition **in** or **ad** is prefixed; if **urbem** or **oppidum** follows, **in** or **ad** may be omitted: **In (ad) oppidum Cirtam**, *to, in (at) the town (of) Cirta.*

When **urbem** or **oppidum** is qualified by an adjective, it regularly follows the name of the town, and has the preposition:

**Jugurtha Thalam pervēnit in oppidum māgnū et opulentum**, S., *Iug.*, 75, 1; *Jugurtha arrived at Thala, a great and wealthy town.*

3. **Domum**, with a possessive pronoun, or Gen., may mean *house* as well as *home*, and accordingly may or may not have **in** before it: **domum meam**, or, **in domum meam**, *to my house*; **domum Pompēiī**, or, **in domum Pompēiī**, *to Pompey's house*; also **domum ad Pompēiū**. Otherwise: **in māgnificam domum venīre**, *to come into a grand house.*

4. **Ad** means *to the neighbourhood of*, often *before*, of military operations. **Ad Mutinam**, *to the neighbourhood (siege of) Mutina (Modena).*

5. The simple Acc. will suffice even for *extent*:

**Omnia illa mūnicipia, quae sunt ā Vibōne Brundisium**, C., *Plane.*, 41, 97; *all the free towns from Vibo to Brundisium.*

6. Motion *to a place* embraces all the local designations:

**Phalara in sinum Māliacum prōcēsserat**, L., XXXV. 43, 8; *he had advanced to Phalara on the Maliae Gulf.* **Tarentum in Italiam inferiōrem proficisci**, *to set out for Tarentum in Lower Italy.*

NOTES.—1. The omission of the preposition before countries and large islands is poetical and post classical. CAESAR shows such omission with **Aegyptus** only, CICERO not at all.

2. Poets and later prose writers extend the Acc. also to names of peoples and streams. Beginnings of this are seen in CICERO: **cum Bosphorum cōfūgisset**, *Mar.*, 16, 34.

3. The insertion of the preposition with names of towns and small islands is rare in good prose, but is always legitimate when the preposition is to be emphasised.

4. The use of **ūsque** with this Acc. to emphasise the continuity of the motion is found first in TERENCE, occasionally in CICERO. From LIVY on it spreads and is used also with other local designations.

5. Verbal substantives are also occasionally followed by this Accusative: **Reditus Rōmam**, C., *Ph.*, II. 42, 108; *return to Rome.*

## OUTER OBJECT.

## Accusative of Respect.

**338.** The Accusative of the object affected sometimes specifies that *in respect to which* the statement of a passive or intransitive verb, or an adjective, applies. There are two varieties :

1. *Definite* : The Accusative of the part affected.

*Percussa novā mentem formidine*, V., G., IV. 357 ; *her mind stricken with a new dread*. *Iam vulgātum āctis quoque saucius pectus*, QUINT., IX. 3, 17 ; *by this time "breast-wounded" is actually become a common newspaper phrase*.

2. *Indefinite* : *cētera, alia, reliqua, omnia, plēraque, cūncta* ; *in other respects, in all respects, in most respects*.

*Cētera adsentior Crassō*, C., *Or.*, I. 9, 35 ; *in all other points I agree with Crassus*. *Omnia Mercuriō similis*, V., A., IV. 558 ; *in all respects like unto Mercury*.

NOTES.—1. This is commonly called the Greek Accusative, because it is so much more common in Greek, and because its extension in Latin is due to Greek influence. The first variety is very rare in early Latin ; introduced into prose by SALLUST, it is extended in LIVY, but in both is applied usually to wounds. It is much more common in the poets. Of the second variety *cētera* is found here and there at all periods ; the others are very rare. Good prose uses the Ablative for the first variety, and for the second, *ad cētera, in cēteris, per cētera, etc.*

2. Different is the Accusative with *induor, I don ; exuor, I doff ; cingor, I gird on myself*, and other verbs of *clothing and unclothing*, as well as *passives*, where the Subject is also the Agent ; in which verbs the reflexive or middle signification is retained. These uses are poetical or post-classical.

*Inūtile ferrum cingitur*, V., A., II. 510 ; *he girds on (himself) a useless blade*. *Lōricam induitur fidōque accingitur ēnse*, V., A., VII. 640 ; *he dons a corselet and begirds himself with his trusty glaive*. (*Arminius*) *impetū equī pervāsīt oblitus faciem suō cruōre nē nōscerētur*, TAC., *Ann.* II. 17, 7 ; *Hermann pushed his way through, thanks to the onset of his charger, having smeared his face with his own gore, to keep from being recognised*.

## DOUBLE ACCUSATIVE (Inner and Outer).

When two Accusatives depend on the same verb, one is the Inner and the other the Outer object. Theoretically any combination of Inner and Outer objects is allowable ; practically the language has restricted its usage to varieties *a* and *b*.

**339.** (*a*) Active verbs signifying to Inquire, to Require, to Teach, and *cēlāre, to conceal*, take two Accusatives, one of the Person, and the other of the Thing.

*Pūsiōnem quendam Sōcratēs interrogat quaedam geōmetrica*, C., *Tusc.*, I. 24, 57 ; *Socrates asks an urchin sundry questions in geometry*. *Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum flāgitābat*, CAES., *B.G.*, I. 16, 1 ; *Caesar kept demanding the corn of the Aedui*. *Quid nunc tē, asine, litterās doceam ?* (265), C., *Pis.*, 30, 73 ; *why should I now give you a lesson in literature,*

*you donkey ? Nōn tē cēlāvi sermōnem Ampīi, C., Fam., II. 16, 3, I did not keep you in the dark about my talk with Ampius.*

REMARKS.—1. The expressions vary a good deal. Observe :

This then is not the only way,	Pōscō, <i>I claim</i> , and flāgitō,
For it is also right to say,	And always petō, pōstulō,
Docēre and cēlāre dē,	Take aliquid ab aliquō,
Interrogāre dē quā rē.	While quaerō takes ex, ab, dē, quō.

Adherbal Rōmam lēgātōs miserat, qui senātum docērent dē caede frātris, S., *lug.*, 13, 3 ; *Adherbal had sent envoys to Rome to inform the senate of the murder of his brother.* Bassus noster mē dē hōc librō cēlāvit, C., *Fam.*, VII. 20, 3 ; *our friend Bassus has kept me in the dark about this book.* Aquam ā pūnice nunc pōstulās, Pl., *Pers.*, 41 ; *you are now asking water of a pumice-stone* (blood of a turnip).

2. With doceō the Abl. of the Instrument is also used : docēre fidibus, equō, *to teach the lyre, to teach riding* ; with ērudīre, the Abl., in with the Abl. or (rarely) dē. Doctus and ēruditus generally take the Abl. : Doctus Graecis litteris, *a good Grecian.*

3. With cēlārī the Acc. of the Thing becomes the subject, and the Acc. of the Person is retained ; or the Acc. of the Person is made the subject, and instead of the Acc. of the Thing, dē with the Abl. is used.

NOTES. 1. There is a great deal of difference in the relative frequency of these verbs. So doceō and its compounds, rogō, pōscō, repōscō, cēlō, are common ; interrogō, ōrō, expōscō, pōstulō, flāgitō, cōnsulō, are rare. exigō (in passive), percontor, are ante-classical and post-classical. So, too, the classical Latin in general avoids two Accusatives, unless one is a neuter pronoun.

2. The construction with ab, with verbs of Requiring, is much more common than the double Acc., and in some cases is necessary ; so, too, the construction with dē after verbs of Inquiring.

3. Other verbs of teaching than doceō and its compounds, and ērudīre, always have dē until late Latin, as instruere, &c. So docēre, when it means *to inform*.

4. The Passive form, with the Nom. of the Person and the Acc. of the Thing, is sparingly used. Discere is the prose word for docēri, except that the past participle doctus is classical but rare.

Mōtūs docēri gaudet Iōnicōs mātūra virgō, H., *O.*, III. 6, 21 ; *the rare ripe maiden delights to learn Ionic dances.* Vir omnēs bellī artēs ēdoctus, L., *XXV.*, 40, 5 ; *one who had learned (been taught) thoroughly all the arts of war.*

340. (b) Verbs of Naming, Making, Taking, Choosing, Showing, may have two Accusatives of the same Person or Thing :

[Iram] bene Ennius initium dīxit insāniae, C., *Tusc.*, IV. 23, 52 ; *well did Ennius call anger the beginning of madness.* Ancum Mārcium rōgem populus creāvit, L., I. 32, 1 ; *the people made Ancus Marcius king.* Catō Valerium Flaccum habuit collēgam, Cf. NLP., XXIV. 1, 2 ; *Cato had Valerius Flaccus (as) colleague.* Eum simillimum deō iudicō, C., *Marc.*, 3, 8 ; *I judge him (to be) very like unto a god.* Athēniēnsibus Pŷthia praecōpit ut

**Miltiadem sibi imperatorem sumerent**, NEP., I. 1, 3; *the Pythia instructed the Athenians to take Miltiades (as) their commander*. **Praestā tē eum quī mihi es cōgnitus**, C., *Fam.*, I. 6, 2; *show yourself the man that I know you to be*. **Quem intellegimus divitem?** C., *Par.*, VI. 1, 42; *whom do we understand by the rich man?*

REMARKS.—I. The Double Acc. is turned into the Double Nom. with the Passive (206). **Reddō**, *I render*, is not used in the Passive, but, instead thereof, **fiō**, *I become*.

**Habeō**, with two Accusatives, commonly means to *have*; in the sense of *hold, regard*, other turns are used; usually **prō**.

**Utrum prō ancillā mē habēs an prō filiā?** PL., *Pers.*, 341; *do you look upon me as a maid-servant or as a daughter?*

Similarly **habere servōrum locō**, (in) **numerō deōrum**, *to regard as slaves, as gods*.

2. With verbs of Taking and Choosing the *end* is indicated by the Dat. or **ad** with Accusative.

(**Rōmulus**) **trecentōs armātōs ad cūstōdiam corporis habuit**, L., I. 15, 8; *Romulus had three hundred armed men as a body-guard*.

**341.** (c) Double Accusatives, where one is the cognate, are very uncommon:

**Tē bonās precēs precor**, CATO, *R.R.*, I. 3, 4. **Tam tē bāsia multa bāsiāre vēsānō satis et super Catullōst**, CAT., VII. 9.

NOTES.—1. Curious extensions occasionally occur:

**Idem iūs iurandum adigit Afrānium**, CAES., *B.C.* I. 76.

2. In early Latin frequently, and in later times occasionally, the Inner object is given by a neuter pronoun, in the simplest form. **Quid mē vīs?** *what do you want of me? what do you want me for?* So with **prohibere**; also with **iubere** (once in CICERO and CAESAR), **admonere**, etc.

**Neque mē Iūppiter neque dī omnēs id prohibēbunt**, PL., *Am.*, 1051. **Litterae quae tē aliquid iubērent**, C., *Fam.*, XIII. 26, 3.

**342.** (d) In early Latin we find cases of two Accusatives with a single verb, where the verb forms a single phrase with one of the Accusatives, and the second Accusative is the object of the phrase: **animū advertere**, *to perceive*; **lūdōs facere**, *to make game of*; **manū inicere**, *to lay hands on*, etc. In classical Latin these phrases have been usually, where possible, formed into a single word: **animadvertere**, **lūdificāri**.

**Animū advertit Gracchus in cōtiōne Pisōnem stantem**, C., *Tusc.*, III. 20, 48; *Gracchus perceived Piso standing in the assembly*.

NOTE.—On the Double Accusative with compound verbs, see 331, R. 1.

## ACCUSATIVE AS A GENERAL OBJECTIVE CASE.

**343.** The Accusative as the Objective Case generally is used as an object of Thought, Perception, Emotion; an ob-



ject created by the mind, evoked or deprecated by the will. Hence the use of the Accusative :

(a) In Exclamations.

(b) With the Infinitive.

1. The Accusative is used in Exclamations as the general object of Thought, Perception, or Emotion :

**Mē miserum**, C., *Fam.*, xiv. 1, 1; *poor me!* **Mē caecum qui haec antea nōn viderim**, C., *Att.*, x. 10, 1; *blind me! not to have seen all this before.*

So in Exclamatory Questions :

**Quō mihi fortunam, si nōn concēditur uti?** H., *Ep.*, 1. 5, 12; *what (is the object of) fortune to me if I'm not allowed to enjoy it?*

Interjections are used :

**Heu mē miserum!** *Alas! poor me!* **Ō miserās hominum mentēs, Ō pectora caeca**, LUCK., II. 14; *oh, the wretched minds of men, oh, the blind hearts!*

So, in apposition to a sentence, see 324.

NOTES. 1. **Ō** with the Voc. is an address; with the Nom. a characteristic; with the Acc. an object of emotion.

2. **Em**, *Lo!* and **Ecce**, *Lo here!* have the Acc. in the earlier language :

**Em tibi hominem!** PL., *Asin.*, 880; *here's your man!* **Ecce mē!** PL., *Ep.*, 680; *here am I!*

**So eccum, ellum, eccam, eccillam**, in comic poetry.

**Ecce** takes only the Nom. in classical Latin. Distinguish between **em** and **ēn**, the latter of which, in the sense *lo!* does not appear until CICERO's time, and takes the Nominative.

**Prō** takes the Vocative : **Prō di immortalēs!** *Ye immortal gods!* The Accusative occurs in : **Prō deum atque hominum fidem!** C., *Tusc.*, v. 16, 48; *for heaven's sake!* and similar phrases.

**Ei (hei)!** and **Vae!** take the Dative.

**Ei mihi!** *Ah me!* **Vae victis!** *Woe to the conquered!*

2. The Accusative and the Infinitive are combined so as to present the notion of Subject and Predicate as an object of thought or perception (527). Hence the Accusative with the Infinitive is used :

(a) In Exclamations. (See 534.)

(b) As an Object. (See 527.)

(c) As a Subject. (See 535.)

## DATIVE.

344. The Dative is the case of the Indirect Object, and always involves a Direct Object, which may be contained in the verb or expressed by the complex of verb and object.



**Nēmō** errat **unī** sibi, SEN., *E. M.*, 94, 54 ; *no one errs* (makes mistakes) *to* (for) *himself alone*. **Nōn** omnibus dormiō, C., *Fam.*, VII. 24, 1 ; *it is not for everybody that I am asleep*. **Tibi** exercitum patria prō sē dedit, C., *Ph.*, XIII. 6, 14 ; *your country gave you an army for its own defence*. **Mulier** sibi felicior quam viris, C., *Ph.*, v. 4, 11.

NOTE.—In English the form of the Indirect Object is the same as that of the Direct : “He showed *me* (Dat.) a pure river ;” “he showed *me* (Acc.) to the priest.” Originally a case of Personal Interest, it is used freely of Personified Things, sparingly of Local Relations, and this despite the fact that Locative and Dative are blended in the First and Third Declensions. If a Locative, the Dative is a sentient Locative.

### Dative with Transitive Verbs.

**345.** The Indirect Object is put in the Dative with Transitive verbs, which already have a Direct Object in the Accusative. Translation, *to*, *for*, *from*. This Accusative becomes the Nominative of the Passive. The Dative depends on the complex.

#### Active Form :

**To** : **Facile** omnēs, quom valēmus, rēcta cōsilia aegrōtis damus, TER., *And.*, 309 ; *readily all of us, when well, give good counsel to the sick*.

**FOR** : **Frangam** tōnsōrī crūra manūque simul, MART., XI. 58, 10 ; *I'd break the barber's legs for him and hands at once*.

**FROM** : **Somnum** mihi [adēmī], C., *Att.*, II. 16, 1 ; *it took my sleep away from me*.

#### Passive Form :

**Mercēs** mihi glōria dētur, OV., *F.*, III. 389 ; *let glory be given to me as a reward*. **Immeritis** franguntur crūra caballis, JUV., X. 60 ; *the innocent hacks get their legs broken for them*. **Arma** [adimuntur] militibus, L., XXII. 44, 6 ; *the soldiers have their arms taken from them*. **Domus** pulchra dominis aedificātur nōn mūrībus, Cf. C., *N. D.*, III. 10, 26 ; *a handsome house is built for its owners, not for the mice*.

REMARKS.—I. These constructions are found with more or less frequency at all periods. But the Dat. with verbs of Taking Away, Prohibiting, and the like, is mostly confined to poetry and later prose. The translation *from* is merely approximate, instead of *for*. When the idea of Personal Interest is not involved, the Abl. is necessary.

**Is frāter**, qui ēripuit frātre[m] carcere, nōn potuit ēripere fātō, SEN., *Dial.*, XI. 14, 4.

A good example of a play on construction is PL., *Aul.*, 635 :

ST. **Nihil** equidem tibi abstulī. EU. At illud quod tibi abstulerās cedo.

2. The translation *For* is nearer the Dat. than *To*. It is the regular

form when the Acc. is that of the object *affected* : when it is that of the object *affected* the translation is more often *to* ; but *for* (*in defence of*) is *prō* : *prō patriā mori*, *to die for one's country*. *To* (*with a view to*) is *ad* or *in*, and when the idea of motion is involved, the preposition must be used, even with *dare*, which gives its name to the Dative :

*Litterās alicui dare*, *to give one a letter* (to carry or to have).

*Litterās ad aliquem dare*, *to indite a letter to one*.

*Rogās ut mea tibi scripta mittam*, C., *Fam.*, i. q. 23 ; *you ask me to send you my writings* (you wish to have them). *Librōs iam pridem ad tē mīsissem si esse edendōs putāssem*, C., *Fam.*, i. q. 23 ; *I should have sent the books to you long since if I had thought they ought to be published*.

#### Dative with Intransitive Verbs.

346. The Indirect Object is put in the Dative with many Intransitive Verbs of Advantage or Disadvantage, Yielding and Resisting, Pleasure and Displeasure, Bidding and Forbidding.

*Fuit mirificus in Crassō pudor, quī tamen nōn obsesset eius orātiōnī*, C., *Or.*, i. 26, 122 ; *Crassus had a marvellous modesty, not, however, such as to be a bar to the effectiveness of his oratory*. *Ipsa sibi imbēcillitās indulget*, C., *Tusc.*, iv. 18, 42 ; *weakness gives free course to itself*. *Probus invidet nōminī*, C., *Tim.*, 3, 9 ; *your upright man cherishes envy to no one*. *Catilīna litterās mittit sē fortunāe cedere*, S., *Cl.*, 34, 2 ; *Catiline writes that he gives way to fortune*. *Diēs stultis quoque mederi solet*, C., *Fam.*, vii., 28, 3 ; *time is wont to prove a medicine even to fools*. *Moderari et animō et orātiōnī, est nōn mediocris ingenii*, C., *Q. P.*, i. ii. 13, 38 ; *to put bounds both to temper and to language is the work of no mean ability*. *Sic agam, ut ipsi auctori huius disciplinae placet*, C., *Fin.*, i. q. 29 ; *I will act as it seems good to the head of this school (of thought) himself*. [*Mundus*] *deō paret et huic oboediunt maria terraeque*, C., *Ley.*, iii. 1, 3 ; *the universe is obedient to God, and seas and lands hearken unto him*. *Virtuti suorum satis credit*, Cf. S., *Jug.*, 106, 3 ; *he puts full confidence in the valour of his men*. *Illī poena, nobis libertās* [appropinquat], C., *Ph.*, iv. 4, 10 ; *to him punishment, to us freedom, is drawing nigh*.

REMARKS.—1. Of course the passives of these verbs are used impersonally (208) :

*Qui invident egent, illis quibus invidetur, rem habent*, Pl., *Truc.*, 745 ; *those who envy are the needy, those who are envied have the stuff*.

2. The verbs found with this Dat. in classical Latin are : *prōdesse*, *obesse*, *nocere*, *condūcit*, *expedit* : *assentiri*, *blandiri*, *cupere*, *favere*, *gratificari*, *gratulari*, *ignoscere*, *indulgere*, *morigerari*, *studere*, *suffragari* ; *adversari*, *insidiari*, *invidere*, *irasci*, *maledicere*, *minari*, *minitari*, *obrectare*,

**officere, refrāgārī, suscēnsēre ; cēdere, concēdere ; resistere ; auxiliārī, cōsulere, medērī, opitulārī, parcere, prōspicere ; moderārī, temperāre (sibī) ; placēre, displicēre ; auscultāre, imperāre, oboedire, obsequī, obtemperāre, pārēre, persuādēre, servīre, suādēre ; crēdere, fidere, cōfidere, diffidere, dēspērāre ; accidit, contingit, ēvenit ; libet, licet ; appropinquāre, repugnāre.** Also **nūbere, to marry** (of a woman) ; **supplicāre, to implore.**

NOTES.—1. Some other verbs are used occasionally in the same way, as **incommo-dāre**, which CICERO uses once. Also, **dolēre**, with Dat. of suffering person, is found sometimes in CICERO, though it belongs rather to the Comic Poets.

2. Some of these words have also other constructions. These occur usually in ante-classical and post-classical Latin ; if in classical Latin a different meaning is usually found in the new construction. Thus **indulgēre aliquid, to grant a thing, invidēre alicuī aliquid, obtrēctāre**, with Acc., **suādēre, persuādēre**, with Acc. of the Person, are post-classical and late ; **moderārī**, with Acc., is found in LUCRETIVUS and in Silver Latin ; **temperāre**, meaning *mīx*, takes Acc. at all periods. **Fidere, cōfidere, diffidere** are found also with Ablative.

Sometimes the personal interest is emphasised when the Dat. is employed, as over against the Accusative. So regularly with verbs of Fearing, as : **metuere aliquem, to dread some one**, but **metuere alicuī, to fear for some one ; cavēre alicuī, to take precautions for some one**, but **cavēre aliquem** (also **dē, ab aliquō**), *to take precautions against some one ; cavēre aliquā rē* (early), *to beware of a thing*. **Cōsulere aliquem, to consult a person ; cōsulere alicuī, to consult for a person.** On **con-venire**, see 347, R. 2.

Noteworthy are the constructions of **invidēre** and **vacāre** :

**Invidēre alicuī (in) aliquā rē** (CIC. uses prep.) } *to begrudge a man a thing.*  
**alicuī aliquid** (VERG., HOR., LIVY, etc.) }  
**alicūius rei** (once in HORACE, S., II. 6, 84), *to begrudge a thing.*  
**(alicūius) alicuī rei** (common), *to envy something belonging to a man.*

**Vacāre rei, to be at leisure for, to attend to** }  
**rē, ā rē, to be at leisure from** } *a matter.*

Sometimes there is hardly any difference in meaning :

**Comitor aliquem, I accompany a man ; comitor alicuī, I act as companion to a man ; praestōlor alicuī** (better) or **aliquem, I wait for.**

3. Some words with similar meanings take the Accusative ; the most notable are : **aequāre, to be equal ; decēre (to distinguish), to be becoming ; dēficere, to be wanting ; dēlectāre, to please ; iuvāre, to be a help ; iubēre, to order ; laedere, to injure ; and vetāre, to forbid.**

**Eam pictūram imitatī sunt multī, aequāvit nēmō**, PLIN., V. II., XXXV. II, 126 ; *that style of painting many have imitated, none equalled*. **Fōra virōs neglēcta decet**, OV., A. A., I. 509 ; *a careless beauty is becoming to men*. **Mē diēs dēficiat**, (J. C., VERR., II. 21, 52 ; *the day would fail me*. **Fortis fortūna adiuvat**, TER., Ph., 203 ; *fortune favours the brave*.

TACITUS is the first to use **iubēre** with Dative ; *Ann.*, IV. 72, etc.

4. The Dat. use is often obscured by the absence of etymological translation. So **nūbere alicuī, to marry a man** (to veil for him) ; **medērī alicuī, to heal** (to take one's measures for) *a man ; supplicāre, to beg* (to bow the knee to) ; **persuādēre, to persuade** (to make it sweet).

5. After the analogy of verbs the phrases **audientem esse, to hear**, i.e., *to obey*, **supplicem esse, to entreat, auctōrem esse, to advise, fidem habēre, to have faith in**, are also found with the Dative :

**Sī potest tibi dictō audiēns esse quisquam**, C., VERR., I. 44, 114.

6. The poets are very free in their use of the Dat. with verbs of the same general

meaning as those given. So **sē miscēre**, *to mingle with*; **cofre, concurrere**, *to meet*; verbs of *contending*, as **contendere, bellāre, pūgnāre, certāre**; verbs of *disagreement*, as **differre, discrepāre, distāre, dissentīre**. Here belongs **haerēre** with the Dat., as V., A., IV. 73, which may, however, be a Locative construction.

### Dative and Verbs Compounded with Prepositions.

**347.** Many verbs compounded with the prepositions **ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, (post), prae, sub, and super**, take the Dative, especially in moral relations.

Transitive Verbs have an Accusative case besides.

**Plēbēs cūncta comitiis adfuit**, C., *Planc.*, 8, 21; *the entire commonalty was present at the election.* **Omnis sēnsus hominum multō antecellit sēnibus bēstiārum**, C., *N.D.*, II. 57, 145; *every sense of man is far superior to the senses of beasts.* (**Ennius**) **equi fortis et victōris senectūti comparat suam**, C., *Cat.M.*, 5, 14; *Ennius compares his (old age) to the old age of a gallant and winning steed.* **Imminent duo rēgēs tōti Asiae**, C., *Imp.*, 5, 12; *two kings are menaces to all Asia.* **Interes cōsiliis**, C., *Att.*, XIV. 22, 2; *you are in their councils, are privy to their plans.* **Piger ipse sibi obstat**, *Prov.* (311, 2). **Omnibus Druidibus praeest unus**, *CAES.*, *B.G.*, VI. 13, 8; *at the head of all the Druids is one man.* **Anatum ova gallinis saepe suppōnimus**, C., *N.D.*, II. 48, 124; *we often put ducks' eggs under hens (for them to hatch).* **Neque dēesse neque superesse rei pūblīcae volō**, C. (*POLLIO*), *Fam.*, X. 33, 5; *no life that is not true to the state, no life that outlives the state's—that is my motto.*

REMARKS.—I. The Dat. is found, as a rule, only when these verbs are used in a transferred sense. In a local sense the preposition should be employed, although even classical Latin is not wholly consistent in this matter. In poetry and later prose the Dat. is extended even to the local signification. In early Latin the repetition of the preposition is the rule.

So **incumbere in gladium**, C., *Inv.*, II. 51, 154, *to fall upon one's sword.*

2. The principal intrans. verbs with the Dat. in classical Latin are:

**Accēdere** (*to join, or, to be added*; otherwise usually preposition **ad**); **accumbere** (once in Cic.); **adesse** (also with **ad, in, and, in** *PLAUT.*, *apud*); **adhaerēscere** (*ad* of local uses); **arridēre** (once in Cic.); **annuere** (occasionally with Acc.); **assentīri**; **assidēre**; **antecēdere** (also with Acc.); **anteire** (also with Acc.); **antecellere** (with Acc. from *LIVY* on); **congruere** (also with *cum*); **cōsentīre** (also with *cum*); **cōstāre**; **convenire** (*to suit*; with *cum*, *to agree with*, especially in the phrase **convenit mihi cum aliquō**, *I agree with*); **illūdere** (also with Acc. and occasionally in and Acc.); **impendēre** (with Acc. is archaic; occasionally in); **incēdere** (*SALL.*, *LIVY.*, etc.); **incidere** (twice in Cic.; regularly in); **incubāre** (but **incumbere** regularly with *in* or *ad*); **inesse** (once in Cic.); **inhaerēre** (occu-

sionally *ad* or *in* with Abl.) ; *inhiāre* (PLAUT. has Acc. only) ; *innāsci* (*innātus*) ; *inservire* ; *insinuāre* (once in CIC. ; usually *in*) ; *insistere* (locally, *in* with Abl. ; occasionally Acc.) ; *instāre* ; *invādere* (once in CIC. ; occasionally Acc. ; regularly *in*) ; *intercēdere* ; *intercurrere* ; *interesse* (also with *in* and Abl.) ; *intervenire* ; *obesse* ; *obrēpere* (usually *in*, *ad*) ; *obsistere* ; *obstāre* ; *obstrepere* ; *obtingere* ; *obvenire* ; *obversari* ; *occurrere* ; *occursāre* ; *praestāre* ; *praesidēre* ; *subesse* ; *subvenire* ; *succēdere* ; *succumbere* ; *succrēscere* (once in CIC.) ; *succurrere* ; *superesse*.

3. The same variety of construction is found with transitive verbs, in composition.

4. After the analogy of *praestāre*, *excellere*, *to excel*, is also found with the Dative.

5. Some trans. verbs, compounded with *dē* and *ex* (rarely with *ab*), take the Dat., but it properly comes under 345.

Caesar *Dēiōtarō tetrarchian ēripuit, eidemque dētrāxit Armeniam*, Cf. C., *Div.*, II. 37, 79 ; *Caesar wrested from Dejotarus his tetrarchy, and stripped from him Armenia*.

#### Dative with Verbs of Giving and Putting.

**348.** A few verbs, chiefly of Giving and Putting, take a Dative with an Accusative, or an Accusative with an Ablative, according to the conception.

*Praedam militibus dōnat*, CAES., *B.G.*, VII. 11, 9 ; *he presents the booty to the soldiers*. But *Rubrium corōnā dōnāstī*, C., *Verr.* III. 80, 185 ; *thou didst present Rubrius with a crown*.

*Nātūra corpus animō circumdedit*, SEN., *E.M.*, 92, 13 ; *Nature has put a body around the mind*. But *Deus animum circumdedit corpore*, Cf. C., *Tim.*, 6, 20 ; *God has surrounded the mind with a body*.

REMARKS.—I. These are : *aspergere*, *to besprinkle and to sprinkle on* ; *circumdare*, *circumfundere*, *to surround* ; *dōnāre*, *to present* ; *impertire*, *to endow and to give* ; *induere*, *to clothe and to put on* ; *exuere*, *to strip off and to strip off* ; *interclūdere*, *to shut off* ; *miscēre*, *to mix and to mix in*.

2. In general, classical Latin here prefers the Dat. of the person, but no fixed rule is followed.

#### Dative of Possessor.

**349.** *Esse*, *to be*, with the Dative, denotes an inner connection between its subject and the Dative, and is commonly translated by the verb *to have* :

[*Contrōversia*] *mihī fuit cum avunculō tuō*, C., *Fin.*, III. 2, 6 ; *I had a debate with your uncle*. *An nescīs longās rēgibus esse manūs ?* Ov., *Her.*,



XVI. 166 ; or perhaps you do not know that kings have long arms & Compare *nōn habet, ut putāmus, fortūna longās manūs*, SEN., *E.M.*, 82, 5.

REMARKS.—1. The predicate of *esse*, with the Dat., is translated in the ordinary manner : *Caesar amicus est mihi*, *Caesar is a friend to me* (*amicus meus*, MY friend, friend of MINE).

2. The Dat. is never simply equivalent to the Genitive. The Dat. is the Person interested in the Possession, hence the Possession is emphatic; the Gen. characterises the Possession by the Possessor, hence the Possessor is emphatic. The Gen. is the permanent Possessor, or owner; the Dat. is the temporary Possessor. The one may include the other:

*Latini concēdunt Rōmam caput Latīo esse*, Cf. *L.*, VIII. 4, 5; *the Latins concede that Latium has its capital in ROME.* (*Latī*: that LATIUM'S capital is Rome.)

3. Possession of qualities is expressed by *esse* with *in* and the Abl., by *inesse* with Dat. or with *in*, or by some other turn :

*Fuit mirificus in Crassō pudor*, C., *Or.*, I. 26, 122 (346). *Cimōn habēbat satis eloquentiae*, NEP., v. 2, 1 ; *Cimon had eloquence enough.*

SALLUST introduces the Dat. also for these relations.

4. *Abesse* and *dēesse*, *to be wanting, to fail*, take also the Dat. of Possessor.

5. The Dat. of the person is regular with the phrases *nōmen* (cōgnōmen) *est*, *inditum est*, etc. Here the name is in the Nom. in apposition to *nōmen*, in the best usage. Rarely in CICERO, once in SALLUST, never in CAESAR, more often in early and post-Ciceronian Latin, the name is found in the Dat.; either by attraction with the Dat. of the person or on the analogy of the Double Dative. The Appositional Genitive (361) is first cited from VELLEIUS. The undeclined Nom. after an active verb appears first in OVID; then in Suetonius.

*Fōns aquae dulcis, cui nōmen Arethūsa est*, C., *Verr.*, IV. 53, 118 ; *a fountain of sweet water named Arethusa.* *Apollodōrus, cui Pyragrō cōgnōmen est*, C., *Verr.*, III. 31, 74 ; *Apollodorus, surnamed Pyragrus* (fire-tongs). *Nōmen Arctūrō est mihi*, PL., *Rud.*, 5 ; *my name is Arcturus.* *Tibi nōmen insānō posuēre*, H., *S.*, II. 3, 47 ; *they called you "cracked."* [*Samnitēs*] *Maleventum, cui nunc urbī Beneventum nōmen est, perfūgērunt*, L., IX. 27, 14 ; *the Samnites fled to Maleventum* (Hecome), *a city which now bears the name Beneventum* (Welcome). *Aetās, cui fēcimus 'aurea' nōmen*, Ov., *M.*, XV. 96 ; *the age to which we have given the name 'Golden.'*

### Dative of Personal Interest.

In its widest sense this category includes the Dative with Transitive and Intransitive Verbs, already treated, and the Ethical Dative, Dative of Reference, and Dative of Agent, to follow. In its narrower sense it applies only to persons or their equivalents who are essential to, but not necessarily participant in or affected by, the result, and differs from the Dative with Transitive and Intransitive Verbs, in that the connection with the verb is much more remote.

**350.** 1. The person from whose point of view the action is observed, or towards whom it is directed, may be put in the Dative. A convenient but not exact translation is often the English Possessive (*Datīvus Energicus*).

*Ei libenter mē ad pedēs abiēcī, Cf. C., Att., VIII. 9, 1 ; I gladly cast myself at his feet. In cōspectum vēnerat hostibus, HIRT., VIII. 27 ; he had come into the sight of the enemy. Tuō virō oculi dolent, Cf. TER., Ph., 1053 ; your husband's EYES ache ; nearer, your husband has a pain in his eyes (tuī virī oculi, your HUSBAND'S eyes).*

NOTE.—This Dative is not common in CICERO and is not cited for early Latin. But it becomes common from LIVY on. With Relative and Demonstrative pronouns it is often used by Ciceronian and Augustan poets. In the case of many of the examples we have parallel constructions with the Gen. of Possessor, which is the normal usage.

2. The Dative is used of the person in whose honour, or interest, or advantage, or for whose pleasure, an action takes place, or the reverse (*Datīvus Commodī et Incommodī*):

*Cōsurrēxisse omnēs [Lysandrō] dicuntur, C., Cat. M., 18, 63 ; all are said to have risen up together in honour of Lysander. [Deō] nostra altaria fūmant, V., Ec., I. 43 ; our altars smoke in honour of the god. Sī quid peccat mihi peccat, TER., Ad., 115 ; if he commits a fault, it is at my cost.*

#### Ethical Dative.

**351.** The Ethical Dative indicates special interest in the action. It may be called the Dative of Feeling, and its use is confined to the personal pronouns (*Datīvus Œtkicus*).

*Tū mihi Antōnii exemplō istius audāciam dēfendis ? C., Verr., III. 91, 213 ; do you defend me (to my face) by Antony's example that fellow's audacity ? Ecce tibi Sēbōsus ! C., Att., II. 15 ; here's your Sebosus !*

“She's a civil modest wife, one (I tell you) that will not miss you morning nor evening prayer.”—SHAKESPEARE.

NOTES.—1. This is essentially a colloquialism, common in comedy, especially with *ecce* and *em*, frequent in CICERO's letters, occasionally found elsewhere. In poetry, notably Augustan, it is almost wholly absent ; but there are several cases in HORACE. CICERO does not use *em*. LIVY does not use *ecce*.

2. Especially to be noted is *sibi velle*, to want, to mean : *Quid tibi vis, insāne, C., Or., II. 67, 269 ; what do you want, madman ? Quid vult sibi haec ōrātiō ? TER., Heaut., 615 ; what does all this holding forth mean ?*

#### Dative of Reference.

**352.** This indicates the person in whose eyes the statement of the predicate holds good (*Datīvus Iūdicantis*).

*Ut mihi dēfōrmis, sic tibi māgnificus, TAC., II., XII. 37 ; to me a monster, to yourself a prodigy of splendour. Quintia fōrmōsa est multis, CAT., 86, 1 ; Quintia is a beauty in the eyes of many.*

NOTE.— This Dative is characteristic of the Augustan poets, but it is also common enough in CICERO and the prose authors.

**353.** Noteworthy is the use of this Dative in combination with participles, which shows two varieties, one giving the *local* point of view, the other the *mental*, both post-Ciceronian and rare. CAESAR gives the first local usage, LIVY the first mental.

[Hōc] est oppidum primum Thessaliae venientibus ab Ēpirō, CAES., *B. C.*, III. 80 ; *this is the first town of Thessaly to those coming (as you come) from Epirus.* Vērō aestimantī, L., XXXVII. 58, 8 ; *to one whose judgment was true.*

NOTES.— 1. This construction is probably drawn from the Greek, although VITRUVIUS shows several examples.

2. Certainly Greek is the Dat. of the person with *volentī, cupientī, invitō (est)*, etc., which is found first in SALLUST, once in LIVY, and sporadically in TACITUS, and later.

### Dative of the Agent.

**354.** The Dative is used with Passive Verbs, in prose chiefly with the Perfect Passive, to show the interest which the agent takes in the result. That the person interested is the agent is only an inference. (See 215.)

Mihī rēs tōta prōvīsa est, C., *Verr.*, IV. 42, 91 ; *I have had the whole matter provided for.* Cui nōn sunt audītæ Dēmōsthenis vigiliæ? C., *Tusc.*, IV. 19, 44 ; *to whom are not Demosthenes' long watchings a familiar hearsay ?*

NOTES.— 1. Instances of this Dat. with the Tenses of Continuance are poetical, or admit of a different explanation :

Barbarus hīc ego sum qui nōn intellegor ūllī, Ov., *Tr.*, V. 10, 37 ; *I am a barbarian here because I can't make myself intelligible to any one.*

Whenever an adj. or an equivalent is used, the Dat. Pl. may be an Ablative :

Sic dissimillimīs bēstiōlis commūiter cibus quaeritur, C., *N. D.*, II. 48, 123 ; *so, though these little creatures are so very unlike, their food is sought in common.* Carmina quæ scribuntur aquæ pōtōribus, H., *Ep.*, I. 19, 3 ; *poems which are written when people are water-drinkers.* Cēna ministrātur puerīs tribus, H., *S.*, I. 6, 116 ; *Dinner is served, (the waiters being) the waiters are (but) three.*

2. This Dat. is rare in early Latin, rare, if ever, in CAESAR, not uncommon in CICERO. But it is much liked by the poets and by some prose writers, notably by TACITUS.

**355.** The agent of the Gerund and Gerundive is put in the Dative, at all periods.

Diligentia præcipuē colenda est nobīs, C., *Or.*, II. 35, 148 ; *carefulness is to be cultivated by us first and foremost.* Dēspēranda tibi salvā concordia socrū, JUV., VI. 231 ; *you must despair of harmony while Mother-in-law's alive.*

REMARK.—To avoid ambiguity, especially when the verb itself takes the Dat., the Abl. with **ab** (**ā**) is employed for the sake of clearness :

**Civibus ā vōbis cōsulendum**, C., *Imp.*, 2, 6 ; *the interest of the citizens must be consulted by you.* **Supplicātiō ab eō dēcernenda nōn fuit**, C., *Ph.*, XIV. 4, 11.

Where there is no ambiguity there is no need of **ab** :

**Linguae moderandum est mihi**, PL., *Curc.*, 486 ; *I must put bounds to my tongue.*

NOTE.—Poets are free in their use of this Dative ; so with verbals in **bilis** ; as, **multisille bonis flēbilis occidit**, H., *O.*, I. 24, 9 ; **nūlli exōrābilis**, SIL. ITAL., V. 131.

### Dative of the Object For Which.

**356.** Certain verbs take the Dative of the Object For Which (to what end), and often at the same time a Dative of the Personal Object For Whom, or To Whom.

**Nēmīni meus adventus labōrī aut sūmptuī fuit**, C., *Verr.*, I. 6, 16 ; *to no one was my arrival a burden or an expense.* **Virtūs sōla neque datur dōnō neque accipitur**, S., *Ing.*, 85, 38 ; *virtue alone is neither given nor taken as a present.* **Habēre quaestuī rem pūblicam turpe est**, C., *Off.*, II., 22, 77 ; *it is base to have the state for one's exchequer.*

REMARKS.—1. Noteworthy is the legal phrase **cui bonō ?** *to whom is it for an advantage ?* = *who is advantaged ?*

2. In the classical times the principal verbs in this construction are **esse**, **dare**, **dūcere**, **habēre**, **vertere**, and a few others which occur less frequently. Later Latin extends the usage to many other verbs, and especially to Gerundive constructions. **Dare** is used principally in the phrase **dōnō dare**.

3. The Double Dative is found principally with **esse**, but occasionally with other verbs. Here there seems to have been a tendency, mainly post-Ciceronian, to use the predicative Nom. instead of the Dative. Interesting sometimes is the shift in usage ; thus, CICERO says **est turpitūdō**, NEPOS, **fuit turpitūdīni**.

NOTES.—1. In the same category, but with the idea of finality more clearly indicated, are the agricultural usages, **alimentō serere**, **condituī legere** ; the medical, **remediō adhibēre** ; the military terms, **praesidiō**, **auxiliō**, **mittere**, **esse**, etc.

2. With LIVY we notice the great extension of this Dat. with verbs of *seeking, choosing, etc.*, where classical Latin would prefer some other construction. So **locum insidiis** (**insidiarum** is classical) **circumspectāre Poenus coepit**, L., XXI. 53, 11. TACITUS goes furthest in such usages. CAESAR, however, shows a few instances (*B. G.*, I. 30, 3).

3. The Final Dative with intrans. verbs is military and rare. So **receptuī canere**, *to sound a retreat*, is found first in CAES., *B. G.*, VII. 47. SALLUST shows a few examples. The Dat., with similar substantives, is an extension, and is very rare. CICERO *Ph.*, XIII. 7, 15, says **receptuī signum**.

4. The origin of this usage may have been mercantile (Key). In English we treat Profit and Loss as persons : **Quem fors diŕum cumque dabit lucrŕ appŕne**, *Il., O.*, 1. 9, 14 ; “ *Every day that Fate shall give, set down to Profit.* ”

On the Dative of the Gerund and Gerundive in a similar sense, see 229.

### Dative with Derivative Substantives.

**357.** A few derivative substantives take the Dative of their primitives :

**Iŕstitia est obtemperatiŕ lŕgibus**, *C., Leg.*, 1. 15, 42 ; *justice is obedience to the laws.*

NOTE. We find a few examples in **PLAUTUS**, several in **CICERO**, and only sporadically elsewhere. Usually the verbal force is very prominent in the substantives ; as, **insidiŕs cŕnsulŕ mŕtŕrŕre**, *S., C.*, 32, 2.

### Local Dative.

**358.** The Dative is used in poetry to denote the *place whither*.

**Karthŕginŕ iam nŕn ego nŕntiŕs mittam superbŕs**, *Il., O.*, IV. 4, 69 ; *to Carthage no more shall I send haughty tidings.* **Iam satis terris nivis atque dirŕe grandinis misit pater**, *Il., O.*, 1. 2, 1 ; *full, full enough of snow and dire hail the Sire hath sent the Land.*

NOTES. 1. This construction begins with **ACCUS**, and is not uncommon in the Augustan poets. No examples are cited from **PLAUTUS** or **TERENCE**, hence the inference is fair that it was not a colloquialism. As a poetical construction it seems to have sprung from personification.

2. Occasionally the substantive is also thus construed ; as in the **facilis dŕscŕnsus Avernŕ** of **VERGIL** (*A.*, VI. 126).

The extreme is reached when the Dative follows **IRE** and the like :

**It cŕelŕ clŕmorque virum clangorque tubŕrum**, *V., A.*, XI. 192 ; *mounts to High Heaven warriors' shout and trumpets' blare.*

3. **Tendere manŕs** has a few times, even in **CICERO** and **CAESAR**, the Dat. of the person, which is sometimes referred to this head. But the usual construction is **ad**.

**Mŕtrŕs familiŕe Rŕmŕnis dŕ mŕrŕ manŕs tendŕbant**, *CAES., B. G.*, VII. 48.

### Dative with Adjectives.

**359.** Adjectives of Likeness, Fitness, Friendliness, Nearness, and the like, with their opposites, take the Dative :

**Canis similis lupŕ est**, *C., N. D.*, I. 35, 97 ; *the dog is like unto the wolf.* **Castris idŕneus locus**, *CAES., B. G.*, VI. 10, 2 ; *a place suitable for a camp.* **Ŭtile est rei pŕblicae nŕbilŕs hominŕs esse dŕgnŕs mŕiŕribus suis**, *C., Sest.*, 9, 21 ; *it is to the advantage of the state that men of rank should be worthy of their ancestors.* **Vir mihi amŕciissimus**, *Q. Fabricius, C., Sest.*, 35, 75 ; *my very great friend, Q. Fabricius.* **Proximus sum egomet mihi**, *TER., And.*, 636 ; *myself am nearest to me.* **Omni aetŕti mors est com-**



**mūnis**, *Cf. C., Cat. M., 19, 68; death is common to every time of life. (Tēstis) id dicit quod illi causae māximē est aliēnum*, *C., Caec., 9, 24; the witness says what is especially damaging to that case (side).*

REMARKS.—1. Many adjectives which belong to this class are used also as substantives, and as such are construed with the Genitive: **amicus**, *friend*; **affinis**, *connection*; **aequālis**, *contemporary*; **aliēnus** (rare), *foreign, strange*; **cōgnātus**, *kinsman*; **commūnis**, *common*; **contrārius**, *opposite*; **pār**, *match*; **proprius**, **pecūliāris**, *own, peculiar*; **similis**, *like* ("we ne'er shall look upon *his like* again"), especially of gods and men, and regularly with personal pronouns, and in early Latin; **sacer**, *set apart, sacred*; **superstes** (rare), *survivor*. Comparatives have regularly the Dative; Superlatives vary.

[**Ille**], **cūius paucōs parēs haec civitās tulit**, *C., Pis., 4, 8; (he was) a man few of whose peers the state hath borne. Utinam tē nōn solum vitae, sed etiam dignitātis meae superstitem reliquissem*, *C., Q. F., 1, 3, 1; would that I had left thee survivor not only of my life but also of my position.*

2. The object toward which is expressed by the Acc. with **in**, **ergā**, **adversus**:

**Manlius (fuit) sevērus in filium**, *C., Off., III, 31, 112; Manlius was severe toward his son. Mē esse scit sēsē ergā benivolum*, *PL., Capt., 350; he knows that I am kindly disposed toward him. Vir adversus merita Caesaris ingrātissimus*, *Cf. VELL., II, 69, 1; a man most ungrateful towards Caesar's services (to him).*

3. The object for which may be expressed by the Acc. with **ad**, *to*:

**Homō ad nūllam rem ūtilis**, *C., Off., III, 6, 29; a good-for-nothing fellow.*

This is the more common construction with adjectives of Fitness.

NOTES.—1. **Propior**, *nearer*, **proximus**, *next*, are also construed (like **prope**, *near*) occasionally with the Acc. (principally by CAESAR, SALLUST, LIVY), the adverbial forms also with the Abl. with **ab**, *off*:

**Crassus proximus mare Ōceanum hiemārat**, *CAES., B. G., III, 7, 2; Crassus had wintered next the ocean. Id propius fidem est*, *L., II, 41, 11; that is nearer belief, i.e., more likely.*

2. **Aliēnus**, *foreign, strange*, is also construed with the Abl., with or without **ab** (**ā**); so commonly **absonus**.

**Homō sum, hūmāni nīl ā mē aliēnum putō**, *TER., Heaut., 77; I am a man, and nothing that pertains to man do I consider foreign to me.*

3. **Iūctus**, **cōniūctus**, *joined*, are also construed frequently with **cum** and the Abl.; sometimes with the Abl. only: **improbītās scelere iūcta**, *C., Or., II, 58, 237.*

4. **Similis** is said to be used with the Gen. when the likeness is general and comprehensive; with the Dat. when it is conditional or partial; hence, in classical prose, always **vērī simile**, LIVY being the first to say **vērō simile**.

5. **Adversus**, *opponent*, seems to be construed with the Gen. once in SALLUST (*C., 52, 7*) and once in QUINTILIAN (*XII, 1, 2*). **Invidus**, *envious*, is cited with the Gen. once in CICERO (*Flac., 1, 2*), then not till late Latin; with the Dat. it is poetical; otherwise the possessive pronoun is used, as **tuī invidi** (*C., Fam., 1, 4, 2*). **Prōnus**, *inclined*, with the Dat., occurs in SALLUST (*Jug., 114, 2*), then not till TACITUS; the usual construction is **ad**. **Intentus**, *intent upon*, has Abl. in SALLUST (*C., 2, 9, etc.*);

otherwise *Dat.*, or *ad (in)* with *Acc.* Notice the use of *aversus* with *Dat.* in *Tac. Ann.*, i. 66, 2; some other examples are doubtful.

6. In poetry, *idem*, *the same*, is often construed after Greek analogy, with the *Dative*.

*Invitum qui servat idem facit occidenti*, *H., A.P.*, 467; *he who saves a man's life against his will does the same thing as one who kills him (as if he had killed him).*

7. Adverbs of similar meaning sometimes take the *Dative*: *Congruenter nātūrae convenienterque vivere*, *C., Fin.*, iii. 7, 26.

## II. Internal Change.

### Genitive.

**360.** I. The Genitive Case is the Case of the Complement, and is akin to the Adjective, with which it is often parallel. It is the substantive form of the Specific Characteristic.

The chief English representatives of the Genitive are:

(a) The Possessive case: *Domus rēgis*, *the king's palace*.

(b) The Objective case with *of*: *Domus rēgis*, *the palace of the king*.

(c) Substantives used as adjectives or in composition: *Arbor abietis*, *fir-tree*.

REMARKS.—I. Other prepositions than *of* are not unfrequently used, especially with the Objective Genitive. (363, R. 1.)

*Patriae quis exsul sē quoque fūgit?* *H., O.*, ii. 16, 19; *what exile from his country ever fled himself as well?* *Boiōrum triumphī spem collēgae reliquit*, *L., XXXII.*, 37, 10; *he left the hope of a triumph over the Boii to his colleague*.

*Via mortis* may be considered *the way (mode) of death* or *the death-path*, instead of *via ad mortem* (*L., XLIV.*, 4, 14).

2. An abstract substantive with the Gen. is often to be translated as an attribute:

*Verni temporis suāvitās*, *C., Cat.M.*, 19, 70; *the sweet spring-time*. *Fontium gelidae perennitatēs*, *C., N.D.*, ii. 39, 98; *cool springs that never fail*. Compare *S., C.*, 8, 3.

And, on the other hand, the predicative attribute is often to be translated as an abstract substantive with *of*:

*Ante Rōmam conditam*, *before the founding of Rome*. (325, R. 3.)

Notice also *hic metus*, *this fear*—*fear of this*, and kindred expressions: *Quam similitudinē cūius rei similitudinē*, *C., N.D.*, ii. 10, 27.

### 2. The Genitive is employed:

I. and II. Chiefly as the complement of Substantives and Adjectives.

III. Occasionally as the complement of Verbs.

NOTE.—As the Accusative forms a complex with the verb, so the Genitive forms a complex with the Substantive or equivalent. No logical distribution can be wholly satisfactory, and the following arrangement has regard to convenience.

## I. GENITIVE WITH SUBSTANTIVES.

## Adnominal Genitive.

## Appositive Genitive, or Genitive of Specification.

361. The Genitive is sometimes used to specify the contents of generic words instead of Apposition in the same case ; there are two varieties :

1. *Appositional Genitive*.—Genitive after such words as, **vōx**, *expression ; nōmen*, *name*, *noun* ; **verbum**, *word*, *verb* ; **rēs**, *thing*, *etc.*

**Nōmen amicitiae**, C., *Fin.*, II. 24, 78 ; *the name friendship*.

2. *Epexegetical Genitive*.—Genitive after such words as **genus**, *class* ; **vitium**, *vice* ; **culpa**, *fault*, *etc.*

[**Virtūtēs**] **continentiae**, **gravitātis**, **iūstitiae**, **fidei**, C., *Mur.*, 10, 23 ; *the virtues of self-control*, *earnestness*, *justice*, *honour*.

NOTES.—1. The former variety is very rare in CICERO, the latter much more common. A special variety is the use of the Gen. after such words as **urbs**, **oppidum**, **flūmen**, *etc.* This is not found in PLAUTUS and TERENCE, occurs perhaps but once in CICERO, and seems to be confined to a few cases in poetry and later prose. Often personification is at work ; thus, in **fōns Timāvi** (V., A., I. 244), **Timāvus** is a river god, and **fōns** is not equal to **Timāvus**.

2. Examples like **arbor abietis** (L., XXIV. 3, 4), *fir-tree* ; **arbor fici** (Cf. C., *Flac.*, 17, 41), *fig-tree*, *etc.*, occur only here and there.

3. Colloquial, and probably belonging here, are : **scelus viri** (PL., *M. G.*, 1434), *a scoundrel of a man* ; **flāgitium hominis** (PL., *Asin.*, 473), *a scamp of a fellow*, and the like. **Quaedam pēstēs hominum**, C., *Fam.*, v. 8, 2 ; *certain pestilent fellows*.

## Possessive Genitive, or Genitive of Property.

362. The Possessive Genitive is the substantive form of an adjective attribute with which it is often parallel ; it is used only of the Third Person.

**Domus rēgis** = **domus rēgia**, *the palace of the king*, *the king's palace* = *the royal palace*.

REMARKS.—I. The Possession in the First and Second Person (and in the Reflexive) is indicated by the Possessive Pronouns (until after LIVY) : **amicus meus**, *a friend of mine* ; **gladius tuus**, *a sword of thine*. But when **omnium** is added, **vestrum** and **nostrum** are used ; **āris et focis omnium nostrum inimicus**, C., *Ph.*, XI. 4, 10. Sometimes the adjective form is preferred also in the Third Person : **canis aliēnus**, *a strange dog*, *another man's dog* ; **filius erilis**, *master's son*.

2. The attention of the student is called to the variety of forms which possession may take. **Statua Myrōnis**, *Myron's statue*, may mean : 1. A statue which Myron owns ; 2. Which Myron has made ; 3. Which represents Myron.

3. Sometimes the governing word is omitted, where it can be easily

supplied, so especially *aedēs* or *templum*, after *ad*, and less often after other prepositions: *Pecūnia utinam ad Opis manēret*, C., *Ph.*, I. 7, 17; *would that the money were still at Ops's* (temple).

NOTES.—1. The *Family Genitive*, as *Hasdrubal Gisgōnis* (L., XXVIII., 12, 13), *Gisgo's Hasdrubal*, *Hasdrubal*, *Gisgo's son* (as it were, *Hasdrubal O' Gisgo*), *Hectoris Andromachē* (V., A., III. 319), *Hector's (wife) Andromache*, is found twice only in Cicerō, otherwise it is poetical and post-Ciceronian. *Servos*, however, is regularly omitted; *Flaccus Claudī*, *Flaccus, Claudius' slave*.

2. The *Chorographic Genitive* (*geographic*) is rare and post-Ciceronian: *Rēx Chalcidem Euboeae vēnit*, L., XXVII. 30, 7; *the king came to Chalcis of* (in) *Euboea*.

The *Chorographic Genitive* is not found with persons. Here an adjective or a prepositional phrase is necessary: *Thalēs Milēsius*, or *ex Milētō*, *Thales of Miletus*.

### Active and Passive Genitive.

**363.** When the substantive on which the Genitive depends contains the idea of an action (*nōmen āctiōnis*), the possession may be *active* or *passive*. Hence the division into

1. The *Active* or *Subjective Genitive*: *amor Dei*, *the love of God*, *the love which God feels* (God loves); *patriae beneficia*, *the benefits of* (conferred by) *one's country* (376, R. 2).

2. *Passive* or *Objective Genitive*: *amor Dei*, *love of God*, *love toward God* (God is loved).

REMARKS.—I. The English form in *of* is used either *actively* or *passively*: *the love of women*. Hence, to avoid ambiguity, other prepositions than *of* are often substituted for the *Passive Genitive*, such as *for*, *toward*, and the like. So, also, sometimes in Latin, especially in Livy, and later Historians generally:

*Voluntās Serviliī ergā Caesarem*, Cf. C., *Q. P.*, III. 1. 6, 26; *the goodwill of Servilius toward Caesar*. *Odium in bonōs inveterātum*, C., *Val.*, 3, 6; *deep-seated hate toward the conservatives*.

2. Both Genitives may be connected with the same substantive:

*Veterēs Helvētiōrum iniūriæ populī Rōmānī*, Cf. CAES., *B. G.*, I. 30, 2: *the ancient injuries of the Roman people by the Helvetians*.

NOTE. The use of the Genitive with substantives whose corresponding verbs take other cases than the Accusative, gradually increases in Latin, beginning with the earliest times, but it is not very common in the classical language.

**364.** The *Subjective Genitive*, like the *Possessive*, is used only of the Third Person. In the First and Second Persons the possessive pronoun is used, thus showing the close relationship of Agent and Possessor.

*Amor meus*, *my love* (the love which I feel). *Dēsiderium tuum*, *your longing* (the longing which you feel).

Additional attributives are put in the Genitive (321, R. 2):

**Iūrāvī hanc urbem meā ūnius operā salvam esse, C., Pis., 3, 6 ;** *I swore that this city owed its salvation to my exertions alone.*

REMARK.—**Nostrum** and **vestrum** are used as Partitive Genitives:

**Māgna pars nostrum, a great part of us ; uterque vestrum, either (both) of you.**

**Nostrī melior pars** means *the better part of our being, our better part.*

With **omnium**, the forms **nostrum** and **vestrum** must be used (362, R. 1).

NOTES.—1. Occasionally, however, in Latin, as in English, the Gen. is used instead of the possessive pronoun; so CICERO says **splendor vestrum** (*Att.*, vii. 13 a, 3), and **cōnsēsus vestrum** (*Ph.*, v. 1, 2), and one or two others; but other examples are very rare until after TACITUS, when the Singular forms, after the example of OVID (*M.*, i. 30), become not uncommon. See 304, 3, N. 1. “For the life of me” = “for my life.”

2. On the other hand the Genitives of the personal pronouns are used regularly as the Objective Genitive:

**Amor meī, love to me. Dēsiderium tuī, longing for thee. Memoria nostrī, memory of us (our memory).**

Occasionally the possessive pronoun is used even here; see 304, 2, N. 2, and compare “The deep damnation of *his* taking off.”

### Genitive of Quality.

**365.** The Genitive of Quality must always have an adjective or its equivalent.

**Vir māgnæ auctōritātis, CAES., B.G., v. 35, 6 ;** *a man of great influence.* **Homō nihili (= nullius pretii), PL., B., 1188 ;** *a fellow of no account.* **Tridui via, CAES., B.G., i. 38, 1 ;** *a three days' journey.* **Nōn multī cibī hospitem accipiēs, multi iocī, C., Fam., ix. 26, 4 ;** *you will receive a guest who is a small eater but a great joker.*

REMARKS.—1. The Genitive of Quality, like the adjective, is not used with a proper name. Exceptions are very rare in classical Latin (CAES., *B.G.*, v. 35, 6, **Quīntus Līcānius, eiusdem ordinis**). But later they are more common.

2. The Genitive of Quality is less common than the Ablative, being used chiefly of the essentials. The Genitive always of Number, Measure, Time, Space; the Ablative always of externals, so of parts of the body. Often the use seems indifferent. (400.)

NOTE.—The omission of the adjective is not found before APULEIUS, in whom, as in English, *a man of influence* may be for *a man of great influence*.

### Genitive as a Predicate.

**366.** The Genitives of Possession and Quality may be used as Predicates.

**Hic versus Plautī nōn est, hic est, C., Fam., ix. 16, 4 ;** *this verse is not*



by Plautus, *this is*. **Omnia quae mulieris fuērunt, vīrī ffunt dōtis nōmine**, C., *Top.*, iv. 23; *everything that was the woman's becomes the husband's under the title of dowry*. **Virtūs tantārum vīrium est ut sē ipsa tueātur**, C., *Tusc.*, v. 1, 2; *virtue is of such strength as to be her own protector*.

REMARKS.—1. The Possession appears in a variety of forms, and takes a variety of translations :

**Hūius erō vivus, mortuus hūius erō**, PROP., II. 15, 35; *hers I shall be, living; dead, hers I shall be*. **Nōlae senātus Rōmānōrum, plēbs Hannibalis erat**, L., XXIII. 39, 7; *at Nola the senate was (on the side) of the Romans, the common folk (on) Hannibal's*. **Damnātiō est iūdicum, poena lēgis**, C., *Sull.*, 22, 63; *condemning is the judges' (business), punishment the law's*. **Est animi ingenui cui multum dēbeās eidem plūrimum velle dēbere**, C., *Fam.*, II. 6, 2; *it shows the feeling of a gentleman to be willing to owe very much to him to whom you already owe much*. **Pauperis est numerāre pecus**, OV., *M.*, XIII. 823; *'tis only the poor man that counts his flock ('tis the mark of a poor man to count the flock)*.

Observe the special variety, **Genitīvus Auctōris**: **Is [Herculēs] dicēbātur esse Myrōnis**, C., *Verr.*, iv. 3, 5; *that (statue of) Hercules was said to be Myron's (work), by Myron*.

So also with **facere**, *to make (cause to be)*, which is common in LIVING especially :

**Rōmānae diciōnis facere**, L., XXI. 60, 3; *to bring under the Roman sway*. **Summum imperium in orbe terrārum Macedonum fēcerant**, L., XLV. 7, 3; *the paramount authority of the world they had brought (into the hands) of the Macedonians*.

2. For the personal representative of a quality, the quality itself may be used sometimes with but little difference, as : **stultitiae est**, *it is the part of folly*; **stulti est**, *it is the part of a fool*. So, too, **stultum est**, *it is foolish*. But when the adj. is of the Third Declension, the neuter should not be used, except in combination with an adj. of the Second.

**Tempori cedere semper sapientis est habitum**, C., *Fam.*, iv. 9, 2; *to yield to the pressure of the times has always been held wise*. **Pigrum et iners vidētur sudōre acquirere quod possis sanguine parāre**, TAC., *G.*, I. 14, 17; *it is thought slow and spiritless to acquire by sweat what you can get by blood*.

Some combinations become phraseological, as : **cōnsuetūdinis, mōris est** (the latter post-classical), *it is the custom*.

3. The same methods of translation apply to the Possessive Pronoun in the Predicate ("Vengeance is mine") : **meum est**, *it is my property, business, way*.

**Nōn est mentīrī meum**, TER., *Heaut.*, 549; *lying is not my way (I do not lie)*. **His tantis in rēbus est tuum vidēre, quid agātur**, C., *Mur.*, 38, 83; *in this important crisis it is your business to see what is to be done*.

## Partitive Genitive.

**367.** The Partitive Genitive stands for the Whole to which a Part belongs. It is therefore but an extension of the Possessive Genitive. It may be used with any word that involves partition, and has the following varieties (368–372) :

**368.** The Partitive Genitive is used with substantives of Quantity, Number, Weight.

**Māximus vīnī numerus fuit, permāgnū pondus argenti,** C., *Ph.*, II. 27, 66 ; *there was a large amount of wine, an enormous mass of silver.* In **iūgerō Leontīnī agrī medimnū tritici seritur,** C. *Verr.*, III. 47, 112 ; *on a juger of the Leontine territory a medimnus of wheat is sown.* **Campānōrum ālam, quīngentōs ferē equitēs excēdere aciē iubet,** L., X. 29, 2 ; *he orders a squadron of Campanians, about 500 horsemen, to leave the line.*

REMARK.—This is sometimes called the *Genitīvus Generis*, Whether the conception be partitive or not, depends on circumstances.

**Medimnū tritici,** a *medimnus of wheat*, may be a *medimnus of wheat* (*Genitīvus Generis*) or a *MEDIMNUS of wheat* (*Partitive*).

NOTE.—The reversed construction is occasionally found. **Sex diēs ad eam rem cōficiendam spatii pōstulant,** CAES., *B. C.*, I. 3, 6, instead of **spatium sex diērum.**

**369.** The Partitive Genitive is used with the Neuter Singular of the following and kindred words, but only in the Nominative or Accusative.

<b>tantum,</b> <i>so much,</i>	<b>quantum,</b> <i>as (how much),</i>	<b>aliquantum,</b> <i>somewhat,</i>
<b>multum,</b> <i>much,</i>	<b>plūs,</b> <i>more,</i>	<b>plūrimum,</b> <i>most,</i>
<b>paulum,</b> <i>little,</i>	<b>minus,</b> <i>less,</i>	<b>minimum,</b> <i>least,</i>
<b>satis,</b> <i>enough,</i>	<b>parum,</b> <i>too little,</i>	<b>nihil,</b> <i>nothing,</i>
<b>hōc,</b> <i>this,</i>	<b>id, illud, istud,</b> <i>that,</i>	<b>idem,</b> <i>the same,</i>
<b>quod and quid,</b> <i>which and what ?</i> with their compounds.		

**Quod in rēbus honestis operae cūraeque pōnētur, id iūre laudābitur,** C., *Off.*, I. 6, 19 ; *what (of) effort and pains shall be bestowed on reputable deeds, will receive a just recompense of praise.* **Is locus ab omni turbā id temporis** (336, N. 2) **vacuus [erat],** C., *Fin.*, v. 1, 1 ; *that place was at that (point of) time free from anything like a crowd.* **Satis ēloquentiae, sapientiae parum,** S., *C.*, 5, 4 ; *enough (of) eloquence, of wisdom too little.*

REMARKS.—I. Neuter adjectives of the Second Declension can be treated as substantives in the Gen.; not so adjectives of the Third, except in combination with adjectives of the Second, but here usually the Second Declension adjective is attracted : **aliquid bonum,** or **boni,** *something good* ; **aliquid memorābile,** *something memorable* ; **aliquid boni**

et memorābilis, *something good and memorable* (better *aliquid bonum et memorābile*).

Quid habet ista rēs aut laetābile aut glōriōsum? *C., Tusc., i. 21, 49* (204, N. 3).

2. A familiar phrase is : **Nihil reliquū facere.** 1. *To leave nothing (not a thing).* 2. (Occasionally), *to leave nothing undone.*

NOTES.—1. The conception is often not so much partitive as characteristic. So **Quodcumque hōc rēgni**, *V., A., i. 78*; *this realm, what (little) there is of it (what little realm I have)*. Perhaps, too, such combinations as **flāgitium hominis** may be classed under this head. See 361, N. 3.

2. The partitive construction, with a preposition, is not found in CICERO or CAESAR, but begins with SALLUST :

**Ad id loci**, *S., C., 45, 3*; **ad id locōrum**, *S., Jug., 63, 6*.

**370.** The Partitive Genitive is used with numerals both general and special.

*Special :*

**Centum militum**, *a hundred (of the) soldiers, a hundred (of) soldiers.*

(**Centum milites**, *a, the hundred soldiers.*)

**Quintus rēgum**, *the fifth (of the) king(s).*

(**Quintus rēx**, *the fifth king.*)

*General :*

**Multi militum**, *many of the soldiers, many soldiers.*

(**Multi milites**, *many soldiers.*)

REMARKS.—1. The English language commonly omits the partition, unless it is especially emphatic :

**Multi civium adsunt**, *many CITIZENS are present.* **Multi civēs adsunt**, *MANY are the citizens present.*

2. When all are embraced, there is no partition in Latin :

(**Nōs**) **trecenti coniūrāvimus**, *L., ii. 12, 15*; *three hundred of us have bound ourselves by an oath.* **Volnera quae circum plūrima mūrōs accēpit patriōs**, *V., A., ii. 277*; *wounds which he received in great numbers before his country's walls.*

**Qui omnēs**, *all of whom.* **Quot estis?** *how many are (there of) you?*  
So always **quot, tot, totidem.**

Here the English language familiarly employs the partition. Exceptions are very rare.

3. On **mille** and **milia**, see 293. On prepositions with numerals, see 372, R. 2.

**371.** The Partitive Genitive is used with Pronouns.

**Ilī militum**, *those (of the) soldiers.* **Ilī milites**, *those soldiers.*

**Illī Graecōrum**, *those (of the) Greeks.*

**Fidēnātium qui supersunt**, **ad urbem Fidēnās tendunt**, *L., iv. 33, 10*; *the surviving Fidenates take their way to the city of Fidenae.*

REMARKS.—1. *Uterque*, *either (both)*, is commonly used as an adjective with substantives : *uterque cōsul*, *either consul = both consuls* ; as a substantive with pronouns, unless a substantive is also used : *uterque hōrum*, *both of these* ; but *uterque ille dux*. So, too, with relatives in the neuter, and with Plural forms of *uterque*, concord is the rule. Compare *uterque nostrum*, C., *Sull.*, 4, 13, with *utrique nōs*, C., *Fam.*, XI. 20, 3. See 292.

2. On the use of prepositions instead of the Genitive, see 372, R. 2.

NOTE.—The use of the relative with the Genitive is characteristic of LIVY.

**372.** The Partitive Genitive is used with Comparatives and Superlatives :

*Prior hōrum in proeliō cecidit*, NEP., XXI. 1, 2 ; *the former of these fell in an engagement*. *Indus est omnium flūminum māximus*, C., *N.D.*, II. 52, 130 (211, R. 2).

REMARKS.—1. When there are only two, the comparative exhausts the degrees of comparison (300).

2. Instead of the Partitive Genitive with Numerals, Pronouns, Comparatives, and Superlatives, the Abl. may be employed with *ex*, *out of*, *dē*, *from* (especially with proper names and singulars), *in*, *among* (rare), or the Acc. with *inter*, *among*, *apud* : *Gallus prōvocat ūnum ex Rōmānīs*, *the Gaul challenges one of the Romans* ; *ūnus dē multīs*, *one of the many* (the masses) ; *Croesus inter rēgēs opulentissimus*, *Croesus, wealthiest of kings*. With *ūnus*, *ex* or *dē* is the more common construction, except that when *ūnus* is *first* in a series, the Gen. is common.

3. On the concord of the Superlative see 211, R. 2.

NOTES. 1. The Partitive Genitive with positives is occasional in poetry ; in prose it begins with LIVY and becomes more common later.

*Sequimur tē, sāncte deōrum*, V., A., IV. 576 ; *we follow thee, holy deity*. *Canum dēgenerēs (caudam) sub alvom flectunt*, PLIN., *N.H.*, XI., 50, 265 ; *currish dogs curl the tail up under the belly*.

2. Substantival neuters, with no idea of quantity, were rarely followed by the Gen. in early Latin. CICERO shows a few cases of Plurals of superlatives, and one case of a Plural of a comparative in this construction : *in interiōra aedium Sullae* (*Att.* IV., 3, 3). CAESAR shows one case of a positive : *in occultīs ac reconditis templī* (*B.C.*, III. 105, 5). SALLUST shows the first case of the Singular : *in praeceptū montis extremō* (*Jug.*, 37, 4). Then the usage extends and becomes common, especially in TACITUS. In the poets it begins with LUCRETIVS.

*Ardua dum metuunt amittunt vēra viā* (29, N. 2), LUCR., I. 660 ; *the while they fear the steeper road, they miss the true*.

So *amāra cūrārūm*, H., O., IV. 12, 19 ; *bitter elements of cares, bitter cares* ; *strāta viārūm*, V., A., I. 422 = *strātae viae*, *the paved streets*.

3. The Partitive Genitive is also used with Adverbs of Quantity, Place, Extent : *armōrum adfatim*, L., XXVII. 17, 7 ; *abundance of arms* ; *ubi terrārūm, gentium?* *where in the world?* (Very late Latin, *tum temporis*, *at that time*.) The usage with *hūc*, *eō*, as *hūc, eō arrogantiae prōcēssit*, *he got to this, that pitch of presumption*, is a colloquialism, which begins with SALLUST, but is not found in CICERO or CAESAR.

Notice especially the phrase: **quod** (or **quoad**) **ēius** (**facere**) **possum**, *as far as I can do so*: *C.*, *Fam.*, III. 2, 2; *Att.*, XI. 12, 4; *Inv.*, II. 6, 20.

4. The Partitive Genitive with proper names is rare, and mostly confined to *Livy*: **Cōsulūm Sulpiciū in dextrō Poeteliū in laevō cornū cōsistunt**, *L.*, IX. 27, 8.

5. The Partitive Genitive as a Predicate is Greekish: **Fies nōbilitū tū quoque fontium**, *H.*, *O.*, III. 13, 13; *thou too shalt count among the famous fountains.*

### Genitive with Prepositional Substantives.

**373. Causā, grātiā, ergō, and instar** are construed with the Genitive.

[**Sophistae**] **quaestūs causā philosophābantur**, *C.*, *Ac.*, II. 23, 72; *the professors of wisdom dealt in philosophy for the sake of gain.* **Tū mē amōris magis quam honōris servāvisti grātiā**, *ENN.*, *F.*, 287 (M.); *thou didst save me more for love's (sake) than (thou didst) for honour's sake.* **Virtūtis ergō**, *C.*, *Opt. Gen.*, 7, 19; *on account of valor.* **Instar montis equus**, *V.*, *A.*, II. 15; *a horse the bigness of a mountain.* **Platō mihi unus instar est omnium**, *C.*, *Br.*, 51, 191; *Plato by himself is in my eyes worth them all.*

REMARKS.—1. **Causā** and **grātiā**, *for the sake*, commonly follow the Gen. in classical Latin and also in the Jurists. In *Livy* and later they often precede. **Ergō**, *on account*, belongs especially to early Latin, except in formulae and laws, and follows its Genitive. It is rare in the poets. **Instar** is probably a fossilised Infinitive (**instāre**), meaning “*the equivalent*,” whether of size or value.

2. Except for special reasons **causā** takes the possessive pronoun in agreement, rather than the personal pronoun in the Genitive; more rarely **grātiā**:

**Vestrā rei quae publicae causā**, *C.*, *Verr.*, v. 68, 173; *for your sake and that of the commonwealth.* But in antithesis, **multa quae nostrī causā numquam facerēmus, facimus causā amicōrum**! *C.*, *Lael.*, 16, 57 (disputed).

### II. GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

**374. Adjectives of Fulness, of Participation, and of Power, of Knowledge and Ignorance, of Desire and Disgust, take the Genitive.**

**Plēnus rimārum**, *TER.*, *Eun.*, 105; *full of chinks* (“a leaky vessel”). **Particeps cōsiliī**, *C.*, *Sull.*, 4, 12; *a sharer in the plan.* **Mentis compos**, *C.*, *Ph.*, II. 38, 97; *in possession of (one's) mind.* **Multārum rērum peritus**, *C.*, *Font.*, II. 25; *versed in many things.* **Cupidus pecūniae**, *Cf. C.*, *Verr.*, I. 3, 8; *grasping after money.* **Fāstidiōsus Latīnārum** (**litterārum**), *C.*, *Br.*, 70, 247; *too dainty for Latin.* **Omnium rērum inscius**, *C.*, *Br.*, 85, 292; *a universal ignoramus.* **Cūr nōn ut plēnus vitāe convīva recēdis?** *LUCK.*, III. 938 (273). **Sitque memor nostrī necne, referte mihi**, *OV.*, *Tr.*, IV.



3, 10 (204, N. 7). *Cōnschia mēns rēctī Fāmae mendācia rīsīt*, Ov., *F.*, IV. 311 (330, R.). *Agricolam laudat iūris lēgumque perītus*, H., *S.*, I. 1, 9; *the husbandman's lot is praised by the counsel learned in the law*. *Omnēs immemorem beneficiī ōdērunt*, C., *Off.*, II. 18, 63; *all hate a man who has no memory for kindness*. (*Bēstiae*) *sunt ratiōnis et ōratiōnis expertēs*, C., *Off.*, I. 16, 50; *beasts are devoid of reason and speech (lack discourse of reason)*. *Omnia plēna cōnsiliōrum, inānia verbōrum vidēmus*, C., *Or.*, I. 9, 37; *we see a world that is full of wise measures, void of eloquence*. *Gallia frūgum fertilis fuit*, L., V. 34, 2; *Gaul was productive of grain*.

NOTES.—1. Of adjectives of *Fullness*, with the Gen., only *plēnus*, *replētus*, *inops*, and *inānis* are classical and common; single instances are found of *liberālis*, *profusus*, in SALLUST (*C.*, 7, 6; 5, 4), and *iēiūnus* occurs once in CICERO. PLAUTUS also uses *onustus* and *prōdigus*. Poets and later prose writers are free. *Plēnus* occurs very rarely with the Abl. in CICERO and CAESAR, more often in LIVY. *Refertus* is used by CICERO usually with the Abl. of the Thing and with the Gen. of the Person.

2. *Participation*: Classical are *particeps*, *expers*, *cōsors*, with some adjectives expressing guilt, as *manifestus* (archaic), *affinis*, *reus*. Of these *particeps* takes also the Dat. in post-classical Latin, and *expers* has also the Abl. (not classical) from PLAUTUS on. (See S., *C.*, 33, 1.) *Affinis* has the Dat. in LIVY, in local sense also in CICERO; *reus* takes Abl. or *dē*.

3. *Power*: *Compos* alone is classical, and is occasionally found with Abl. in SALLUST, VERGIL, LIVY. *Potēns* is found in PLAUTUS, the poets, and post-classical prose; *impos* in PLAUTUS, and then not until SENECA.

4. *Knowledge and Ignorance*: Classical are some eighteen. Of these *perītus* has also Abl., and rarely *ad*; *insuētus* takes also Dat. as well as *dē*; *prūdēns* has also *ad*; *rudis* has Abl. with *in* more often than the Gen. in CICERO, but also *ad*. Ante-classical Latin shows a few more adjectives.

5. *Desire and Disgust*: Classical are *avidus*, *cupidus*, *fāstidiōsus*, *studiōsus*. Of these *avidus* has also *in* with Acc. and with Abl.; *studiōsus* has Dat. in PLAUTUS (*M. G.*, 80r); single examples are cited with *ad* and *in*. *Fāstidiōsus* occurs but once in CICERO (see above); see H., *O.*, III. 1, 37.

6. In later Latin and in the poets almost all adjectives that denote an affection of the mind take a Gen. of the Thing to which the affection refers, where model prose requires the Abl. or a preposition: *cōnsiliī ambiguus*, TAC., *H.*, IV. 21; *doubtful of purpose*. *Ingrātus salūtis*, V., *A.*, x. 665.

The analogy of these adjectives is followed by others, so that the Gen. becomes a complement to the adjective, just as it is to the corresponding substantive.

*Integer vītāe*, H., *O.*, I. 22, 1; *spotless of life*; like *integritās vītāe*. (Compare *fāmā et fortūnis integer*, S., *H.*, II. 41, 5 D; *in fame and fortunes intact*.)

7. The seat of the feeling is also put in the Gen., chiefly with *animī* and *ingeniī* (which were probably Locatives originally). *Aeger animī*, L., I. 58, 9; *sick at heart, heartsick*. *Audāx ingenīi*, STAT., *S.*, III. 2, 64; *daring of disposition*. The Pl. is *animis*.

8. The Gen. with adjectives involving *Separation* instead of the Abl. (390, 3) begins with the Augustan poets; though SALLUST shows *nūdus* and *vacuus* (*Jug.*, 79, 6; 90, 1); *liber labōrum*, H., *A. P.*, 212.

9. Classical Latin uses *certus* with Gen. only in the phrase *certiōrem facere, to inform*, which has also *dē* (always in CAESAR).

10. *Dignus*, *worthy*, and *indignus*, *unworthy*, with Gen. are poetical and rare.

11. On *aliēnus*, *strange*, see 359, N. 2. On *aequālis*, *commūnis*, *cōnsciū*, *contrārius*, *pār*, *proprius*, *similis*, *superstes*, and the like, see 359, R. 1.

## Genitive with Verbals.

**375.** Some Present Participles take the Genitive when they lose their verbal nature; and so occasionally do verbals in **-āx** in poetry and later prose.

(Epaminōndās) erat adeō vērītātis diligēns ut nē iocō quidem mentirētur, NEP., XV. 3, 1; *Epaminondas was so careful (such a lover) of the truth as not to tell lies even in jest.* Omnium cōnsēnsū capāx imperiī nisi imperāset, TAC., II., 1. 49; *by general consent capable of empire, had he not become emperor.*

NOTES. 1. The participle is transient; the adjective permanent. The simple test is the substitution of the relative and the verb: **amāns** (participle), *loving (who is loving)*; **amāns** (adjective), *fond, (substantive), lover*; **patiēns** (participle), *bearing (who is bearing)*; **patiēns** (adjective), *enduring, (substantive), a sufferer.*

2. Ante-classical Latin shows only **amāns**, **cupiēns**, **concupiēns**, **fugitāns**, **gerēns**, **persequēns**, **sciēns**, **temperāns**. CICERO carries the usage very far, and it is characteristic of his style. CAESAR, on the other hand, has very few cases (*B. C.*, 1. 60, 3).

CICERO also shows the first case of a Gen. after a compared participle. **Sumus nātūrā appetentissimī honestātis**, C., *Tusc.*, II. 24, 58. These participles can also revert to the verbal constructions.

3. Of verbals with the Gen., PLAUTUS shows one example: **mendāx** (*Asin.*, 855); CICERO perhaps one: **rapāx** (*Lael.*, 14, 50). The usage in later Latin and the poets is confined at most to about one dozen verbals.

## III. GENITIVE WITH VERBS.

## Genitive with Verbs of Memory.

**376.** Verbs of Reminding, Remembering, and Forgetting, take the Genitive.

**Tē veteris amicitiae commonefecit**, [C.] *ad Her.*, IV. 24, 33; *he reminded you of your old friendship.* **Est proprium stultitiae aliōrum vitia cernere, oblivisci suōrum**, C., *Tusc.*, III. 30, 73; *the fact is, it shows a fool to have keen eyes for the faults of others, to forget one's own.* **Ipse iubet mortis tē meminisse deus**, MART., II. 59; *a god himself bids you remember death.*

REMARKS. —1. Verbs of Reminding take more often the Abl. with **dē** (so regularly in CICERO), and the Acc. neut. of a pronoun or Numerical adjective. TACITUS alone uses **monēre** with the Gen. (*Ann.*, 1. 67, 1).

**Ōrō ut Terentiam moneātis dē tēstamentō**, C., *Att.*, VI. 16, 5; *I beg you to put Terentia in mind of the will.* **Discipulōs id ūnum moneō**, QUINT., II. 9, 1 (333, 1).

2. Verbs of Remembering and Forgetting also take the Acc., especially of Things;

**Haec olim meminisse iuvabit**, V., A., I. 203 ; *to remember these things one day will give us pleasure*. **Quī sunt bonī civēs, nisi quī patriae beneficia meminērunt?** C., *Planc.*, 33, 80 ; *who are good citizens except those who remember the benefits conferred by their country?* **Oblivisci nihil solēs nisi iniūriās**, C., *Lig.*, 12, 35 ; *you are wont to forget nothing except injuries*.

**Recordor** (literally = *I bring to heart, to mind*) is construed with the Acc. of the Thing, except in three passages from CICERO ; **dē** is found with Persons.

**Et vōcem Anchisae magni voltumque recordor**, V., A., VIII. 156 ; and *I recall (call to mind) the voice and countenance of Anchises the Great*.

**Memini**, *I bear in mind, I (am old enough to) remember*, takes the Accusative :

[**Antipatrum**] **tū probē meministi**, C., *Or.*, III. 50, 194 ; *you remember Antipater very well*.

3. **Venit mihi in mentem**, *it comes into (up to) my mind*, may be construed impersonally with the Gen., or personally with a subject ; the latter by CICERO only when the subject is a neuter pronoun.

**Venit mihi Platōnis in mentem**, C., *Fin.*, v. 1, 2 ; *Plato rises before my mind's eye*.

#### Genitive with Verbs of Emotion.

**377. Misereor**, *I pity*, takes the Genitive, and **miseret**, *it moves to pity*, **paenitet**, *it repents*, **piget**, *it irks*, **pudet**, *it makes ashamed*, **taedet** and **pertaesum est**, *it tires*, take the Accusative of the Person Who Feels, and the Genitive of the Exciting Cause.

**Miserēmini sociōrum**, C., *Verr.*, I. 28, 72 ; *pity your allies !* **Suae quemque fortunae paenitet**, C., *Fam.*, VI. 1, 1 ; *each man is discontented with his lot*. **Mē nōn solum piget stultitiae meae, sed etiam pudet**, C., *Dom.*, II. 29 ; *I am not only fretted at my folly, but actually ashamed of it*.

REMARKS.—1. **Pudet** is also used with the Gen. of the Person whose Presence excites the shame :

**Pudet deōrum hominumque**, L., III. 19, 7 ; *it is a shame in the sight of gods and men*.

2. These Impersonals can also have a subject, chiefly a Demonstrative or Relative pronoun : **Nōn tē haec pudet?** TER., *Ad.*, 754 ; *do not these things put you to the blush?*

3. Other constructions follow from general rules. So the Inf (422) and quod (542).

**Nōn mē vixisse paenitet**, C., *Cat. M.*, 23, 84 (540). **Quintum paenitet quod animum tuum offendit**, Cf. C., *Att.*, XI. 13, 2 ; *Quintus is sorry that he has wounded your feelings*.

NOTES.—1. With the same construction are found **miserēō** (early Latin), **miserēscō** (poetical), **disputet** (early Latin), **distaedet** (early Latin), **vereor** (mostly in early Latin), and a few others.

2. **Miserārī** and **commiserārī**, *to pity, commiserate*, take Acc. until very late Latin.

### Genitive with Judicial Verbs.

The Genitive with Judicial Verbs belongs to the same category as the Genitive with Verbs of Rating, both being extensions of the Genitive of Quality.

**378.** Verbs of Accusing, Convicting, Condemning, and Acquitting take the Genitive of the Charge.

(Miltiadēs) **accūsātus est prōditiōnis**, NEP., l. 7, 5; *Miltiades was accused of treason*. [**Fannius**] **C. Verrem insimulat avāritiae**, C., *Verr.*, l. 40, 128; *Fannius charges Gaius Verres with avarice*. **Videō nōn tē absolūtum esse improbitātis sed illōs damnātōs esse caedis**, C., *Verr.*, l. 28, 72; *I see not that you are acquitted of dishonour, but that they are convicted of murder*.

REMARKS.—1. Judicial Verbs include a number of expressions and usages. So **capī, tenērī, dēprehendī, sē adstringere, sē adligāre, sē obligāre** (ante-classical), and others, mean *to be found guilty*; **inrepāre, increpitāre, urgāre, dēferre, arguere, etc.**, mean *charge*.

So also kindred expressions: **reum facere**, *(to make a party) to indict, to bring an action against*; **nōmen dēferre dē**, *to bring an action against*; **sacrilegīi compertum esse**, *to be found (guilty) of sacrilege*.

2. For the Gen. of the Charge may be substituted **nōmine** or **crīmine** with the Gen., or the Abl. with **dē**: **nōmine (crīmine) cōnīrātiōnis damnāre**, *to find guilty of conspiracy*; **accūsāre dē vī**, *of violence* (Gen. *vis* rare); **dē venēficiō**, *of poisoning*; **dē rēbus repetundīs**, *of extortion*. **Pōstulāre** always has **dē** in CICERO. We find sometimes **in** with Abl.: **convictus in crīmine**, *on the charge*; or, **inter**: **inter sicārīōs damnātus est**, *convicted of homicide* (C., *Cluent.*, 7, 21; Cf. *Ph.*, II. 4, 8).

3. Verbs of Condemning and Acquitting take the Abl. as well as the Gen. of the Charge and the Punishment, and always the Abl. of the definite Fine; the indefinite Fine, **quantī, duplī, quadruplī, etc.**, is in the Genitive.

**Accūsāre capitis**, or **capite**, *to bring a capital charge*. **Damnāre capitis**, or **capite**, *to condemn to death*. **Damnārī decem milibus**, *to be fined ten thousand*.

**Multāre**, *to mulct*, is always construed with the Ablative: **Multāre pecūniā**, *to mulct in (of) money*.

**Manlius virtūtem filii morte multāvit**, QUINT., v. II, 7; *Manlius punished the valour of his son with death*.

4. Destination and Enforced Labor are expressed by **ad** or **in**, but all examples are post-classical: **damnārī ad bēstias**, *to be condemned (to be*

thrown) *to wild beasts*; **ad** (in) *metalla*, *to the mines*; **ad** (in) *opus publicum*, *to hard labour*. **Vōtī** *damnārī*, *to be bound to fulfil a vow*, is Livian (except **NEP.**, **xx.** 5, 3, where it has a different sense).

5. Verbs of Accusing may have also the Acc. of the Thing and the Gen. of the Person : *inertiam accūsās adulēscēntium*, **C.**, *Or.*, **i.** 58, 246.

### Genitive with Verbs of Rating and Buying.

**379.** Verbs of Rating and Buying are construed with the Genitive of the general value or cost, and the Ablative of the particular value or cost. (404.)

Verbs of Rating are : **aestimāre**, **existimāre** (rare), *to value*; **putāre**, *to reckon*; **dūcere** (rare in **CICERO**), *to take*; **habēre**, *to hold*; **pendere** (mostly in Comedy), *to weigh*; **facere**, *to make*, *put*; **esse**, *to be* (worth); **ferī**, *to be considered*.

Verbs of Buying are : **emere**, *to buy*; **vēdere**, *to sell*; **vēnīre**, *to be for sale*; **stāre** and **cōnstāre**, *to cost*, *to come to*; **prōstāre**, **licēre**, *to be exposed*, *left* (for sale); **condūcere**, *to hire*; **locāre**, *to let*.

### 380. 1. Verbs of Rating take :

<b>Māgnī</b> , <i>much</i> ,	<b>plūris</b> , <i>more</i> ,	<b>plūrimī</b> , <b>māximī</b> , <i>most</i> ,
<b>Parvī</b> , <i>little</i> ,	<b>minōris</b> , <i>less</i> ,	<b>minimī</b> , <i>least</i> ,
<b>Tantī</b> , <b>tantīdem</b> , <i>so much</i> ,	<b>quantī</b> (and compounds), <i>how much</i> ,	<b>nihilī</b> , <i>naught</i> .

Equivalents of **nihilī**, *nothing*, are **flocī**, *a lock of wool*, **naucī**, *a trifle*, **assis**, *a copper*, **pili** (both in **CATULLUS**, mainly), and the like, and so also **hūius**, *that* (a snap of the finger), all usually with the negative.

**Dum nē ob malefacta, peream**; **parvī existumō**, **PL.**, *Capt.*, 682, ; *so long as it be not for misdeeds, let me die*; **little do I care**. [**Voluptātem**] **virtūs minimī facit**, **C.**, *Fin.*, **ii.** 13, 42 ; *virtue makes very little account of the pleasure of the senses*. [**Iūdicēs**] **rem publicam flocī nōn faciunt**, **Cf. C.**, *Att.*, **iv.** 15, 4 ; *the judges do not care a fig for the State*. **Nōn habeo naucī Marsum augurem**, **C.**, *Div.*, **i.** 58, 132 ; *I do not value a Marsian augur a barbee*.

REMARK.—**Tantī** is often used in the sense of **operae pretium est** = *it is worth while*.

**Est mihi tantī hūius invidiae tempestātem subire**, **C.**, *Cat.*, **ii.** 7, 15 ; *it is worth while (the cost), in my eyes, to bear this storm of odium*.

NOTES.—1. **Aestimō** is found with the Abl. as well as with the Genitive. So **aestimāre māgnō** and **māgnī**, *to value highly*. **CICERO** prefers the Ablative.

2. Observe the phrases : **bonī (aequī bonique) faciō** (a colloquialism), **bonī cōnsulō** (an old formula), *I put up with, take in good part*. **Nōn pēnsī habēre (dūcere)**, *to consider not worth the while*, is post-Augustan and rare.



2. Verbs of Buying take **tanti, quanti, plūris**, and **minōris**. The rest are put in the Ablative.

**Vēndō meum** (frūmentum) **nōn plūris quam cēteri**, fortasse etiam **minōris**, C., *Off.*, III. 12, 51; *I sell my corn not dearer than everybody else, perhaps even cheaper.* **Magis illa iuvant quae plūris emuntur**, JUV., XI. 16; *things give more pleasure which are bought for more.* **Ēmit** (Canius hortōs) **tanti quanti Pythius voluit**, C., *Off.*, III. 14, 59; *Canius bought the gardens at the price Pythius wanted.*

**Quanti cēnās?** *What do you give for your dinner?*

**Quanti habitās?** *What is the rent of your lodgings?*

But:

**Parvō famēs cōstat, māgnō fāstidium**, SEN., *E. M.*, 17. 4; *hunger costs little, daintiness much.*

An instructive shift:

**Ēmit?** perii hercle: **quanti?**—**Viginti minis**, TER., *Eun.*, 984; *he bought her? I'm undone. For how much?—Twenty minae.*

REMARK.—**Bene emere**, to buy cheap; **bene vēdere**, to sell dear; **male emere**, to buy dear; **male vēdere**, to sell cheap. So, too, other adverbs: **melius**, optimē, **pēius**, **pessimē**.

#### Genitive with Interest and Rēfert.

381. Interest and Rēfert take a Genitive of the Person, seldom of the Thing, concerned.

**Interest omnium rēctē facere**, C., *Fin.*, II. 22, 72; *it is to the interest of all to do right.* **Rēfert compositionis quae quibus antepōnās**, QUINT., IX. 4, 44; *it is of importance for the arrangement of words, which you put before which.*

Instead of the Genitive of the personal pronouns, the Ablative Singular feminine of the possessives is employed.

**Meā interest, meā rēfert**, *I am concerned.*

NOTES. 1. **Rēfert** is commonly used absolutely, occasionally with **meā**, etc., seldom with the Gen., in the classical language.

2. Instead of Apposition use the Relative:

**Vehementer intererat vestrā, qui patrēs estis, liberōs vestrōs hīc potissimum discere**, PLIN., *Ep.*, IV. 13, 4; *it were easily to the interest of your parents, that your children, if possible, were taught at home.*

3. The Nom. as a subject is rare, except in PLINY'S *Natural History*:

**Ūsque adeō māgnī rēfert studium atque voluptās**, LUCR., IV. 984.

Occasionally the Nom. of a neuter pronoun is found:

**Quid** (Acc.) **tuā id** (Nom.) **rēfert?** TER., *Ph.*, 723; *what business is that of yours?*

4. **Rēfert** is the more ancient, and is employed by the poets; **interest** is confined from Dactylic poetry by its form to the end of the classical period. **Interest** is peculiar to prose employ'd exclusively by CAESAR, and practised by CICERO when a complement is added.

5. No satisfactory explanation has been given of this construction. One view is that **meā rēfert** was originally [**ex**] **meā rē fert** (like **ex meā rē est**), *it is to my advantage*, and that the **ex** was lost. **Interest** having much the same force, but being later in development, took the constructions of **rēfert** by false analogy. The Gen. would be but parallel to the possessive.

**382. 1.** The Degree of Concern is expressed by an Adverb, Adverbial Accusative, or a Genitive of Value.

**Id meā minumē rēfert**, TER., *Ad.*, 881; *that makes no difference at all to me.* **Theodōrī nihil interest**, C., *Tusc.*, I. 43, 102; *It is no concern of Theodorus.* **Māgnī interest meā unā nōs esse**, C., *Att.*, XIII. 4; *it is of great importance to me that we be together.*

**2.** The Object of Concern is commonly put in the Infinitive, Accusative and Infinitive, **ut** or **nē** with the Subjunctive, or an Interrogative Sentence.

**Quid Milōnis intererat interficī Clōdium?** C., *Mil.*, 13, 34; *what interest had Milo in Clodius' being killed?* [**Caesar dicere solēbat**] **nōn tam suā quam rei pūblicae interesse utī salvus esset**, SUET., *Iul.*, 86; *Caesar used to say that it was not of so much importance to him(self) as to the State that his life should be spared.* **Vestrā interest nē imperātōrem pessimī faciant**, TAC., *H.*, I. 30; *it is to your interest that the dregs of creation do not make the emperor.* **Quid rēfert tālēs versūs quā vōce legantur?** JUV., XI. 182; *what matters it what voice such verses are recited with?*

**3.** The Thing Involved is put in the Accusative with **ad**:

**Māgnī ad honōrem nostrum interest quam primum mē ad urbem venire**, C., *Fam.*, XVI. 1, 1; *it makes a great difference touching our honour that I should come to the city as soon as possible.*

#### Occasional Uses.

**383. 1.** The Genitive is found occasionally with certain Verbs of Fulness: in classical Latin principally **implēre**, **complēre**, **egēre**, **indigēre**.

**Pisō multōs cōdicēs implēvit eārum rērum**, C., *Verr.* I. 46, 119; *Piso filled many books full of those things.* **Virtūs plūrimae commentātiōnis et exercitātiōnis indiget**, Cf. C., *Fin.*, III. 15, 50; *virtue stands in need of much (very much) study and practice.*

NOTES.—1. Classical Latin shows in all cases the Abl. much more frequently than the Gen., except in the case of **indigēre**, where CICERO prefers the Genitive. LIVY likewise prefers the Gen. with **implēre**.

**2.** Ante-classical and poetic are **explēre** (VERG.), **abundāre** (LUC.), **scatēre** (LUCR.), **saturāre** (PLAUT.), **obsaturāre** (TER.), **carēre** (TER.). **Carēre** and **egēre** have the Acc. occasionally in early Latin.

**3.** Other Grecisms are **labōrum dēcipitur**, H., *O.*, II. 13, 38 (reading doubtful).

**Rēgnāvit populōrum**, H., O., III. 30, 12. Also **mīrārī** with Gen. in VERGIL (A., XI. 126). Noteworthy is the occasional use of **crēdere** with Gen. in PLAUTUS; so once **falli**.

2. A Genitive of Separation, after the analogy of the Greek, is found in a few cases in the poets.

**Ut mē omnium iam labōrum levās**, PL., *Rud.* 247; *how you relieve me at last of all my toils and troubles.* **Dēsine mollium tandem querēllārum**, H., O., II. 9, 17; *cease at last from womanish complainings.*

3. The Genitive in Exclamations occurs in a very few instances in the poets. CAT., IX. 5; PROP., IV. (V.) 7, 21; compare PL., *Most.*, 912; LUCAN., II. 45.

On the Genitive after comparatives, see 296, N. 2.

## ABLATIVE.

**384.** The Ablative is the Adverbial, as the Genitive is the Adjective case. It contains three elements:

A. Where? B. Whence? C. Wherewith?

In a literal sense, the Ablative is commonly used with prepositions; in a figurative sense, it is commonly used without prepositions.

A. The Ablative of the Place Where appears in a figurative sense as the Ablative of the Time When.

B. The Ablative of the Place Whence appears as:

1. The Ablative of Origin. 2. The Ablative of Measure.

C. The Ablative of the Thing Wherewith appears in a figurative sense, as:

1. The Ablative of Manner. 2. The Ablative of Quality. 3. The Ablative of Means.

REMARK.—It is impossible to draw the line of demarcation with absolute exactness. So the Ablative of Cause may be derived from any of the three fundamental significations of the case, which is evidently a composite one.

To these we add:

D. The Ablative of Cause. E. The Ablative Absolute.

### I. The Literal Meanings of the Ablative.

#### A. ABLATIVE OF THE PLACE WHERE.

##### Ablātivus Locālis.

**385.** The Ablative answers the question *Where?* and takes as a rule the preposition **in**.

**In portū nāvīgō**, TER., *And.*, 480; *I am sailing in harbour.* **Pōns in Hibērō prope effectus (erat)**, CAES., *B.C.*, I. 62, 3; *the bridge over the*

*Ebro was nearly finished.* **Histriō** in scaenā [est], *Pl., Poen.*, 20 ; *the actor is ON the stage.* **Haeret** in equō senex, *Cf. C., Dei.*, 10, 28 ; *the old man sticks TO his horse.*

REMARKS.—1. Verbs of Placing and kindred significations take the Abl. with **in**, to designate the result of the motion : classical are **pōnere**, *to place*, and compounds ; **locāre**, **collocāre**, *to put* ; **statuere**, **cōstituere**, *to set* ; **cōsidere**, *to settle* ; **dēfigere**, *to plant* ; **dēmergere**, *to plunge* ; **imprimere**, *to press upon* ; **insculpere**, *to engrave* (figurative) ; **inscribere**, *to write upon* ; **incidere**, *to carve upon* ; **inclūdere**, *to shut into*.

**Platō** ratiōnem in capite posuit, **iram** in pectore locāvit, *C., Tusc.*, I. 10, 20 ; *Plato has put reason in the head, has placed anger in the breast.* (**Lucretia**) cultrum in corde dēfigit, *L.*, I. 58, 11 ; *Lucretia plants a knife in (thrusts a knife down into) her heart.* **Philosophi** in iis libris ipsis quōs scribunt dē contemnendā glōriā sua nōmina inscribunt, *C., Tusc.*, I. 15, 34 ; *philosophers write their own names on (the titles of) the very books which they write about contempt of glory.* (**Foedus**) in columnā aēneā incisum, *C., Balb.*, 23, 53 ; *a treaty cut upon a brazen column.*

The same observation applies to **sub** :

**Pōne** sub currū nimium propinquī sōlis in terrā domibus negātā, *H., O.*, I. 22, 21 ; *put (me) under the chariot of the all-too neighboring sun, in a land denied to dwellings.*

2. Verbs of Hanging and Fastening take **ex**, **ab**, or **dē**.

**Cui** spēs omnis pendet **ex** fortunā, huic nihil potest esse certī, *C., Par.*, II. 17 ; *to him who has all his hopes suspended on fortune, nothing can be certain.*

3. *Here and there in* is often rendered by **per** : *C., Fam.*, I. 7, 6, **per** prōvinciās, *here and there in the provinces* ; *V., A.*, III. 236.

NOTES.—1. In classical prose the use of the Abl. without **in** is confined to a few words, mostly phraseological. So **terrā**, *on land* ; **marī**, *by sea* ; usually in the phrase **terrā marique** (rarely in the reversed order), *on land and sea*. **In terrā** is more common otherwise than **terrā**. **Locō** and **locis**, especially when used with adjectives, usually omit **in**. The same is true of **parte** and **partibus** ; so regularly **dextrā** (**parte**), **sinistrā**, **laevā**, etc., *on the right, on the left*. **LIVY** uses **regiō** like **locus**. The tendency, however, is observable as early as **CICERO**'s time to omit the **in** when an adjective is employed, even in words other than those given above ; this tendency becomes more marked in **LIVY** and is very strong in later Latin. The poets are free. **Regard** must always be had to 389.

2. The Acc. with **in** after verbs of Placing is very rare in classical prose. In early Latin it is more common ; so with **pōnere**, **impōnere**, **collocāre**. The examples with Acc. in classical Latin are principally with compounds of **pōnere**, as **impōnere** (usually), **repōnere**, **expōnere**. **Collocāre** with **in** and Acc. in **CAES.**, *B. G.*, I. 18, 7, is not in a local sense. Sometimes the Dat. is found with **impōnere**.

3. With a verb of Rest the motion antecedent to the rest is often emphasised by construing the verb with **in** and the Acc. instead of with **in** and the Abl. This occurs most often with **esse** and **habēre**, and seems to have been colloquial, as it is very rare in classical prose.

**Numerō** mihi in mentem fuit dīs advenientem grātiās agere, *Pl., Am.*, 180.

**Adesse in senātum iūssit**, C., *Ph.*, v. 7, 19 (*Cf. hūc ades, come hither*). **Parcere victis in animum habēbat**, L., xxxiii. 10, 4.

**386.** Names of Towns in the Singular of the Third Declension, and in the Plural of all Declensions, take the Ablative of Place Where without **in**.

**Ut Rōmæ cōsulēs sic Carthāgine quotannis binī rēgēs creābantur**, NEP., xxiii. 7, 4; *as at Rome (two) consuls, so in Carthage two kings, were created yearly*. **Tālis (Rōmæ Fabricius), quālis Aristidēs Athēnis, fuit**, C., *Off.*, iii. 22, 87; *Fabricius was just such a man at Rome as Aristides was at Athens*.

REMARKS.—1. Appositions are put in the Abl. commonly with **in**; when the appositive has an attribute, the proper name regularly precedes: **Neāpoli, in celeberrimō oppidō**, C., *Itab. Post.*, 10, 26; *at Naples, a populous town*.

2. *In the neighborhood of*, *at*, is **ad** with Acc., especially of military operations: **pūgna ad Cannās** (better **Cannēnsis**), *the battle at Cannæ*; **pōns ad Genāvam**, CAES., *B. G.*, i. 7; *the bridge at Geneva*.

NOTE.—The Abl. in names of Towns of the Second Declension is found once in CAESAR (*B. C.*, iii. 35, but the reading is questioned); more often in VITRUVIUS and later Latin, but in Greek words only. Apparent exceptions in CAESAR and CICERO are to be referred to the Abl. of Separation. The poets, however, are free.

**387.** In citations from Books and in Enumerations, the Ablative of the Place Where is used without **in**.

**Librō tertiō**, *third book*; **versū decimō**, *tenth verse*; **aliō locō**, *elsewhere*.

But **in** is necessary when a passage in a book and not the whole book is meant: **Agricultūra laudātur in eō librō qui est dē tuendā rē familiārī**, C., *Cat. M.*, 17, 59; *agriculture is praised in the work on domestic economy*.

**388.** In designations of Place, with **tōtus, cūnctus, whole**; **omnis, all**; **medius, middle**, the Ablative of the Place Where is generally used without **in**.

**Menippus, meō iūdicio, tōtā Asiā disertissimus**, C., *Br.*, 91, 315; *Menippus, in my judgment, the most eloquent man in all Asia* (Minor). **Battiadēs semper tōtō cantābitur orbe**, OV., *Am.*, i. 15, 13; *Battiades (Calimachus) will always be sung throughout the world*.

REMARK.—**In** is not excluded when the idea is *throughout*, in which case **per** also may be used. **Negō in Sicilia tōtā** (*throughout the whole of Sicily*) **ūllum argenteum vās fuisse, etc.**, C., *Verr.*, iv. 1, 1.

**389.** In all such designations of Place as may be regarded in the light of Cause, Manner, or Instrument, the Ablative is used without a preposition.



Ut terrā Thermopylārum angustiae Graeciam, ita marī fretum Euripi claudit, L., XXXI. 23, 12 ; *as the pass of Thermopylae bars Greece by land, so the frith of Euripus by sea.* Ariovistus exercitum castris continuit, CAES., B.G., I. 48, 4 ; *Ariovistus kept his army within the camp.* Egressus est nōn viis sed trāmitibus, C., Ph., XIII. 9, 19 ; *he went out not by high roads but by cross-cuts.* Nēmō ire quemquam publicā prohibet viā, PL., Curc., 35 ; *no man forbiddeth (any one to) travel by the public road.* Mātris cinerēs Rōmam Tiberī subvectī sunt, Cf. SUET., Cal., 15 ; *his mother's ashes were brought up to Rome by the Tiber.*

So recipere aliquem tēctō, oppidō, portū, *to receive a man into one's house, town, harbour* ; where, however, the Acc. with *in* is not excluded : gentēs ūniversae in cīvitatē sunt receptae, C., Balb., 13, 31.

## B. ABLATIVE OF THE PLACE WHENCE.

### Ablātīvus Sēparātīvus.

390. 1. The Ablative answers the question *Whence?* and takes as a rule the prepositions *ex*, *out of*, *dē*, *from*, *ab*, *off*.

(Eum) exturbāstī ex aedibus ? PL., Trin., 137 ; *did you hustle him out of the house ?* Arāneās dēiciam dē pariete, PL., St., 355 ; *I will get the cobwebs down from the wall.* Alcibiadem Athēniēnsēs ē cīvitatē expulērunt, Cf. NEP., VII. 6, 2 ; *the Athenians banished Alcibiades from the state.* Dēcēdit ex Galliā Rōmam Naevius, C., Quinct., 4, 16 ; *Naevius withdrew from Gaul to Rome.* Unde dēiēcistī sive ex quō locō, sive ā quō locō (*whether OUT OF or FROM which place*), eō restituās, C., Curc., 30, 88.

2. The prepositions are often omitted with Verbs of Abstaining, Removing, Relieving, and Excluding ; so regularly with *domō*, *from home*, *rūre*, *from the country*.

With Persons a preposition (chiefly *ab*) must be used.

(Verrēs) omnia domō ēius abstulit, C., Verr., II. 34, 83 ; *Verrēs took everything away from his house.* Ego, cum Tullius rūre redierit, mittam eum ad tē, C., Fam., v. 20, 9 ; *when Tullius returns from the country, I will send him to you.*

Compare Aliēnō manum abstinenceant, CATO, Agr., 5, 1 ; *let them keep their hand(s) from other people's property*, with [Alexander] vix ā sē manūs abstinuit, C., Tusc., IV. 37, 79 ; *Alexander hardly kept (could hardly keep) his hands from himself (from laying hands on himself).*

Compare Lapidibus optimōs virōs forō pellis, C., Har. Res., 18, 39 ; *you drive men of the best classes from the forum with stones*, with Istum aemulum ab eā pellitō, TER., Eun., 215 ; *drive that rival from her.*

Compare Omnium rērum nātūrā cōgnitā liberāmur mortis metū, C., Fin., I. 19, 63 ; *by the knowledge of universal nature we get rid of the*

*fear of death*, with **Tē ab eō liberō**, *C. Q.F.*, III. i. 3, 9; *I rid you of him*.

Compare **Amicitia nullō locō excluditur**, *C. Lael.*, 6, 22; *friendship is shut out from no place*, with **Ab illā excludor, hōc concludor**, (*Cf. TER.*, *And.*, 386; *I am shut out from HER (and) shut up here (to live with HER)*).

NOTES. -1. In classical Latin the preposition is usually employed in local relations, and omitted in metaphorical relations; though there are some exceptions.

2. It is to be noted that in the vast majority of cases the separation is indicated by a verb; hence this Abl. is found commonly with verbs compounded with prepositions. Thus, classical Latin shows but few simple verbs with the Abl., as follows: **movēre**, chiefly in general or technical combinations: **movēre locō**, **senātū**, **tribū** (CAESAR, however, has no cases); **pellere**, in technical language with **civitātē**, **domō**, **forō**, **patriā**, **possessiōnibus**, **suis sēdibus**; **cēdere** is found with **patriā**, **vītā**, **memoriā**, **possessiōne**, **Italiā**; **cadere**, technical with **causā**; **solvere** with **lēge** (**lēgibus**), **religiōne**, *etc.*, **somnō**; **levāre** and **liberāre** are found chiefly in metaphorical combinations, and especially in CICERO; **arcēre** has peculiarly **ab** with metaphorical, Abl. with local forces. In the case of most of these verbs, the preposition with the Abl. is also found.

3. Of compound verbs with the Abl., CICERO shows only **sē abdicāre** (principally technical), **abesse** (rarely), **abhorrēre** (once); **abire** (in technical uses = **sē abdicāre**), **abrumpere** (once), **absolvere**, **abstinēre** (intrans. without, trans. more often with, preposition), **dēicere** (with **aedilitātē**, *etc.*), **dēmovēre** (once), **dēpellere**, **dēsistere**, **dēturbāre**; **ēducere** (rare); **efferre** (rare); **ēgredi**; **ēicere**; **ēlābi** (rare); **ēmittere** (CAES.); **ēripere** (rare; usually Dat.); **ēvertere**; **excēdere**; **excludere**; **exire** (rare); **expellere**; **exsolvere**; **exsistere** (rare); **exturbāre**; **intercludere**; **interdicere** (**alicui aliquā rē**; also **alicui aliquid**); **praecipitāre** (CAES.); **prohibere**; **supersedere**.

Early Latin shows a few more verbs with this construction. The poets are free with the Abl., and also later prose writers, beginning with LIVY.

4. **Humō**, *from the ground*, begins with VERGIL. The preposition **ā** is found occasionally with **domō**; necessarily with a word (adjective or adverb) involving measurement, as; **longinquō**, **longē**, **procul**.

5. Compounds with **dī (dis)** also take the Dative (in poetry):

**Paulum sepultae distat inertiae cēlāta virtūs**, *IL.*, *O.*, IV. 9, 29; *little doth hidden worth differ from buried sloth*.

6. The Place Whence gives the Point of View from which. In English a different translation is often given, though not always necessarily: **ā tergō**, *in the rear*; **ex parte dextrā**, *on the right side*; **ab oriente**, *on the east*; **ā tantō spatiō**, *at such a distance*; **ex fugā**, *on the flight*; **ā rē frumentāriā labōrāre**, *to be embarrassed in the matter of provisions*.

3. The prepositions are also omitted with kindred Adjectives.

**Animus excelsus omni est liber cūrā**, *C. Fin.*, I. 15, 49; *a lofty mind is free from all care*. (**Catō**) **omnibus hūmānis vitis immūnis, semper fortunam in suā potestāte habuit**, *VELL.*, II. 35, 2; *Cato, exempt from all human failings, always had fortune in his own power*. **Iugurtha** (**Adherbalem**) **extorrem patriā effecit**, *S.*, *Iug.*, 14, 11; *Iugurtha rendered Adherbal an exile from his country*. **Utrumque (fraus et vis) homine aliēnissimum**, *C.*, *Off.*, I. 13, 41.

NOTES.—1. The preposition is more usual in most cases. **Pūrus** and **immūnis**, with simple Abl., are poetical and post-Augustan. **Expers**, with Abl. instead of with Gen., belongs to early Latin and SALLUST. **Recēns**, *fresh from*, with Abl., belongs to TACITUS.

2. **Procul**, *far from*, regularly takes the preposition **ab**, except in the poets and later prose.

3. The Abl. of the Supine is early and late, as CATO, *Agr.*, 5; **Vilicus** **prīmus cubitū surgat, postrēmus cubitum eat**. See 436, N. 4.

**391.** Names of Towns and Small Islands are put in the Ablative of the Place Whence.

**Dēmārātus** **fūgit Tarquiniōs Corinthō**, C., *Tusc.*, v. 37, 109; *Demaratus fled to Tarquinii from Corinth*. **Dolābella** **Dēlō proficiscitur**, C., *Verr.*, i. 18, 46; *Dolabella sets out from Delos*.

REMARKS.—1. The prepositions **ab** (ā) and **ex** (ē) are sometimes used for the sake of greater exactness, but rarely in model prose. So regularly **ab** with the Place from which distance is measured :

[**Aesculāpiī templum**] **quīnque milibus passuum ab urbe [Epidaurō] distat**, Cf. L., XLV. 28, 3 (403, N. 1).

When the substantives **urbe**, *city*, and **oppidō**, *town*, are employed, the use of the preposition is the rule, as also when not the town, but the neighbourhood is intended; also always with **longē**. When the Appositive has an attribute the proper name regularly precedes.

**Aulide, ex oppidō Boeōtiae**, *from Aulis, a town of Boeotia*. **Ex Apollōniā Pontī urbe**, *from Apollonia, a city of Pontus*. **Ex oppidō Gergoviā**, CAES., *B.G.*, vii. 4, 2; *from the town of Gergovia*.

Early Latin is free in the use of prepositions; and also from LIVY on the usage seems to increase.

2. The Place Whence embraces all the local designations :

**Agrigentō ex Aesculāpiī fānō** whereas we should say, *from the temple of Aesculapius at Agrigentum*. **Unde domō?** V., A., viii. 114; *from what home?*

3. Letters are dated *from* rather than *at* a place.

NOTE.—Names of countries are but rarely used in the Ablative. CICERO, SALLUST, and LIVY show no instance, CAESAR only one (*B.C.*, iii. 58, 4). Occasional examples are found in early Latin and in old inscriptions; then in later historians, beginning with VELLEIUS. The use of prepositions with towns seems in general to have been a colloquialism, Cf. Suet., *Aug.*, 86. The poets are free in their usage.

## C. ABLATIVE OF THE THING WHEREWITH.

### Ablātīvus Sociātīvus.

**392.** The Ablative of Attendance takes the preposition **cum**, *with*.

**Cum febrī domum rediit**, C., *Or.*, iii. 2, 6; *he returned home with a*

*ferer.* **Catilīna stetit in comitiō cum telō**, *Cf. C., Cat., i. 6, 15; Catiline stood in the place of election with a weapon (on him).* **Cum baculō pērāque [senex]**, *MART., IV. 53. 3, an old man with stick and wallet.* **Nec tēcum possum vivere nec sine tē**, *MART., XII. 47. 2; I can't live either with you or without you.*

REMARKS.—I. In military phrases, the troops with which a march is made are put in the Ablative, with or without **cum**; generally without **cum** when an adjective is used (Ablative of Manner), with **cum** when no adjective is used (Ablative of Attendance). With definite numbers, however, **cum** is regularly employed.

**Albānī ingentī exercitū in agrum Rōmānum impetum fēcēre**, *L., i. 23. 3; the Albans attacked the Roman territory with a huge army.* **Caesar cum equitibus DCCCC in castra pervēnit**, *CAES., B.C., i. 41. 1; Caesar arrived in camp with nine hundred cavalry.*

2. Not to be confounded with the above is the Instrumental Ablative :

**Nāvibus profectus est**, *C., Flam., xv. 3. 2; he set out by ship.*

So also with verbs which denote other military actions :

**Hasdrubal mediam aciem Hispānīs firmat**, *L., XXIII. 29. 4; Hannibal strengthens the centre with Spanish troops.* **Āctum nihil est nisi Poenō milite portās frangimus**, *JUV., X. 155; naught is accomplished unless we break the gates with the Punic soldiery (as if with a battering-ram).*

## II. The Figurative Meanings of the Ablative.

### A. The Place Where is transferred to the Time When.

#### Ablative of Time. Ablātīvus Temporis.

### 393. Time When or Within Which is put in the Ablative.

**Quā nocte nātus Alexander est, eādē Dīānae Ephesiae templum dēflagrāvit**, *Cf. C., N.D., II. 27. 69; on the same night on which Alexander was born, the temple of Diana of Ephesus burned to the ground.* **Sāturnī stella trīgintā ferē annīs cursum suum cōnficit**, *C., N.D., II. 20. 52; the planet Saturn completes its period in about thirty years.*

Many adverbial forms of time are really Locative Ablatives :

So **hodiē**, *to-day*; **herī(e)**, *yesterday*; **māne**, *in the morning*.

REMARKS.—I. Time Within Which may be expressed by **per** and the Accusative :

**Per eōs ipsōs diēs quibus Philippus in Achāiā fuit, Philoclēs saltum Cithaerōnis trāscendit**, *L., XXXI. 26. 1; during those very days, while Philip was in Achaia, Philocles crossed the range of Cithaeron.*

2. Time Within Which may embrace both extremities; so usually with **tōtus**, *all, whole* :

**Nocte** pluit tōtā, redeunt at māne serēna, V. (POET. LAT. MIN., IV. 155 B); *all night* (Jupiter) rains; *clear skies come back in the morning*. Cf. CAES., B. G., I. 26, 5.

So with definite numbers; but rarely, until the post-Augustan period :

**Scriptum est** trīgintā annīs vīxisse Panaetium, posteāquam illōs librōs ēdidisset, C., Off., III. 2, 8; *it is written that Panaetius lived for thirty years after he had published those books* (not to be confounded with the Abl. of Difference, 403). **Apud P̄ythagoram discipulis quīque annīs tacendum erat**, SEN., E. M., 52, 10; *in the school of Pythagoras the disciples had to keep silence five years*.

3. When the Notion is Negative, the English Time For Which is the Latin Within Which.

[Rōscius] Rōmam multis annīs nōn vēnit, C., Rosc. Am., 27, 74; *Roscius has not come to Rome in (for) many years*. Not always, however; compare **Sex mēnsis iam hīc nēmō habitat**, PL., Most., 954; *no one has been living here these six months*.

4. Especially to be noted is the Abl. of Time with **hīc**, *this*; **ille**, *that*: **Cui vigintī hīs annīs supplicātiō dēcrēta est?** C., Ph., XIV. 4, 11; *to whom during these last twenty years has a supplication been decreed?* [Karthāginem] **hōc bienniō ēvertēs**, C., Rep., VI. II, 11; *Carthage you will overturn in the next two years*.

Transferred to Ōrātiō Oblīqua, **hīc** becomes **ille** (660, 3) :

**Diodōrus [respondit] illud argentum sē paucīs illīs diēbus mīsisse Lilybaeum**, C., Verr., IV. 18, 39; *Diodorus answered that he had sent that silver plate to Lilybaeum within a few days (a few days before)*.

5. The Abl. of Time is regularly accompanied by an attribute in classical Latin, except in the case of a number of common designations, as **aestāte**, **diē**, **hieme**, **nocte**, **vespere** (**vesperī**). Exceptions are rare, such as **comitiis**, **lūce**, **pāce**, **militiā**, and some names of games.

**394.** The Ablative with the preposition **in** is used of points within a period of time, or of the character of the time.

**Bis in diē**, *twice a day*; **in pueritiā**, *in boyhood*; **in adulēscientiā**, *in youth*.

**Nūllō modō mihi placuit bis in diē saturum fieri**, C., Tusc., v. 35. 100; *it did not suit me in any way to eat my fill twice a day*. **Fēci ego istaec itidem in adulēscientiā**, PL., B., 410; *I did those things too in my youth*.

REMARK.—The use or omission of **in** sometimes changes the meaning. So **bellō Persicō**, *at the time of the Persian war*; but **in bellō**, *in war times*; **in pāce**, *in peace times*. Phraseological is **in tempore**, more frequent than **tempore**, *at the right time*. But **in illō tempore** means *in those circumstances, at that crisis*. *At present, for the present*, is always **in praesentiā** or **in praesenti** (rare).



NOTES.—1. Classical Latin confines the use of **in** to designations of Time of Life (though here, when an adjective is employed, **in** is usually omitted) and to the periods of time. Later **in** is used much more extensively. With numerals **in** is the rule. CATO and the poets have sometimes **bis diēs**, as **diēs — ūnus diēs**.

2. **Dē**, *from*, is also used in designations of time : principally in the phrase **dē diē, dē nocte**. **Ut iugulent hominem surgunt dē nocte latrōnēs**, *Il., Ep., i. 2, 32* : *to kill a man, highwaymen rise by night, i. e., while it is yet night*.

**Inter**, *between* : **Quae prandia inter continuum perdidit triennium**, *Pl., St., 213* ; *what luncheons I have lost during three years together*.

**Intrā**, *within* : **Subēgit sōlus intrā vīgintī diēs**, *Pl., Curc., 448* ; *he quelled them all alone in less than twenty days*.

On **per**, *through*, see 336, R. 2.

**Cum**, *with*, is found occasionally in phrases, as **cum primā lūce**, *with daybreak*.

## B. The Place Whence is transferred :

1. To Origin.
2. To Respect or Specification.

### I. Ablative of Origin.

**395.** Participles which signify Birth take the Ablative of Origin ; sometimes with the prepositions **ex** and **dē**.

**Amplissimā familiā nātī adulēscētēs**, *CAES., B.G., vii. 37, 1* ; *young men born of a great house*. **Numae Pompiliī rēgis nepōs, filiā ortus**, **Ancus Mārcius erat**, *L., i. 32, 1* ; *King Numa Pompilius's grandson, a daughter's issue, was Ancus Marcius*. **Maecēnās atavis ēdite rēgibus**, *Il., O., i. 1, 1* ; *Maecenas, offshoot of great-grandsire kings*. **Dis genite et genitūre deōs**, *V., A., ix. 639* ; *begotten of gods, and destined to beget gods !* **Sate sanguine divum !** *V., A., vi. 125* ; *seed of blood divine !* **Ex mē atque ex hōc nātus es**, *TER., Heaut., 1030* ; *you are his son and mine*. **Ōderunt nātōs dē paelice**, *JUV., vi. 627* ; *they hate the offspring of the concubine*.

**Ab**, and occasionally **ex**, are employed of remote progenitors :

**Plērique Belgae sunt ortī ab Germānis**, *Cf. CAES., B.G., ii. 4, 1* ; *Belgians are mostly of German descent*. **Oriundī ex Etrūscis**, *Cf. L., ii. 9, 1* ; *of Etruscan origin*.

NOTES.—1. The principal participles thus used are **nātus**, **prōgnātus**, **oriundus** ; **ortus**, **genitus**, and **satus** begin in prose with LIVY ; **ēditus** and **crētus** are poetic ; **prōcreātus** is late. CICERO uses **oriundus** but once ; it denotes remote origin.

2. With names of Places the preposition is the rule (352, S. 2) ; but there are a few exceptions in early Latin and in CICERO, and a couple of examples in CAESAR. Later the simple Abl. disappears. The Abl. was the rule with names of Tribes.

**Perīphanēs Rhodō mercātor**, *Pl., Asin., 499*. **Magius Cremōnā**, *CAES., B.C., i. 24, 4*. **Q. Verrēs Rōmiliā**, *C. Verr., i. 3, 23* ; *Q. Verres of the Rōmilian tribe*.

3. With finite verbs denoting Origin, the preposition is regular, except occasionally with **nāscī**.

4. The Ablative of Agent properly belongs here. But for convenience of contrast it is treated under 401.

**396.** The Ablative of Material takes **ex** in classical Latin.

**Ex animō cōnstāmus et corpore**, *Cf. C., Fin., iv. 8, 19 ; we consist of mind and body.*

**Statua ex aurō, ex aere, facta**, *a statue made of gold, of bronze.* Often an adjective is used : **aureus**, *golden ; ligneus*, *wooden.*

NOTES.—1. After **CICERO cōnstāre** is used more often with the Abl. ; **cōnsistere** (with the Abl.) is poetical. **Continēri**, *to be contained in*, i.e., almost “to consist of,” takes the Abl. only, but with a different conception.

**Medicīna tōta cōnstat experimentis**, **QUINT., II. 17, 9 ; all medicine is made up of experiments (is empirical).**

2. With **fieri** the previous state is indicated by **dē** as well as by **ex**.

**Dē templō carcerem fieri!** *C., Ph., v. 7, 18 ; from a temple to become a jail.*  
**Fīēs dē rhētore cōnsul**, **JUV., VII. 197 ; from (having been) rhetorician you will become consul.** **Ex orātore arātor factus**, *C., Ph., III. 9, 22 (206, R. 2).*

3. Otherwise the simple Ablative of Material is poetic or late :

**Māvors caelātus ferrō**, **V., A., VIII. 700 ; Mars curven of iron.**

**Meliore lutō finxit**, **JUV., XIV. 35 ; he fashioned it of better clay.**

## 2. Ablative of Respect.

**397.** The Ablative of Respect or Specification gives the Point From Which a thing is measured or treated, and is put in answer to the questions From What Point of View ? According to What ? By What ? In Respect of What ?

**Discriptus populus cēnsū, ōrdinibus, aetātibus**, **C., Leg., III. 19, 44 ; a people drawn off according to income, rank, (and) age.** **Ennius ingeniō māximus, arte rudis**, **OV., Tr., II. 424 ; Ennius in genius great, in art unskilled.** **Animō ignāvus, procāx ōre**, **TAC., H., II. 23, 18 ; coward of soul, saucy of tongue.**

Noteworthy are the phrases : **crīne ruber**, *red-haired ; captus oculis* (literally, *caught in the eyes*), *blind ; captus mente*, *insane ; meā sententiā*, *according to my opinion ; iūre*, *by right ; lēge*, *by law*, etc. ; and the Supines in **-ū** (436).

NOTES.—1. Prepositions are also used, which serve to show the conception :

**(Caesaris) adventus ex colōre vestītūs cōgnitus**, *Cf. CAES., B. G., VII. 88, 1 ; the arrival of Caesar was known by the color of his clothing.* **Dē gestū intellegō quid respondeās**, **C., Vat., 15, 35 ; I understand by your gesture what answer you are giving.** **Ab animō aeger fui**, **PL., Ep., 129 ; at heart I was sick.** **Ōtiōsum ab animō**, **TER., Ph., 340 ; easy in mind.**

Similarly **ex lēge**, *according to law ; ex pactō*, *according to agreement ; ex (dē) mōre*, *according to custom ; ex animī sententiā*, *according to (my) heart's desire ; ex ūsū*, *useful.*

2. A special category is formed by words indicating eminence or superiority ; so **excellere**, **antecellere**, **praestāre**, **superāre**, **vincere** ; and the adjectives : **insignis**, **illūstris**, **dignus** ; **excellēns**, **praecellēns**. **Praecellere** is found in early and late Latin, while **dignārī** is poetic and post-Augustan.

**Māximē populus Rōmānus animī māgnitūdine excellit**, **C., Off., I. 18, 61 ; the Roman people excel most in loftiness of mind.**

On **dignus** with **Gen.**, see 374, N. 10.

A curious usage is that of *decōrus* and *decēre*, with Abl., in *Pl., M. G., 619; Asin., 577*

3. The origin of these constructions is still undetermined. They may be deduced also from the Instrumental side of the Abl., or from the Locative side.

**398.** The Ablative of Respect is used with the Comparative instead of *quam*, *than*, with the Nominative or Accusative; but in the classical language mainly after a negative, or its equivalent. (*Ablātīvus Comparātīōnis.*)

*Tunica propior palliōst*, *Pl., Trin., 1154*; *the shirt is nearer than the cloak.* *Nihil est virtūte amābilius*, *C., Lucr., 8, 28*; *nothing is more attractive than virtue.* *Quid est in homine ratiōne dīvinius?* *C., Leg., 1, 7, 22*; *what is there in man more godlike than reason?*

So also after adverbs, but not so freely in prose:

*Lacrimā nihil citius arēscit*, *C., Lucr., 1, 56, 109*; *nothing dries more quickly than a tear.* *Nēmō est qui tibi sapientius suādere possit tē ipsō*, *C., Fam., II. 7, 1*; *there is no one who can give you wiser advice than you yourself.* *Pulcrum ōrnātum turpēs mōrēs pēius caenō conlinunt*, *Pl., Most., 291*; *foul behavior doth bedraggle fine apparel worse than mud.*

REMARK.—When the word giving the point of view is a relative, the Abl. must be used. See 296, R. 2.

*Phidiae simulācris quibus nihil in illō genere perfectius vidēmus, cōgitāre tamen possumus pulchriōra*, *C., Or., 2, 8*; *the statues of Phidias, than which we see nothing more perfect in their kind, still leave room for us to imagine those that are more beautiful.*

NOTES.—1. The comparative is also employed with the Abl. of certain abstract substantives and adjectives used as substantives; so *opiniōne*, *spēs*, *expectatiōne*; *aequō*, *iustō*, *solitō*, and the like, all post-Ciceronian except *aequō*, *opiniōne*.

(*Cōsul*) *sērius spēs* *quam spēs fuerat* *Rōmam vēnit*, *L., XXVI. 26, 4*; *the consul came to Rome later than was hoped.* *Solitō citātior amnis*, *L., XXII. 19, 11*; *the river running faster than usual.*

2. *Aequē* and *adaequē* are found once each in *PLAUTUS* with the Abl.; and then not till the time of the elder *PLINY*.

3. For other details, see 296 and 644.

## C. ABLATIVE OF THE THING WHEREWITH.

*Ablātīvus Sociātīvus.* Ablative of Attendance.

### 1. Ablative of Manner.

**399.** The Ablative of Manner answers the question *How?* and is used with the Preposition *cum* when it has no Adjective; with or without *cum* when it has an Adjective or its equivalent. (*Ablātīvus Modī.*)

[*Stellae*] *circulōs suōs orbēsque cōficiunt celeritāte mirābili*, *C., Rep., VI. 15, 15*; *the stars complete their orbits with wonderful swiftness.* *Vōs*

**ŏrō** ut attentē bonāque cum veniā verba mea audiātis, C., *Rosc. Am.*, 4, 9 ; *I beg you to hear my words attentively and with kind indulgence.*  
**Beātē** vivere, honestē, id est cum virtūte, vivere, C., *Fin.*, III. 8, 29 ; *to live happily is to live honestly, that is, virtuously.*

NOTES.—1. The simple Abl. without an attribute is confined to a few substantives, which have acquired adverbial force ; early Latin shows **astū**, **curriculō**, **dolō**, **ergō**, **grātiis** and **ingrātiis**, **ioculō**, **meritō**, **numerō**, **optātō**, **ōrdine**, **sortitō**, **voluntāte**, **vulgō**. **TERENCE** adds : **vī**, **iūre**, **iniūriā**. Classical Latin shows some of these, also **rationē**, **rationē et viā**, **mōribus**, **cōsuetūdine**, **silentiō**, **cāsū**, **lēge**, **fraude**, **vitiō**, **sacrāmētō** (beginning with **LIVY**), and a few others. Sometimes the idea of Specification is prominent, as in **lēge**, **iūre** (397) ; sometimes it is hard to distinguish between the Manner and the Instrument : **vī**, *violently* and *by violence* ; **vī et armīs**, *by force of arms* ; **pedibus**, *afoot* ; **nāvibus**, *by ship*. Notice, also, the use of **per**, *through*, with the Accusative : **per vim**, *by violence* ; **per litterās**, *by letter*.

2. The post-Ciceronian Latin extends the use of the Abl. without an attribute.

3. The phrases **sub condiōne**, **sub lēge**, *etc.*, begin with **LIVY**.

## 2. Ablative of Quality.

(*Descriptive Ablative.*)

**400.** The Ablative of Quality has no Preposition, and always takes an Adjective or an equivalent.

[**Hannibalis**] **nōmen erat māgnā apud omnēs glōriā**, C., *Or.*, II. 18, 75 ; *the name of Hannibal was glorious in the esteem of all the world.*  
**(Āgēsilāus) statūrā fuit humili**, **NEP.**, XVII. 8, 1 ; *Agesilāus was (a man) of low stature.* **Ista turpiculō puella nāsō**, **CAT.**, 41, 3 ; *that girl of yours with the ugly nose.* **Clāvi ferrei digitī pollicis crassitūdine**, *Cf.* **CAES.**, *B.G.*, III. 13, 4 ; *iron nails of the thickness of your thumb.*

REMARKS.—1. External and transient qualities are put by preference in the Ablative ; Measure, Number, Time, and Space are put in the Genitive only ; parts of the body in the Ablative only. Otherwise there is often no difference.

2. Of unnatural productions **cum** may be used : **āgnus cum suillō capite**, **L.**, XXXI. 12, 7 ; *a lamb with a swine's head.*

## 3. Ablative of Means.

**401.** The Means or Instrument is put in the Ablative without a Preposition.

The Agent or Doer is put in the Ablative with the Preposition **ab** (**ā**). The Person Through Whom is put in the Accusative with **per**.

**Xerxēs certior factus est**, { 1. **nūntiō**, *by a message.*  
*Xerxes was informed*, { 2. **ā nūntiō**, *by a messenger.*  
 { 3. **per nūntium**, *by means of a messenger.*

**Qui sunt hominēs, ā quibus ille sē lapidibus adpetitum, etiam percussum esse dixit?** C., *Dom.*, 5, 13; *who are the men by whom he said he had been thrown at with stones, and even hit?* **Vulgō occidēbantur?** **Per quōs et ā quibus?** C., *Rosc. Am.*, 29, 80; *were they cut down openly? Through whose instrumentality and by whose agency?* **Nec bene prōmeritis capitur neque tangitur irā,** LUCR., II, 651 (227, N. 4). **Ipse docet quid agam:** **fās est et ab hoste docērī,** OVI., *M.*, IV, 428 (219). **Discite sanārī per quem didicistis amāre,** OVI., *Rem. Am.*, 43; *learn to be healed by means of (him) by whom you learned to love.*

REMARKS.—1. When the Instrument is personified and regarded as an Agent, or the Agent is regarded as an Instrument, the constructions are reversed; when an adjective is used, the construction may be doubtful; see 354, N. 1, and 214, R. 2.

So **iacent suis tēstibus,** C., *Mil.*, 18, 47; *they are cast by their own witnesses; or, they are cast, their own men being witnesses.*

2. A quality, when personified, has the construction of the person. So **dēserī ā mente, ā spē.**

**Vōbīs animus ab ignāviā atque sōcordiā corruptus [est],** S., *Inq.*, 31, 2; *you have had your soul(s) debauched by sloth and indifference.*

NOTES. 1. The number of verbs construed with this Abl. is very large and comprises several categories; so verbs of Clothing and Providing, Adorning and Endowing, Training (**erudīre** also takes **in**; others take **Acc.**, see 330), Living and Nourishing, *etc.*

2. Of special importance are **assuēscō, assuēfaciō, assuētus;** (**Catilīna**) **scelerum exercitātiōne assuēfactus,** C., *Cat.*, II, 5, 9. The **Dat.** is found first in Livi in prose. **Ad** with the **Acc.** is also classical.

3. **Afficere, to treat,** with the Ablative, is a favorite turn; see the Lexicons.

4. Verbs of *sacrificing*, such as **sacrificāre, sacrum facere, divīnam rem facere, facere** and **fieri** (mostly poetical), **immolāre, litāre** (poetical), have the Abl. of Means. But **immolāre** usually has **Acc.** and **Dat.**, and so the others occasionally, except **facere**.

**Quīnquāgintā capris sacrificāvērunt,** L., XLV, 16, 6; *they sacrificed fifty she-goats.*

5. Here belong also verbs like **pluere, sūdāre** (not classic), **stillāre** (not classic), **fluere, mārāre**, and the like: **sanguine pluisse,** L., XXIV, 16, 7. The **Acc.** is also common.

6. **Nitor, I stay myself,** is construed with the Abl.; occasionally with **in**. **Fidō, cōfidō, I trust, rely on,** have the Abl.; but with persons the **Dat.**, sometimes also with things. On the other hand, **diffidō, I distrust,** always has the **Dat.** in classical Latin, but Tacitus shows Abl., and so do other later writers. **Stāre, to abide by,** usually has the Abl., but occasionally **in**; **manēre** has usually **in**; the Abl. is poetical. **Acquiescere, to acquiesce in,** with Abl. is rare. **Frētus, supported,** takes the Abl. regularly; Livi alone uses the Dative. **Contentus, satisfied with thy,** is used only of one's own possessions (**rēbus, fortūnā, etc.**), and has the Ablative.

**Salūs omnium nōn vērītate solum sed etiam fāmā nritur,** C. C., Q. F., I, II, 1, 2; *the welfare of all rests not on truth alone, but also on reports.* **Eius iudiciō stāre nōlim,** C., *Pesc.*, II, 26, 63; *I should not like to abide by his judgment.*

7. A remnant of the old usage is found with **fiō, faciō, and esse**:

**Quid fecisti scipiōne?** Pl., *Cas.*, 975; *what have you done with the consul?* **Quid**



*mē fiet?* PL., *Most.*, 1166; *what will become of me?* *Quid tē futūrumst?* TER., *Ph.*, 137; *what is to become of you?* *Quid hōc homine faciās?* C., *Ferr.*, II. 16, 39; *how will you dispose of this man?* *Quid huic hominī faciās?* C., *Caecin.*, II. 30; *what will you do to this man?* *Quid dē nōbīs futūrum [est]?* C., *Fam.*, IX. 17, 1; *what is to happen in our case?*

The use of the Dative is rare, and still more rare the use of *dē*.

The construction is colloquial, and never found in CAESAR and TACITUS; it is always in an interrogative sentence, except in CATO and OVID.

#### 4. Ablative of Standard. Ablātīvus Mēnsūrae.

**402.** The Standard of Measure is put in the Ablative with verbs of Measurement and Judgment.

*Benevolentiam nōn ardōre amōris sed stabilitāte iūdicēmus*, C., *Off.*, I. 15, 47; *good will we are to judge not by ardour but by steadfastness.* *Māgnōs hominēs virtūte mētīmur, nōn fortūnā*, NEP., XVIII. 1, 1; *we measure great men by worth, not by fortune.* *Sonīs hominēs ut aera tinnitū dignōscimus*, QUINT., XI. 3, 31; *we distinguish men by sound, as coppers by ring.*

REMARKS.—I. It is often hard to distinguish the Measure from the Respect (see 397).

2. **Ex** with the Abl. is frequently found with these verbs; so regularly with *aestimāre*, *existimāre*, *spectāre*, in the sense of *judge*, *value*.

*Dicendum erit nōn esse ex fortūnā fidem ponderandam*, C., *Part. Or.*, 34, 117; *the plea will have to be made that faith is not to be weighed by fortune.* *Sic est vulgus: ex vērītate pauca, ex opiniōne multa aestimat*, C., *Rosc. Com.*, 10, 29; *this is the way of the rabble: they value few things by (the standard of) truth, many by (the standard of) opinion.*

#### **403.** Measure of Difference is put in the Ablative.

*Sōl multīs partibus māior (est) quam terra ūniversa*, C., *N. D.*, II. 36, 92; *the sun is many parts larger than the whole earth.* (*Via*) *alterō tantō longiōrem habēbat ānfrāctum*, NEP., XVIII. 8, 5; *the road had a bend (that made it) longer by as much again, as long again.* *Quinquēns tantō amplius Verrēs, quam licitum est, civitātibus imperāvit*, Cf. C., *Verr.*, III. 97, 225; *Verrēs levied on the various cities five times more than was allowed by law.* *Turrēs dēnīs pedibus quam mūrus altiōrēs sunt*, CURT., V. I, 26; *the towers are (by) ten feet higher than the wall.* *Tantō est accūsāre quam dēfendere, quantō facere quam sārāre vulnera, facilius*, QUINT., V. 13, 3; *it is as much easier to accuse than to defend, as it is easier to inflict wounds than to heal them.* *Perfer et obdūrā: multō graviōra tulistī*, OV., *Tr.*, V. 11, 7; *endure to the end and be firm: you have borne much more grievous burdens.*

NOTES.—1. This rule applies to verbs involving difference (such as *abesse*, *distāre*, *mālle*, *praestāre*, *excellere*, etc.), as well as to comparatives, with which must be reckoned *infērā*, *suprā*, *ultrā*.

[*Aesculāpiī templum*] *quinque milibus passuum ab urbe [Epidaurō] distat*, Cf. L., XLV. 28. 3; *the temple of Aesculapius is five miles from the city of Epidaurus*.

2. The Acc. is sometimes employed (see 335); especially with neuter adjectives *multum, tantum, etc.*, but this is not common except with verbs.

3. The Plautine Abl. *nimiō*, with the comparative, is not classical (compare [C.], *Att.*, x. 8 A, 1), but reappears in Livy. *Aliter* with this Abl. is very rare and is not classical. So also the Abl. with the positive, of which a few examples are cited from early Latin, as TER., *Heaut.*, 205.

4. (a) Especially to be noted is the use of the Abl. of Measure with *ante, before*, and *post, after*:

*Paucis ante diēbus, Paucis diēbus ante, a few days before.*

*Paucis post diēbus, Paucis diēbus post, a few days after, afterward*

*Duobus annis postquam Rōma condita est, two years after Rome was founded.*

*Paulō post Trōiam captam, a little while after the taking of Troy.*

The Acc. can also be employed: *post paucōs annōs, after a few years*; *ante paucōs annōs, a few years before*; and the ordinal as well as the cardinal numbers (but only when *quam* follows): *two hundred years after(ward)* may be:

*Ducentis annis post or Ducentēsimō annō post,*

*Post ducentōs annōs or Post ducentēsimum annum.*

(b) *Ante* and *post* do not precede the Abl. in classical Latin except with *aliquantō* (rare) and *paulō*. *Ante* and *post*, with the Acc. followed by *quam*, instead of *antequam* and *postquam* with the Abl., belong preëminently to post-classical Latin; classical examples are rare. CICERO never has *ante*.

(c) *Ante hōs sex mēnsēs, six months ago* (compare 393, R. 4) more frequently *abhinc sex mēnsēs* (326, R. 3); *abhinc sex mēnsibus*, means *six months before*.

(d) With a relative sentence the Abl. of the relative may be used alone, instead of *ante (post) quam*:

*Mors Rōscii quadriduō quō is occisus est, Chrysogonō nūtiātur*, C. *Rosc. Am.*, 37. 105; *the death of Roscius was announced to Chrysogonus four days after he was killed (in the course of the four days within which he was killed)*. See 393.

(e) Hence is *ad*: *ad sex mēnsēs, six months hence*.

(f) Do not confuse the Acc. with *ante* and *post* with the Acc. of Duration of Time.

## 5. Ablative of Price.

### 404. Definite Price is put in the Ablative.

*Eriphyla aurō viri vitam vēdidit*, C. *Inv.*, i. 50, 94; *Eriphyle sold her husband's life for gold*. *Viginti talentis unam orātiōnem Isocratēs vēdidit*, PLIN., *N. H.*, vii. 31, 110; *Isocrates sold one speech for twenty talents*. *Ēmit morte immortalitatem*, QUINT., ix. 3, 71; *he purchased deathlessness with death*. *Argentum accēpi, dōte imperium vēdidī*, PL., *Asin.*, 87; *the cash I took, (and) for a dowry sold my sway*.

NOTES. 1 *Mūtāre, to exchange*, is sometimes Give, sometimes Get; sometimes Sell, sometimes Buy. The latter use is confined to poetry and later prose.

*Nēmō nisi victor pāce bellum mūtāvit*, S., C., 58. 15; *no one unless victorious (ever) exchanged war for peace*. *Misera pāx vel bellō bene mūtātur*, Cf. TAC., *Ann.*, iii. 44, 10; *a wretched peace is well exchanged even for war*.

But *cūr valde permūtēm Sabinā divitiās operōsiōrēs?* H., *Q.*, iii. 1, 47; *why should I exchange my Sabine wife for riches sure to breed (me) greater trouble?*

2. So *vēnālis, vilis, cheap*; *cārus, dear*. *Nōn, edepol, minis trecentis cārast*, PL., *Pers.*, 68; *she is not dear, 'tween George, at three hundred minae*.

3. For Genitive of Price, see 379.

## 6. Ablative with Verbs of Plenty and Want.

**405.** Verbs of Depriving and Filling, of Plenty and Want, take the Ablative.

[Dēmocritus] dicitur oculis sē privāsse, C., *Fin.*, v. 29, 87; *Democritus is said to have deprived himself of his eyes.* Deus bonis omnibus explēvit mundum, Cf. C., *Univ.*, 3, 9; *God has filled the universe with all blessings.* Capua fortissimōrum virōrum multitūdine redundat, C., *Pis.*, 11, 25; *Capua is full to overflowing with a multitude of gallant gentlemen.* Nōn caret effectū quod volūere duo, Ov., *Am.*, 11, 3, 16; *what two have resolved on never lacks execution.* Quō māior est in [animis] praestantia, eō māiōre indigent diligentia, C., *Tusc.*, 11, 27, 58.

NOTES.—1. Verbs of Depriving are commonly referred to the Ablative of Separation, rather than to the Instrumental Ablative, and are put here for convenience of contrast. But it must be remembered that in the classic tongues the construction of opposites is identical.

2. Egeō and (more frequently) indigeō also take the Genitive :

Nōn tam artis indigent quam labōris, C., *Or.*, 1, 34, 156; *they are not so much in need of skill as of industry.* So implēri, V., *A.*, 1, 214.

3. Adjectives of Plenty and Want take the Gen., but some of them follow the analogy of the verb (374, n. 1). So onustus, orbis, have Abl. more often than Gen.; indigus, egēnus, and inops have the Gen. more commonly. Plēnus has usually the Gen.; the Abl. in increasing proportion from LUCRETIVUS on. Frequēns and validus do not take the Gen. until the post-Augustan period. See 374.

Asellus onustus aurō, C., *Att.*, 1, 16, 12; *a donkey laden with gold.* Pollicitis dives quilibet esse potest, Ov., *A.A.*, 1, 444; *anybody can be rich in promises.* Amor et melle et felle est fecundissimus, PL., *Cist.*, 67; *love is (very) fruitful both in honey and in gall (of acrimony).*

**406.** Opus and ūsus take the Dative of the Person who Wants and the Ablative of the Thing Wanted ; but the Thing Wanted may be the subject, and opus (not ūsus) the predicate.

Novō cōsiliō mihi nunc opus est, PL., *Ps.*, 601; *a new device is what I'm needing now.* Viginti iam ūsust filiō argenti minis, PL., *Asin.*, 89; *my son has urgent need of twenty silver minae.* Nihil opus est simulatiōne et fallaciis, C., *Or.*, 11, 46, 191; *there is no need of making believe, and of cheating tricks.* Nōn opus est verbis sed fustibus, C., *Pis.*, 30, 73; *there is need not of words, but of cudgels.* Emās nōn quod opus est, sed quod necesse est; quod nōn opus est asse cārum est, CATO (SEN., *E.M.*, 94, 27); *buy not what you want, but what is absolutely needful; what you do not want (have no use for) is dear at a penny.*

So with the Perfect Participle Passive.

Quod parātō opus est parā, TER., *And.*, 523; *what must be got ready, get ready.* Vicinō conventōst opus, PL., *Cas.*, 502; *the neighbour must*

be called on. *Citius quod nōn factōst ūsus fit quam quod factōst opus*, *Pl., Am., 505.*

NOTES. 1. *Opus est* means properly : *there is work to be done with* ; *ūsus est*, *there is making use of* (like *ūtor*) ; hence the Ablative. Some think that *opus* takes Abl. by analogy with *ūsus*.

2. *Opus est* is common throughout ; *ūsus est* is very rarely found after the early period. It belongs especially to comedy.

3. The Gen. with *opus* occurs twice in *Livy* ; also in *PROPERTIUS*, *QUINTILIAN*, and *APULEIUS*.

4. The neut. Acc. is usually adverbial (333, 1) :

*Quid* (Acc.) *digitōs opus est graphiō lassāre tenendō?* *Ov., Am., l. 11, 23 ; what is the use of tiring the fingers by holding the stylus?*

5. Besides the Pf. Part. pass., we find the Infin. and sometimes *ut* ; in this case the Person is usually in the Dat. with *opus* (*ūsus*), but may be in the Acc. with the Inf., or may be omitted.

*Opus est tē animō valēre ut corpore possis*, *C., Fam., xvi. 14, 2 ; you must be well in mind in order to be well in body.* *An quoiquamst ūsus hominī sē ut cruciet?* *TER., Haut., 81 ; of what good is it to any man to torture himself?*

The Supine is found occasionally ; in *CICERO* only *scitū* (*Ine., l. 20, 28 ; disputed*).

6. In *PLAUTUS* and *LUCRETIUS* are occasional examples of *ūsus* as a predicate, with the Thing Wanted as the subject.

## 7. Ablative with Sundry Verbs.

407. The Deponent Verbs *ūtor*, *abūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, and *vescor*, take the Ablative.

*Victōriā ūti nescis*, *L., XII. 51, 4 ; how to make use of victory you know not.* *Quō ūsque tandem abūtēre patientiā nostrā*, *C., Cat., l. 1, 1 ; how long, tell me, will you abuse our patience?* *Lūx quā fruimur ā Deō nōbīs datur*, *Cf. C., Rose. Am., 45, 131 ; the light which we enjoy is given to us by God.* *Funguntur officiō ; dēfendunt suōs*, *C., Carl., 9, 21 ; they acquit themselves of a duty ; they defend their own people.* *Fungar vice cōtis*, *Il., A.P., 304 ; I shall acquit myself of, discharge, the office of a whetstone.* *Tūtius esse arbitrābantur sine ūllō vulnere victōriā potiri*, *CAES., B.G., III. 24, 2 ; they thought it safer to make themselves masters of the victory without any wound.* *Numidae lacte vescēbantur*, *S., Jug., 89, 7 ; the Numidians made their food of milk (fed on milk).*

NOTES. 1. These Ablatives are commonly regarded as Ablatives of the Instrument ; but *fruor*, *I get fruit*, and *vescor*, *I feed myself from*, and perhaps *fungor*, may take the Abl. as a Whence-case.

2. These verbs seem to have been originally construed with the Acc. ; but this case is not found in classical Latin except in the Gerundive construction (127, 8, 5).

(a) *Ūtor* with Acc. is very common in *PLAUTUS*, less so in *TERENCE*, but only with neuter pronouns. *CATO* uses also the neuter of substantives. *Abūtor* is combined only with Acc. in early Latin.

(b) *Fruor* with Acc. is not in *PLAUTUS*, but occasionally in *TERENCE* and *CATO*. *Fruīscor* (rare) is transitive in *PLAUTUS* and *QUADRIGARIUS* (cp. *GELL.*).

(c) *Fungor* with Acc. is the rule in early Latin (*TER., Ad., 603*, is disputed), then in *NEPOS*, *TACITUS*, *SUETONIUS*, and later.

(d) *Potior* has Gen. at all periods (rare in *CICERO* ; once in *CAESAR*) , the Acc.

occasionally in early and late Latin, in the *b. Afr.*, the *b. Hisp.*, and in SALLUST. Note-worthy is the use of an act. **potire** with Gen. in PL., *Am.*, 178, and a pass. **potitus** with Gen. in several places in PLAUTUS.

(e) **Vescor** takes the Acc. rarely in early Latin, in the poets, and in later Latin. **Vivere, hëlluārī,** take Abl. like **vescī.**

3. **Ūtor** is a favorite word, and has a most varied translation :

**Ūtī aliquō amicō,** to avail one's self of (to enjoy) a man's friendship (to have a friend in him) ; **Ūtī cōsiliō,** to follow advice ; **Ūtī bonō patre,** to have the advantage of having a good father ; **Ūtī lēgibus,** to obey the laws. See the Lexicons.

#### D. ABLATIVE OF CAUSE.

**408.** The Ablative of Cause is used without a preposition, chiefly with Verbs of Emotion. *Ablātīvus Causae.*

In culpā sunt quī officia dēserunt mollitiā animī. *C., Fin.*, I. 10, 33 ; they are to blame who shirk their duties from effeminacy of temper. **Ōdērunt peccāre bonī virtūtis amōre,** *II., Ep.*, I. 16, 52 ; the good hate to sin from love of virtue. **Dēlictō dolēre, corrēctiōne gaudēre (oportet),** *C., Lael.*, 24, 90 ; one ought to be sorry for sin, to be glad of chastisement. **Nōn dici potest quam flagrem dēsideriō urbis,** *C., Att.*, v. 11, 1 ; I burn (am afire) beyond expression with longing for Rome.

NOTES.—1. A number of combinations become phraseological, as the verbals : **arbitrātū, hortātū, impulsū, iūssū, missū, rogātū,** etc. ; also **cōsiliō, auctōritāte,** with a Gen. or possessive pronoun : **iūssū civium,** at the bidding of the citizens ; **meō rogātū,** at my request.

2. The moving cause is often expressed by a participle with the Abl., which usually precedes : **adductus, led** ; **ārdēns, fired** ; **commōtus, stirred up** ; **incitātus, egged on** ; **incēnsus, inflamed** ; **impulsus, driven on** ; **mōtus, moved,** and many others ; **amōre, by love** ; **irā, by anger** ; **odiō, by hate** ; **metū, by fear** ; **spē, by hope,** etc. **Metū perterritus, sore frightened** ; **verēcundiā dēterritus, abashed,** etc.

3. Instead of the simple Abl. the prepositions **dē** and **ex** (sometimes **in**), with the Abl., **ob** and **propter** with the Acc., are often used ; perhaps occasionally **ab**.

4. The preventing cause is expressed by **prae,** for (417, 9) : **Prae gaudiō ubi sim nesciō,** *TER., Heaut.*, 308 ; I know not where I am for joy.

5. On **causā** and **grātiā** with the Gen., see 273.

6. The use of the Abl. for the external cause, as **rēgālē genus nōn tam rēgnī quam rēgis vitīis repudiātum est** (*C., Leg.*, III. 7, 15), the kingly form of government was rejected not so much by reason of the faults of the kingly form, as by reason of the faults of the king, is not common in the early and in the classical period, except in certain formulæ ; but it becomes very common later.

7. The Ablative of Cause may have its origin in the Instrumental Ablative, in the Ablative of Source, or in the Comitative Ablative.

#### E. ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

**409.** The so-called Ablative Absolute is an Ablative combined with a participle, and serves to modify the verbal predicate of a sentence. Instead of the participle, a predicative substantive or adjective can be employed.



NOTE.—This Ablative, which may be called the Ablative of Circumstance, springs from the Temporal Use of the Ablative—the Temporal from the Local. Another view regards it as an Ablative of Manner, with a predicate instead of an attribute.

410. The Ablative Absolute may be translated by the English so-called Nominative (originally Dative) Absolute, which is a close equivalent; but for purposes of style, it is often well to analyse the thought, to change Passive into Active, to make use of an abstract substantive.

**Xerxe rēgnante** (= cum Xerxēs rēgnāret), *Xerxes reigning. When Xerxes was reigning. In the reign of Xerxes.*

**Xerxe victō** (= cum Xerxēs victus esset), *Xerxes being, having been, defeated. When Xerxes had been defeated. After the defeat of Xerxes.*

**Xerxe rēge** (= cum Xerxēs rēx esset), *Xerxes [being] king. When Xerxes was king.*

**Patre vivō**, *while father is, was alive (in father's lifetime).*

**Urbe expūgnatā imperātor rediit:**

PASSIVE FORM: *The city [being] taken (after the city was taken), the general returned.*

ACTIVE FORM: *Having taken the city (after he had taken the city), the general returned.*

ABSTRACT FORM: *After the taking of the city. After taking the city.*

**Māximās virtūtēs iacere omnēs necesse est voluptāte dominante**, C., *Fin.*, II. 35, 117; *all the great(est) virtues must necessarily lie prostrate, IF (OR WHEN) the pleasure (of the senses) is mistress.* **Rōmānī veterēs rēgnārī omnēs volēbant libertātis dulcedine nōndum expertā**, L., I. 17, 3; *the old Romans all wished to have a king over them (BECAUSE they had) not yet tried the sweetness of liberty.*

REMARKS.—1. As the Latin language has no Pf. Part. active, except when the Deponent is thus used, the passive construction is far more common than in English:

**Iuvenēs veste positā corpora oleō perūnxērunt**, C., *Tusc.*, I. 47, 113; *the youths, (having) laid aside their clothing, anointed their bodies with oil; or, laid aside their clothing, and anointed their bodies with oil.*

2. The Abl. Abs., though often to be rendered by a coördinate sentence, for convenience' sake, always presents a subordinate conception:

**(Lysander) suadet Lacedaemoniis ut rēgiā potestāte dissolutā ex omnibus dūx dēligātur ad bellum gerendum**, N.E.P., VI. 3, 5; *Lysander advises the Lacedaemonians that the royal power be done away with, AND a leader be chosen from all, to conduct the war.* Here the one is necessary to the other.

3. As a rule, the Abl. Abs. can stand only when it is not identical

with the subject, object, or dependent case of the verbal predicate. *Manlius slew the Gaul and stripped him of his necklace* is to be rendered : **Mānlius caesum Gallum torque spoliāvit.**

This rule is frequently violated at all periods of the language, for the purpose either of emphasis or of stylistic effect. The shifted construction is clearer, more vigorous, more conversational.

**Neque illum mē vivō corrumpī sinam**, *PL., B., 419* ; *nor will I suffer him to be debauched while I am alive.*

The violation is most frequent when the dependent case is in the Genitive :

**Iugurtha frātre meō interfectō rēgnū ēius sceleris suī praedam fēcit**, *S., Jug., 14. 11* ; *Jugurtha killed my brother, and (= after killing my brother) made his throne the booty of his crime.*

NOTES.—1. The Pf. Part. of Deponents and Semi-deponents as an active in the Abl. Abs. is not found in early Latin, and is not common in classical Latin, where it is always without an object and is confined to verbs of Growth (principally **ortus**, **coortus**, **nātus**), Death, and Motion. It becomes common later, being used with an object from **SALLUST** on.

2. The Pf. Part. of Deponents as a passive in the Abl. Abs. is confined in classical Latin to **emeritus**, **pactus**, **partitus**. **SALLUST** and **LIVY**, as well as later writers, extend the usage. **TACITUS**, however, shows but two cases : **adeptus** (*Ann.*, i. 7, 8) and **ausus** (*Ann.*, iii. 67, 4).

3. The Fut. Part. act. in the Abl. Abs. is post-Ciceronian, beginning with **POLLIO** and **LIVY**.

4. The impersonal use of the Abl. Abs. is found not unfrequently in early Latin and **CICERO**, rarely in **CAESAR** and **SALLUST**. Most of the forms so used have become adverbial in character, as **optātō**, **sortītō**, **intēstātō**, **cōsultō**, **auspicātō**, **dirēctō**, **meritō**, *etc.* The use of a following clause dependent upon the Abl. is begun in **CICERO** : **adiūctō ut** (*Off.*, ii. 12, 42). **SALLUST** uses **auditō** and **compertō** with the Infinitive. But **LIVY** extends this construction very greatly, and introduces the use of neuter adjectives in the same way : **incertō prae tenebris quid aut peterent aut vitārent**, *L., xxviii. 36, 12*. It is frequent in **TACITUS**.

5. The use of adjectives and substantives in the Abl. is not common in early Latin, but is a favorite usage of the classical period and later : **mē auctōre**, *C., Or., iii. 14, 54*.

6. A predicate substantive, with the participle, is rare, but occurs in good prose : **Praetōre dēsīgnātō mortuō filiō**, *C., Tusc., iii. 28, 70*.

## LOCATIVE.

**411.** In the Singular of the First and Second Declensions, names of Towns and Small Islands are put in the Locative of the Place Where.

**Pompēius hiemāre Dŷrrhachiī, Apollōniae omnibusque oppidīs cōstitu-**  
**erat**, *CAES., B.C., iii. 5, 1* ; *Pompey had determined to winter at Dyr-*  
*rhachium, Apollonia, and all the towns.* **Tīmotheus Lesbī (vīxit)**, *NEP.,*  
*xii. 3, 4* ; *Tīmotheus lived at Lesbos.* **Rhodī ego nōn fui, sed fui in**  
**Bithŷniā**, *C., Planc., 34, 83* ; *I was not at Rhodes, but I was in Bithynia.*

REMARKS.—1. A few substantives of the Third Declension also form sporadic Locatives; so **Carthāginī**, in **PLAUTUS**, **CICERO**, and later; **Tiburī** in **CICERO**, **LIVY**, and later, and a few others. See 386.

2. Other Locative forms are, **domī**, at home (61, R. 2), **humī**, on the ground (first in **CICERO**), **bellī**, and **militiae**, in the combinations **domī militiaeque**, **bellī domīque**, in peace and in war, at home and in the field; **rūrī**, in the country (but **rūre meō**, on my farm).

**Parvi sunt foris arma nisi est cōsiliū domī**, *C., Off., I. 22, 76; of little value are arms abroad unless there is wisdom at home.* **Iacēre humī**, *C., Cat., I. 10, 26; to lie on the ground.* **Humī prōsternere**, *L., XLV. 20, 9; to throw flat on the ground.*

**Bellī** is found alone occasionally in **TERENCE** and **CICERO**; **ENNIUS**, **VERGIL**, and **OVID** have **terrae**; **VERGIL** also **campī**.

3. Appositions are put in the Ablative, commonly with **in**, and regularly follow when qualified by an attribute :

**Militēs Albae cōstitērunt in urbe opportūnā**, *C., Ph., IV. 2, 6; the soldiers halted at Alba, a conveniently situated town.* **Archīās Antiochiaē nātus est celebri quondam urbe**, *C., Arch., 3, 4; Archias was born at Antioch, once a populous city.*

When **urbe**, *city*, **oppidō**, *town*, or **insulā**, *island*, precedes, the preposition is always employed :

**In urbe Rōmā**, *in the city (of) Rome.* **In oppidō Citiō**, *in the town of Citium.* **In insulā Samō**, *in the island (of) Samos.*

4. **Domī** takes the possessive pronoun in the Genitive :

**Domī suae senex est mortuus**, *C., N.D., III. 32, 81; the old man died at his own house.* **Metuis ut meae domī cūrētūr diligenter**, *TER., Hec., 257; you fear that she will not be carefully nursed at my house.* Also **aliēnae domui** (61, R. 2), *C., Tusc., I. 22, 51; in a strange house*; **domī illius**, *C., Div. in Caec., 18, 58; in his house.*

But **in domō Periclī** (65), *NEP., VII. 2, 1; in the house(hold) of Pericles.* **In domō castā**, *in a pure house.* **In domō**, *in the house (not, at home).*

NOTES. 1. Early Latin shows a number of Locative forms that have disappeared for the most part in the classical period. So **temperi** (**tempori**) replaced by **tempore** in **CICERO** (**LIVY** and **TACITUS** only **in tempore**); **mānī**, replaced by **māne**; **vesperi** and **herī**; and rare forms like **diē**, **crāstinī**, **proximī**. See 37, §.

2. On Locative forms of the pronouns, see 91, 3. On **animī**, see 374, N. 7.

## PREPOSITIONS.

412. The Prepositions are originally local adverbs, which serve to define more narrowly the local ideas involved in the cases. The analogy of the local adverbs is followed by other adverbs, which are not so much prepositions as prepositional adverbs. Of the Prepositions proper, that is, Prepositions

used in composition (see Note), as well as in the regimen of cases, **cum** (**con**) does not clearly indicate a local relation.

The only cases that involve local ideas are the Accusative and Ablative. The Accusative, as the case of the Direct Object, represents the relation *whither?* the Ablative represents the relations *whence?* and *where?*

REMARKS.—1. In verbs of Motion, the Result of the Motion is often considered as Rest in a place (where). See 385, N. 2.

2. In verbs of Rest, the Rest is sometimes conceived as the Result of Motion (whither). See 385, N. 3.

NOTE.—Prepositions derive their name from the fact that they are prefixed in composition. Many of the Latin Prepositions are not used in composition, and these may be called improper Prepositions. The prefixes **amb-** (**am-** **an-**), **dis** (**dī**), **por-** (**porr-**, **pol-**), **red-** (**re-**), **sēd-** (**sē-**) and **vē-** are sometimes called inseparable prepositions.

**413. Position of the Preposition.**—The Preposition generally precedes the case.

REMARKS.—1. **Cum** always follows a personal pronoun, and may or may not follow a relative pronoun: **mēcum**, *with me*; **quōcum** or **cum quō**, *with whom*. **Dē** is not uncommonly placed after **quō** and **quā**, rarely after **quibus**. Position after the relative is found here and there also in the case of other Prepositions, but principally in early Latin or the poets, as follows: **ab**, **ad** (also in Cicerō), **ex**, **in**, **per**, **post** (after **hunc**, **C.**, *Tusc.*, II. 6, 15), and **prō**.

Dissyllabic Prepositions are postponed more often, but Cicerō restricts this to pronouns, with the following Prepositions: **ante**, **circā**, **contrā**, **inter**, **penes**, **propter**, **sine**, **ultrā**. Cæsar postpones **intrā** also.

**Tenus**, *as far as*, and **versus**, *-ward*, always follow.

2. When the substantive has an attribute the Preposition may come between; **hanc igitur ob causam** (**C.**, *Br.*, 24, 94), *for this reason, therefore*.

3. The Preposition may be separated from its case by an attributive adjective or its equivalent, or other modifier of the case: **post vērō Sullae victōriam**, *but after Sulla's victory*; **ad beātē vivendum**, *for living happily*. But model prose usually avoids separating the Preposition by more than a word or two. The poets have no scruples.

NOTES.—1. A peculiarity of poetry, Livy, and later prose is the post-position of both Preposition and attribute: **metū in māgnō**, **L.**, IX. 37, 11; *in great fear*.

2. Especially to be noted is the position of **per**, *through* (*by*), in adjurations: **Lȳdia dic per omnēs tē deōs ōrō**, **H.**, *O.*, I. 8, 1; *Lydia, tell, by all the gods, I pray thee*. **Per ego tē deōs ōrō**, **TER.**, *And.*, 834; *I pray thee, by the gods*.

3. Between the Preposition and its case are often inserted the enclitics **que**, **ne**, **ve**; and after **ante**, **post**, and **praeter** the conjunctions **autem**, **enim**, **quidem**, **tamen**, **vērō**, occur, but not frequently. The first word in the combinations **et—et**, **aut—aut**,

**simul—simul, vel—vel**, sometimes follows the Preposition; **cum et diurnō et nocturnō metū**, C., *Tusc.*, v. 23, 66.

**414. Repetition and Omission of the Preposition.**—With different words which stand in the same connection, the Preposition is repeated, when the Preposition is emphatic, or the individual words are to be distinguished; so regularly after **aut—aut, et—et, nec—nec, vel—vel, nōn modo—sed etiam, sed, nisi, quam**, and in comparative clauses with **ut**. Otherwise it is omitted; so always with **que**.

**Et ex urbe et ex agris**, C., *Cat.*, II. 10, 21; *both from (the) city and from (the) country*. **Dē honōre aut dē dignitatē contendimus**, C., *Tusc.*, III. 21, 50; *we are striving about office, or about position*.

REMARKS.—1. When a relative follows in the same construction as its antecedent, the Preposition is usually omitted.

(Cimōn) **incidit in eandem invidiam (in) quam pater suus**, NEP., v. 3, 1; *Cimon fell into the same disrepute into which his father had fallen*.

2. So in questions: **Ante tempus mori miserum. Quod tandem tempus?** C., *Tusc.*, I. 39, 93; *a hard case 'tis, to die before the time. (Before) what time, pray?*

3. After **quasi, tamquam, sicut**, the Preposition is more often inserted.

**Rūs ex urbe tamquam ē vinclis evolāvērunt**, Cf. C., *Or.*, II. 6, 22; *they sped from the city to the country as if from a jail*.

4. Two Prepositions are rarely used with the same word. Either the word is repeated, a form of **is** used, or one Prep. turned into an adverb:

**Prō Scipiōne et adversus Scipiōnem**, *for and against Scipio*. **Ante pūgnam et post eam**, *before and after the battle*. **Et in corpore et extrā [sunt] quaedam bona**, C., *Fin.*, II. 21, 68. But **intrā extrāque mūnitiōnēs**, CAES., *B.C.*, III. 72, 2.

**415. As adverbs without a case are used:**

**Ad**, *about*, with numerals in CAESAR, LIVY, and later; **adversus**, *to meet*, especially in PLAUTUS and TERENCE; **ante** and **post** of Time (403, N. 4); **contrā**, *opposite, on the other hand*; **circā**, *round about*, and **circum** (rare); **prae**, *forward*, in PLAUTUS and TERENCE; **prope**, *near*, and **propter** (rare); **iūxtā**, *near by* (rare); **intrā**, *inside* (post-classical); **extrā**, *outside*; **infrā**, *below*; **suprā**, *above*; **subter**, *beneath*, and **super**, *above*, both rare; **citrā**, *on this side*; **ultrā**, *beyond*; **cōram**, *in the presence of*; **clam**, *secretly*.

**I.—Prepositions Construed with the Accusative.**

**416. The Prepositions construed with the Accusative are:**

**Ad**, **adversus**, **ante**, **apud**, **circā**, **circum**, **circiter**, **cis**, **citrā**,



**clam, contrā, ergā, extrā, infrā, inter, intrā, iūxtā, ob, penes, per, post (pōne), praeter, prope, propter, secundum, suprā, trāns, ūltrā, ūsque, versus.**

1. **Ad.** Of Motion Whither, *to, up to*. Of Direction, *towards* (**ad orientem**). Of Respect, *for, with regard to* (**ad hās rēs perspicāx**); found first in TERENCE. Of Manner, *after, according to* (**ad hunc modum**); colloquial (in CICERO'S speeches only **quem ad modum**). Of Place, *at* (= **apud**), colloquial (**ad montem**, C., *Fam.*, xv. 2, 2) and legal (**ad forum, ad tē**), rare in CICERO'S speeches. Of Time, *at*, refers only to future, and gives either a point (**ad vesperum, at evening**), an interval (**ad paucōs diēs, a few days hence**), or an approaching time, *towards*. With Numerals, *about*. Of Purpose, *for* (**castra hostī ad praedam relinquunt**, L., III. 63, 4). Also in phrases. Post-Ciceronian Latin extended the sphere of **ad**, and colloquially it was often a substitute for the Dative.

2. **Adversus** (-um), [*i.e., turned to*]. *Towards, over against, against*. Rare in early Latin and in CAESAR and SALLUST. In the sense, *over against*, it is found first in LIVY. In the transferred sense, *towards*, it expresses usually hostile disposition, but begins to indicate friendly disposition in CICERO. **Exadversus** (-um) is found occasionally, beginning with CICERO, and is always local.

3. **Ante** [*i.e., over against, facing*]. Of Place Where, *before*. Of Place Whither, *before*; rarely (not in CICERO). Of Time, *before*; the most frequent use. Of Degree, *before*; not in CICERO or CAESAR.

4. **Apud** is used chiefly of Persons. *At the house of* (characteristic locality). *In the presence of* (**iudicem**). *In the writings of* (**Platōnem**). *In the view of*. Of Place, *at, in* (= **in**); common in comedy (**apud villam**); rare elsewhere, especially with proper names, where **ad** was preferred, except by SALLUST. In phrases like **apud sē esse, to be in one's senses**.

5. **Circā** (**circum**). *Around*. **Circum** is exclusively local (except once in VITRUVIUS, where it is temporal). **Circā** in the local sense is found first in CICERO. In the meaning *about*, of Time or Number, it is found first in HORACE. So, too, in the transferred sense of the sphere of mental action: **circā virentis est animus campōs**, H., O., II. 5, 5.

6. **Circiter**. Of Place, *about*; once in PLAUTUS. Usually of Time, *about*, especially with numerals; but the prepositional usage is on the whole small.

7. **Cis, citrā**. *This side, short of*. Of Place; **cis** found first in VARRO, **citrā** in CICERO. **Cis** is occasionally temporal in PLAUTUS, SALLUST, OVID. **Citrā**, of Time, *within, this side of*; found first in OVID. *Without (stopping short of)*; found first in LIVY, then in OVID, and

the post-Augustan prose writers. In *C., Or.*, 18, 50, *citrā* may be rendered *further back*; *i.e.*, nearer the beginning.

8. **Clam.** *Secretly.* With Acc. in early Latin, in the *b. Hisp.*, and in the Jurists. With Abl. in CAESAR (*B.C.*, 11, 32, 8), and in the *b. Afr.*, 11, 4 (both passages disputed). **Clanculum** with Acc., only in TERENCE.

9. **Contrā.** *Opposite to, over against, opposed to, against.* It appears as a Preposition first in the classical period, and is used both in local and transferred senses. In the latter case the force is predominantly hostile.

10. **Ergā.** *Opposite, towards.* Of Place; very rarely, in early and late Latin. Usually in the transferred sense of friendly relations. The hostile sense is occasional in comedy, NEPOS, and later writers. **Ergā** is used always of Persons or personified Things until the time of TACITUS.

11. **Extrā.** *Without, outside of, beside.* It is used of local and transferred relations; rarely in the sense of **sine** (*Tac.*, *H.*, 1, 49); occasionally in sense of **praeter**, *except*.

12. **Īnfrā.** *Beneath, lower down.* Of Space; more frequently in classical Latin, of Rank or Grade; Temporal but once (*C., Br.*, 10, 40). It occurs but rarely in later Latin, and is cited only once from early Latin (*Ter., Eun.*, 489).

13. **Inter.** *Between.* Of Place Where, rarely of Place Whither. Colloquial were phrases like *inter viam (viās)*, *on the road*, *inter nōs*, *between ourselves*. *Inter paucōs*, *preëminently*, is post-classical. Of Time, *during*; at all periods, but in CICERO principally in the *Letters*.

14. **Intrā.** *Within.* Of Local and Temporal (not in CICERO) relations. The usage in transferred relations is post-classical, and mainly poetical.

15. **Iūxtā** [*i.e.*, *adjoining*]. *Hard by, near, next to.* It appears as a Preposition first in VARRO, then in CAESAR, but not in CICERO. It is used locally until LIVY, who employs it also in transferred senses of Time, Order, etc.

16. **Ob** [*i.e.*, *over against, opposite to*]. *Right before.* Of Place occasionally at all periods (not in CAESAR, LIVY, CURTIUS, TACITUS). Of Cause, *for*; found in early Latin (not with personal pronouns in PLAUTUS), in classical and post-classical Latin in increasing proportion. CAESAR uses it only in formulae with **rem (rēs)** and **causam**. CICERO and CAESAR do not use **ob id** or **ob ea**, which, found in early Latin, reappear in SALLUST. **Ob** has almost completely supplanted **propter** in TACITUS. With the substantive and participle (**ob dēfēnsū Capitōliū**) **ob** is found first in LIVY.

17. **Penes.** *With = in the hands of*; of Persons. Applied to

Things, it is found in poetry first in HORACE ; in prose first in TACITUS. It is found wholly with *esse* until later Latin.

18. **Per.** Of Space, *through* ; of Time, *during* ; of Cause, *owing to* ; of Instrument, *by* (both persons and things) ; of Manner, *by, in*. It is used phraseologically in oaths, *by* ; also with persons (sometimes things), as *per me licet, as far as I am concerned you may*. **Per** = **ab** of Agent is found only in late Latin.

19. **Pōne.** *Behind*, only in Local relations ; it is most frequent in PLAUTUS, occurs but once in CICERO, never in CAESAR or HORACE, and is rare in general.

20. **Post.** Of Place, *behind* ; rare, but in good usage. Of Time, *after*. Of Rank, *subordinate to* ; in SALLUST, poets, and late prose.

21. **Praeter.** Of Place, *in front of, on before, past*. In a transferred sense, *except* ; *contrary to* (*opiniōnem* and the like). Of Rank, *beyond* (*praeter omnēs* is cited only from PLAUTUS and HORACE ; usually *praeter ceterōs*).

22. **Prope.** Of Place, *near* ; found first in the classical period. It sometimes has the constructions of adjectives of Nearness. Of Time, *near* ; very rare and post-classical, as LIVY, SUETONIUS. **Propius** is found first in CAESAR as a preposition.

23. **Propter.** Of Place, *near*. Of Cause, *on account of* ; very common in early and classical Latin, but avoided by many authors, notably TACITUS. With substantive and participle it appears first in VARRO ; then is common in LIVY, and later.

24. **Secundum** [*i.e., following*]. Of Place, *along (litus), close behind* ; very rare (C., *Fam.*, IV. 12, 1). Of Time, *immediately after* ; in early Latin and CICERO, common in LIVY, but never in CAESAR, SALLUST, TACITUS. Of Series, *next to* ; in PLAUTUS and CICERO. Of Reference, *according to* ; at all periods. **Secus** is ante-classical and rare.

25. **Suprā.** Of Place, *above, beyond* ; so CICERO almost exclusively. Of Time, *beyond* ; very rare. Of Grade, *above*. Of Authority, *in charge of* ; VITRUVIUS and later.

26. **Trāns.** *On the other side, beyond, across* ; only in Local relations.

27. **Ūltrā.** Of Space and Measure, *on that side, beyond*. Of Time ; only in late Latin. The early form *ūls* is very rare and in formulæ, as, **Cis Tiberim et ūls Tiberim**. In late Latin *ūltrā* supplants *praeter* almost wholly.

28. **Ūsque, up to**, is found once in TERENCE, several times in CICERO, and occasionally later, with the Acc. of the name of a town. With other names of localities it appears first in LIVY.

29. **Versus, -ward.** As a preposition it first appears in the classical period and is found usually with names of Towns, and small Islands ; with other words it is regularly combined with the prepositions **ad** (not in CICERO) or **in**.

## II. Prepositions Construed with the Ablative.

417. Prepositions construed with the Ablative are **ā** (**ab**, **abs**), **absque**, **cōram**, **cum**, **dē**, **ē** (**ex**), **prae**, **prō**, **sine**, **tenus**; rarely **fine**, **palam**, **procul**, **simul**.

1. **Ā** (**ab**, **abs**). Of Place Whence, *from*, especially of the point of departure; so in phrases, **ā tergō**, **ā capite**, etc. Of Cause, *from* (**Irā**); beginning with LIVY. Of Agent, *by*. Of Remote Origin, *from*. Of Time, *from*. Of Reference, *according to*, *after*. Of Specification, *in* (**doleō ab oculis**); often with compound verbs.

NOTE. The form before vowels and **h** is always **ab**; before consonants usually **ā**, though **ab** is not uncommon before consonants other than the labials **b**, **f**, **p**, **v**, and is frequent before **l**, **n**, **r**, **s**, and **i** (**j**); **abs** is found only before **tē** and in the combination **absque**. CICERO uses **abs tē** in his early writings, but prefers **ā tē** in his later ones.

2. **Absque** [*i.e.*, *off*]. *Without*. Peculiar to early Latin, where it is used in conditional sentences only. Occasionally in later Latin, as, **absque sententiā** (QUINT., VII. 2, 44), for **praeter sententiam**.

3. **Cōram**. *Face to face with*, *in the presence of*; it is used with Persons only, and is found first in CICERO, and then in later writers, but in general it is rare until the time of TACITUS, who uses it very often in the *Annals* and always postpones.

4. **Cum**. *With*; of Accompaniment in the widest sense. With Abl. of Manner regularly when there is no attributive; often when there is one. Sometimes it is used of mutual action: **ōrāre cum**, *plead with* (PLAUTUS), etc.

5. **Dē**. Of Place, *down from*, and then *from*; especially with compounds of **dē** and **ex**. Of Source, *from*; with verbs of Receiving (actual and mental). Of Origin; but mainly in poetry and later prose. Of Object, *concerning*. Of Time; in phrases **dē nocte**, **dē diē** (**diem dē diē**, *day after day*). Of the Whole *from* which a part is taken. Of Reference, *according to* (**dē sententiā**). Of Material; poetical and late.

6. **Ē** (**ex**). Of Place, *out of*, *from*. Often in phraseological usages, as **ex parte**, *partly*; **ex asse**, and the like. With verbs of Receiving, *from*. Of Time, *from*; **ex tempore** is phraseological. Of Origin, *from*. Of Reference, *according to*. Of Manner; in many phrases, as **ex aequō**, **ex ordine**. **Ē** is used before consonants only, **ex** before both vowels and consonants.

7. **Fine** (or **finī**). *Up to*; found in PLAUTUS and CATO, then not until very late Latin. With the Gen. it occurs in *b. Afr.* and in SALLUST, *Fr.*; then not until OVID and very late Latin.

8. **Palam**, in the sense of **cōram**, *in the presence of*, is found first in HORACE and LIVY, and is rare.

9. **Prae.** Of Place, *in front of*; with verbs of Motion only, in classical Latin. In early Latin in the phrase **prae manū**, *at hand*. Of the Preventive Cause, *for*; with negatives only, in and after the classical period; in early Latin, also in positive sentences. Of Comparison, *in comparison with*; occasionally at all periods.

10. **Prō.** Of Place, *before*; not in early Latin, but found first in the classical period, where it is confined to certain combinations, as **prō rōstris**, **castris**, **aede**, **vāllō**, etc., and means *before and on*. *In behalf of*; not cited for early Latin. *Instead of*; very common at all periods. *In proportion to*; at all periods. **Quam prō**; found first in LIVY.

11. **Procul**, *far from*, is poetical, and begins in prose with LIVY. In classical Latin prose always with **ab**.

12. **Simul**, in the sense of **cum**, belongs to poetry and TACITUS (*Ann.*, III. 64).

13. **Sine**, *without*, is opposed to **cum**.

14. **Tenus**, *to the extent of*. Of Space (actual and transferred), *as far as*. It is found occasionally with the Gen., but almost wholly with Pl., and perhaps but once in CICERO (*Arat.*, 83); otherwise it belongs to poetry, making its first appearance in prose in CICERO (*Dei.*, 13, 36) and LIVY. It occurs with the Acc. in late Latin. **Tenus** is always postponed.

### III. Prepositions Construed with the Accusative and Ablative.

418. Prepositions construed with the Accusative and Ablative are **in**, **sub**, **subter**, **super**.

1. **In** (the forms **endo**, **indu**, are early and rare). (a) With Accusative: Of Place, *into*, *into the midst of*. Of Disposition and Direction, *towards*. Of Time, *into* (**multam noctem**), *for* (**diem**, **multōs annōs**, **posterum**). Of Purpose or Destination, *for*; mostly post-classical. Of Manner, *in*, *after*. Phraseologically with neuter adjectives: **in dēterius**, *for the worse*; but mainly post-classical. With Distributives, *to*, *among*.

(b) With Ablative: Of Place, *in*, *on*. Of Time, *within*. Of Reference, *in the case of*, *in regard to*, *in the matter of*. Of Condition, *in* (**armis**). In many phrases, especially with neuter adjectives, **in incertō**, **dubiō**, **integrō**, **ambiguō**, etc.

2. **Sub**. (a) With Accusative: Of Place Whither, *under*. Of Time Approaching, *about* (**noctem**, **vesperum**); just Past, *immediately after*. Of Condition, *under* (**sub potestātem redigī**).

(b) With Ablative: Of Place Where, *under*; also in phrases, **sub armis**, etc. Of Time When, *about*; rare, and first in CAESAR. Of Position, *under* (**rēge**, **iūdice**, etc.). Of Condition, *under* (**eā condiciōne**); first in LIVY.



3. **Subter.** (a) With Accusative ; rare, and locally equal to **sub.**  
 (b) With the Ablative ; more rare and almost wholly poetical (CATULLUS and VERGIL). (*Cf. C., Thuc.*, v. i. 4, which may be Acc. **Subtus** occurs only in VITR., iv. 2, 5, and then with the Accusative.

4. **Super.** (a) With Accusative but once before the classical time : Of Place, *over, above*. Of Time, *during* ; found first in PLINY, *Epp.* Metaphorically of Degree, *beyond* (**super modum**) ; post-classical.

(b) With the Ablative : Of Space, *above*. Of Time, *during* (not until the Augustan poets). Metaphorically = **praeter** ; very rare : = *dē*, *concerning* ; colloquial ; hence in PLAUTUS, CATO, CICERO's *Letters* (*ad Att.*), SALLUST, HORACE, LIVY ; but uncommon.

## INFINITIVE.

### The Infinitive as a Substantive.

419. The Infinitive is the substantive form of the verb.

NOTE. — The Infinitive differs from a verbal substantive in that it retains the adverbial attribute, the designations of voice and time, and the regimen of the verb :

**Amāre**, *to love* ; **valdē amāre**, *to love hugely* ; **amārī**, *to be loved* ; **amāvisse**, *to have loved* ; **amāre aliquem**, *to love a man* ; **nocēre alicui**, *to hurt a man*.

But the great claim of the Infinitive to be considered a verb lies in the involution of predicate and subject. Like the finite verb, the Infinitive involves predicate and subject ; but the subj. is indefinite and the predication is dependent.

420. The Infinitive, when it stands alone, involves an indefinite Accusative Subject, and the Predicate of that Subject is, of course, in the Accusative Case.

**Rēgem esse**, *to be king*. **Bonum esse**, *to be good*. Compare **quid stultius quam aliquem eō sibi placēre quod ipse nōn fēcit**, SEN., *E. M.*, 74, 17 ; *what is more foolish than for a man to (that a man should) pride himself on what he has not done himself*.

So in the paradigm of the verb :

**Amātūrum esse**, *to be about to love*.

NOTE.—On the Nom. with the Inf. by Attraction, see 528.

In consequence of this double nature, the Infinitive may be used as a substantive or as a verb.

421. The Infinitive, as a substantive, is used regularly in two cases only—Nominative and Accusative. In the other cases its place is supplied by the Gerund and the Ablative Supine.

NOTES. —1. Traces of the original Dat. (or Loc.) nature of the Infinitive are still apparent in many constructions, which are, however, mostly poetical :

(a) With verbs of Motion in early Latin and the later poets, when **ut**, **ad** with Gerundive or Sup. is to be expected.

**Abiit aedem visere Minervae**, PL., *B.*, 900; *she went away to visit the temple of Minerva*. **Semper in Oceanum mittit mē quaerere gemmās**, PROP., II. (III.) 16 (8), 17; *she is always sending me to the Ocean to look for (in quest of) pearls*.

(b) With verbs of Giving, Rendering, and the like, in early Latin and the poets, where the Acc. of the Gerundive is to be expected. Classical is the use of **bibere** only, in this way. (The old form **hibere** points to the effacement of the final sense of this Inf.)

**Iovī bibere ministrāre**, Cf. C., *Trusc.*, I. 26. **Quem virum aut hērōa lyrā vel ācri tibiā sūmēs celebrāre**, CLIŌ? II., O., I. 12, 1. Different, of course, are cases like **dī tibi posse tuōs tribuant dēfendere semper**, OV., *Tr.*, III. 5, 21, where **posse dēfendere** is felt as **potestātem dēfendendī**.

(c) With many adjectives where the Sup. in **ū**, or some construction of Purpose, is to be expected.

In early Latin the adjectives are **parātus**, **cōsuētus**, **dēfessus**. But this usage is widely extended by the Augustan poets VERGIL and HORACE, and later.

It is confined principally, however, to adjectives of *capability, ability, necessity, etc.*, and adjectives like **facilis** (with act. as well as pass. Inf., first in PROP.), **difficilis**, and the like: **Rōma capī facilis**, LUCAN, II. 656. Note the strange usage **dissentire manifestus**, TAC., *Ann.*, II. 57, 4, and occasionally elsewhere.

2. The Inf. may take an adj. attribute, but in classical prose this is limited to **ipsum**, **hōc ipsum**, and **tōtum hōc**:

**Vivere ipsum turpe est nobīs**, *living itself is a disgrace to us*. **Quibusdam tōtum hōc displicet philosophārī** (280, 1, a).

### The Infinitive as a Subject.

422. The Infinitive, as a Subject, is treated as a neuter substantive.

**Incipere multō est quam inpetrāre facilius**, PL., *Poen.*, 974; *beginning is much easier (work) than winning*. **Miserum est dēturbārī fortūnis omnibus**, C., *Quinct.*, 31, 95; *it is wretched to find one's self turned rudely out of all one's fortunes*. **Nōn tam turpe fuit vincī quam contendisse decōrum est**, OV., *M.*, IX. 6 (280, 2, a).

NOTES.—1. The use of the Inf. as a subj. grew out of its use as an obj., but the original Dat. (Loc.) sense was lost to the consciousness just as the prepositional sense of our own *to* is lost when our Inf. becomes a subj.; as in, *to err is human, to forgive divine*. No Roman felt **turpe fuit vincī**, as, *there was disgrace in being beaten*; **bonum est legere** was to him another **bona est lectiō** (see PRISCIAN, 408, 27).

2. The substantives used as predicates are not common in early Latin. **Lubīdō est** is confined to PLAUTUS. **Stultitia est**, **cōsiliū est**, and **tempus est** are universal. CICERO introduces the not uncommon **mōs est**, and many others with **est**, as: **cōnsuētūdō** (-inis), **vitium**, **iūs**, **fās**, **nefās**, **facinus**, **fātum**, **caput**, **rēs** (CAESAR), **opus**, **mūnus**, **officiū**, **onus**, **sapientia**, and a few others. Still more are found later. Many of these also take **ut**; so **officiū** always in comedy (except TER., *And.*, 331).

3. Neuter adjectives are used as predicates in great variety. Ciceronian are **certius** (quam), **cōsentāneum**, **falsum**, **incrēdibile**, **integrum**, **glōriōsum**, **māius** (quam), **mīrum**, **novom**, **optimum**, **rēctum**, **singulāre**, **trītum**, **vērīsime**, **vērūm**. Most of them, however, but once. Some of these also take **ut**, but not often in good prose.

4. In early Latin many impersonal verbs are used as predicates. Classical Latin retains most of them, but drops *condecet*, *dispudet*, *subolet*, and adds some, such as *paenitet*, *dēdecet*, *displicet*, *prōdest*, *obest*, *attinet*. Others come in later. Some, such as *oportet*, also take *ut* or the simple Subjv. Noteworthy is *est*, *it is possible*, found first in *VARRO* and *LUCR.*, then not till *VERG.* and *HOR.*, and never common.

5. Certain abstract phrases, whose meanings are akin to the words already mentioned, take the Inf. as a subject. So especially predicate Genitives, as *cōnsuētūdinis* and *mōris*; or combinations like *quid negōtīi, nihil negōtīi est*; predicate Datives such as *cordī est, cūrae est*, both unclassical; or phrases, as *operae pretium, in animō esse, in mentem venīre*, of which the last two were introduced by *CICERO*.

### The Infinitive as an Object.

**423. 1.** The Infinitive is used as the Object of Verbs of Creation, commonly known as Auxiliary Verbs.

These Verbs *help* the Infinitive into existence.

2. Such verbs denote Will, Power, Duty, Habit, Inclination, Resolve, Continuance, End, and the like, with their opposites.

*Ēmori cupiō*, *TER.*, *Heaut.*, 971; *I want to die*. [*Catō*] *esse quam vidēri bonus mālēbat*, *S.*, *C.*, 54. 5; *Cato preferred being (good) to seeming good*. *Sed precor ut possim tūtius esse miser*, *OV.*, *Tr.*, v. 2, 78; *but I pray that I may be more safely wretched*. *Vincere scīs, Hannibal*; *victōriā ūtī nescīs*, *LI.*, XXII. 51; *how to win victory, you know, Hannibal; how to make use of victory, you know not*. *Quī morī didicit, servīre dēdidicit*, *SEN.*, *E. M.*, 26, 10; *he who has learned to die has unlearned to be a slave*. *Maledictīs dēterrēre nē scribat parat*, *TER.*, *Ph.*, 3; *he is preparing (trying) to frighten (him) from writing, by abuse*. *Quī mentiri solet, pēierāre cōsuēvit*, *C.*, *Rose. Com.*, 16, 46; *he who is wont to lie is accustomed to swear falsely*. *Vulnera quae fēcīt dēbuit ipse pati*, *OV.*, *Am.*, II. 3, 4; *the wounds he gave he should himself have suffered*. *Vereor laudāre praesentem*, *C.*, *N. D.*, I. 21, 58; *I feel a delicacy about praising a man to his face*. *Rēligiōnum animum nōdis exsolvere pergō*, *LUCR.*, I. 932; *I go on to loose the spirit from the bonds of superstitious creeds*. *Tuā quod nīl rēfert, percontārī dēsīnās*, *TER.*, *Hec.*, 810; *cease to inquire what is not to your advantage*.

So *habēō*, *I have* (it in my power).

*Tantum habēō pollicērī mē tibi cumulātō satisfactūrum*, *C.*, *Fam.*, I. 5A. 3; *so much I can promise, that I will give you abundant satisfaction*.

NOTES. 1. The original force of the Inf. is, in most of these constructions, hard to determine, and was certainly not felt by the Romans themselves. In many cases the Inf. seems to have been used because the governing word or phrase was felt to be more or less equivalent to a Verb of Creation.

2. The principal verbs, construed thus with the Inf., are as follows:

*Will*: *velle*, *mālle*, *nōlle*, *cupere*, *optāre* (rare, except in passive), *petere*, *pōstulāre*, *avēre*, *audēre*, *dēsīdērāre* (first in *CIC.*), *praeestīre*, *gestīre*, *ārdeō*,

**metuere** (ante-class.), **verēri**, **timēre**, **formidāre** (ante-class.), **reformidāre**, **horrēre**, **horrēscere**, **hortārī** and compounds, **monēre** and compounds, **suādēre** (first in Cic.), **persuādēre**, **iubēre**, **imperāre**, **praecipere**, **cōgere**, **permittere** (once in Cic., then later), **concedere** (first in Cic.), **cūrāre** (not in CAES., SALL., LIVY), **vetāre**, **recūsāre** (first in Cic.), **mittere**, **omittere**, **intermittere**, **cunctārī**, **cēssāre**, **morārī**, **dubitāre**, **gravārī**, **prohibēre**, **impedire**, **dēterrēre**.

*Power* : **posse**, **quīre**, **nequīre**, **sustinēre** (first in Cic.), **valēre** (first in Cic.), **pollēre** (first in Cic.), **habēre** (rare, except in Cic.), **scīre**, **nescīre**.

*Duty* : **dēbēre**, **necesse habēre**.

*Habit* : **assuēscere**, **assuēfacere** (first in Cic.), **cōsuēscere**, **solēre**.

*Inclination* : **cōnārī** (only with Inf.), **studēre**, **contendere**, **intendere** (CAES.), **labōrāre** (always with neg. in Cic.), **mōlirī** (rare), **aggredi**, **ingredi**, **adorirī**, **nīti** (first in CAES.), **ēnīti** (ante-class. and post-class.), **quaerere** (first in Cic.), **temptāre** (first in HIRTIUS).

*Resolve* : **cōgitāre**, **meditārī**, **meminī** (mostly poet.), **parāre**, **statuere** (first in Cic.), **cōstituere** (first in TER.), **dēcernere** (not class. in pass.), **iūdicāre** (first in Cic.), **dēstināre** (first in CAES.), **certum est**, **dēliberātum est**, **propositum est** (first in Cic.).

*Continuance* : **stāre** (first in Cic.), **instāre**, **perstāre** (once in Cic., then late), **perseverāre** (first in Cic.), **properāre** (only word used in early Latin), **fēstināre** (first in Cic.), **mātūrāre** (first in Cic.).

*Beginning and End* : **coepī**, **incipere** (first in Cic.), **exōrdirī**, **pergere**, **dēsinere**.

Poets are free in using the Inf. after other verbs.

3. Notice that **coepī**, *I have begun*, and **dēsīnō**, *I cease*, are used in Pf. pass. with passive Infinitives, in early Latin, CICERO, CAESAR, always; later the construction varies, and TACITUS does not observe the rule.

**Bellō Athēniēnsēs undique premī sunt coeptī**, NEP., XIII. 3, 1; *the Athenians began to feel the pressure of war on (from) all sides*. **Veterēs orātiōnēs legī sunt dēsītae**, C., Br., 32, 123; *the old speeches have ceased to be read*.

When the passives are really reflexives or neuter, the active forms may be used.

4. Verbs of Will and Desire take **ut** as well as the Infinitive. So regularly **optō**, *I choose*, in classical prose.

5. Verbs which denote Hope, Promise, and Threat are treated as verbs of Saying and Thinking (530), but also occasionally as in English :

**Spērant sē māximum fructum esse captūrōs**, C., Lael., 21, 79; *they hope that they will derive great advantage*. **Subruptūrum pallam prōmisit tibi**, PL., Asin., 930; *he promised to steal the mantle from you*.

6. **Doceō**, *I teach*, **iubeō**, *I bid*, **vetō**, *I forbid*, **sinō**, *I let*, take the Inf. as a Second Accusative (339) :

(Dionysius) **nē collum tōnsōrī committeret tondēre filiās suās docuit**, C., Tusc., v. 20, 58; *Dionysius, to keep from trusting his neck to a barber, taught his daughters to shave* (taught them shaving). **Ipse iubet mortis tē meminisse deus**, MART., II. 59 (376). **Vitae summa brevis spem nos vetat inchoāre longam**, H., O., I. 4, 15; *life's brief sum forbids us open (a) long (account with) hope*. **Neu sinās Mēdōs equitāre inultōs**, H., O., I. 2, 51; *nor let the Median ride and ride unpunished*.

### The Infinitive as a Predicate.

424. The Infinitive, as a verbal substantive, may be used as a Predicate after the copula **esse**, *to be*, and the like.

**Doctō hominī et ērudītō vivere est cōgitāre**, C., Tusc., v. 38, 111; *to a learned and cultivated man to live is to think*.



## GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

425. The other cases of the Infinitive are supplied by the Gerund. With Prepositions, the Gerund, and not the Infinitive, is employed.

N. Legere difficile est, *reading (to read) is hard to do.*

G. Ars legendi, *the art of reading.*

Puer studiōsus est legendi, *the boy is zealous of reading.*

D. Puer operam dat legendō, *the boy devotes himself to reading.*

Ac. Puer cupit legere, *the boy is desirous to read.*

Puer prōpēsus est ad legendum, *the boy has a bent toward reading.*

Ab. Puer discit legendō, *the boy learns by reading.*

NOTE. Of course the Inf. may be quoted as an abstract notion, a form of the verb : **Multum interest inter "dare" et "accipere,"** SEN., *Ben.*, 5, 10 ; *there is a vast difference between "Give" and "Receive."*

426. As a verbal form, the Gerund, like the Infinitive, takes the same case as the verb.

Hominēs ad deōs nullā rē propius accēdunt, quam salutem hominibus dandō. (C., *Lig.*, 12, 38 ; *men draw nearer to the gods by nothing so much as by bringing deliverance to their fellow-men.*

NOTES. 1. The Gerund is the substantive of the Gerundive (251, n. 1). The most plausible theory connects the forms in **-ndu-** with those in **-nt-** (Pr. Part. active) as being verbal nouns originally without any distinction of voice. The signification of necessity comes mainly from the use as a predicate, i.e., through the characteristic idea. Thus, *he who is being loved*, implies *he who is of a character to be loved* (*qui amētur*), and then *he who should be loved*.

The Gerundive is passive : the Gerund, like other verbal nouns (363), is theoretically active or passive, according to the point of view. Practically, however, the passive signification of the Gerund is rare.

Iugurtha ad imperandum (= *ut ei imperārētur*, perhaps an old military formula) **Tisidium vocābātur**, Cf. S., *Iug.*, 62, 8.

2. Gerundive and Pt. Part. passive are often translated alike ; but in the one case the action is progressive or prospective, in the other it is completed.

Caesare interficiendō Brūtus et Cassius patriae libertatē restituere cōnātī sunt ; *by the murder of Caesar (by murdering Caesar), Brutus and Cassius endeavored to restore their country's freedom to her.* Caesare interfectō, Brūtus et Cassius patriae libertatē nōn restituērunt ; *by murdering Caesar, Brutus and Cassius did not restore their country's freedom to her.*

427. *Gerundive for Gerund.*—Instead of the Gerund, with an Accusative Object, the object is generally put in the case of the Gerund, with the Gerundive as an Attribute.

G. Plācandi Dei, *of appeasing God.*

D. Plācandō Deō, *for appeasing God.*

Ab. Plācandō Deō, *by appeasing God*



In model prose this construction is invariably employed with Prepositions.

**Ad plācandōs Deōs, for appeasing the gods** (C., *Cat.*, III. 8, 20).

**In plācandis Diis, in appeasing the gods.**

NOTES.—1. It is impossible to make a distinction between the Gerund and the Gerundive form. They are often used side by side, where there can be no difference (L., XXI. 5, 5; XXV. 40, 6; XXVIII. 37, 1; XXXI. 26, 6). The preference for the Gerundive is of a piece with the use of the Pf. Part. pass. in preference to an Abstract Substantive (360, R. 2).

2. The impersonal Gerundive is found with an Acc. obj. once in PLAUTUS (**agitantumst vigiliās**, *Trin.*, 869), and occasionally elsewhere in early Latin (principally VARRO; very rarely in CICERO and for special reasons (*Cat. M.*, 2, 6); here and there later (not in CAESAR, HORACE, OVID, and, perhaps, LIVY).

**Aeternās quoniam poenās in morte timendumst**, LUCR., I. 111; *since we must fear eternal punishments in death.*

3. Neuter adjectives and pronouns are not attracted: **aliquid faciendī ratiō**, C., *Inv.*, I. 25, 36; *method of doing something*. **Cupiditās plūra habendī**, *greed for having more*. But when the neuter adjective has become a substantive (204, N. 2), the Gerundive form may be used: **cupiditās vērī videndī**, C., *Fin.*, II. 14, 46; *the desire of seeing the truth*.

4. The Gerundive with personal construction can be formed only from Transitive Verbs, like other passives (217). Hence the impersonal form must be used for all verbs that do not take the Acc., but with such verbs prepositions are rarely found.

**Ad nōn pārendum senātui**, L., XLII. 9; *for not obeying the senate*.

5. But the Gerundives from **ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor** (407) have the personal construction, but usually only in the oblique cases (C., *Fin.*, I. 1, 3, is an exception), as a remnant of their original usage. The poets and later prose writers use still more forms in the same way, as **laetandus, dolendus, medendus, paenitendus, etc.** CICERO also shows single instances of **glōriandus, disserendus, respondendus**.

6. The use of the Nom. of the Gerundive follows the ordinary rules of the Nominative.

### Genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive.

**428.** The Genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive is used chiefly after substantives and adjectives which require a complement:

**Sapientia ars vivendī putanda est**, C., *Fin.*, I. 13, 42; *philosophy is to be considered the art of living*. **Et propter vitam vivendī perdere causās**, JUV., VIII. 84; *and on account of life, to lose the reasons for living*. **Raucaeque garrulitās studiumque immāne loquendī**, OV., *M.*, v. 678; *and hoarse chattiness, and a monstrous love of talking*. **Triste est nōmen ipsum carendī**, C., *Tusc.*, I. 36, 87; *dismal is the mere word "carēre" (go without)*. **Nōn est plācandī spēs mihi nūlla Deī**, OV., *Tr.*, v. 8, 22; *I am not without hope of appeasing God*. **Ignōrant cupidi maledicendī plūs invidiam quam conviciū posse**, QUINT., VI. 2, 16; *those who are eager to abuse know not that envy has more power than billingsgate*. **(Titus) equitandi peritissimus fuit**, SUET., *Tit.*, 3; *Titus was exceedingly skilful in riding*. **Neuter suī prōtegendī corporis memor (erat)**, L., II. 6, 9; *neither*

*thought of shielding his own body.* Quī hīc mōs obsidēdī vīas et virōs aliēnōs appellandī? L., XXXIV. 2, 9; *what sort of way is this of blocking up the streets and calling upon other women's husbands?* Summa ōlūdēdī occāsiōst mihi nunc senēs, TER., Ph., 885; *I have a tip-top chance to fool the old chaps now.*

REMARKS.—1. As mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri, are, in their origin, neuter singulars, from meum, *my being*, tuum, *thy being*, suum, *one's being*, etc., the Gerundive is put in the same form: cōservandī sui, *of preserving themselves*: vestri adhortandī, *of exhorting you*; and no regard is had to number or gender.

Cōpia placandī sit modo parva tui, Ov., Her., 20, 74; *let (me) only have a slight chance of trying to appease you* (feminine).

2. The Gen. of the Gerund and Gerundive is used very commonly with causā, less often with grātiā, and rarely with (antiquated) ergō, *on account of*, to express Design: Dissimulandī causā in senātum vēnit, S., C., 31, 52; *he came into the senate for the purpose of dissimulation.*

The Gen. alone in this final sense is found once in TERENCE, several times in SALLUST, occasionally later, especially in TACITUS.

(Lepidus arma) cēpit libertātis subvortundae, S., Phil. Fr., 10; *Lepidus took up arms as a matter of (for the purpose of) subverting freedom.*

More commonly ad, rarely ob. See 432.

Esse with this Gen. may be translated by *serve to*; this is occasional in CICERO; see 366, 429, 1.

Omnia discrimina tālia concordiae minuendae [sunt], L., XXXIV. 54, 5; *all such distinctions are matters of (belong to) the diminishing of concord (serve to diminish concord).* Compare CAES., B. G., v. 8, 6: [nāvēs] quās sui quisque commodi fēcerat, *ships which each one had (had) made (as a matter) of personal convenience.*

NOTES. 1. In early Latin, in CICERO (early works, *Philippics* and philosophical writings), then in later authors, we find occasionally a Gen. Sing. of the Gerund, followed by a substantive in the Plural. Here it is better to conceive the second Gen. as objectively dependent upon the Gerund form.

Agitur utrum Antōniō facultās dētur agrōrum suis latrōnibus condōnandī, C., Ph., v. 3, 6; *the question is whether Antony shall receive the power of giving away (of) lands to his pet highwaymen.*

2. Fās est, nefās est, iūs est, fātum est, cōpia est, ratiō est, cōnsilium est, cōnsilium capere, cōnsilium infre, and a few others, have often the Inf. where the Gerund might be expected. Sometimes there is a difference in meaning; thus **tempus**, with Gerund, *the proper time (season)*, with Inf., *high time*.

The poets and later prose writers extend this usage of the Infinitive.

3. Another peculiarity of the poets is the construction of the adj. or subst. like the cognate verb with the Inf., instead of with the Gen. of the Gerund. (At) sēcūra quiēs et nescia fallere (quae nesciat fallere) vita, V., G., II. 467; *quiet without a care, and a life that knoweth not how to disappoint (ignar tul of disappointment).*

Later prose is more careful in this matter.

4. The Gen. of Gerund, depending upon a verb, is rare and Tacitean (Ann., II. 43). TACITUS also uses the appositional Gerund with a substantival neuter (Ann., XIII. 26).

5. Some substantives, like **auctor**, **dux**, may have a Dat. instead of a Gen.; LIV., I. 23: **mē Albānī gerendō bellō ducem creāvēre**.

### Dative of the Gerund and Gerundive.

**429.** The Dative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used chiefly after words that denote Fitness and Function.

1. The usage is rare in classical Latin, and begins with a few verbs and phrases: **esse** (= **parem esse**), *to be equal to*; **praeesse** and **praeficere**, *to be (put) in charge of*; **studēre** and **operam addere**, **labōrem impertire**, *to give one's attention to*; then it is used with a few substantives and adjectives to give the object for which, and with names of Boards.

**Solvendō civitatēs nōn erant**, Cf. C., *Fam.*, III. 8, 2; *the communities were not equal to (ready for) payment (were not solvent)*. [**Sapiēs**] **vīrēs suās nōvit**, **scit sē esse onerī ferendō**, SEN., *E.M.*, 71, 26; *the wise man is acquainted with his own strength; he knows that he is (equal) to bearing the burden*.

So **comitia decemvirīs creandīs** (C., *Leg. Agr.*, 2, 8); **triumvir colōnīs dēdūcendīs** (S., *Iug.*, 42); **reliqua tempora dēmetendīs fructibus accommodāta sunt**, C., *Cat. M.*, 19, 70.

2. Classical Latin requires **ad** with the Acc., but from LIVY on the use of this Dat. spreads, and it is found regularly after words which imply Capacity and Adaptation. It is found also technically with verbs of Decreeing and Appointing, to give the Purpose.

**Aqua nitrōsa utilis est bibendō**, Cf. PLIN., *N.H.*, XXXI. 32, 59; *alkaline water is good for drinking (to drink)*. **Lignum āridum māteria est idōnea ēliciendis ignibus**, Cf. SEN., *N.Q.*, II. 22, 1; *dry wood is a fit substance for striking fire (drawing out sparks)*. **Referundae ego habēō linguam nātam grātiae**, PL., *Pers.*, 428; *I have a tongue that's born for showing thankfulness*.

NOTES.—1. In early Latin the use of this Dat. is very restricted, it being found principally after **studēre**; **operam dare**, or **sūmere** (both revived by LIVY); **finem** (or **modum**) **facere**; and a few adjectival forms. Of the latter, CICERO uses only **accommodātus**, CAESAR only **pār**.

2. Rare and unclassical is the Acc. in dependence upon a Dat. of the Gerund.

**Epidicum operam quaerendō dabō**, PL., *Ep.*, 605.

### Accusative of the Gerundive.

**430.** The Gerundive is used in the Accusative of the Object to be Effected, after such verbs as Giving and Taking, Sending and Leaving, Letting, Contracting, and Undertaking. (Factitive Predicate.)

**Diviti hōmī id aurum servandum dedit**, PL., *B.*, 338; *he gave that*

gold to a rich man to keep. *Conōn mūrōs reficiendōs cūrat*, NEP., IX. 4, 5; *Conon has the walls rebuilt*. *Patriam diripiendam reliquimus*, C., *Fam.*, XVI. 12, 1; *we have left our country to be plundered*. [*Carvilius*] *aedem faciendam locāvit*, L., X. 46, 14; *Carvilius let the (contract of) building the temple*.

Of course, the passive form has the Nominative :

*Filius Philippi Dēmētrius ad patrem redūcendus lēgātis datus est*, L., XXXVI. 35, 13; *the son of Philip, Demetrius, was given to the envoys to be taken back to his father*.

NOTES.—1. Early Latin shows with this construction *dare*, *condūcere*, *locāre*, *rogāre*, *petere*, *habēre*, *prōpīnāre*. Classical Latin gives up *rogāre*, *petere*, *prōpīnāre*, but adds others, as *trādere*, *obicere*, *concēdere*, *committere*, *cūrāre*, *relinquere*, *prōpōnere*. LIVY introduces *suscipere*. The use of *ad* in place of the simple Acc. is not common.

[*Caesar*] *oppidum ad diripiendum militibus concēssit*, CAES., *B. C.*, III. 80, 6. But *ad* is necessary in *nēmīni sē ad docendum dabat*, C., *Br.*, 89, 306; *he would yield to no one for teaching*, i.e., *would accept no one as a pupil*.

2. *Habēō dicendum* and the like for *habēō dicere*, or, *habēō quod dicam*, belongs to later Latin (TAC., *Dial.*, 37; *Ann.* IV. 40, etc.).

#### Ablative of the Gerund and Gerundive.

431. The Ablative of the Gerund or Gerundive is used as the Ablative of Means and Cause, seldom as the Ablative of Manner or Circumstance.

*Unus homō nōbis cunctandō restituit rem*, ENNIUS (C., *Cat. M.*, 4, 10); *one man by lingering raised our cause again*. *Hominis mēns discendō alitur et cōgitandō*, C., *Off.*, I. 30, 105; *the human mind is nourished by learning and thinking*. *Plausum meō nōmine recitandō dedērunt*, (Cf. C., *Att.*, IV. 1, 6; *they clapped when my name was read*. *Exercendō cottidiē milite hostem opperiēbātur*, L., XXXIII. 3, 5; *drilling the soldiers daily he waited for the enemy*.

NOTES.—1. The Abl. with adjectives is post-Ciceronian: *digna stirps suscipiendō* (instead of *quae susciperet*; *patris imperiō*, TAC., *Ann.*, VIII. 14. So too with verbs: *continundō abstinit magistratū*, L., IX. 34, 2.

2. The Abl. after a comparative is cited only from C., *Off.*, I. 15, 47.

3. In post-Augustan Latin, and occasionally earlier, we find the Abl. of the Gerund paralleled by the Pr. participle: *Bocchus, seu reputandō* (= *reputāns* . . . *seu admonitus*, etc., S., *Jug.*, 103, 2.

#### Prepositions with the Gerund and Gerundive.

432. The Accusative of the Gerund and Gerundive follows the preposition *ad*, seldom *ante*, *circā*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, and *propter*. See 427.

*Nōlla rēs tantum ad dicendum prōficit quantum scriptiō*, C., *Br.* 24, 92;

*nothing is as profitable for speaking as writing.* Atticus philosophōrum praeceptis ad vitam agendam nōn ad ostentātiōnem utēbatur, Cf. NEP., XXV. 17, 3; Atticus made use of the precepts of philosophers for the conduct of life, not for display. Inter spoliandum corpus hostis exspirāvit, Cf. L., II. 20, 9; while in the act of stripping the body of the enemy he gave up the ghost.

REMARK.—Ad is very common; noteworthy is its use with verbs of Hindering (palūs Rōmānōs ad insequendum tardābat, CAES., B. G., VII. 26, 2); with substantives to give the End (for); with adjectives of Capacity and Adaptation (aptus, facilis, etc.). See 429, 2.

NOTES.—1. Ante is very rare (L., Praef., 6; V., G., III. 206). Circā and ergā are post-Augustan and very rare. In gives the End For Which, and is classical but not common. Inter is temporal, during, while, and is found rarely in early, more often in later, but not in classical prose. Ob is used first by CICERO (not by CAESAR), and is rare. Propter occurs first in VALERIUS MAXIMUS; super first in TACITUS.

2. On the Infinitive after a Preposition, see 425.

433. The Ablative of the Gerund and Gerundive takes the prepositions ab, dē, ex, often in, but seldom prō. Post-classic and rare are cum and super.

Prohibenda mǎximē est ira in pūniendō, C., Off., I. 25, 89; especially to be forbidden is anger in punishing. [Brūtus] in liberandā patriā (= dum liberat) est interfectus, C., Cat. M., 20, 75; Brutus was slain in the effort to free his country. Philosophī in iis libris ipsīs quōs scribunt dē contemnendā glōriā sua nōmina inscribunt, C., Tusc., I. 15, 34 (385, R. I). Ex discendō capiunt voluptātem, Cf. C., Fin., v. 18, 48; they receive pleasure from learning.

NOTES.—1. In with Abl. is sometimes almost equivalent to a Pr. participle: In circumeundō exercitū animadvertit, b. Afr., 82.

2. Sine is used once in VARRO, L. L., 6, 75, and in DONATUS (TER., And., 391).

3. Even when the word and not the action is meant, the Gerund is the rule: Discrepat ā timendō cōfidere, C., Tusc., III. 7, 14; the Inf. in VARRO, L. L., 6, 50.

## SUPINE.

434. The Supine is a verbal substantive, which appears only in the Accusative and Ablative cases.

### The Accusative Supine.

435. The Accusative Supine (Supine in -um) is used chiefly after verbs of Motion, to express Design.

Galliae lēgātī ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt, CAES., B. G., I. 30, 1; the commissioners of Gaul came to congratulate Caesar. Spectātum



veniunt; veniunt spectentur ut ipsae, *Ov., A. A., l. 99; they come to see the show; they come to be themselves a show.* (*Galli gallinācei*) cum sōle eunt cubitum, *PLIN., N. H., x. 24. 46; cocks go to roost at sunset.* Stultitia est vĕnātum dūcere invītās canēs, *PL., St., 139; 'tis foolishness to take unwilling dogs a-hunting.*

NOTES. 1. *Īre* and *venīre* are the most common verbs with the Supine, and they form many phrasological usages, as: *īre coctum, cubitum, dormitum, pāstum, supplicātum, sessum, salūtātum, etc.* Similarly *dare* is found in phrases with *nūptum, vĕnum, pessum.*

2. The Supine is very common in early Latin, less so in *CICERO*, comparatively rare in *CAESAR*, frequent again in *SALLUST* and *LIVY*. Later Latin, and especially the poets, show but few examples, as the final *Inf.* takes its place.

3. The Acc. Supine may take an object, but the construction is not very common: (*Hannibal*) *patriam dēfēsum* (more usual, *ad dēfendendam patriam*) *revocātus est*, *NEP., XXIII. 6. 1; Hannibal was recalled to defend his country.*

4. The Fut. *Inf.* passive is actually made up of the passive *Inf.* of *īre*, *to go*, *īrī* (*that a movement is made, from* *ītur*; 208, 2), and the Supine:

*Rumor venit datum īrī gladiātōrēs*, *TER., Her., 49; the rumour comes that gladiators (gladiatorial shows) are going to be given.*

The consciousness of this is lost, as is shown by the *Nom.* (528).

*Reus damnātum īrī vidēbātur*, *QUINT., IX. 2. 88; the accused seemed to be about to be condemned.*

### The Ablative Supine.

436. The Ablative Supine (Supine in *-ū*) is used chiefly with Adjectives, as the Ablative of the Point of View From Which (397). It never takes an object.

*Mīrābile dictū*, *wonderful (in the telling) to tell, visū, to behold.*

*Id dictū quam rē facilius est*, *L., XXI. 38. 4; that is easier in the saying than in the fact (easier said than done).*

NOTES. 1. *CICERO* and *LIVY* are the most extensive users of this Supine; *CAESAR* has but two forms: *factū* and *nātū*; *SALLUST* but three; *CICERO* uses twenty-four. In early Latin and in the poets the usage is uncommon; in later Latin it grows. Altogether there are over one hundred Supines, but only about twenty-five Supines occur in Abl. alone; the most common are *dictū, to tell, factū, to do, auditū, to hear, visū, to see, memorātū, relātū, trāctātū*; then, less often, *cōgnitū, to know, inventū, intellectū, scitū, adspectū.*

2. The adjectives generally denote Ease or Difficulty, Pleasure or Displeasure, Right or Wrong *fās* and *nefās*. These adjectives are commonly used with Dative, and a plausible theory views the Supine in *ū* as an original Dative (*uf*).

3. *Ad*, with the Gerundive, is often used instead: *Cibus facillimus ad concoquendum*, *C., Fin., II. 20. 64; food (that is) very easy to digest.*

The Infinitive, *facilis concoqui*, is poetical. Common is *facile concoquitur*.

Other equivalents are active Infinitive, a verbal substantive, a *Pf. Part. pass.* (with *opus*), or a relative clause (with *dignus*).

4. The use of the Abl. Supine with verbs is very rare.

(*Vilicus*) *primus cubitū surgat, postrēmus cubitum eat*, *CATO, Agr., §. 5; the steward must be the first to get out of bed, the last to go to bed.* *Obsōnātū redeō*, *PL., Men., 277; I come back from marketing* (imitated by *STATIUS*).

## PARTICIPLE.

**437.** The Participle may be used as a substantive, but even then generally retains something of its predicative nature.

*Nihil est māgnū somniantī*, C., *Div.*, II. 68, 141; *nothing is great to a dreamer (to a man, when he is dreaming)*. *Rēgia, crēde mihī, rēs est succurrere lāpsīs*, Ov., *Pont.*, II. 9, 11; *it is a kingly thing, believe me, (to run to catch those who have slipped,) to succour the fallen*.

REMARK.—The Attribute of the Participle, employed as a substantive, is generally in the adverbial form: *rēctē facta*, *right actions*; *facētē dictum*, *a witty remark*.

NOTES.—1. This use as a substantive is rare in classical prose, but more common in the poets and in post-classical prose. In the Pr. Part., principally *sapiēns*, *adulēscēns*, *amāns*; in the Pf. more often, but usually in the Plural; *doctī*, *the learned*, *victī*, *the conquered*. The first examples of Fut. Part. used as substantives are *nūntiātūrī* (CURT., VII. 4, 32), *peccātūrōs* (TAC., *Agr.*, 19).

2. The use of an attributive or predicative Pf. Part. with a substantive is a growth in Latin. Early Latin shows very few cases, and those mostly with *opus* and *ūsus*. CATO has *post dimissum bellum*, and this innovation is extended by VARRO, with *propter*. CICERO is cautious, employing the prepositions *ante*, *dē*, *in*, *post*, *praeter*, but SALUST goes much farther, as the strange sentence *inter haec parāta atque dēcrēta* (664, R. 2) indicates. LIVY and TACITUS are, however, characterised by these prepositional uses more than any other authors. The use of a Part. in the Nom. in this way is found first in LIVY.

**438.** The Participle, as an adjective, often modifies its verbal nature, so as to be characteristic, or descriptive.

(*Epaminōndās*) *erat temporibus sapienter ūtēns*, NEP., XV. 3, 1; *Epaminondas was a man who made (to make) wise use of opportunities (= is quī ūterētur)*. *Senectūs est operōsa et semper agēns aliquid et mōliēns*, Cf. C., *Cat. M.*, 8, 26; *old age is busy, and always doing something and working*.

REMARK.—Especial attention is called to the parallelism of the participle or adjective with the relative and Subjunctive:

*Rēs parva dictū, sed quae studiis in māgnū certāmen excēsserit*, L. XXXIV. 1; *a small thing to mention, but one which, by the excitement of the parties, terminated in a great contest*. *Mūnera nōn ad dēliciās muliebrēs quaesita nec quibus nova nūpta cōmātur*, TAC., *Germ.*, 18.

NOTE.—The Fut. Part. active is rarely used adjectively in classical Latin except the forms *futūrus*, *ventūrus*. The predicate use after verbs of Motion to express Purpose is found first in CICERO (*Verr.*, I. 21, 56), though very rarely, but becomes increasingly common from LIVY's time. LIVY is the first to use the Fut. Part. as an adjective clause, a usage which also becomes common later.

(*Maroboduus*) *misit lēgātōs ad Tiberium ōrātūrōs auxilia*, TAC., *Ann.*, II. 46; *Marbod sent commissioners to Tiberius, to beg for reinforcements*. *Servilius adest*

*dē tē sententiam lātūrus* (perhaps due to *est*), *C., Terr.*, I. 21, 56. *Rem ausus plūs fāmae habitūram* (*that was likely to have*) *quam fidēi*, *L., II.* 10, 11. (*Dictātor*) *ad hostem dūcit, nūllō locō, nisi quantum necessitās cōgeret, fortunāe sē commissūrus* (*with the intention of submitting*), *L., XXII.* 12, 2.

## ADVERB.

439. 1. The Predicate may be qualified by an Adverb.

2. Adverbs qualify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs, and sometimes substantives, when they express or imply verbal or adjective relations.

*Male vivit, he lives ill; bene est, it is well; ferē omnēs, almost all; nimis saepe, too often; admodum adulēscēns, a mere youth; lātē rēx* (*V., A., I.* 21), *wide-ruling; bis cōsul, twice consul; duo simul bella, two simultaneous wars.*

NOTES.—1. The form of the Adverb does not admit of any further inflection, and therefore the Adverb requires no rules of Syntax except as to its position.

2. With other adverbs and with adjectives, adverbs of *degree* only are allowable, to which must be reckoned *bene, egregiē*, and (later) *insigniter*. Poetical are such expressions as *turpiter āter, splendidē mendāx* (*II., A.P.* 3; *O., III.* 11, 35). *Male* as a negative is found with *sānus* only in *CICERO* (*Att.*, IX. 15, 5); other combinations are poetical, or post-classical.

3. The translation for *very* varies at different periods; *multum* is common in *PLAUTUS* and in *HORACE'S Satires and Epistles*, rare elsewhere; *valdē* is introduced by *CICERO*, but did not survive him, to any extent. *Sānē* is also frequent in *CICERO*, especially in the *Letters ad Atticum*. *CORNIFICIUS* affected *vehementer*, and so do colloquial authors, as *VITRUVIUS*; *fortiter* comes in later; *bene* is occasional in *PLAUTUS* and *TERENCE*, more common in *CICERO*; *oppidō* is characteristic of early Latin, and *LIVY* and the *Archaisms*; *admodum* is *Ciceronian*, but *adfātum* comes later and is rare. *Abundē* is rare before the time of *SALLUST*. *Nimum* (*nimiō*) belongs to early Latin, as do *impēnsē* and *impēdiō*. *Satis* is common in the classical period, and also *nimis*, but mainly with negatives.

4. The Adverb as an attribute of substantives is rare. *CICERO* shows *tum, saepe, quasi, tamquam*. *LIVY* uses more.

440. *Position of the Adverb*.—Adverbs are commonly put next to their verb, and before it when it ends the sentence, and immediately before their adjective or adverb.

*Inīustē facit, he acts unjustly. Admodum pulcher, handsome to a degree, very handsome. Valdē diligenter, very carefully.*

REMARK.—Exceptions occur chiefly in rhetorical passages, in which great stress is laid on the adverb, or in poetry:

[*Iram*] *bene Ennius initium dixit insāniae*, *C., Tusc.*, IV. 23, 52; *well did Ennius call anger the beginning of madness. Vixit dum vixit bene* *TER., Hec.*, 461; *he lived while he lived (and lived) well.*

One class of Adverbs demands special notice—the Negatives.

## Negative Adverbs.

**441.** There are two original negatives in Latin, **nē** and **haud** (**haut**, **hau**). From **nē** is derived **nōn** [**nē-oinom** (**ūnum**), *no-whit, not*]. **Nē** is used chiefly in compounds, or with the Imperative and Optative Subjunctive. The old use appears in **nē—quidem**. **Nōn** is used with the Indicative and Potential Subjunctive; **haud** negatives the single word, and is used mainly with adjectives and adverbs.

**442.** **Nōn** (the absolute *not*) is the regular Negative of the Indicative and of the Potential Subjunctive.

**Quem amat, amat; quem nōn amat, nōn amat**, PETR., 37; *whom she likes, she likes; whom she does not like, she does not like*.

**Nōn ausim, I should not venture.**

REMARKS.—1. **Nōn**, as the emphatic, specific negative, may negative anything. (See 270, R. 1.)

2. **Nōn** is the rule in antitheses: **Nōn est vivere sed valere vita**, MART., VI. 70, 15; *not living, but being well, is life*.

NOTES.—1. **Nōn** in combination with adjectives and adverbs, and rarely with substantives and verbs, takes the place of negative **in-** or **ne-**. **Nōn arbitrābātur quod efficeret aliquid posse esse nōn corpus** (ἀσώματον), C., AC., I. II, 39; *Gal. M.*, 14, 47.

2. Other negative expressions are **neutiquam**, *by no means*; **nihil**, *nothing* ("Adam, with such counsel *nothing* swayed"). On **nūllus**, see 317, 2, N. 2.

3. **Nec** = **nōn** is found in early Latin, here and there in VERG., LIVY, and TACITUS. In classical Latin it is retained in a few compounds, as: **necopināns**, **negōtium**, and in legal phraseology.

**443.** **Haud** is the negative of the single word, and in model prose is not common, being used chiefly with adjectives and adverbs: **haud quisquam**, *not any*; **haud māgnus**, *not great*; **haud male**, *not badly*.

NOTES.—1. **Hau** is found only before consonants, and belongs to early Latin and VERGIL. **Haut** (early) and **haud** are found indiscriminately before vowels.

2. **Haud** is very rarely or never found in Conditional, Concessive, Interrogative, Relative, and Infinitive sentences.

3. CAESAR uses **haud** but once, and then in the phrase **haud sciō an** (457, 2). CICERO says also **haud dubitō**, **haud ignōrō**, **haud errāverō**, and a few others; and combines it also with adjectives and adverbs, but not when they are compounded with negative particles, *i.e.*, he does not say **haud difficilis**, and the like.

4. **Haud** with verbs is very common in early Latin, and then again in LIVY and TACITUS. In antitheses it is not uncommon in comedy, but usually in the second member: **inceptiōst amentium haud amantium**, TER., *And.* 218; *the undertaking is one of lunatics, not lovers*.

5. A strengthened expression is **haud quāquam**.

**444.** 1. **Nē** is the Negative of the Imperative and of the Optative Subjunctive.

**Tū nē cēde malis**, V., *A.*, vi. 95 ; *yield not thou to misfortunes*. **Nē trānsieris Hiberum**, L., *XXI.* 44, 6 ; *do not cross the Ebro*. **Nē vivam, sī sciō**, C., *Att.*, iv. 16, 8 ; *may I cease to live (strike me dead), if I know*.

NOTES.—1. On the negative with the Imperative, see 270, N.

2. **Nē** as a general negative particle, = **nōn**, is found very rarely in early Latin, mostly with forms of **velle** (**nē parcant**, Pl., *Most.*, 124, is disputed). Classical Latin retains this only in **nō quidem**, in compound **nēquāquam**, and in a shortened form in **nefās, negō, neque, etc.**

2. **Nē** is continued by **nēve** or **neu**. See 260.

**Nē illam vëndās neu mē perdās hominem amantem**, Pl., *Ps.*, 322 ; *don't sell her, and don't ruin me, a fellow in love*.

**445.** *Subdivision of the Negative.*—A general negative may be subdivided by **neque**—**neque**, as well as by **aut**—**aut**, or strengthened by **nē**—**quidem**, *not even*.

**Nihil umquam neque insolēns neque glōriōsum ex ore [Timoleontis] prōcēssit**, NEP., *XX.* 4, 2 ; *nothing insolent or boastful ever came out of the mouth of Timoleon*. **Cōsciōrum nēmō aut latuit aut fūgit**, L., *XXIV.* 5, 14 ; *of the accomplices no one either hid or fled*. **Numquam [Scipiōnem] nō minimā quidem rē offendī**, C., *Lacl.*, 27, 103 ; *I never wounded Scipio's feelings, no, not even in the slightest matter*.

("I will give no thousand crowns neither."—SHAKESPEARE.)

NOTE. In the same way **negō**, *I say no*, is continued by **neque neque** (**nec nec**): **Negant nec virtūtēs nec vitia crēscere**, C., *Fin.*, III. 15, 48 ; *they deny that either virtues or vices increase (that there are any degrees in)*.

**446.** *Negative Combinations.*—In English, we say either *no one ever*, or, *never any one* ; *nothing ever*, or, *never anything* ; in Latin, the former turn is invariably used : **nēmō umquam**, *no one ever*.

**Verrēs nihil umquam fēcit sine aliquō quaestū**, C., *Verr.*, v. 5, 11 ; *Verrēs never did anything without some profit or other*.

NOTES. 1. *No one yet* is **nōndum quisquam** ; *no more, no longer*, is **iam nōn**.

2. The resolution of a negative **nōn ullus** for **nūllus**, **nōn umquam** for **numquam**, **nōn sciō** for **nesciō**, is poetical, except for purposes of emphasis, or when the first part of the resolved negative is combined with a coördinating conjunction (180) : **Nōn ūlla tibi facta est iniūria**, Cf. C., *De in Cere*, 18, 60.

3. **Nēmō** often equals **nē quis** : **Nēmō dē nobis ūnus excellat**, C., *Tusc.*, v. 36, 105.



**447.** *Negō* (*I say no, I deny*) is commonly used instead of *dicō nōn, I say—not*.

*Assem sēsē datūrum negat*, C., *Quinct.*, 5, 19; *he says that he will not give a copper. Vel ai vel negā*, ACCIUS, 125 (R.); *say yes or say no!*

REMARK.—The positive (*aiō, I say*) is sometimes to be supplied for a subsequent clause, as C., *Fin.*, I. 18, 61. The same thing happens with the other negatives, as *volō* from *nōlō*, *iubeō* from *vetō*, *sciō* from *nesciō*, *queō* from *nequeō*, *quisquam* from *nēmō*, *ut* from *nē*.

## POSITION OF THE NEGATIVE.

**448.** The Negative naturally belongs to the Predicate, and usually stands immediately before it, but may be placed before any emphatic word or combination of words.

*Potes nōn reverti*, SEN., *E.M.*, 49, 10; *possibly you may not return. (Nōn potes reverti, you cannot possibly return.) Saepe viri fallunt; tenerae nōn saepe puellae*, OV., *A.A.*, III. 31; *often do men deceive; soft-hearted maidens not often. Nōn omnis aetās, Lȳde, lūdō convenit*, PL., *B.*, 129; *not every age, (good) Lydus (Playfair), sorts with play. Nōn ego ventōsae plēbis suffrāgia vēnor*, H., *Ep.*, I. 19, 37; *I do not hunt the voices of the windy commons, no, not I.*

NOTES.—1. As the Copula *esse, to be*, is, strictly speaking, a predicate, the Negative generally precedes it, contrary to the English idiom, except in contrasts. The difference in position can often be brought out only by stress of voice: *fēlix nōn erat, he wasn't happy; nōn fēlix erat, he was NOT happy, he was FAR FROM happy.*

2. *Nē--quidem* straddles the emphatic word or emphatic group (445); but very rarely does the group consist of more than two words.

3. A negative with an Inf. is often transferred to the governing verb: *nōn putant lūgendum (esse) viris*, C., *Tusc.*, III. 28, 70; on *negō*, see 447.

**449.** Two negatives in the same sentence destroy one another, and make an affirmative, but see 445:

*Nōn negō, I do not deny (I admit).*

REMARKS.—1. *Nōn possum nōn, I cannot but (I must):*

*Quī mortem in malis pōnit nōn potest eam nōn timēre*, C., *Fin.*, III. 8, 29; *he who classes death among misfortunes cannot but (must) fear it.*

2. The double Negative is often stronger than the opposite Positive; this is a common form of the figure *Litotēs, understatement* (700).

*Nōn indoctus, highly educated; nōn sum nescius, I am well aware.*

*Nōn indecōrō pulvere sordidī*, H., *O.*, II. 1, 22; *swart (soiled) with (no dis)honourable dust. Nōn ignāra malī miseris succurrere discō*, V., *A.*, I. 630; *not unacquainted (= but too well acquainted) with misfortune, I learn to succour the wretched.*

3. It follows from R. 2 that **nec nōn** is not simply equivalent to **et**, and : **nec** belongs to the sentence, **nōn** to the particular word :

**Nec** hōc [Zēnō] **nōn** vidit, C., *Fin.*, IV. 22, 60; *nor did Zeno fail to see this*. **At** neque **nōn** (dī) diligunt nōs, C., *Div.*, II. 49, 102; *but neither* (is it true that) *the gods do not love us, etc.*

In the classical Latin this form of connection is used to connect clauses but not single words, and the words are regularly separated. **VARRO**, the poets, and later prose use **necnōn** like **et**, and connect with it also single ideas.

4. Of especial importance is the position of the Negative in the following combinations:

<i>Indefinite Affirmative.</i>		<i>General Affirmative.</i>	
<b>nōnnihil</b> ,	<i>somewhat ;</i>	<b>nihil nōn</b> ,	<i>everything ;</i>
<b>nōnnēmō</b> ,	<i>some one, some ;</i>	<b>nēmō nōn</b> ,	<i>everybody ;</i>
<b>nōnnūlli</b> ,	<i>some people ;</i>	<b>nūlli nōn</b> ,	<i>all ;</i>
<b>nōnnumquam</b> ,	<i>sometimes ;</i>	<b>numquam nōn</b> ,	<i>always ;</i>
<b>nōnnūsqum</b> ,	<i>somewhere ;</i>	<b>nūsqum nōn</b> ,	<i>everywhere.</i>

**In ipsā cūriā nōnnēmō** hostis est, C., *Mur.*, 39, 84; *in the senate-house itself there are enemies* (**nēmō nōn** hostis est, *everybody is an enemy*). **Nōn** est plācandī spēs mihi nūlla Deī, Ov., *Tr.*, v. 8, 22 (128); *I have some hope of appeasing God* (**nūlla spēs nōn** est, *I have every hope*). **Nēmō** **nōn** didicisse māvult quam discere, QUINT., III. I, 6; *everybody prefers having learned to learning*.

## INCOMPLETE SENTENCE.

### Interrogative Sentences.

450. An interrogative sentence is necessarily incomplete. The answer is the complement.

451. A question may relate :

(a) To the existence or the non-existence of the Predicate : Predicate Question.

**Vivitne pater ?** *Is my father alive ?*

(b) To some undetermined essential part of the sentence, such as Subject, Object, Adjective, Adverbial modifier : Nominal Question.

**Quis est ?** *Who is it ?* **Quid ais ?** *What do you say ?* **Qui hic mōs ?** *What sort of way is this ?* **Cūr nōn discēdis ?** *Why do you not depart ?*  
For a list of Interrogative Pronouns see 104.

REMARKS — 1. The second class requires no rules except as to mood (462).

2. The form of the question is often used to imply a negative opin-

ion on the part of the speaker: *Quid interest inter periūrum et mendācem?* C., *Rosc. Com.*, 16, 46; *what is the difference between a perjured man and a liar?* All questions of this kind are called *Rhetorical*.

**452.** 1. Interrogative sentences are divided into *simple* and *compound* (disjunctive). *Am I?* (simple); *Am I, or am I not?* (disjunctive).

NOTE.—Strictly speaking, only the simple interrogative sentence belongs to this section; but for the sake of completeness, the whole subject will be treated here.

2. Interrogative sentences are further divided into *direct* and *indirect*, or *independent* and *dependent*. *Am I?* (direct); *He asks whether I am* (indirect).

### DIRECT SIMPLE QUESTIONS.

**453.** Direct simple questions sometimes have no interrogative sign. Such questions are chiefly passionate in their character, and serve to express Astonishment, Blame, Disgust.

*Infelix est Fabricius quod rūs suum fodit?* SEN., *Dial.*, I. 3, 6; *Fabricius is unhappy because he digs his own field?* (Impossible!) *Heus, inquit, linguam vis meam praecludere?* PHAEDR., I. 23, 5; *Ho! ho! quoth he, you wish to shut my mouth, you do?* (You shall not.) *Tuom parasitum nōn nōvisti?* PL., *Men.*, 505; *you don't know your own parasite?* (Strange!) *Hunc tū vitæ splendōrem maculis adspergis istis?* C., *Plane.*, 12, 30; *you bespatter this splendid life with such blots as those?*

NOTES.—1. Questions of this kind are characteristic of the Comic Poets. In CICERO they are found especially in expressions of doubt, with *posse*, and with an emphatic personal pronoun.

2. Such a question may have the force of a command. So in the phrase *etiam tū tacēs?* *won't you keep quiet?* common in comedy (PL., *Trin.*, 514).

3. Noteworthy is the occasional usage of the question in place of a condition. *Amat? sapit*, PL., *Am.*, 995; *is he in love? he is sensible*. *Tristis es? indignor quod sum tibi causa dolōris*, Ov., *Tr.*, IV. 3, 33 (542). See 593, 4.

4. When several questions follow in immediate succession, only the first generally takes the Interrogative Pronoun, or *-ne*. Repeated questioning is passionate.

5. On *ut* in the exclamatory question, see 558.

**454.** *Interrogative Particles*.—*-Ne* (enclitic) is always appended to the emphatic word, and generally serves to denote a question, without indicating the expectation of the speaker.

*Omnisne pecūnia dissoluta est?* C., *Verr.*, III. 77, 180; *is ALL the money paid out?* (*Estne omnis pecūnia dissoluta?* *is all the money paid out?*)

REMARKS.—1. As the emphatic word usually begins the sentence,

so **-ne** is usually appended to the first word in the sentence. But exceptions are not uncommon.

2. **-Ne** is originally a negative. Questioning a negative leans to the affirmative; and **-ne** is not always strictly impartial.

NOTES.—1. **-Ne** sometimes cuts off a preceding **-s** (in which case it may shorten a preceding long vowel), and often drops its own **e**. **Viden? Seest? Tūn? You? Satin? For certain?** Also **scīn, ain, vīn, itan, etc.** This occurs especially in early Latin.

2. This **-ne** is not to be confounded with the asseverative **-ne**, which is found occasionally in **PLAUTUS** and **TERENCE**, **CATULLUS**, **HORACE** (**ō sērī studiōrum, quīne putētis, etc.** *II., S., l. 10, 21*, a much discussed passage), and later appended to personal, demonstrative, and relative pronouns.

3. In poetry **-ne** is sometimes appended to interrogative words, to heighten the effect: **utrumne** (*II., S., II. 3, 251*), **quōne** (*II., S., II. 3, 295*).

4. **-Ne** is often added to personal pronouns in indignant questions: **tūne ināne quicquam putēs esse?** *C., Ac., II. 40, 125*.

5. In early Latin **-ne** seems to be used sometimes with a force similar to that later exercised by **nōne**; but in most of the examples the expectation of an affirmative answer seems to be due rather to the context than to **ne**; see, however, *II. 2*.

#### 455. **Nōne** expects the answer *Yes*.

**Nōne meministi?** *C., Plū., II. 3, 10*; *do you not remember?* **Nōne is generōsissimus quī optimus?** *QUINT., V. II, 4*; *is he not the truest gentleman who is the best man?*

So the other negatives with **-ne**: **nēmōne, nihilne**, and the like.

NOTE. **Nōne** is denied for **PLAUTUS** but wrongly, though it occurs but rarely, and regularly before a vowel. It is also rare in **TERENCE**. In classical Latin it is frequent, but is never found in **CATULLUS**, **TIBULLUS**, and **SENECA RHETOR**.

#### 456. **Num** expects the answer *No*.

**Numquis est hic alius praeter mē atque tē?** **Nēmō est,** *Pl., Tr., 69*; *is anybody here besides you and me?* **No.** **Num tibi cum faucēs ūrit sitis, aurea quaeris pōcua?** *II., S., l. 2, 114*; *when thirst burns your throat for you, do you ask for golden cups?* [**No.**]

NOTE. **Numne** is found very rarely, perhaps only in *C., N.D., l. 31, 83*, and *Lacl., II. 26*. **Numnam** belongs to early Latin. In many cases in early Latin, **num** seems to introduce a simple question for information, without expecting a negative answer.

457. 1. **An** (*or*) belongs to the second part of a disjunctive question.

Sometimes, however, the first part of the disjunctive question is suppressed, or, rather, involved. The second alternative with **an** serves to urge the acceptance of the positive or negative proposition involved in the preceding statement. This abrupt form of question (*or, then*) is of frequent use in Remonstrance, Expostulation, Surprise, and Irony.

**Nōn manum abstinēs?** **An tibi iam māvis cerebrum dispergam hic?** *TER., Ad. 781*; *are you not going to keep your hands off? Or would*

*you rather have me scatter your brains over the place now ?* (*Vir cūstōdit absēns, my husband keeps guard, though absent. Is it not so ?*) **An nescīs longās rēgibus esse manūs ?** *Ov., Her., 16, 166 : or perhaps you do not know (you do not know, then) that kings have long hands (arms).*

NOTES.—1. This usage is found in early Latin, but is a characteristic of CĪCERO especially.

2. **An** is strengthened by **ne**. This is found frequently in early Latin, more rarely later. CĪCERO uses **anne** only in disjunctive questions, and HORACE, TIBULLUS, PROPERTIUS not at all.

3. In early Latin very frequently, less often in the poets ; occasionally in prose, beginning with LIVY, **an** is used as a simple interrogative ; so **nesciō an = nesciō num**. There seems to be good reason for believing that **an** was originally a simple interrogative particle, but became identified later with disjunctive questions.

2. Especially to be noted, in connection with **an**, are the phrases, **nesciō an** (first in CĪCERO, and not common), **haud sciō an** (this is the usual phrase : **haud sciam an** is rare), *I do not know but ; dubitō an, I doubt, I doubt but = I am inclined to think ; incertum an* (once in CĪCERO), and rarely **dubitārim** and **dubium an**, which give a modest affirmation ; very rarely a negation. Negative particles, added to these expressions, give a mild negation.

**Haud sciō an ita sit**, C., *Tusc.*, II. 17, 41 ; *I do not know but it is so. Haud sciō an nūlla (senectūs) beātior esse possit*, C., *Cat.M.*, 16, 56 ; *I do not know but it is impossible for any old age to be happier. Dubitō an [Thrasylbūlum] prīmum omnium pōnam*, NEP., VIII. 1, 1 ; *I doubt but I should (= I am inclined to think I should) put Thrasylbulus first of all.*

NOTE.—In early Latin these phrases are still dubitative. The affirmative force comes in first in CĪCERO, and seems to have been equivalent to **fōrsitan**, *perhaps*, with the Potential Subjunctive : **Fōrsitan et Priamī fuerint quae fāta requirās**, V., *A.*, II. 506 ; *perhaps you may ask what was the fate of Priam, too.*

## DIRECT DISJUNCTIVE QUESTIONS.

458. Direct Disjunctive Questions have the following forms :

### First Clause.

**utrum**, *whether*,

**-ne**,

—

### Second and Subsequent Clauses.

**an (anne)**, or

**an**,

**an (anne)**.

**Utrum nescīs quam altē ascenderīs, an prō nihilō id putās ?** (C., *Fam.*, x. 26, 3 ; *are you not aware how high you have mounted, or do you count that as nothing ?*) **Vōsne Lūcium Domitium an vōs Domitius dēseruit ?** CAES., *B.C.*, II. 32, 8 ; *have you deserted Lucius Domitius, or has Domitius deserted you ?* **Ēloquar an sileam ?** V., *A.*, III. 39 ; *shall I speak, or hold my peace ?* **Utrum hōc tū parum commeministī, an ego nōn satis intellēxī, an mūtāstī sententiam ?** C., *Att.*, IX. 2 ; *do you not remember this, or did I misunderstand you, or have you changed your view ?*



NOTES.—1. **Utrumne** **an** is found once in CICEO (*Inv.*, i. 31, 51), not in CAESAR or LIVY, occasionally elsewhere (*H. Epod.*, i. 7); **utrum ne an** is more common. **Ne an**, which is common in prose, is not found in CAT., TER., PROP., HOR., LUCAN.

2. **Ne** in the second member, with omitted particle in first member, occurs only in II., *Ep.*, i. 11, 3 (disputed), in the direct question, except in the combination **necne** (459).

3. **Ne-ne** is very rare; V., *A.*, ii. 738; XI. 126.

4. **Aut** (*or*), in questions, is not to be confounded with **an**. **Aut** gives another part of a simple question, or another form of it (*or, in other words*). **An** excludes, **aut** extends.

(**Voluptās**) **meliorēne efficit aut laudābiliōrem virum?** C., *Parad.*, i. 3, 15: *does pleasure make a better or more praiseworthy man?* (Answer: *neither*.) **Tū virum mē aut hominem dēputās adeō esse?** TER., *Hee.*, 524; *do you hold me to be your husband or even a man?*

459. In direct questions, *or not* is **annōn**, rarely **necne**; in indirect, **necne**, rarely **annōn**.

**Isne est quem quaerō, annōn?** TER., *Ph.*, 852; *is that the man I am looking for, or not?* **Sitque memor nostrī necne, referte mihi**, OV., *Tr.*, iv. 3, 10 (204, N. 7).

NOTES. 1. **Necne** is found in direct questions in CICEO, *Tusc.*, iii. 18, 41 (**sunt haec tua verba necne?**), *Flacc.*, 25, 59; and also LUCR., iii. 713. **Annōn** in indirect questions occurs in CICEO, *Inv.*, i. 50, 95; ii. 20, 60; *Cacl.*, 21, 52; *Balb.*, 8, 22, etc.

2. **Utrum** is sometimes used with the suppression of the second clause for *whether or no?* but not in early Latin. So C., *Flacc.*, 19, 45, etc.

## INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

460. Indirect questions have the same particles as the direct, with the following modifications.

### 1. Simple Questions.

(a) **Num** loses its negative force, and becomes simply *whether*. It decays in later Latin.

**Speculārī (iussērunt) num sollicitātī animī sociōrum essent**, L., *XLII.* 19, 8; *they ordered them to spy out whether the allies had been tampered with.*

(b) **Sī**, *if*, is used for *whether*, chiefly after verbs and sentences implying trial. Compare **Ō sī** (261).

**Temptāta rēs est sī primō impetū capī Ardea posset**, L., i. 57, 2; *an attempt was made (in case, in hopes that, to see) if Ardea could be taken by a dash (coup-de-main).* **Ībō, vīsam sī domī est** (467, S.), TER., *Heaut.*, 170; *I will go (to) see if he is at home.*

NOTES.—1. **An** is sometimes used for **num** and **ne**, but never in model prose.

**Cōsuluit deinde (Alexander) an tōtius orbis imperium fātis sibi dēstinārētur**, CURT., iv. 7, 26; *Alexander then asked the oracle whether the empire of the whole world was destined for him by the fates.*

2. **Nōnne** is cited only from CICEO and only after **quaerere** (*Ph.*, xii. 7, 15).

## 2. Disjunctive Questions.

In addition to the forms for Direct Questions (458), a form with **-ne** in the second clause only is found in the Indirect Question, but is never common; see 458, N. 2.

**Tarquinius Prisci Tarquiniū rēgis filius nepōsne fuerit parum liquet**, L., I. 46, 4; *whether Tarquin was the son or grandson of king Tarquin the Elder does not appear.*

NOTES.—1. The form **-ne** is not found in CAESAR or SALLUST.

2. The form **ne—ne** is poetical, except once in CAESAR (*B. G.*, VII. 141, 8).

3. **Utrum—ne—an** is rare but classical. **Utrumne an** begins with HORACE, is not found in LIVY, VELL., VAL. M., and both PLINYS. In TACITUS only in the *Dialogus*.

## SUMMARY OF DIRECT AND INDIRECT DISJUNCTIVE QUESTIONS.

## 461. Direct.

*Is the last syllable short or long ? Cf. C., Or., 64, 217.*

**Postrēma syllaba utrum brevis est an longa ?**  
**brevisne est an longa ?**

## Indirect.

*In a verse it makes no difference whether the last syllable be short or long :*

In versū nihil rēfert	{	utrum postrēma syllaba brevis sit an longa.
		postrēma syllaba brevisne sit an longa.
		postrēma syllaba brevis an longa sit (CICERO).
		postrēma syllaba brevis sit longane.

## MOODS IN INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

## 1. In Direct Questions.

**462.** The Mood of the question is the Mood of the expected or anticipated answer.

**463.** Indicative questions expect an Indicative answer, when the question is *genuine*.

A. **Quis homō est ?** B. **Ego sum**, TER., *And.*, 965; *who is that ? It is I.*

A. **Vivitne (pater) ?** B. **Vivom liquimus**, PL., *Capt.*, 282; *is his father living ? We left him alive.*

**464.** Indicative questions anticipate an Indicative answer in the negative when the question is *rhetorical*.

**Quis nōn paupertātem extimēscit ?** C., *Tusc.*, v. 31, 89; *who does not dread poverty ?*

REMARK.—**Nōnne** and **num** in the direct question are often rhetorical (see *Pl., Am.*, 530; *C., Dic.*, I. 14. 24). With **nōnne** a negative answer is anticipated to a negative, hence the affirmative character. Compare further, 451, R. 2.

465. Subjunctive questions which expect Imperative answers are put chiefly in the First Person, when the question is *deliberative*.

A. Abeam? B. Abi, *Pl., Merc.*, 749; *shall I go away? Go.*

A. Quid nunc faciam? B. Tē suspenditō, *Pl., Ps.*, 1229; *what shall I do now? Hang yourself.*

REMARK.—So in the representative of the First Person in dependent discourse (265).

466. Subjunctive questions anticipate a potential answer in the negative, when the question is *rhetorical*.

Quis hōc crēdat? *who would believe this?* [No one would believe this.] Quid faceret aliud? *what else was he to do?* [Nothing.]

Quis tulerit Gracchōs dē sēditionē querentēs? *Juv., II. 24* (259).

REMARK.—On the Exclamatory Question see 534, 558.

## 2. In Indirect Questions.

467. The Dependent Interrogative is always in the Subjunctive.

The Subjunctive may represent the Indicative.

[Cōsiderābimus] quid fēcerit (*Indic. fēcit*), quid faciat (*Indic. facit*), quid factūrus sit (*Indic. faciet or factūrus est*), (*Cf. C., Inc.*, I. 25, 36; *we will consider what he has done, what he is doing, what he is going to do (will do)*). (Epaminōndās) quaesivīt salvusne esset clipeus, *C., Pin.*, II. 30, 97; *Epaminondas asked whether his shield was safe.* (Salvusne est?)

The Subjunctive may be original. See 265.

Ipse docet quid agam: fās est et ab hoste docērī, *Ov., M.*, IV. 428 (219); (*Quid agam, what I am to do; not what I am doing*). Quaerō ā tē cūr C. Cornēlium nōn dēfenderem, *C., Val.*, 2; 5; *I inquire of you why I was not to defend C. Cornelius.* (Cūr nōn dēfenderem? *why was I not to defend?*)

REMARKS.—1. Nesciō quis, nesciō quid, nesciō quī, nesciō quod, *I know not who, what, which*, may be used exactly as indefinite pronouns, and then have no effect on the construction. This usage is found at all periods.

Nesciō quid māius nāscitur Īliadē, *Prop., II. (III.) 32* (34), 66; *something, I know not what, is coming to the birth, greater than the Iliad.*

2. The Relative has the same form as the Interrogative *quis* ? except in the Nom. Sing.; hence the importance of distinguishing between them in dependent sentences. The interrogative depends on the leading verb, the relative belongs to the antecedent. (611, R. 2.)

*Interrogative* : *dīc quid rogem*, tell me what it is I am asking.

*Relative* : *dīc quod rogō*, TER., *And.*, 764 ; tell me that which I am asking (the answer to my question).

The relative is not unfrequently used where we should expect the interrogative, especially when the facts of the case are to be emphasised :

*Dicam quod sentiō*, C., *Or.*, I. 44, 195 ; I will tell you my real opinion.

Incorporated relatives are not to be confounded with interrogatives :

*Patefaciō vōbīs quās istī penitus abstrūsās insidiās* (= *insidiās quās*) *sē posuisse arbitrantur*, C., *Agr.*, II. 18, 49 ; I am exposing to your view the schemes which those people fancy they have laid in profound secrecy.

NOTE.—In the early Latin of Comedy the leading verb is very frequently disconnected from the interrogative, which consequently appears as an independent sentence with the Indicative. This is most common after *dīc*, *respondē*, *loquere*, and kindred Imperatives ; *vidē* (PLAUTUS also *circumspice*, *respice*) ; *tē rogō*, *interrogō*, *quaerō*, and similar phrases ; *audire*, *vidēre*, *etc.*, *scīn* ; relative words, *ut*, *quōmodō*, *etc.*, where the modal and not interrogative force is prominent. Classical prose has given up all these usages. A few cases in CICERO are contested or differently explained. In poetry and later prose the examples are found only here and there.

*Dīc, quid est* ? PL., *Men.*, 397 ; tell me, what is it ? (*Dīc quid sit*, tell me what it is.) *Quīn tū ūnō verbō dīc : quid est quod mē velis* ? TER., *And.*, 45 ; won't you tell me in one word : What is it you want of me ? *Dīc mihi quid fecī nisi nōn sapienter amāvī*, OV., *Her.*, II. 27 ; tell me what have I done, save that I have loved unwisely.

So also, *nesciō quōmodō*, I know not how = *strangely* ; and *mīrum quantum*, it (is) *marvellous how much* = *wonderfully*, are used as adverbs :

*Mīrum quantum prōfuit ad concordiam*, L., II. 1, 11 ; it served wonderfully to promote harmony. *Nesciō quō pactō vel magis hominēs iuvat glōria lāta quam māgna*, PLIN., *Ep.*, IV. 12, 7 ; somehow or other, people are even more charmed to have a widespread reputation than a grand one.

Early Latin shows also *perquam*, *admodum quam*, *nimis quam*, *incrēdibile quantum* ; CICERO *mīrum* (*mīrē*) *quam*, *nīmium quantum*, *sānē quam*, *valdē quam* ; CAESAR none of these ; SALLUST *immāne quantum* ; LIVY adds *oppidō quantum* ; PLINY MAL. *immēsum*, *infinitum quantum* ; FLORUS *plūrimum quantum*. The position excludes a conscious ellipsis of the Subjunctive.

## PECULIARITIES OF INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

468. The subject of the dependent clause is often treated as the object of the leading clause by Anticipation (*Prolēpsis*).

*Nōstī Mārcellum quam tardus sit*, CAELIUS (C., *Fam.*, VIII. 10, 3) ; you know Marcellus, what a slow creature he is.

NOTE.—This usage is very common in Comedy, and belongs to conversational style in general.

**469.** Contrary to our idiom, the interrogative is often used in participial clauses. In English, the participle and verb change places, and a Causal sentence becomes Final or Consecutive.

*Quam ūtilitatem petentēs scire cupimus illa quae occulta nobis sunt?* C., *Fin.*, III. 11, 37; *what advantage do we seek when we desire to know those things which are hidden from us?* [Solōn Pisistratō tyrannō] *quaerenti quā tandem rē frētus sibi tam audāciter resisteret, respondisse dicitur senectūte*, C., *Cat. M.*, 20, 72; *Solon, to Pisistratus the usurper, asking him (= when Pisistratus the usurper asked him) on what thing relying (= on what he relied that) he resisted him so boldly, is said to have answered "old age."*

NOTE.—The Abl. Abs. with the interrogative is rare. C., *Verr.*, III. 80, 185.

**470.** Final sentences (sentences of Design) are used in questions more freely than in English.

*Sessum it praetor. Quid ut iudicetur?* C., *N. D.*, III. 30, 74; *the judge is going to take his seat. What is to be adjudged? (To adjudge what?)*

REMARK.—The Latin language goes further than the English in combining interrogative words in the same clause; thus two interrogatives are not uncommon:

*Cōsiderā quis quem fraudāsse dicātur*, C., *Rosc. Com.*, 7, 21.

#### Yes and No.

##### 471. (a) *Yes* is represented :

1. By *sānē*, (literally) *soundly*, *sānē quidem*, *yes indeed*, *etiam*, *even* (so), *vērō* (rarely *vērūm*), *of a truth*, *ita*, *so*, *omninō*, *by all means*, *certē*, *surely*, *certō*, *for certain*, *admodum*, *to a degree*, etc.

*Aut etiam aut nōn respondere [potest]*, C., *Ac.*, II. 32, 104; *he can answer either yes or no.*

2. By *cēseō*, *I think so*; *scilicet*, *to be sure*.

*Quid si etiam occentem hymenaeum?* *Cēseō*, Pl., *Cas.*, 806; *what if I should also sing a marriage-song? I think you had better.*

3. By repeating the emphatic word either with or without the confirmatory particles, *vērō* (principally with pronouns), *sānē*, *prōraus*, etc.

*Estisne?* *Sumus*, *are you?* *We are.* *Dāsne?* *Dō sānē*, C., *Lag.*, I. 7, 21; *do you grant?* *I do indeed.*

##### (b) *No* is represented :

1. By *nōn*, *nōn vērō*, *nōn ita*, *minimē*, *by no means*, *nihil*, *nothing*, *minimē vērō*, *nihil sānē*, *nihil minus*.

2. By repeating the emphatic word with the negative :



**Nōn irāta es ? Nōn sum irāta**, PL., *Cas.*, 1007 ; *you are not angry ? I am not.*

(c) **YEA** or **NAY**.—**Īmmō** conveys a correction, and either removes a doubt or heightens a previous statement: *yes indeed, nay rather.*

**Ecquid placeant (aedēs) mē rogās ? Īmmō perplacent**, PL., *Most.*, 907 ; *do I like the house, you ask me ? Yes indeed, very much.* **Causa igitur nōn bona est ? Īmmō optima**, C., *Att.*, IX. 7, 4 ; *the cause, then, is a bad one ? Nay, it is an excellent one.*

REMARK.—*Yes, for*, and *no, for*, are often expressed simply by **nam** and **enim**: **Tum Antōnius: Herī enim, inquit, hōc mihī prōposueram**, C., *Or.*, II. 10, 40 ; *then quoth Antony: Yes, for I had proposed this to myself yesterday.*

## SYNTAX OF THE COMPOUND SENTENCE.

**472.** 1. A compound sentence is one in which the necessary parts of the sentence occur more than once ; one which consists of two or more clauses.

2. Coördination (**Parataxis**) is that arrangement of the sentence according to which the different clauses are merely placed side by side.

3. Subordination (**Hypotaxis**) is that arrangement of the sentence according to which one clause depends on the other.

*He became poor and we became rich* ; the second clause is a coördinate sentence.

*He became poor that we might be rich* ; the second clause is a subordinate sentence.

4. The sentence which is modified is called the Principal Clause, that which modifies is called the Subordinate Clause.

*“ He became poor ”* is the Principal Clause, *“ that we might be rich ”* is the Subordinate Clause.

REMARK.—Logical dependence and grammatical dependence are not to be confounded. In the conditional sentence, **vīvam sī vīvet**, *let me live if she lives*, my living depends on her living ; yet **“ vīvam ”** is the principal, **“ sī vīvet ”** the subordinate clause. It is the dependence of the introductory particle that determines the grammatical relation.

## COÖRDINATION.

**473.** Coördinate sentences are divided into various classes, according to the particles by which the separate clauses are bound together.

REMARK.—Coördinate sentences often dispense with conjunctions (*Asyndeton*). Then the connection must determine the character.

### Copulative Sentences.

474. The following particles are called Copulative Conjunctions : **et**, **-que**, **atque** (**âc**), **etiam**, **quoque**.

NOTE.—The Copulative Conjunctions are often omitted, in climax, in enumerations in contrasts, in standing formulas, particularly in dating by the consuls of a year, if the *praenômina* are added ; and finally, in summing up previous enumerations by such words as **alii**, **ceteri**, **cuncti**, **multi**, **omnès**, **reliqui**.

475. **Et** is simply *and*, the most common and general particle of connection, and combines likes and unlikes.

**Panem et aquam nâtura dêsiderat**, *SEN., E. M.*, 25, 1 ; *bread and water* (is what) *nature calls for*. **Probitâs laudâtur et alget**, *JRV.*, 1. 74 ; *honesty is bepraised and—freezes*.

NOTES.—1. We find sometimes two clauses connected by **et** where we should expect **et tamen**. This usage is characteristic of *TACITUS*, but is found all through the language. **Fieri potest, ut rectè quis sentiat et id, quod sentit, politè êloqui nôn possit**, *C., Tusc.*, 1. 3, 6.

2. **Et** sometimes introduces a conclusion to a condition expressed in the Imperative, but only once in early Latin, never in classical prose. **Dic quibus in terris ; et eris mihi magnus Apollô**, *V., Ec.*, III. 104.

3. **Et**, instead of a temporal conjunction, begins with *CAESAR* (*cf. B. G.*, 1. 37, 1) and *SALLUST* (*Jug.*, 97, 4) ; it is never common.

4. On **neque ullus** for **et nullus** and the like, see 480. On **et** after words indicating Likeness, see 643. On **et** for **etiam**, see 478, n. 2.

476. **-Que** (enclitic) unites things that belong closely to one another. The second member serves to *complete* or *extend* the first.

**Senâtus populusque Rômânus**, *C., Plane.*, 37, 90 ; *the Senate and people of Rome*. **Ibi mortuus sepultusque Alexander**, *L., XXXVI.* 20, 5 ; *there Alexander died and was buried*. [**Sôl**] **oriêns et occidêns diem noctemque cônficit**, *C., N. D.*, II. 40, 102 ; *the sun by its rising and setting makes day and night*.

NOTES.—1. **Que** was very common in early Latin, especially in legal phraseology, where it was always retained.

2. **Que -que -que** is ante-classical and poetic.

3. **Que** is always added to the first word in the clause it introduces, in *PLAUTUS*, as well as in classical prose ; but the Augustan poets are free in their position, for metrical reasons. As regards prepositions, **que** is never appended to **ob** and **sub**, rarely to **â** and **ad**, but frequently to other monosyllabic prepositions ; it is always appended to dissyllabic prepositions in **-â**, and often to other dissyllabic prepositions.

4. On **que** for **quoque** see 479, n. 2.

5. Combinations :

(a) **et et** ;

(b) **que et** ; rare in early Latin, never in *CICERO*, *CAESAR* ; begins with *SALLUST*.

SALLUST and TACITUS always add the **que** to the pronoun, LIVY and later prose writers to the substantive.

(c) **et—que**; rare, and beginning with ENNIUS.

(d) **que—que** begins with PLAUTUS, ENNIUS. CICERO has it but once (**noctēsque diēsque**, *Fin.*, I. 16, 51); it enters prose with SALLUST, and poets are fond of it.

**Et dominō satis et nimium fūrīque lupōque**, TIB., IV. 1, 187; *enough for owner, and too much for thief and wolf*.

**477. Atque** (compounded of **ad** and **-que**) adds a more important to a less important member. But the second member often owes its importance to the necessity of having the complement (**-que**).

**Āc** (a shorter form, which does not stand before a vowel or **h**) is fainter than **atque**, and almost equivalent to **et**.

**Intrā moenia atque in sinū urbis sunt hostēs**, S., C., 52, 35; *within the walls, ay, and in the heart of the city, are the enemies*. **A. Servos? Ego?**  
**B. Atque meus**, PL., *Cas.*, 735; *a slave? I? And mine to boot*.

NOTES.—1. The confirmative force of **atque**, as in the second example, is found especially in PLAUTUS, occasionally later.

2. **Atque** adds a climax, and then is often strengthened by **ēcastor**, **profectō**, **vērō**, *etc.*, PL., *B.*, 86; C., *Tusc.*, I. 20, 46.

3. In comedy, **atque** has sometimes demonstrative force: **atque eccum**, PL., *St.*, 577.

4. Occasionally in CICERO, then in the Augustan poets, LIVY and later prose writers, notably TACITUS, **atque** or **āc** is often used to connect the parts of a clause in which **et** or **que** (sometimes both) has been already employed:

**Et potentēs sequitur invidia et humilēs abiectōsque contemptus et turpēs āc nocentēs odium**, QUINT., IV. 1, 14; *the powerful are followed by envy; the low and grovelling, by contempt; the base and hurtful, by hatred*.

5. **Atque—atque** is found occasionally in CATO, CATULLUS, CICERO, and VERGIL. **Que—atque** begins in poetry with VERGIL, in prose with LIVY, and is very rare.

6. **Atque**, introducing a principal clause after a temporal conjunction, belongs exclusively to PLAUTUS: **Dum circumspectō mē, atque ego lebum cōspicor**, *B.*, 279. Also *Ep.*, 217.

7. **Atque** is used before consonants, as well as **āc**, to connect single notions: when sentences or clauses are to be connected, **āc** only is allowable; either **atque** or **āc** with expressions of Likeness.—STAMM.

8. On **atque**, after words indicating Likeness, see 643. **Atque** follows a comparative only after a negative in early and classical Latin. HORACE is first to use it after a positive.

9. Phraseological is **alius atque alius**, *one or another*, found first in LIVY, and rare.

**478. Etiam**, *even (now), yet, still*, exaggerates (heightens), and generally precedes the word to which it belongs.

**Nōbis rēs familiāris etiam ad necessariā deest**, *Cf. S., C.*, 20, 11; *we lack means even for the necessities of life*. **Ad Appī Claudi senectūtem accēdēbat etiam ut caecus esset**, C., *Cat. M.*, 6, 16 (553, 4).

NOTES.—1. **Etiam** as a temporal adverb refers to the Past or Present, and means *still*; it is sometimes strengthened by **tum** (*tunc*) or **num** (*nunc*). But beginning with

LIVY. *adhūc*, which properly refers only to the Present, is extended to the Past and used like *etiam* (*tum*).

*Nōn satis mē pernōstī etiam quālis sim*, TER., *And.*, 503; *you still do not know well enough* (= little know) *what manner of person I am*. *Cum iste* (i.e., *Polemar-chus* *etiam cubāret, in cubiculum intrōductus est*, C., *Verr.*, III. 23, 56; *while the defendant (Polemararchus) was still in bed, he was introduced into the bedroom*.

2. Instead of *etiam*, *et* is occasional in PLAUTUS, in a change of person. CICERO uses it also after an adversative conjunction, as *vērūm et*; also after *nam* and *simul*; more often when a pronoun follows, as *et ille, et ipse*. CAESAR never uses it so, SALLUST rarely, but it becomes common from LIVY on.

3. Phraseological is *etiam atque etiam*, *time and again*. On *etiam* for *yes*, see 471, 1.

**479. Quoque, so also, complements (compare que) and always follows the words to which it belongs.**

*Cum patrī (Timothei) populus statuam posuisset, filiō quoque dedit*, (Cf. *NER.*, III. 2, 3; *the people, having erected a statue in honour of the father of Timotheus, gave one to the son also* (likewise).

REMARK.—The difference between *etiam* and *quoque* is not to be insisted on too rigidly:

*Grande et cōspicuum nostrō quoque tempore mōnstrum*, JUV., IV. 115; *a huge and conspicuous prodigy, even in our day*.

NOTES. 1. In ante-classical and post-classical Latin the double forms *etiam* — *quoque, etiam quoque*, are sometimes found, and in classical Latin also *quoque etiam* occasionally: *nunc vērō meā quoque etiam causā rogō*, C., *Or.*, I. 35, 164.

2. *Que* in the sense of *quoque* is rare (compare *mēque*, CAT., III. 3; *me too*), and is found chiefly in the post-Augustan *hodiōque, to-day also*.

**480. Copulation by means of the Negative.**—Instead of *et* and the negative, *neque* (*nec*) and the positive is the rule in Latin.

*Opiniōnibus vulgī rapimur in errōrem nec vērā cernimus*, C., *Leg.*, II. 17, 43; *by the prejudices of the rabble we are hurried into error, and do not distinguish the truth*. (Caesar) *properāns noctem diē cōiūnxerat neque iter intermiserat*, CAES., *B.C.*, III. 13, 2; *Caesar in his haste had joined night with day and had not broken his march*.

REMARKS.—1. *Et—nōn, and—not*, is used when the negation is confined to a single word, or is otherwise emphatic; but *neque* is found occasionally here, even in CICERO (*Off.*, III. 10, 41).

*Et militāvi nōn sine glōriā*, H., *O.*, III. 26, 2; *and I have been a soldier not without glory*.

On *nec nōn*, the opposite of *et nōn*, see 449, R. 3.

2. In combination with the negative we have the following

Paradigms: <i>And no one,</i>	<i>neque quisquam,</i>	<i>nor any one.</i>
<i>And no,</i>	<i>neque ullus,</i>	<i>nor any.</i>
<i>And nothing,</i>	<i>neque quidquam,</i>	<i>nor anything.</i>
<i>And never,</i>	<i>neque umquam,</i>	<i>nor ever.</i>

**Neque amet quemquam nec amētur ab ullō**, JUV., XII. 130 ; *may he love no one, and be loved by none.*

3. **Nec** is often nearly equivalent to **nec tamen**, and yet not :

**Extrā invidiam nec extrā glōriam erat**, TAC., Agr., 8, 3 ; *he was beyond the reach of envy, and yet not beyond the reach of glory.* (Cf. TER., Eun., 249 ; C., Tusc., II., 25, 60.

NOTES.—1. **Neque** = **nē quidem**, is ante-classical and post-classical : **nec nunc, cum mē vocat ūltrō, accēdam** ? II., S., II. 3, 262 (the only case in HORACE).

2. CAESAR, LUCRETIVUS, VERGIL, and PROPERTIUS use **neque** regularly before vowels.

3. Combinations :

(a) **neque—neque ; nec—nec ; neque—nec ; nec—neque.** Sometimes the first **neque** has the force of *and neither* ; but this is limited in prose to CAESAR, SALLUST, and LIVY ; in poetry to CATULLUS and PROPERTIUS.

(b) **neque—et ; neque—que ; neque—āc.** Of these **neque—et** is rare in early Latin, but more common in CICERO and later ; **neque que** is rare, and found first in CICERO ; **neque—atque (āc)** is very rare, and begins in TACITUS.

(c) **et—neque** is found first in CICERO, who is fond of it, but it fades out after him.

4. **Neque** is usually used for **nōn**, when followed by the strengthening words **enim, tamen, vērō**, etc.

481. 1. *Insertion and Omission of Copulatives.*—When **multus, much, many**, is followed by another attribute, the two are often combined by copulative particles : *many renowned deeds, multa et praeclāra facinora ; many good qualities, multae bonaeque artēs.*

2. Several subjects or objects, standing in the same relations, either take **et** throughout or omit it throughout. The omission of it is common in emphatic enumeration.

**Phrygēs et Pisidae et Cilicēs**, C., Div., I. 41, 92 ; or, **Phrygēs, Pisidae, Cilicēs, Phrygians, Pisidians, and Cilicians.**

NOTE.—**Et** before the third member of a series is rare, but occurs here and there at all periods ; in CICERO it usually draws especial attention to the last member. **Atque (āc)** is used thus a little more frequently (**mōrēs institūta atque vīta**, C., Fam., XV. 4, 14), and **que** is not uncommon : **aegritūdīnēs, irae libīdīnēsque**, C., Tusc., I. 33, 80.

3. **Et** is further omitted in *climaxes*, in *antitheses*, in *phrases*, and in *formulae*.

**Virī nōn [est] dēbilitārī dolōre, frangī, succumbere**, C., Fin., II. 29, 95 ; *it is unmanly to allow one's self to be disabled (unnerved) by grief, to be broken-spirited, to succumb.* **Difficilis facilis, iūcundus acerbus, es idem**, MART., XII. 47, 1 (310).

**Patrēs Cōnscrip̄tī**, *Fathers (and) Conscrip̄t (Senators).*

**Iūpiter Optimus Māximus**, *Father Jove, supremely good (and) great.*



## Other Particles Employed.

482. Other particles are sometimes employed instead of the copulative in the same general sense.

1. Temporal : **tum**—**tum**, *then*—*then* ; **aliās**—**aliās**, *at one time*—*at another* ; **iam**—**iam**, **nunc**—**nunc**, **modo**—**modo**, *now*—*now* ; **simul**—**simul**, *at the same time*.

**Tum** **Graecē**—**tum** **Latinē**, *partly in Greek, partly in Latin*. **Horātius Cocles nunc singulōs prōvocābat, nunc increpābat omnēs**, (*Cf. L., II. 10, 8 ; Horatius Cocles now challenged them singly, now taunted them all*). **Modo hūc, modo illūc**, (*C., Att., XIII. 25, 3 ; now hither, now thither (hither and thither)*). **Simul spernēbant, simul metuēbant**, *they despised and feared at the same time (they at once despised and feared)*.

NOTES. 1. Of these **tum** **tum** is not ante-classical, **nunc** **nunc** is found first in **Lucr.**, and is introduced into prose by **Livy** ; **simul** **simul** is found first in **Caesar**, but not in **Cicero** ; **iam** **iam** begins with **Vergil** and **Livy**. **Aliquandō ali-quandō, quandōque quandōque**, are post-Augustan ; **interdum interdum** is rare, but occurs in **Cicero**.

2. The combinations vary in many ways. Ciceronian are **tum**—**aliās** ; **aliās**—**plērumque** ; **interdum** **aliās** ; **modo** **tum** ; **modo** **vicissim** ; most of them found but once. Some fifteen other combinations are post-Ciceronian.

3. On **cum**—**tum**, see 588.

2. Local : In **Cicero** only **aliō**—**aliō** ; **hinc**—**illinc**. Others are : **hic**—**illuc** (first in **Vergil**) ; **hinc**—**hinc** (**Vergil**, **Livy**) ; **hinc**—**inde** (**Tacitus**) ; **illinc**—**hinc** (**Livy**) ; **inde**—**hinc** (**Tacitus**) ; **alibi**—**alibi** (**Livy**) ; **aliunde**—**aliunde** (**Pliny**).

3. Modal : **aliter**—**aliter** ; **quā**—**quā**, rare, and lacking in many authors (*e.g.*, **Caesar**, **Sallust**). In **Cicero** only four times, and confined to the *Letters* ; **pariter**—**pariter** is poetical and post-classical ; **aequē**—**aequē** is found once in **Horace** and once in **Tacitus**.

4. Comparative : **ut**—**ita**, *as*—*so* :

**Dolābellam ut Tarsēnsēs ita Lāodicēni ultro arcessiērunt**, (*C., Flam., XII. 13, 4 ; as the people of Tarsus so the people of Laodicea (= both the people of Tarsus and those of Laodicea) sent for Dolabella of their own accord*).

Often, however, the actions compared are adversative ; and **ut** may be loosely translated *although, while*.

**Haec omnia ut invītis ita nōn adversantibus patriciis trānsācta**, (*L., III. 55, 15 ; all this was done, the patricians, though unwilling, yet not opposing (= against the wishes, but without any opposition on the part of the patricians)*).

NOTE. There are also many other similar combinations, as : **quemadmodum**—**sic** ; **ut** **sic** ; **tamquam** **sic**, *&c.* The adversative use of **ut**—**ita** is rare in the classical period, but extends later.

5. Adversative : *nōn modo, nōn solum, nōn tantum, not only* ; *sed, sed etiam, sed—quoque, vērū etiam, but even, but also* :

*Urbēs maritimae nōn solum multis periculis oppositae [sunt] sed etiam caecis*, C., *Rep.*, II. 3, 5 : *cities on the seaboard are liable not only to many dangers, but even (also) to hidden (ones)*. [*Nōn*] *docēri tantum sed etiam dēlectārī volunt*, QUINT., IV. I, 57 ; *they wish not merely to be taught, but to be tickled to boot*.

In the negative form, *nōn modo nōn, not only not* ; *sed nē—quidem, but not even* ; *sed vix, but hardly*.

*Ego nōn modo tibi nōn irāscor, sed nē reprehendō quidem factum tuum*, C., *Sull.*, 18, 50 ; *I not only am not angry with you, but I do not even find fault with your action*.

REMARKS.—1. Instead of *nōn modo (solum) nōn—sed nē—quidem*, the latter *nōn* is generally omitted, when the two negative clauses *have a verb in common*, the negative of the first clause being supplied by the second ; otherwise both negatives are expressed.

*Pisōne cōsule senātui nōn solum iuvāre rem publicam sed nē lūgēre quidem licēbat*, Cf. C., *Pis.* 10, 23 ; *when Piso was consul, it was not only not left free for the senate (= the senate was not only not free) to help the commonwealth, but not even to mourn (for her)*.

2. *Nēdum*, *not (to speak of) yet, much less*, is also used, either with or without a verb in the Subjunctive ; it is found first and only once in TERENCE, never in CAESAR and SALLUST, in CICERO only after negative sentences ; from LIVY on it is used after affirmative clauses as well.

*Satrapa numquam sufferre eiūs sūptūs queat, nēdum tū possīs*, TER., *Heaut.*, 454 ; *a nabob could never stand that girl's expenditures, much less could you*.

NOTES.—1. *Nōn tantum* is never found in early Latin, CAESAR and SALLUST, rarely in CICERO. *Sed—quoque* is found first in CICERO ; so, too, *sed* simply, but rarely. LIVY is especially free in his use of *sed*. *Vērū*, in the second member, is not ante-classical nor Tacitean. *Nōn* alone in the first member is rare, but Ciceronian, it is usually followed by *sed* only ; occasionally by *sed etiam*. *Sed* is sometimes omitted from LIVY on. Cf. L., XXVIII. 39, 11 ; TAC., *Ann.*, III. 19, 2, etc.

2. *Sed et*, for *sed etiam*, belongs to post-Augustan Latin.

## Adversative Sentences.

483. The Adversative particles are : *autem, sed, vērū, vērō, at, atquē, tamen, cēterum*. Of these only *sed* and *tamen* are really adversative.

NOTE.—The Adversative particles are often omitted : as when an affirmative is followed by a negative, or the reverse, or in other contrasts.

484. *Autem* (post-positive) is the weakest form of *but*, and

indicates a *difference* from the foregoing, a *contrast* rather than a *contradiction*. It serves as a particle of *transition* and *explanation* (= *moreover*, *furthermore*, *now*), and of *resumption* (= *to come back*), and is often used in syllogisms.

**Modo accēdēns, tum autem recēdēns,** C., *N.D.*, II. 40. 102; *now approaching, then again receding*. **Rūmōribus mēcūm pūgnās, ego autem ā tē ratiōnēs requirō,** C., *N.D.*, III. 5. 13; *you fight me with rumours, whereas I ask of you reasons*. **Quod est bonum, omne laudābile est; quod autem laudābile est, omne est honestum; bonum igitur quod est, honestum est,** C., *Fin.*, III. 8. 27; *everything that is good is praiseworthy; but everything that is praiseworthy is virtuous; therefore, what is good is virtuous*.

**REMARK.** — **Autem** commonly follows the first word in the sentence or clause; but when an unemphatic **est** or **sunt** occupies the second place, it is put in the third. So **igitur** and **enim**.

**NOTES.** —1. Noteworthy is the use of **autem** in lively questions. Cicero employs it in this way, also to correct his own previous questions (*Epanorthōsis*).

**Egon dēbacchātus sum autem an tū in mē?** TER., *Ad.*, 185. **Num quis tēstis Postumium appellāvit? Tēstis autem? nōn accūsātor?** C., *Rab. Post.*, 5. 10.

2. **Autem** is a favorite word with CICERO, especially in his philosophical and moral works, but not with the Historians, least of all with TACITUS, who uses it only nine times in all.

**485. Sed (set)** is used partly in a stronger sense, to denote *contradiction*, partly in a weaker sense, to *introduce a new thought*, or to *revive an old one*.

**Nōn est vivere sed valēre vita,** MART., VI. 70. 15 (442, R. 2). **Domitius nullā quidem arte sed Latinē tamen dicēbat,** C., *Br.*, 77. 267; *Domitius spoke with no art it is true, but for all that, in good Latin*.

**NOTES.** —1. The use of **sed** to carry on a narrative is characteristic of the historians, though found also in Cicero. **Sed in eā coniūrātiōne fuit Q. Cūrius,** S., *C.*, 23. 1.

2. **Sed** is repeated by anaphora (682), occasionally in Cicero (*Ferr.*, III. 72. 169), more often later.

3. **Sed** may be strengthened by **tamen**; by **vērō, enimvērō, enim**; by **autem**, but only in connection with **quid**, and then only in comedy and in Vergil. Sometimes it is equal to **sed tamen**, as in V., *A.*, IV. 660.

**486. Vērūm, it is true, true,** always takes the first place in a sentence, and is practically equivalent to **sed** in its stronger sense.

**Si certum est facere, faciam; vērūm nē post cōferās culpam in mē,** TER., *Eun.*, 388; *if you are determined to do it, I will arrange it; but you must not afterward lay the blame on me*.

NOTE.—**Vērūm** gradually gives place to **sed** in CICERO. It is used occasionally to return to the subject (**vērūm haec quidem hāctenus**, C., *Tusc.*, III. 34, 84), and in yielding a point (**vērūm estō**, C., *Fin.*, II. 23, 75), where **sed** is the usual word.

487. **Vērō**, of a truth, is generally put in the second place, asserts with conviction, and is used to heighten the statement.

[**Platōnem**] **Diōn adeō admirātus est ut sē tōtūm eī trāderet. Neque vērō minus Platō dēlectātus est Diōne**, NEP., X. 2, 3; *Dion admired Plato to such a degree that he gave himself wholly up to him; and indeed Plato was no less delighted with Dion.*

NOTES.—1. **Vērō** is properly an affirmative adverb, and such is its only use in PLAUTUS. In TERENCE it has also acquired adversative force, which it preserves throughout the language in greater or less degree; so in the historians it is hardly more than **autem**.

2. The combination **vērūm vērō** is auto-classical; on combinations with **enim**, see 498, N. 6.

3. **Vērō** is also, but not so commonly, used in transitions; especially in the formulæ **age vērō, iam vērō**.

488. **At** (another form of **ad** = *in addition to*) introduces startling transitions, lively objections, remonstrances, questions, wishes, often by way of quotation.

"**Philoctēta, St! brevis dolor.**" **At iam decimum annū in spēluncā iacet**, C., *Fin.*, II. 29, 94; "*Philoctetes, still! the pain is short.*" *But he has been lying in his cave going on ten years.* "**At multis malis affectus?**" **Quis negat?** (C., *Fin.*, V. 30, 92; "*but he has suffered much?*" *Who denies it?* **At vidēte hominis intolerābilem audāciam!** C., *Dom.*, 44, 115; *well, but see the fellow's insufferable audacity!* **At vōbīs male sit!** CAT., III. 13; *and ill luck to you!*

NOTES.—1. **Ast** is the archaic form of **at**, and is found occasionally in CICERO, *de Leg.* and *ad Att.*, but more often in the poets and the later archaists.

2. **At** is used in anaphora, and also, especially in the poets, in continuing the narrative. Noteworthy is its use after conditional sentences (in CICERO only after negatives, never in SALLUST), where it is frequently strengthened by **certē, tamen, saltem: si minus supplicio adfici, at cūstodiri oportēbat**, C., *Verr.*, V. 27, 69.

489. **Atquī** (*but at any rate, but for all that*) is still stronger than **at**, and is used chiefly in argument.

**Vix crēdibile. Atquī sic habet**, H., *S.*, I. 9, 52; *scarce credible. But for all that, 'tis so.*

NOTES.—1. **Atquīn** is occasional in early Latin, and even in CICERO.

2. **At** seems sometimes to be used for **atquī**. C., *Tusc.*, III. 9, 19.

490. **Tamen** (literally, *even thus*), *nevertheless*, is often combined with **at, vērūm, sed**.

It is commonly prepositive, unless a particular word is to be made emphatic.

**Nātūram expellēs furcā, tamen ūsque recurret**, *IL., Ep., i. 10, 24* : *you may drive out Dame Nature with a pitchfork, for all that she will ever be returning.* **Domitius nullā quidem arte sed Latīnē tamen dicēbat**, *C., Br., ii. 77, 267 (485).*

REMARK.—**Nihilōminus** (*nothing the less*), nevertheless, is used like **tamen**, by which it is occasionally strengthened.

**491. Ceterum**, *for the rest*, is used by the Historians as an adversative particle.

**Duo imperātōrēs, ipsī parēs cēterum opibus disparibus**, *S., Jug., 52. 1* ; *two commanders, equal in personal qualities, but of unequal resources.*

NOTE. **Cēterum** is found once in *TERENCE* (*Eun., 452*), once in *CICERO* (*Q.F., ii. 12, 1*), otherwise not before *SALLUST*.

### Disjunctive Sentences.

**492.** The Disjunctive particles are **aut, vel, -ve, sive (seu)**.

NOTE. The Disjunctive particles are but rarely omitted, and then mainly in contrasted opposites like **pauper dives, plūs minus**, and the like.

**493. 1. Aut, or**, denotes absolute exclusion or substitution.

**Vinceris aut vincis**, *PROP., ii. 8, 8* ; *you are conquered or conquering.*

**2. Aut** is often corrective = *or at least, at most, rather* (**aut saltem, aut potius**).

**Cūctī aut māgna pars fidem mūtāvissent**, *S., Jug., 56, 5* ; *all, or at least a great part, would have changed their allegiance.* **Duo aut summum trēs iuvenēs**, *L., XXXIII. 5, 8* ; *two, or at most three, youths.*

**3. Aut—aut, either—or.**

**Quaedam terrae partēs aut frigore rigent aut ūruntur calōre**, (*Cf. C., Tusc., i. 28, 68*) ; *some parts of the earth are either frozen with cold or burnt with heat.* **Aut dic aut accipe calcem**, *JUV., iii. 295* ; *either speak or take a kick.*

NOTES. **1.** The use of **aut** to carry on a preceding negative is found first in *CICERO*, but becomes more common later : **nēmō tribūnōs aut plēbem timēbat**, *L., iii. 16, 4*.

**2. Aut** is sometimes equivalent to *partly—partly* in *TACITUS* :

**Hausta aut obruta Campāniae ōra**, *H., i. 2*.

**3.** On **aut** in interrogative sentences, see 458, N. 4.

**494. 1. Vel** (literally, *you may choose*) gives a choice, often with **etiam, even, potius, rather**.



**Ego vel Cluviēnus**, JUV., I. 80 ; *I, or, if you choose, Cluviēnus*. **Per mē vel stertās licet, nōn modo quiēscās**, C., AC., II. 29, 93 ; *for all I care, you may (even) snore, if you choose, not merely take your rest (sleep)*. **Satis vel etiam nimium multa**, C., FAM., IV. 14, 3 ; *enough, or even too much*. **Epicūrus homō minimē malus vel potius vir optimus**, C., TUSC., II. 19, 44 ; *Epicurus (was) a person by no means bad, or, rather, a man of excellent character*.

2. **Vel—vel**, *either—or* (whether—or).

[**Miltiadēs dixit**] **ponte rescissō rēgem vel hostium ferrō vel inopiā paucis diēbus interitūrum**, NEP., I. 3, 4 ; *Miltiades said that if the bridge were cut the king would perish in a few days, whether by the sword of the enemy, or for want of provisions*.

NOTES.—1. **Vel**, for example, is rare in PLAUTUS and TERENCE, but common in CICERO, especially in the *Letters*.

2. **Vel** in the sense of **aut** is rare in the classical period (C., *Rep.*, II. 28, 50), but is more common later, beginning with OVID. See TAC., *Ann.*, I. 59.

3. **Vel—vel** is found in PLAUTUS occasionally in the sense *as well as*, but in classical Latin is rigidly distinguished from **et—et**.

4. **Aut** is not uncommonly subdivided by **vel—vel**: **aut canere vel vōce vel fidibus**, C., *Div.*, II. 59, 122.

495. **-Ve** (enclitic) is a weaker form of **vel**, and in CICERO is used principally with numerals, in the sense *at most*, or with words from the same stem or of similar formation.

**Bis terve**, C., FAM., II. 1, 1 ; *twice or at most thrice (bis terque, twice and indeed as much as thrice, if not more)*.

**Cūr timeam dubitemve locum dēfendere?** JUV., I. 103 ; *why should I fear or hesitate to maintain my position?* **Aliquid faciendī nōn faciendive ratiō**, C., INV., II. 9, 31 ; *the method of doing something or not doing it*.

NOTES.—1. In early Latin **ve** is more often copulative than adversative.

2. **Ve—ve** is poetical only.

496. 1. **Sive (seu)**, *if you choose*, gives a choice between two designations of the same object.

**Urbem mātři seu novercae relinquit**, L., I. 3, 3 ; *he leaves the city to his mother or (if it seems more likely) to his step-mother*.

2. **Sive—sive (seu—seu)**, *whether—or* (indifference).

**Sive medicum adhibuerīs sive nōn adhibuerīs nōn convalescēs**, C., *Fat.*, 12, 29 ; *whether you employ a physician, or do not employ (one), you will not get well*. **Seu visa est catulis cerva fidēlibus seu rūpit teretēs Marsus aper plagās**, H., O., I. 1, 27 ; *whether a doe hath appeared to the faithful hounds, or a Marsian boar hath burst the tightly-twisted toils*.

NOTES.—1. Single **sive** (= *or*) is not found in PLAUTUS or TERENCE (*Cf. And.*, 190), but it occurs in LUCRETIOUS, LUCILIUS, and is common in CICERO. CAESAR and SAL-

LUST, however, do not use it, and it is rare in the Poets. In the sense of **sive**—**sive** it is found occasionally in poetry; but in prose only three times in TACITUS.

2. **Sive**—**sive** is not found in TERENCE, but from CICERO on becomes common.

3. No distinction seems possible between **sive** and **seu**.

497. **An** is used in the sense of *or* not uncommonly in CICERO, especially in the *Letters*; occasionally in LIVY, and frequently in TACITUS. Elsewhere it is rare. See 457.

Tiberius cāsū an manibus [Haterii] impeditus prōciderat, TAC., *Ann.*, i. 13, 7; *Tiberius had fallen forward, either by chance or tripped by Haterius' hands.*

### Causal and Illative Sentences.

498. A. The Causal particles are **nam**, **enim**, **namque**, and **etenim**, *for*.

**Nam** is put at the beginning of a sentence; **enim** is post-positive (484, R.): **namque** and **etenim** are commonly put in the first place.

Sensūs mirificō conlocātī sunt; nam oculi tamquam speculātōrēs altissimum locum obtinent, C., *N.D.*, ii. 56, 140; *the senses are admirably situated; for the eyes, like watchmen, occupy the highest post.* Piscēs ōva relinquunt, facile enim illa aquā sustinentur, C., *N.D.*, ii. 51, 129; *fish leave their eggs, for they are easily kept alive by the water.* [Themistocles] mūrōs Athēniēnsium restituit suō periculō; namque Lacedaemonii prohibēre cōnātī sunt, NEP., ii. 6, 2; *Themistocles restored the walls of Athens with risk to himself; for the Lacedaemonians endeavoured to prevent it.*

NOTES. 1. The Augustan poets postpone both **nam** and **namque** according to the requirements of the metre, and in prose, beginning with LIVY, **namque** is found sometimes in the second place, but more often in LIVY than later.

In early Latin **enim** is often first in the sentence; **etenim** is postponed in prose only in the elder PLINY and APULEIUS; in the poets, not uncommonly, so in AFRANIUS, TIBULLUS, PROPERTIUS, and HORACE.

2. These particles are originally asseverative, and are often used not only to furnish a reason, but also to give an explanation or illustration (*as for instance*). **Quid enim agās?** *what, for instance, can you do?* This is especially true of **enim**, but is also common enough with **nam** (S. 3), and a broad difference between **nam** and **enim** (which is of common origin with **nam**) cannot be proved. **Etenim** is often used to carry on the argument, and gives an additional ground.

3. The asseverative force of **nam** is retained in conversational style occasionally, even in CICERO (*Terr.*, i. 51, 133). **Enim** is almost wholly asseverative in PLAUTUS and TERENCE. **Namque** is very rare in PLAUTUS and TERENCE, and is found before vowels only. In classical Latin it is also rare, and found usually before vowels. With LIVY it comes into general use before vowels and consonants equally. **Etenim** is found but once in PLAUTUS (*Trm.*, 26, an interpolation) and four times in TERENCE; in post-classical Latin also it is not common, but it is very frequent in classical Latin, especially in CICERO.

4. Noteworthy is the use of **nam**, in passing over a matter: **nam quid ego dē actiōne ipsā plūra dicam?** (C., *O.*, i. 5, 18), which is especially common in CICERO.

5. **Nam** shows an affinity for interrogative particles. Here it sometimes precedes in

the early language (TER., *Ph.*, 932), but becomes firmly attached in the classical period in the forms **quisnam**, **ubinam**, *etc.*, which, however, sometimes suffer tmesis and transposition in poetry (V., *G.*, 4, 445).

6. In **atenim** (first in CICERO), **nempe enim** (ante-classical and post-classical), **sed enim** (rare), **vērūmenim**, **enimvērō**, **vērū enimvērō**, as in **etenim**, the **enim** gives a ground or an illustration of the leading particle, but translation by an ellipsis would be too heavy, and **enim** is best left untranslated :

A. **Audī quid dicam.** B. **At enim taedet iam audire eadem mīliēns**, TER., *Ph.*, 487 ; A. *Hear what I say.* B. *But (I won't, for) I am tired of hearing the same things a thousand times already.*

7. **Enim** is used pleonastically after **quia** in early Latin, and then again in PETRONIUS and GELLIUS ; also after **ut** and **nē** in early Latin.

8. **Quippe** is originally interrogative. From this the causal force develops, which is not uncommon in CICERO. In SALLUST, and especially in LIVY and later writers, **quippe** is equal to **enim**.

499. B. Illative particles are **itaque**, **igitur**, **ergō** ; **eō**, **hinc**, **inde**, **ideō**, **idcirco**, **quōcircā**, **propterea**, **quāpropter**, **proin**, **proinde**.

500. **Itaque** (literally, *and so*), *therefore*, is put at the beginning of the sentence by the best writers, and is used of *facts* that follow from the preceding statement.

**Nēmō ausus est Phōciōnem liber sepelire ; itaque ā servis sepultus est**, Cf. NEP., XIX. 4, 4 ; *no free man dared to bury Phocion, and so he was buried by slaves.*

REMARK.—**Itaque** in early and classical Latin has first place in a sentence. It is first postponed by LUCRETIUS, then by CORNIFICIUS and HORACE, and more often later.

501. **Igitur**, *therefore*, is used of *opinions* which have their natural ground in the preceding statement ; in CICERO it is usually post-positive, in SALLUST never.

**Mihī nōn satisfacit. Sed quot hominēs tot sententiāe ; falli igitur possumus**, C., *Fin.*, I. 5, 15 ; *ME it does not satisfy. But many men many minds. I may therefore be mistaken.*

NOTE.—In historical writers **igitur** is sometimes used like **itaque**. Occasionally also (not in classical Latin), it seems to have the force of **enim** (PL., *Most.*, 1102, MSS.).

502. **Ergō** denotes *necessary consequence*, and is used especially in arguments, with somewhat more emphasis than **igitur**.

**Negat haec filiam mē suam esse ; nōn ergō haec māter mea est**, PL., *Ep.*, 590 ; *she says that I am not her daughter, therefore she is not my mother.*

NOTES.—1. In the Poets **ergō** sometimes introduces a strong conclusion in advance of the premise (H., *O.*, I. 24, 5). In the classical period, however, its predominant use is to introduce the logical conclusion.

2. **Ergō** usually comes first, but its position is apt to vary in accordance with the stress laid upon it.

3. **Itaque ergō** is found in **TERENCE** and **LIVY** ; **ergō igitur** in **PLAUTUS**.

**503.** Other Coördinating Conjunctions : **hinc, hence**, is found not unfrequently : **hinc illae lacrumae**, **TER.**, *And.*, 126. **Inde, thence, therefore**, is rare, and first in **CICERO**, but more common in later Latin. **Eō, therefore**, is found in early Latin, rarely in **CICERO** (*Fam.*, vi. 20, 1), not in **CAESAR** or **SALLUST** ; again in **LIVY** and later ; so **ideō, on that account**, but **atque ideō** is found once in **CAESAR**. **Idcirco, on that account**, is rare, but from the earliest times. **Quōcircā, on which account**, is found first in the classical period ; **quāpropter** is found here and there in early Latin, but more commonly in the classical time, rarely later ; **propterea, on that account**, is rare, and belongs to early Latin. **Proin, proinde, accordingly**, are employed in *exhortations, appeals*, and the like.

**Quod praeceptum (nōsce tē ipsum), quia māius erat quam ut ab homine videretur, idcirco assignātum est deō**, **C.**, *Fin.*, v. 16, 44 ; *this precept (know thyself), because it was too great to seem to be of man, was, on that account, attributed to a god.* **Proinde aut exeant aut quiescant**, **C.**, *Cat.*, ii. 5, 11 ; *let them then either depart or be quiet.*

## SUBORDINATION.

**504.** Subordinate sentences are only extended forms of the simple sentence, and are divided into *Adjective* and *Substantive* sentences, according as they represent *adjective* and *substantive* relations.

This arrangement is a matter of convenience merely, and no attempt is made to represent the development of the subordinate sentence from the coördinate.

**505.** Adjective sentences express an attribute of the subject in an expanded form.

**Uxor quae bona est**, **PL.**, *Merc.*, 812 (624) — **uxor bona**.

**506.** Substantive sentences are introduced by particles, which correspond in their origin and use to the Oblique Cases, Accusative and Ablative.

These two cases furnish the mass of adverbial relations, and hence we make a subdivision for this class, and the distribution of the subordinate sentence appears as follows :

**507. A.** Substantive sentences.

I. Object sentences.

## II. Adverbial sentences :

1. Of Cause. (Causal.)
2. Of Design and Tendency. (Final and Consecutive.)
3. Of Time. (Temporal.)
4. Of Condition and Concession. (Conditional and Concessive.)

## B. Adjective sentences. (Relative.)

## Moods in Subordinate Sentences.

508. 1. Final and Consecutive Clauses always take the Subjunctive. Others vary according to their conception. Especially important are the changes produced by *Ōrātiō Obliqua*.

2. *Ōrātiō Obliqua*, or *Indirect Discourse*, is opposed to *Ōrātiō Rēcta*, or *Direct Discourse*, and gives the main drift of a speech and not the exact words. *Ōrātiō Obliqua*, proper, depends on some Verb of Saying or Thinking expressed or implied, the Principal Declarative Clauses being put in the Infinitive, the Dependent in the Subjunctive.

*Sōcratēs dicere solēbat :*

*Ō. R. Omnēs in eō quod sciunt satis sunt ēloquentēs.*

*Socrates used to say : " All men ARE eloquent enough in what they UNDERSTAND."*

*Ō. O. Omnēs in eō quod scirent satis esse ēloquentēs, C., Or., I. 14, 63.*

*Socrates used to say that all men WERE eloquent enough in what they UNDERSTOOD.*

3. The oblique relation may be confined to a dependent clause and not extend to the whole sentence. This may be called *Partial Obliquity*.

*Ō. R. Nova nūpta dicit : Flēō quod ire necesse est.*

*The bride says : I weep because I must needs go.*

*Ō. O. Nova nūpta dicit sē flēre quod ire necesse sit.*

*The bride says that she weeps because she must needs go.*

*Ō. R. Nova nūpta flet quod ire necesse est, Cf. CAT., LXI. 81.*

*The bride weeps because she must go.*

*Ō. O. Nova nūpta flet quod ire necesse sit.*

*The bride is weeping because " she must go " (quoth she).*



4. Akin to  $\bar{O}$ .  $O$ . is the so-called Attraction of Mood, by which clauses originally Indicative are put in the Subjunctive because they depend on Infinitives or Subjunctives. (663.)

*Nōn dubitō quin nova nūpta fleat quod ire necesse sit. I do not doubt that the bride is weeping because she must go.*

REMARK.—The full discussion of  $\bar{O}$ .  $O$ . must, of course, be reserved for a later period. See 648.

### SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

**509.** 1. In those dependent sentences which require the Subjunctive, the choice of the tenses of the dependent clause is determined largely by the time of the leading or principal clause, so that Principal Tenses are ordinarily followed by Principal Tenses ; Historical, by Historical.

NOTE.—As the subordinate sentence arose out of the coördinate, hypotaxis out of parataxis, the tenses of the Subjv. had originally an independent value, and the association was simply the natural association of time. But in some classes of sentences a certain mechanical levelling has taken place, as in the Final sentence ; and in others, as in the Interrogative sentence, the range of the Subjv. is restricted by the necessity of clearness, just as the range of the Inf. is restricted by the necessity of clearness (530) ; so that a conventional Sequence of Tenses has to be recognised. To substitute for every dependent tense a corresponding independent tense, and so do away with the whole doctrine of Sequence, is impossible. At the same time it must be observed that the mechanical rule is often violated by a return to the primitive condition of parataxis, and that

2. This rule is subject to the following modifications :

1. Tense means time, not merely tense-form, so that

(a) The Historical Present may be conceived according to its sense (Past) or according to its tense (Present). (229.)

(b) In the Pure Perfect may be felt the past inception or origin (Past), or the present completion (Present). (235, 1.)

2. The effect of a past action may be continued into the present or the future of the writer (513).

3. The leading clause may itself consist of a principal and dependent clause, and so give rise to a conflict of tenses with varying Sequence (511, B. 2).

4. An original Subjunctive (467) of the past (265) resists levelling, especially in the Indirect Question.

510.

All forms that relate to the Present and Future (so especially Principal Tenses)	} are followed by	{ the Present Subjunctive (for continued action); the Perfect Subjunctive (for completed action).
All forms that relate to the Past (so especially Historical Tenses)	} are followed by	{ the Imperfect Subjunctive (for continued action); the Pluperfect Subjunctive (for completed action).

REMARK.—The action which is completed with regard to the leading verb may be in itself a continued action. So in English: *I do not know what he has been doing, I did not know what he had been doing.* The Latin is unable to make this distinction, and accordingly the Imperfect Indicative (*I was doing*) is represented in this dependent form by the Perfect and Pluperfect, when the action is completed as to the leading verb.

511.

PR. (PURE OR HIST.),	cōgnōscō,	<i>I am finding out,</i>	{ quid faciās, what you are doing ;
FUT.,	cōgnōscam,	<i>I shall (try to) find out,</i>	{ quid fēcerīs, what you have done,
PURE PF.,	cōgnōvī,	<i>I have found out (I know),</i>	{ what you have been doing (what you did),
FUT. PF.,	cōgnōverō,	<i>I shall have found out (shall know),</i>	{ what you were doing (before).
HIST. PR.,	cōgnōscō,	<i>I am (was) finding out,</i>	{ quid facerēs, what you were doing ;
IMPF.,	cōgnōscēbam,	<i>I was finding out,</i>	{ quid fēcissēs, what you had done, what
HIST. PF.,	cōgnōvī,	<i>I found out,</i>	{ you had been doing,
PLUPF.,	cōgnōveram,	<i>I had found out (I knew),</i>	{ what you were doing (before).

When the Subjunctive is original, we have :

cōgnōscō, etc., <i>I am finding out,</i>	{ quid faciās, quid facerēs,	{ what you are to do. what you were to do.
cōgnōvī, etc., <i>I knew,</i>	quid facerēs,	what you were to do.

Principal Tenses.

Nihil rēfert postrēma syllaba brevis an longa sit, Cf. C., Or , 64, 217 (461). Ubi (Caesarem) ōrant (historical) ut sibi parcat, CAES., B.G., VI, 9,

7 (546, 1). *Nēmō adeō ferus est ut nōn mītēscere possit*, H., *Ep.*, i. 1, 39 (552). *Nec mea quī digitis lūmina condāt erit*, Ov., *Her.*, 10, 120 (631, 2). *Rūsticus exspectat dum dēfluat amnis*, H., *Ep.*, i. 2, 42 (572). *Post mortem in morte nihil est quod metuam mali*, Pl., *Capt.*, 741 (631, 2). *Ārdeat ipsa licet, tormentis gaudet amantis*, Juv., vi. 209 (607).

*Utrum nescis quam altē ascenderis an prō nihilō id putās?* C., *Fam.*, x. 26, 3 (458). *Laudat Āfricānum Panaetius quod fuerit abstinēns*, C., *Off.*, ii. 22, 76 (542). *Nōn is es ut tē pudor umquam ā turpitudine revocārit*, C., *Cat.*, i. 9, 22 (552). *Quem mea Calliopē laeserit ūnus egō (sum)*, Ov., *Tr.*, ii. 568 (631, 1). *Sim licet extrēmum, sicut sum, missus in orbem*, Ov., *Tr.*, iv. 9, 9 (607). *Multi fuērunt quī tranquillitatem expetentēs ā negōtiis pūblicis sē remōverint*, C., *Off.*, i. 20, 69 (631, 2).

### Historical Tenses.

*Epaminōndās quaesivit salvusne esset clipeus*, C., *Fin.*, ii. 30, 97 (467). *Noctū ambulābat in pūblicō Themistoclēs quod somnum capere nōn posset*, C., *Tusc.*, iv. 19, 44 (541). [*Athēniōnsēs*] *creant decem praetōrēs quī exercitui praeessent*, NEP., i. 4, 4 (545). *Accidit ut ūnā nocte omnēs Hermae dēicerentur*, NEP., vii. 3, 2 (513, R. 2). *Ad Appi Claudī senectūtem accōdēbat etiam ut caecus esset*, C., *Cat. M.*, 6, 16 (553, 4). *Hannibal omnia priusquam excēderet pūgnā (erat) expertus*, L., xxx. 35, 4 (577). (*Āgēsilaus*) *cum ex Aegyptō reverterētur dēcēssit*, NEP., xvii. 8, 6 (585).

*Tanta opibus Etrūria erat ut iam nōn terrās solum sed mare etiam fāmā nōminis sui implēssent*, L., i. 2, 5 (521, R. 1). *Cum primī ordinēs hostium concidissent, tamen ācerriam reliquī resistēbant*, CAES., *B. G.*, vii. 62, 4 (587). *Dēlēta (est) Ausonum gēns perinde ac si interneciōvō bellō certāssent*, L., ix. 25, 9 (602).

### Original Subjunctive Retained.

*Ipse docet quid agam (original, agam); fās est et ab hoste docēri*, Ov., *M.*, iv. 428 (219). *Quaerō ā tē cūr ego C. Cornēlium nōn dēfenderem (original, dēfenderem)*, C., *Vat.*, 2, 5 (467). *Misērunt Delphōs cōsultum quid facerent (original, faciāmus)*, NEP., ii. 2, 6 (518).

REMARKS.—1. The treatment of the Hist. Pr. according to its sense (past) is the rule in classical Latin, especially when the dependent clause precedes. But there are many exceptions.

*Agunt grātiās quod sibi pepercissent; quod arma cum hominibus cōnsanguineis contulerint queruntur*, CAES., *B. C.*, i. 74, 2; *they return thanks to them for having spared them, and complain that they had crossed swords with kinsmen.*

2. Noteworthy is the shift from the primary to the secondary sequence; this is mostly confined to clauses of double dependence, *i.e.*, where one subordinate clause is itself principal to a second subordinate clause.

Here the first has usually the primary, the second the secondary sequence.

**Rogat ut cūret quod dīxisset**, C., *Quinct.*, 5, 18 ; *he asks him to attend to what he had said* (he would).

So of authors :

[**Chrṡsippus**] **disputat aethera esse eum quem hominēs Iovem appellārent**, C., *N.D.*, I. 15, 40 ; *Chrysippus maintains that to be ether which men call Jove*.

3. The Pure Pf. is usually treated as a Hist. Pf. in the matter of sequence :

**Quae subsidia habērēs et habēre possēs, exposuī**, Q. CICERO, 4, 13 ; *what supports you have or can have I have set forth*.

4. The reverse usage, when an Hist. Pf. is followed by a primary Subjv., is not common. Many of those cited from CICERO are from the *Letters*, where the shift of tense might be influenced by the letter-tense principle (252).

**Sed quō cōnsiliō redierim, initiō audistis, post estis expertī**, C., *Ph.*, x. 4, 8. **Quis miles fuit, quī Brundisiī illam nōn viderit**, C., *Ph.*, II. 25, 61. (The context shows that **fuit** cannot be Pure Pf.)

**512. Sequence of Tenses in Sentences of Design.**—Sentences of Design have, as a rule, only the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive. The Roman keeps the purpose and the process, rather than the attainment, in view.

PR.,	<b>edunt,</b>	<i>they are eating,</i>	} <b>ut vivant,</b> <i>that they may live (to live).</i>
PURE PF.,	<b>ēderunt,</b>	<i>they have eaten,</i>	
FUT.,	<b>edent,</b>	<i>they will eat,</i>	
FUT. PF.,	<b>ēderint,</b>	<i>they will have eaten,</i>	
IMPF.,	<b>edēbant,</b>	<i>they were eating,</i>	} <b>ut viverent,</b> <i>that they might live (to live).</i>
PLUPF.,	<b>ēderant,</b>	<i>they had eaten,</i>	
HIST. PF.,	<b>ēderunt,</b>	<i>they ate,</i>	

**Spectātum veniunt, veniunt spectentur ut ipsae**, Ov., *A.A.*, I. 99 (435). **Sed precor ut possim tūtius esse miser**, Ov., *Tr.*, v. 2, 78 (424). **Gallinae pen- nis foveat pullōs nē frigore laedantur**, Cf. C., *N.D.*, II. 52, 129 (545). **Lēgem brevem esse oportet quō facilius ab imperitīs teneātur**, SEN., *E.M.*, 94, 38 (545). **Mē praemisit domum haec ut nūntiem uxōrī suae**, PL., *Am.*, 195 ; *he has sent me home ahead of him, to take the news to his wife*. **Oculōs ecfodiam tibi nē mē observāre possis**, PL., *Aul.*, 53 ; *I will gouge out your eyes for you, to make it impossible for you to watch me*.

[**Laelius**] **veniēbat ad cēnam ut satiāret dēsideria nātūrae**, C., *Fin.* II. 8, 25 ; *Laelius used to go to table, to satisfy the cravings of nature*. (**Phaethōn**) **optāvit ut in currum patris tollerētur**, C., *Off.*, III. 25, 94 (546, 1).

REMARK.—Parenthetical final sentences like *ut ita dicam, nē errētis*, are really dependent on the thought or utterance of the speaker, and have the present sequence everywhere.

*Nē longior sim, valē.* (C., *Fam.*, xv. 19; *not to be tedious, farewell!*) *Nē tamen ignōrēs, virtūte Nerōnis Armenius cecidit*, H., *Ep.*, i. 12, 25; *but that you may not fail to know it, it was by the valour of Nero that the Armenian fell.*

NOTES.—1. The Pl. and Plupf. Subjv. are sometimes found in sentences of Design, chiefly in earlier and later Latin (no example is cited from CAESAR or SALLUST), when stress is laid on completion, or when an element of Hope or Fear comes in: *Ut sic dixerim* (first found in QUINT.), *if I may be allowed to use the expression.*

*Affirmāre audeō mē omni ope adnīsurum esse nē frūstrā vōs hanc spem dē mē concēperītis*, L., *ALIV.*, 22; *I dare assure you that I will strain every nerve to keep you from having conceived this hope of me in vain.* (After a past tense, *nē concēpissētis*.) *Nunc agendum est nē frūstrā oppressum esse Antōnium gāvīsī simus*, C., *ad Br.*, i. 4, 3. *Hic obsistam, nē imprudentī hūc ea sō subrēpsit* (131, 4, b. 2) *mihi*, PL., *M. G.*, 333. *Effecit nē cūius alterius sacrilegium rēs pūblica quam Nerōnis sēnsisset*, TAC., *Agr.*, 6.

When the tense is compound, the participle is usually to be considered as a mere adjective.

*Patrōnus extitī utī nē [Sex. Rōscius] omnīnō dēsertus esset*, C., *Rosc. Am.*, 2, 5; where *dēsertus* = *sōlus*.

2. Occasional apparent exceptions are to be explained in various ways. Thus, in C., *Sest.*, 14, 32: *etiamne ēdicere audeās nē maerērent*, we have a repetition as an indignant question of the preceding statement: *ēdicunt* (Hist. Pr.) *duo cōsulēs ut ad suum vestitum senātōres redirent.*

513. *Exceptional Sequence of Tenses*:—*Sentences of Result (Consecutive Sentences)*. In Sentences of Result, the Present Subjunctive is used after Past Tenses to denote the continuance into the Present, the Perfect Subjunctive to imply final result. This Perfect Subjunctive may represent either the Pure Perfect or Aorist, the latter especially with the negative: the action happened once for all or not at all.

Present Tense:

[*Siciliam Verrēs*] *per triennium ita vexāvit ut ea restitui in antiquum statum nullō modō possit*, C., *Verr.*, I. 4, 12; *Verrēs so harried Sicily for three years as to make it utterly impossible for it to be restored to its original condition.* In [*Lūcullō*] *tanta prūdētia fuit ut hodiē stet Asia*, C., *Ac.*, II. 1, 3; *Lucullus's forethought was so great that Asia stands firm to-day.*

Perfect Tense (Pure):

(*Mūrēna*) *Asiam sic obīit ut in eā neque avāritiae neque lūxuriae vēstīgium relquerit*, C., *Mur.*, 9, 20; *Murena so administered Asia as not to have (that he has not) left in it a trace either of greed or debauchery (there is no trace there).*



## Perfect Tense (Aorist) :

*Equitēs hostium ācrit̄er cum equitatū nostrō cōnflīxērunt, tamen ut nostrī eōs in silvās collēsque compulerint*, CAES., *B.G.*, v. 15, 1; *the cavalry of the enemy engaged the cavalry on our side briskly, and yet (the upshot was that) our men forced them into the woods and hills. Neque vērō tam remissō āc languidō animō quisquam omnium fuit quī eā nocte conquiēverit*, CAES., *B.C.*, i. 21, 5; *and indeed there was no one at all of so slack and indifferent a temper as to take (a wink of) sleep that night.*

REMARKS.—1. After a Pure Pf., if the dependent clause is affirmative, CICERO prefers the Impf. (he has but five cases of Pf.); if negative the Pf. (in the proportion 2 to 1).

2. After *accidit*, *contigit*, and other verbs of Happening, the Impf. is always used, the result being already emphasised in the Indic. form.

*Accidit ut ūnā nocte omnēs Hermae dēicerentur*, NEP., vii., 3, 2; *it happened that in one night all the Hermae were thrown down.*

NOTES.—1. The use of the Aoristic Pf. Subjv. after an Aoristic Pf. Indic. seems to have been an attempt of the Romans to replace the consecutive Aor. Inf. in Greek with *ὥστε*. Examples are not found in early Latin, are rare in CICERO, very rare in CAESAR, perhaps not at all in SALLUST; more frequent in LIVY, common in TACITUS, very common in NEPOS and Suetonius, etc.

2. In two coördinated clauses depending on the same verb we find the tenses occasionally varying. The Pf. in the first subordinate, with Impf. in the second, is doubtful in any case, rare in CICERO, and is cited but once each from CAESAR (*B.G.*, vii. 17) and VELLEIUS (i. 9, 1). The reverse construction, Impf. followed by Pf., is more common, but found first (though rarely) in LIVY, and belongs mainly to late Latin.

*Zēnō nullō modō is erat quī nervōs virtūtis inciderit, sed contrā quī omnia in virtūte pōneret*, C., *Ac.*, i. 10, 35. Here the shift is due to the negative. *Tantus pavor omnēs occupāvit ut nōn modo alius quisquam arma caperet—sed etiam ipse rēx perfūgerit*, L., xxiv. 40, 12. Here the tenses depend on the ideas of continuance and completion, of the many and the single (*nōn capiēbant—rēx perfūgit*).

3. In relative sentences of coincident action with causal coloring, either the coincidence is retained, or a principal clause in the Past is followed by the Impf. Subjunctive.

*Tū hūmānissimē fecistī quī mē certiōrem fecerīs*, C., *Att.*, xiii. 43, 1. *Cum hōc Pompēius vehementer ēgit cum diceret, etc.*, C., *Att.*, ii. 22, 2. *Videor mihi grātum fecisse Siculīs, quod eōrum iniūriās sim persecūtus*, C., *Verr.*, ii. 6, 15 (518, R.).

## Representation of the Subjunctive in the Future and Future Perfect Tenses.

514. The Subjunctive has no Future or Future Perfect, which are represented either by the other Subjunctives, or in the Active by the Subjunctive of the Periphrastic Conjugation.

RULE I.—(a) After a Future or Future Perfect Tense, the Future relation (contemporary with the leading Future) is

represented by the Present Subjunctive; the Future Perfect (prior to the leading Future) by the Perfect Subjunctive, according to the rule.

<b>Cōgnōscam,</b>	}	<b>quid faciās,</b> <i>what you are doing</i>
<i>I shall (try to) find out,</i>		<i>(will be doing).</i>
<b>Cōgnōverō,</b>	}	<b>quid fēcerīs,</b> <i>what you have done</i>
<i>I shall have found out (shall know),</i>		<i>(will have done).</i>

(b) But whenever the dependent Future is subsequent to the leading Future, the Periphrastic Tense must be employed.

<b>Cōgnōscam,</b>	}	<b>quid factūrus sis,</b>
<i>I shall (try to) find out,</i>		<i>what you are going to do (what</i>
<b>Cōgnōverō,</b>	}	<i>you will do).</i>
<i>I shall have found out (shall know),</i>		

[Cōnsiderābimus], [*we shall consider*].

A. **Quid fēcerit aut quid ipsī acciderit aut quid dixerit,** *what he has done, or what has happened to him, or what he has said.*

B. **Aut quid faciat, quid ipsī accidat, quid dicat,** *or, what he is doing, what is happening to him, what he is saying.*

C. **Aut quid factūrus sit, quid ipsī cāsūrum sit, quā sit usūrus** *ōrātiōne,* C., *Inv.*, i. 25, 36; *or what he is going to do (will do), what is going to (will) happen to him, what plea he is going to employ (will employ).*

**Tū quid sis actūrus pergrātum erit si ad mē scripseris,** C., *Fam.*, ix. 2, 5; *it will be a great favour if you will write to me what you are going to do.*

REMARK.—In some of these forms ambiguity is unavoidable. So A may represent a real Perfect, B a real Present.

515. RULE II.—After the other tenses, the Future relation is expressed by the Active Periphrastic Subjunctive, Present or Imperfect.

<b>Cōgnōscō,</b>	}	<b>quid factūrus sis</b> ( <i>what you are going to do, what you will do.</i> )
<i>I am finding out,</i>		
<b>Cōgnōvī,</b>	}	
<i>I have found out (know),</i>		

<b>Cōgnōscēbam,</b>	}	<b>quid factūrus essēs</b> ( <i>what you were going to do, what you would do.</i> )
<i>I was trying to find out,</i>		
<b>Cōgnōveram,</b>	}	
<i>I had found out,</i>		

**Tam ea rēs est facilis ut innumerābilis nātūra mundōs effectūra sit, efficiat, effecerit, Cf. C., N.D., I. 21, 53; the thing is so easy that nature will make, is making, has made, innumerable worlds.**

**Incertum est quam longa cuiusque nostrum vita futūra sit, C., Verr., I. 58, 153; it is uncertain how long the life of each one of us is going to be (will be).**

**Anteā dubitābam ventūraene essent legiōnēs; nunc mihi nōn est dubium quā ventūrae nōn sint, C., Fam., II. 17, 5; before, I was doubtful whether the legions would come (or no); now I have no doubt that they will not come.**

REMARKS.—I. The Pf. and Plupf. Subjv. of the Periphrastic are used only to represent the Apodosis of an Unreal Conditional Sentence.

**Cōgnōscō, Cōgnōvī, quid factūrus fuerīs, (what you have been I am finding out, I have found out what you would have done, going to do). (know),**

**Cōgnōscēbam, Cōgnōveram, [quid factūrus fuissēs, (what you had been I was trying to find out, I had found out, what you would have going to do). done, rare.]**

2. There is no Periphrastic for the Fut. Pf. active, no Periphrastic for passive and Supineless Verbs. The Grammarians make up a Periphrastic for all these from **futūrum sit, esset ut**, as :

**Nōn dubitō quā futūrum sit, { ut redierit, that he will have returned.  
I do not doubt { ut maereat, that he will grieve.  
{ ut necētur, that he will be killed.**

But there is no warrant in actual usage.

For the dependent Fut. Pf. act. **TERENCE** says (*Hec.*, 618) : **Tuā rēfert nil utrum illaec fēcerint quandō haec aberit.**

For the dependent Fut. Pf. pass. **CICERO** says (*Fam.*, VI. 12, 3) : **Nec dubitō quā cōfecta rēs futūra sit, nor do I doubt but the matter will have been settled.**

In the absence of the Periphrastic forms, use the proper tenses of **posse**. (248, R.)

3. When the preceding verb has a future character (Fear, Hope, Power, Will, and the like), the simple Subjv. is sufficient.

**Galli, nisi perfrēgerint mūnitiōnēs, dē omni salūte dēspērānt; Rōmānī, si rem obtinuerint, finem labōrum omnium exspectant, CAES., B.G., VII. 85, 3; the Gauls despair of all safety unless they break through (shall have broken through) the fortifications; the Romans look forward to an end of all their toils, if they hold their own (shall have held). Vēnērunt querentēs nec spem ūllam esse resistendī, nisi praesidium Rōmānus misisset, L., XXXIV. 11, 2; they came with the complaint that there was no hope of resistance unless the Roman sent a force to protect them. Intenti quandō hostis inprudentiā rueret, TAC., II., II. 34.**

Of course the Deliberative Subjunctive is future : Examples, 265.

**Et certāmen habent lēti, quae vīva sequātur cōniugium, PROP., IV. 12, 19 (M.).**

**516. Sequence of Tenses in Ōrātiō Obliqua :** In Ōrātiō Obliqua and kindred constructions, the attraction of tenses ap-

plies also to the representatives of the Future and Future Perfect Subjunctive.

In [clāvā] erat scriptum nisi domum reverterētur sē capitis eum damnātūrōs, *NEP.*, IV. 3, 4; *it was written on the staff that if he did not return home, they would condemn him to death.* (Ōrātiō Rēcta: nisi domum revertēris, tē capitis damnābimus, *unless you (shall) return home, we will condemn you to death.*) Pŷthia praecepit ut Miltiadem sibī imperatōrem sūmerent; id sī fēcissent (Ō. R., fēcērītis) incepta prōspera futūra (Ō. R., erunt), *NEP.*, I. I, 3; *the Pythia instructed them to take Miltiades for their general: that if they did that, their undertakings would be successful.* Lacedaemoniī, Philippō minitante per litterās sē omnia quae cōnārentur (Ō. R., cōnābimini) prohibītūrum, quae sīvērunt num sē esset etiam morī prohibītūrus (Ō. R., prohibēbis), *C., Tusc.*, v. 14, 42; *the Lacedaemonians, when Philip threatened them by letter that he would prevent everything they undertook (shou'd undertake), asked whether he was going to (would) prevent them from dying too.*

**517. Sequence of Tenses after the other Moods.**—The Imperative and the Present and Perfect Subjunctive have the Sequences of the Principal Tenses; the Imperfect and Pluperfect have the Sequences of the Historical Tenses.

[Nē] compōne comās quia sis ventūrus ad illam, *Ov., Rem. Am.*, 679; *do not arrange (your) locks because (forsooth) you are going to see her.* Excellentibus ingenis citius defuerit ars quā civem regant quam quā hostem superent, *L., II.* 43, 10; *great geniuses would be more likely to lack the skill to control the citizen than the skill to overcome the enemy.* Quid mē prohiberet Epicūrēum esse, sī probārem quae ille diceret? *C., Fin.*, I. 8, 27; *what would prevent me from being an Epicurean if I approved what he said (says)?* Tum ego tē primus hortārer diū pēnsitārēs quem potissimum eligerēs, *PLAN., Ep.*, IV. 15, 8; *in that case I should be the first to exhort you to weigh long whom you should choose above all others.* Quae vita fuisset Priamō sī ab adultēcentiā scīssset quōs ēventūs senectūtis esset habitūrus? *C., Div.*, II. 9, 22; *what sort of life would Priam have led if he had known, from early manhood, what were to be the closing scenes of his old age?*

REMARKS.—1. Of course, when the Pf. Subjy. represents an Historical Tense, it takes the historical Sequence:

Māgna culpa Pelopis quī nōn docuerit filium quātenus esset quidque cūrandum, *C., Tusc.*, I. 44, 107; *greatly to blame is Pelops for not having taught his son how far each thing was to be cared for.* Quī scīs an eā causā mē ōdisse adsimulāverit, ut cum mātře plūs unā esset? *TER., Hec.*, 235; *how do you know but she has pretended to hate me in order to be more with her (own) mother?*

So also in the Conditional proposition, when the action is past. For varying conception, see C., *Off.*, III. 24, 92.

2. The Impf. Subjv., being used in opposition to the Present, might be treated as a Principal Tense, but the construction is less usual :

**Verērer nē immodicam orātiōnem putārēs nisi esset generis eius ut saepe incipere saepe dēsinere videātur**, PLIN., *Ep.*, IX. 4, 1; *I should be afraid of your thinking the speech of immoderate length, if it were not of such kind as to produce the effect of often beginning, often ending.* **Ō ego nē possim tālēs sentire dolōrēs quam māllem in gelidis montibus esse lapidis!** TIB., II. 4, 7.

### 518. Sequence of Tenses after an Infinitive or Participle.

—When a subordinate clause depends on an Infinitive or Participle, Gerund or Supine, the tense of that clause follows the tense of the Finite verb, if the Finite verb is Past ; if the Finite verb is Present, it follows the tense that the dependent verb would have had, if it had been independent.

<b>Dicit sē interrogāre</b> (original interrogō), <i>He says that he is asking,</i>	{	quid agās,	<i>what you are doing.</i>
quid ēgerīs,		<i>what you have done.</i>	
quid āctūrus sis,		<i>what you are going to do (will do).</i>	

<b>Dicit sē interrogāsse</b> (original interrogāvi), <i>He says that he asked,</i>	{	quid agerēs,	<i>what you were doing.</i>
quid ēgissēs,		<i>what you had done.</i>	
<b>Dixit sē interrogāre</b> (original interrogō), <i>He said that he was asking,</i>		quid āctūrus essēs,	<i>what you were going to do (would do).</i>

<b>Mihī interrogantī,</b> <i>when I ask him,</i> (literally : to me asking),	{	quid agat,	<i>what he is doing,</i>	{	nōn re-
		quid ēgerit,	<i>what he has done,</i>		spondet,
		quid āctūrus sit,	<i>what he is going to do (will do),</i>		<i>he gives no answer.</i>

<b>Mihī interrogantī,</b> <i>when I asked him,</i> (literally : to me asking),	{	quid ageret,	<i>what he was doing,</i>	{	nōn re-
		quid ēgisset,	<i>what he had done,</i>		spondit,
		quid āctūrus esset,	<i>what he was going to do,</i>		<i>he gave no answer.</i>

**Apud Hypanim fluvium Aristotelēs ait bēstiōlās quāsdam nāsci quae ūnam diem vivant**, C., *Tusc.*, I. 39, 94 (650). **Satis mihī multa verba fēcisse videor quārē esset hōc bellum necessārium**, C., *Imp.*, IO, 27; *I think I have said enough (to show) why this war is necessary.* **Apellēs pictōrēs eōs**



**peccāre dicēbat qui nōn sentirent quid esset satis**, C., *Or.*, 22, 73; *Apelles used to say that those painters blundered who did not perceive what was (is) enough.* **Athēniēnsēs Cyrsilum quendam suādentem ut in urbe manērent lapidibus obruērunt**, C., *Off.*, III. 11, 48 (546). **Cupīdō incēssit animōs iuvenum sciscitandī ad quem eōrum rēgnū Rōmānū esset ventūrum**, L., I. 56, 10; *the minds of the young men were seized by the desire of inquiring to which of them the kingdom of Rome would come.* **Miserunt Delphōs cōsultum quid facerent**, NEP., II. 2, 6; *they sent to Delphi to ask the oracle what they should do.* See 265.

REMARK.—Nevertheless examples are not unfrequent where the sequence of the governing verb is retained: **Videor mihi grātum fēcisse Siculīs quod eōrum iniuriās meō periculō sim persecūtus**, C., *Verr.*, II. 6, 15; *I seem to have pleased the Sicilians, in that I have followed up their injuries at my own risk* (on account of the coincidence, 513, n. 3).

**519. Original Subjunctives in Dependence.**—I. The Potential of Present or Future after a Past tense goes into the Past; the same is true of Deliberative Questions (465). On the other hand, the Potential of the Past must be retained even after a Present tense (467).

**Videō causās esse permultās quae [Titum Rōscium] impellerent**, C., *Rose. Am.*, 33, 92; *I see that there are very many causes which might have impelled Titus Roscius.* **Quaerō ā tē cūr Gāium Cornēlium nōn dēfenderem**, C., *Val.*, 2, 5 (467).

2. On the behaviour of Conditional Subjunctives in dependence see 597, R. 4.

REMARK.—The Sequence of Tenses is not unfrequently deranged by the attraction of parenthetic clauses or, especially in long sentences, by the shifting of the conception. Examples are C., *Balb.*, I. 2; *Ph.*, III. 15, 39; *Ac.*, II. 18, 56, and many others.

#### USE OF THE REFLEXIVE IN SUBORDINATE SENTENCES.

**520.** In subordinate clauses, the Reflexive is used with reference either to the subject of the principal, or to the subject of the subordinate, clause; and sometimes first to the one and then to the other.

**521.** The Reflexive is used of the principal subject when reference is made to the thought or will of that subject; hence, in Infinitive Sentences, in Indirect Questions, in Sen-

tences of Design, and in Sentences which partake of the Oblique Relation.

**Sentit animus sē vī suā, nōn aliēnā movērī**, C., *Tusc.*, I. 23, 55; *the mind feels that it moves by its own force, (and) not by that of another.* **Quaesivērunt num sē esset etiam morī prohibitūrus**, C., *Tusc.*, v. 14, 42 (516). **Pompēius ā mē petīvit ut sēcum et apud sē essem cottidiā**, Cf. C., *Att.*, v. 6, 1; *Pompey asked me to be with him, and at his house, daily.* **Paetus omnēs librōs quōs frāter suus reliquisset mihi dōnāvit**, C., *Att.*, II. 1, 12; *Paetus presented to me all the books (as he said) that his brother had left (quōs frāter eius reliquerat, would be the statement of the narrator).*

REMARKS.—1. Sentences of Tendency and Result have forms of **is**, when the subj. is not the same as that of the leading verb; otherwise the Reflexive :

**Tarquinus sic Servium diligēbat ut is eius vulgō habērētur filius**, C., *Rep.* II. 21, 38; *Tarquin loved Servius so that he was commonly considered his son.* But **Tanta opibus Etrūria erat ut iam nōn terrās solum sed mare etiam fāmā nōminis sui implēsset**, L., I. 2, 5; *so great in means (= so powerful) was Etruria that she had already filled not only the land, but even the sea, with the reputation of her name.*

2. The Reflexive may refer to the real agent, and not to the grammatical subj. of the principal clause. (309, 2.)

**Ā Caesare invitor sibi ut sim lēgātus**, C., *Att.*, II. 18, 3; *I am invited by Caesar (= Caesar invites me) to be lieutenant to him.*

Especially to be noted is the freer use of **suus** (309, 4). The other forms are employed chiefly in reflexive formulæ (309, 3), as **sē recipere**, *to withdraw, etc.*

**(Rōmānī) sui colligendi hostibus facultātem (nōn) relinquunt**, CAES., *B.G.*, III. 6, 1 (309, 3).

3. The Reflexive is used in general sentences, as *one, one's self, etc.* (309, 1): **Dēforme est dē sē ipsum praedicāre**, C., *Off.*, I. 38, 137; *it is unseemly to be bragging about one's self.*

With the Inf. this follows naturally from 420.

4. In Indic. relative sentences, which are mere circumlocutions (505), **is** is the rule:

**Sōcratēs inhonestam sibi crēdidit orātiōnem quam ei Lysiās reō composuerat**, QUINT., II. 15, 30; *Socrates believed the speech which Lysias had composed for him when he was arraigned, dishonoring to him.*

Sometimes, however, the Reflexive is put contrary to the rule:

**Metellus in iis urbibus quae ad sē dēfēcērant praesidia impōnit**, S., *Jug.*, 61, 1; *Metellus put garrisons in those towns which had gone over to him; regularly, ad eum.*

**Ille habet quod sibi dēbēbātur**, PETR., 43, 1; *he has his due; regularly, ei.*

5. Sometimes the Demonstrative is used instead of the Reflexive, because the narrator presents his point of view:

**Solōn, quō tūtior vīta ēius esset, furere sē simulāvit**, C., *Off.*, I. 30, 108; *Solon feigned madness that his life might be the safer.* (The notion of Result intrudes.) **Pompēius Ignēs fieri prohibuit, quō occultior esset ēius adventus**, CAES., *B. C.*, III. 30, 5; *Pompey forbade fires to be kindled in order that his approach might be the better concealed.*

NOTES.—1. Occasionally, principally in early Latin, the Reflexive seems to be used with the force merely of a third personal pronoun:

**Vitis si macra erit, sarmenta sua conciditō minūtē**, CATO, *Agr.*, 37, 3.

But sentences like **eum fecisse aiunt quod sibi faciendum fuit** (PL., *Poen.*, 956), where the relative clause is but a circumlocution for **officium suum**, belong properly under II. 4. Similarly, C., *Inv.*, I. 33, 55. In the sentence, **Cicerō tibi mandat, ut Aristodēmō idem dē sē respondeās quod dē frātre suō respondisti** (C., *Att.*, II. 7, 5), **dē frātre ēius** would jar on account of the **sē** to which it refers.

2. Examples of Reflexives pointing both ways:

**[Rōmānī] lēgātōs misērunt qui ā [Prūsia] peterent nō inimicissimum suum (= Rōmānōrum) apud sē (= Prūsiam) habēret**, NEP., XXIII. 12, 2; *the Romans sent ambassadors to ask Prusias not to keep their bitterest enemy at his court.* **Agrippa Atticum flēns orābat atque obsecrābat ut sē sibi suisque reservāret**, (C. NEP., XXV. 22, 2; *Agrippa begged and conjured Atticus with tears to save himself [Atticus] for him [Agrippa] and for his own family [Atticus].*

Hopeless ambiguity:

**Hērēs meus dare illi damnās estō omnia sua**, QUINT., VII. 9, 12; *my heir is to give him all that is his.*

3. For the sake of clearness, the subj. of the leading sentence is not unfrequently referred to in the form of the Demonstrative instead of the Reflexive:

**[Helvētī] Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs existimābant vel vī coāctūrōs ut per suōs finēs eōs ire paterentur**, CAES., *B. G.*, I. 6, 3; *the Helvetians thought that they would persuade or force the Allobroges to let them [the Helvetians] go through their territory.*

4. **Ipse** is always used in its proper distinctive sense; so, when it represents the speaker in **Ō. O.** (660.)

### Ēius and Suī.

522. **Alexander moriēns ānulum suum dederat Perdiccāe**, NEP., XVIII. 2, 1; *Alexander, [when] dying, had given his ring to Perdicas.*

**Perdiccās accēperat ēius ānulum**, *Perdicas had received his ring.*

**Quārē Alexander dēclārāverat sē rēgnum ei commendāsse**, *thereby, Alexander had declared that he had committed the kingdom to him.*

**Ex quō Perdiccās cōniēcerat eum rēgnum sibi commendāsse**, *from this Perdicas had gathered that he had committed the kingdom to him.*

**Ex quō omnēs cōniēcerant eum rēgnum ei commendāsse**, *from this, all had gathered that he had committed the kingdom to him.*

**Perdiccās pōstulāvit ut sē rēgem habērent eum Alexander ānulum sibi dedisset**, *Perdicas demanded that they should have him for king, as Alexander had given the ring to him.*

**Amici pōstulāverunt ut omnēs eum rēgem habērent eum Alexander ānu-**

*lum ei dedisset*, (his) friends demanded that all should have him for king, as Alexander had given the ring to him. (Lattmann and Müller.)

*Ita sē gesserat Perdiccās ut ei rēgnum ab Alexandrō commendārētur*, Perdiccas had so behaved himself that the kingdom was intrusted to him by Alexander.

## OBJECT SENTENCES.

**523.** Verbs of Doing, Perceiving, Conceiving, of Thinking and Saying, often take their object in the form of a sentence.

NOTES.—1. These sentences are regarded, grammatically, as neuter substantives. The Accusative of neuter substantives is employed as a Nominative. Hence, a passive or intransitive verb may take an object sentence as a subject.

2. To object sentences belong also Dependent Interrogative clauses, which have been treated elsewhere for convenience of reference. See 452, 1, N., 460, 467.

### 1. Object Sentences introduced by QUOD.

**524.** Clauses which serve merely as periphrases (circumlocutions) or expansions of elements in the leading sentence are introduced by *quod*, *that*.

NOTES.—1. This usage seems to be in origin explanatory; that is, a demonstrative in the leading clause is explained by the *quod* clause. But as the relative can always include the antecedent demonstrative, the prevailing usage is without an antecedent. In any case, however, the connection is essentially relative.

2. The original relation of *quod* and its antecedent is adverbial. They are Accusatives of Extent, *that* = *in that*, and are to be classed under the Inner Object (332). But after transitive verbs *quod* and its antecedent are felt as Outer Objects, though whenever the notion of Cause intrudes (*in that* = *because*), the original relation comes back, as in causal sentences proper.

3. The antecedent demonstrative (whether omitted or inserted) would therefore be either the direct object of the verb or it would be in adverbial or prepositional relation. We have then two uses of the explanatory clause; (a) with verbs, with or without an antecedent demonstrative; (b) as explanatory of an antecedent (expressed or implied) in adverbial relation to the verb or dependent upon a preposition.

**525. I. Quod** (*the fact that, the circumstance that, in that*) is used to introduce explanatory clauses, after verbs of Adding and Dropping, and after verbs of Doing and Happening with an adverb.

*Addē hūc quod perferri litterae nullā condiōne potuerunt*, POLLIO (C., *Fam.*, x. 31, 4); *add to this the fact that letters could under no circumstances be got through*. *Addē quod ingenuās didicisse fideliter artes emollit mōrēs nec sinit esse ferōs*, Ov., *Pont.*, II. 9, 47; *add (the fact) that to have acquired faithfully the accomplishments (education) of a gentleman, softens the character, and does not let it be savage*. *Prætereō quod*



*eam sibi domum dēlēgit*, C., *Cluent.*, 66, 188; *I pass over the fact that he chose that house for himself.* *Bene facis quod mē adiuuās*, C., *Fin.*, III. 4, 16; *you do well (in) that you help me.* *Accidit perincommodē quod eum nūquam vidisti*, C., *Att.*, I. 17, 2; *it happened very unfortunately that you saw him nowhere.* *Bene mihi ēvenit quod mittor ad mortem*, C., *Tusc.*, I. 41, 97; *it is fortunate for me that I am sent to death (execution).*

NOTES.—1. Of verbs of Adding *adicere* is introduced by LIVY, *addere* is cited once each from ACCIUS (209, R.) and TERENCE (*Ph.*, 168), then more often from LUCRETIVS, HORACE, and OVID, but not from CICERO and VERGIL. *Accēdere* is the passive of *addere* and occurs at all periods. Of verbs of Dropping, only *praetereō*, *mittō*, and *omitto* (C., *Att.*, VIII. 3, 9) are cited (all classical).

2. *Esse* is found mostly in the combinations *quid (hōc) est quod*, *why is it that, this is why*, which are confined to early Latin: *Scin quid est quod ego ad tē veniō?* PL., *Men.*, 677; *hōc est quod ad vōs veniō*, PL., *St.*, 127. *Est quod, nihil est quod*, etc., occur here and there later, but the effect of the negative on the mood is noteworthy. Compare positive *sed est quod suscēset tibi* (TER., *And.*, 448); *there is something that makes him angry with you*, with negative *nihil est iam quod mihi suscēseās* (PL., *Merc.*, 317); *there is nothing to make you angry with me.*

3. To this group belongs the exclamatory interrogation *Quid? quod*, or *quid quod* — *? what of this, that?*

*Quid quod simulāc mihi collibitum est praestō est imāgō?* C., *N.D.*, I. 38, 108; *what is to be said of the fact that the image presents itself as soon as I see fit?* (*Nay, does not the image present itself?*)

4. The use of *quod* after verbs of Doing and Happening is found first in CICERO; PLAUTUS uses *quia* in this construction.

5. With several of the above-mentioned verbs *ut* can be employed, as well as *quod* (*ut*, of the tendency—*quod*, of the fact):

*Ad Appi Claudii senectūtem accēdēbat ut etiam caecus esset*, C., *Cal.M.*, 6, 16 (553, 4), or, *quod caecus erat.* *Accēdit quod patrem plūs etiam quam ipse scit amō*, C., *Att.*, XIII. 21, 7; *besides, I love the father even more than he himself knows.*

But when the action is prospective or conditional, *ut* must be used:

*Additur ad hanc dēfinitōnem ā Zēnōne rēctē ut illa opiniō praesentis mali sit recēs*, C., *Tusc.*, III. 31, 75.

6. *Quod* with verbs of Motion as an adverbial Acc. is confined to early Latin and to *veniō* (PL., *Men.*, 677) and *mittō* (PL., *Ps.*, 639).\*

7. The extension of *quod* to *verba sentiendī et dicendī* is very unusual. One example in early Latin (PL., *Asin.*, 52) is much disputed; suspicious examples are C., *Fam.*, III. 8, 6; CAES., *B.C.*, I. 23, 3, but a certain example is in *b.Hisp.* (10, 2), *renūntiāverunt quod habērent*. The only case in Augustan poets is V., *A.*, IX. 289; it is doubtful in LIVY; perhaps twice in TACITUS (*Ann.*, III. 54; XIV. 6). In later Latin, from PETRONIUS on, it becomes frequent.

2. *Quod* (*in that, as to the fact that*) is used to introduce explanatory clauses after demonstratives (expressed or implied), independent of the leading verb. See 627, R. 2.

*Mihī quidem videntur hominēs hāc rē māximē bēstils praestāre, quod loqui possunt*, C., *Inv.*, I. 4; *to me men seem to excel beasts most in this, that they have the power of speech.* *Praeterquam quod fieri nōn potuit, nō fingi quidem potest*, C., *Div.*, II. 12, 28; *besides the fact that this could not be done, it could not even be made up.* *Nīl habet infelix paupertās*



*dūrius in sē quam quod (= id quod) rīdiculōs hominēs facit*, JUV., III. 152 ; *unhappy poverty hath in itself nothing harder (to bear) than that it makes people ridiculous*. *Māgnū beneficium [est] nātūrāe quod necesse est morī*, SEN., *E.M.*, 101, 14 (204). *Quod spirō et placeō, si placeō, tuum est*, H., *O.*, IV. 3, 24 ; *that I do breathe and please, if that I please, is thine*.

NOTES.—1. In early usage the antecedent is not common, but it is employed very often by CICERO, for the purposes of argument.

2. Prepositional usages with the Abl. are *ex eō, dē eō, in eō, prō eō, cum eō quod*. Of these *cum eō quod*, with the proviso that, is very rare, occurring but once in CICERO (*Att.*, VI. 1, 7). The prepositional usages with the Acc. are *ad id quod* (only in LIVY) ; *super id quod* (only in TACITUS) ; *praeter quod* (FLORUS and late writers) ; *prae quod* (PLAUTUS only). Similar is *exceptō quod* (HOR., QUINT.). As *praeter* and *super* are comparative in force, we find *praeter quam quod* (early Latin, CIC., and later), *super quam quod* (only in LIVY). Similar to *praeter quod* is *nisi quod* (PLAUT., CICERO [not *Orations*], SALL., LIVY, and later). *Tantum quod = nisi quod*, once in CICERO (*Verr.*, I. 45, 116) and is rare ; *tantum quod*, temporal, “just,” is colloquial, and found first in CICERO’s *Letters*, then not till the post-Augustan period.

3. *Quod*, “as to the fact that,” is combined also with the Subj. in early Latin : *quod ille gallinam sē sectārī dicat*, etc. (PL., *M.G.*, 162). This is explained as being the Potential Subj., inasmuch as all the examples cited involve supposed statements or actions of a second or third (often indefinite) person, which the speaker merely wishes to anticipate. The usage is occasional, also, later : C., *Pis.*, 27, 66 ; *Verr.*, v. 68, 175, and sporadically in FRONTO and GAIUS. Sometimes the idea of Partial Obliquity enters, as in C., *Br.*, 18, 73, *quod aequālis fuerit Līvius, minor fuit aliquantō* ; *Inv.*, II. 29, 89, (reading doubtful).

In general the usage of *quod*, “as to the fact that,” is familiar. CICERO uses it often in his *Letters*. But CAESAR is fond of it too. TACITUS has it but once (*Dial.*, 25).

3. The reigning mood is the Indicative. The Subjunctive is only used as in *Ōrātiō Obliqua*.

*Cum Castam accūsārem nihil magis pressī quam quod accūsātor ēius prae-  
vāricātiōnis crimine corruisset*, PLIN., *Ep.*, III. 9, 34 ; *when I accused  
Casta there was no point that I laid more stress on than (what I stated)  
“that her accuser had gone to pieces under a charge of collusion.”*

REMARK.—Verbs of Emotion, such as Rejoicing, Sorrowing, etc., take *quod* with the Indic. or Subjunctive. See Causal Sentences, 539.

## II. Object Sentences, with Accusative and Infinitive.

526. *Preliminary Observation*.—On the simple Infinitive as an object, see 423.

The Inf., as a verbal predicate, has its subject in the Accusative. (420.)

527. Active verbs of Saying, Showing, Believing, and Perceiving (*verba sentiendī et declārandī*), and similar expressions, take the Accusative and Infinitive :

*Thalēs Milēsius aquam dixit esse initium rērum*, C., *N.D.*, I. 10, 25 ;

*Thales of Miletus said that water was the first principle of things.* [Solōn] *furere sē simulāvit*, C., *Off.*, i. 30, 108; *Solon pretended to be mad.* *Medicī causā morbi inventā cūratiōnēm esse inventam putant*, C., *Tusc.*, III. 10, 23; *physicians think that, (when) the cause of disease (is) discovered, the method of treatment is discovered.* *Volucrēs vidēmus fingere et cōstruere nidōs*, C., *Or.*, II. 6, 23; *we see that birds fashion and build nests.* *Audiet civēs acuisse ferrum*, H., *O.*, i. 2, 21; [the youth] *shall hear that citizens gave edge to steel.* *Tīmāgenēs auctor est omnium in litteris studiōrum antiquissimam mūsicēn extitisse*, QUINT., i. 10, 19; *Timagenes is the authority (for the statement) that of all intellectual pursuits music was the most ancient.*

The sentence very often passes over into the Acc. and Inf. (Ō. O.) without any formal notice.

REMARKS.—1. *Verba sentiendī* comprise two classes, those of (a) Actual and those of (b) Intellectual Perception. Some verbs, such as *sentire*, *vidēre*, *cernere*, *audire*, belong to both classes. Otherwise the most common are:

(a) *Cōspiciārī*, *cōspicere*, *aspicere*, *sūspicere*, *prōspicere*, also rarely *tuērī* and *somniāre* (early).

(b) *Intellegere*, *cōgnōscere*, *comperire*, *scire*, *nescire*, and less commonly, but Ciceronian, *discere*, *ignōrāre*, *accipere*, *animadvertere*, *perspicere*, etc.

2. *Verba dēclārandī* can likewise be divided into two classes: (a) those of Actual and (b) those of Intellectual Representation; but the classes often fade into each other, or, rather, a verb of Intellectual Representation can be readily used as one of Actual Representation. In general, verbs of Intellectual Representation are those of Thinking, Remembering, Belief and Opinion, Expectation, Trust and Hope. Verbs of Actual Representation are those of Saying, Showing, Approving, Boasting, Pretending, Promising, Swearing, Threatening, Accusing (the last have more often *quod*). Verbs of Concluding belong always to both classes. The principal of these verbs are: *putāre*, *dūcere*, *arbitrārī*, *cēnāre*, *sūspiciārī*, *crēdere*, *existimāre*, *meminisse*, *cōnfidēre*, *spērāre*, *dēspērāre*. Then *dīcere*, *ēdicere*, *affirmāre*, *cōnfirmāre*, *aiō* (rare), *loquī* (rare), *negāre*, *fatērī*, *nārrāre*, *trādere*, *scribere*, *nūntiāre*, *ostendere*, *probāre*, *glōriārī*, *dēmōnstrāre*, *persuādēre*, *significāre*, *pollicērī*, *prōmittere*, *minārī*, *simulāre*, *dissimulāre*, etc.; *conclūdere*, *colligere*, *efficere*. Also *pōnere*, *to suppose* (rare), *facere*, *to represent*. Similar expressions are *spēs est*, *opiniō est*, *fāma est*, *auctor sum*, *tēstis sum*, *certiōrem aliquem facere*, etc.

3. When the subj. of the Inf. is a personal or reflexive pronoun, that subj. may be omitted—chiefly with Fut. Inf.—and then *esse* also is dropped. This occurs rarely in CICERO, more frequently in early Latin, CAESAR, and later.

**Refrāctūrōs carcerem minābantur**, L., VI. 17, 6; *they threatened to break open the jail.*

4. The simple Inf. is often used in English, where the Latin takes Acc. and Infinitive. This is especially true of verbs of Hoping and Promising. **Spērō mē hōc adeptūrum esse**, *I hope to (that I shall) obtain this.* **Prōmittēbat sē ventūrum esse**, *he promised to (that he would) come.*

5. When the Acc. with the Inf. is followed by a dependent Acc., ambiguity may arise :

**Āiō tē, Aeacidā, Rōmānōs vincere posse** (C., *Div.*, II. 56, 116), in which **tē** may be subject or object.

Real ambiguity is to be avoided by giving the sentence a passive turn :

**Āiō ā tē, Aeacidā, Rōmānōs vinci posse**, *I affirm that the Romans can be conquered by thee, son of Aeacus.*

**Āiō tē, Aeacidā, ā Rōmānīs vinci posse**, *I affirm that thou, son of Aeacus, canst be conquered by the Romans.*

When the context shows which is the real subj., formal ambiguity is of no importance. But see QUINT., VII. 9, 10.

NOTES.—1. Verbs of Perception and Representation take the Part. to express the actual condition of the object of Perception or Representation (536). As there is no Pr. Part. pass., the Inf. must be used, and thus the difference between Intellectual and Actual Perception is effaced, sometimes even in the active, and, in fact, the use of the Part. is confined to authors who are consciously influenced by a rivalry with the Greek.

**Audiō civēs acuentēs ferrum**, (J. II., O., I. 2, 21; *I hear citizens sharpen(ing) the steel.* **Audiō ā civibus acui ferrum**, *I hear that the steel is sharpened by citizens; or, the steel as it is sharpened by citizens.* **Octāvium (dolōre) cōfici vidī**, C., *Fin.*, II. 28, 93; *I have seen Octavius (when he was) wearing out with anguish.* **Vidī histriōnēs flentēs ēgredi**, QUINT., VI. 2, 35; *I have seen actors leave the stage weeping.*

**(Platō) ā Deō aedificārī mundum facit**, C., *N.D.*, I. 8, 19; *Plato makes out that the universe is built by God.* **Polyphēmum Homērus cum ariete conloquentem facit**, C., *Trusc.*, v. 39, 115 (536). **Fac, quaesō, quī ego sum esse tē**, C., *Fam.*, VII. 23, 1; *suppose, I pray, yourself to be me.*

2. The (Greek) attraction of the predicate of the Inf. into the Nom. after the Verb of Saying or Thinking, is poetical; the first example is PL., *Asin.*, 634.

**Phasēlus ille, quem vidētis, hospitēs, ait fuisse nāvium celerrimus**, CAT., IV. 1; *that pinnacle yonder, which or ee, my stranger guests, declares she used to be (claims to have been) the fastest craft afloat.*

There is one example in CICERO (*Agr.*, II. 21, 57).

3. The use of the Acc. and Inf. with **verba dēclārandī** is an outgrowth of the use after verbs of Creation (423), just as in English "I declare him to be," is an extension of "I make him to be," in which Acc. and Inf. have each its proper force. This is the origin of the so-called **Ōrātiō Oblīqua**, or Indirect Discourse, which represents not the exact language used, but the general drift, and in which the tenses of the Inf. seem to represent approximately the tenses of the Indicative. It was to complete the scheme of the Tenses that the Fut. Inf. was developed, and this is the sole use of that tense. The use of the Acc. and Inf. after **verba sentiendī**, like the use in English "I see him go," is more primitive, but the original case of the Inf. is no longer felt.

## Nominative with Infinitive.

**528.** Passive verbs of Saying, Showing, Believing, and Perceiving :

1. In the Simple tenses prefer the personal construction, in which the Accusative Subject of the Infinitive appears as the Nominative Subject of the leading verb.

2. In the Compound tenses prefer the impersonal construction, which is the rule with Gerund and Gerundive.

Thus, instead of

*Trādunt Homērum caecum fuisse, they say that Homer was blind,*  
we should have,

*Trāditur Homērus caecus fuisse, Homer is said to have been blind,*  
or,

[*Trāditum*] *est Homērum caecum fuisse, C., Tusc., v. 39, 114 ; there is a tradition that Homer was blind.*

[*Aristaeus*] *inventor olei esse dicitur, C., Verr., iv. 57, 128 ; Aristaeus is said to be the inventor of oil. Terenti fabellae propter elegantiam sermonis putabantur à Laeliō scribi, C., Att., vii. 3, 10 ; Terence's plays, on account of the elegance of the language, were thought to be written by Laelius. [Si Vēiōs migrābimus] amississe patriam vidēbimur, L., v. 53, 5 ; if we remove to Vei, we shall seem to have lost our country. Reus damnātum iri vidēbātur, Quint., ix. 2, 88 (435, N. 4). Crēditur Pŷthago-rae auditōrem fuisse Numam, L., xl. 29, 8 ; it is believed that Numa was a hearer of Pythagoras.*

But :

[*Venerem*] *Adōnidī nūpsisse prōditum est, C., N. D., iii. 23, 59 ; it is recorded that Venus married Adonis. (Philōnem) existimandum est disertum fuisse, C., Or., i. 14, 62 ; we must suppose that Philo was eloquent.*

REMARKS.—1. The impersonal construction is the rule if a Dat. is combined with the verb : *mihī nūtiābātur Parthōs trānsisse Euphrātem, C., Fam., xv. 1, 2 ; it was announced to me that the Parthians had crossed the Euphrates.*

2. Various peculiarities are noteworthy in the matter of these verbs. Thus, *dicitur* usually means *it is maintained, dictum est, it is said. Crēditur, etc.* (impersonal), is the regular form in classical prose ; the personal construction is poetical and late. *Vidēri* is used, as a rule, personally ; the impersonal construction *vidētur* is rare. The active forms *trādunt, crēdunt, etc.*, are everywhere common.

NOTES.—1. In early Latin the personal construction is found with **arguī, cluēre** (a virtual passive), **dicī, existimārī, invenīrī, iubērī, nūntiārī, perhibērī, reperīrī**. All these, except **cluēre**, are retained in the classical period. CICERO and CAESAR add twenty-five new verbs, and from this time on the construction increases.

2. Virtual passives, on the analogy of **cluēre**, are rare ; **appārēre, cōnstāre, venīre in sūspiciōnem**, are Ciceronian ; so also **opus est** in [C.], *Fam.*, XI. 11, 2, and perhaps *TER.*, *And.*, 337.

3. A second clause following a Nom. with the Inf. takes its subj. in the Accusative C., *Or.*, II. 74, 299.

4. In verbs of Saying, except **dīcō** (compare *TAC.*, *Ann.*, IV. 34, 3), the personal construction is confined to the third person. The poets are free in treating verbs under this head.

### Tenses of the Infinitive with Verba Sentiendī et Dēclārandī.

**529.** The Infinitive denotes only the stage of the action, and determines only the relation to the time of the leading verb (281).


**530.** After verbs of Saying, Showing, Believing, and Perceiving, and the like,

The Present Infinitive expresses contemporaneous action ;

The Perfect Infinitive expresses prior action ;

The Future Infinitive expresses future action.

REMARK.—The action which is completed with regard to the leading verb may be in itself a continued action. So in English: *I have been studying, I had been studying*. Hence, the Impf. Indic. (*I was studying*) is represented in this dependent form by the Pf. Inf., because it is prior to the leading verb.

 In this table the Present is taken as the type of the Principal, the Imperfect as the type of the Historical, Tenses.

#### 531. Contemporaneous Action.

ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
P. T. <b>Dicit: tē errāre,</b> <i>He says, that you are going wrong,</i>	<b>tē dēcipī,</b> <i>that you are (being) deceived (217, R.)</i>
H. T. <b>Dicēbat: tē errāre,</b> <i>He was saying, that you were going wrong,</i>	<b>tē dēcipī,</b> <i>that you were (being) deceived.</i>

#### Prior Action.

P. T. <b>Dicit: tē errāsse,</b> <i>He says, that you have gone wrong,</i> <i>that you went wrong,</i> <i>that you have been going wrong,</i>	<b>tē dēceptum esse,</b> <i>that you have been (are) deceived,</i> <i>that you were deceived (AOR.),</i> <i>(that people have been deceiving you)</i>
---	--



<b>H. T. Dicēbat: tē errāsse,</b> <i>He was saying, that you had gone wrong,</i> <i>that you went wrong,</i> <i>that you had been going wrong,</i>	<b>tē dēceptum esse,</b> <i>that you had been deceived,</i> <i>that you were deceived (Aor.),</i> <i>(that people had been deceiving you)</i>
---	--

*Subsequent Action.*

<b>P. T. Dicit: tē errātūrum esse,</b> <i>He says, that you (are about to go wrong), will (be) go(ing) wrong,</i>	<b>tē dēceptum iri,</b> <i>that you (are going to) will be deceived.</i>
<b>H. T. Dicēbat: tē errātūrum esse,</b> <i>He was saying, that you were about to (would) go wrong,</i>	<b>tē dēceptu n iri,</b> <i>that you were going to (would) be deceived.</i>

*Periphrastic Future.*

The following form (the *Periphrastic Future*) is necessary when the verb has no Sup. or Fut. participle. It is often formed from other verbs to intimate an interval, which cannot be expressed by other forms, and is more common in the passive than the Fut. Inf. pass. of the paradigms.

<b>P. T. Dicit: fore (futūrum esse) ut errēs (metuās),</b> <b>fore (futūrum esse) ut errāverīs (rare),</b>	<b>fore ut dēcipiāris (metuāris),</b> <b>fore ut dēceptus sis (rare), usually dēceptum fore (not futūrum esse).</b>
<b>H. T. Dicēbat: fore (futūrum esse) ut errārēs (metuerēs),</b> <b>errāssēs (rare),</b>	<b>fore ut dēciperēris (metuerēris),</b> <b>dēceptum fore (rarely: fore ut dēceptus essēs).</b>

NOTES.—1. For examples of the Periphrastic, see 248.

*Carthāginiēnsēs dēbellātum mox fore rēbantur*, L., XXIII. 13, 6; *the Carthaginians thought that the war would soon be (have been) brought to an end*. From *dēbellātum erit*, *it will be (have been) brought to an end*. So in the deponent *adep-tum fore*.

2. Ponderous periphrastics are of rare occurrence. So *fētiālēs dēscrēverunt utrum eōrum fēcisset rēctē factūrum* (L., XXXI. 8); not *fore ut fēcisset*, although the Ō. R. requires *utrum fēcērīs, rēctē fēcērīs*. (244, R. 4.) See Weissenborn's note.

3. *Posse, velle, etc.*, do not require the Periphrastic, and seldom take it. (248, R.) 4. *Spērāre, to hope, prōmittere (pollicērī), to promise*, which regularly take the Fut. Inf., have occasionally the Pr. when an immediate realisation of the hope is anticipated. With *spēs est* the Pr. Inf. is more common.

*Lēgātī veniunt qui polliceantur obsidēs dare*, CAES., B. G., IV. 21, 5; *ambassadors come to promise the giving of (to give) hostages*.

So, too, when the Fut. Inf. is not available, sometimes also when it is, *posse* and the Pr. is a fair substitute. *Tōtius Galliae sēsē potirī posse (= potitūrōs esse) spērānt*, CAES., B. G., I. 3, 8; *they hope they can (will) get possession of the whole of Gaul*. See 423, N. 5.

Of course *spērāre* may be used simply as a verb of Thinking.

## Accusative and Infinitive with Verbs of Will and Desire.

**532.** Verbs of Will and Desire take a Dependent Accusative and Infinitive.

The relation is that of an Object to be Effected.

**SI** vis mē flere, dolendum est primum ipsi tibi, H., A.P., 102; *if you wish me to weep, you must first feel the pang yourself.* **UTRUM** [Milōnis] corporis an P̄thagorae tibi mālīs virēs ingenii dari? C., Cat. M., 10, 33; *which (whether) would you rather have given to you, Milo's strength of body or Pythagoras' strength of mind?* Ipse iubet mortis tē meminisse deus, MART., II. 59 (376). Vitae summa brevis spem nōs vetat inchoāre longam, H., O., I. 4, 15 (423, N. 6). Nēmō ire quemquam publicā prohibet viā, PL., Curc., 35 (389). Germānī vinum ad sē omninō importārī nōn sinunt, CAES., B.G., IV. 2, 6; *the Germans do not permit wine to be imported into their country at all.*

REMARKS.—1. A list of these verbs is given in 423, N. 2.

2. When the subj. of the Inf. is the same as the subj. of the leading verb, the subj. of the Inf. is usually not expressed :

**NI** pārere velis, pereundum erit ante lucernās, JUV., x. 339; *unless you resolve to obey, you will have to perish before candle-light.* **ET** iam māllet equōs numquam tetigisse paternōs, OV., M., II. 182; *and now he could have wished rather never to have touched his father's horses.*

But the subj. may be expressed, and commonly is expressed, when the action of the Inf. is not within the power of the subject; so especially with an Inf. passive:

(Timoleōn) māluit sē diligī quam metuī, NEP., XX. 3, 4; *Timoleon preferred that he should be loved rather than that he should be feared.* **Ego** rūs abitūram mē certō dēcrēvī, TER., Hec., 586. **Prīncipem** sē esse māvult quam vidērī, C., Off., I. 19, 65.

NOTES.—1. On the construction of this class of verbs with **ut** (nē, quōminus), see 546. **Imperō**, *I command*, in model prose takes only the Inf. passive or deponent; in SALLUST, HIRTIUS, CURTIUS, TACITUS, and the Poets sometimes the active.

(Hannibal) imperāvit quam plūrimās venēnātās serpentēs vivās colligī, NEP., 23, 10; *Hannibal ordered as many poisonous serpents as possible to be caught alive.*

**Permittō** seldom takes the Inf. (e.g., C., Verr., v. 9, 22); the Acc. with Inf. begins in TACITUS; **concēdō** takes Inf. pass. only, in classical prose. **Iubeō**, *I bid*; **sinō**, *I let*; **vetō**, *I forbid*; **prohibeō**, *I prohibit*, always have the Inf. of passive verbs. With **sinō** and **vetō** the model construction is Inf. only. **Sinō** takes **ut** occasionally in early and late Latin, **vetō** does not have **nē** till in the post-Ciceronian period. **Iubere** takes **ut** when it is applied to decrees of the Senate, and from LIVY on when used of the orders of generals; **prohibere** takes **nē** and **quōminus**. These verbs may themselves be turned into the passive: **iubeor**, **sinor**, **vetor**, **prohibeor**.

2. After **iubeō**, *I bid*, and **vetō**, *I forbid*, the Inf. act. can be used without a subj. (even an imaginary or indefinite one):

**Iubet reddere**, *he bids return (orders the returning).*

**Vetat adhibere medicinam**, C., *Att.*, xvi. 15, 5; *he forbids the administration of medicine*. **Infandum, regina, iubēs renovare dolorem**, V., *A.*, ii. 3; *unspeakable, O queen, the anguish which you bid (me, us) revive*.

3. After **volō, nōlō, mālō** in early Latin, **ut** and the Subjv. is proportionally more common than in the classical time. But with the Potential forms, **velim, mālīm, vellem, māllem**, Cicerō uses only the Subjv. (without **ut**). When **volō** means *maintain*, it takes the Inf. only; see 546, R. 1.

4. It is noteworthy that in classical Prose **cupere** never takes **ut**, while **optāre** never takes the Infinitive.

5. On the use of the Pf. Inf. instead of the Pr. after these verbs, see 537, N. 1.

6. The Poets go much further in using verbs and phrases as expressions of Will and Desire. See 423, N. 4.

### Accusative and Infinitive with Verbs of Emotion.

**533.** Verbs of Emotion take a dependent Accusative and Infinitive, inasmuch as these verbs may be considered as verbs of Saying and Thinking. (542.)

**Salvōm tē advēnisse gaudeō**, Ter., *Ph.*, 286; *I rejoice that you should have arrived safe (to think that you have arrived safe, at your arriving safe)*. **Quod salvos advēnistī**, *that you have arrived safe*. **Quod salvos advēneris**, *that (as you say) you have arrived safe*.

**Inferiōres nōn dolēre [dēbent] sē ā suis dignitatē superārī**, C., *Lael.*, 20 71; *inferiors ought not to consider it a grievance that they are surpassed in rank by their own (friends)*.

REMARKS.—1. This construction, outside of a few verbs, is not common, though found in a wide range of authors. **Gaudēre, laetārī, dolēre, querī** (beginning in Cic.), **mīrārī**, are common; in addition Cicerō uses, rarely, however, more than once each, **maerēre, lūgēre, cōnfici, discruciarī, angī, sollicitārī, indignārī, fremere, dēmīrārī, admirārī, subesse timōrem**. Early Latin shows **ridēre** (NAEV.), **gestire, mihī dolet** (TER.), **maestus sum** (PLAUT.), **cruciārī** (PLAUT.), **lāmentārī** (PLAUT., HOR.), **sūspirāre** (LUCR.), **incendor Irā** (TER.), **ferōx est** (PLAUT.), **invidēre** (PLAUT., HOR.), **formidāre, verērī**, in addition to the common **gaudēre, etc.**, already cited.

2. On the Participle after a verb of Emotion, 536, N. 2.

### Accusative and Infinitive in Exclamations.

**534.** The Accusative with the Infinitive is used in Exclamations and Exclamatory Questions as the object of an unexpressed thought or feeling.

**Hem, mea lūx, tē nunc, mea Terentia, sic vexārī**, C., *Fam.*, xiv. 2, 2; *h'm, light of my life, for you to be so harassed now, Terentia dear*. **Hominemne Rōmānum tam Graecē loqui?** PLIN., *Ep.*, iv. 3, 5; *a Roman speak such good Greek?* (*To think that a Roman should speak such*

good Greek.) **Mēne inceptō dēsistere**—? V., A., I. 37; *I—desist from my undertaking?* **Hinc abire mātrem?** TER., *Hec.*, 612; *mother go away from here?*

REMARKS.—1. Different is **quod**, which gives the ground.

**Ei mihi quod nullis amor est sãnābilis herbis**, OV., *M.*, I. 523; *woe's me that (in that, because) love is not to be cured by any herbs.*

2. On **ut**, with the Subjv. in a similar sense, see 558. Both forms offer an objection.

### Accusative and Infinitive as a Subject.

**535.** The Accusative with the Infinitive may be treated as the Subject of a sentence. The Predicate is a substantive or neuter adjective, an impersonal verb or abstract phrase.

In the English “for –to,” the “for” belongs not to the case but to the Infinitive, but the object relation has been effaced here as it has been in Latin. See 422, N. 1.

**Est inūsītātum rēgem reum capitis esse**, C., *Dei.*, I. I; *it is an extraordinary thing that a king should (for a king to) be tried for his life.* **Facinus est vincire civem Rōmānum**, C., *Verr.*, v. 66, 170; *it is an outrage to put a Roman citizen in chains.* **Necesse est facere sūmptum qui quaerit** (= **eum qui quaerit**) **lucrum**, PL., *As.*, 218; *need is that he make outlay who an income seeks.* **Lēgem brevem esse oportet, quō facilius ab imperitis teneātur**, SEN., *E.M.*, 94, 38; *it is proper that a law should be brief (a law ought to be brief), that it may the more easily be grasped by the uneducated.* **Quid Milōnis intererat interfici Clōdium**, C., *Mil.*, 13, 34 (382, 2). **Opus est tē animō valēre**, C., *Fam.*, XVI. 14, 2 (406, N. 5).

REMARKS.—1. A list of expressions taking the Inf. as a subj. is given in 422, NN.

2. **Oportet**, *it is proper*, and **necesse est**, *must needs*, are often used with the Subjunctive. So also many other phrases with **ut**. (See 557.)

**Necesse** also takes the Dat. of the Person :

**Ut culpent aliī, tibi mē laudāre necesse est**, OV., *Her.*, 12, 131; *let others blame, but you must give me praise.*

3. When the indirect obj. of the leading verb is the same as the subj. of the Inf. the predicate of the subj. is put in the same case as the indirect object : in standard prose chiefly with **licet**, *it is left (free)*; in poetry and later prose with **necesse**, with **satiū est**, *it is better*, **contingit**, *it happens*, **vacat**, *there is room*.

**Licuit esse ōtiōsō Themistoclī**, C., *Tusc.*, I. 15, 33; *Themistocles was free to live a life of leisure.*

The Acc. is occasionally found ; always if the Dat. is not expressed.

**Mediōs esse iam nōn licēbit (nōs)**, C., *Att.*, x. 8, 4; *it will no longer be allowable to be neutral.*

## Object Sentences Represented by the Participle.

**536.** The Participle is used after verbs of Perception and Representation, to express the actual condition of the object of perception or representation.

*Catōnem vidī in bibliothēcā sedentem multis circumfūsum Stōicōrum librīs*, C., *Fin.*, III. 2, 7; *I saw Cato sitting in the library with an ocean of Stoic books about him.* *Prōdiga nōn sentit pereuntem fēmina cōsum*, Juv., VI. 362; *the lavish woman does not perceive (how) the income (is) dwindling.* *Saepe illam audīvī furtīvā vōce loquentem*, Cat., LXVII. 41; *I have often heard her talking in a stealthy (in an under-) tone.* *Gaudē quod spectant oculi tē mille loquentem*, H., *Ep.*, I. 6, 19 (542). *Polyphē-mum Homērus cum ariete conloquentem facit*, C., *Tusc.*, V. 39, 115; *Homēr represents Polyphemus (as) talking with the ram.*

NOTES.—1. This construction is found but once in early Latin (Priso), then in Cicero, Sallust, Nepos, Vitruvius, Livy, Horace. The naturalisation of it is due to Cicero, and other students of Greek models. The poverty of Latin in participles was a serious drawback to the convenient distinction from the Infinitive; and it may be said that the participle was never perfectly at home.

2. On the Inf., see 527, s. 1. The Greek construction of Part. agreeing with the leading Nom. after verbs of Perception and Emotion, is rare and poetical:

*Gaudent scribentēs*, H., *Ep.*, II. 2, 107; *they have joy while writing.* *Sēnsit mediōs delāpsus in hostēs*, V., *A.*, II. 377; *he perceived (it) having fallen (that he had fallen) 'midst the enemy.* *Gaudent perfūsi sanguine frātrum*, V., *Cl.*, II. 510; *they rejoice, bedrenched with brothers' blood.*

**537.** The Perfect Participle Passive is used after verbs of Causation and Desire, to denote impatience of anything except entire fulfilment:

*Si qui voluptātibus dūcuntur missōs faciant honōrēs*, C., *Sest.*, 66, 138; *if any are led captive by sensual pleasures, let them dismiss honours (at once and forever).* *Hūc mandēs si quid rēctē cūrātum vellis*, Ter., *Ad.*, 372; *you must intrust to him whatever you want properly attended to.*

NOTES.—1. After verbs of Will and Desire, the Inf. *esse* is occasionally found with this Part., and hence it may be considered a Pf. Infinitive (280, 2, c). Compare, however, Pf. Part. pass. with *opus est*, *ūsus est* (406).

2. The verbs of Causation thus employed are *cūrāre*, *dare*, *facere*, *reddere*. The usage is most common in early Latin. In the classical period only *missum facere*.

## CAUSAL SENTENCES.

**538.** Causal sentences are introduced:

1. By *quia*, *because*, *quod*, (*in that*) *because*.
2. By *quoniam* (*quom iam*), *now that*, *quandō*, *quandō-* } (Cause  
*quidem*, *since*. } Proper.)



3. By **cum** (quom), *as*. (Inference.)

4. By the Relative Pronoun, partly alone, partly with **ut**, **utpote**, **quippe**, *etc.* (See 626, 634.)

NOTES.—1. **Quod** is the Acc. Sing. neuter, and **quia** is probably the Acc. Pl. neuter from the relative stem. They have accordingly often a correlative demonstrative; so with **quod**: **eō**, **eā** **rē**, **ideō**, **idcirco**, **eā** **grātiā** (in SALLUST only), **hōc**, **hāc** **mente** (H., S., II. 2, 90), **propterea**, and a few combinations with **ob** and **propter**; with **quia** are found **eō**, **eā** **rē**, **ideō**, **idcirco**, **propterea**, and **ergo** (in PLAUTUS only).

2. **Quod** and **quia** differ in classical prose, chiefly in that **quod** is used, and not **quia**, when the causal sentence is at the same time an object sentence.

3. **Quoniam** is originally temporal, and as such is still found in PLAUTUS. The causal use of it becomes much more extensive in classical prose, and, like **quandō** (**quandōquidem**), it is used of *evident* reasons.

4. **Quandō** is used principally as a temporal particle. In a causal sense it is very rare in CICERO (in the *Orations* never, unless compounded with **quidem**), and is not found in CAESAR. The compound with **quidem** is more common.

5. **Quātenus**, *in so far as*, is poetical and in late prose. HORACE shows first example, O., III. 24, 30. VALERIUS M., QUINTILIAN, TACITUS, PLINY MINOR, and SEXTONIUS show occasional examples.

Causal Sentences with **QUOD**, **QUIA**, **QUONIAM**, and **QUANDŌ**.

539. Causal sentences with **quod**, **quia**, **quoniam**, and **quandō** are put in the Indicative, except in oblique relation (Partial or Total).

REMARK.—The other person of the oblique clause may be imaginary, and the writer or speaker may quote from himself indirectly:

**Laetātus sum, quod mihi licēret rēcta dēfendere**, C., *Fam.*, I. 9, 18; *I was glad (to say to myself) that I was free to champion the right.*

540. Causal sentences with **quod**, **quia**, **quoniam**, and **quandō** take the Indicative in Direct Discourse.

**Torquātus filium suum quod is contrā imperium in hostem pūgnāverat necārī iūssit**, S., C., 52, 30; *Torquatus bade his son be put to death because he had fought against the enemy contrary to order(s) [quod pūgnāset = because, as Torquatus said or thought]. Amantēs dē fōrmā iūdicāre nōn possunt, quia sēnsu oculōrum praecipit animus*, QUINT., VI. 2, 6; *lovers cannot judge of beauty, because the heart forestalls the eye. Quia nātūra mūtārī nōn potest idcirco vērae amicitiae sempiternae sunt*, C., *Lael.*, 9, 32; *because nature cannot change, therefore true friendships are everlasting. Neque mē vīxisse paenitet quoniam ita vīxī ut nōn frūstrā mē nātum existumem*, C., *Cat. M.*, 23, 84; *and I am not sorry for having lived, since I have so lived that I think I was born not in vain. Sōlus erō quoniam nōn licet esse tuum*, PROP., II. 9, 46; *I shall be alone since I may not be thine. Voluptās sēmovenda est quandō ad māiōra quaedam nātī sumus*, Cf. C., *Fin.*, v. 8, 21; *pleasure is to be put aside*

*because we are born for greater things.* Erant quibus appetentior fāmae [Helvidius] vidērētur quandō etiam sapientibus cupidō glōriae novissima exiuitur, TAC., *H.*, IV. 6, 1; *there were some to whom Helvidius seemed too eager for fame, since, even from the wise, ambition is the last (infirmity) that is put off.* Sequitur ut liberātōrēs (sint), quandōquidem tertium nihil potest esse, C., *Ph.*, II. 13, 31.

541. Causal sentences with **quod**, **quia**, **quoniam**, and **quandō** take the Subjunctive in Oblique Discourse (Partial or Total).

Noctū ambulābat in publicō Themistoclēs quod somnum capere nōn posset, C., *Tusc.*, IV. 19, 44; *Themistocles used to walk about in public at night because (as he said) he could not get to sleep.* Aristidēs nōnne ob eam causam expulsus est patriā quod praeter modum iūstus esset? C., *Tusc.*, V. 36, 105; *(there is) Aristides; was he not banished his country for the (alleged) reason "that he was unreasonably just"?* [Nō] compōne comās quia sis ventūrus ad illam, Ov., *Rem. Am.*, 679 (517). Quoniam (so most MSS.) ipse prō sē dicere nōn posset, verba fēcit frāter eius Stēsagorās, NEP., I. 7, 5; "*as [Miltiades] could not speak for himself,*" his brother, Stesagoras, made a speech. (Indirect quotation from the speech of Stesagoras.)

A good example is PL., *M. G.*, 1412-15.

NOTES.—1. **Quia** is the usual particle in the causal sense in PLAUTUS, **quod** being very rare; but **quod** is more common in TERENCE, and is the regular particle in classical prose (CAESAR has but one case of **quia**), though the use of **quia** revives in post-classical Latin. CICERO makes a point on the difference in meaning in *Rosc. Am.*, 50, 145: **concedō et quod** (*by reason of the fact that*) **animus aequus est, et quia** (*because*) **necesse est.**

2. A rejected reason is introduced by **nōn quod** with the Subjv. (as being the suggestion of another person). The Indic., which is properly used of excluded facts, is also used of flat denials, like the negative and Indic. in the independent sentence, but the Subjv. is the rule. **Nōn quia** is the rule in early Latin, but classical prose shows very few examples. From LIVY on it becomes common. Other equivalents are **nōn quō**, **nōn eō quod**, **nōn eō quō**; further, **nōn quā** for **nōn quō nōn**. All of these are found with Subjv. only. The corresponding affirmative is given by **sed quod** or **sed quia** indiscriminately, regularly with the Indicative.

Subjunctive:

Pugilēs in iactandis caestibus ingemiscunt, nōn quod doleant, sed quia profundendā vōce omne corpus intenditur venitque plāga vehementior, C., *Tusc.*, II. 23, 56; *boxers in plying the caestus heave groans, not that (as you might suppose) they are in pain, but because in giving full vent to the voice all the body is put to the stretch and the blow comes with a greater rush.* Māiōrēs nostri in dominum dē servō quaerī nōluerunt; nōn quā posset vērū inveniri, sed quia vidēbātur indignum esse, C., *Mil.*, 22, 59; *our ancestors would not allow a slave to be questioned by torture against his master, not because (not as though they thought) the truth could not be got at, but because such a course seemed degrading.* A [Lacedaemoniōrum] exulibus praetor vim arcuerat, nōn quia salvōs vellet sed quia perire causā indictā nōlēbat, L., XXXVIII. 33, 11; *the praetor had ward off violence from the*

*Lacedaemonian exiles, not* (as you might have supposed) *because he wished them to escape, but because he did not wish them to perish with their case not pleaded* (unheard).

The same principle applies to **magis quod** (**quō**), **quia**—**quam quō** (first in CICERO), **quod** (first in SALLUST), **quia** (first in LIVY), with the moods in inverse order.

**Libertātis originem inde, magis quia annum imperium cōsulāre factum est quam quod dēminūtum quidquam sit ex rēgiā potestāte, numerēs**, L., II. 1, 7; *you may begin to count the origin of liberty from that point, rather because the consular government was limited to a year, than because aught was taken away from the royal power.*

Indicative :

**Sum nōn dicam miser, sed certē exercitus, nōn quia multis dēbeō sed quia saepe concurrunt aliquōrum bene de mē meritōrum inter ipsōs contentiōnēs**, C., *Planc.*, 32, 78; *I am, I will not say, wretched, but certainly worried, not because I am in debt to many, but because the rival claims of some who have deserved well of me often conflict.* Compare also H., *S.*, II. 2, 89.

3. Verbs of Saying and Thinking are occasionally put in the Subjv. with **quod** by a kind of attraction. Compare 585, N. 3.

**Impetrāre nōn potui, quod religiōne sē impediri dicerent**, C., *Fam.*, IV. 12, 3; *I could not obtain permission, because they said they were embarrassed (prevented) by a religious scruple (= quod impedirentur, because (as they said) they were prevented).*

This attraction is said to occur not unfrequently in CICERO, several times in CAESAR and SALLUST, but is not cited from any other author. Compare, however, **crēderent**, L., XXI. 1, 3.

4. On the use of **tamquam**, *etc.*, to indicate an assumed reason, see 602, N. 4.

5. **Quandōque** is archaic and rare. It is found first in the Twelve Tables, a few times in CICERO and LIVY, three times in HORACE, and occasionally later.

6. Causal sentences may be represented by a participle (669), or by the relative (626).

### QUOD with Verbs of Emotion.

**542. Quod** is used to give the ground of Emotions and Expressions of Emotion, such as verbs of Joy, Sorrow, Surprise, Satisfaction and Anger, Praise and Blame, Thanks and Complaint.

The rule for the Mood has been given already: 539.

Indicative :

**Gaudē quod spectant oculi tē mille loquentem**, H., *Ep.*, I. 6, 19; *rejoice that a thousand eyes are gazing at you (while you are) speaking.* **Dolet mihi quod tū nunc stomachāris**, C., *ad Br.*, I. 17, 6; *it pains me that you are angry now.* **Quintum paenitet quod animum tuum offendit**, Cf. C., *Att.*, XI. 13, 2 (377, R. 3). **Iuvat mē quod vigent studia**, PLIN., *Ep.*, I. 13, 1; *I am charmed that studies are flourishing.* **Tristis es? indignor quod sum tibi causa doloris**, OV., *Tr.*, IV. 3, 33; *are you sad? I am provoked (with myself) that I am a cause of pain to you.* **Tibi grātiās agō, quod mē omni molestiā liberāsti**, C., *Fam.*, XIII. 62; *I thank you, that you freed me from all annoyance.*

Subjunctive :

**Gaudet miles quod vicerit hostem**, OV., *Tr.*, II. 49; *the soldier rejoices*

*at having conquered the enemy.* **Neque mihi umquam veniet in mentem poenitere quod a me ipse non desciverim**, C., *Att.*, II. 4, 2; *it will never occur to me to be sorry for not having been untrue to myself.* **Laudat Africanum Panaetius quod fuerit abstinens**, C., *Off.*, II. 22, 76; *Panaetius praises Africanus for having been abstinent.* **Nemo est oratorem quod Latine loqueretur admiratus**, C., *Or.*, III. 14, 52; *no one (ever) admired an orator for speaking (good) Latin.* **Socrates accusatus est quod corrumpere iuventutem**, QUINT., IV. 4, 5; *Socrates was accused of corrupting youth.* **Memini gloriari solitum esse Quintum Hortensium quod numquam bello civili interfuisset**, C., *Fam.*, II. 16, 3; *I remember that Quintus Hortensius used to boast of never having engaged in civil war.* **Agunt gratias quod sibi pepercissent**, CAES., *B.C.*, I. 74, 2 (511, R. 1).

REMARK.—This class of verbs may be construed with the Acc. and Inf.: **salvom te advenisse gaudeo** (533); also with **quia**, principally in early Latin, and in Cicero's *Letters*, then occasionally in LIVY, TACITUS, SEXTONIUS, and later. But in Expressions of Praise and Blame, Thanks and Complaint, **quod** is more common. On **cum**, see 564, N. 2.

**Amo te et non neglexisse habeo gratiam**, TER., *Ph.*, 54; *I love you (= much obliged), and I am thankful to you for not having neglected (it).* **Gratulor ingenium non latuisse tuum**, OV., *Tr.*, I. 9, 54; *I congratulate (you) that your genius has not lain hidden.* [**Isocratēs**] **queritur plus honoris corporum quam animorum virtutibus dari**, QUINT., III. 8, 9; *Isocrates complains that more honour is paid to the virtues of the body than to those of the mind.*

NOTES.—1. Perplexing Emotion (Wonder) may be followed by a Conditional, or by a Dependent Interrogative, as in English, but this construction is not found in VERGIL, CAESAR, SALLUST, and is never common.

**Miror si [Tarquinius] quemquam amicum habere potuit**, C., *Laet.*, 15, 54; *I wonder if Tarquin could ever have had a friend.*

Besides **miror** (and **mirum**), there is one case of **gaudeo si** in CICERO (*Ferr.*, IV. 17, 37), and a few cases after expressions of Fear in TACITUS. There are also sporadic cases of **indignari** (**indignitas**) **si**.

2. Noteworthy is the phrase **mirum (-a) ni (nisi)**, *'tis a wonder that—not*, which belongs to the colloquialisms of early Latin (PL., *Capt.*, 820), but reappears once in LIVY.

## SENTENCES OF DESIGN AND TENDENCY.

543. 1. Sentences of Design are commonly called Final Sentences. Sentences of Tendency are commonly called Consecutive Sentences. Both contemplate the end—the one, as an aim; the other, as a consequence.

2. They are alike in having the Subjunctive and the particle **ut** (*how, that*), a relative conjunction.



3. They differ in the Tenses employed. The Final Sentence, as a rule, takes only the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive. Consecutive Sentences may take also Perfect and Pluperfect.

4. They differ in the kind of Subjunctive employed. The Final Sentence takes the Optative. The Consecutive Sentence takes the Potential. Hence the difference in the Negative.

<i>Final</i> : <i>nē</i> (ut <i>nē</i> ),	<i>Consecutive</i> : ut <i>nōn</i> , <i>that not</i> .
<i>nē</i> quis,	ut <i>nēmō</i> , <i>that no one</i> .
<i>nē</i> ūllus,	ut <i>nūllus</i> , <i>that no</i> .
<i>nē</i> umquam, ( <i>nē</i> quandō),	ut <i>numquam</i> , <i>that never</i> ,
<i>nē</i> ūsquā, ( <i>nēcubi</i> ),	ut <i>nūsquā</i> , <i>that nowhere</i> .
<i>nē</i> aut—aut, (ut <i>nēve</i> — <i>nēve</i> ),	ut <i>neque</i> — <i>neque</i> , <i>that neither—nor</i> .

REMARKS.—I. Verbs of Effecting have the Final Sequence.

2. Verbs of Hindering have the sequence of the Final Sentence, but often the signification of the Consecutive.

3. Verbs of Fearing belong to the Final Sentence only so far as they have the Optative Subjunctive; the subordinate clause is only semi-dependent upon the principal, and we have a partial survival of original parataxis.

NOTES.—1. Inasmuch as the Subjv. cannot express a fact, the Latin Consecutive clause does not properly express actual result, but only a tendency, which may, we *infer*, lead to a result. To obviate this difficulty, the Latin has recourse to the circumlocutions with *accidit*, *evenit*, etc.

2. It is to be remarked that the difference between Final and Consecutive often consists only in the point of view. What is final from the point of view of the doer is consecutive from the point of view of the spectator; hence the variation in sequence after verbs of Effecting. A frustrated purpose gives a negative result; hence the variation in negative after verbs of Hindering.

3. Here and there in CICERO, more often in LIVY and later writers, instead of *nēve* (*neu*), a second clause is added by *neque*, the force of the final particle being felt throughout the sentence.

Monitor tuus suādēbit tibi ut hinc discēdās neque mihi verbum ūllum respondeās, C., *Div. in Caec.*, 16, 52; *your adviser will counsel you to depart hence and answer me never a word.*

## FINAL SENTENCES.

544. Final Sentences are divided into two classes :

I. Final Sentences in which the Design is expressed by the particle; Pure Final Sentences (Sentences of Design).

Oportet ēsse, ut vivās, nōn vivere ut edās, [C.], *ad Her.*, iv. 28, 39; *you must eat in order to live, not live in order to eat.*



This form may be translated by, (*in order*) *to*; sometimes by *that may, that might, that*, with the Subjunctive and the like.

II. Final Sentences in which the Design lies in the leading verb (**verba studiī et voluntātis**, verbs of Will and Desire); Complementary Final Sentences.

**Volō utī mihī respondeās**, C., *Vat.*, 7, 17; *I wish you to answer me.*

This form is often rendered by *to*, never by *in order to*, sometimes by *that* and the Subjunctive, or some equivalent.

Of the same nature, but partly Final and partly Consecutive in their sequence, are :

Verbs of Hindering.

Peculiar in their sequence are :

III. Verbs of Fearing.

REMARKS.—I. The use of the Subjv. with Temporal Particles often adds a final sense, inasmuch as the Subjv. regularly looks forward to the future. So **dum, dōnec, quoad** (572), **antequam, priusquam** (577).

2. The general sense of a Final Sentence may also be expressed :

(1) By the Relative **quī** with the Subjunctive. (630.)

(2) By the Genitive of Gerund or Gerundive, with (seldom without) **causā** or **grātiā**. (428, R. 2.)

(3) By **ad** with Gerund and Gerundive. (432.)

(4) By the Dative of the Gerund and Gerundive. (429, 2.)

(5) By the Accusative of the Gerund and Gerundive after verbs of Giving, *etc.* (430.)

(6) By the Accusative Supine after verbs of Motion. (435.)

(7) By the Future Participle Active (post-Ciceronian). (438, N.)

(8) By the Infinitive (poetic and rare). (421, N. 1, a.)

### I. Pure Final Sentences.

545. Pure Final Sentences are introduced by :

1. **Ut** (**utī**) (*how*) *that*, and other relative pronouns and adverbs. (630.)

**Ut** and **nē** are often preceded by a demonstrative expression, such as: **idcirco**, *therefore*; **eō**, *to that end*; **propterea**, *on that account*; **eō cōnsiliō**, *with that design*; **eā causā, rē**, *for that reason*.

2. **Quō** = **ut eō**, *that thereby*; with comparatives, *that the ... — :*

### 3. **Nē**, *that not, lest*, continued by **nēve**, **neu**. (444.)

Oportet esse, ut vivās, nōn vivere ut edās, [C.], *ad Her.*, IV. 28, 39 (544, I.). *Inventa sunt specula, ut homō ipse sē nōsset*, SEN., *N.Q.*, I. 17, 4; *mirrors were invented, to make man acquainted with himself. Ut amēris, amābilis estō*, OV., *A.A.*, II. 107; *that you may be loved (to make yourself loved, in order to be loved), be lovable. Lēgem brevem esse oportet, quō facilius ab imperitis teneātur*, SEN., *E.M.*, 94, 38 (535). [Senex] *serit arborēs, quae alteri saeclo prōsint*, CAECILIUS (C., *Tusc.*, I. 14, 31); *the old man sets out trees, to do good to the next generation. Semper habē Pyladēn aliquem qui cūret Orestem*, OV., *Rem.Am.*, 589; *always have some Pylades, to tend Orestes. [Athēniēnsēs] creant decem praetōrēs qui exercitui praeessent*, NEP., I. 4, 4; *the Athenians make ten generals to command their army. [Māgnēsiam Themistocli Artaxerxēs] urbem dōnārat, quae ei pānem praeberet*, NEP., II. 10, 3; *Artaxerxes had given Themistocles the city of Magnesia, to furnish him with bread. Gallinae pennis foveant pullōs, nē frigore laedantur*, Cf. C., *N.D.*, II. 52, 129; *hens keep (their) chickens warm with (their) wings, that they may not be (to keep them from being) hurt by the cold. Dionysius, nē collum tōnsōri committeret, tondēre filiās suās docuit*, C., *Tusc.*, V. 20, 58 (423, N. 6).

REMARKS.—I. **Ut nē** is found for **nē** with apparently no difference in signification, occasionally at all periods, but not in CAESAR, SALLUST, LIVY. **Quō** without comparative is rare and cited only from PLAUTUS, TERENCE, SALLUST, OVID, and late Latin; **quōnē** (= **ut nē**) is not found till the time of DICTYS; apparent examples in classical Latin are to be otherwise explained. **Quōminus** and **quīn** occur in special uses.

2. **Ut nōn** is used when a particular word is negatived:

*Cōfer tē ad Māllium, ut nōn ēiectus ad aliēnōs sed invitātus ad tuōs isse videāris*, C., *Cat.*, I. 9, 23; *betake yourself to Mallius, that you may seem to have gone not as an outcast to strangers but as an invited guest to your own (friends).*

3. **Ut** and **nē** are used parenthetically at all periods, depending on a suppressed word of Saying or the like.

*Utque magis stupeās lūdōs Paridemque reliquit*, JUV., VI. 87; *and to stun you more (I tell you that) she left Paris and the games.*

The verb of Saying may be inserted: *atque ut omnēs intellegant dicō*, C., *Imp.*, 8, 20; *and that all may understand, I say.*

## II. Complementary Final Sentences.

### A. *Verbs of Will and Desire.*

546. Complementary Final Sentences follow verbs of Willing and Wishing, of Warning and Beseeching, of Urg-

ing and Demanding, of Resolving and Endeavouring (*verba studii et voluntatis*).

1. Positive : *ut*.

*Volō uti mihi respondeās*, C., *Vat.*, 7, 17 (544, II.). (*Phaëthōn*) *optāvit ut in currum patris tolleretur*, C., *Off.*, III. 25, 94; *Phaethon desired to be lifted up into his father's chariot*. *Admoneō ut cottidiē meditēre resistendum esse irācundiae*, C., *Q. F.*, I. 1. 13, 38; *I admonish you to reflect daily that resistance must be made to hot-headedness*. *Ubiī (Caesarem) ōrant, ut sibi parcat*, CAES., *B. G.*, VI. 9, 7; *the Ubi beg Caesar to spare them*. *Sed precor ut possim tūtius esse miser*, Ov., *Tr.*, v. 2, 78 (423, 2). *Exigis ut Priamus nātōrum fūnere lūdat*, Ov., *Tr.*, v. 12, 7; *you exact that Priam sport at (his) sons' funeral*. *Athēniēsēs cum statuerent ut nāvēs cōnsccnderent, Cyrsilum quendam suādentem ut in urbe manērent lapidibus obruērunt*, C., *Off.*, III. 11, 48; *the Athenians, resolving to go on board their ships, overwhelmed with stones (= stoned) one Cyrsilus, who tried to persuade them to remain in the city*.

So also any verb or phrase used as a verb of Willing or Demanding.

*Pŷthia respondit ut moenibus ligneis sē mūnīrent*, NEP., II. 2, 6; *the Pythia answered that they must defend themselves with walls of wood*.

2. Negative : *nē, ut nē*; continued by *nēve (neu)*, and *not*.

*Caesar suis imperāvit nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostēs rēicerent*, CAES., *B. G.*, I. 46, 2; *Caesar gave orders to his (men) not to throw back any missile at all at the enemy*. *Themistoclēs [collēgis suis] praedixit ut nē prius Lacedaemoniōrum lēgātōs dīmitterent quam ipse esset remissus*, NEP., II. 7, 3; *Themistocles told his colleagues beforehand not to dismiss the Lacedaemonian envoys before he were sent back*. *Pompēius suis praedixerat ut Caesaris impetum exciperent nēve sē locō movērent*, CAES., *B. C.*, III. 92, 1; *Pompey had told his men beforehand to receive Caesar's charge and not to move from their position*.

REMARKS.—I. When verbs of Willing and Wishing are used as verbs of Saying and Thinking, Knowing and Showing, the Inf. must be used. The English translation is *that*, and the Indic. : *volō, I will have it (maintain)*, *moneō, I remark*, *persuādeō, I convince*, *dēcernō, I decide*, *cōgō, I conclude*.

[*Moneō*] *artem sine adsiduitate dicendi nōn multum iuvāre*, Cf. [C.], *ad Her.*, I. 1, 1; *I remark that art without constant practice in speaking is of little avail*. *Vix cuiquam persuādēbātur Graeciā omni cēssūrōs (Rōmānōs)*, L., XXXIII. 32, 3; *scarce any one could be persuaded that the Romans would retire from all Greece*. *Nōn sunt isti audiendi qui virtutem dūram et quasi ferream esse quandam volunt*, C., *Lat.*, 13, 48 (313, R. 2). *Est*

*mōs hominum ut nōlint eundem plūribus rēbus excellere*, C., *Brut.*, 21, 84 ; *it is the way of the world not to allow that the same man excels in more things* (than one).

2. When the idea of Wishing is emphatic, the simple Subjv., without *ut*, is employed, and the restriction of sequence to Pr. and Impf. is removed :

*Velim existimēs nēminem cuiquam cāriōrem umquam fuisse quam tē mihi*, C., *Fam.*, I. 9, 24 ; *I wish you to think that no one was ever dearer to any one than you to me*. *Mālō tē sapiēns hostis metuat quam stulti civēs laudent*, L., XXII. 39, 20 ; *I had rather a wise enemy should fear you than foolish citizens should praise you*. *Excūsātum habeās mē rogo, cēno domī*, MART., II. 79, 2 (238). *Hūc ades, insānī feriant sine litora fluctūs*, V., *Ec.*, 9, 43 ; *come hither (and) let the mad waves lash the shores*. *Tam fēlix essēs quam fōrmōsissima vellem*, OV., *Am.*, I. 8, 27 (302). *Vellem mē ad cēnam invitāssēs*, C., *Fam.*, XII. 4, 1 (261, R.). *Occidit occideritque sinās cum nōmine Trōia*, V., *A.*, XII. 828 ; *'tis fallen, and let Troy be fallen, name and all*.

So *iubeō* in poetry and later prose. Compare also *potius quam*, 577, N. 6.

3. *Ut nē* is not used after verbs of negative signification, as *impediō*, *I hinder*, *recūsō*, *I refuse* (548). Otherwise there seems to be no difference in meaning between it and *nē*, except that sometimes the *nē* seems to apply more to a single word in the sentence.

4. On *nēdum*, see 482, 5, R. 2.

NOTES.—1. Such verbs and phrases are : *Willing and Wishing* : *volō*, *nōlō*, *mālō*, *optō*, *studeō*. *Warning and Beseeking* : *hortor*, *adhortor*, *moneō*, *admoneō*, *auctor sum*, *cōnsilium dō*, *orō*, *rogō*, *petō*, *precor*, *pōscō*, *pōstulō*, *flāgitō*, *obsecrō*. *Urging and Demanding* : *suādeō*, *persuādeō*, *cēnseō*, *imperō*, *mandō*, *praeceptiō*, *ēdicō*, *dicō*, *scribō*. *Resolving and Endeavouring* : *statuō*, *cōstituō*, *dēcernō*, *nītor*, *contendō*, *labōrō*, *pūgnō*, *id agō*, *operam dō*, *cūrō*, *videō*, *prōvideō*, *prōspiciō*, *legem ferō*, *lēx est*, *etc.*

2. Substantives of kindred meaning, in combination with the copula or other verbs, take similar constructions. Such are *voluntās*, *cupiditās*, *spēs*, *ārdor*, *auctōritās*, *cōnsilium* (especially in the combination *eō*, *hōc cōnsiliō*), *signum*, *praeceptum*, *exemplum*, *prōpositum*, *officium*, *negōtium*, *mūnus*, *verba*, and *litterae* (with *dare*, *mittere*, *etc.*), *sententia*, *animus* (especially *eō animō*), *condiciō* (especially *eā condiciōne*), *foedus*, *iūs*, *lēx* (*eā lēge*), *cūra*, *opera*, *causa*, *ratio*.

3. Instead of *ut* with the Subjv., the Inf. is frequently used with this class of verbs. So, generally, with *iubeō*, *I order*, 532. With verbs of Asking, however, the Inf. is not common until VERGIL. *Orāre* has Inf. once in PLAUTUS, then in VERGIL and later poets ; in prose first in TACITUS. *Rogāre* has *ut* regularly, Inf. only once (CAT., XXXV. 10). *Quaesō*, *implōrō*, *obsecrō*, *obtestor*, never have Inf., *flāgitāre* only once (H., S., II. 4, 61) until SUETONIUS ; *pōstulāre* very often, especially in early Latin in the sense *expect* ; *pōscere* not till the Augustan poets. Authors vary. The use of the Inf. is wider in poetry and silver prose.

## B. Verbs of Hindering.

547. The dependencies of verbs of Hindering may be regarded as partly Final, partly Consecutive. *Nē* and *quōminus* are originally final,



but the final sense is often effaced, especially in **quōminus**. **Quin** is a consecutive particle. The sequence of verbs of Hindering is that of the Final Sentence.

The negative often disappears in the English translation.

**548.** Verbs and phrases signifying to Prevent, to Forbid, to Refuse, and to Beware, may take **nē** with the Subjunctive, if they are not negated.

**Impedior nē plūra dicam**, (C., *Sull.*, 33, 92; *I am hindered from saying more (I am hindered that I should say no more)*. “Who did hinder you that ye should not obey the truth?” *GAL.*, v. 7.

**Servitūs mea mihi interdixit nē quid mirer meum malum**, *PL.*, *Pers.*, 621; *my slavery has forbidden me to marvel aught at ill of mine*. **Hi-stiaeus nē res cōficerētur obstitit**, *NEP.*, i. 3, 5; *Histiaeus opposed the thing's being done*. (**Rēgulus**) **sententiam nē diceret recūsāvit**, (C., *Off.*, III. 27, 100; *Regulus refused to pronounce an opinion*. **Maledictis dēterrere nē scribat parat**, *TER.*, *Ph.*, 3 (423, 2). **Tantum cum fingēs nē sis manifestā cavētō**, *OV.*, *A. A.*, III. 801 (271, 2). **Tantum nē nocēs dum vīs prōdesse vidētō**, *OV.*, *Tr.*, I. 1, 101; *only see (to it) that you do not do harm while you wish to do good*.

NOTES. 1. The most important of these words are: *Preventing*: **impedire**, **impedimentō esse**, **prohibere**, **tenere**, **retinere**, **dēterrere**, **intercludere**, **interpellare**, **dēprecārī**, **obsistere**, **obstare**, **intercedere**, **interpōnere**. *Forbidding*: **interdicere**. *Refusing*: **recūsare**, **repugnare**, **resistere**, **sē tenere**, **sē reprimere**, **sibi temperare**, **morārī**. *Beware*: **cavere**, **videre**, and a few others, especially the phrase **per aliquem stare** (more often with **quōminus**).

2. Many verbs of Preventing and Refusing also take **quōminus** (549), and some also the Infinitive (423, 2, N. 2).

3. **Cavere**, to *beware*, and **praecavere** belong to verbs of Hindering only so far as action is contemplated. **Cavere**, followed by **ut**, means *to be sure to*; by **nē** or **ut nē**, *to see to it that not*; by **nē**, *to take precautions against*. When **nē** is omitted, **cavē**, **cavētō**, with the Subjv., form circumlocutions for the negative Imperative (271, 2). So with **vidē ut**, **nē**. **Cavere** also has the Inf. occasionally as a verb of negative Will (423, 2, N. 2), beginning with **PLAUTUS**. In prose it is cited only from **CATO** (once), **CICERO** (*Att.*, III. 17, 3), **SALLUST** (*Jug.*, 64, 2), and **PLINY** *MAI.*

4. **Vidē nē (nē nōn)**, *see to it lest*, is often used as a polite formula for **dubitō an** (457, 2), *I am inclined to think*. **Crēdere omnia vidē nē nōn sit necesse**, C., *Div.*, II. 13, 31.

**549.** Verbs of Preventing and Refusing may take **quōminus** (= **ut eō minus**), *that thereby the less*, with the Subjunctive.

**Aetās nōn impedit quōminus agrī colendī studia teneāmus**, (C., *Cat. M.*, 17, 60; *age does not hinder our retaining interest in agriculture*. **Nōn dēterret sapientem mors quōminus rei publicae cōsulat**, C., *Tusc.*, I. 38, 91; *death does not deter the sage from consulting the interest of the State*. **Quid obstat quōminus (Deus) sit beātus** ? C., *N. D.*, I. 34, 95; *what*



is in the way of God's being happy? Caesar cōgnōvit per Afrānium stāre quōminus proeliō dimicārētur, CAES., *B.C.*, I. 41, 3; Caesar found that it was Afranius's fault that there was no decisive fight (stat, there is a stand-still).

NOTES.—1. With **impedire** and **prohibere** CAESAR never uses **quōminus**; CICERO rarely. But with other words implying Hindrance CICERO uses **quōminus** not unfrequently. With **prohibere** the regular construction is the Inf., but this is rare with **impedire**, **quōminus** being the rule. With **recūsare**, the Inf. is rare (CAES., *B.C.*, III. 22, 3) but classical, becoming more frequent from LIVY on. The passive of **dēter-rere** is also construed with the Inf. occasionally.

2. PLAUTUS does not use **quōminus**, TERENCE first, but seldom. It is especially common from the time of CICERO. In TERENCE the elements are sometimes separated (**quō—minus**), thus emphasising the relative character. But it is not so used in the classical Latin, and in the Silver Age the force of its origin ceases to be felt, so that it is construed like **quīn**. The fact that it is not found in PLAUTUS nor in VITRUVIUS has led to the suggestion that it is a book-word.

3. The difference in usage between **quōminus** and **quīn** seems to be that while **quīn** is always used with negatives, **quōminus** occurs sometimes with positives, so that according to the connection it is either Final or Consecutive.

4. **Quō sētius** for **quōminus** is archaic, but occurs twice in CORNIFICIUS and twice in CICERO (*Inv.*, II. 45, 132; 57, 170).

### III. Verbs of Fearing.

**550.** 1. Verbs of Fearing, and expressions that involve Fear, take the Present and Perfect, Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive.

The Present Subjunctive represents the Present and Future Indicative. The Perfect Subjunctive regularly represents the Perfect Indicative.

Present and Perfect Subjunctive become Imperfect and Pluperfect after a Past Tense.

These constructions are survivals of the original parataxis, when **nē** and **ut** were particles of wish. Thus, **timeō : nē veniat**, *I am afraid; may he not come* (i.e., *I am afraid that he will*), becomes, when the two clauses are combined, **timeō nē veniat**, *I am afraid lest (that) he may (will) come*. Similarly with **ut**, which in this usage was originally *how*. Hence,

2. With verbs of Fearing, **nē**, *lest*, shows that the negative is wished and the positive feared; **ut** (**nē nōn**) shows that the positive is wished and the negative feared: **nē nōn** is used regularly after the negative, or an interrogative with negative force.

**Vereor nē hostis veniat**, *I fear lest the enemy come, that he is coming, that he will come. (I wish he may not come.)*

**Vereor nē hostis vēnerit**, *I fear lest the enemy have come, that (it will turn out that) he has come.*

**Vereor ut amicus veniat**, *I fear (how my friend can come) lest my friend come not, that he is not coming, will not come. (I wish he may come.)*

**Vereor ut amicus venerit**, *I fear lest my friend have not come, that he has not come.*

**Nōn vereor nē amicus nōn veniat**, *I do not fear that my friend is not coming, will not come.*

**Nōn vereor nē amicus nōn venerit**, *I do not fear that my friend has not come.*

**Id pavēs, nē dūcās tū illam, tū autem ut dūcās**, *TER., And., 349; that's what you dread, you lest you marry her (nē dūcam!); you, on the other hand, lest you don't (utinam dūcam!).*

**Vereor nē dum minuere velim labōrem augeam**, *C., Leg., i. 4, 12; I fear lest, while I wish to lessen the toil, I increase it (that I am increasing it).* **Verēmur nē parum hīc liber mellis et absinthii multum habēre vidētur**, *QUINT., III. 1, 5; I am afraid that this book will seem to have too little honey and (too) much wormwood.* **Timeō nē tibi nihil praeter lacrimās queam reddere**, *C., Planc., 42, 101; I am afraid that I can give you nothing in return save tears.* **Aurum inspicere volt nē subruptum siet**, *PL., Aul., 39; he wishes to inspect the gold (for fear) lest it be filched.*

**Timeō ut sustineās (labōrēs)**, *C., Fam., XIV. 2, 3; I fear that you will not hold out under your toils.* **Vereor nē dum dēfendam meōs, nōn parcam tuis**, *C., Att., i. 17, 3; I fear lest in defending my own I may not spare thine.* **Nōn vereor nē tua virtūs opiniōni hominum nōn respondeat**, *(Cf. C., Fam., II. 5, 2; I do not fear that your virtue will not answer to (come up to) public expectation.* **Metuō nē id cōsiliū cēperimus quod nōn facile explicāre possimus**, *C., Fam., XIV. 12; I fear that we have formed a plan that we cannot readily explain.* **Ūnum illud extimēscēbam nē quid turpius facerem, vel dīcam, iam effēcissem**, *C., Att., IX. 7, 1; the only thing I feared was, lest I should act disgracefully, or, I should (rather) say, (lest) I had already acted disgracefully.*

NOTES. 1. **Ut** seems to be used only after **metuō**, **paveō**, **timeō**, and **vereor**. Most common is **vereor**; **metuō** is common in early Latin, but is cited but rarely later (HORACE, CICERO); **paveō** has to be supplied once with **ut** in *TER., And., 349*. **Timeō ut** is found first in CICERO, and is very rare.

2. **Nē nōn** is very rare in early Latin, but becomes more frequent from CICERO on. **Ut nē** is never found for **nē**.

3. Two strange cases are cited where, instead of **nē**, **ut** seems to be used, *viz.*, *HOR., S., i. 3, 120, nam ut ferulā caedās meritum māiora subire verbera, nōn vereor*, and *L., XXVIII. 22, 12, nihil minus, quam ut egredi obsessi moenibus auderent, timēri poterat*. In the first case the **ut** clause precedes, and the **nōn vereor** is used by anacoluthon; in the second the **ut** clause is a circumlocution for an omitted **illud**, parallel to **nihil**. This is also helped by the antecedence of the **ut** clause.

4. When a verb of Fear is a verb of Uncertainty an indirect question may follow: **vereor quō modō acceptūri sitis**, *[C., ad Her., IV. 37, 49]*.

5. (a) With the Inf. verbs of Fear are verbs of (negative) Will: **vereor = praes timōre nōlō.**

**Vōs Allobrogum tēstimōniis nōn crēdere timētis?** C., *Font.*, 12, 26; *are ye afraid to disbelieve the testimony of the Allobroges?* **Vereor laudāre praesentem,** C., *N.D.*, I. 21, 58 (423, 2). **Nīl metuunt iūrāre,** CAT., LXIV. 146; *they have no fear to take an oath.*

These constructions are found at all periods and with a wide range of words. CICERO, however, is restrained in his usage, and the most examples are found in the poets and later prose writers.

(b) With the Acc. and Inf. verbs of Fear are verbs of Thinking or of Perception: **vereor = cum timōre putō or videō.**

**Verēbar nōn omnēs causam vincere posse suam** [Ov., *Her.*, 16, 75]. **Tēlum-que instāre tremēscit,** V., *A.*, XII. 916.

This construction is rare, but occurs at all periods; more often, however, it involves the substantives **timor** and **metus**, especially in LIVY, who shows seven cases altogether.

## CONSECUTIVE SENTENCES.

### *Sentences of Tendency and Result.*

**551. 1.** Consecutive Sentences are those sentences which show the Consequence or Tendency of Actions. In Latin, Result is a mere inference from Tendency, though often an irresistible inference. In other words, the Latin language uses *so as* throughout, and not *so that*, although *so that* is often a convenient translation. The result is only implied, not stated.

2. Consecutive Sentences are divided into two classes:

I. Consecutive Sentences in which the Tendency is expressed by the Particle: Pure Consecutive Sentences.

II. Consecutive Sentences in which the Tendency lies in the leading Verb: (a) after verbs of Effecting; (b) after negated verbs of Preventing, Doubt, and Uncertainty; (c) after words and phrases requiring expansion.

### I. Pure Consecutive Sentences.

**552.** Pure Consecutive Sentences are introduced by

1. **Ut (utī), that, so that,** and other relative pronouns and adverbs (631).

2. **Ut—nōn, that, so that, as—not,** continued by **neque, nec** (543, 4).

3. **Quīn = ut nōn,** after a negative sentence (554).

Correlative demonstratives occur very often: **ita (sic), tam,**

*tantopere, tantō, tantum, adeō, eō, huc; tālis, tantus, tot, is, eius modī, and others of similar meaning.*

In virtūte multi sunt adscēnsūs, ut is māximē glōriā excellat, qui virtūte plūrimū praestet, C., *Planc.*, 25, 60; *in virtue there are many degrees, so that he excels most in glory who is most advanced in virtue.* Neque mē vixisse paenitet quoniam ita vixi ut nōn frūstrā mē nātum existumem, C., *Cat. M.*, 23, 84 (540). Tanta vīs probitātis est, ut eam in hoste etiam diligāmus, C., *Lael.*, 9, 29; *so great is the virtue of uprightness, that we love it even in an enemy.* Nōn is es ut tē pudor umquam ā turpitūdine revocārit, C., *Cat.*, 1. 9, 22; *you are not the man for shame ever to have recalled you (= ever to have been recalled by shame) from baseness.* Nēmō adeō ferus est ut nōn mītescere possit, II., *Ep.*, 1. 1, 39; *no one is so savage that he cannot (be made to) soften.* Nīl tam difficile est quā quaerendō invēstīgārī possiet, TER., *Heaut.*, 675; *naught is so hard but it can (= that it cannot) be tracked out by search.* Numquam tam male est Siculis quā aliquid facētē et commodē dicant, C., *Verr.*, IV. 43, 95; *the Sicilians are never so badly off as not to (have) something or other clever and pat (to) say.*

REMARKS.—I. Notice especially the impersonal *tantum abest, āfuit* (rarely *aberat*)—*ut—ut*. The phrase originates with an abstract Abl. dependent on a personal *absum*, which abstract Abl. is afterward expanded into a consecutive clause with *ut*.

[Āgesilāus] *tantum āfuit ab insolentiā glōriae ut commiserātus sit fortunam Graeciae*, NEP., XVII. 5, 2; *Agesilaus was so far from the insolence of glory that he pitied the (mis)fortune of Greece.* *Tantum abest ab eō ut malum mors sit ut verear nē hominī sit nihil bonum aliud*, C., *Tusc.*, I. 31, 76; *so far is it from death (= so far is death from) being an evil that I fear man has no other blessing.* *Tantum āfuit, ut illōrum praesidiō nostram firmārēmus clāsem, ut etiam ā Rhodiis urbe prohibērentur nostrī militēs*, LENTULUS [C., *Fam.*, XII. 15, 2]; *so far were we from strengthening our fleet by reinforcements from them that our soldiers were actually kept away from the city by the Rhodians.* *Tantum abest ut nostra mirēmur ut usque eō difficilēs simus ut nōbīs nōn satisfaciat ipse Dēmostenēs*, C., *Or.*, 29, 104; *so far are we from admiring our own (compositions) that we are so hard to please that Demosthenes himself fails to satisfy us.*

The personal construction is extremely rare.

The second *ut* may be omitted, and a declarative sentence follow asyndetically: *Tantum aberat ut binōs (librōs) scriberent: vix singulōs cōfēcērunt*, C., *Att.*, XIII. 21, 5; *so far were they from writing two copies of each book, they with difficulty finished up one.*

2. *Dignus, worthy, indignus, unworthy, aptus, idōneus, fit*, take a consecutive sentence with *quī*. Occasionally in early, more often in later

Latin, *dignus* and *indignus* take *ut*. In poetry all these words are found sometimes with the Infinitive.

*Qui modestē pāret, vidētur qui aliquandō imperet dignus esse*, C., *Leg.*, III. 2, 5; *he who obeys duly seems to be worthy to command some day*.

3. While *ita* (*sic*) is usually antecedent to a consecutive *ut*, it may also be antecedent to a final *ut* or *nē* when the *design* or *wish* intrudes. *Ita mē gessi nē tibi pudōri essem*, L., XL. 15, 6; *I behaved myself so as not to be a disgrace to you*.

So not unfrequently when a restriction or condition is intended :

*Ita probanda est mānsuetūdō ut adhibeātur rei publicae causā severitās*, C., *Off.*, I. 25, 88; *mildness is to be approved, so that (provided that) strictness be used for the sake of the commonwealth*. *Ita frui volunt voluptātibus ut nullī propter eas cōsequantur dolōrēs*, C., *Fin.*, I. 14, 48; *they wish to enjoy pleasures without having any pain to ensue on account of them*. [*Pŷthagorās et Platō*] *mortem ita laudant ut fugere vitam vetent*, C., *Scaur.*, 4, 5; *Pythagoras and Plato so praise death, that they (while they praise death) forbid fleeing from life*. *Ita tū istaec tua miscētō nē mē admisceās*, TER., *Heaut.*, 783; *mix up your mixings so you mix me not withal*. *Tantum ā vallō [Pompēi] prima aciēs aberat, uti nē tēlō adici posset*, CAES., *B.C.*, III. 55.

*Ut* alone may also be used thus : *Rēx esse nōlim ut esse crudēlis velim*, SYR., 577; *king I would not be, if I must school myself to cruelty*.

4. *Ut nōn* is often = *without*, and the English verbal in *-ing* :

(*Octāviānus*) *numquam filiōs suōs populō commendāvit ut nōn adiceret : si merēbuntur*, SUET., *Aug.*, 56; *Octavianus (Augustus) never recommended his sons to the people in such a way as not to add (= without adding) : if they are worthy*. *Qui nē malum habeat abstinēt sē ab iniuriā certē mālet existimārī bonus vir ut nōn sit quam esse ut nōn putētur*, C., *Fin.*, II. 22, 71; *he who, to avoid misfortune, abstains from injury, will certainly prefer being thought a good man without being such, to being (a good man) without being believed (to be such)*.

## II. Complementary Consecutive Sentences.

### A. Verbs of Effecting.

**553.** Verbs of Effecting belong partly to the Consecutive, partly to the Final Sentence. The negative is *nōn* or *nē*; the sequence, final.

Such verbs are :

1. Verbs of Causation : *facere*, *efficere*, *perficere*, *I make, effect, achieve* ; *assequi*, *cōsequi*, *I attain, accomplish*, and many others.

The following are cited as more or less common in CICERO : *prōficere*,



**impetrāre, valēre, committere, tenēre, adipisci, praestāre, ferre** (in phrases **cōsuētūdō, nātūra, fortūna fert**), **adferre, adiuuāre, expūgnāre, extorquēre, exprimere**, and a few others.

**Efficiam ut intellegātis**, C., *Cluent.*, 3, 7; *I will cause you to understand.* **Sed perface, ut Crassus haec quae coartāvit nōbis explicet**, C., *Or.*, I. 35, 163; *but bring it about that Crassus (make Crassus) unfold to us what he has condensed.* **Nōn committam ut causam aliquam tibi recūsandi dem**, C., *Or.*, II. 57, 233; *I shall not make the blunder of giving you an excuse for refusing.*

### Negatives :

**Rerum obscuritās nōn verbōrum facit ut nōn intellegātur orātiō**, C., *Fin.*, II. 5, 15; *it is the obscurity of the subject, not of the words, that causes the language not to be understood.* **Potestis efficere ut male moriar, ut nōn moriar nōn potestis**, *PLIN.*, *Ep.*, III. 16, 11; *you may make me die a hard death, keep me from dying you cannot.* **Efficiam posthāc nē quemquam vōce lacessās**, V., *Ec.*, 3, 51; *I will bring it about that you challenge no one hereafter in song.*

**Facere ut** is often little more than a periphrasis; especially in the forms **fac ut** and **faxō, faxit** (both peculiar to Comedy).

**Fortūna vestra facit ut irae meae temperem**, L., XXXVI. 35, 3; *your fortune causes that I (makes me) restrain my anger (put me to my anger).* **Invītus** (325, R. 6) **faciō ut recorder ruinās rei publicae**, C., *Vat.*, 9, 21; (it is) *against my will that I (am doing so as to) recall the ruined condition of the commonwealth.*

### 2. Verbs of Compelling and Permitting :

**Cōgere, adigere, impellere, dūcere**, with its compounds, **movēre, commovēre**, to which must be added **exōrāre**, *to force by pleading*. **Permittere, sinere, concēdere, dare, (nōn) pati**, and less often **largiri, tribuere, ferre**.

**Tenēmus memoriā Catulum esse coāctum ut vitā sē ipse privāret**, C., *Or.*, III. 3, 9; *we remember that Catulus was forced to take his own life.* **Illud nātūra nōn patitur, ut aliōrum spoliis nostrās cōpiās augeāmus**, C., *Off.*, III. 5, 22; *nature does not allow us to increase our wealth by the spoils of others.* **Collēgam perpulerat nē contrā rem publicam sentiret**, S., C., 26, 4; *he had prevailed upon his colleague, not to take sides against the commonwealth.*

NOTE—**Cōgere** has usually the Inf. (422, 2, S. 2), so occasionally **sinere, pati**. On **permittere**, see 522, S. 1. **Cōgere** in the sense *conclude* is a verb of Saying (546, R. 1). **Facere** and **efficere**, in the sense *cause*, are very rarely used with the Infinitive. Compare C., *Br.*, 38, 142. **Actiō tāles orātōrēs vidēri facit, quāles ipsi sē vidēri volunt**. This becomes more common in very late Latin.

### 3. Passive verbs of Causation, and their equivalents,

namely, many Impersonal Verbs of Happening and Following, of Accident and Consequent.

Such verbs are *cōfici*, *effici*, *fit*, *accidit*, *contingit*, *obtingit*, *ēvenit*, *it happens*, *ūsū venit*, *it occurs*, *sequitur*, *it follows*, and many others. So also *est*, *it is the case*.

*Ex quō efficitur, nōn ut voluptās nē* (the design of the arguer) *sit voluptās, sed ut voluptās nōn* (the result of the argument) *sit summum bonum*, C., *Fin.*, II. 8, 24; *from which it results, not that pleasure is not pleasure, but that pleasure is not the supreme good.* *Potest fieri ut fallar*, C., *Fam.*, XIII. 73, 2; *(it) may be (that) I am mistaken.* *Potest fieri ut is unde tē audisse dicis irātus dixerit*, C., *Or.*, II. 70, 285; *(it) may be (that) he from whom you say you heard (it) said it in anger.* *Persaepe ēvenit ut utilitās cum honestāte certet*, C., *Part.Or.*, 25, 89; *it very often (so) happens that profit is at variance with honor.*

NOTE.—Noteworthy is the early Latin use of (*fieri*) *potis ut nē*, as in *fieri potis est ut nē quā exeat*, TER., *Ad.*, 626.

4. Very many impersonal verbs and combinations of neuter adjectives with *est*, after the analogy of the impersonals just mentioned.

Such are: *additur, accēdit*, *it is added*; *restat, reliquom est*, *it remains*; *appāret*, *it is plain*. Enumerations, as, *proximum, tertium, extrēmum est*; *inūsitātum, rārū est*, *it rarely happens that*; *novom, singulāre, mīrum, inaudītum, vērū, falsum, (nōn) vērīsime, cōsequēns, etc.* Also rarely, *interest, necesse est, necessārium est*, and the like.

*Ad Appi Claudī senectūtem accēdēbat etiam ut caecus esset*, C., *Cat.M.*, 6, 16; *to the old age of Appius Claudius was further added his being blind.* *Ei ne integrum quidem erat ut ad iūstitiam remigrāret*, C., *Tusc.*, v. 21, 62; *for him it was not even an open question to go back to justice.* *Rārū (= rārō accidit) ut sit idōneus suae rei quisque dēfēnsor*, QUINT., IV. 1, 46; *it is rare for a man to be a good defender of his own case.*

REMARKS.—I. *Necesse est*, *it is necessary*, generally, and *oportet*, *it behooves*, always omit *ut*:

[*Leuctrica pūgna*] *immortālis sit necesse est*, NEP., XV. 10, 2; *the battle of Leuctra must needs be immortal.* *Sed nōn effugiēs; mēcum moriāris oportet*, PROP., II. 8, 25; *but you shall not escape; you must die with me.*

2. The neuter adjectives with *ut* are very rare until the post-classical period and are far more commonly construed with the Infinitive.

3. Very common is the periphrasis *fore (futūrum) ut*, which gives the common form of the Fut. Infinitive. See 248.

B. *Verbs of Hindering.*

**554.** *Quin* is used like *quōminus*, with Verbs of Preventing, Refusing, *etc.*, but only when they are negated or questioned.

NOTES. 1. *Quin* is compounded of *qui* an interrogative-relative Ablative or Locative—and *nē* (*nōn*). Its first use is interrogative: "why not" in an indignant question; almost equivalent to an indignant Imperative, with which, through the fading out of its composition, it is occasionally connected, especially in early and later Latin, rarely in *Cicero* (269).

2. An indignant question (*How not? Why not?*) objects to opposition, and is therefore naturally construed with the negative of a verb of Hindering. Hence *quin*, as an interrogative (*How not?*), takes the sequence of the Interrogative Sentence. But this shows itself only after words of doubt; after verbs of Preventing the sequence coincides with that of the Final Sentence, and after other negative sentences the sequence coincides with that of the Consecutive Sentence.

3. By its combination with verbs of Preventing, *quin* came to be felt as a consecutive particle — *ut nōn*, and was then used in other consecutive connections for *ut nōn*.

**555.** *Quin* is used when Verbs and Phrases of Preventing, Omitting, Refraining, Refusing, and Delaying, Doubt, and Uncertainty, are negated or questioned.

1. Verbs of Preventing and the like (sequence of the Final Sentence).

*Vix nunc obsistitur illis quin lanient mundum*, *Ov., M.*, 1. 58; *they are now hardly to be kept (that they should not rend) from rending the universe.* *Antiochus nōn sē tenuit quin contrā suum doctōrem librum ēderet*, *C., Ac.*, 11. 4. 12; *Antiochus did not refrain from publishing a book against his teacher.* *Vix reprimor quin tē manēre iubeam*, *Pl., M.G.*, 1368; *I am scarcely kept back (keep myself back) from bidding you remain.* *Neque mē Iūppiter [prohibēbit] quin sic faciam uti cōstitui*, *Pl., Am.*, 1051; *nor will Jupiter prevent me from doing just as I determined to do.*

REMARK.—The list of verbs is given in 548, n. 1.

2. Verbs of Doubt and Uncertainty (sequence of the Interrogative Sentence).

*Nōn dubium est quin uxōrem nōlit silius*, *Ter., And.*, 172; *there is no doubt that (my) son does not want a wife.* *Quis dubitet (= nēmō dubitet) quin in virtūte divitiarū sint?* *C., Parad.*, vi. 2, 48 (259). *Nōn dubitārī debet quin fuerint ante Homērum poētae*, *C., Br.*, 18, 71; *it is not to be doubted that there were poets before Homer.* *Nunc mihi nōn est dubium quin ventūrae nōn sint (legiōnēs)*, *C., Fam.*, 11. 17, 5 (515).

Occasionally verbs of Saying and Thinking are found with the same construction, because they are near equivalents.

**Negārī nōn potest quīn rēctius sit etiam ad pācātōs barbarōs exercitum mittī**, Cf. L., XL. 36, 2; *it cannot be denied (doubted) that it is better for an army to be sent to the barbarians even though they be quiet.* **Nōn abest sūspiciō (Lītōtēs [700] for dubitārī nōn potest) quīn (Orgetorix) ipse sibī mortem cōscīverit**, CAES., B. G., I. 4, 4; *there is no lack of ground to suspect (= there is no doubt that) Orgetorix killed himself.*

REMARKS.—I. The principal gain of the interrogative sequence is that the Periphrastic Fut. may be employed (of which, however, the first example is cited from CICERO), but according to 515, R. 3, **nōn dubitō quīn** may have the simple Subjv. instead of the Periphrastic :

**Nōn dubitāre quīn dē omnibus obsidibus supplicium sūmat (Ariovistus)**, CAES., B. G., I. 31, 15; *“he did not doubt that Ariovistus would put all the hostages to death.”* Compare CAT., CVIII. 3.

So when there is an original Subjv. notion :

**Nōn dubitō quīn ad tē statim veniam**, C., Att., VIII. II B, 3; *I do not doubt that I ought to come to you forthwith.* (Veniam? Shall I come?)

2. Of course **dubitō** and **nōn dubitō** may have the ordinary interrogative constructions (467). On **dubitō an**, see 457, 2.

3. **Nōn dubitō**, with the Inf., usually means *I do not hesitate to:*

**Nōn dubitem dicere omnēs sapientēs semper esse beātōs**, C., Fin., v. 32, 95; *I should not hesitate to say that all wise men are always happy.* **Et dubitāmus adhūc virtutē extendere factis?** V., A., VI. 806; *and do we still hesitate to spread our (fame for) valour by our deeds?* Compare **vereor, timeō, I fear, hesitate** to (550, 2, N. 5).

So occasionally **nōn dubitō quīn**. See R. I.

(Rōmānī) **arbitrābantur nōn dubitātūrum fortem virum quīn cēderet aequō animō lēgibus**, C., Mil., 23, 63; *the Romans thought that a brave man would not hesitate to yield with equanimity to the laws.*

NOTE.—**Nōn dubitō** with the Inf. for **nōn dubitō quīn** occurs chiefly in NEPOS, LIVY, and later writers.

**Sunt multī quī quae turpia esse dubitāre nōn possunt ūtilitātis speciē ductī probent**, QUINT., III. 8, 3; *there are many who, led on by the appearance of profit, approve what they cannot doubt to be base.*

**556. Quīn**, equivalent to **ut nōn**, may be used after any negative sentence (sequence of the Consecutive Sentence). Here it may often be translated “*without.*”

**Nil tam difficile est quīn quaerendō invēstīgārī possiet**, TER., Heaut., 675 (552). **Nūllum adhūc intermīsī diem quīn aliquid ad tē lītterārum darem**, C., Att., VII. 15, 1; *I have thus far not allowed a day to pass but I dropped you (without dropping you) something of a letter (a line or two).*

Note the combination (*facere*) *nōn possum quin*, *I cannot but*, and similar combinations; *nōn possum nōn* with *Inf.* is also classical.

*Facere nōn possum quin cottidiē ad tē mittam* (*litterās*), *C., Att.*, XII. 27, 2; *I cannot do without (I cannot help) sending a letter to you daily.* *Nōn possum quin exclāmem*, *Pl., Trin.*, 705; *I cannot but (I must) cry out.* (*Nūllō modō facere possum ut nōn sim populāris*, *C., Agr.*, II. 3, 7 (reading doubtful); *I cannot help being a man of the people.*)

*Nihil abest quin sim miserrimus*, *C., Att.*, XI. 15, 3; *there is nothing wanting that I should be (= to make me) perfectly miserable.* *Fieri nūllō modō poterat quin Cleomeni parceretur*, *C., Verr.*, v. 40, 104; *it could in no wise happen but that Cleomenes should be spared (= Cleomenes had to be spared).* *Paulum āfuit quin (Fabius) Vārum interficeret*, (*AES.*, *B.C.*, II. 35, 2; *there was little lacking but Fabius (had) killed Varus (= Fabius came near killing Varus).*)

### Explanatory Ut.

557. A Consecutive Sentence with *ut* is often used to give the contents or character of a preceding substantive, adjective, or pronoun.

*Est mōs hominum ut nōlint eundem plūribus rēbus excellere*, *C., Br.*, 21, 84 (546, R. 1). *An quoquamst ūsus hominī sē ut cruciet?* *TER., Heaut.*, 81 (406, N. 5). *Est miserōrum ut malevolentēs sint atque inuideant bonis*, *Pl., Capt.*, 583; *the wretched have a way of being ill-natured and envying the well-to-do.* *Nec meum ad tē ut mittam grātis*, *Pl., Asin.*, 190; *nor is it my style to let her go to you as a gracious gift.* *Id est proprium civitātis ut sit libera*, *C., Off.*, II. 22, 78; *it is the peculiar privilege of a state, to be free.* *Illud ipsum habet cōsul ut ei reliquī magistrātūs pāreant*, *C., Leg.*, III. 7, 16; *the consul has this very prerogative, that the other magistrates be obedient unto him.* *Tōtum in eō est, ut tibi imperēs*, (*C., Tusc.*, II. 22, 53; *all depends upon this (one thing), your self-command.*)

REMARK.—These are principally *mōs*, *cōsuētūdō*, *habit*, *wont*; *opus*, *ūsus*, *need*; many substantives of *opinion* and *perception*, as *opiniō*, *sententia*, *cōgitātiō*, *mēns*, *sapientia*, *scientia*, *cōgnitiō*; *nātūra*, *genus*, *status*, and others, usually with a demonstrative attached; adjectives indicating possession: *meum*, *tuom*, *suom* (all mainly ante-class.), *proprium*, *commūne*, *praecipuum* (*LIVY*), and predicate Genitives with *esse*: *id*, *hōc*, *illud*, *etc.* These should be distinguished from final usages.

NOTES.—1. Tendency and Character lend themselves readily to circumlocution, and *ut* with Subjv. becomes a manner of equivalent to the *Inf.*, which, however, is by far the more common construction.

2. To the same principle is to be referred the use of *ut* after *māior (magis) quam*, *nōn aliter quam* (*crithoids*, first in *LIVY*; after *nisi* 591, *b. R.* 3). See 298.

*Praeceptum māius erat quam ut ab homine vidēretur*, *C., Fin.*, v. 16, 44 (503).



## Exclamatory Questions.

**558.** *Ut* with the Subjunctive is used in Exclamatory Questions, usually with the insertion of *-ne*.

*Egone ut tē interpellem?* C., *Tusc.*, II. 18, 42; *I interrupt you?* *Tu ut umquam tē corrigās?* C., *Cat.*, I. 9, 22; *you—ever reform yourself?* *Dī māgnī, ut quī civem Rōmānum occidisset, impūnitātem acciperet,* SEN., *Ben.*, v. 16, 3; *Great Gods! that one who had slain a Roman citizen, should escape unpunished!*

NOTE.—The expression is closely parallel with the Acc. and Infinitive. The one objects to the idea; the other, to any state of things that could produce the result. In neither case is there any definite or conscious ellipsis. Compare TER., *Hec.*, 589, with 613.

## TEMPORAL SENTENCES.

**559.** The action of the Temporal or Dependent clause may stand to the action of the Principal clause in one of three relations:

I. It may be *antecedent*.

CONJUNCTIONS: *Postquam* (*Posteā quam*, not ante-class.), *after that, after*; *ut*, *as*; *ubi*, *when* (literally, *where*); *simulāc*, *as soon as*; *ut primum*, *cum primum*, *the first moment that*.

II. It may be *contemporaneous*.

CONJUNCTIONS: *Dum*, *dōnec*, *while, until*; *quoad*, *up to* (the time) *that*; *quamdiū*, *as long as*; *cum*, *when*.

III. It may be *subsequent*.

CONJUNCTIONS: *Antequam*, *priusquam*, *before that, before*.

A special chapter is required by

IV. *Cum* (*quom*), *when*.

## MOODS IN TEMPORAL SENTENCES.

**560.** 1. The mood of Temporal clauses is regularly the Indicative.

2. The Subjunctive is used only:

(1) In *Ōrātiō Obliqua* (508), Total or Partial. So also in the Ideal Second Person.

(2) When the idea of Design or Condition is introduced.

## I. ANTECEDENT ACTION.

**561.** In historical narrative, Temporal Clauses with **postquam** (**posteaquam**), **ubi**, **ut**, **simulac**, **ut primum**, and **cum primum** commonly take the Historical Perfect or the Historical Present Indicative.

The English translation is not unfrequently the Pluperfect.

**Postquam** **Caesar** **pervēnit**, **obsidēs** **popōscit**, **CAES.**, *B.G.*, I. 27, 3 ; *after Caesar arrived, he demanded hostages.* **Quae** **ubi** **nūntiantur** **Rōmam**, **senātus** **extemplō** **dictātōrem** **dīci** **iūssit**, **L.**, *IV.* 56, 8 ; *when these tidings were carried to Rome, the senate forthwith ordered a dictator to be appointed.* **Pompēius** **ut** **equitātum** **suum** **pulsum** **vidit**, **aciē** **excēssit**, **CAES.**, *B.C.*, *III.* 94, 5 ; *as Pompey saw his cavalry beaten, he left the line of battle.* (**Pelopidās**) **nōn** **dubitāvit**, **simul** **ac** **cōspexit** **hostem**, **cōnfligere** (555, 2, R. 3), **NEL.**, *XVI.* 5, 3 ; *as soon as he (had) caught sight of the enemy, Pelopidas did not hesitate to engage (him).*

Subjunctive in **Ōrātiō Obliqua**.

**Ariovistum**, **ut** **semel** **Gallōrum** **cōpiās** **vicerit** (**Ō. R.** **vicit**), **superbē** **imperāre**, **CAES.**, *B.G.*, I. 31, 12 ; “ *that Ariovistus, as soon as he had once beaten the forces of the Gauls, exercised his rule arrogantly.* ”

**562.** The Imperfect is used to express an action continued into the time of the principal clause (overlapping).

The translation often indicates the spectator (233, N. 1).

**Tū** **postquam** **quī** **tibi** **erant** **amīcī** **nōn** **poterant** **vincere**, **ut** **amīcī** **tibi** **essent** **quī** **vincēbant** **effēcistī**, **C.**, *Quinct.*, 22, 70 ; *after (you saw) that those who were friendly to you could not be victorious you managed that those should be friendly to you who were going to be victorious.* **Ubi** **nēmō** **obvius** **ibat**, **ad castra** **hostium** **tendunt**, **L.**, *IX.* 45, 14 ; *when (they saw that) no one was coming to meet them, they proceeded to the camp of the enemy.*

Subjunctive in **Ōrātiō Obliqua**.

**Scripsistī** (eum) **posteaquam** **nōn** **audēret** (**Ō. R.** **nōn** **audēbat**) **reprehendere**, **laudāre** **coepisse**, **C.**, *Att.*, I. 13, 4 ; *you wrote that, after he could not get up the courage to blame, he began to praise.*

**563.** 1. The Pluperfect is used to express an action completed before the time of the principal clause ; often of the Resulting Condition.

**Albinus** **postquam** **dēcrēverat** **nōn** **ēgredi** **prōvinciā**, **militēs** **statim** **castris** **habēbat**, **S.**, *Iug.*, 44, 4 ; *after Albinus had fully determined not to depart*

from the province, he kept his soldiers in cantonments. *Posteāquam multitudinem collēgerat emblēmatur, instituit officinam*, C., *Verr.*, IV. 24, 54; after he had got together a great number of figures, he set up shop.

2. The Pluperfect is used with **postquam** when a definite interval is mentioned. Rarely also the Historical Perfect (Aorist).

**Post** and **quam** are often separated. With an Ablative of Measure, **post** may be omitted (403, N. 4, d).

(*Aristidēs*) *dēcēssit ferē post annum quārtum quam Themistoclēs Athēns erat expulsus*, NEP., III. 3, 3; *Aristides died about four years after Themistocles had been (was) banished from Athens*. *Post diem tertium gesta rēs est quam dixerat*, C., *Mil.*, 16, 44; *the matter was accomplished three days after he had said it would be*. [*Hamīlcar*] *nōnō annō postquam in Hispāniam vēnerat occisus est*, NEP., XXII. 4, 2; *Hamīlcar was killed nine years after he came to Spain*. (*Aristidēs*) *sextō ferē annō quam erat expulsus in patriam restitūtus est*, NEP., III. 1, 5; *Aristides was restored to his country about six years after he was exiled*. *Trīduō ferē postquam Hannibal ā ripā Rhodanī mōvit, ad castra hostium vēnerat*, L., XXI. 32, 1; (*within*) *about three days after Hannibal moved from the banks of the Rhone he had come to the camp of the enemy*.

### Subjunctive in *Ōrātiō Obliqua*.

*Scriptum ā Posidōniō est trigintā annis vixisse Panaetium posteāquam librōs [dē officiis] ēdidisset*, C., *Off.*, III. 2, 8; *it is recorded by Posidonius that Panaetius lived thirty years after he put forth his books on Duties*.

The attraction is sometimes neglected.

NOTES.—1. The most common of these conjunctions is **postquam**, but the others also occur at all periods. **Simul (atque)** is rare in early Latin. In the following notes the usage in Iterative action is excluded.

2. The Impf. with **postquam** is cited but once from early Latin (PL., *Most.*, 640), it becomes more common in CICERO, but is distinctive of LIVY, who shows nearly one hundred examples. The Impf. with **ubi** is cited once in early Latin (TER., *Eun.*, 405), where, however, it is Iterative, not at all from CICERO, once from CAESAR, after which it is found more frequently, but never becomes common. The Impf. with **ut** is found first in CICERO, never in CAESAR, SALLUST, VERGIL, but not uncommonly in LIVY; only once in TACITUS (*H.*, III. 31), where it is Iterative. The Impf. with **simul (atque)** is not cited from CICERO and CAESAR, but appears once in SALLUST, where it is Iterative; it is very rare.

3. The Plupf. with **postquam** is not cited from PLAUTUS or HORACE, and but once from TERENCE (*And.* 177); CICERO uses it but rarely, CAESAR but once (*B. C.*, III. 58, 5); LIVY uses it often, and TACITUS is fond of it. The Plupf. with **ubi** is found once in PLAUTUS, twice each in CICERO and CAESAR, and then more frequently. The Plupf. with **ut (primum)** is found first in CICERO, perhaps but once in CAESAR (*B. C.*, III. 63, 6), more often later. The Plupf. with **simul (atque)** is cited once from CICERO, not at all from CAESAR, and rarely later.

4. Some dozen cases are cited, principally from CICERO, of the Subjv. with **post-**

**quam** not in  $\bar{O.O.}$  Most of these are disputed. If the Subjv. is to remain in these passages it is to be explained as due either to Partial Obliquity or to the intrusion of the **cum** Subjv. into other temporal constructions. The Subjv. appears in late Latin.

5. The Subjv. with **ubi** occurs occasionally in early Latin, but only once in CICEO, not unfrequently in LIVY and TACITUS. This is usually explained as either the Iterative or Potential Subjunctive. The Subjv. with **ut** is post-classical, and the Subjv. with **simul** does not occur.

**564. Postquam** and the like, with the Present and Perfect Indicative, assume a causative signification (compare **quoniam**, *now that* = *since*).

[Cūria] minor mihi videtur posteaquam est maior, C., *Fin.*, v. 1, 2; *the senate-house seems to me smaller now that it is (really) greater.* Tremō horreoque postquam aspexi hanc, TER., *Eun.*, 84; *I quiver and shiver since I have seen her.*

NOTES.—1. The use of temporal conjunctions, especially **postquam** in the Present Sphere, is much more common in early Latin than later. **Ubi** and **ut** occur at all periods, but rarely; **ubi** has almost the same force as **si**; **ut** means **ex quo**, *since*. **Simul** is rare, and found first in LUCRETIVUS.

2. **Cum**, also, has sometimes the causal signification.

Grātulor tibi cum tantum valēs, C., *Fam.*, ix. 14, 3; *I wish you joy now that you have so much influence.*

**565. Ubi** and **simul** are occasionally found with the Future and Future Perfect; not so **postquam** and **ut**.

Ubi mē aspiciet ad carnificem rapiet continuō, PL., *B.*, 689; *as soon as he shall catch (catches) sight of me he will hurry me at once to the hangman.* Id tibi quidem hercle fiet, Dēmaenetum simulac cōspexerō, PL., *Asin.*, 477; *that indeed shall certainly be your fate, as soon as I shall have espied Demaenetus.*

NOTE.—When thus used **ubi** and **simul** approach almost the meaning of **cum** (580). So also **quandō**; see 580, s. 3. These uses should be distinguished from those of Iterative Action.

#### Iterative Action.


**566. RULE I.**—When two actions are repeated contemporaneously, both are put in tenses of continuance.

Humilēs labōrant ubi potentēs dissident, PHAED., l. 30, 1; *the lowly suffer when the powerful disagree.* Populus mē sibilat; at mihi plaudō ipse domi simul ac nummōs contemplor in arcē, H., *S.*, l. 1, 66; *the people hiss me; but I clap myself at home as soon as I gloat o'er my cash in the strong box.* Ubi frumentō opus erat, cohortēs praesidium agitābant, S., *Aug.*, 55, 4; *when there was need of corn, the cohorts would serve as an escort.*

## The Subjunctive with the Ideal Second Person.

**Bonus sēgnior fit ubi negligās, S., *Iug.*, 31, 28 ; a good man becomes more spiritless when you neglect him.**

**567. RULE II.**—When one action is repeated before another, the antecedent action is put in the Perfect, Pluperfect, or Future Perfect ; the subsequent action in the Present, Imperfect, or Future, according to the relation.

 As this use runs through all sentences involving antecedent action, all the classes are represented in the following examples.

Observe the greater exactness of the Latin expression. Compare 244, R. 2.

**Quotiēns cecidit, surgit, *As often as he falls, he rises.***

**Quotiēns ceciderat, surgēbat, *As often as he fell, he rose.***

**Quotiēns ceciderit, surget, *As often as he falls, he will rise.***

**Simul inflāvit tībicen ā peritō carmen āgnōscitur, C., *Ac.*, II. 27, 86 ; as soon as the fluter blows, the song is recognised by the connoisseur. [Alci-  
biadēs] simul āc sē remiserat, lūxuriōsus reperiēbātur, NEP., VII. I, 4 ; as soon as Alcibiades relaxed, he was found a debauchee. Dociliōra sunt ingenia priusquam obdūruērunt, QUINT., I. 12, 9 ; minds are more teachable before they (have) become hardened. [Ager] cum multōs annōs quiēvit, ūberiorēs efferre frūgēs solet, C., *Br.*, 4, 16 ; when a field has rested (rests) many years, it usually produces a more abundant crop. Cum pālam diūs ānuli ad palmam converterat (Gyges) ā nullō vidēbātur, C., *Off.*, III. 9, 38 ; when(ever) Gyges turned the bezel of the ring toward the palm (of his hand), he was to be seen by no one. Si pēs condoluit, si dēns, ferre nōn possumus, C., *Tusc.*, II. 22, 52 ; if a foot, if a tooth ache(s), we cannot endure it. Stomachābātur senex, si quid asperius dixeram, C., *N.D.*, I. 33, 93 ; the old man used to be fretted, if I said anything (that was) rather harsh. Quōs labōrantēs cōspexerat, hīs subsidia submittēbat, CAES., *B.G.*, IV. 26, 4 ; to those whom he saw (had espied) hard pressed he would send reinforcements. Haerēbant in memoriā quaecumque audierat et viderat (Themistoclēs), C., *Ac.*, II. I, 2 ; whatever Themistocles had heard and seen (= heard and saw) remained fixed in his memory. Qui timēre dēsi-  
erint, ōdisse incipient, TAC., *Agr.*, 32 ; those who cease to fear will begin to hate.**

## The Subjunctive with the Ideal Second Person.

**Ubi cōsuluerīs, mātūrē factō opus est, S., *C.*, I, 6 ; when you have deliberated, you want speedy action.**

## The Subjunctive in Ōrātiō Obliqua.

**[Catō] mirārī sē aiēbat quod nōn ridēret haruspex haruspicem cum vidis-**



set, C., Div., II. 24. 51; *Cato said that he wondered that an haruspeus did not laugh when he saw (another) haruspeus.* (Nōn ridet cum vidit.)

### The Subjunctive by Attraction.

[Arāneolae] rēte texunt ut si quid inhaeserit cōficiant, C., N.D., II. 48. 123; *spiders weave webs to despatch anything that gets caught (si quid inhaesit, cōficiunt).* Quārē fiēbat, ut omnium oculōs, quotiēscunque in pūblicum prōdisset, ad sē converteret, NEP., VII. 3, 5; *whereby it happened that he attracted the eyes of all every time he went out in public (quotiēscunque prōdierat, convertēbat).*

NOTE.—The Subjunctive in Iterative Tenses may be accounted for on the principle that a repeated action which is retrospective from the point of view of the narrator, and so naturally takes the Indicative, becomes prospective from the point of view of the agent, and so takes the Subjunctive. But, however the construction is justified, the fact remains that the Subjunctive in Iterative Sentences is a growth in Latin. With the principal tenses it is confined mostly to the Ideal Second Person. Indefinite **quis** is very near to this. So CICERO, *Rab. Post.*, 13, 36: **ubi semel quis pōierāverit oportet.** With Impf. and Plupf. the first examples (excluding **cum**) are in CATULLUS (LXXXIV. 1), and CAESAR (e.g. *B.C.*, II. 15, 3). Then it spreads, probably under Greek influence, and is very common in the historians, especially LIVY and TACITUS. **Ubi** and **ut** are the particles employed; also very often **si** and relatives, in general **quicumque, quotiēns, etc.** With **cum**, Iterative Subjunctives are found to a limited extent also in CICERO and CAESAR; but all cases of principal tenses in third person have been emended, and those with historical tenses are not common, and sometimes doubtful.

**Cum ferrum sē inflexisset, neque ēvellere neque pūgnāre poterant (= vidēbant sē nōn posse),** CAES., *B.G.*, I. 25, 3; *when the iron had bent, they found that they could neither pluck it out nor fight.* **Incurrere ea gēns in Macedoniam solita erat (as if cōstituerat) ubi rēgem occupātum externō bellō sēnsisset,** L., XXVI. 25, 7; *that tribe was wont to make a raid on Macedonia whenever they perceived the king engrossed in foreign war.* **Quī ūnum eius ordinis offendisset omnēs adversōs habēbat (as if certō sciēbat sē habitūrum),** L., XXXIII. 46, 1; *whoso had offended one of that order was sure to have all against him.* **Modum adhibendō ubi rēs pōsceret, priōrēs erant,** L., III. 19, 3; *by the use of moderation, when the case demanded it, they were his superiors.*

## II. CONTEMPORANEOUS ACTION.

568. Conjunctions used of Contemporaneous Action are:

**Dum, dōnec,** *while, so long as, until*; **quoad,** *up to (the time) that*; **quamdiū,** *as long as*; **cum,** *when.*

An action may be contemporaneous in Extent—*so long as, while.*

An action may be contemporaneous in Limit—*until.*

REMARK.—**Dum**, (*while*) yet, denotes duration, which may be coextensive, *so long as*, or not. It is often causal. **Dōnec** (old form **dōnicum**, used only in the sense *until*), is parallel with **dum** in the sense *so long as, until.* CICERO uses it only as *until.*

# 1. Contemporaneous in Extent.

(*So long as, while.*)

**569. Complete Coextension.**—**Dum, dōnec, quoad, quamdiū,** *so long as, while,* take the Indicative of all the tenses.

**Vita dum superest, bene est,** MAECENAS (SEN., *E.M.*, 101, 11); *while (so long as) life remains, 'tis well.* **Sibi vērō hanc laudem relinquunt, "Vixit, dum vixit, bene,"** TER., *Hec.*, 461; *they leave indeed this praise for themselves, "He lived well while he lived" (all the time).* **Tiberius Gracchus tam diū laudābitur dum memoria rerum Rōmānārum manēbit,** C., *Off.*, II. 12, 43; *Tiberius Gracchus shall be praised so long as the memory of Roman history remains (shall remain).* **Fuit haec gēns fortis dum Lycūrgi lēgēs vigēbant,** C., *Tusc.*, I. 42, 101; *this nation was brave so long as the laws of Lycurgus were in force.* **Dōnec grātus eram tibi, Persarum vigui rēge beātiōr,** H., *O.*, III. 9, 1; *while I was pleasing in your sight, I throve more blessed than Persia's king.* **Quoad potuit, restitit,** CAES., *B.G.*, IV. 12, 5; *as long as he could, he withstood.*

## Subjunctive in Ōrātiō Oblīqua.

(**Rēgulus dixit**) **quam diū iūre iurandō hostium tenērētur nōn esse sē senātōrem,** C., *Off.*, III. 27, 100; [*Regulus said*] *that as long as he was bound by his oath to the enemy he was not a senator.* (**Quamdiū teneor nōn sum senātor.**)

## Subjunctive by Attraction.

**Faciam ut mei memineris dum vitam vivās,** PL., *Pers.*, 494 (333, 2).

NOTES.—1. **Dum.**—In the Past Sphere we have the Pf. (Aor.), Hist. Pr., and Imperfect. Of these the Hist. Pr. is found first in SALLUST (*C.*, 36, 1), and the Impf., while occurring at all periods, is rare. The Pf. is not in CAESAR. **Dum** in the Present Sphere is rare; the Pure Pr. has been observed in PL., *B.*, 737: **mane dum scribit**, which looks much like parataxis, and occasionally in CICERO and later; the Pure Pf. is cited only from TERENCE (*And.*, 556, 597), and is only apparent. Several examples of the Future Sphere are cited, PL., *B.*, 225, **nōn metuō mihi dum hōc valēbit pectus**; TER., *Heaut.*, 107; C., *Rosc.Am.*, 32, 991; V., *A.*, I. 607, etc.

**Dōnec** is not found in the sense "so long as," until LUCR., v. 178; then H., *O.*, I. 9, 16; III. 9, 1. Also OV., *Tr.*, I. 9, 5. LIVY uses it occasionally, but TACITUS affects it, and employs Hist. Pf., Impf., and Fut. tenses.

**Quoad** (correlative with **adeō**) belongs especially to the classical poets, but is also found in prose. Compare C., *Ph.*, III. 11, 28, etc. It is usually found in the Past Sphere; in the Present the adverbial force, "so far as," seems to preponderate; PL., *Asin.*, 296: **quoad virēs valent.** The Future tenses are more common.

**Quamdiū** (correlative with **tamdiū**) is found with this usage first in CICERO.

2. When the actions are coextensive, the tenses are generally the same in both members, but not always.

**570. Partial Coextension.**—**Dum, while, while yet, dur-**

*ing*, commonly takes the Present Indicative after all Tenses: so especially in narrative.

*Cape hunc equum, dum tibi virium aliquid superest*, L., XXII. 49, 7; *take this horse, while you have yet some strength left*. *Dum haec Rōmae aguntur, cōsulēs ambō in Liguribus gerēbant bellum*, L., XXXIX. 1, 1; *while these things were going on at Rome, both consuls were carrying on war in Liguria*. *Praetermissa eius rei occāsiō est, dum in castellis recipiēdis tempus teritur*, L., XXXIII. 18, 20; *the opportunity was allowed to slip by, while time was wasted in recovering miserable forts*.

¶ *Dum* in this sense often resists the change into Subjv. in *Ō. O.*, especially in post-classical Latin. (655, R. 3.)

NOTES.—1. *Quamdiū* and *quoad* are, by their composition, incapable of being used in this sense, and as *dōnec* was avoided, *dum* is the only temporal conjunction of limit that is loose enough in its formation to serve for partial coextension. The Pr. after it, formally an Hist. Pr., always connotes continuance, and the construction becomes practically a periphrasis for a missing Pr. participle.

2. The Pure Pr. of the Present Sphere is found occasionally, principally in early Latin. In this sense the relation is often causal, and the construction is parallel with the Pr. participle, the lack of which in the passive it supplies.

*Ardua dum metuunt (= metuentēs) amittunt vērā viā*, LUCR., l. 660 (372, N. 2). The causal relation is also often present with the other tenses.

3. Other tenses are extremely rare, as the Future; PL., *Men.*, 214, *dum coquētur, interim pōtābimus*; the Impf., NER., XXIII. 2, 4, *quae divīna rēs dum cōficiēbātur, quae sīvīt ā mō*.

4. LIVY, XXXII. 24, 5, shows one case of the Plupf. as a shorthand to express the maintenance of the result, *dum āverterat = dum āversōs tōnēbat*.

## 2. Contemporaneous in Limit.

(*Until*.)

571. *Dum, dōnec, quoad*, *up to* (the time) *that, until*, have the Present, Historical Present, Historical Perfect, and Future Perfect Indicative.

*Tityre, dum redeō, brevis est via, pāsce capellās*, V., *Ec.*, 9, 23; *Tityrus, while I am returning (= till I return) the way is short—feed my kids*. *Epaminōndās ferrum in corpore usque eō retinuit, quoad renūtiātum est vīcisse Boeōtiōs*, Cf. NER., xv. 9, 3; *Epaminondas retained the iron in his body, until word was brought back that the Boeotians had conquered*. *Dōnec rediit Mārcellus, silentium fuit*, L., XXIII. 31, 9; *until Marcellus returned, there was silence*. *Haud dēsīnam dōnec perfēcerō hōc*, TER., *Ph.*, 420; *I will not cease until I have (shall have) accomplished it*. *Exspectābō dum venit*, TER., *Eun.*, 206; *I will wait until he comes*.

### Subjunctive in Ōrātiō Oblīqua.

*Scīpiōnī silētiōque dōnec revocātī ab senātū forent prōrogātum imperium*

**est**, L., XXVII. 7, 17; *Scipio and Silanus had their command extended until "they should have been recalled by the senate."*

NOTES.—1. With the Past Sphere the idea of limit precludes the employment of a tense of continuance, which would naturally involve the notion of Overlapping Action. The Impf. is, therefore, not found until the time of TACITUS (once with **dōnec**, H., I. 9). With the Present Sphere the tense must be iterative or historical. Otherwise the Pr. is used by anticipation for the Future.

2. The Fut. Indic. is found occasionally in early Latin, usually, however, the Present. In the classical times, and afterwards, the Subjv. takes its place. Thus CICERO uses the Subjv. regularly, after **verba expectandī**, except in possibly four passages of the earlier *Orations* and *Letters*.

3. **Dōnec** is not uncommon in early Latin, but is very rare in CICERO, and never occurs in CAESAR. On the other hand, TACITUS shows one hundred and thirty-eight cases of it.

4. **Dōnicum** belongs to early Latin, but is not found in TERENCE; one case with the Subjv. is found in NEPOS. **Dōnique** is found in LUCRETIVUS four times with the Indic., always before vowels; in VITRUVIUS once with Indic., three times with Subjv.; otherwise it is not cited.

5. **Quoad**, *until*, occurs once in PLAUTUS, and with the Subjunctive. Otherwise it is found with both moods occasionally throughout the language.

6. LIVY introduces **dōnec inversum** like **cum inversum** (581). See XXI. 46, 6; XXXV. 50, 4, etc.

**572. Dum, dōnec, and quoad, until**, take the Subjunctive when Suspense and Design are involved.

**Vergīnius dum collēgam cōsuleret morātus (est)**, L., IV. 21, 10; *Verginius delayed until he could (long enough to) consult his colleague. At tantī tibi sit nōn indulgēre theātris, dum bene dē vacuō pectore cēdat amor*, Ov., *Rem. Am.*, 751; *but let it be worth the cost to you (= deem it worth the cost) not to indulge in play-going, until love be fairly gone from (your) untenanted bosom.*

Often with **verba expectandī**, especially **expectō**, *I wait*.

**Rūsticus expectat dum dēfluat amnis**, H., *Ep.*, I. 2, 42; *the clown waits for the river to run off (dry).*

REMARKS.—1. The Subjv. is sometimes used in narrative with **dum**, *while*, and **dōnec**, *while, until*, to express subordination. The principle is that of Partial Obliquity. There is often a Causal or Iterative sense (like **cum**, 584, R.).

**Dum intentus in eum sē rēx tōtus āverteret, alter ēlātam secūrim in caput dēiēcit**, L., I. 40, 7; *while the king, intent upon him, was turning quite away, the other raised his axe and planted it in his skull. (Āverteret from the point of view of alter = dum videt āvertentem.)*

2. **Verba expectandī** have also other constructions, as **ut, si, quān**, but not the Infinitive.

**573. Dum, modō, and dummodō, if only, provided only,**

*only*, are used with the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive in Conditional Wishes.

The negative is *nē* (*dum nē* = *nē interim*).

*Ōderint dum metuant*, ACCIUS (C., *Off.*, I. 28, 97); *let them hate so long as they fear* (provided that, if they will only fear). *Quō lubeat nūbant, dum dōs nē fiat comes*, PL., *Aul.*, 491; *let them marry where (= whom) they please, if but the dowry do not go with them*. *Dummodō mōrāta rēctē veniat, dōtāta est satis*, PL., *Aul.*, 239; *provided only she come with a good character, she is endowed (= her dowry is) enough*. *In eō multa admiranda sunt: eligere modo cūrae sit*, QUINT., X. I, 131; *many things in him are to be admired; only you must be careful to choose*. *Cōpia plācandī sit modo parva tui*, OV., *Her.*, 20, 74 (428, R. 1).

NOTES.—1. It has been noticed that TACITUS uses *dummodō* only in the *Germania* and *Dialogus*, otherwise *dum*.

2. *Dummodō nē* and *modō nē* are found first in CICERO. In post-Augustan Latin *nōn* is sometimes used for *nē*; JUV., VII. 222, *dummodo nōn pereat*.

### III. SUBSEQUENT ACTION.

*Antequam* and *Prisquam* with the Indicative.

**574.** *Antequam* and *prisquam*, *before*, take the Present, Perfect, and Future Perfect Indicative, when the limit is stated as a fact. The Present is used in anticipation of the Future.

REMARKS.—1. The elements *ante*, *anteā*, *prius*, and *quam* are often separated.

2. As *prius* (*ante*)-*quam* is negative in its signification (= *necdum*), the Indic. is sometimes found where we should expect the Subjunctive.

NOTE. *Antequam* is much rarer than *prisquam*, especially in early Latin, where it is cited only from CATO, CAELIUS, TERENCE (*Hec.*, 146, with Subjv. in *Ō. O.*), and VARRO. CICERO prefers it before a Pr. Indic., *prisquam* elsewhere.

**575.** The Present Indicative is used after positive sentences.

*Antequam ad sententiam redeō, dē mē pauca dicam*, C., *Cat.*, IV. 10, 20; *before I return to the subject, I will say a few things of myself*. *Omnia experiri certum est prius quam pereō*, TER., *And.*, 311; *I am determined to try everything before I perish*. (*Prius quam peream* = *sooner than perish, to keep from perishing*.)

NOTES.—1. The Pure Pf. Indic. is used of Iterative Action, and is rare. (567.)

*Dociliōra sunt ingenia priusquam obdūrūerunt*, QUINT., I. 12, 9 (567).

Instead of this the Pr. Subjv. is more common in general statements. (567, n.)

2. TACITUS shows no example of the Pr. Indicative.



**576.** The Perfect (Aorist) and Future Perfect Indicative are used both after positive and after negative clauses, chiefly the latter.

*Hērachiō, aliquantō ante quam est mortuus, omnia trādiderat, C., Verr., II. 18, 46; some time before he died he had handed over everything to Heraclius. Lēgātī nōn ante profectī quam impositōs in nāvēs milites viderunt, L., XXXIV. 12, 8; the envoys did not set out until they saw the soldiers on board. Neque dēfatigābor ante quam illōrum viās ratiōēsque et prō omnibus et contrā omnia disputandī percēperō, C., Or., III. 36, 145; I will not let myself grow weary before (until) I learn (shall have learned) their methods of disputing for and against everything.*

### Subjunctive in Ōrātiō Oblīqua.

*Themistoclēs [collēgis suis] praedixit, ut nē prius Lacedaemoniōrum lēgātōs dimitterent quam ipse esset remissus, NEP., II. 7, 3 (546, 2). (Nōn prius dīmīttētis quam ego erō remissus.)*

REMARK.—After negative clauses containing a historical tense the Pf. is the rule and the connection is always close: *nōn priusquam* = *dum*. Violations of this rule are very rare; see 577, 2.

NOTES.—1. The Fut. is found occasionally in PLAUTUS, but has disappeared by the time of TERENCE. The Fut. Pf. is never common, but is found at all periods. TACITUS avoids it, and so do other authors.

2. The Impf. is confined to LIVY, who shows four examples, and to one case in late Latin. The Plupf. is found once in CICERO (*Dom.*, 30, 78), where it may be Iterative, and once in early Latin.

### Antequam and Priusquam with the Subjunctive.

**577.** *Antequam* and *priusquam* are used with the Subjunctive when an ideal limit is given; when the action is expected, contingent, designed, or subordinate.

1. An ideal limit involves necessary antecedence, but not necessary consequence. After positive sentences, the Subjunctive is the rule, especially in generic sentences and in narrative. (Compare *cum*, 585.) After Historical Tenses the Subjunctive is almost invariable when the action does not, or is not to, take place. The translation is often *before*, and the verbal in *-ing* (Greek *πρὶν* with the Infinitive).

*Ante vidēmus fulgōrem quam sonum audiāmus, SEN., N. Q., II. 12, 6; we see the flash of lightning before hearing the sound (we may never hear it). But compare LUCR., VI. 170. In omnibus negōtiis prius quam aggrediāre adhibenda est praeparātiō diligēns, C., Off., I. 21, 73; in all affairs, before addressing yourself (to them), you must make use of careful preparation (Ideal Second Person). [Collem] celeriter priusquam ab*

*adversāriis sentiātur commūnit*, CAES., *B.C.*, I. 54. 4; *he speedily fortified the hill before he was* (too soon to be) *perceived by the enemy* (*prius quam* = *prius quam ut*). Hannibal omnia priusquam excēderet pūgnā (erat) expertus, L., XXX. 35. 4; *Hannibal had tried everything before withdrawing from the fight* (= to avoid withdrawing from the fight). Saepe māgna indolēs virtūtis priusquam rei publicae prōdesse potuisset extincta est, C., *Ph.*, v. 17. 47; *often hath great native worth been extinguished before it could be of service to the State*. Ducentis annis ante quam urbem Rōmam caperent in Italiam Galli trāscendērunt, L., v. 33. 5; (*it was*) *two hundred years before their taking Rome* (that) *the Gauls crossed into Italy* (here the Subjv. gives the natural point of reference).

2. After an historical tense in the negative, the Subjunctive is exceptional. (576, R.)

Inde nōn prius ēgressus est quam (= ibi manēbat dum) rēx eum in fidem reciperet, NEP., II. 8. 4; *he did not come out until the king should take him under his protection* (he stayed to make the king take him under his protection). See CAES., *B.C.*, VI. 37. 2; L., XIV. 11. 3.

NOTES.—1. The Pr. Subjv. is common, but is usually generic; the few cases of Final Subjv. are confined to early Latin. Very rarely the Hist. Pr. is found after a Hist. Present. See CAES., *B.C.*, I. 22.

2. The Pf. occurs occasionally; it is usually in a final sense.

Nōn prius dīmittunt quam ab his sit concēssum, CAES., *B.C.*, III. 18.

3. In LIVY we find the Impf. Subjv. used not unfrequently, where the idea of suspense or design is very slight, much after the manner of *cum nōndum* (as C., *Ph.*, v. 1. 4).

4. The Plupf. Subjv. is cited five times from CICERO and four times from LIVY. In these passages the completion rather than the continuance is in suspense.

5. *Postridiēquam* is found in PLAUTUS, CICERO (*Letters*), and SUTTONIUS with the Indicative. In CICERO, *Ac.*, II. 3. 9. with the Subjunctive. *Pridiēquam* is found in PLAUTUS and CICERO with the Indicative; in LIVY, VAL. MAX., and SUTTONIUS with the Subjunctive. Both are very rare.

6. When the will is involved, *potius quam* is used in the same way as *prius quam*.

Dēpūgnā potius quam serviās, C., *Att.*, VII. 7. 7; *fight it out rather than be a slave*.

#### IV. CONSTRUCTIONS OF CUM (QUOM).

##### 578. Cum is a (locative) relative conjunction.

NOTE.—Originally locative (*where*), *quom* became temporal (*when*) like *ubi*. When time is not defined by a fixed date, it readily becomes *circumstance*, and this circumstance is interpreted as cause, condition, and the like. Compare the circumstantial relative itself. The first construction was with the Indicative as with any other merely relative clause, and this is the sole construction in earliest Latin. But, beginning with TERENCE, we can observe the drift ever increasing in Latin towards the expression of character by tendency (Subjv.) rather than by fact (Indic.), so that the relative of character takes more and more the Subjunctive, and *cum* follows the lead of *ut* and of the inflected relative pronoun.

##### 579. There are two great uses of cum :

##### I. Temporal cum (*when, then*), with the Indicative.

II. Circumstantial *cum* (*as, whereas*), with the Subjunctive.

In the second usage the relation is still purely a matter of inference ; but according to this inferential connection we distinguish :

(a) Historical *cum, as*, giving the attendant circumstances, mainly temporal, under which an action took place.

(b) Causal *cum, as, whereas, since*, indicating that the main action proceeded from the subordinate one.

(c) Concessive *cum, whereas, although*, indicating that the main action was accomplished in spite of that of the subordinate clause.

I. *Cum vēr appetit, militēs ex hibernis movent, when spring approaches, soldiers move out of winter-quarters.*

II. (a) *Cum vēr appeteret, Hannibal ex hibernis mōvit, as spring was approaching (spring approaching), Hannibal moved out of winter-quarters.*

(b) *Cum vēr appetat, ex hibernis movendum est, as (since) spring is approaching, we must move out of winter-quarters.*

(c) *Cum vēr appeteret, tamen hostēs ex hibernis nōn mōvērunt, whereas (although) spring was approaching, nevertheless the enemy did not move out of winter-quarters.*

### 1. Temporal Cum.

**580. Cum, when**, is used with all the tenses of the Indicative to designate merely temporal relations.

In the Principal clause, a temporal adverb or temporal expression is frequently employed, such as *tum, tunc, then* ; *nunc, now* ; *diēs, day* ; *tempus, time* ; *iam, already* ; *vix, scarcely*, and the like.

*Animus, nec cum adest nec cum discēdit, appāret, C., Cat. M., 22, 80; the soul is not visible, either when it is present, or when it departs. Stomachor cum aliōrum nōn mē digna in mē cōferuntur, C., Planc., 14, 35; I get fretted when other people's jokes that are not worthy of me are foisted on me. [Sex librōs dē rē publicā] tum scripsimus cum gubernācula rei publicae tenēbāmus, C., Div., II. 1, 3; I wrote the six books about the State at the time when I held the helm of the State. Recordāre tempus illud cum pater Cūriō maerēns iacēbat in lectō, C., Ph., II. 18, 45; remember the time when Curio the father lay abed from grief. Longum illud tempus cum nōn erō magis mē movet quam hōc exiguum, C., Att., XII. 18, 1; that long time (to come), when I shall not exist, has more effect on me than this scant (present time). Iam dilucēscēbat cum signum cōsul*

*dedit*, L., XXXVI. 24. 6; *by this time day was beginning to dawn, when the consul gave the signal.* (See 581.)

Ideal Second Person with the Subjunctive :

*Pater, hominum immortalis est infamia. Etiam tum vivit quom esse credās mortuam*, Pl., *Pers.*, 355; *Father, immortal is the ill-fame of the world. It lives on even when you think that it is dead.*

But the presence of a temporal adverb does not mean necessarily that the *cum* clause is merely temporal.

REMARKS.—1. *Fuit cum* commonly follows the analogy of other characteristic relatives (631), and takes the Subjunctive :

*Fuit tempus cum (= fuit cum) rūra colerent hominēs*, Varro, *R. R.*, III. 1, 1; *there was a time when all mankind tilled fields = were countrymen.* The Indic. is rare.

2. *Memini cum*, *I remember the time when*, takes the Indic., but *audire cum* takes the Subjv. parallel with the participle :

*Memini cum mihi dēsipere vidēbāre*, C., *Fam.*, VII. 28. 1; *I remember the time when you seemed to me to show the worst possible taste.* *Audivi Mētrodorū cum dē iis ipsis rēbus disputāret*, C., *Or.*, II. 90. 365; *I have heard Metrodorus discuss(ing) these very matters.*

3. Peculiar is the use of *cum* with Lapses of Time. Lapses of Time are treated as Designations of Time in Accusative or Ablative :

*Multi anni sunt cum (= multōs annōs) in aere meō est*, C., *Fam.*, XV. 14. 1; *(it is) many years (that) he has been (230) in my debt.* *Permulti anni iam erant cum inter patriciōs magistrātūs tribūnōsque nūlla certāmina fuerant*, L., IX. 33. 3; *very many years had elapsed since there had been any struggles between the patrician magistrates and the tribunes.* *Nōndum centum et decem anni sunt cum (= ex quō = abhinc annōs) dē pecūniis repetundis lāta lēx est*, C., *Off.*, II. 21. 75; *it is not yet one hundred and ten years since the law concerning extortion was proposed.*

NOTES.—1. In PLAUTUS *cum* with the Indic. may be explicative, causal, concessive, adversative. *Explicative*: *salvos quom (that) advenis, gaudeō*, Most., 1128. *Causal*: *salvos quom (since) peregrē advenis, cēna dētur*, B., 536. *Concessive*: [*servi*] *quom (although) culpā carent, tamen malum metuont*, Most., 859. *Adversative*: *insānre mē āiunt, ūltrō quom (whereas) ipsi insāniunt*, Men., 831.

The same holds true for TERENCE, except that the Subjv. is now making its appearance in cases where it can be neither potential, ideal, nor attracted, as *Hee.*, 341: *nōn visam uxōrem Pamphilī, quom in proximō hīc sit aegra?*

Of course, this prevalence of the Indic. does not exclude the attraction into the Subjv., nor does it exclude the regular potential use.

2 The explicative use dies out, except where it is akin to the conditional; but it always retains the Indicative. With Causal and Concessive-Adversative uses, the Subjv. is used more and more in place of the Indicative.

3 In early Latin we find *quoniam* and *quandō*, used sometimes with the force of *quom*. In the case of *quoniam* several examples are cited from PLAUTUS, in most of which, however, the causal conception lies very close at hand; the temporal force seems to have disappeared by the time of TERENCE, and only reappears in GELLIVS. The

temporal usage of **quandō** is still the prevailing one in **PLAUTUS**, over seventy instances having been collected. Of these the majority are in the Present and Future Spheres, in which the shift to the causal conception is very easy; many of them are also iterative. In **TERENCE** the temporal usage of **quandō** has disappeared unless possibly in one passage (*Ad.*, 206), but sporadic cases are found later, even in **CICERO**.

**Quoniam hinc est profecturus peregrē thēnsaurum dēmōnstrāvit mihi**, **PL.**, *Trin.*, 149. **Tum, quandō lēgātōs Tyrum mīsimus**, **C.**, *Leg. Agr.*, II. 16, 41.

**581. Cum Inversum.** When the two actions are independent, **cum** is sometimes used with the one which seems to be logically the principal clause, just as in English.

**Iam nōn longius bīdūi viā aberant, cum duās vēnisse legiōnēs cōgnōscunt**, **CAES.**, *B. G.*, VI. 7, 2; *they were now distant not more than two days' march, when they learned that two legions were come.*

Similar is the addition of an illustrative fact, often causal or adversative, by **cum intereā** (*interim*), **quidem**, **tamen**, *etc.*, with the Indicative.

**582. Explicative cum.**—When the actions of the two clauses are coincident, **cum** is almost equivalent to its kindred relative **quod**, *in that*.

**Āiācem, hunc quom vidēs, ipsum vidēs**, **PL.**, *Capt.*, 615; *when you see him, you see Ajax himself.* **Cum tacent, clāmant**, **C.**, *Cat.*, I. 8, 21; *when (= in that) they are silent, they cry aloud.* **Dīxi omnia cum hominem nōmināvi**, **PLIN.**, *Ep.*, IV. 22, 4; *I have said everything, in naming the man.*

**583. Conditional cum.**—**Cum** with the Future, Future Perfect, or Universal Present, is often almost equivalent to **sī**, *if*, with which it is sometimes interchanged.

**Cum pōscēs, pōsce Latinē**, **JUV.**, XI. 148; *when (if) you (shall) ask (for anything), ask in Latin.* **Cum veniet contrā, digitō compēsce labellum**, **JUV.**, I. 160; *when (if) he meets you, padlock your lip with your finger.*

**584. Iterative cum.**—**Cum** in the sense of **quotiēns**, *as often as*, takes the Tenses of Iterative Action.

**Solet cum sē pūrgat in mē cōferre omnem culpam**, **C.**, *Att.*, IX. 2 A, 1; *he is accustomed, when he clears himself, to put off all the blame on me.* [**Ager**] **cum multōs annōs requiēvit ūberiōrēs efferre frūgēs solet**, **C.**, *Br.*, 4. 16 (567). **Cum pālam ēius ānuli ad palmam converterat** (**Gŷgēs**) **ā nullō vidēbātur**, **C.**, *Off.*, III. 9, 38 (567).

REMARK.—The Subjv. is also found (567, N.):

**Cum in iūs dūcī dēbitōrem vidissent, undique convolābant**, **L.**, II. 27, 8; *whenever they saw a debtor taken to court, they made it a rule to hurry together from all quarters.*



## 2. Circumstantial Cum.

**585. Historical cum.**—**Cum, when (as),** is used in narrative with the Imperfect Subjunctive of contemporaneous action, with the Pluperfect Subjunctive of antecedent action, to characterise the temporal circumstances under which an action took place.

[**Āgēsilāus**] **cum ex Aegyptō reverterētur** dēcēssit, *NEP., XVII. 8, 6: Agēsilaus died as he was returning from Egypt.* **Zēnōnem cum Athēnis essem** audiēbam frequenter, *C., N.D., I. 21, 59: when I was (being) at Athens, I heard Zeno (lecture) frequently.* **Athēniēnsēs cum statuerent ut nāvēs cōnscenderent**, *Cyrsilum quendam suādentem ut in urbe manērent, lapidibus obruerunt, C., Off., III. 11, 48 (546).*

**Cum Caesar Ancōnam occupāvisset**, urbem reliquimus, *C., Flam., XVI. 12, 2: when (as) Caesar had occupied Ancona (Caesar having occupied Ancona), I left the city.* **Attalus moritur alterō et septuāgēsīmō annō, cum quattuor et quadrāgintā annōs rēgnāset**, *L., XXXIII. 21, 1: Attalus died in his seventy-second year, having reigned forty-four years.*

REMARK.—The subordinate clause generally precedes. The circumstantiality often appears as causality, but sometimes the exact shade cannot be distinguished. Owing to this implicit character, **cum** with the Subjy. is a close equivalent to the participle, and often serves to supply its absence. Compare 611 with 631, 2.

NOTES.—1. How closely allied the ideas of time and circumstance are, in these constructions, is seen from such examples as this:

**Cum varicēs secābantur C. Mariō, dolēbat**, *C., Tusc., II. 15, 35 (time).* **Marius cum secārētur, ut suprà dixi, vetuit, etc., C., Tusc., II. 22, 53 (circumstances).** **Cum ad tribum Polliam ventum est**, (date) **et praecō cunctārētur** (circumstances) **citāre ipsum cēnsōrem; Citā, inquit Nerō, M. Livium**, *L., XXIX. 37, 8.*

2. The use of temporal particles with the Pr. is necessarily limited to iterative or causal (adversative) relations. Hence there is no room for the circumstantial **cum** with the Subjy. except so far as it is causal-adversative. Fut. and Fut. Pf. are found chiefly in general or iterative relations.

3. By attraction similar to that with **quod** (541, s. 3) and other relatives, **cum diceret**, with an Inf., is found where **diceret** would be more naturally omitted or inserted as (ut dicēbat): so **cum adsentire sē diceret** for **cum adsentiret**, *L., I. 54, 1.* Similarly with **cum** causal: "saying, as he did," *C., Mil., 5, 12.*

**586. Causal cum.**—**Cum, when, whereas, since, seeing that,** with any tense of the Subjunctive, is used to denote the reason, and occasionally the motive, of an action (580, s. 1).

**Quae cum ita sint, effectum est nihil esse malum quod turpe nō sit**, *C., Fin., III. 8, 29: since these things are so, it is made out (proved) that nothing is bad that is not dishonourable.* **Cum [Athēnās] tamquam ad**

**mercātūrā bonārū artium sis profectus, inānem redire turpissimum est,** C., Off., III. 2, 6; *as (since) you set out for Athens as if to market for accomplishments, it would be utterly disgraceful to return empty (handed).* **Dolō erat pugnandum, cum pār nōn esset armīs,** NEP., XXIII. 10, 4; *he had to fight by stratagem, as he (seeing that he) was not a match in arms.*

REMARKS.—1. The characteristic nature of the Subjv. with **cum** comes out more clearly in the causal connection, owing to the parallel with **utpote, quippe**, and the relative (626, N.).

2. The primary tenses are more common, in this connection, but the historical tenses are abundant enough. With the latter the causal relation need never be emphasised.

**587. Concessive and Adversative cum.**—Causal **cum**, *whereas*, becomes Concessive **cum**, *whereas, although*, with the Subjunctive, when the cause is not sufficient; the relation is often adversative, and there is no limitation as to tense.

The temporal notion is still at work; whether the times are for or against an action is a matter outside of language (580, N. 1).

**Nihil mē adiūvit cum posset,** C., Att., IX. 13, 3; *he gave me no assistance, although (at a time when) he had it in his power.* **Cum primī ordinēs hostium concidissent, tamen ācerrimē reliquī resistēbant,** CAES., B. G., VII. 62, 4; *although the first ranks of the enemy had fallen (been cut to pieces), nevertheless the rest resisted most vigorously.* **Perīre artem putāmus nisi appāret, cum dēsinat ars esse, sī appāret,** QUINT., IV. 2, 127; *we think that (our) art is lost unless it shows, whereas it ceases to be art if it shows.*

REMARKS.—1. To emphasise the adversative idea, **tamen** is often added in the principal clause.

2. Adversative **cum nōn**, *whereas not*, is often conveniently translated *without*; **cum nōn inferior fuisset,** C., Off., I. 32, 116; *without being inferior.*

**588. Cum—tum.** 1. When **cum**, *when*, **tum**, *then*, have the same verb, the verb is put in the Indicative. **Cum—tum** then has the force of *both—and especially*, and a strengthening adverb, such as **māximē, praecipuē**, is often added to the latter.

(**Pausaniās cōnsilia cum patriae tum sibī inimīca capiēbat,** NEP., IV. 3, 3; *Pausanias conceived plans that were hurtful both to his country and especially to himself.*

2. When they have different verbs, the verb with **cum** is usually in the Indicative, but *may* be in the Subjunctive, especially when the actions of the two verbs are not contemporaneous ; this Subjunctive often has a concessive force.

[*Sisennae historia*] **cum** facile omnēs vincat superiōrēs, tum indicat tamen quantum absit ā summō, C., *Br.*, 64, 228; *although the history of Sisenna easily surpasses all former histories, yet it shows how far it is from the highest (mark).*

## CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

**589.** In Conditional Sentences the clause which contains the condition (supposed cause) is called the **Prótasis**, that which contains the consequence is called the **Apódosis**.

Logically, **Protasis** is *Premiss* ; and **Apodosis**, *Conclusion*.

Grammatically, the **Apodosis** is the *Principal*, the **Protasis** the *Dependent*, clause.

**590.** *Sign of the Conditional.*—The common conditional particle is **si**, *if*.

NOTES. 1. **Si** is a locative case, literally, *so, in those circumstances* (comp. **si-c**, *so*, and the English: "I would by combat make her good, *so* were I a man." SHAKESPEARE). Hence, conditional clauses with **si** may be regarded as adverbs in the Abl. case, and are often actually represented by the Abl. Absolute.

**Sic** is found as the correlative of **si** in the colloquial language, as: **sic** scribēs aliquid, **si** vacābis (C., *Att.*, XII, 38, 2) ; **sic** ignōvisse putātō mē tibi, **si** cēnās hodiē mēcum (H., *Ep.*, I, 7, 69). Instead of **sic**, its equivalent **tum** occurs at all periods, being in the Augustan time restricted to formal uses. **Igitur** is also found as late as CÆCILIUS, who likewise uses **ita**. Other particles are post-classical.

2. The connection with the Causal Sentence is shown by **si quidem**, which in later Latin is almost = **quoniam** ; see 595, n. 5.

3. The temporal particles **cum** and **quandō**, *when*, and the locative **ubi**, are also used to indicate conditional relations in which the idea of Time or Space is involved.

**591.** *Negative of si.*—The negative of **si** is **sī nōn** or **nisi**.

(a) With **sī nōn**, *if not*, the **nōn** negatives the single word ; hence an opposing positive is expected, either in a preceding condition, or in the conclusion. Therefore, **si nōn** is the rule :

1. When the positive of the same verb precedes.

**Si** fēceris, māgnam habēbō grātiā ; **si nōn** fēceris, ignōscam, C., *Fam.*, v, 19 ; *if you do it, I will be very grateful to you ; if you do not, I will forgive (you).*

2. When the Condition is concessive ; in this case the principal clause often contains an adversative particle.

**SI** mihī bonā rē publicā fruī nōn licuerit, at carēbō malā, C., *Mil.*, 34, 93 ; *if I shall not be allowed to enjoy good government, I shall at least be rid of bad.*

(b) With **nisi**, *unless*, the negative **ni-** refers to the principal clause, which is thus denied, if the conditional clause is accepted ; hence :

1. **Nisi** adds an exception or restriction to the leading statement. Compare the general use of **nisi**, *except* (R. 2).

**Nisi** molestumst, paucis percontārier (130, 6) volō ego ex tē, PL., *Rud.*, 120 ; *if it is not disagreeable, I wish to ask you a few questions.*

So the formulæ **nisi fallor** (**nī** fallor is found first in OVID), **nisi mē omnia fallunt** (C., *Att.*, VIII. 7, 1), and the like.

2. **Nisi** is in favorite use after negatives.

**Parvī** (= nihili) sunt foris arma nisi est cōsiliū domī, C., *Off.*, I. 22, 76 (411, R. 2). [**Nōn**] possem vivere nisi in litteris viverem, C., *Fam.*, IX. 26, 1 ; *I could not live unless I lived in study.* **Memoria** minuitur nisi eam exerceās, C., *Cat. M.*, 7, 21 ; *memory wanes unless (except) you exercise it.* (**SI** nōn exerceās, *in case you fail to exercise it.*)

So more often than **sī** nōn, in asseverations. **Peream** nisi sollicitus sum, C., *Fam.*, XV. 19, 4 ; *may I die if I am not troubled.*

REMARKS.—I. Sometimes the difference is unessential :

**Nisi** Cūriō fuisset, hodiē tē mūscae comēdissent, Cf. QUINT., XI. 3, 129 ; *if it had not been for Curio, the flies would have eaten you up this day.* **SI** nōn fuisset would be equally correct.

2. **Nisi** is often used after negative sentences or equivalents in the signification of *but, except, besides, only* :

**Inspece** quid portem ; nihil hīc nisi triste vidēbis, OV., *Tr.*, III. 1, 9 ; *examine what I am bringing ; you will see nothing here except (what is) sad.* **Falsus** honor iuvat et mendāx infāmia terret, quem nisi mendōsum et medicandum ? II., *Ep.*, I. 16, 39 ; “*false honour charms and lying slander scares,*” whom but the faulty and the fit for physic ?

So **nisi sī**, *except in case*, with a following verb ; occasional in early Latin, more common later, but not in CAES. (*B. G.*, I. 31, 14, is disputed), SALL., VERG., HOR. **Nisi ut**, *except on condition that*, is post-classical.

**Necesse** est Casilinēnsēs sē dēdere Hannibali ; nisi sī mālunt famē perire, C., *Inv.*, II. 57, 171 ; *the people of Casilinum must needs surrender to Hannibal ; unless (except in case) they prefer to perish by hunger.*

3. **Nisi quod** introduces an actual limitation—*with the exception, that* (525, 2, N. 2) ; so **praeterquam quod** ; **nisi ut** (e. g. C., *Imp.*, 23, 67).

**Nihil acciderat** [Polycrati] **quod nōllet nisi quod ānulum quō dēlectābātur in mari abiēcērat**, C., *Fin.*, v. 30. 92; *nothing had happened to Polycrates that he could not have wished, except that he had thrown into the sea a ring in which he took delight* (= a favorite ring). **Nihil peccat nisi quod nihil peccat**, PLIN., *Ep.*, ix. 26. 1; *he makes no blunder except—that he makes no blunder* ("faultily faultless").

4. **Nisi forte** (found very often in CICERO, very rarely earlier), *unless, perhaps, nisi vērō* (peculiar to CICERO), *unless, indeed*, with the Indic., either limit a previous statement, or make an ironical concession:

**Nēmō ferē saltat sōbrius nisi forte insānit**, C., *Mur.*, 6, 13; *there is scarce any one that dances (when) sober, unless perhaps he is cracked*. **Plēnum fōrum est eōrum hominum, . . . nisi vērō paucōs fuisse arbitrāminī**, C., *Sull.*, 9, 28; *the forum is full of those men; unless, indeed, you think they were (but) few*.

NOTES.—1. **Nisi** is sometimes strengthened by **tamen**, *but, yet*.

**Nisi etiam hīc opperiar tamen paulisper**, PL., *Ad.*, 805; (*Cf. C., Att.*, v. 14, 3. Even without **tamen** it is adversative in colloquial Latin, especially after **nesciō**).

2. **Ni** is found mostly in early Latin and the poets, and in legal formulae and colloquial phrases. It is rare in CICERO, and never used in CAESAR.

**Peream nī piscem putāvī esse**, VARR., *R. R.*, iii. 3, 9; *may I die if I did not think it was a fish*.

3. **Nisi forte** is found occasionally with the Subjv. from APULEIUS ON.

592. *Two Conditions excluding each the other.*—When two conditions exclude each the other, **sī** is used for the first; **sīn**, *if not (but if)*, for the second.

**Sīn** is further strengthened by **autem, vērō** (rare), *but; minus, less (not); secus* (rare), *otherwise; aliter, else*.

**Mercātūra, sī tenuis est, sordida putanda est; sīn māgna et cōpiōsa, nōn est admodum vituperanda**, C., *Off.*, i. 42, 151; *mercantile business, if it is petty, is to be considered dirty (work); if (it is) not (petty, but) great and abundant (= conducted on a large scale), it is not to be found fault with much*.

REMARK.—If the verb or predicate is to be supplied from the context, **sī minus, if less (not), sīn minus, sīn aliter, if otherwise**, are commonly used, rarely **sī nōn**:

**Ēdūc tēcum omnēs tuōs; sī minus, quam plūrimōs**, C., *Cat.*, i. 5, 10; *take out with you all your (followers); if not, as many as possible*. **Ōdero sī poterō; sī nōn, invītus amābō**, OV., *Am.*, iii. 11, 35 (242, R. 2).

NOTE.—Much less common are simple **sī**, or **sī** strengthened by **nōn, nihil, nūllus, minus**, or by **autem, vērō**; or **sed sī, at sī** (COLL. **sī contrā** (HOR., PRAS.). **Sīn** may also be followed by **nōn**, but commonly only when one or more words intervene.

**Pōma crūda sī sunt, vix ēvelluntur; sī mātūra, dēcidunt**, C., *Cat. M.*, 19, 71; *if fruit is green it can hardly be plucked, if ripe it falls (of itself)*.



**593. Other Forms of the Protasis.**—1. The Protasis may be expressed by a Relative.

*Qui vidēret, urbem captam diceret*, C., *Verr.*, IV. 23, 52; *whoso had seen it, had said that the city was taken.* *Mirārētur qui tum cerneret*, L., XXXIV. 9, 4 (258).

2. The Protasis may be contained in a Participle.

*Si latet ars, prōdest*; *affert dēprēnsa pudōrem*, Ov., *A. A.*, II. 313; *art, if concealed, does good; detected, it brings shame.* *Māximās virtūtēs iacere omnēs necesse est voluptāte dominante*, C., *Fin.*, II. 35, 117; *all the greatest virtues must necessarily lie prostrate, if the pleasure (of the senses) is mistress.* *Nihil [potest] evenire nisi causā antecēdente*, C., *Fat.*, 15, 34; *nothing can happen, unless a cause precede.*

3. The Protasis may be involved in a modifier.

*Fēcērunt id servī Milōnis quod suōs quisque servōs in tāli rē facere voluisset*, C., *Mil.*, 10, 29; *the servants of Milo did what each man would have wished his servants to do in such case (si quid tāle accidisset).* *At bene nōn poterat sine pūrō pectore vivī*, Lucr., v. 18; *but there could be no good living without a clean heart (nisi pūrum pectus esset).* *Neque enim māteriam ipsam (cēnsēbant) cohaerere potuisse si nullā vī continērētur, neque vim sine aliquā māteriā*, C., *Ac.*, I. 6, 24.

4. The Protasis may be expressed by an Interrogative, or, what is more common, by an Imperative or equivalent.

*Tristis es? indignor quod sum tibi causa dōlōris*, Ov., *Tr.*, IV. 3, 33 (542). *Cēdit amor rēbus: rēs age, tūtus eris*, Ov., *Rem. Am.*, 144; *love yields to business; be busy (if you plunge into business), you will be safe.* *Immutā (verbōrum collocātiōnem), perierit tōta rēs*, C., *Or.*, 70, 232 (244, R. 4).

### Classification of Conditional Sentences.

**594.** Conditional sentences may be divided into three classes, according to the character of the Protasis:

- I. Logical Conditional Sentences: **sī**, with the Indicative.
- II. Ideal Conditional Sentences: **sī**, chiefly with Present and Perfect Subjunctive.
- III. Unreal Conditional Sentences: **si**, with Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive.

NOTES.—1. In some grammars of Greek and Latin, conditional sentences, and sentences involving conditional relations, have been divided into *particular* and *general*. Whether a condition be particular or general depends simply on the character of the Apodosis. Any form of the Conditional Sentence may be general, if it implies a rule of action. The forms for Iterative action have been given (566, 567).

2. Conditional Sentences with the Subjunctive (Ideal and Unreal) are best understood by comparing the forms of the Ideal and Unreal wish which have the same mood and the same tenses. The Unreal wish of the Past is the Plupf., that of the Present is the Impf. Subjunctive. The Ideal wish is the Pr. and Pf. Subjunctive. The same temporal relations appear in the conditional.

# 1. LOGICAL CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

595. The Logical Conditional Sentence simply states the elements in question, according to the formula: if this is so, then that is so; if this is not so, then that is not so.

It may be compared with the Indicative Question.

The Protasis is in the Indicative: the Apodosis is generally in the Indicative; but in future relations any equivalent of the Future (Subjunctive, Imperative) may be used.

## PROTASIS.

**Si id crēdis,**

*If you believe that,*

**Si id crēdēbās,**

*If you believed that,*

**Si id crēdidistī,**

*If you (have) believed that,*

**Si id crēdēs,**

*If you (shall) believe that,*

**Si id crēdideris,**

*If you (shall have) believe(d) that,*

**Si quid crēdidistī,**

*If you have believed anything*

*(= when you believe anything),*

**Si quid crēdiderās,**

*If you had believed anything*

*(= when you believed anything),*

## APODOSIS.

**errās,**

*you are going wrong.*

**errābās,**

*you were going wrong.*

**errāstī,**

*you went (have gone) wrong.*

**errābis,**

*you will (be) go(ing) wrong (234, R.).*

**errāveris,**

*you will have gone (will go) wrong.*

**errās,**

*you go wrong. Comp. 569.*

**errābās,**

*you went wrong.*

**Si spīritum dūcit, vivit,** C., *Inv.*, i. 46, 86; *if he is drawing (his) breath (breathing) he is living.* **Parvi sunt foris arma nisi est cōsilium domi,** C., *Off.*, i. 22, 76 (411, R. 2). **Si occidī, rēctē fecī; sed nōn occidī,** QUINT., iv. 5, 13; *if I killed him, I did right; but I did not kill him.* [**Nātūram**] **si sequēmur ducem, numquam aberrābimus,** C., *Off.*, i. 28, 100; *if we (shall) follow nature (as our) guide, we shall never go astray.* [**Improbōs**] **si meus cōsulātus sustulerit, multa saecula prōpāgarit rei publicae,** C., *Cat.*, ii. 5, 11; *if my consulship shall have done away with the destructives, it will have added many ages to the life of the State.* **Si pēs condoluit, si dōns, ferre nōn possumus,** C., *Tusc.*, ii. 22, 52 (567). **Stomachābātur senex, si quid asperius dixeram,** C., *N.D.*, i. 33, 93 (567). **Vivam, si vivet; si cadet illa, cadam,** PROP., ii. (iii.) 28 (25), 42 (8); *let me live, if she lives; if she falls, let me fall.* **Nunc si forte potes, sed nōn potes, optima cōniūnx, finitis gaudē tot mihi morte malis,** OV., *Tr.*, iii. 3, 55;

now, if haply you can, but you cannot, noble wife, rejoice that so many evils have been finished for me by death. **Flectere si nequeō superōs, Acheronta movēbō**, V., A., VII. 312; if I can't bend the gods above, I'll rouse (all) hell below. **Si tot exempla virtūtis nōn movent, nihil umquam movēbit**; **si tanta clādēs vilem vitam nōn fecit, nulla faciet**, L., XXII. 60, 14; if so many examples of valour stir you not, nothing will ever do it; if so great a disaster has not made life cheap, none (ever) will. **Dēsine timēre, si spērāre dēsieris**, SEN., *E.M.*, I. 5, 7; you will cease to fear, if you (shall have) cease(d) to hope. **Peream male, si nōn optimum erat**, H., S., II. 1, 6; may I die the death if it was not best. **Si volēbās participārī, auferrēs** (= *aufferre dēbēbās*) **dimidium domum**, PL., *Truc.*, 748; if you wished to share in it, you should have taken the half home. **Respirārō si tē viderō**, C., *Att.*, II. 24, 5; I shall breathe again, if I shall have seen you.

REMARKS.—1. After a verb of Saying or Thinking (**Ōratiō Obliqua**), the Protasis must be put in the Subjv., according to the rule.

- |                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| ( <b>Si id crēdis, errās.</b> )       | <b>Dicō, tē, si id crēdās, errāre.</b>           |
|                                       | <b>Dixi, tē, si id crēderēs, errāre.</b>         |
| ( <b>Si id crēdēs, errābis.</b> )     | <b>Dicō, tē, si id crēdās, errātūrum esse.</b>   |
|                                       | <b>Dixi, tē, si id crēderēs, errātūrum esse.</b> |
| ( <b>Si id crēdidisti, errāstī.</b> ) | <b>Dicō, tē, si id crēdideris, errāsse.</b>      |
|                                       | <b>Dixi, tē, si id crēdidissēs, errāsse.</b>     |

For examples, see **Ōratiō Obliqua**, 657.

2. The Subjv. is used by Attraction :

[**Arāneolae**] **rēte texunt ut si quid inhaeserit cōficiant**, C., *N.D.*, II. 48, 123 (567). (**Si quid inhaesit cōficiunt.**)

3. The Ideal Second Person takes the Subjv. in connection with the Universal Present :

(**Senectūs**) **plēna est voluptātis si illā sciās ūti**, SEN., *E.M.*, 12, 4; *old age is full of pleasure if you know (if one knows) how to enjoy it.*

**Memoria minuitur nisi eam exerceās**, C., *Cat.M.*, 7, 21 (591, b. 2).

4. **Sive—sive (seu—seu)** almost invariably takes the Logical form. (496, 2.) The Subjv. is occasionally used by Attraction or with the Ideal Second Person.

**Seu vicit, ferōciter instat victis**; **seu victus est, instaurat cum victōribus certāmen**, L., XXVII. 14, 1; *if he vanquishes (567), he presses the vanquished furiously; if he is vanquished, he renews the struggle with the vanquishers.*

5. **Siquidem**, as giving the basis for a conclusion, often approaches the causal sense (590, N. 2). In this case the Apodosis precedes.

**Molesta vērītās, siquidem ex eā nascitur odium**, C., *Laet.*, 24, 89; *truth is burdensome, if indeed (since) hatred arises from it.*

6. **Si modō**, if only, serves to limit the preceding statement.

**Ā** deō tantum ratiōnem habēmus, si modo habēmus, C., *N.D.*, III. 28, 71; *all that we have from God is (bare) reason, if only we have it.*

**Si** vērō when thus used is ironical (C., *Ph.*, VIII. 8, 24). **Si** tamen seems to be post-classical.

NOTES.—1. Phraseological are **si quaeris (quaerimus)** in a sense approaching that of **profectō** (C., *Off.*, III. 20, 80; *Tusc.*, III. 29, 73): **Si dis placet**, *if the gods will*, often ironical (Cf. *TER.*, *Eun.*, 919; C., *Fin.*, II. 10, 31). **Si forte**, *peradventure* (C., *Or.*, III. 12, 47; *Mil.*, 38, 104).

2. It will be observed that the tense involved depends in each member upon the sense. But for this very reason certain combinations would be uncommon. Thus Pr. Impf. and Fut. Pr. are rare; Pr. Fut. is more common in ante-classical and post-classical Latin than Fut. Fut., the Pres. being used by anticipation. CICERO prefers Fut. Fut. CICERO also uses frequently Fut. Pf. Fut. Pf., which is also found elsewhere, but rarely. Pf.—Fut. is found first in CICERO, and is never common; also Impf.—Impf. Plupf.—Impf. is mostly found in ante-classical and post-classical Latin. The Pf., by anticipation for Fut. Pf., is not unfrequent in early Latin. So C., *Pam.*, XII. 6, 2: (**Brūtus**) **si cōservātus erit, vicimus** (237); (Cf. *SEN.*, *Ben.*, III. 62, 115. *Pl.*, *Poen.*, 671, shows us our only example of Pr. Fut. Pf.: **Rēx sum, si ego illum ad mē adlexerō.**

## II. IDEAL CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

**596.** The Ideal Conditional Sentence represents the matter as still in suspense. The supposition is more or less fanciful, and no real test is to be applied. There is often a wish for or against. The point of view is usually the Present.

1. The Protasis is put in the Present Subjunctive for continued action, and in the Perfect Subjunctive for completion or attainment.

The Apodosis is in the Present or Perfect Subjunctive. The Imperative and Future Indicative or equivalents are often found. The Universal Present is frequently used, especially in combination with the Ideal Second Person (595, R. 3; 663, 2).

On the difference between Subjunctive and Future, see 257.

### PROTASIS.

**Si id crēdās,**

*If you should (were to) believe that,*

**Si id crēdās,**

*If you should (were to) believe that,*

**Si id crēdiderīs,**

1. *If you should (prove to) have believed that (Perfect; Action Past or Future),*

2. *If you should (come to) believe that (Aor.; Action Future),*

**Si id crēdiderīs,**

*If you (should have) believed that,*

### APODOSIS.

**errēs,**

*you would be going wrong.*

**errāverīs,**

*you would go wrong.*

**errēs,**

*you would be going wrong.*

**errāverīs** (rare),

*you would (have) gone wrong.*

**SĪ** vīcīnus tuus equum meliōrem habeat quam tuus est, tuumne equum mālīs an illius? C., *Inu.*, I. 31, 52; *if your neighbour (were to) have a better horse than yours is, would you prefer your horse or his?* **SĪ** gladium quis apud tē sānā mente dēposuerit, repetat insāniēns, reddere peccātum sit, officium nōn reddere, C., *Off.*, III. 25, 95; *if a man in sound mind were to deposit (to have deposited) a sword with you, (and) reclaim it (when) mad, it would be wrong to return it, right not to return it.* **Hanc viam sĭ asperam esse negem, mentiar**, C., *Sest.*, 46, 100; *if I should say that this way is not rough, I should lie.* **SĪ** nunc mē suspendam meam operam lūserim, et meis inimicis voluptātem creāverim, PL., *Cas.*, 424; *should I hang myself now, I should (thereby) (have) fool(ed) my work away, and give(n) to my enemies a charming treat.* **Cicerōnī** nēmo ducentōs nunc dederit nummōs nisi fulserit ānulus ingēns, JUV., VII. 139; *no one would give Cicero nowadays two hundred two-pences unless a huge ring glittered (on his hand).* **SĪ** quis furiosō praecepta det, erit ipsō quem monēbit, insānior, SEN., *E.M.*, 94, 17; *if one should give advice to a madman, he will be more out of his mind than the very man whom he advises.* **SĪ** valeant hominēs, ars tua, Phoebē, iacet, OV., *Tr.*, IV. 3, 78; *should men keep well, your art, Phoebus, is naught.* **Ōtia sĭ tollās, periēre Cupīdinis arcūs**, OV., *Rem. Am.*, 139 (204, N. 6). (**Senectūs**) est plēna voluptātis, sĭ illā sciās ūti, SEN., *E.M.*, 12, 4 (595, R. 3). **Memoria** minuitur nisi eam exerceās, C., *Cat. M.*, 7, 21 (591, b. 2). **Nūlla est excūsatiō peccātī, sĭ amīci causā peccāverīs**, C., *Lael.*, II. 37; *it is no excuse for a sin to have sinned for the sake of a friend.*

2. The Point of View may be the Past. In that case the Protasis is found in the Imperfect, very rarely the Pluperfect Subjunctive, and the Apodosis has corresponding forms. This usage, however, is rare, inasmuch as it coincides in form with the Unreal Condition, from which it is distinguishable only by a careful study of the context. When found with indefinite persons, the construction is the Potential of the Past.

The idea of Partial Obliquity frequently enters, in which case **sĭ** may often be translated, *in case that*.

**Quod ūsū nōn veniēbat dē eō sĭ quis lēgem cōstitueret nōn tam prohibēre vidērētur quam admonēre**, C., *Tull.*, 4, 9; *if one should make a law about that which was not customary, he would seem not so much to prevent as to warn.* (Present: **sĭ** quis cōstituat, videātur.) **SĪ** Alfēnus tum iudiciū accipere vellet, dēnique omnia quae pōstulārēs facere voluisset, quid agerēs? C., *Quinct.*, 26, 83; *in case Alfenus was willing then to undertake the trial, and should have been willing afterwards to do all that you required, what were you to do?* (See the whole passage—Present:



*si nunc velit, . . . voluerit, agās.) Si tribūnī mē triumphāre prohibērent, Fūrium et Aemiliū tēstēs citātūrus fui, L., XXXVIII. 47; should the tribunes prevent me from triumphing, I was going to summon Furius and Aemilius as witnesses. Quid faceret? si vivere vellet, Sēiānus rogandus erat, SEN., Cons. Marc., 22, 6; what was he to do? if he wished to live Sejanus was (the man) to be asked. See Tac., Ann., III. 13. Erat Quinctius, si cēderēs, placābilis, L., XXXVI. 32, 5; Quinctius was, if you yielded to him, (sure to be) placable. (Est si cēdās.) Si lūxuriæ temperāret, avāritiam nōn timērēs, Tac., H., II. 62; if he were to control his love of pleasure, you should not have feared avarice. (Si temperet, nōn timeās.) Cūr igitur et Camillus dolēret, si haec . . . ēventūra putāret? et ego doleam si. . . putem? C., Tusc., I. 37, 90. (Present: doleat si putet.)*

REMARKS.—1. The Ideal is not controlled by impossibility or improbability, and the lively fancy of the Roman often employs the Ideal where we should expect the Unreal. (Comp. 256, s. 2.) This is more common in early Latin.

*Tū si hīc sis, aliter sentiās, Ter., And., 310; if you were I (put yourself in my place), you would think differently. Haec si tēcum patria loquātur, nōne impetrāre dēbeat? C., Cat., I. 8, 19; if your country should (were to) speak thus with you, ought she not to get (what she wants)? So C., Fin., IV. 22, 61.*

2. Sometimes the conception shifts in the course of a long sentence:

*Si reviviscant et tēcum loquantur—quid tālibus viris respondērēs? C., Fin., IV. 22, 61; if they should come to life again, and speak with you—what answer would you make to such men?*

3. When *nōn possum* is followed by *nisi (si nōn)*, the Protasis has the Ideal of the Past, after the past tense, and *may* have the ideal of the Present after a primary tense.

*Neque mūitiōnēs Caesaris prohibēre poterat, nisi proeliō dēcertāre vellet, CAES., B.C., III. 44. See MADVIG on C., Fin., III. 21, 70.*

4. In comparing Ideal and Unreal Conditionals, exclude future verbs such as *posse, velle, etc.* The future sense of such Unreal Conditionals comes from the auxiliary.

5. In *Ōratiō Oblīqua* the difference between Ideal and Logical Future is necessarily effaced, so far as the mood is concerned. (656.)

### III. UNREAL CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

**597.** The Unreal Conditional sentence is used of that which is Unfulfilled or Impossible, and is expressed by the Imperfect Subjunctive for continued action—generally, in opposition to the Present; and by the Pluperfect Subjunctive—uniformly in opposition to the Past.

The notion of Impossibility comes from the irreversible character of the Past Tense. Compare the Periphrastic Conjug. Perfect and Imperfect. Any action that is decided is considered Past (compare C., *Off.*, II. 21, 75). (See 277, 3, N.)

PROTASIS.

**Sī id crēderēs,**

*If you believed (were believing) that, [you do not,]*

**Sī id crēdidissēs,**

*If you had believed that, [you did not,]*

APODOSIS.

**errārēs,**

*you would be going wrong.*

**errāvissēs,**

*you would have gone wrong.*

**Sapientia nōn expeterētur, si nihil efficeret,** C., *Fin.*, I. 13, 42 ; *wisdom would not be sought after, if it did no practical good.* **Caederem tē, nisi irāscerer,** SEN., *Ira*, I. 15, 3 ; *I should flog you, if I were not getting angry.* **Sī ibi tē esse scissem, ad tē ipse vēnissem,** C., *Fin.*, I. 8 ; *if I had known you were there, I should have come to you myself.* **Hectora quis nōsset, felix si Trōia fuisset ?** OV., *Tr.*, IV. 3, 75 ; *who would know (of) Hector, if Troy had been happy ?* **Nisi ante Rōmā profectus essēs, nunc eam certē relinquerēs,** C., *Fam.*, VII. 11, 1 ; *if you had not departed from Rome before, you would certainly leave it now.* **Ego nisi peperissem, Rōma nōn oppugnārētur ; nisi filium habērem, libera in liberā patriā mortua essem,** L., II. 40, 8 ; *had I not become a mother, Rome would not be besieged ; had I not a son, I should have died a free woman in a free land.*

REMARKS.—I. The Impf. Subjv. is sometimes used in opposition to continuance from a point in the Past into the Present. This is necessarily the case when the Protasis is in the Impf., and the Apodosis in the Plupf., except when the Impf. denotes opposition to a general statement, which holds good both for Past and for Present :

**Nōn tam facile opēs Carthāginis tantae concidissent, nisi Sicilia clāssibus nostrīs patēret,** Cf. C., *Verr.*, II. 1, 3 ; *the great resources of Carthage (Carthage with her great resources) would not have fallen so readily, if Sicily had not been (as it still continues to be) open to our fleets.* **Sī pudōrem habērēs, ūltimam mihi pēnsiōnem remisissēs,** SEN., *E.M.*, 29, 10 ; *if you had (= you had not, as you have not) any delicacy, you would have let me off from the last payment.* **Memoriam ipsam cum vōce perdissēmus, si tam in nostrā potestāte esset oblivisci quam tacēre,** TAC., *Agr.*, 2, 4 ; *we should have lost memory itself, together with utterance, if it were as much in our power to forget as to keep silent.*

The Impf. in both members, referring to the Past, always admits of another explanation than that of the Unreal ; thus we have a case of Representation (654, N.) in

**Prōtogenēs sī Iālȳsum illum suum caenō oblitum vidēret, māgnū, crēdō, acciperet dolōrem,** C., *Att.*, II. 21, 4 ; *if Protogenes could see that famous Ialysus of his besmeared with mud, he would feel a mighty pang.* See PL., *Aul.*, 742.

2. In Unreal Conditions, after a negative Protasis, the Apodosis is sometimes expressed by the Impf. Indic., when the action is represented as interrupted (233); by the Plupf. and Hist. Pf., when the conclusion is confidently anticipated (254, R. 3).

*Lābēbar longius, nisi mē retinuissem*, C., *Leg.*, I. 19, 52 (254, R. 3).

This usage after a positive is cited first in the post-Augustan writers. Cases like C., *Ferr.*, v. 42, 129; L., xxii. 28, 13, do not belong here.

*Omninō supervacua erat doctrīna, sī nātūra sufficeret*, QUINT., II. 8, 8 (254, R. 3). *Perāctum erat bellum, sī Pompēium Brundisiī opprimere potuisset*, FLOR., II. 13, 19; *the war was (had been) finished, if he had been able to crush Pompey at Brundisium*.

The Impf. Indic. is sometimes found in the Protasis :

*Ipsam tibi epistolam misissem, nisi (v.l., sed) tam subito frātis puer proficiscēbātur*, C., *Att.*, VIII. 1, 2; *I should have sent you the letter itself, if my brother's servant was not starting so suddenly*.

3. (a) The Indicative is the regular construction in the Apodosis with verbs which signify Possibility or Power, Obligation or Necessity—so with the active and passive Periphrastic—*vix, paene, scarcely, hardly*, and the like. In many cases it is difficult to distinguish this usage from that of the Ideal (596, 2).

*Cōsul esse quī potui, nisi eum vitāe cursum tenuissem?* C., *Rep.*, I. 6, 10; *how could I have been consul, if I had not kept that course of life?* *Antōnī gladiōs potuit contemnere, sī sic omnia dixisset*, JUV., X. 123; *he might have despised Antony's swords, if he had thus said all (that he did say)*. *Ēmendātūrus, sī licuisset, eram*, OY., *Tr.*, I. 7, 40; *I should have removed the faults, if I had been free (to do it)*. *Pōns iter paene hostibus dedit (paene dedit = dabat = datūrus erat), nī ūnus vir fuisset*, L., II. 10, 2; *the bridge well nigh gave a passage to the enemy, had it not been for one man*.

(b) With the Indic. the Possibility and the rest are stated absolutely; when the Subjv. is used the Possibility and the rest are conditioned as in any other Unreal sentence.

Compare *quid facere potuissē, nisi tum cōsul fuissē*, with *cōsul esse quī potui, nisi eum vitāe cursum tenuissem*, C., *Rep.*, I. 6, 10. *Quī sī fuisset meliōre fortunā, fortasse austērior et gravior esse potuisset*, C., *Pis.*, 29, 71.

4. In *Ōratiō Oblīqua* the Protasis is unchanged; the Apodosis is formed by the Periphrastic Pr. and Pf. Inf. (149), for the Active, *futūrum (fore) ut, futūrum fuisse ut* for passive and Supineless verbs.

A. *Dicō (dixi), tē, sī id crēderēs, errātūrum esse*.

B. *Dicō (dixi), tē, sī id crēdidissēs, errātūrum fuisse*.

A. *Dicō (dixi), sī id crēderēs, fore ut dēciperēris*.

B. *Dicō (dixi), sī id crēdidissēs, futūrum fuisse ut dēciperēris*.

A is very rare; A, theoretical. For the long form, B, the simple

Perfect Infinitive is found. Examples, see 659, N. In B, *fuisse* is omitted occasionally in later Latin; TAC., *Ann.*, I. 33, *etc.*

5. (a) When the Apodosis of an Unreal Conditional is made to depend on a sentence which requires the Subjv., the Plupf. is turned into the Periphrastic Pf. Subjv.; the Impf. form is unchanged.

<b>Nōn dubitō,</b>	}	<b>quīn, sī id crēderēs, errārēs,</b>
<i>I do not doubt,</i>		<i>that, if you believed that, you would be going wrong.</i>
<b>Nōn dubitābam,</b>		<b>quīn, sī id crēdidissēs, errātūrus fuerīs,</b>
<i>I did not doubt,</i>		<i>that, if you had believed that, you would have gone wrong.</i>

**Honestum tāle est ut, vel sī ignōrārent id hominēs, esset laudābile, Cf. C., *Fin.*, II. 15, 49; virtue is a thing to deserve praise, even if men did not know it. Ea rēs tantum tumultum ac fugam prae-buit ut nisi castra Pūnica extrā urbem fuissent, effūsūra sē omnis pavidā multitudō fuerit, L., XXVI. 10, 7; that matter caused so much tumult and flight (= so wild a panic), that had not the Punic camp been outside the city the whole frightened multitude would have poured forth. Nec dubium erat quīn, sī tam paucī simul obīre omnia possent, terga datūri hostēs fuerint, L., IV. 38, 5; there was no doubt that, if it had been possible for so small a number to manage everything at the same time, the enemy would have turned their backs. Dic quidnam factūrus fuerīs, sī eō tempore cēnsor fuissēs? L., IX. 33, 7; tell (me) what you would have done, if you had been censor at that time? See C., *Pis.*, 7, 14.**

(b) The Periphrastic Plupf. Subjv. occurs rarely, and then only in the Dependent Interrogative. The only examples cited are from LIVY.

**Subibat cōgitātiō animum, quōnam modō tolerābilis futūra Etrūria fuisset sī quid in Samniō adversī ēvēnisset, L., X. 45, 3.**

(c) **Potui** (254, R. 1) commonly becomes **potuerim**, and **fui** with the Periphrastic passive in **-dus** becomes **fuerim**, after all tenses.

**Haud dubium fuit quīn, nisi ea mora intervēnisset, castra eō diē Pūnica capi potuerint, L., XXIV. 42, 3; there was no doubt that, had not that delay interfered, the Punic camp could have been taken on that day. Quae (rēs) suā sponte nefāria est ut etiāmsī lēx nōn esset, māgnopere vitanda fuerit, C., *Verr.*, I. 42, 108.**

(d) The passive Conditional is unchanged :

**Id ille sī repudiāset, dubitātis quīn ei vis esset allāta? C., *Sest.*, 29, 62; if he had rejected that, do you doubt that force would have been brought (to bear) on him?**

The active form is rarely unchanged (L., II. 33, 9). In the absence of the Periphrastic tense the Inf. with **potuerim** is often a sufficient substitute; see L., XXXII. 28, 6.

NOTE.—In PLAUTUS and TERENCE, **absque** with the Abl. and **esset** (**foret**) is found a few times instead of **nisi** (**sī nōn**) with Nom., and **esset** (**fuisse**) in the sense *if it were not (had not been) for*.

**Nam absque tē esset, hodiē numquam ad sōlem occāsum viverem, PL., *Men.*, 1022. Cf. LIV., II. 10, 2 (R. 3, above).**

## INCOMPLETE CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

**598. Omission of the Conditional Sign.**—Occasionally the members of a Conditional sentence are put side by side without a Conditional sign.

An ille mihī (351) liber, cui mulier imperat ? pōscit, dandum est ; vocat, veniendum est ; dicit, abeundum ; minatur, extimēscendum, C., *Parad.*, 5, 2 ; *or is he free (tell) me, to whom a woman gives orders ? she asks, he must give ; she calls, he must come ; she turns out (of door), he must go ; she threatens, he must be frightened.* Ūnum cōgnōrīs, omnis nōrīs, TER., *Ph.*, 265 ; *you know one, you know all.* Dedissēs huic animō pār corpus, fēcisset quod optābat, PLAN., *Ep.*, I. 12, 8 ; *had you given him a body that was a match for his spirit, he would have accomplished what he desired.*

**599. Omission of the Verb of the Protasis.**—When the verb of the Protasis is omitted, either the precise form or the general idea of the verb is to be supplied from the Apodosis.

Si quisquam ( si quisquam fuit), Catō sapiēns fuit, Cf. C., *Lael.*, 2, 9 ; *if any one was wise, Cato was.* Ēdūc tēcum omnēs tuōs ; si minus, quam plūrimōs, C., *Cat.*, I. 5, 10 (592, R.).

**600. Total Omission of the Protasis.**—1. The Protasis is often contained in a participle or involved in the context ; for examples see 593, 2 and 3.

2. The Potential Subjunctive is sometimes mechanically explained by the omission of an indefinite Protasis (257, S. 2).

Nimiō plūs quam velim [Volscōrum] ingenia sunt mōbilia, L., II. 37, 4 ; *the dispositions of the Volscians are (too) much more unstable than I should like.* Tuam mihī darī vellem ēloquentiam, C., *N.D.*, II. 59, 147 ; *I could wish to have your eloquence given me.* Tam fēlix essēs quam fōrmōsissima vellem, OV., *Am.*, I. 8, 27 (302). (Utinam essēs !)

**601. Omission and Involution of the Apodosis.**—The Apodosis is omitted in *Wishes* (261), and implied after verbs and phrases denoting *Trial* (460, 2). It is often involved in Ōrātiō Oblīqua, and sometimes consists in the general notion of *Result*, *Ascertainment*, or the like.

Si vērū excutiās, faciēs nōn uxor amātur, JUV., VI. 143 ; *if you were to get out the truth (you would find that) it is the face, not the wife, that*



*is loved.* (Iugurtha) timēbat iram (= nē irāscerētur) senātūs, nī pāruiisset lēgātis, S., *Iug.*, 25, 7; *Iugurtha was afraid of the anger of the senate* (that the senate would get angry) *in case he did not* (should not have) *obey(ed) the legates.*

# CONDITIONAL SENTENCES OF COMPARISON.

602. The Apodosis is omitted in comparisons with **ut sī**, **velut sī**, **āc sī**, **quam sī** (rare), **tamquam sī**, **quasi**, or simply **velut** and **tamquam**, *as if*.

The verb is to be supplied from the Protasis, as is common in correlative sentences. The Mood is the Subjunctive.

The tenses follow the rule of sequence, rather than the ordinary use of the conditional. In English, the translation implies the unreality of the comparison.

**Nōli timēre quasi** [= **quam timeās sī**] **assem elephantō dēs**, QUINT., VI. 3, 59; *don't be afraid, as if you were giving a penny to an elephant.* **Parvī primō ortū sic iacent tamquam** [= **iaceant sī**] **omninō sine animō sint**, C., *Fin.*, v. 15, 42; *babies, when first born, lie (there), as if they had no mind at all.* **Hic est obstandum, militēs, velut sī ante Rōmāna moenia pūgnēmus**, L., XXI. 41, 15; *here (is where) we must oppose them, soldiers, as if we were fighting before the walls of Rome (velut obstēmus, sī pūgnēmus, as we would oppose them, if we were to fight).* **Mē iuvat, velut ipse in parte labōris āc periculī fuerim, ad finem bellī Pūnicī pervēnisse**, L., XXXI. 1; *I am delighted to have reached the end of the Punic war, as if I had shared in the toil and danger (of it).* **Tantus patrēs metus cēpit velut sī iam ad portās hostis esset**, L., XXI. 16, 2; *a great fear took hold of the senators, as if the enemy were already at their gates.* **Dēlēta (est) Ausonum gēns perinde āc sī internecivō bellō certāset**, L., IX. 25, 9; *the Ausonian race was blotted out, just as if it had engaged in an internecine war (war to the knife).*

REMARKS.—I. Occasionally the sequence is violated out of regard to the Conditional:

**Massiliēnsēs in eō honōre audimus apud [Rōmānōs] esse āc sī medium umbilicum Graeciae incolerent**, L., XXXVII. 54, 21; *we hear that the people of Marseilles are in as high honour with the Romans as if they inhabited the mid-navel (= the heart) of Greece.* **Ēius negōtium sic velim suscipiās, ut sī esset rēs mea**, C., *Fam.*, II. 14, 1; *I wish you would undertake his business just as if it were my affair.*

2. The principal clause often contains correlatives, as: **ita**, **sic**, **perinde**, **proinde**, **similiter**, **nōn (haud) secus**, etc.

NOTES.—1. **Tamquam** and **quasi** are also used in direct comparison with the Indic-

ative. Here the verbs with both clauses are apt to be the same, in which case the verb with *quasi* or *tamquam* is usually omitted in model prose.

*Quasi pōma ex arboribus, crūda sī sunt, vix ēvelluntur, sic vitam adulō-scentibus vīs aufert*, C., *Cat. M.*, 19, 71.

2. *Quasi* is used to soften or apologise for a single word (= *ut ita dicam*).

*Mors est quaedam quasi migrātiō commūtātiōque vitae*, (Cf. C., *Tusc.*, 1. 12, 27; *death is as it were a shifting of life's quarters*).

3. As in the ordinary Conditional sentence, so in the Comparative sentence, the Pro-tasis may be expressed by a participle:

*Galli laeti ut explorātā victoriā ad castra Rōmānōrum pergunt*, (Cf. CAES., *B. G.*, III. 18, 8; *the Gauls in their joy, as if (their) victory had been fully ascertained, proceeded to the camp of the Romans*). *Antiochus secūrus dē bellō Rōmānō erat tamquam nōn trānsitūris in Asiam Rōmānis*, L., XXXVI. 41, 1; *Antiochus was as unconcerned about the war with Rome as if the Romans did not intend to cross over into Asia Minor*.

4. In CELSUS, QUINTILIAN, JUVENAL, PLINY MIN., and especially in TACITUS and SÆTONTIUS, we find *tamquam* used almost like *quod* (541), to indicate an assumed reason, in imitation of the similar Greek use of *ὥς* with the participle, and occasionally where we might have expected the Acc. and Infinitive.

*Prīdem invisus tamquam plūs quam cīvilia agitāret*, TAC., *Ann.*, 1. 12, 6; *long mistaked as in Tiberius' judgment plotting high treason*. *Sūspectus tamquam ipse suās incenderit aedēs*, JUV., III. 222; *suspected of having (as if he had) set his own house on fire*. *Vulgi opīniō est tamquam (comētēs) mūtātiōnem rēgni portendat*, TAC., *Ann.*, XIV. 22, 1; *it is the popular belief that a comet portends a change in the kingdom*.

Other particles, *quasi*, *sicut*, and *ut*, occur much more rarely and are cited mainly from TACITUS (*quasi* only in the *Annals*). Compare SÆT., *Tit.*, 5.

5. *Ut sī* is rare in early Latin, not being found at all in PLAUTUS. It is found but once in LIVY, but frequently in CICERO and later Latin. *Velut sī* is found first in CAESAR. *Velut sī* is found first in LIVY. *Ac sī* is equivalent to *quasi* only in late Latin.

## CONCESSIVE SENTENCES.

603. Concessive Sentences are introduced by:

1. The Conditional particles, *etsī*, *etiāmsī*, *tametsī* (*tamenetsī*).
2. The generic relative, *quamquam*.
3. The compounds, *quamvis*, *quantumvis*.
4. The verb *licet*.
5. The Final particles, *ut* (*nē*).
6. *Cum* (*quom*).

These all answer generally to the notion *although*.

NOTE. *Etsī* (et + *sī*), *even if*; *etiāmsī*, *even now if*; *tametsī*, *yet even if*; *quamquam* (= *quam* + *quam*), *to what extent soever*; *quamvis*, *to what extent you choose*; *quantumvis*, *to what amount you choose*; *licet*, *it is left free* (perhaps intrans. of *linquō*, *I leave*).

604. *Etsī*, *etiāmsī*, and *tametsī*, take the Indicative or Subjunctive, according to the general principles which regulate

the use of **sī**, *if* The Indicative is more common, especially with **etsī**.

**Dē futūrīs rēbus etsī semper difficile est dicere, tamen interdum coniectūrā possis accēdere**, C., *Fam.*, vi. 4, 1; *although it is always difficult to tell about the future, nevertheless you can sometimes come near it by guessing*. [**Hamilcar**] **etsī flagrābat bellandī cupiditāte, tamen pāci serviundum putāvit**, NEP., xxii. i. 3; *although Hamilcar was on fire with the desire of war, nevertheless he thought that he ought to subserve (to work for) peace*. **Inops ille etiāmsī referre grātiā nōn potest, habēre certē potest**, C., *Off.*, ii. 20, 69; *the needy man (spoken of), if he cannot return a favour, can at least feel it*. **Mē vērā prō grātis loquī, etsī meum ingenium nōn monēret, necessitās cōgit**, L., iii. 68, 9; *even if my disposition did not bid me, necessity compels me to speak what is true instead of what is palatable*.

REMARKS.—I. **SI** itself is often concessive (591, 2), and the addition of **et**, **etiam**, and **tamen** serves merely to fix the idea.

2. **Etiāmsī** is used oftener with the Subjv. than with the Indic., and seems to be found only in conditional sentences. On the other hand, **etsī** is also used like **quamquam** (605, R. 2), in the sense “*and yet*,” **virtūtem sī ūnam amiserīs—etsī amittī nōn potest virtūs**, C., *Tusc.*, ii. 14, 32; so too, but rarely, **tametsī**. **Etsī** is a favorite word with Cicerō, but does not occur in QUINTILIAN nor in SALLUST, the latter of whom prefers **tametsī**. **Tametsī** is not found in the Augustan poets nor in TACITUS, and belongs especially to familiar speech.

3. **Tamen** is often correlative even with **tametsī**.

605. **Quamquam**, *to what extent soever*, falls under the head of generic relatives (254, R. 4), and, in the best authors, is construed with the Indicative.

**Medicī quamquam intellegunt saepe, tamen numquam aegrīs dicunt, illō morbō eōs esse moritūrōs**, C., *Div.*, ii. 25, 54; *although physicians often know, nevertheless they never tell their patients that they will die of that (particular) disease*.

REMARKS.—I. The Potential Subjv. (257, N. 3) is sometimes found with **quamquam**: **Quamquam exercitum quī in Volscīs erat mallet, nihil recūsāvit**, L., vi. 9, 6; *although he might well have preferred the army which was in the Volscian country, nevertheless he made no objection*.

So especially with the Ideal Second Person.

2. **Quamquam** is often used like **etsī**, but more frequently, at the beginning of sentences, in the same way as the English, *and yet, although, however*, in order to limit the whole preceding sentence.

3. The Indic., with **etsī** and **quamquam**, is, of course, liable to attraction into the Subjv. in **Ōrātiō Obliqua** (508).

NOTE.—The Subjv. with **quamquam** (not due to attraction) is first cited from **CICERO** (perhaps *Tusc.*, v. 30, 85), **NEPOS** (XXV. 13, 6), after which, following the development in all generic sentences in Latin, it becomes more and more common; thus, in post-Augustan Latin, **JUVENAL** uses it exclusively, and **PLINY MIN.** and **TACITUS** regularly.

**606. Quamvis** follows the analogy of **volō**, *I will*, with which it is compounded, and takes the Subjunctive (usually the principal tenses).

**Quantumvis** and **quamlibet** (as conjunctions) belong to poetry and silver prose.

**Quamvis** sint sub aquā, sub aquā maledicere temptant, **OV.**, *M.*, VI. 376; *although they be under the water, under the water they try to revile*. **Quamvis** ille niger, **quamvis** tū candidus essēs, **V.**, *Ec.*, II. 16; *although he was black, although you were fair*. [**Vitia mentis**], **quamvis** exigua sint, in māius excēdunt, **SEN.**, *E.M.*, 85. 12; *mental ailments (= passions), no matter how slight they be, go on increasing*. **Quamvis** sis molestus numquam tē esse cōfitebor malum, **C.**, *Tusc.*, II. 25, 61; *although you be troublesome, I shall never confess that you are evil*.

NOTES.—1. The Indic. with **quamvis** is cited in prose first from **C.**, *Rab. Post.*, 2, 4; **NEP.**, I. 2, 3 (except in fragments of **VARRO** and **VATINIUS**); in poetry it appears first in **LUCRETIVS**. Then it grows, so that in the post-Augustan period it is used just like **quamquam** with the Indic., though the Subjv. is also common:

**Quamvis** ingeniō nōn valet, arte valet, **OV.**, *Am.*, I. 15, 14; *although he does not tell by genius, he does tell by art*.

2. The verb of **quamvis** is sometimes inflected: **Quam** volet **Epicūrus** iocētur, tamen numquam mē movēbit, **C.**, *N.D.*, II. 17, 46.

**607. Licet** retains its verbal nature, and, according to the Sequence of Tenses, takes only the Present and Perfect Subjunctive:

**Licet** irrideat si quī vult, **C.**, *Parad.*, I. 1, 8; *let any one laugh who will*. **Ardeat** ipsa licet, tormentis gaudet amantis, **JUV.**, VI. 209; *though she herself is aglow, she rejoices in the tortures of her lover*. **Sim** licet extrēmum, sicut sum, missus in orbem, **OV.**, *Tr.*, IV. 9, 9; *although I be sent, as I have been, to the end of the world*.

NOTES.—1. Exceptions are extremely rare: **JUV.**, XIII. 56.

2. **Quamvis** is sometimes combined with **licet**, as: **quamvis** licet insectēmur istōs metuō nē sōlī philosophī sint, **C.**, *Tusc.*, IV. 24, 53.

3. Occasionally **licet** is inflected; e. g., II., *Epod.*, 15, 19; *S.*, II. 1, 59. From the time of **APULEIUS** **licet** is construed with the Indicative.

**608. Ut** and **nē** are also used concessively for the sake of argument; this is common in **CICERO**, who often attaches to it **sānē**; the basis of this is the Imperative Subjunctive.

**Ut** dēsint vīrēs, tamen est landanda voluntās, **OV.**, *Pont.*, III. 4, 79;

*granted that strength be lacking, nevertheless you must praise (my) good will. Nē sit summum malum dolor, malum certē est, C., Tusc., II. 5, 14; granted that pain be not the chief evil, an evil it certainly is.*

REMARKS.—1. *Ut nōn* can be used on the principle of the Specific Negative: *Hic diēs ūltimus est; ut nōn sit, prope ab ūltimō est, SEN., E. M., 15, 12; this is your last day; granted that it be not, it is near the last.*

2. Examples with past tenses are rare: *C., Mil., 17, 46; L., xxxviii. 46, 3, etc.*

3. On *ita—ut*, see 262; on *ut—ita*, see 482, 4.

**609.** *Concessive Sentence represented by a Participle or Predicative Attribute.*—The Concessive sentence may be represented by a Participle or Predicative Attribute.

[*Risus*] *interdum ita repente ērumpit, ut eum cupientēs tenēre nequeāmus, Cf. C., Or., II. 58, 235; laughter between whiles (occasionally) breaks out so suddenly that we cannot keep it down, although we desire to do so. Multōrum tē oculi et aurēs nōn sentientem cūstōdient, C., Cat., I. 2, 6; (of) many (the) eyes and ears will keep guard over you, though you perceive it not (WITHOUT your perceiving it). Quis Aristīdem nōn mortuum dīligit? C., Fin., v. 22, 62; who does not love Aristides, (though) dead?*

NOTES.—1. *Quamquam, quamvis, and etsi* are often combined with the participle. This, however, is rare in classical Latin, but becomes more common later.

(*Caesar*), *quamquam obsidiōne Massiliae retardante, brevī tamen omnia subēgit, SUET., Jul., 34.*

2. With adjectives and adverbs this is much more common, so especially with *quamvis*, which is used with a positive as a circumlocution for the superlative. With the superlative *quamvis* is rare.

*Etsi nōn inīquum, certē triste senātūs cōsultum, L., xxv. 6, 2. Cum omnia per populū geruntur, quamvis iūstum atque moderātum tamen ipsa aequābilitās est inīqua, C., Rep., I. 27, 43.*

## RELATIVE SENTENCES.

**610.** The Latin language uses the relative construction far more than the English: so in the beginning of sentences, and in combination with Conjunctions and other Relatives.

REMARKS.—1. The awkwardness, or impossibility, of a literal translation may generally be relieved by the substitution of a demonstrative with an appropriate conjunction, or the employment of an abstract noun:

*Quae cum ita sint, now since these things are so (Ciceronian formula).*

*Futūra modo exspectant; quae quia certa esse nōn possunt, cōficiuntur et angōre et metū, C., Fin., I. 18, 60; they only look forward to the future; and because that cannot be certain, they wear themselves out*



with distress and fear. [Epicūrus] nōn satis politus iis artibus quās qui tenent, ēruditi appellantur, C., *Fin.*, I. 7, 26; *Epicurus is not sufficiently polished by those accomplishments, from the possession of which people are called cultivated.*

2. Notice especially **quod** in combination with **si** and its compounds **ubi**, **quia**, **quoniam**, **ut** (poetic and post-class.), **utinam**, **nē**, **utinam nē**, **qui** (rare), in which **quod** means *and as for that*, and is sometimes translated by *and*, *but*, *therefore*, *whereas*, sometimes not at all.

**Quod nī fuisset incōgitāns ita eum expectārem ut pār fuit**, TER., *Ph.*, 155; *whereas, had I not been heedless, I should be awaiting him in proper mood.*

NOTES. 1. The use of the Relative to connect two independent clauses instead of a demonstrative, is very rare in PLAUTUS, more common in TERENCE, but fully developed only in the classical period.

2. The Relative is the fertile source of many of the introductory particles of the compound sentence (**quom**, **quia**, **quoniam**, compounds of **quam**, **ut**, **ubi**, etc.), and is therefore treated last on account of the multiplicity of its uses.

**611.** Relative sentences are introduced by the Relative pronouns in all their forms: adjective, substantive, and adverbial. (See Tables 109 foll.)

REMARKS.—1. The Relative adverbs of Place, and their correlatives, may be used instead of a preposition with a Relative. **Unde**, *whence*, is frequently used of persons, but the others rarely; occasional examples are cited for **ubi** and **quō**, the others less frequently: **ibi** = *in eō*, etc.; **ubi** = *in quō*, etc.; **inde** = *ex eō*, etc.; **unde** = *ex quō*, etc.; **eō** = *in eum*, etc.; **quō** = *in quem*, etc.

**Potest fieri ut is, unde tē audisse dicis, irātus dixerit**, C., *Or.*, II. 70, 285; *it may be that he, from whom you say you heard (it), said it in anger.* **Quō** (= *quibus*) **lubeat nūbant, dum dōs nē fiat comes**, PL., *Aul.*, 491 (573).

2. The Relative is not to be confounded with the Dependent Interrogative sentence (469, R. 2).

**Quae probat populus ego nesciō**, SEN., *E.M.*, 29, 10; *the things that the people approves, I do not know* (*quid probet, what it is the people approves*). **Et quid ego tē velim, et tū quod quaeris, sciēs**, TER., *Aul.*, 536; *you shall know both what (it is) I want of you, and what (the thing which) you are asking (= the answer to your question).*

**612. Position of Relatives.**—The Relative and Relative forms are put at the beginning of sentences and clauses. The preposition, however, generally, though not invariably, precedes its Relative (413).

**613. Antecedent.**—The word to which the Relative refers

is called the Antecedent, because it precedes in thought even when it does not in expression.

REMARK.—The close connection between Relative and Antecedent is shown by the frequent use of one preposition in common (§14, R. 1).

## CONCORD.

**614.** The Relative agrees with its Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person.

Is minimō eget mortālis, quī minimum cupit, SYRUS, 286 (Fr.) (308). Uxor contenta est quae bona est unō virō, PL., *Merc.*, 812; *a wife who is good is contented with one husband.* Malum est cōsiliū quod mutārī nōn potest, SYRUS, 362 (Fr.); *bad is the plan that cannot (let itself) be changed.* Hōc illis nārro quī mē nōn intellegunt, PHAEDR., 3, 128; *I tell this tale for those who understand me not.* Ego quī tē cōfirmō, ipse mē nōn possum, C., *Fam.*, XIV. 4, 5; *I who reassure you, cannot reassure myself.*

REMARKS.—1. The Relative agrees with the Person of the true Antecedent, even when a predicate intervenes; exceptions are very rare:

Tū es is, quī (mē) summīs laudibus ad caelum extulisti, C., *Fam.*, XV. 4, 11; *you are he that has(t) praised me to the skies.*

The Latin rule is the English exception: Acts, xxi. 38; Luke, xvi. 15.

2. When the Relative refers to a sentence, id quod, *that which*, is commonly used (parenthetically). So also quae rēs, or simple quod, and, if reference is made to a single substantive, is quī or some similar form.

Si ā vōbis id quod nōn spērō dēserar, tamen animō nōn dēficiam, C., *Rosc. Am.*, 4, 10; *if I should be deserted by you (which I do not expect), nevertheless I should not become faint-hearted.* Nec audiendus [Theophrasti] auditor, Stratō, is quī physicus appellātur, C., *N. D.*, I. 13, 35.

3. The gender and number of the Relative may be determined:

(a) By the sense, and not by the form; that is, a collective noun may be followed by a Plural Relative, a neuter numeral by a masculine Relative, a possessive pronoun by a Relative in the person indicated by the possessive, *etc.*

Caesa sunt ad sex milia quī Pydnam perfugerant, L., XLIV. 42, 7; *there were slain up to six thousand who had fled to Pydna.* Equitātum omnem praemittit, quī videant, CAES., *B. G.*, I. 15; *he sent all the cavalry ahead, who should see (that they might see, to see).*

(b) By the predicate or the apposition, and not by the antecedent; so especially when the Relative is combined with the copula or with a copulative verb.

Thēbae, quod Boeōtiae caput est, L., XLII. 44, 3; *Thebes, which is the capital of Boeotia.* Flūmen Scaldis, quod influit in Mosam, CAES., *B. G.*,

VI. 33, 3; *the river Scheldt, which empties into the Maas.* **Iūsta glōria, qui est fructus virtūtis**, C., *Pis.*, 24, 57; *real glory, which is the fruit of virtue.*

Exceptions are not unfrequent, especially when the predicative substantive in the Relative clause is a foreign word or a proper name.

**Stellae quās Graeci comētās vocant**, C., *N.D.*, II. 5, 14; *the stars which the Greeks call comets.* **Est genus quoddam hominum quod Helōtae vocātur**, NEP., IV. 3, 6; *there is a certain class of men called Helots.*

4. The pronominal apposition may be taken up into the Relative and disappear :

**Tēstārum suffrāgiis quod illi ostracismum vocant**, NEP., V. 3, 1; *by potsherds votes—(a thing) which they call “ostracism.”*

5. When the Relative refers to the combined antecedents of different gender, the strongest gender is preferred, according to 282 :

**Grandēs nātū mātres et parvī liberī, quōrum utrumque aetās misericordiam vestram requirit**, C., *Verr.*, V. 49, 129; *aged matrons and infant children, whose age on either hand demands your compassion.* **Ōtium atque divitiae, quae prima mortālēs putant**, S., C., 36, 4; *leisure and money, which mortals reckon as the prime things.*

Or, the nearest gender may be preferred :

**Eae frūgēs atque fructūs quōs terra gignit**, C., *N.D.*, II. 14, 37; *those fruits of field and tree which earth bears.*

6. Combined Persons follow the rule, 287.

NOTE. A noteworthy peculiarity is found in early Latin, where a generic Relative sentence with **qui** is made the subject of an abstract substantive with **est**, and represented by a demonstrative in agreement with that substantive.

**Istaec virtūs est, quandō ūsus, qui malum fert fortiter**, PL., *Asin.*, 323; *that's manhood who (if one) bears evil bravely, when there's need.*

The parallel Greek construction suggests Greek influence.

**615. Repetition of the Antecedent.**—The Antecedent of the Relative is not seldom repeated in the Relative clause, with the Relative as its attributive.

**(Caesar) intellēxit diem instāre, quō diē frūmentum mīlitibus mētiri oportēret**, CAES., *B.G.*, I. 16, 5; *Caesar saw that the day was at hand, on which day it behooved to measure corn (corn was to be measured out) to the soldiers.*

NOTE. This usage belongs to the formal style of government and law. CAESAR is very fond of it, especially with the word **diēs**. It is occasional in PLAUTUS and TERENCE, and not uncommon in CICERO; but after CICERO it fades out, being found but rarely in LIVY, and only here and there later.

**616. Incorporation of the Antecedent.**—1. The Antecedent substantive is often incorporated into the Relative

clause; sometimes there is a demonstrative antecedent, sometimes not.

*In quem primum ēgressi sunt locum Trōia vocātur*, L., I. 1, 3; *the first place they landed at was called Troy*. *Quam quisque nōrit artem, in hāc sē exerceat*, [C.], *Tusc.*, I. 18, 41; *what trade each man is master of, (in) that let him practise (himself), that let him ply*.

NOTES.—1. Incorporation, while much less frequent than Repetition, is still not unfrequently met with in LIVY; after LIVY it decays. No examples are cited from SALLUST with a demonstrative antecedent, and but one from CAESAR. No example is cited from CAESAR without a demonstrative antecedent.

2. Instead of a principal clause, followed by a consecutive clause, the structure is sometimes reversed. What would have been the dependent clause becomes the principal clause, and an incorporated explanatory Relative takes the place of the demonstrative. This is confined to certain substantives, and is found a number of times in CICERO, but rarely elsewhere (SALL., HOR., LIVY, OVID, SEN., TAC., PLINY MIN.).

*Quā enim prūdentīa es, nihil tē fugiet* (= *eā prūdentīa es, ut nihil tē fugiat*), C., *Fam.*, XI. 13, 1. *Velis tantummodo; quae tua virtūs (est), expūgnābis*, H., S., I. 9, 54.

2. An appositional substantive, from which a Relative clause depends, is regularly incorporated into the Relative clause.

[*Amānus*] *Syriam ā Ciliciā dīvidit, quī mōns erat hostium plēnus*, C., *Att.*, v. 20, 3; *Syria is divided from Cilicia by Amanus, a mountain which was full of enemies*.

NOTE.—This usage is found first in CICERO. The normal English position is found first in LIVY, but it becomes more common in later Latin.

*Prīscus, vir cūius prōvidentiam in rē publicā ante experta civitās erat*, L., IV. 46, 10.

3. Adjectives, especially superlatives, are sometimes transferred from the substantive in the principal clause and made to agree with the Relative in the Relative clause.

[*Themistoclēs*] *dē servīs suis quem habuit fidēlissimū ad rēgem mīsit*, NEP., II. 4, 3; *Themistocles sent the most faithful slave he had to the king*. *Nēmīnī crēdō, quī largē blandust dīves pauperī*, PL., *Aul.*, 196; *I trust no rich man who is lavishly kind to a poor man*.

617. *Attraction of the Relative*.—The Accusative of the Relative is occasionally attracted into the Ablative of the antecedent, rarely into any other case.

*Hōc cōfirmāmus illō auguriō quō dīximus*, C., *Att.*, x. 8, 7; *we confirm this by the augury which we mentioned*.

NOTES.—1. This attraction takes place chiefly when the verb of the Relative clause must be supplied from the principal sentence; that is, with auxiliary verbs like *velle*, *solēre*, *iubēre*; and after verbs of Saying and the like.

It is rare in early Latin, but common from CICERO on.

Quibus poterat sauciis ductis secum ad urbem pergit, L., IV. 30, 2; *having taken with him all the wounded he could, he proceeded to the city.*

2. *Inverted Attraction.* So-called Inverted Attraction is found only in poetry, and then usually in the Acc., which may be considered as an object of thought or feeling.

This Acc. stands usually for a Nom., sometimes, but only in Comedy, for the Gen. Dat. or Abl. A strange usage is the Nom. where the Acc. would be expected. This may be *nominativus pendens*, a form of *anacoluthon* (697), and is found only in early Latin.

Urbem quam statuo, vestra est, V., A., I. 573; (*as for*) *the city which I am naming, (it) is yours.* Istum quem quaeris, ego sum, PL., *Cerc.*, 419; (*as for*) *that man whom you are looking for, I am he.* Ille qui mandavit eum exturbasti ex aedibus? PL., *Trin.*, 137. ("He that hath ears to hear, let him hear.")

618. *Correlative Use of the Relative.*—The usual Correlative of *qui* is *is*, more rarely *hic*, *ille*.

Is minimò eget mortalis, qui minimum cupit, SYRUS, 286 (Fr.) (308). Hic sapiens, de quò loquor, C., *Ac.*, II. 33, 105 (305, 3). Illa diès veniet, mea quà lugubria pònam, OV., *Tr.*, IV. 2, 73 (307, 4).

619. *Absorption of the Correlative.*—The Correlative, *is*, is often absorbed, especially when it would stand in the same case as the Relative. This is a kind of Incorporation.

Postume, nòn bene olet, qui bene semper olet, MART., II. 12, 4; *Postumus, (he) smells not sweet, who always smells sweet.* Quem arma nòn frègerant vitia vicèrunt, CURT., VI. 2, 1; (*him*) *whom arms had not crushed did vices overcome.* Quem dī diligunt adulèscens moritur, PL., *B.*, 816; (*he*) *whom the gods love dies young.* Xerxès praeium proposuit qui [— ei qui] invénisset novam voluptàtem, C., *Tusc.*, v. 7, 20; *Xerxes offered a reward to him who should invent a new pleasure.* Miseranda vīta qui [— eòrum qui] sē metui quam amāri mālunt, NEP., X. 9, 5; *pitiabie is the life of those who would prefer being feared to being loved.* Discite sanāri per quem [— per eum, per quem] didicistis amāre, OV., *Rem. Am.*, 43 (401).

Difficult and rare are cases like :

Nunc redeò ad quae (for ad ea quae) mihi mandās, C., *Att.*, v. 11, 6.

620. *Position of the Correlative clause.*—The Relative clause naturally follows its Correlative, but it often precedes; incorporation also is common.

Male sē rēs habet cum quod virtute effici debet id temptatur pecuniā, C., *Off.*, II. 6, 22; *it is a bad state of affairs when what ought to be accomplished by worth, is attempted by money.* Quod vidēs accidere pueris hō nōbīs quoque māiusculis pueris evenit, SEN., *E. M.*, 24, 13; *what you see befall children (this) happens to us also, children of a larger growth.* Quam quisque nōrit artem, in hac sē exerceat, [C.], *Tusc.*, I. 18, 41 (616, 1).



## The Correlative absorbed :

*Quod nōn dedit fortūna, nōn ēripit*, SEN., *E.M.*, 59, 18; *what fortune has not given (does not give), she does not take away*. *Per quās nōs petitis saepe fugātis opēs*, OV., *A.A.*, III. 132; *the means you take to win us often scare us off*.

**621. Indefinite Antecedent.**—The Indefinite Antecedent is generally omitted.

*Ēlige cui dicās : tū mihi sōla placēs*, OV., *A.A.*, I. 42; *choose some one to whom you may say : You alone please me*.

REMARK.—Such sentences are sometimes hardly to be distinguished from the Interrogative: [*Conōn*] *nōn quaesivit ubi ipse tūtō viveret*, NEP., IX. 2, 1; *Conon did not seek a place to live in safety himself*, might be either Relative or Deliberative (265).

## TENSES IN RELATIVE SENTENCES.

**622. Future and Future Perfect.**—The Future and Future Perfect are used with greater exactness than in current English (242, 244).

*Sit liber, dominus quī volet esse meus*, MART., II. 32, 8; *he must be free who wishes (shall wish) to be my master*. *Quī prior strinxerit ferrum, eius victōria erit*, LIV. (244, R. 2).

**623. Iterative Action.**—Relative sentences follow the laws laid down for Iterative action (566, 567).

## I. Contemporaneous action :

*Ōre trahit quodcumque potest, atque addit acervō*, H., *S.*, I. 1, 34; *drags with its mouth whatever it can, and adds to the treasure (heap)*. *Quācumque incēdēbat āgmen, lēgātī occurrēbant*, L., XXXIV. 16, 6; *in whatever direction the column advanced, ambassadors came to meet them*.

## II. Prior action :

[*Terra*] *numquam sine ūsūrā reddit, quod accēpit*, C., *Cat.M.*, 15, 51; *the earth never returns without interest what it has received (receives)*. *Quod nōn dedit fortūna, nōn ēripit*, SEN., *E.M.*, 59, 18 (620). *Nōn cēnat quotiēns nēmo vocāvit eum*, MART., V. 47, 2; *he does not dine as often as (when) no one has invited (invites) him*. *Haerēbant in memoriā quaecumque audierat et viderat* [*Themistoclēs*], C., *Ac.*, II. 1, 2 (567). *Sequentur tē quōcumque pervēneris vitia*, SEN., *E.M.*, 28, 1; *vices will follow you whithersoever you go*. *Quī timēre dēsierint, ōdisse incipient*, TAC., *Agr.*, 32 (567).

REMARK.—On the Subjv. in Iterative Sentences, see 567, N.

## MOODS IN RELATIVE SENTENCES.

**624.** The Relative clause, as such—that is, as the representative of an adjective—takes the Indicative mood.

**Uxor quae bona est**, *Pl., Merc.*, 812; *a wife who is good (a good wife)*.

REMARK.—The Relative in this use often serves as a circumlocution for a substantive, with this difference: that the substantive expresses a permanent relation; the Relative clause, a transient relation: **ii qui docent** = *those who teach* = *the teachers* (inasmuch as they are exercising the functions). On the Relative with Subjv. after an adj. clause, see 438, R.

**625.** *Indefinite and Generic Relatives.*—**I. Quicumque, quisquis**, and the like, being essentially Iterative Relatives, take the Indicative according to the principles of Iterative action (254, R. 4). So also simple Relatives when similarly used.

**Quicumque incēdēbat āgmen, lēgātī occurrēbant**, *Liv.*, xxxiv. 16, 6 (623).

REMARK.—According to 567, N., the Subjv. is used:

(1) In **Ōrātiō Obliqua** (Total or Partial):

**Mārti Gallī quae bellō cēperint** (Pl. Subjv.) **dēvovent** (= **sē datūrōs vovent**), *Cf. Caes.*, *B. G.*, vi. 17, 3; *the Gauls devote (promise to give) to Mars whatever they (shall) take in war* (**Ō. R.**, **Quae cēperīmus, dabimus**).

(2) By Attraction of Mood (Complementary Clauses):

**Quis eum dīligat quem metuat?** *C.*, *Lael.*, 15, 53 (629).

(3) In the Ideal Second Person:

**Bonus sēgnior fit ubi negligās**, *S.*, *Ing.*, 31, 28 (566).

(4) By the spread of the Subjv. in post-classical Latin:

**Qui ūnum eius ōrdinis offendisset omnēs adversōs habēbat**, *L.*, xxxiii 46, 1 (567).

2. **Quī = sī quis**, *if any*, has the Indicative when the Condition is Logical.

[**Terra**] **numquam sine ūsūrā reddit, quod accēpit**, *C.*, *Cat. M.*, 15, 51 (623). (**Sī quid accēpit.**) **Qui morī didicit, servīre dēdidicit**, *SEN.*, *E. M.*, 26, 10 (423).

REMARK.—When the Condition is Ideal, the Subjv. is necessary (596). In post-classical Latin the Subjv. is the rule with all conditionals.

**626.** *Explanatory Relative.*—**Quī**, with the Indicative (= **is enim, for he**), often approaches **quod, in that**.

**Habeō senectūtī māgnam grātiā, quae mihī sermōnis aviditātem**

**auxit**, C., *Cat. M.*, 14, 46; *I am very thankful to old age, which (for it, in that it) has increased me (= in me) the appetite for talk.*

**REMARK.**—**Quī** with the Subjv. gives a ground, = **cum is** (586); **quī** with the Indic., *a fact*; and in many passages the causal sense seems to be inevitable:

**Insānit hic quidem, quī ipse male dicit sibi**, PL., *Men.*, 309; *cracked is this man, who calls (= for calling) down curses on himself.* **Errāverim fortasse quī mē aliquid putāvī**, PLIN., *Ep.*, 1. 23, 2; *I may have erred in thinking myself to be something.*

**NOTES.**—1. This causal sense is heightened by **ut**, **utpote**, *as*; **quippe**, *namely*. **Ut quī** is rare in early Latin, CAESAR, and CICERO, and is not found at all in TERENCE and SALLUST. LIVY, however, is fond of it. The mood is everywhere the Subjunctive. **Utpote** is found only here and there in Latin, and not at all in TERENCE, CAESAR, LIVY; but once in PLAUTUS. The mood is the Subjv. until late Latin. **Quippe quī** is the most common of the three, but does not occur in CAESAR. In early Latin the mood is the Indic. (except PL., *Pers.*, 699); also in SALLUST. CICERO uses the Subjv.; LIVY uses both moods; later the Subjv. is the rule until the time of APULEIUS.

2. Simple Explanatory **quī** has the Indic. most commonly in early Latin, and in general develops on the same line that **cum** follows.

**627.** The Subjunctive is employed in Relative clauses when it would be used in a simple sentence.

**POTENTIAL:** **Habeō quae velim**, C., *Fin.*, 1. 8, 28; *I have what I should like.*

**OPTATIVE:** **Quod faustum sit, rēgem creāte**, L., 1. 17, 10; *blessing be on your choice, make ye a king.*

**REMARKS.**—1. Especially to be noted is the Subjv. in restrictive phrases. Here the Relative often takes **quidem**, sometimes **modo**.

The early Latin shows only **quod sciam** (as if **dum aliquid sciam**), *so far as I may be permitted to know anything about it* (= **quantum sciō**, *as far as I know, for all I know*), which is used throughout the language, and **quod quidem veniat in mentem** (PL., *Ep.*, 638). CICERO, however, shows a great variety. **Quantum sciam** is found first in QUINTILIAN.

**Omnium orātōrum quōs quidem cōgnōverim acūtissimum iūdicō Sertōrium**, C., *Br.*, 48, 180; *of all orators, so far as I know them, I consider Sertorius the most acute.* **Nūllum ornātum quī modo nōn obsceūret subtrahendum putō**, QUINT., v. 14, 33; *I think no ornament is to be withdrawn, provided that it do not cause obscurity.*

2. Restrictions involving **esse**, **posse**, **attinet**, are regularly in the Indicative. CICERO and CAESAR, however, show a very few cases of the Subjv., especially with **possis**.

**Prōdidisti et tē et illam, quod quidem in tē fuit**, TER., *Ad.*, 692; *you have betrayed both her and yourself, so far as in you lay.* **Ego quod ad mē attinet, iūdicēs, vici**, C., *Verr.*, II. 1. 8, 21; *I, judges, so far as pertains to me, have conquered.*

**628.** The Subjunctive is used in Relative clauses which form a part of the utterance or the view of another than the narrator, or of the narrator himself when indirectly quoted (539, R.). So especially in *Ōrātiō Obliqua* and Final Sentences.

*Rēctē Graeci praecepiunt, nōn temptanda quae effici nōn possint*, QUINT., IV. 5, 17; *right are the Greeks in teaching that those things are not to be attempted which cannot be accomplished*. *Apud Hypanim fluvium Aristotelēs ait, bēstiolās quāsdam nāsci quae ūnum diem vivant*, C., *Tusc.*, I. 30, 94 (650). *Virtūs facit ut eōs diligāmus in quibus ipsa inesse videātur*, C., *Off.*, I. 17, 56; *virtue makes us love those in whom she seems to reside*. *Pōstulātur ab hominibus ut ab iis sē abstineant māximē vitīis, in quibus alterum reprehenderint*, C., *Verr.*, III. 2, 4; *it is demanded of men that they refrain from those faults most of all as to which they have blamed another*. *Senātus cēnsuit utī quicumque Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret, Haeduōs dēfenderet*, CAES., *B. C.*, I. 35; *the senate decreed that whoever obtained Gaul as his province should defend the Haedui*. *Paetus omnēs librōs quōs frāter suus reliquisset mihī dōnāvit*, C., *Att.*, II. 1, 12; (this is Paetus' statement; otherwise: *quōs frāter eius* (521) *reliquit*; compare C., *Att.*, I. 20, 7). *Xerxēs praeMIum prōposuit quī [= ei] quī invēnisset novam voluptātem*, C., *Tusc.*, V. 7, 20 (619).

REMARK.—Even in *Ōrātiō Obliqua* the Indic. is retained :

(a) In explanations of the narrator :

*Nūntiātur Afrāniō māgnōs commeātūs quī iter habēbant ad Caesarem ad flūmen cōstitisse*, CAES., *B. C.*, I. 51, 1; *it is (was) announced to Afranius that large supplies of provisions (which were on their way to Caesar) had halted at the river*.

In the historians this sometimes occurs where the Relative clause is an integral part of the sentence, especially in the Impf. and Pluperfect; partly for clearness, partly for liveliness. For shifting Indic. and Subjv., see L., XXVI. 1.

(b) In mere circumlocutions:

*Quis neget haec omnia quae vidēmus deōrum potestāte administrārī?* Cf. C., *Cal.*, III. 9, 21; *who would deny that this whole visible world is managed by the power of the gods?* *Prōvidendum est nē quae dicuntur ab eō quī dicit dissentiant*, QUINT., III. 8, 48; *we must see to it that the speech be not out of keeping with the speaker*.

**629.** Relative sentences which depend on Infinitives and Subjunctives, and form an integral part of the thought, are put in the Subjunctive (Attraction of Mood).

*Pigri est ingenii contentum esse iis quae sint ab aliis inventa*, QUINT., X.

2, 4; *it is the mark of a slow genius to be content with what has been found out by others.* *Quis aut eum diligat quem metuat aut eum a quō sē metui putet?* C., *Lael.*, 15, 53; *who could love a man whom he fears, or by whom he deems himself feared?* *Nam quod emās possis iūre vocāre tuum,* MART., II. 20, 2; *for what you buy you may rightly call your own.* *Ab aliō exspectēs alterī quod fēcerīs,* SYRUS, 2 (Fr.) (319). *In virtūte sunt multī ascēnsūs, ut is glōriā māximē excellat, quī virtūte plūrimū praestet,* C., *Planc.*, 25, 60 (552). *Sī sōlōs eōs dicerēs miserōs quibus moriendum esset, nēminem eōrum quī vīverēt exciperēs; moriendum est enim omnibus,* C., *Tusc.*, I. 5, 9; *if you called only those wretched who had (have) to die, you would except none who lived (live); for all have to die.*

REMARK.—The Indic. is used :

(a) In mere circumlocutions ; so, often in Consecutive Sentences :

*Necesse est facere sūmptum quī quaerit lucrum,* PL., *As.*, 218 (535). *Efficitur ab ōrātōre, ut iī quī audiunt ita adficiantur ut ōrātōr velit,* Cf. C., *Br.*, 49, 185; *it is brought about by the orator that those who hear him (= his auditors) are affected as he wishes (them to be).*

(b) Of individual facts :

*Et quod vidēs perisse perditum dūcās,* CAT., VIII. 2; *and what you see (definite thing, definite person) is lost for aye, for aye deem lost.* (*Quod videās*, anybody, anything.)

630. *Relative Sentences of Design.*—Optative Relative sentences are put in the Subjunctive of Design, when *quī* = *ut is*.

*Sunt multī quī ēripiunt aliis quod aliis largiantur,* C., *Off.*, I. 14, 43; *many are they who snatch from some to lavish on others.* [Senex] *serit arborēs, quae alterī saeculō prōsint,* CAECILIUS (C., *Tusc.*, I. 14, 31) (545). *Semper habē Pyladē aliquem quī cūret Orestem,* OV., *Rem. Am.*, 589 (545). [Māgnēsiam Themistoclī Artaxerxēs] *urbem dōnārat, quae ei pānem praebēret,* NEP., II. 10, 3 (545).

NOTES.—1. The basis of this construction is the characteristic Subjv., and the conception seems Potential rather than Optative ; but in many cases the characteristic force is no longer felt.

2. After *mittere* there are a few cases where the Impf. Indic. is used with much the same force as the Impf. Subjv., but the purpose is merely inferential from the continuance in the tense.

*Inmittēbantur illī canēs, quī invēstīgābant omnia,* C., *Verr.*, IV. 21, 47.

3. By attraction similar to that with *quod* (541, n. 3) and *quom* (585, n. 3), the Relative is sometimes found with an Inf. and *diceret*, where the Subjv. of the verb in the Inf., or the Indic. with a parenthetical *ut dixit*, is to be expected.

*Litterās quās mē sibi mīsisse diceret (= mīsisset, or mīserat, ut dixit) recitāvit,* C., *Ph.*, II. 4, 7.

631. *Relative Sentences of Tendency.*—Potential Relative sentences are put in the Subjunctive of Tendency, when *quī* = *ut is*.



The notion is generally that of Character and Adaptation, and we distinguish three varieties :

1. With a definite antecedent, when the character is emphasised ; regularly after *idōneus*, *suitable* ; *aptus*, *fit* ; *dignus*, *worthy* ; *indignus*, *unworthy* ; after *is*, *tālis*, *eiusmodi*, *tam*, *tantus*, and the like ; after *ūnus* and *sōlus*.

*Est innocentia affectiō tālis animi, quae noceat nēmini*, C., *Tusc.*, III. 8, 16 ; *harmlessness (innocence) is that state of mind that does harm to no one (is innocuous to any one)*. *Ille ego sim cūius laniet furiōsa capillōs*, Ov., *A. A.*, II. 451 ; *may I be the man whose hair she tears in her seasons of frenzy*. *Sōlus es, C. Caesar, cūius in victoriā ceciderit nēmō*, C., *Dei.*, 12, 34 ; *thou art the only one, Caesar, in whose victory no one has fallen*. *Quem mea Calliopē laeserit ūnus egō*, Ov., *Tr.*, II. 568 ; *I am the only one that my Calliope (= my Muse) has hurt*. (*Acadēmicī*) *mentem sōlam cēnsēbant idōneam cui crēderētur*, C., *Ac.*, I. 8, 30 ; *the Academics held that the mind alone was fit to be believed (trustworthy)*.

REMARKS.—1. *Ut* is not unfrequently found instead of *qui* after the correlatives.

2. *Idōneus*, *dignus*, *etc.*, take also *ut*, and the Infinitive (552, R. 2).

2. With an indefinite antecedent ; so especially after negatives of all kinds, and their equivalents, and in combinations of *multī*, *quidam*, *alii*, *nōnnūllī*, *etc.*, with *est*, *sunt*, *existit*, *etc.*

*Est qui, sunt qui, there is, there are some who* ; *nēmō est qui, there is none to* ; *nihil est quod, there is nothing* ; *habēō quod, I have to* ; *reperiuntur qui, persons are found who (to)* . . . ; *quis est qui ? who is there who (to)* . . . ? *est cūr, there is reason for, etc.* So, also, *fuit cum, there was a time when* (580, R. 1).

*Sunt qui discēssum animi ā corpore putent esse mortem*, C., *Tusc.*, I. 9, 18 ; *there are some who (to) think that death is the departure of the soul from the body*. *Fuit qui suādēret appellātiōnem mēnsis Augusti in Septembrem trānsferendam*, Suet., *Aug.*, 100 ; *there was a man who urged (= to urge) that the name of the month (of) August should be transferred to September*. *Multi fuērunt qui tranquillitatem expetentēs ā negōtiis publicis sē remōverint*, C., *Off.*, I. 20, 69 ; *there have been many who, in the search for quiet, have withdrawn themselves from public engagements*. *Omninō nēmō ūllius rei fuit ēmptor cui dēfuerit hīc vēnditor*, C., *Ph.*, II. 38, 97 (317, 1). *Post mortem in morte nihil est quod metuum mali*, Pl., *Capl.*, 741 ; *after death there is no ill in death for me to dread*. *Nec mea qui digitis lūmina condāt erit*, Ov., *Her.*, 10, 120 ; *and there will be no one to close mine eyes with his fingers*. *Miserrimus est*

**quī quom ēsse cupit quod edit** (172, N.) **nōn habet**, PL., *Capt.*, 463; *he is a poor wretch who, when he wants to eat, has not anything to eat* (**nōn habet quid edat** would mean *does not know what to eat*). **Quotus est quisque quī somniis pāreat**, C., *Div.*, II. 60, 125; (*how many men in the world, the fewest men in the world obey dreams*).

REMARKS.—I. The Indic. may be used in the statements of definite facts, and not of general characteristics :

**Multi sunt quī ēripiant,**

*There are many to snatch away.*

**Multi sunt quī ēripiunt,**

*Many are they who snatch away.*

Of course this happens only after affirmative sentences. The poets use the Indic. more freely than prose writers :

**Sunt-quī** (= **quidam**) **quod sentiunt nōn audent** (so MSS.) **dīcere**, C., *Off.*, I. 24, 84; *some dare not say what they think*. **Sunt-quibus ingrātē timida indulgentia servit**, Ov., *A.A.*, II. 435; *to some trembling indulgence plays the slave all thanklessly*. **Sunt quī** (indefinite) **nōn habeant**, **est-quī** (definite) **nōn cūrat habēre**, II., *Ep.*, II. 2, 182.

2. When a definite predicate is negatived, the Indic. may stand on account of the definite statement, the Subjv. on account of the negative :

A. **Nihil bonum est quod nōn eum quī id possidet meliōrem facit**; or,

B. **Nihil bonum est quod nōn eum quī id possideat meliōrem faciat.**

A. *Nothing that does not make its owner better is good.*

B. *There is nothing good that does not make its owner better.*

3. After comparatives with **quam** as an object clause.

**Māiōra in defectionē deliquerant, quam quibus ignōscī posset**, L., xxvi. 12, 6; (*in that revolt they had been guilty of greater crimes than could be forgiven (had sinned past forgiveness)*). **Nōn longius hostēs aberant, quam quō tēlum adicī posset**, CAES., *B.G.*, II. 21, 3; *the enemy were not more than a javelin's throw distant*.

REMARKS.—I. Classical Latin prefers **ut** after comparatives.

2. Instead of **quam ut**, **quam** is not unfrequently found alone, especially after **potius**, but also after **amplius**, **celerius**, *etc.*; in which case the construction resembles that of **antequam**.

4. Parallel with a descriptive adjective with which it is connected by **et** or **sed**.

**Exierant (duo) adulēscētēs et Drūsī māximē familiārēs, et in quibus māgnam spem māiōrēs collocārent**, C., *Or.*, I. 7, 25; *two young men had come out (who were) intimates of Drusus and in whom their elders were putting great hopes*.

**632. Quin in Sentences of Character.**—After negative clauses, usually with a demonstrative **tam**, **ita**, *etc.*, **quin** is

often used (556) where we might expect **quī nōn**, and sometimes where we should expect **quae nōn**, or **quod nōn**.

*Sunt certa vitia quae nēmō est quīn effugere cupiat*, C., *Or.*, III. 11. 41; *there are certain faults which there is no one but (everybody) desires to escape*. *Nīl tam difficile est quīn quaerendō invēstīgārī possiet* (possit), TER., *Heaut.*, 675 (552).

REMARK.—That **quīn** was felt not as **quī nōn**, but rather as **ut nōn**, is shown by the fact that the demonstrative may be expressed :

*Nōn cum quōquam arma contulī quīn is mihī succubuerit*, NEP., XVIII. 11. 5; *I have never measured swords with any one that he has not (but he has) succumbed to me*.

**633. Relative in a Causal Sense.**—When **quī = cum** is, as *he*, the Subjunctive is employed. (See 586, R. 1.)

The particles *ut*, *utpote*, *quippe*, *as*, are often used in conjunction with the Relative ; for their range, see 626, N. 1.

(Caninius) fuit mirificā vigilantīā quī suō tōtō cōsulātū somnum nōn viderit, C., *Fam.*, VII. 30. 1; *Caninius has shown marvellous watchfulness, not to have seen (taken a wink of) sleep in his whole consulship*. *Ō fortunāte adulēscēns, quī tuae virtūtis Homērum praecōnem invēnerīs!* C., *Arch.*, 10. 24; *lucky youth! to have found a crier (= trumpeter) of your valor (in) Homer!* *Māior glōria in Scīpiōne, Quīnctiī recentior ut quī eō annō triumphāset*, L., XXXV. 10. 5; *Scipio's glory was greater, Quinctius' was fresher, as (was to be expected in) a man who (inasmuch as he) had triumphed in that year*.

REMARK.—On the use of the Indic. after *quippe*, etc., see 626, N. 1. On the sequence of tenses, see 513, N. 3.

**634. Relative in a Concessive or Adversative Sense.**—**Qui** is sometimes used as equivalent to **cum** is in a Concessive or Adversative Sense.

*Ego quī leviter Graecās litterās attigissem, tamen cum vēnissem Athēnās complūrēs ibi diēs sum commorātus*, C., *Or.*, I. 18. 82; *although I had dabbled but slightly in Greek, nevertheless, having come to Athens, I stayed there several days*.

NOTE.—The Indic. is the rule for this construction in early Latin (580, N. 1).

**635. Relative and Infinitive.**—The Accusative and Infinitive may be used in **Ōrātiō Oblīqua** after a Relative, when the Relative is to be resolved into a Coördinating Conjunction and the Demonstrative.

(Philosophī cēnsent) ūnum quemque nostrum mundi esse partem, ex quō illud nātūrā cōnsequi ut communem utilitātem nostrae antepōnāmus, C.,

*Fin.*, III. 19, 64; *philosophers hold that every one of us is a part of the universe, and that the natural consequence of this is for us to prefer the common welfare to our own.*

NOTES.—1. This usage is not cited earlier than CICERO, and seems to be found principally there, with sporadic examples from other authors.

2. Occasional examples are also found of the Inf. after *etsi* (LIVY), *quamquam* (TAC.), in the sense and *yet*; *cum interim* (LIVY), *quia* (SEN.), *nisi* (TAC.), *si nōn* (LIVY); and after *quem admodum, ut* (CIC., LIVY, TAC.), in comparative sentences.

**636. Combination of Relative Sentences.**—Relative Sentences are combined by means of Copulative Conjunctions *only when they are actually coördinate.*

When the second Relative would stand in the same case as the first, it is commonly omitted (*a*).

When it would stand in a different case (*b*), the Demonstrative is often substituted (*c*); or, if the case be the Nominative (*d*) or Accusative (*e*), the Relative may be omitted altogether.

(*a*) *Dumnorix quī principātum obtinēbat ac plēbi acceptus erat* (CAES., *B. G.*, I. 3, 5),

*Dumnorix, who held the chieftaincy, and (who) was acceptable to the commons;*

(*b*) *Dumnorix quī principātum obtinēbat cuique plēbs favēbat,*  
*Dumnorix, who held the chieftaincy, and whom the commons favoured;*

(*c*) *Dumnorix quī principātum obtinēbat eique plēbs favēbat,*  
*Dumnorix, who held the chieftaincy, and whom the commons favoured;*

(*d*) *Dumnorix quem plēbs diligēbat et principātum obtinēbat,*  
*Dumnorix, whom the commons loved, and (who) held the chieftaincy;*

(*e*) *Dumnorix quī principātum obtinēbat et plēbs diligēbat,*  
*Dumnorix, who held the chieftaincy, and (whom) the commons loved.*

Examples: (*a*) CAES., *B. G.*, IV. 34, 4; (*b*) C., *Lael.*, 23, 87; *Tusc.*, I. 30, 72; (*c*) C., *Br.*, 74, 258; *Tusc.*, V. 13, 38; (*e*) C., *Off.*, II. 6, 21; L., X. 29, 3; (*d*) S., *Iug.*, 101, 5; TER., *Ad.*, 85.

NOTES.—1. The insertion of a demonstrative is almost confined to early Latin, LUCRETIVS, and CICERO. CAESAR and SALLUST have no examples, and LIVY very few. On the other hand, the use of a relative by *zeugma* (690) in connection with two or more verbs governing different cases is found at all periods.

2. (*a*) The Relative is not combined with adversative or illative conjunctions (*but who, who therefore*) except at the beginning of a sentence, when it represents a *following* demonstrative or anticipates it (620).

*Quī fortis est, idem fidēs est; quī autem fidēs est, is nōn extimēscit,*  
C., *Tusc.*, III. 7, 14; *he who is brave is confident, but he who is confident is not afraid.*

(*b*) *Sed quī, quī tamen*, can be used in antithesis to adjectives.

*Sōphrōn mīmōrum quidem scriptor sed quem Platō probāvit,* QUINT., I. 10, 17; *Sophron, a writer of mimnes, 'tis true, but (one) that Plato approved.*

(*c*) *Quī tamen* may be added to explain a foregoing statement.

*Causam tibi exposuimus Ephesi, quam tū tamen cōram facilius cōgnōscēs,*  
C., *Fam.*, XIII. 55, 1.

3. Two or more Relative clauses may be connected with the same antecedent when the one serves to complete the idea of the principal clause, the other to modify it;

**Illa vis quae investigat occulta, quae inventiō dicitur**, C., *Tusc.*, I. 25, 61; *the faculty that tracks out hidden things, which is called (the faculty of) research.*

4. The Relative is often repeated by *anaphora* (682) for stylistic reasons. Compare C., *Tusc.*, I. 25, 62; *Planc.*, 33, 81; L., XXIII. 14, 3.

**637. Relative Sentence represented by a Participle.**—The Relative sentence is sometimes represented by a Participle, but generally the Participle expresses a closer connection than the mere explanatory Relative.

**Omnēs aliud agentēs, aliud simulantēs perfidī (sunt)**, C., *Off.*, III. 14, 60; *all who are driving at one thing and pretending another are treacherous.*  
**[Pisistratus] Homēri librōs cōfūsōs antea sic disposuisse dicitur ut nunc habēmus**, C., *Or.*, III. 34, 137; *Pisistratus is said to have arranged the books of Homer, which were (whereas they were) in confusion before, as we have them now.*

## COMPARATIVE SENTENCES.

**638.** A peculiar phase of the Relative sentence is the Comparative, which is introduced in English by *as* or *than*, in Latin by a great variety of relative forms:

(a) By correlatives; (b) by **atque** or **ac**; (c) by **quam**.

**639. Moods in Comparative Sentences.**—The mood of the Dependent clause is the Indicative, unless the Subjunctive is required by the laws of oblique relation, or by the conditional idea (602).

REMARK.—On **potius quam** with the Subjv., see below, 644, R. 3.

**640.** The dependent clause often borrows its verb from the leading clause. Compare 602.

**Ignorātiō futūrōrum malōrum ūtilior est quam scientia**, C., *Div.*, II. 9, 23 (296). **Servī mōribus isdem erant quibus dominus**, Cf. C., *Verr.*, III. 25, 62; *the servants had the same character as the master.*

**641.** When the dependent clause (or standard of comparison) borrows its verb from the leading clause, the dependent clause is treated as a part of the leading clause; and if the first or leading clause stands in the Accusative with the Infinitive, the second or dependent clause must have the Accusative likewise.

**Ita sentiō Latinam linguam locuplētīōrem esse quam Graecam**, C., *Fin.*, I. 3, 10; *it is my opinion that the Latin language is richer than the*



*Greek.* Ego Gāium Caesarem nōn eadem dē rē pūblicā sentire quae mē sciō, C., Pis., 32, 79; *I know that Gaius Caesar has not the same political views that I (have).*

### I. Correlative Comparative Sentences.

**642.** Correlative Sentences of Comparison are introduced by Adjective and Adverbial Correlatives:

#### 1. Adjective correlatives:

tot, totidem	quot,	(so) as many	} as.
tantus	quantus,	(so) as great	
tālis	quālis,	such	
idem	quī,	the same	

#### 2. Adverbial correlatives:

tam	quam,	(so) <i>as much</i>	} <i>as.</i>
tantopere	quantopere,	(so) <i>as much</i>	
totiēns (ēs)	quotiēns (ēs),	<i>as often</i>	
tamdiū	quamdiū,	<i>as long</i>	
ita, sic	{ ut, uti, sicut, tamquam (rare), quasi (rare),		} <i>so (as) = as.</i>
item, itidem	{ quemadmodum, quōmodo,		

Quot hominēs, tot sententiae, (as) many men, (so) many minds, TER., Ph., 454. Frūmentum tantī fuit quantī iste aestimāvit, C., Verr., III. 84, 194; *corn was worth as much as he valued it.* Plērique habēre amicū tālem volunt, quālēs ipsī esse nōn possunt, C., Lael., 22, 82; *most people wish to have a friend of a character such as they themselves cannot possess.* Cimōn incidit in eandem invidiam quam pater suus, NEP., v. 3, 1 (310). Nihil est tam populāre quam bonitās, C., Lig., 12, 37; *nothing is so winning as kindness.* Sic dē ambiōne quōmodo dē amicā queruntur, SEN., E.M., 22, 10; *they complain of ambition as they do of a sweetheart.* Tamdiū requiēscō quamdiū ad tē scribō, C., Att., IX. 4, 1; *I rest as long as I am writing to you.* Optō ut ita cuique ēveniat, ut dē rē pūblicā quisque mereātur, C., Ph., II. 46, 119; *I wish each one's fortune to be such as he deserves of the state.*

#### 3. The Correlative is sometimes omitted.

Homō, nōn quam istī sunt, glōriōsus, L., xxxv. 49, 7; *a man, not (so) vainglorious as they are.* Discēs quamdiū volēs, C., Off., I. 1, 2; *you shall learn (as long) as you wish.*

REMARKS.—I. Instead of *idem quī*, *idem ut* is sometimes found.

Disputātiōnem expōnimus eisdem ferē verbis ut āctum disputātumque

est, C., *Tusc.* II. 3. 9: *we are setting forth the discussion in very much the same words in which it was actually carried on.*

On *idem* with *atque*, *ac*, *et*, see 643; on *idem* with *Dat.*, see 359, n. 6; on *idem* with *cum*, see 310, R. 2.

2. (a) *The more—the more*, may be translated by *quō* (*quisque*)—*eō*, and the like, with the comparatives; but usually by *ut* (*quisque*), *quam*—*ita*, *tam*, *etc.*, with the superlative, especially when the subj. is indefinite.

*Tantō brevius omne quantō fēlicius tempus*, *PLINY*, *Ep.*, VIII. 14, 10; *time is the shorter, the happier it is.* *Quam citissimē cōficiēs, tam māximē expedit*, *CATO*, *Agr.*, 64, 2; *the quicker the better.* *Ut quisque sibi plūrimum cōfīdit, ita māximē excellit*, C., *Lacl.*, 9, 30; *the more a man trusts himself, the more he excels.*

(b) When the predicate is the same, one member often coalesces with the other: *Optimum quidque rārissimum est*, C., *Fin.*, II. 25, 81 (318, 2), = *ut quidque optimum est, ita rārissimum.*

3. *Ut—ita* is often used adversatively (482, 4). On *ita—ut*, in asseverations, see 262.

4. *Ut* and *pro eō ut* are frequently used in a limiting or causal sense *so far as, inasmuch as*: *prō eō ut temporum difficultās tulit* (C., *Verr.*, III. 54, 126), *so far as the hard times permitted*; *ut tūm rēs erant*, *as things were then*; *ut temporibus illis* (C., *Verr.*, III. 54, 125), *for those times*; *ut erat furiōsus* (C., *Rosc. Am.*, 12, 33), *stark mad as he was*; *ut Siculi* (C., *Tusc.*, I. 8, 15), *as (is, was, to be expected of) Sicilians.*

*Vir ut inter Aetōlōs fācundus*, L., XXXII. 33, 9; *a man of eloquence for an Aetolian.* *Ut sunt hūmāna, nihil est perpetuom datum*, *PL.*, *Cist.*, 194; *as the world wags, nothing is given for good and all.*

5. On *quam*, *quantus*, and the Superlative, see 303.

Notice in this connection *quam quī, ut quī*, and the like, with the Superlative (usually *māximē*):

*Tam sum amicus rei publicae quam quī māximē* (= *est*), C., *Fam.*, v. 2, 6; *I am as devoted a friend to the state as he who is most* (= as any man). *Proelium, ut quod māximē umquam, commissum est*, L., VII. 33, 5. *Domus celebrātur ita, ut cum māximē*, C., *Q. F.*, II. 4, 6.

6. The Correlative forms do not always correspond exactly.

*Subeunda dimicātiō totiēns, quot coniūrātī superessent*, L., II. 13, 2.

## II. Comparative Sentences with **ATQUE** (**AC**).

643. Adjectives and Adverbs of Likeness and Unlikeness may take *atque* or *ac*.

*Virtūs eadem in homine ac deō est*, C., *Leg.*, I. 8, 25; *virtue is the same in man as in god.* *Date operam nē simillī ūtāmur fortunā atque ūsī sumus*, *TER.*, *Ph.*, 30; *do your endeavour that we have not (ill)-luck like that we had before.* *Dissimulātiō est cum alia dicuntur ac sentiās*, C.,

*Or.*, II. 67, 269; *dissimulation is when other things are said than what you mean* (something is said other than what you mean). *Similiter* (602, R. 2) *facis ac si mē rogēs cūr tē duōbus contuear oculis, et nōn alterō cōniveam*, C., *N.D.*, III. 3, 8; *you are acting (like) as if you were to ask me why I am looking at you with two eyes, and not blinking with one.* *Nōn dixi secus ac sentiēbam*, C., *Or.*, II. 6, 24; *I did not speak otherwise than I thought.*

NOTES.—1. The expression is commonly explained by an ellipsis: *Aliter dixi atque [aliter] sentiēbam*, *I spoke one way and yet I was thinking another way.*

So we find: *Timeō nē aliud crēdam atque aliud nūntiēs*, *TER.*, *Hec.*, 844; *I fear that I believe one thing, and you are telling another.*

2. Instead of *atque, et* is sometimes used; this is not common, but the greater proportion of cases occurs in the classical period: *Solet enim aliud sentire et loquī*, C., *Fam.*, VIII. 1, 3; *for he has a way of thinking one thing and saying another.*

3. These words are principally: *aequos, pār, pariter, idem, iūxtā* (from the classical period on), *perinde, proinde, prō eō*; *alius, aliter, secus* (usually with a negative), *contrā, contrārius, similis, dissimilis, simul*; and rarely *item, tālis, totidem, proximē*, and a few others. *PLAUTUS* uses thus some words which involve a similar meaning, as (*dēmūtāre* (*M.G.*, 1130). Compare also *M.G.*, 763; *B.*, 725.

4. *Alius* and *secus* have *quam* occasionally at all periods. On the other hand, *nōn alius* and other negative combinations seldom have *atque*, commonly *quam* or *nisi*. After negative forms of *alius* *CICERO* has regularly *nisi*, occasionally *praeter*.

*Philosophia quid est aliud (= nihil est aliud) nisi dōnum deōrum?* C., *Tusc.*, I. 26, 64; *philosophy—what else is it but the gift of the gods?*

### III. Comparative Sentences with QUAM.

644. Comparative Sentences with *quam* follow the comparative degree or comparative expressions.

The Verb of the dependent clause is commonly to be supplied from the leading clause, according to 640.

In Comparative Sentences *quam* takes the same case after it as before it.

*Melior tūtiorque est certa pāx quam spērāta victōria*, *IL.*, XXX. 30, 19 (307, R. 1). *Potius amicum quam dictum perdidī*, *QUINT.*, VI. 3, 20; *I preferred to lose my friend rather than my joke.* *Velim existimēs nēminem cuiquam cārīorem umquam fuisse quam tē mihī*, C., *Fam.*, I. 9, 24 (546, R. 1).

REMARKS.—1. When the second member is a subj., and the first member an oblique case, the second member *must* be put in the Nom., with the proper form of the verb *esse*, unless the oblique case be an Accusative:

*Vicinus tuus equum meliōrem habet quam tuus est*, *Cf. C. Inv.*, I. 31, 52 (596). *Ego hominem callidiōrem vidī nēminem quam Phormiōnem*, *TER.*, *Ph.*, 591; *I have seen no shrewder man than Phormio (= quam Phormiō est).* *Tibī, multō māiōri quam Āfricānus fuit, mē nōn multō minōrem quam Laelium adiūctum esse patere*, *Cf. C. Fam.*, v. 7, 3.

2. On *quam prō*, and *quam quī*, see 298. On the double comparative, see 299.

3. (a) When two clauses are compared by *potius*, *rather*, *prius*, *before*, *citius*, *quicker*, *sooner*, the second clause is put in the Pr. or Impf. Subjv. (512), with or (in Cicerō) without *ut*.

*Dēpūgnā potius quam serviās*, C., *Att.*, vii. 7, 7 (577, N. 6). (*Dixerunt sē mliēns moritūrōs potius quam ut tantum dēdecoris admitti patiantur*, L., iv. 2, 8; *they said that they would rather die a thousand times than (to) suffer such a disgrace to slip in.* *Moritūrōs sē affirmābant citius quam in aliēnōs mōrēs verterentur*, L., xxiv. 3, 12; *they declared that they had rather die, than let themselves be changed to foreign ways.*

(b) If the leading clause is in the Inf., the dependent clause may be in the Inf. likewise, and this is the regular construction in classical Latin when the Inf. follows a verb of Will and Desire; Cicerō uses the Inf. regularly, CAESAR generally, though examples of the simple Subjv. are not uncommon in both; LIVY is very fond of the Subjv., especially with *ut*, which is cited first from him.

*Sē ab omnibus dēsertōs potius quam abs tē dēfēnsōs esse mālunt*, C., *Div. in Cucc.*, 6, 21; *they prefer to be deserted by all rather than defended by you.*

NOTES. 1. Instead of *tam quam*, *so—as*, the Roman prefers the combinations *nōn minus quam* *nōn magis quam* (by LITOTÉS).

(a) *Nōn minus quam* means *no less than* = *quite as much* :

*Patria hominibus nōn minus quam liberī cāra esse dēbet*, (Cf. C.), *Fam.*, iv. 5, 2 : *country ought to be no less dear to men than children* (= quite as dear as).

The meaning *as little as* is cited only from TER., *Hee.*, 647 : *nōn tibi illud factum minus placet quam mihi*, where *not less than* = quite as much as = *as little as*.

(b) *Nōn magis quam* means *quite as little*, or *quite as much* :

*Animus nōn magis est sānus quam corpus*, (Cf. C., *Tusc.*, iii. 5, 10; *the mind is no more sound than the body* = *as little sound as the body*. (Or it might mean : *The mind is no more sound than the body* = *the body is quite as sound as the mind*.)

So with other comparatives.

*Fabius nōn in armis praestantior fuit quam in togā*, (Cf. C., *Gal. M.*, 4, 11; *Fabius was not more distinguished in war than in peace* (no less distinguished in peace than in war, quite as distinguished in peace as in war).

2. After a negative comparative, *atque* is occasionally found for *quam* in PLAUTUS, TERENCE, CATULLUS, VERGIL; much more often in HORACE (nine times in the *Satires*, twice in the *Epodes*), who uses it also after a positive.

*Nōn Apollinis magis vērū atque hōc respōnsumst*, TER., *And.*, 698. *Illī nōn minus ac tibi pectore ūritur intīmō flamma*, CAT., *Lex.* 176. (Cf. H., S., ii. 7, 96.

## THE ABRIDGED SENTENCE.

645. The compound sentence may be reduced to a simple sentence, by substituting an Infinitive or a Participle for the dependent clause.

## THE INFINITIVE AND INFINITIVE FORMS.

**646.** The practical uses of the Infinitive and its kindred forms, as equivalents of dependent clauses, have already been considered :

Infinitive after Verbs of Creation : 423.

Gerund and Gerundive : 425-433.

Supine : 434-436.

Infinitive in Object Sentences : 526-531.

Infinitive in Complementary Final Sentences : 532.

Infinitive in Relative Sentences : 635.

NOTE.—Under the head of the Abridged Sentence will be treated the Historical Infinitive and **Ōrātiō Obliqua** : the Historical Infinitive, because it is a compendious Imperfect : **Ōrātiō Obliqua**, because it foreshortens, if it does not actually abridge, and effaces the finer distinctions of **Ōrātiō Rēcta**.

## HISTORICAL INFINITIVE.

**647.** The Infinitive of the Present is sometimes used by the historians to give a rapid sequence of events, with the subject in the Nominative ; generally, several Infinitives in succession.

(**Verrēs**) **minitārī Diodōrō, vōciferārī palam, lacrimās interdum vix tenēre**, C., *Verr.*, IV. 18, 39 ; *Verrēs threatened* (was for threatening) *Diodorus, bawled out before everybody, sometimes could hardly restrain his tears.*

NOTES. 1. The ancient assumption of an ellipsis of **coepit**, *began* (QUINT., IX. 3, 58), serves to show the conception, although it does not explain the construction, which has not yet received a convincing explanation. A curious parallel is *de* with Infinitive in French. The Final Infinitive (*to be*) *for*, may help the conception, as it sometimes does the translation. It takes the place of the Imperfect, is used chiefly in rapid passages, and gives the outline of the thought, and not the details ; it has regularly the sequence of a Past tense.

2. The Historical Infinitive is sometimes found after **cum**, **ubi**, *etc.* See S., *Iug.*, 98, 2 ; L., III. 37, 6 ; TAC., *Ann.*, II. 4, 4 ; H., III. 31 ; *Ann.*, III. 26, 2. No examples are cited from CICERO and CAESAR ; this usage is characteristic of TACITUS.

**ŌRĀTIŌ OBLĪQUA.**

**648.** The thoughts of the narrator, or the exact words of a person, as reported by the narrator, are called **Ōrātiō Rēcta**, or Direct Discourse.

Indirect Discourse, or **Ōrātiō Obliqua**, reports not the exact words spoken, but the general impression produced.

REMARKS.—I. Under the general head of **Ōrātiō Obliqua** are em-



braced also those clauses which imply Indirect Quotation (Partial Obliquity). See 508.

2. **Inquam**, *quoth I*, is used in citing the **Ōrātiō Rēcta**; **āiō**, *I say*, generally in **Ōrātiō Obliqua**. **Inquam** never precedes the **Ōrātiō Obliqua**, but is always parenthetic; **āiō** may or may not be parenthetic. **Ōrātiō Rēcta** may also be cited by a parenthetic "**ut ait**," "**ut āiunt**," rarely **ait**, (*as he says*, (*as they say*). The subject of **inquit** often precedes the quotation, but when it is mentioned in the parenthesis it is almost always put after the verb.

**Tum Cotta**: **rūmōribus mēcum**, **inquit**, **pūgnās**, *C., N. D., III. 5. 13 (484)*. **Aliquot somnia vēra**, **inquit Ennius**, *C., Div., II. 62. 127*; "*some dreams are true*," *quoth Ennius*.

3. The lacking forms of **inquam** are supplied by forms of **dīcere**.

**649.** **Ōrātiō Obliqua** differs from **Ōrātiō Rēcta**, partly in the use of the Moods and Tenses, partly in the use of the pronouns.

NOTES.—1. It must be remembered that as a rule the Roman thought immediately in **Ō. O.**, and did not think first in **Ō. R.** and then transfer to **Ō. O.**; also that **Ō. O.** is necessarily less accurate in its conception than **Ō. R.**, and hence it is not always possible to construct the **Ō. R.** from the **Ō. O.** with perfect certainty. What is ideal to the speaker may become unreal to the narrator, from his knowledge of the result, and hence, when accuracy is aimed at, the narrator takes the point of view of the speaker, and in the last resort passes over to **Ō. Rēcta**.

2. **Ō. Obliqua** often comes in without any formal notice, and the governing verb has often to be supplied from the context, sometimes from a preceding negative.

**Rēgulus** *sententiam nō diceret recūsāvit*; (*saying that*) **quam diū iūre iūrando hostium tenērētur**, **nōn esse sē senātōrem**, *C., Off., III. 27. 100*.

(**Idem Rēgulus**) **reddi captīvōs negāvit esse ūtile**; (*saying that*) **illōs enim adulēscentēs esse**, **sē iam cōfectum senectūte**, *ib.*

3. Sometimes, after a long stretch of **Ō. Obliqua**, the writer suddenly shifts to the **Ō. Rēcta**. Examples: *C., Tusc., II. 25. 61*; *L., II. 7. 9, etc.*

### Moods In Ōrātiō Obliqua.

**650.** In **Ōrātiō Obliqua** the *principal clauses* (except Interrogatives and Imperatives) are put in the *Infinitive*, the *subordinate clauses* in the *Subjunctive*.

**Ōrātiō Rēcta**: **Apud Hypanim fluvium**, **inquit Aristotelēs**,

**Ōrātiō Obliqua**: **Apud Hypanim fluvium Aristotelēs ait**

**Ō. R.**: **bēstiōlæ quædam nāscuntur**,

**Ō. O.**: **bēstiōlās quāsdam nāsci**,

**Ō. R.**: **quæ ūnum diem vivunt**,

**Ō. O.**: **quæ ūnum diem vivant**, *C., Tusc., I. 39. 94.*

**Ō. R.** *On the river Bog, says Aristotle*, *a little creatures are born, that live but*

**Ō. O.**—*Aristotle says that on the river Bog,* *one day.*

**Sōcratēs dicere solēbat**:

**Ō. R.** **Omnēs in eō quod sciunt satis sunt eloquentēs**,

**Ō. O.** **Omnēs in eō quod scirent satis esse eloquentēs**, *C., Or., I. 14. 63.*

**Ô. R.** *Socrates used to say: "All men ARE eloquent enough in what they UNDERSTAND."*

**Ô. O.** *Socrates used to say that all men WERE eloquent enough in what they UNDERSTOOD.*

REMARK.—When the Principal Clause, or Apodosis, is in the Indic., the Inf. is used according to the rule for Verbs of Saying and Thinking. When the Principal Clause, or Apodosis, is in the Subjv., as in the Ideal and Unreal Conditions, special rules are necessary (656).

Otherwise, Subjv. in **Ô. R.** continues to be Subjv. in **Ô. O.**

NOTE.—In CAESAR, *B. C.*, III. 73, 6, where a principal clause is apparently put in the Subjv., instead of *detrimentum in bonum verteret*, read (*fore ut*) . . . *verteret*, with Vossius, Dübner, Perrin, Hoffmann. NEP., II. 7, 6, is disputed.

651. Interrogative sentences are put in the Subjunctive, according to 467; inasmuch as the verb of Saying involves the verb of Asking.

*Ariovistus respondit sē prius in Galliam vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum: quid sibi vellet cūr in suās possessionēs veniret*, CAES., *B. G.*, I. 44, 7; *Ariovistus replied that he had come to Gaul before the Roman people; what did he (Caesar) mean by coming into his possessions?* (*Quid tibi vis?*)

REMARKS.—I. Indicative Rhetorical Questions (464), being substantially statements, are transferred from the Indic. of **Ô. R.** to the Acc. and Inf. of **Ô. O.** when they are in the First and Third Persons. The Second Person goes into the Subjunctive.

**Ô. R.** Num possum? *Can I?*

[No.] **Ô. O.** Num posse?

CAES., *B. G.*, I. 14; *Could he?*

Quid est turpius? *What is baser?* [Nothing.] Quid esse turpius?

CAES., *B. G.*, V. 28, 6; *What was baser?*

Quō sē repulsōs ab Rōmānīs itūrōs? L., XXXIV. II, 6; *whither should they go, if repelled by the Romans?* (Quō ibimus?) Cui nōn appārere ab eō quī prior arma intulisset iniūriam ortam (esse)? L., XXXII. 10, 6; *to whom is it not evident that the wrong began with him, who had been the first to wage war?* (Cui nōn appāret?)

Examples are not found in early Latin, are rare in classical period, but are especially common in LIVY.

Sī bonum dūcerent, quid prō noxiō damnāssent? L., XXVII. 34, 13; *if they thought him a good man, why had they condemned him as guilty?* (Sī bonum dūcitīs, quid prō noxiō damnāstīs?)

The Question in the Second Person often veils an Imperative. Here from LIVY on the Subjv. is the rule.

Nec cēssābant Sabīnī instāre rogitantēs quid tererent tempus, L., III. 61, 13. (**Ô. R.**, Quid teritis?)

Exceptions are rare ; Subjv. with Third Person, CAES., *B. C.*, I. 32, 3 ; Inf.<sup>o</sup> with Second Person, L., VI. 39, 10.

2. In Subjv. Rhetorical Questions the Subjv. is either retained or transferred to the Infinitive. *The Deliberative Subjv. is always retained.*

*Quis sibi persuādēret sine certā rē Ambiorigem ad ēiusmodi cōsilium dēscendisse ?* CAES., *B. G.*, V. 29, 5 ; *who could persuade himself that Ambiorix had proceeded to an extreme measure like that, without (having made) a sure thing (of it) ?* (*Quis sibi persuādeat ?*)

The Inf. form would be the Future: *quem sibi persuāsūrum ?* (659), and is not to be distinguished from the Fut. Indicative.

**652.** Imperative sentences are put in the Subjunctive, sometimes with, usually without, *ut* ; the Negative is, of course, *nē* (never *ut nē*).

*Redditur respōsum: nōndum tempus pūgnae esse ; castris sē tenērent,* L., II. 45, 8 ; *there was returned for answer, that it was not yet time to fight, that they must keep within the camp.* (*Ō. R., castris vōs tenēte.*) (*Vercingetorix*) *cohōrtātus est: nē perturbārentur incommodō,* CAES., *B. G.*, VII. 29, 1 ; *Vercingetorix comforted them (by saying) that they must not allow themselves to be disconcerted by the disaster.* (*Ō. R., nōlite perturbārī.*)

REMARKS.—I. *Ut* can be used according to 546, after verbs of Will and Desire and their equivalents.

*Pŷthia respondit ut moenibus lignis sē mūnīrent,* NEP., II. 2, 6 ; *the Pythia answered that they must defend themselves with walls of wood.*

2. Verbs of Will and Desire, being also *verba dicendī*, frequently have an *ut* clause followed by an Acc. with the Inf., the second clause adding a statement to the request.

*Ubi ōrābant ut sibi auxilium ferret ; ad auxilium spemque reliqui temporis satis futūrum,* CAES., *B. G.*, IV. 16, 5.

### Tenses in Ōrātiō Obliqua.

**653.** The Tenses of the Infinitive follow the laws already laid down (530) :

The Present Infinitive expresses contemporaneous action ;

The Perfect Infinitive expresses prior action ;

The Future Infinitive expresses future action.

REMARK.—The Impf. Indic., as expressing prior continuance, becomes the Pf. Inf. in *Ō. O.*, and hence loses its note of continuance.

**654.** The Tenses of the Subjunctive follow the laws of

sequence (510). The choice is regulated by the point of view of the Reporter, or the point of view of the Speaker.

NOTE.—By assuming the point of view of the speaker, greater liveliness as well as greater accuracy is imparted to the discourse. This form is technically called **Repraesentātiō**. In Conditional Sentences **Repraesentātiō** often serves to prevent ambiguity. The point of view not unfrequently shifts from reporter to speaker, sometimes in the same sentence; this has the effect of giving additional emphasis to the primary verb, and is therefore common in commands and in favourable alternatives.

### Point of View of the Reporter :

**Lēgātiōnī** Ariovistus respondit : sibi mirum vidēri quid in suā Galliā quam bellō vicisset, Caesarī negōtiū esset, CAES., *B.G.*, I. 34, 4 ; *to the embassy Ariovistus replied, that it seemed strange to him (he wondered) what business Caesar had in his Gaul, which he had conquered in war.*

### Point of View of the Speaker :

[**Lēgātis Helvētiōrum**] Caesar respondit : cōsueſse deōs immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcisci velint, his secundiōrēs interdum rēs concēdere, CAES., *B.G.*, I. 14, 5 ; *to the envoys of the Helvetians Caesar replied, that the gods were (are) wont, that men might (may) suffer the more severely from change in their fortunes, to grant occasional increase of prosperity to those whom they wished (wish) to punish for their crime.* (A long passage is *L.*, XXVIII. 32.)

### Point of View shifted :

Ad haec Mārcius respondit : Si quid ab senātū petere vellent, ab armis discēdant, S., *C.*, 34, 1 ; *thereto Marcius replied : If they wished to ask anything of the senate, they must lay down their arms.*

Proinde aut cēderent (undesired alternative) animō atque virtūte genti per eōs diēs totiēns ab sē victae, aut itineris finem spērent (desired alternative) campum interiacentem Tiberī ac moenibus Rōmānis, *L.*, XXI. 30, 11 ; *therefore they should either yield in spirit and courage to a nation which during those days they had so often conquered, or they must hope as the end of their march the plain that lies between the Tiber and the walls of Rome.*

**655.** Object, Causal, Temporal, and Relative Clauses follow the general laws for Subordinate Clauses in **Ōrātiō Obliqua**.

For examples of Object Clauses, see 525 ; for Causal, see 541 ; for Temporal, see 561-564, 569-577 ; for Relative, see 628.

REMARKS.—I. Coördinate Relative Clauses are put in the Acc. and Infinitive (635).

2. Relative Clauses are put in the Indicative: (a) In mere circumlocutions. (b) In explanations of the narrator (628, R.).

3. *Dum*, with the Indic., is often retained as a mere circumlocution:

*Dic, hospes, Spartae nōs tē hīc vidisse iacentis, dum sanctis patriae legibus obsequimur*, C., *Tusc.*, i. 42. 101: *tell Sparta, stranger, that thou hast seen us lying here obeying (in obedience to) our country's hallowed laws.*

So also sometimes *cum*; see C., *Lael.*, 3, 12.

## 656. Conditional Sentences in Ōrātiō Obliqua, Total and Partial.

1. The Protasis follows the rule.

2. The Indicative Apodosis follows the rule, but Present, Imperfect, and Perfect Subjunctive are turned into the Future Infinitive or its periphrases.

The Pluperfect Subjunctive is transferred to the Perfect Infinitive of the Active Periphrastic Conjugation.

Passive and Supineless Verbs take the circumlocution with *futūrum fuisse ut* . . . 248, N. 3.

REMARK.—*Posse* needs no Fut. (248, R.), and *potuisse* no Periphrastic Pf. Inf., so that these forms are often used to lighten the construction.

3. *Identical Forms*.—In the transfer of Conditions to Ō. O., the difference between many forms disappears. For instance,

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| I. 1. <i>Si id crēdis, errābis.</i>       | } <i>Dicō tē, si id crēdās, errātūrum esse.</i>      |
| 2. <i>Si id crēdēs, errābis.</i>          |  |
| 3. <i>Si id crēdās, errēs.</i>            |  |
| II. 1. <i>Si id crēdis, errābis.</i>      | } <i>Dixi tē, si id crēderēs, errātūrum esse.</i>    |
| 2. <i>Si id crēdēs, errābis.</i>          |  |
| 3. <i>Si id crēdās, errēs.</i>            |  |
| 4. <i>Si id crēderēs, errārēs.</i>        |  |
| III. 1. <i>Si id crēdideris, errābis.</i> | } <i>Dixi tē, si id crēdidissēs, errātūrum esse.</i> |
| 2. <i>Si id crēdideris, errēs.</i>        |  |
| 3. <i>Si id crēdideris, errāveris.</i>    |  |
| 4. <i>Si id crēdidissēs, errārēs.</i>     |  |

NOTES.—1. In No. I. the difference is not vital, though exactness is lost.

2. *as* In No. II. the ambiguity lies practically between 2 and 3; inasmuch as *Repraesentātiō* is usually employed for the Logical Condition, and the Periphrastic Pf. Inf. is employed in the Unreal, wherever it is possible. The difference between an Unfulfilled Present and an Unfulfilled Past would naturally vanish to the narrator, to whom both are Past.

*Ariovistus respondit: si quid ipsi & Caesare opus esset, sēsē ad illum ventūrum fuisse: si quid ille sē velit, illum ad sē venire oportere*, CAES., *B. G.*, i. 1.



34, 2; *Ariovistus answered, that if he had wanted anything of Caesar he would have come to him; if he (Caesar) wanted anything of him, he ought to come to him (Ariovistus).* **Ō. R.:** *sī quid mihi ā Caesare opus esset, ego ad illum vēnissem; sī quid ille mē vult, illum ad mē venīre oportet.*

*Fatentur sē virtūtis causā, nisi ea voluptātem faceret, nē manum quidem versūrōs fuisse, C., Fin., v. 31, 93; they confess that for virtue's own sake, if it did not cause pleasure, they would not even turn a hand.* **Ō. R.:** *nisi ea voluptātem faceret nē manum quidem verterēm.*

(b) Occasionally in the Logical Condition the Fut. Indic. is changed to the Fut. Periphrastic Subjv., thus: **sī adsēnsūrus esset, etiam opīnātūrum** is an **Ō. O.** quotation for **sī... adsentīētur, opīnābitur** in C., Ac., II. 21, 67.

3. No. III., like No. II., is used chiefly of the future. But in 3 the periphrases with **fore (futūrum esse)** are commonly employed for the active and the Pf. participle, with **fore** for the passive. In 4 the same fading out of the difference between Unfulfilled Present and Past occurs as in II.

### 657. Logical Conditions in Ōrātiō Obliqua.

1. *Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: sī ipse populō Rōmānō nōn praescriberet quemadmodum suō iūre ūterētur, nōn oportēre sēsē ā populō Rōmānō in suō iūre impediri, CAES., B. G., I. 36, 2; to this Ariovistus made answer: If he did not prescribe to the Roman people how to exercise their right, he ought not to be hindered by the Roman people in the exercise of his right.* (**Ō. R.:** *sī ego nōn praescribō, nōn oportet mē impediri.*)

2. *Sī bonum dūcerent, quid prō noxiō damnāssent? Sī noxium comperissent, quid alterum (cōsulātum) crēderent? L., XXVII. 34, 13; if they thought him a good man, why had they condemned him as guilty; if, on the other hand, they had found him guilty, why did they intrust him with a second consulship?* (**Ō. R.:** *sī—dūcitis, quid damnāstis? sī—comperistis, quid crēditis?*)

3. *Titurius clāmitābat, suam sententiam in utramque partem esse tūtā; sī nihil esset (Ō. R.:* *sī nihil erit) dūrius, nullō periculō ad proximam legiōnem perventūrōs (Ō. R.:* *perveniētis); sī Gallia omnis cum Germānis cōsentiret (Ō. R.:* *sī cōsentit) ūnam esse (Ō. R.:* *est) in celeritāte positam salūtem, CAES., B. G., v. 29, 6; Titurius kept crying out that his resolution was safe in either case: if there were (should be) no especial pressure, they would get to the next legion without danger; if all Gaul was in league with the Germans, their only safety lay in speed.*

4. *Eum omnium labōrum finem fore existimābant sī hostem Hibērō interclūdere potuissent, CAES., B. C., I. 68, 3; they thought that would be the end of all (their) toils, if they could cut off the enemy from the Ebro.* (**Ō. R.:** *is labōrum finis erit (or fuerit) sī hostem interclūdere potuerīmus.*

5. [**Hi**] *Jugurthae nōn mediocrem animum pollicitandō accendēbant sī Micipsa rēx occidisset, fore utī sōlus imperī Numidiae potirētur, S., Jug., 8, 1; these persons kindled no little courage in Jugurtha's heart by promising over and over that if King Micipsa fell, he alone should possess the rule over Numidia.* (**Ō. R.:** *sī Micipsa occiderit, tū sōlus imperī potiēris.*)

6. [Fidēs data est] si Iugurtham vivom aut necātum sibi trādidisset fore ut illi senātus inpūnitātem et sua omnia concēderet, S., *Iug.*, 61, 5; *his word was pledged that if he delivered to him Jugurtha, alive or dead, the senate would grant him impunity, and all that was his.* (Ō. R.: si mihi trādidērīs, tibi senātus tua omnia concēdet.)

7. Nōn multō ante urbem captam exaudīta vōx est . . . futūrum esse, nisi prōvisum esset, ut Rōma caperētur, C., *Div.*, l. 45, 101; *not long before the taking of the city, a voice was heard (saying), that unless precautions were adopted, Rome would be taken.* (Ō. R.: nisi prōvisum erit, Rōma capiētur.)

8. Ariovistus respondit si quid ille sē velit illum ad sē venire oportēre, CAES., *B.G.*, l. 34, 2 (656, 3, N. 2).

9. Ariovistus respondit nisi dēcēdat [Caesar] sēsē illum prō hoste habitūrum; quod si eum interfēcerit, multis sēsē nōbilibus prīncipibusque populī Rōmānī grātum esse factūrum, CAES., *B.G.*, l. 44, 12; *Ariovistus replied, that unless Caesar withdrew, he should regard him as an enemy, and in case he killed him, he would do a favour to many men of the highest position among the Roman people.* (Ō. R.: nisi dēcēdēs tē prō hoste habēbō . . . si tē interfēcerō grātum fēcerō; 244, R. 4.)

REMARK.—Posse is used as has been stated (656, 2, R.).

Negārunť dirimī bellum posse nisi Messēniis Achaei Pylum redderent, L., XXVII. 30, 13; *they said that the war could not be stopped unless the Achaeans restored Pylos to the Messenians.* (Ō. R.: bellum dirimī nōn potest (poterit) nisi Pylum reddent.)

Docent, si turris concidisset, nōn posse militēs continēri quā spē praedae in urbem irrumperent, CAES., *B.C.*, ll. 12, 4; *they show that if the tower fell, the soldiers could not be kept from bursting into the city in the hope of booty.* (Ō. R.: si conciderit, nōn possunt (poterunt) continēri.)

## 658. Ideal Conditions in Ōrātiō Oblīqua.

1. Ait sē si ūrātur "Quam hōc suāve" dictūrum, C., *Fin.*, ll. 27, 88; *he declares that if he were to be burnt he would say, "How sweet this is."* (Ō. R.: si ūrar, dicam, same form as Logical.)

2. Voluptātem si ipsa prō sē loquātur concēssūram arbitror Dignitāti, C., *Fin.*, ll. 1, 1; *I think that if Pleasure were to speak for herself, she could yield (the palm) to Virtue.* The context shows that the condition is Ideal, not Logical. Si loquātur, concēdat. Compare 596, R. 1.

## 659. Unreal Conditions in Ōrātiō Oblīqua.

1. Titurius clāmitābat Eburōnēs, si [Caesar] adesset, ad castra ventūrōs [nōn] esse, CAES., *B.G.*, v. 29, 2; *Titurius kept crying out that if Caesar were there, the Eburones would not be coming to the camp.* (Ō. R.: si Caesar adesset, Eburōnēs nōn venirent.) On the rareness of

this form, see 599, R. 4; and even this passage has been emended into *ventūrōs sēsē* (for *esse*).

2. [*Appārēbat*] *sī diūtius vīxisset*, *Hamilcare duce Poenōs arma Ītaliae inlātūrōs fuisse*, L., XXI. 2, 2; *it was evident that if he had lived longer, the Punics would have carried their arms into Italy under Hamilcar's conduct.*

3. *Nisi eō ipsō tempore nūntiī dē Caesaris victōriā essent allātī existimābant plērique futūrum fuisse ut (oppidum) amitterētur*, CAES., B.C., III. 101, 3; *had not news of Caesar's victory been brought at that very time, most persons thought the city would have been lost.* (Ō. R.: *nisi nūntiī allātī essent, oppidum amissum esset.*)

NOTE.—As the Plupf. Indic. is sometimes used (rhetorically) for the Subjv. (254, R. 3), so the ordinary Pf. Inf. is sometimes employed instead of the Periphrastic :

*Nemō mihi persuādēbit multōs praestantēs virōs tanta esse cōnātōs (= cōnātūrōs fuisse) nisi animō cernerent* (597, R. 1) *posteritātem ad sē pertinēre*, C., *Cat.M.*, 23, 82; *no one will persuade me that (so) many eminent men had made such mighty endeavours, had they not seen with their minds' (eye) that posterity belonged to them.* *Agricola solēbat nārrāre sē primā in iuventā studium philosophiae ācrius hausisse* (Ō. R.: *hauserat*), *nī prūdētia mātis coercuisset*, Cf. TAC., *Agr.*, 4, 5; *Agricola used to relate that in his earliest youth he would have drunk in more eagerly the study of philosophy, had not his mother's prudence restrained him.*

So with *potuisse* :

(*Pompēium*) *plērique existimant sī ācrius insequi voluisset bellum eō diū potuisse finire*, CAES., B.C., III. 51, 3; *most people think that if Pompey had (but) determined to follow up more energetically, he could have finished the war on that day.* (Ō. R.: *sī voluisset, potuit*, 597, R. 3.) *Namque illā multitudine sī sāna mēns esset* (597, R. 1) *Graeciae, supplicium Persās dare potuisse*, NEP., XVII. 5, 2; *for with that number, if Greece had had (had been in her) sound mind, the Persians might have paid the penalty (due).* (Ō. R.: *sī sāna mēns esset Graeciae, supplicium Persae dare potuerunt.*)

#### Pronouns in Ōrātiō Obliqua.

660. 1. The Reflexive is used according to the principles laid down in 520 ff.

2. The person addressed is usually *ille*; less often *is*.

*Ariovistus respondit nisi dēcedat [Caesar] sēsē illum prō hoste habitūrum : quod sī eum interfēcērit, multis sēsē nōbilibus principibusque populi Rōmānī grātum esse factūrum*, CAES., B.G., I. 44, 12 (657, 9).

Of course, this does not exclude the ordinary demonstrative use.

3. *Hic* and *iste* are commonly changed into *ille* or *is*, *nunc* is changed into *tum* and *tunc*, except when already contrasted with *tunc*, when it is retained (S., *Iug.*, 109, 3; III, 1).

*Diodōrus [respondit] illud argentum sē paucis illis diēbus mīsisse Lilybaeum*, C., *Verr.*, IV. 18, 39 (398, R. 4).

4. **Nōs** is used when the narrator's party is referred to ; compare CAES., *B. G.*, I. 44, below.

5. **Ipse** seems to be used sometimes in **Ō. O.** with reference to the principal subject, as contrasted with the person addressed. Usually, however, **ipse** would have occurred in the **Ō. R.** as well.

Ariovistus respondit : Si ipse populō Rōmānō nōn praescriberet, quemadmodum suō iūre ūterētur, nōn oportēre sēsē ā populō Rōmānō in suō iūre impediri, CAES., *B. G.*, I. 36, 2 (657).

661. *Specimens of the conversion of Ōrātiō Obliqua into Ōrātiō Rēcta.*

### Ōrātiō Obliqua.

1. *Ariovistus respondit :*

Trānsisse Rhēnum sēsē nōn suā sponte sed rogātum et arcessitum ā Gallis ; nōn sine magnā spē magnisque praemiis domum propinquosque reliquisse ; sēsē habere in Galliā ab ipsis concessās, obsides ipsōrum voluntate datos ; stipendium capere iūre belli, quod victōres victis imponere consueverint. Nōn sēsē Gallis sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse ; omnes Galliae civitatēs ad sē oppugnandum vēnisse et contra sē castra habuisse ; eas omnes cōpiās ā sē ūnō proeliō pulsās ac superatas esse. Si iterum experiri velint, sē iterum paratum esse decertare ; si pāce ūti velint, iniquum esse de stipendiō recusare, quod suā voluntate ad id tempus pependierint. Amicitiam populi Rōmāni sibi ōrnamētō et praesidiō, non detrimentō esse oportere idque sē eā spē petisse. Si per populum Rōmānum stipendium remittatur et dediticiū subtrahantur, nōn minus libenter sēsē recusaturum populi Rōmāni amicitiam quam appetierit. Quod multitudinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādducat, id sē suī mūniendī, nōn Galliae impugnandae causā facere ; eius rei tēstimōniō esse quod nisi rogātus nōn vēnit et quod bellum nōn intulerit sed dēfenderit.

CAES., *B. G.*, I. 44.

### Ōrātiō Rēcta.

Trānsiī Rhēnum nōn meā sponte sed rogātus et arcessitus ā Gallis ; nōn sine magnā spē magnisque praemiis domum propinquosque reliqui ; sēsē habeo in Galliā ab ipsis concessās, obsides ipsōrum voluntate datos ; stipendium capio iūre belli, quod victōres victis imponere consueverunt. Nōn ego Gallis sed Galli mihī bellum intulerunt ; omnes Galliae civitatēs ad mē oppugnandum vēnerunt et contra mē castra habuerunt ; cae omnes cōpiae ā mē ūnō proeliō pulsae ac superatae sunt. Si iterum experiri volunt, iterum paratus sum decertare, si pāce ūti volunt, iniquum est de stipendiō recusare, quod suā voluntate ad hoc tempus pependērunt. Amicitiam populi Rōmāni mihī ōrnamētō et praesidiō, nōn detrimentō esse oportet idque eā spē petiī. Si per populum Rōmānum stipendium remittetur et dediticiū subtrahentur, nōn minus libenter recusabō populi Rōmāni amicitiam quam appetiī. Quod multitudinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādducam,\* id mei mūniendī, nōn Galliae impugnandae causā facio ; eius rei tēstimōniō est quod nisi rogātus nōn vēni et quod bellum nōn intuli sed dēfendi.

\* Allusion to the preceding speech, otherwise trādducō.



## Ōrātiō Oblīqua.

## Ōrātiō Rēcta.

2. *His Caesar ita respondit :*

*Eō sibi minus dubitātiōnis dari quod eas res quas legātī Helvētīi commemorāssent memoriā tenēret atque eō gravius ferre quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī accidissent ; quī si alicūius iniūriæ sibi cōsciūs fuisset nōn fuisse difficile cavere ; sed eō dēceptum quod neque commissum ā se intellexeret quārē timēret neque sine causā timendum putāret. Quod si veteris contumēliæ obliviscī vellet, num etiam recentium iniūriarū, quod eō invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent, quod Aeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogas vexāssent memoriā dēpōnere posse ? Quod suā victōriā tam insolenter glōriārentur, quodque tam diū se impūne tulisse iniūriās admirārentur eodem pertinere. Cōsuēsse enim deōs immortālēs quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rerū doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulciscī velint, his secundiōrēs interdum res et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen si obsidēs ab iis sibi dentur, utī ea quae polliceantur factūrōs intellegat, et si Aeduīs de iniūriīs quas ipsis sociisque eōrum intulerint, item si Allobrogibus satisfaciānt, sēsē cum iis pacem esse factūrum.*

CAES., B. G., I. 14.

3. *Sulla rēgī patefecit :*

*Quod polliceātur, senātum et populum Rōmānum, quoniam amplius armīs valuissent, nōn in grātiā habitūrōs ; faciundum aliquid, quod illōrum magis quam suā rētulisse vidēretur ; id ideō in prōmptū esse, quoniam Iugurthae cōpiā habēret, quem si Rōmānis tradidisset, fore ut illi plūrimum dēbēretur ; amicitiam, foedus, Numidiæ partem, quam nunc peteret, tunc ultro adventūram.*

S., Iug., III.

*Hoc mihi minus dubitātiōnis datur quod eas res quas vōs, legātī Helvētīi, commemorāstis, memoriā teneō atque hoc gravius ferō quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī acciderunt ; quī si alicūius iniūriæ sibi cōsciūs fuisset, nōn fuīt difficile cavere ; sed eō dēceptus quod neque commissum ā se intellegēbat quārē timēret neque sine causā timendum putābat. Quod si veteris contumēliæ obliviscī volō, num etiam recentium iniūriarū, quod me invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāstis, quod Aeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogas vexāstis, memoriā dēpōnere possum ? Quod vestrā victōriā tam insolenter glōriāminī, quodque tam diū vōs impūne tulisse iniūriās admirāminī eodem pertinet. Cōsuēverunt enim di immortālēs quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rerū doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulciscī volunt, his secundiōrēs interdum res et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere. Cum haec ita sint, tamen si obsidēs ā vōbis mihi dabuntur, utī ea, quae pollicēminī, factūrōs intellegam et si Aeduīs de iniūriīs quas ipsis sociisque eōrum intulistis, item si Allobrogibus satisfaciētis, ego vōbiscum pacem faciam.*

*Quod pollicēris, senātus et populus Rōmānus quoniam amplius armīs valuērunt, nōn in grātiā habēbunt ; faciundum aliquid, quod illōrum magis quam tuā rētulisse videātur ; id ideō in prōmptū est, quoniam Iugurthae cōpiā habēs, quem si Rōmānis tradideris tibi plūrimum dēbēbitur ; amicitia, foedus, Numidiæ pars, quam nunc petis, tunc ultro adveniet.*



## Ōrātiō Oblīqua.

## Ōrātiō Rēcta.

4. *Athēniēnsēs dēplōrāvērunt rāstātiōnem populātiōnemque miserābilem agrōrum.* Neque sē id querī quod hostilia ab hoste passi forent; esse enim quaedam bellī iūra quae ut facere ita pati sūt fās. Sata exūrī, diruī tēcta, praedās hominum pecorumque agī misera magis quam indigna patientī esse; vērū enim vērō id sē querī, quod is, quī Rōmānōs aliēnigenās et barbarōs vocat, adeō omnia simul dīvina hūmānaque iūra polluerit ut priōre populātiōne cum Infernīs diīs, secundā cum superīs bellum nefārium gesserit. Omnia sepulcra monumentaque diruta esse in finibus suis, omniū nūdātōs mānēs, nullius ossa terrā tegī. Quālem terram Atticam fēcerit, exōrnatam quondam opulentamque, tālem eum sī liceat Aetōliam Graeciamque omnem facturum. Urbis quoque suae similem dēfōrmitatē futuram fuisse, nisi Rōmānī subvēnissent.

L., XXXI. 30.

Nōn id querimur quod hostilia ab hoste passi sumus. Sunt enim quaedam bellī iūra quae ut facere ita pati est fās. Sata exūrī, diruī tēcta, praedās hominum pecorumque agī misera magis quam indigna patientī sunt; vērū enim vērō id querimur quod is, quī Rōmānōs aliēnigenās et barbarōs vocat, adeō omnia simul dīvina hūmānaque iūra polluit ut priōre populātiōne cum Infernīs diīs, secundā cum superīs bellum nefārium gesserit. Omnia sepulcra monumentaque diruta sunt in finibus nostrīs, omnium nūdātī mānēs, nullius ossa terrā teguntur. Quālem terram Atticam fēcit, exōrnatam quondam opulentamque, tālem is, sī licēbit (or: liceat) Aetōliam Graeciamque omnem faciet (or: faciat). Urbis quoque nostrae similis dēfōrmitās fuisset, nisi Rōmānī subvēnissent.

## INVOLVED ŌRĀTIŌ OBLĪQUA. ATTRACTION OF MOOD.

662. Ōrātiō Oblīqua proper depends on some verb of Thinking or Saying, expressed or understood. In a more general sense the term Ō. Oblīqua is used of all complementary clauses that belong to ideal relations. The principle is the same in both sets of sentences, for in the one, as in the other, the Infinitive takes its dependencies in the Subjunctive, on account of the close relation between the Ideal mood and the Substantive Idea of the verb. Hence the favourite combination of the Infinitive and the Ideal Second person :

*Difficile est amicitiam manēre si ā virtūte dēfēceris*, C., *Lael.*, II. 37; *it is hard for friendship to abide if you (one) have fallen away from virtue.* *Proprium hūmānī ingenī est ōdisse quem laeseris*, Tac., *Agr.*, 42. 4; *it is (peculiar to) human nature to hate whom you have injured.* (But *ōdistī quem laesistī*.)

The so-called attraction of mood, by which clauses originally Indicative become Subjunctive in dependence on Subjunctives, is another phase of the same general principle.

**663.** 1. All clauses which depend on Infinitives and Subjunctives, and form an integral part of the thought, are put in the Subjunctive (Subjunctive by Attraction).

**Recordātiōne nostrae amicitiae sic fruor ut beatē vixisse videar quia cum Scīpiōne vixerim**, C., *Lael.*, 4, 15: *I enjoy the remembrance of our friendship so much that I seem to have lived happily because I lived with Scipio.* **Vereor nē dum minuere velim labōrem augeam**, C., *Leg.*, I, 4, 12: *I fear lest while I am wishing to lessen the toil I may increase it* (**dum minuere volō, augeō**). **Istō bonō utāre dum adsit, cum absit, nē requirās**, C., *Cat. M.*, 10, 33 (263, 2, a). **Quārē fiēbat ut omnium oculōs quotiēscumque in pūblicum prōdisset ad sē converteret**, NEP., VII. 3, 5 (567; **quotiēscumque prōdierat convertēbat**). **Nescire quid antequam nātus sis acciderit, id est semper esse puerum**, C., *Or.*, 34, 120; *not to know what happened before you were born, (that) is to be always a boy.* **Fraus fidem in parvis sibi praestruit ut cum operae pretium sit, cum mercēde māgnā fallat**, L., XXVIII. 42, 7; *fraud lays itself a foundation of credit in small things in order that when it is worth while it may make a great profit by cheating.* [**Arāneolae**] **rēte texunt ut si quid inhaeserit cōficiant**, C., *N. D.*, II. 48, 123 (567; **si quid inhaesit cōficiunt**). **Abeuntī si quid popōscerit concēdere mōris**, TAC., *G.*, 21, 4; *to the departing (guest) it is customary to grant anything that he asks* (**si quid popōscit concēdunt**).

NOTES.—1. **Dum** not unfrequently resists the Attraction both in prose and poetry: **Tantum nē noceās dum vīs prōdesse vidētō**, Ov., *Tr.*, I. 1, 101 (548).

2. On the retention of the Indic. in Relative clauses, see 628, R.

2. PARTIAL OBLIQUITY.—(a) From this it is easy to see how the Subjunctive came to be used in a Generic or Iterative sense after Tenses of Continuance. Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative may all involve the Notion of Habit, Will, Inclination, Endeavour, and the complementary clauses would follow the sense rather than the form. For examples, see 567, N.

(b) So also is explained the use of the Subjunctive in Causal Sentences, and especially in Conditional Sentences, where the Apodosis is embodied in the leading verb.

(**Iugurtha**) **timēbat iram senātūs** (= **nē irāscerētur senātus**) **nī pāruiisset lēgātis**, S., *Iug.*, 25, 7 (601). [**Ubiis**] **auxilium suum** (= **sē auxiliātūrum**) **pollicitus est, si ab Suēbīs premerentur**, CAES., *B. G.*, IV. 19, 1. **Praetor aedem** (= **sē aedificātūrum**) **Diovi vōvit si eō diē hostis fūdisset**, L., XXXI. 21, 12.

The idea of **Ō. O.** is shown in the tense:

**Si per Metellum licitum esset matrēs veniēbant** (= **ventūrae erant**), C., *Verr.*, v. 49, 129. [**Dictātor**] **ad hostem dūcit nullō locō nisi necessitās cōgeret fortunae sē commissūrus**, L., XXII. 12, 2 (438, N.).

## PARTICIPIAL SENTENCES.

**664.** Participles are used in Latin even more extensively than in English, to express a great variety of subordinate relations, such as Time and Circumstance, Cause and Occasion, Condition and Concession. The classification cannot always be exact, as one kind blends with another.

REMARKS.—1. It is sometimes convenient to translate a Participial Sentence by a coördinate clause, but the Participle itself is never coördinate, and such clauses are never equivalents. (410, R. 2.)

**Mānlius Gallum caesum torque spoliāvit**, L., VI. 42, 5; *Manlius slew the Gaul and stripped him of his neckchain* (after slaying the Gaul stripped him of his neckchain, having slain, etc.). (**Miltiadēs**) **capitis absolūtus, pecūniā multātus est**, NEP., I. 7, 6; *Miltiades (though) acquitted of a capital charge, was mulcted in (a sum of) money (was acquitted, but mulcted)*.

2. A common translation of the Participle is an abstract substantive; see 325, R. 3; 437, N. 2.

**Nēc terra mūtāta mūtāvit mōrēs**, L., XXXVII. 54, 18; *nor hath the change of land changed the character*. **Teucer Ulixēn reum facit Āiācis occisi**, QUINT., IV. 2, 13; *Teucer indicts Ulysses for the murder of Ajax*. **Inter haec parāta atque dēcrēta**, S., C., 43, 3.

3. On the Participle after verbs of Perception and Representation, see 536.

### 665. Participles may represent Time When.

**Alexander moriēns ānulum suum dederat Perdiccaē**, NEP., XVIII. 2, 1; *Alexander (when he was) dying, had given his ring to Perdicas*. **Dionȳsius tyrannus Syrācūsīs expulsus Corinthī puerōs docēbat**, C., Tusc., III. 12, 27; *Dionysius the tyrant, (after he had been) exiled from Syracuse (after his exile from Syracuse), taught (a) boys' (school) at Corinth*.

### Ablative Absolute.

(**Solōn et Pisistratus**) **Serviō Tulliō rēgnante vīgūrunt**, C., Br., 10, 39; *Solon and Pisistratus flourished when Servius Tullius was king (in the reign of Servius Tullius)*. **Sōle ortō Volsci sē circumvāllātōs vidērunt**, Cf. L., IV. 9, 13; *when the sun was risen (after sunrise), the Volscians saw that they were surrounded by lines of intrenchment*.

NOTES.—1. On the Abl. Abs. of the simple Participle, see 410, N. 4.

2. Suetonius uses the Abl. Abs. as well as the simple Participle with *ante* (*prius*) *quam*: **Tiberius excōssum Augusti nōn prius palam fēcit quam Agrippā iuvene interēptō**, Tib., 22; see also *Iul.*, 58.

**666.** Participles may represent Cause Why.

*Arēopagitae damnāvērunt puerum coturnicum oculōs ēruentem*, Cf. QUINT., v. 9, 13; *the court of Mars' Hill condemned a boy for plucking out (because he plucked out) the eyes of quails.* *Athēniēnsēs Alcibiadem corruptum ā rēge Persārū capere nōluisse Cymēn arguēbant*, Cf. NEP., VII. 7, 2; *the Athenians charged Alcibiades with having been unwilling to take Cyme (because he had been) bribed by the King of Persia.*

**Ablative Absolute.**

*(Rōmānī veterēs) rēgnārī omnēs volēbant libertātis dulcēdine nōndum expertā*, L., I. 17, 3; *the old Romans all wished to have a king over them (because they had) not yet tried the sweetness of liberty.*

NOTE.—An apparent cause is given by *ut*, *as*, *velut*, *as*, for instance, *tamquam*, (so) *as*, *quasi*, *as if*, see 602, N. 3.

In this usage CICERO and CAESAR are very careful, employing only *quasi*, *ut*. LIVY introduces *tamquam*, *utpote*, *velut*, and the tendency grows until it reaches its culmination in TACITUS.

**667.** Participles may represent Condition and Concession.

*Sī latet ars prōdest, affert dēprēnsa pudōrem*, Ov., A. A., II. 313 (593, 2). [*Rīsus*] *interdum ita repente ērumpit ut eum cupientēs tenēre nequeāmus*, Cf. C., Or., II. 58, 235 (609). (*Miltiadēs*) *capitis absolūtus, pecūniā multātus est*, NEP., I. 7, 6 (664, R. 1).

**Ablative Absolute.**

*Māximās virtūtēs iacēre omnēs necesse est voluptātē dominante*, C., *Fin.*, II. 35, 117 (593, 2).

NOTE.—On the combination of *quamquam*, *quamvis*, and *etsi* with the Participle, see 609, N. 1; *nisi* also is not uncommon; *tamen* is sometimes added in the principal clause.

**668.** Participles may represent Relative Clauses (637).

*Omnēs aliud agentēs, aliud simulantēs, perfidī (sunt)*, C., *Off.*, III. 14, 60 (637). [*Pisistratus*] *Homērī librōs cōfūsōs antea sīc disposuisse dicitur ut nunc habēmus*, C., *Or.*, III. 34, 137 (637).

REMARK.—*So-called, qui dicitur, vocātur, quem vocant; above-mentioned, quem antea, suprà diximus.*

**669.** *Future Participle (Active).*—The Future Participle is a verbal adjective, denoting Capability and Tendency, chiefly employed in the older language with *sum*, *I am*, as a periphrastic tense. In later Latin it is used freely, just as the Present and Perfect Participles, to express subordinate relations.

Peculiar is the free use of it in Sentences of Design, and especially

noticeable the compactness gained by the employment of it in Conditional Relations.

**670.** In later Latin, the Future Participle (active) is used to represent subordinate relations (438, N.) :

1. Time When.

(Tiberius) *trāiectūrus* (= *cum trāiectūrus esset*) *Rhēnum commeātum nōn trāsmisit*, Suet., *Tib.*, 18; *when Tiberius was about to cross the Rhine, he did not send over the provisions.*

2. Cause Why.

*Dēridiculō fuit senex foedissimae adūlātiōnis tantum infāmiā ūsūrus*, Tac., *Ann.*, III. 57, 3; *a butt of ridicule was the old man, as infamy was the only gain he would make by his foul flattery.* *Antiochus sēcūrus dē bellō Rōmānō erat tamquam nōn trāsitūris in Asiam Rōmāniē*, L., XXXVI. 41, 1 (602, N. 3).

3. Purpose (usually after a verb of Motion).

(Maroboduus) *misit lēgātōs ad Tiberium ōrātūrōs auxilia*, Tac., *Ann.* II. 46 (438, N.). *Cōsul Lārisam est profectus, ibi dē summā bellī cōsultātūrus*, L., XXXVI. 14, 5.

NOTE.—The Pr. Participle is sometimes used in a similar sense, but the Purpose is only an inference :

*Lēgātī vērunt nūntiantēs Asiae quoque civitatēs sollicitārī*, L., XXXI. 2, 1; *envoys came with the announcement that the states of Asia also were tampered with.*

4. Condition and Concession.

(1) Protasis.

*Deditūris sē Hannibalī fuisse accersendum Rōmānōrum praesidium?* L., XXIII. 44, 2; *if they had been ready to surrender to Hannibal, would they have had to send for a Roman garrison?* (— *si deditūri fuissent*, Ō. R. : *si deditūri fuērunt*.)

(2) Apodosis.

*Quatiunt arma, ruptūri imperium nī dūcantur*, Tac., *II.*, III. 19, 3; *they clash their arms, ready to break orders, if they be not led forward.* *Librum misī exigentī tibi, missūrus etsi nōn exēgissēs*, Plin., *Ep.*, III. 13, 1; *I have sent you the book, as you exacted it, although I should have sent it even if you had not exacted it.*

## ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS.

**671.** The Latin language allows greater freedom in the arrangement of words than the English. This freedom is, of course, due to its greater wealth of inflections.



Two elements enter into the composition of a Latin Sentence, governing to some extent its arrangement: Grammar and Rhetoric.

**672.** 1. Grammatical arrangement has for its object clearness. It shows the ideas in the order of development in the mind of the speaker. By Grammatical arrangement the sentence grows under the view.

2. Rhetorical arrangement has for its objects Emphasis and Rhythm. It presents a sentence already developed in such a way that the attention is directed to certain parts of it especially.

(a) *Emphasis* is produced :

1. By reversing the ordinary position.
2. By approximation of similars or opposites.
3. By separation.

In all sentences Beginning and End are emphatic points. In long sentences the Means as well as the Extremes are the points of emphasis.

(b) *Rhythm*.—Much depends on the rhythmical order of words, for which the treatises of the ancients are to be consulted. Especially avoided are poetic rhythms. So, for example, the Dactyl and Spondee, or close of an Hexameter at the end of a period.

**673.** Two further principles seem to underlie the arrangement of Latin sentences : (a) that of the ascending construction ; (b) that of the descending construction. In the ascending construction, which is more common, the principal word is placed last, and the subordinate ones, in the order of their importance, precede. In the descending construction the reverse is the process. The descending construction is regular in definitions.

**674.** RULE I.—The most simple arrangement of a sentence is as follows :

1. The Subject and its Modifiers.
2. The Predicate and its Modifiers.

1. *Dionysius tyrannus, Syracusis expulsus*, 2. *Corinthi pueros docebat*, C., *Tusc.*, III. 12, 27 (665).

Rhetorical positions :

*Potentēs sequitur invidia* QUINT., IV. 1, 14 (477, N. 4). *Nōbīs nōn satis-*

facit ipse Dēmosthenēs, *Cf. C., Or.*, 29, 104 (552, R. 1). **Discriptus** (erat) populus cēnsū, ordinibus, aetātibus, *C., Leg.*, III. 19, 44 (397). **Intrā** moenia sunt hostēs, *S., C.*, 52, 35 (477).

REMARK.—The modifiers of the predicate stand in the order of their importance. The following arrangement is common :

1. Place, Time, Cause, or Means. 2. Indirect Object. 3. Direct Object. 4. Adverb. 5. Verb.

NOTE.—The postponement of the subject is rare and always for definite reasons in the classical period ; later it becomes a mannerism, especially in the elder *PLINY* ; to a less degree in *NEPOS* and *LIVY*.

**675. RULE II.**—Interrogative Sentences begin with the interrogative, subordinate clauses with the leading particle or relative.

Quis eum diligit quem metuat ? *C., Lael.*, 15, 53 (629). Postquam Caesar pervēnit obsidēs popōscit, *CAES., B. G.*, 1. 27, 3 (561). Si spiritum dūcit vivit, *C., Inv.*, 1. 46, 86 (595). Qui timōre dēsierint ōdisse incipient, *TAC., Agr.*, 32 (567).

Rhetorical position :

[Nātūram] sī sequēmur ducem, numquam aberrābimus, *C., Off.*, 1. 28, 100 (595). Dē futūris rēbus etsi semper difficile est dicere, tamen interdum coniectūrā possis accēdere, *C., Fam.*, VI. 4, 1 (604). [Catō] mīrārī sē aiēbat quod nōn ridēret haruspex, haruspīcem cum vīdisset, *C., Div.*, II. 24, 51 (567).

**676. RULE III.**—An Adjective usually precedes, but often follows, the word to which it belongs ; a dependent Genitive usually follows the governing word ; so too does a word in Apposition.

Saepe māgna indolēs virtūtis priusquam rei publicae prōdesse potuisset extincta est, *C., Ph.*, v. 17, 47 (577). Sēnsū oculōrum praecipit animus, *QUINT., VI.*, 2, 6 (540).

Rhetorical position :

[Isocratēs] queritur plūs honōris corporum quam animōrum virtūtibus dari, *QUINT., III.*, 8, 9 (542, R.). [Ager], cum multōs annōs quīēvit, ūberiorēs efferre frūgēs solet, *C., Br.*, 4, 16 (567). Verēmur nē parum hīc liber mellis et absinthii multum habēre videātur, *QUINT., III.*, 1, 5 (550).

REMARKS.—1. The demonstrative pronouns regularly precede; the possessives regularly follow.

Verēmur nē hīc liber absinthii multum habēre videātur, *QUINT., III.*, 1, 5 (550). Torquātus filium suum necārī iussit, *S., C.*, 52, 30 (540).

Rhetorical position:

**Recordāre tempus illud, cum pater Cūriō maerēns iacēbat in lectō, C., Ph., II. 18, 45 (580). Ōsulātur tigrim suus cūstōs, SEN., E.M., 85, 41 (309, 2).**

2. Ordinals regularly follow, Cardinals regularly precede the substantive.

3. Many expressions have become fixed formulae: so titles, proper names, and the like; see 288.

**Facinus est vincire civem Rōmānum, C., Verr., v. 66, 170 (535).**

4. The titles **rēx, imperātor, etc.**, frequently precede the proper name with which they are in apposition.

5. New modifiers of either element may be inserted, prefixed, or added:

**Catōnem vidī in bibliothēcā sedentem multis circumfūsum Stōicōrum libris, C., Fin., III. 2, 7 (536). Saepe māgna indolēs virtūtis priusquam rei publicae prōdesse potuisset exstincta est, C., Ph., v. 17, 47 (577). At vidēte hominis intolerābilem audāciam, C., Dom., 44, 115 (488). (Aristidēs) interfuit pūgnae nāvālī apud Salamīna, NEP., III. 2, 1.**

NOTES.—1. The tendency in Latin was to reverse the Indo-Germanic rule by which an attributive adjective and a dependent Genitive preceded the governing word. But in early Latin the adjective still holds its place more often before its substantive, while the Genitive has already succumbed for the most part to the tendency. In the classical period the adjective is more often used after its substantive. But neither position can be strictly called rhetorical. The same is true of the possessive pronoun.

2. The original force of a following adjective or Genitive was restrictive or appositional, while, when it preceded, it formed a close compound with its substantive; thus, **bonus homō, a good man** (one idea); **homō bonus, a man** (one idea) *who is good* (another idea). In classical Latin this distinction is no longer inevitable, though it is often essential.

**677. RULE IV.**—Adverbs are commonly put next to their verb (before it when it ends a sentence), and immediately before their adjective or adverb.

**Zēnōnem cum Athēnīs essem audiēbam frequenter . . . , C., N.D., I. 21, 59 (585). Caedī discipulōs minimē velim, QUINT., I. 3, 13 (257). Vix cuiquam persuadēbātur Graeciā omni cēssūrōs (Rōmānōs), L., XXXIII. 32, 3 (546, R. 1). [Risus] interdum ita repente ērumpit ut eum cupientēs tenēre nequeāmus, C., Or., II. 58, 235 (609).**

Rhetorical positions:

**[Īram] bene Ennius initium dixit insāniae, C., Tusc., IV. 23, 52 (440). Saepe māgna indolēs virtūtis priusquam rei publicae prōdesse potuisset exstincta est, C., Ph., v. 17, 47 (577).**

REMARKS.—1. **Ferē, paene, prope**, usually follow:

**Nēmō ferē saltat sōbrius nisi forte insānit, C., Mur., 6, 13 (591, R. 4).**

2. Negatives always precede, see 448.

NOTE.—The separation of adverbs from their adjectives is rare, except in the case of **tam** and **quam**, which PLAUTUS, TERENCE, CICERO, and later authors often separate, *e. g.*, by a preposition : **tam ab tenui exitiō**. Hyperbaton with other adverbs is rare.

**678. RULE V.**—Prepositions regularly precede their case (413).

**Ā rēctā cōnscentiā trāversum unguem nōn oportet discēdere**, C., *Att.*, XIII. 20, 4 (328, 1).

REMARKS.—1. On **versus**, **tenus**, and the postposition of **cum** in combination with the personal pronouns and the relative, see 413, R. 1.

2. Monosyllabic prepositions are not unfrequently put between the adjective and substantive : **māgnā cum cūrā**. See 413, R. 2.

Less frequently they are placed between the Gen. and substantive; except when the relative is employed.

3. Dissyllabic prepositions are sometimes put after their case (Anastrophe), especially after a relative or demonstrative: most frequently **contrā**, **inter**, **propter**. So also adverbs. See 413, R. 1.

4. The preposition may be separated from its case by a Gen. or an adverb (413, R. 3) : **ad Appi Claudī senectūtem accēdebat etiam ut caecus esset**, C., *Cat. M.*, 6, 16 (553, 4).

5. Monosyllabic prepositions, such as **cum**, **ex**, **dē**, **post**, sometimes append the enclitics **-que**, **-ve**, **-ne**, as, **exque iis**, and *from them*. Usually, however, the enclitics join the dependent substantive: **in patriamque rediit**, and *returned to his country*. See 413, N. 3.

On the position of **per**, see 413, N. 2.

**679. RULE VI.**—Particles vary.

**Enim** commonly takes the second, seldom the third place; **nam** and **namque** are regularly prepositive. See 498, N. 1.

**Ergō** in the syllogism precedes, elsewhere follows; **igitur** is commonly second or third; **itaque** regularly first. See 502, N. 2; 500, R.

**Tamen** is first, but may follow an emphatic word. See 490.

**Etiam** usually precedes, **quoque** always follows. See 478, 479.

**Quidem** and **dēmum** (*at length*) follow the word to which they belong.

**680. RULE VII.**—A word that belongs to more than one word regularly stands before them all, or after them all, sometimes after the first (291).

**Arivistus respondit multis sēsē nōbilibus principibusque populi Rōmāni grātum esse factūrum**, CAES., *B. G.*, I. 44, 12 (657, 9). [**Īsocratēs**] **queritur plūs honōris corporum quam animōrum virtūtibus dari**, QUINT., III. 8, 9 (542, R.). **Longum est mūlōrum persequi ūtilitātēs et asinōrum**, C., *N. D.*, II. 64, 159 (254, R. 1).

**681. RULE VIII.**—Words of kindred or opposite meaning are often put side by side for the sake of complement or contrast.

*Manus manum lavat, one hand washes the other.* [Catō] *mīrārī sē aiēbat quod nōn rīdēret haruspex, haruspicem cum vīdisset, C., Div., II. 24, 51 (567). Ēmit morte immortālītātem, QUINT., IX. 3, 71 (404).*

**682. RULE IX.**—*Contrasted Pairs.*—When pairs are contrasted, the second is put in the same order as the first, but often in inverse order. The employment of the same order is called *Anaphora* (repetition). The inverse order is called *Chiasmus*, or crosswise position, and gives alternate stress. The principle is of wide application, not merely in the simple sentence but also in the period.

Same order (*Anaphora*).

*Fortūna* (1) *vestra* (2) *facit ut irae* (1) *meae* (2) *temperem, L., XXXVI. 35, 3 (553, 1). Mālō tē sapiēns* (1) *hostis* (2) *metuat quam stultī* (1) *cīvēs* (2) *laudent, L., XXII. 39, 20 (546, R. 2).*

Inverse order (*Chiasmus*).

*Ante vidēmus* (1) *fulgōrem* (2) *quam sonum* (2) *audiāmus* (1), *SEN., N. Q., II. 12, 6 (577). Parvī sunt forīs* (1) *arma* (2) *nisi est cōnsilium* (2) *domī* (1), *C., Off., I. 22, 76 (411, R. 2).*

REMARK.—Chiasmus is from the Greek letter X (chi):

1. Forīs	X	2. arma
2. cōnsilium		1. domī.

**683. Poetical Peculiarities.**—In the poets we find many varieties of arrangement of substantive and adjective, designed to draw especial attention to the idea or to colour the verse. These occur chiefly in the Hexameter and Pentameter, but to a lesser degree also in other measures. Thus the substantive and adjective are put either at the end of each hemistich, or at the beginning of each hemistich, or one is at the end of the first and the other at the beginning of the second.

*Cerberus et nullās hodiē petat improbus umbrās | et iaceat tacitā lapsa catēna serū, PROP., IV. (v.) 11, 25. Pūniceō stābis sūrās ēvincta cothurnō, V., Ec., 7, 32. Mē similem vestris mōribus esse putās? PROP., II. (III.) 29 (27), 32.*

#### ARRANGEMENT OF CLAUSES.

**684.** A period is a compound sentence with one or more subordinate clauses, in which sentence the meaning is kept suspended to the close.



**685.** Latin periods may be divided into two classes :

1. Responsive or Apodotic, in which a Protasis has an Apodosis.

2. Intercalary or Enthetic, in which the various items are inserted in their proper place between Subject and Predicate.

Ut saepe hominēs aegrī morbō gravī, cum aestū febrīque iactantur, sī aquam gelidam bibērunt, primō relevārī videntur, deinde multō gravius vehementiusque afflictautur : sic hic morbus, quī est in rē publicā, relevātus istius poenā, vehementius, reliquīs vivīs, ingravēscet, C., *Cat.*, I. 13, 31 (Apodotic).

Catuvolcus, rēx dimidiaē partis Eburōnum, quī finā cum Ambiorigē cōnsilium inerat, aetāte iam cōfectus, cum labōrem aut bellī aut fugae ferre nōn posset, omnibus precibus detēstātus Ambiorigē, quī eius cōsiliī auctor fuisset, taxō, cuius māgna in Galliā Germāniāque cōpia est, sē exanimāvit, CAES., *B.G.*, VI. 31, 5 (Enthetic).

**686.** NÄGELSBACH'S careful study of the subject has led to the following results. The simplest period is composed of one subordinate (*a*) and one principal (*A*) clause ; the principal varieties are : (1) *a* : *A*, where the principal clause follows the subordinate ; (2) *A* (*a*) *A*, where the subordinate clause is inserted within the principal clause ; (3) *A* | *a*, where the principal clause precedes the subordinate clause ; (4) *a* (*A*) *a*, where the principal clause is inserted within the subordinate clause. When two subordinate clauses (*a*, *b*), independent of each other, are used, the forms are : (5) *a* : *A* | *b* ; (6) *a* : *A* (*b*) *a* ; (7) *A* (*a*) *A* | *b* ; (8) *A* (*a*) *A* (*b*) *A* ; (9) *a* : (*b* : *A*). If the dependent clauses are of different degree ( $\alpha$ , *a*, *A*), that is, one depending upon the other, some fifteen additional forms are allowable.

Some examples are :

*a* (*A*) *a* : illōrum vidēs quam niteat orātiō, C., *Fin.*, IV. 3, 5. *a* : (*b* : *A*) : cūr nōlint, etiamsi taceant, satis dicunt, C., *Div. in Caec.*, 6, 21.  $\alpha$  : *a* : *A* : quid agātur, cum aperuerō, facile erit statuere, C., *Ph.*, V. 2, 6. *a* : *A* |  $\alpha$  : illud quid sit, scire cupiō, quod iacis obscurē, C., *Att.*, II. 7, 4. *a* |  $\alpha$  (*A*) *a* : nōs uti exspectāremus sē, reliquit qui rogāret, VARRO, *R.R.*, I. 2, 32. *A* |  $\alpha$  (*a*)  $\alpha$  : mandō tibi plānē, tōtum ut videās cuius modī sit, C., *Att.*, I. 12, 2.

**687.** Periods are also divided into Historical and Oratorical. The former are, as a rule, simple. The most common form is *a* : *A*, i.e., where a subordinate clause is followed by a leading clause : Id ubi dixisset hastam in hostium finēs emittēbat, L., I. 42, 43. Another common period, developed and much liked by Livy, and later by Tacitus, was  $\alpha$  : *a* : *A*, consisting of (1) a participial clause ; (2) a clause introduced by a conjunction ; (3) the principal clause. Cf. Tac., *Ann.*,

II. 69, 3, *dētentus ubi . . . accēpit plēbem prōturbat*. Historians, having much occasion for description, are also prone to use the descending period, *i.e.*, the form in which the principal clause precedes. So especially NEPOS. LIVY likes also to use two independent subordinate clauses *asyndetically*.

The Oratorical periods are much more diverse and complicated, owing to the greater variety of effects at which they aim. We find, however, the ascending structure, where the emphasis is continually ascending until it culminates at the end, more common.

See an excellent example in C., *Imp.*, 5, 11 :

Vōs eum rēgem inultum esse patiēmini quī lēgātum populi Rōmāni cōsulārem VINULIS AC VERBERIBUS ATQUE OMNĪ SUPPLICIŌ EXCRUCIATUM NECĀVIT ?

#### FIGURES OF SYNTAX AND RHETORIC.

**688.** Ellipsis is the omission of some integral part of the thought, such as the substantive of the adjective (204, N. 1), the copula of the predicate (209), the verb of the adverb.

*Unde domō ?* V., *A.*, VIII. 114 (391, R. 2).

REMARK.—When the ellipsis is indefinite, do not attempt to supply it. The figure is still much abused by commentators in the explanation of grammatical phenomena.

**689.** Brachylogy (*breviloquentia*) is a failure to repeat an element which is often to be supplied in a more or less modified form.

*Tam fēlix essēs quam fōrmōsissima (=es) vellem*, Ov., *Am.*, I. 8, 27 (302).

**690.** Zeugma or Syllēpsis is a junction of two words under the same regimen, or with the same modifier, although the common factor strictly applies but to one.

*Manūs ac supplicēs vōcēs ad Tiberium tendēns*, Tac., *Ann.*, II. 29, 2; *stretching out hands and (uttering) suppliant cries to Tiberius*.

**691.** Aposiōpēsis is a rhetorical breaking off before the close of the sentence, as in the famous Vergilian *Quōs ego . . . . .*

**692.** Pleonasm is the use of superfluous words.

**693.** Enallage is a shift from one form to another : *vōs ō Calliōpē precor*, V., *A.*, IX. 525.

Hypallage is an interchange in the relations of words : **dare clāssibus austrōs**, V., *A.*, III. 61.

**694.** Oxymōron is the use of words apparently contradictory of each other : **cum tacent clāmant**, C., *Cat.*, I. 8, 21 (582).

**695.** Synecdoché is the use of the part for the whole, or the reverse : **tectum** for **domum**, **puppis** for **nāvis**, **mucrō** for **gladius**, etc.

**696.** Hypérbaton, Trajection, is a violent displacement of words. **Lýdia dīc per omnēs tē deōs ōrō**, II., *O.*, I. 8, 1 (413, N. 2).

**697.** Anacolūthon, or *want of sequence*, occurs when the scheme of a sentence is changed in its course.

**698.** Hendiadys (ἐν διὰ δυοῖν) consists in giving an analysis instead of a complex, in putting two substantives connected by a copulative conjunction, instead of one substantive and an adjective or attributive genitive.

**Vulgus et multitudō**, *the common herd*. **Via et ratiō** (C., *Verr.*, I. 16, 47), *scientific method*. **VI et armīs**, *by force of arms*.

So two verbs may be translated by an adverb and a verb : **fundi fugārique**, *to be utterly routed*.

**699.** Cōnstrūctiō Praegnāns. So-called **cōnstrūctiō prae-gnāns** is nothing but an extended application of the accusative of the Inner Object (Object Effected). The result is involved, not distinctly stated.

**Exitium inrītat**, (Cf. TAC., *Ann.*, XIII. I. 1; *he provokes destruction* (ad exitium inrītat).

**700.** Lītōtēs, or Understatement, is the use of an expression by which more is meant than meets the ear. This is especially common with the Negative.

**Nōn indecōrō pulvere sordidī**, II., *O.*, II. I. 22 (449, R. 2).

## PRINCIPAL RULES OF SYNTAX.

1. The Verb agrees with its subject in number and person (211).
2. The Adjective agrees with its subject in gender, number, and case (211).
3. The common Predicate of two or more subjects is put in the Plural (285); when the genders are different, it takes the strongest gender or the nearest (286); when the persons are different, it takes the first in preference to the second, the second in preference to the third (287).
4. The common Attribute of two or more substantives agrees with the nearest, rarely with the most important (290).
5. The Predicate substantive agrees with its subject in case (211).
6. The Appositive agrees with its subject in case; if possible, also in number and person (321).
7. The Relative agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person (614).
8. Disproportion is indicated by the comparative with *quam prō*, *quam ut*, *quam quī* (298).
9. In comparing two qualities, use either *magis quam* with the positive, or a double comparative (299).
10. Superlatives denoting order and sequence are often used partitively and then usually precede their substantive (291, R. 2).
11. The Genitive forms *meī*, *tuī*, *sui*, *nostrī*, *vestrī*, are used mainly as objective genitives; *nostrum* and *vestrum* as partitive (304, 2).
12. The Reflexive is used regularly when reference is made to the grammatical subject; frequently when reference is made to the actual subject (309).
13. The Reflexive is used of the principal subject, when reference is made to the thought or will of that subject; hence, in Infinitive clauses, or Indirect Questions, in Sentences of Design, and in *Ōrātiō Oblīqua* (521).
14. The Possessive Pronoun is used instead of the Possessive or Subjective Genitive in the First and Second Persons (362, 364).
15. The Appositive to a possessive pronoun is in the Genitive (321, R. 2).
16. With words of Inclination and Disinclination, Knowledge and Ignorance, Order and Position, Time and Season, the adjective is usually employed for the adverb (325, R. 6).
17. The Indicative, not the Subjunctive, is used in expressions of Possibility, Power, Obligation, and Necessity (254, R. 1).

18. The Potential of the Present or Future is the Present or Perfect Subjunctive (257); the Potential of the Past is the Imperfect Subjunctive (258).

19. The Optative Subjunctive may be used to express a Wish (260), an Asseveration (262), a Command (263), or a Concession (264).

20. The First Imperative looks forward to immediate, the Second to contingent, fulfilment (268).

21. The Negative of the Imperative is regularly **nōli** with the Infinitive; sometimes **nē** with the Perfect Subjunctive (270, R. 2), or **cavē** with the Subjunctive (271) is also used.

22. The Infinitive, with or without a subject, may be treated as a neuter subject (422), object (423), or predicate (424).

23. The Infinitive is used as the object of verbs of Will, Power, Duty, Habit, Inclination, Resolve, Continuance, End, *etc.* (423).

24. The Accusative and Infinitive is used as the object of verbs of Will and Desire (532).

25. The Accusative and Infinitive is used as the object of verbs of Emotion (533).

26. The Accusative and Infinitive is used in Exclamation (534).

27. After verbs of Saying, Showing, Believing, and Perceiving, the Present Infinitive expresses action contemporary with that of the governing verb, the Perfect, action prior to it, the Future, action future to it (530).

28. The Genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive is used chiefly after substantives and adjectives that require a complement (428).

29. The Dative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used mainly in post-classical Latin after words of Fitness and Function; also after words of Capacity and Adaptation, and to express Design (429).

30. The Accusative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used after verbs of Giving and Taking, Sending and Leaving, *etc.*, to indicate Design (430).

31. The Ablative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used to denote Means and Cause, rarely Manner (431). ●

32. The Supine in **-um** is used chiefly after verbs of Motion to express Design (435).

33. The Supine in **-ū** is used chiefly with adjectives to indicate Respect (436).

34. The Present Participle denotes continuance, the Perfect, completion, at the time of the leading verb (282).

35. The Future Participle is used in post-Ciceronian Latin to express Design (438, R.).



36. The Participle is used after verbs of Perception and Representation to express the actual condition of the object (536).

37. The Perfect Participle passive is used after verbs of Causation and Desire, to denote impatience of anything except entire fulfilment (537).

38. The subject of a finite verb is in the Nominative (203).

39. Verbs of Seeming, Becoming, with the passive of verbs of Making, Choosing, Showing, Thinking, and Calling, take two Nominatives, one of the subject, one of the predicate (206).

40. With passive verbs of Saying, Showing, Believing, and Perceiving, the Accusative subject of the Infinitive becomes the Nominative subject of the leading verb (528).

41. The Appositional Genitive is used after *vōx*, *nōmen*, *verbum*, *rēs*, *etc.* (361, 1).

42. The Epexegetical Genitive (or Genitive of Explanation) is used after *genus*, *vitium*, *culpa*, *etc.* (361, 2).

43. The Possessive Genitive is used of the Third Person to denote possession (362).

44. The Subjective Genitive is used of the subject of the action indicated by the substantive (363, 1); the Objective Genitive of the object of that action (363, 2).

45. Essential or permanent qualities are put in the Genitive, always with an adjective (365); external and transient qualities in the Ablative, always with an adjective (400). See No. 82.

46. The Genitives of Quality and Possession may be used as predicates (366).

47. The Partitive Genitive stands for the whole to which a part belongs (367).

48. Adjectives of Fulness and Want, of Knowledge and Ignorance, of Desire and Disgust, of Participation and Power, may take the Genitive (374). Also some present participles used as adjectives, and in later Latin some verbals in *-āx* (375).

49. Verbs of Reminding, Remembering, and Forgetting take usually the Genitive (376); but sometimes the Accusative, especially of things (376, R.).

50. Impersonal verbs of Emotion take the Accusative of the Person Who Feels, and the Genitive of the Exciting Cause (371).

51. Verbs of Accusing, Convicting, Condemning, and Acquitting, take the Genitive of the Charge (378).

52. Verbs of Rating and Buying take the Genitive of the General, the Ablative of the Particular Value (379, 404). See No. 87.

53. **Interest** and **Réfert** take the Genitive of the Person, rarely of the Thing concerned (381).
54. The Indirect Object is put in the Dative (345).
55. Verbs of Advantage and Disadvantage, Bidding and Forbidding, Pleasure and Displeasure, Yielding and Resisting, take the Dative (346).
56. Many intransitive verbs compounded with **ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, sub, and super** may take a Dative; transitive verbs also an Accusative besides (347).
57. Verbs of Giving and Putting take a Dative and Accusative, or an Accusative and Ablative (348).
58. The Dative is used with **esse** to denote possession (349).
59. The Dative is used of the Person Interested in the action (350).
60. The Ethical Dative is used of the personal pronouns only (351).
61. The Dative of Reference is used of the Person to whom a statement is referred (352).
62. The Dative of Agent is used with the Perfect passive, the Gerund, and the Gerundive (354).
63. The Dative may denote the Object For Which in combination with the Person To Whom (355).
64. Adjectives of Friendliness, Fulness, Likeness, Nearness, with their opposites, take the Dative (359).
65. Active transitive verbs take the Accusative case (330).
66. Many intransitive verbs, mostly those of Motion, compounded with **ad, ante, circum, con, in, inter, ob, per, praeter, sub, subter, super, and trans,** take the Accusative; transitive verbs thus compounded may have two Accusatives (331).
67. Intransitive verbs may take an Accusative of similar form or meaning (333, 2).
68. The Accusative may express Extent in Degree, Space, or Time (334-6).
69. Names of Towns and Small Islands are put in the Accusative of Place Whither: so also **domus** and **rūs** (337). See No. 74 and 92.
70. Verbs meaning to Inquire, Require, Teach, and Conceal, take two Accusatives, one of the Person, one of the Thing (339).
71. Verbs of Naming, Making, Taking, Choosing, and Showing, take two Accusatives of the same Person or Thing (340).
72. The subject of the Infinitive is regularly in the Accusative (420).
73. The Accusative may be used in Exclamations (343).
74. Place Where is denoted by the Ablative, usually with **in** (385);

Place Whence by the Ablative, usually with **ex**, **dē**, or **ab** (390). Names of Towns and Small Islands omit the prepositions (386, 391). See No. 69 and 92.

75. Attendance is denoted by the Ablative with **cum** (392).

76. Time When or Within Which is denoted by the Ablative (393).

77. Origin or Descent is denoted by the Ablative with or without **ex** and **dē** (395).

78. Material is denoted by the Ablative with **ex** (396).

79. The Point of View or Respect is denoted by the Ablative (397).

80. Comparatives without **quam** are followed by the Ablative (398).

81. Manner is denoted by the Ablative regularly with an adjective or **cum** (399).

82. External and transient qualities are denoted by the Ablative, always with an adjective (400); essential and permanent qualities by the Genitive, always with an adjective (365). See No. 45.

83. Cause, Means, and Instrument, are denoted by the Ablative (401, 408).

84. The Agent is denoted by the Ablative with **ā** (**ab**) (401).

85. The Standard of Measurement is denoted by the Ablative (403).

86. Measure of Difference is put in the Ablative (403).

87. Definite Price is put in the Ablative (404); General Price in the Genitive (379). See No. 52.

88. Verbs of Depriving and Filling, of Plenty and Want, take the Ablative (405).

89. The Ablative is used with **opus** and **ūsus** (406).

90. **Ūtor**, **fruo**, **fungor**, **potior**, and **vescor** take the Ablative (407).

91. The Ablative, combined with a participle, serves to modify the verbal predicate of a sentence: Ablative Absolute (409).

92. Names of Towns and Small Islands of the First and Second Declensions are put in the Locative of the Place Where (411). See No. 69 and 74.

93. Adverbs qualify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs (439).

94. A question for information merely is introduced by **-ne** (454).

95. A question that expects the answer *yes* is introduced by **nōne** (455).

96. A question that expects the answer *no* is introduced by **num** (456).

97. The Deliberative Question is in the Subjunctive (265).

98. The Indirect Question is in the Subjunctive (467).

99. *Sequence of Tenses.* Principal tenses are ordinarily followed by Principal tenses, Historical by Historical (509).

100. After a Future or Future Perfect, the Future relation is expressed by the Present, the Future Perfect by the Perfect Subjunctive (514). After other tenses the Future relation is expressed by the Active Periphrastic Present and Imperfect Subjunctive (515).

101. In *Ōrātiō Obliqua* all subordinate tenses follow the general law of sequence (516).

102. *Quod, the fact that, in that,* is used with the Indicative to introduce explanatory clauses after Verbs of Adding and Dropping, Doing and Happening, and demonstratives (525).

103. *Quod, quia, quoniam,* and *quandō* take the Indicative in Direct Discourse, the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse, to express Cause (540, 541).

104. *Quod* is used after verbs of Emotion with the Indicative in Direct, the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse, to give the Ground (542).

105. Final Sentences have the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive with *ut* or *nē* (545).

106. Complementary Final Clauses are used after verbs of Will and Desire (546).

107. Positive verbs of Preventing, Refusing, Forbidding, and Bewaring, may take *nē* with the Subjunctive (548).

108. Verbs of Preventing and Refusing may take *quōminus* with the Subjunctive (549). See No. 112.

109. Verbs of Fear are followed by *nē* or *ut* (*nē nōn*) and all tenses of the Subjunctive (550).

110. Consecutive Sentences have the Subjunctive with *ut* and *ut nōn* (552).

111. Verbs of Effecting have the Subjunctive with *ut* and *nē*, or *ut nōn* (553).

112. Negated or Questioned verbs of Preventing, Hindering, *etc.*, of Doubt and Uncertainty, may be followed by the Subjunctive with *quān* (555). See No. 108.

113. A Consecutive Clause with *ut* is often used to give the contents or character of a preceding substantive, adjective, or pronoun (557).

114. *Ut, ut primum, cum, cum primum, ubi, ubi primum, simul&c, simul atque,* and *postquam* take the Perfect Indicative, in the sense of *as soon as*; but the Imperfect of Overlapping Action, and the Pluperfect when a definite interval is given (561, 562, 563).

115. When two actions are repeated contemporaneously, both are put in the Indicative in tenses of continuance (566).

116. When one action is repeated before another, the antecedent action is put in the Perfect, Pluperfect, or Future Perfect, the subsequent in the Present, Imperfect, or Future, according to the relation (567).

117. **Dum, dñec, quoad, quamdiũ**, *so long as, while*, take the Indicative of all tenses (569).

118. **Dum**, *while, while yet*, takes the Present Indicative after all tenses (570).

119. **Dum, dñec, quoad, until**, take the Present, Historical Present, Historical Perfect, and Future Perfect Indicative (571).

120. **Dum, dñec, quoad, until**, take the Subjunctive when Suspense or Design is involved (572).

121. **Dum, modũ**, and **dummodũ**, *if only, provided only*, take the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive in Conditional Wishes (573).

122. **Antequam** and **priusquam** take the Indicative Present, Perfect, and Future Perfect when the limit is stated as a fact; the Subjunctive when the action is expected, contingent, designed, or subordinate (574, 577).

123. Temporal **cum**, *when*, is used with all tenses of the Indicative to designate merely temporal relations (580).

124. Historical **cum**, *when*, is used with the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive to give the temporal circumstances under which an action took place (585).

125. Causal and Concessive **cum**, *when, whereas, although*, are used with all tenses of the Subjunctive (586, 587).

126. The Logical Condition has usually some form of the Indicative in both Protasis and Apodosis (595).

127. The Ideal Condition has usually the Present or Perfect Subjunctive, less often the Imperfect or Pluperfect, in both clauses (596).

128. The Unreal Condition has the Imperfect Subjunctive of opposition to present, the Pluperfect of opposition to past fact (597).

129. **Ut sũ, ãc sũ, quasi, quam sũ, tamquam, tamquam sũ, velut, and velut sũ**, introduce a comparison in the Subjunctive. The tense follows the rule of sequence (602).

130. Concessive clauses may be introduced by **etsĩ, etiamsĩ, tametsĩ**, with the Indicative or Subjunctive (604); by **quamquam**, with the Indicative (605); by **quamvis**, with the Subjunctive (606).

131. Indefinite and generic relatives usually have the Indicative (625); so explanatory **quĩ**, when equivalent to **quod** (626).

132. The Subjunctive is used in Relative Clauses that form a part



of the utterance of another; so in *Ōrātiō Obliqua* and *Final Clauses* (628).

133. Relative sentences that depend on Infinitives or Subjunctives, and form an integral part of the thought, are put in the Subjunctive by Attraction (629).

134. Relative sentences are put in the Subjunctive of Design when **qui = ut (final) is** (630).

135. Relative sentences are put in the Subjunctive of Tendency when **qui = ut (consecutive) is**; so after **dignus, indignus, idōneus, aptus, etc.**; after an indefinite antecedent; after comparatives with **quam** (631).

136. Comparative sentences after words of Likeness and Unlikeness may be introduced by **atque** or **ac** (643).

137. Comparative sentences after comparatives are introduced by **quam** (644).

138. In *Ōrātiō Obliqua*, Principal Clauses are put in the Infinitive, except Interrogatives and Imperatives, which are put in the Subjunctive; Subordinate clauses are put in the Subjunctive (650, 651, 652).

# PROSODY.

---

## 701. PROSODY treats of Quantity and Versification.

REMARKS.—I. Prosody originally meant Accent. Latin Accent is regulated by Quantity, and as classical Latin versification is also quantitative, Prosody is loosely used of both quantity and versification.

2. In the earliest Latin the Accent was not regulated by Quantity, but was on the initial syllable (15, N.). This often resulted in

(a) The disappearance of the vowel (8, 2) in the *antepenult* or *pro-antepenult*; this occurs especially in Greek words, but also in some common Latin words: **Poludeucēs**, **Poldeucēs**, **Pollūcēs**, **Pollūx**; **balineion**, **balineum**, **balneum**, *bath*; **māximus**, *greatest*, for **magisimos**; **optumus**, *best*, for **opitumus**, *etc.*

(b) The shortening of a *long penult* (8). This was still going on in the time of **PLAUTUS**, and occurs here and there in the poets: **anchora**, *anchor*, from **ankūra**; so **pāierō**, *I swear falsely*, for **periūrō**; **chorea**, *dance*, from **choreia**, *etc.*

(c) The weakening (8) of the *antepenult*, sometimes also of the *penult*, both in Greek words and Latin: **Massilia** from **Massalia**; **beni-** and **mali-** for **bene** and **male** in composition; **-hibeō** for **habeō** in composition; and a few others, as **-cidō** for **caedō** in composition, *etc.*

## QUANTITY.

702. RULE I.—A syllable is said to be long *by nature* when it contains a long vowel or diphthong: **ō**, **vae**, **lēgēs**, **saevae**.

REMARKS.—I. (a) A vowel before **-gm**, **-gn**, **-nf**, **-ns** is long *by nature*; (b) a vowel before **-nt**, **-nd** is short *by nature*.

### EXCEPTIONS:

(a) **Egnātius**, **Theognis**, and some Greek words in **-egma**, as **phlegma**, *phlegm*; but **pēgma**.

(b) **Cōntiō** (for **coventiō**), *assembly*; **iēntāculum**, **iēntātiō**, *breakfast*; **nūntius**, *messenger*; **quīntus**, *fifth*; and Greek substantives in **-ūs**, **-ūntis**, **-ōn**, **-ōntis**; **Charōndās**, **Epamīnōndās**; also **nūndinae** (**noven-d-**), *market day*; **nōndum**, *not yet*; **prēndō**, *I seize*; **quīndecim**, *fifteen*; **vēndō**, *I sell*; **ūndecim**, *eleven*; **vīndēmia**, *vintage*.

2. Inchoative verbs have vowel before **-sc** long *by nature*; **dīscō**, *I learn*.

3. Noteworthy are the following: **quārtus**, *fourth*; **quīnque**, *five*, and its derivatives; **vīginti**, *twenty*; **mille**, *thousand*, and its derivatives.

4. In verbs the quantity of the Present Stem is generally retained throughout before two consonants (except *-ns*).

*Except* *dicō, I say* : Supine, *dictum* ; *dūcō, I lead* ; Supine, *ductum* ; and their derivatives, like *dictiō, etc.*

5. Noteworthy are the following : *ago, I drive, ēgi, actum* ; *emo, I buy, ēmi, emptum* ; *frangō, I break, frēgi, fractum* ; *fungor, I perform, fūctus* ; *iubeō, I order, iūssi, iūssum* ; *iungō, I join, iūnxi, iūctum* ; *lego, I read, lēgi, lectum* ; *pangō, I fix, pāctum* ; *rego, I govern, rēxi, rēctum* ; *sanciō, I sanction, sānxi, sānctum, sāncitum* ; *struo, I pile up, strūxi, strūctum* ; *tangō, I touch, tāctum* ; *tego, I cover, tēxi, tēctum* ; *traho, I draw, trāxi, trāctum* ; *ungō, I anoint, ūnxi, ūnctum* ; *vincō, I conquer, vixi, victum*.

6. In verbs, a vowel resulting from syncope is long before *ss, st* (131). Also, perhaps, *i* before *s* and *t* in synepated PT. forms of *ire* and *petere*.

NOTE. — On the method of distinguishing long vowels on inscriptions, see 12, i, 8.

**703. RULE II** — A syllable is said to be long *by position* (12, 2) when a short vowel is followed by two or more consonants, or a double consonant : *ars, collum, castra*.

REMARKS.—I. The consonants may be divided between two words : *per mare, in terris* ; but when all the consonants are in the second word, the preceding short syllable commonly remains short, except in the Thesis (729) of a verse, when it is lengthened : *praemiā scribae*.

2. Every vowel sound followed by *i* consonant (*j*) is long (except in the compounds of *iugum, yoke*). This is due sometimes to natural length of the vowel, sometimes to compensation : *Gāius* from *Gāvius*, *p̄ierō* for *periūrō* ; but *bliugus, two-horse*.

NOTE. — In compounds of *iacere, to throw*, the *i* is often omitted, and the preceding vowel lengthened by compensation ; so *cōnicere* ; a short vowel with the *i* omitted is not found until Ovid's time.

3. Final *s*, preceded by a short vowel, is dropped before a consonant in the older poetry ; often too in *LUCRETIVS*.

*In somnīs vidit priu(s) quān sam ( eam) discere cōepit.*—*ENNIVS*.

NOTE. — In comic poetry, a short final syllable in *s* blends with *est*, and sometimes with *es* : *opust* (= *opus est*) ; *simili's* (= *similis es*).

**704. RULE III.**—A syllable ending in a short vowel before a mute, followed by *l* or *r*, is common (13) : *tenē-brae, darkness*. In early Latin it is regularly short, so, too, when the mute and liquid begin a word.

REMARKS.—I. The syllable must end in a short vowel : *nāvi-fragus, ship-wrecking* ; *melli-fluus, flowing with honey* ; but in *ab-rumpō* the *a* is long by position.

2. In Greek words **m** and **n** are included under this rule : **Tě-cmēssa**, **Cŷ-cnus**.

EXCEPTION.—Derivative substantives in **ābrum**, **ācrum**, **ātrum** from verbs ; as **flābra**, *blasts*. **Zmarāgdos**, **MART.**, v. 11, 1, cannot be paralleled.

**705. RULE IV.**—Every diphthong, and every vowel derived from a diphthong, or contracted from other vowels, is long (14) : **saevos**, *cruel* ; **conclūdō**, *I shut up* (from **claudō**) ; **inīquos**, *unfair* (from **aequos**) ; **cōgō**, *I drive together* (from **coigo** = **con** + **ago**).

EXCEPTION.—**Prae** in composition is shortened before a vowel until the time of **STATIUS** ; **prae-ūstus**, *burnt at the point* (**V.**, **A.**, vii. 524).

**706. RULE V.**—One simple vowel before another vowel-sound, or **h**, makes a short syllable : **dēus**, *God* ; **pūer**, *boy* ; **nīhil**, *nothing*.

EXCEPTIONS :

1. **ā** in the old Gen. of the First Declension : **aurāī**.
2. **ē** in **-ēī** of the Fifth Declension, when a vowel precedes : **diēī**, but **fidēī** (63, N. 1).
3. **a** and **e** before **i** in proper names in **-ius** : **Gāī**, **Pompēī**.
4. **i** in the Gen. form **-ius** (76, R. 2). **Alterius** is often shortened, perhaps even in prose : **ūnius**, **ūllius**, **nūllius**, **tōtius**, are found in poetry. In **alius** the **i** is never shortened (**alius** for **aliius**).
5. **i** in **fiō** is long, except before **er** : **fiō**, but **fieret** and **fieri**.
6. **ēheu**, **Diāna**, **ōhē**, **dīus** (= **dīvus**).
7. Many Greek words : **āēr**, **Menelāus**, **mūsēum**, **Mēdēa**.
8. In early Latin many words retain the original length of the vowel : **āis**, **rēī** ; all forms of **fiō** ; **clūō** ; **fūī** and its forms ; **plūit**, **lūit**, **adnūī**, *etc.* Most of the shortened forms also occur, and are more common.

## Quantity of Final Syllables.

### A. POLYSYLLABLES.

**707. RULE VI.**—In words of more than one syllable, final **a**, **e**, and **y** are *short* ; **i**, **o**, and **u** are *long*.

1. **a** is short : **terrā**, *earth* ; **dōnā**, *gifts* ; **capitā**, *heads*.

EXCEPTIONS :

1. Abl. of the First Declension : **terrā**.
2. Voc. of words in **ās** (**Aenēā**), and Greek Nom. in **ā** (**Ēlectrā**).
3. Impv. of First Conjugation : **amā**.

4. Most uninflected words : *trigintā, iūxtā*, but *itā, quā, eīā*. With *putā*, for instance, compare *cavē* below.

2. *e* is short.

EXCEPTIONS :

1. Abl. of the Fifth Declension : *diē*.

2. Impv. of Second Conjugation : *monē* (but see Note).

3. Most adverbs of Second Declension : *rēctē*; but *benē, malē, infernē* (LUCR.), *māxumē* (PLAUT.), *probē* (PLAUT.), *supernē* (LUCR., HOR.), *temerē* (PLAUT., TER.).

4. Greek words in *ē* (*η*) : *Tempē, melē*.

5. *Que* is thought to be not unfrequently long in the Thesis of early Saturnians ; so in the hexameter of the classical period if a second *que* follows in the Arsis.

NOTE.—Observe that in PLAUTUS and TERENCE any dissyllabic Iambic impv. may have the last *ē* shortened ; principally *cavē, habē, iubē, manē, monē, movē, tacē, tenē, valē, vidē*. See 716. Later poets also shorten sometimes when the penult is long ; *salve* (MART.).

3. *y* is always short, except in contracted forms : *misŷ* (Dative *misŷ = misŷi*).

4. *i* is long : *dominī, vīgintī, audī*.

EXCEPTIONS :

1. Greek Dat. *sī* : *Trōasī*.

2. Greek Nom., as *sināpī* ; Voc., as *Parī* ; Dat. Sing. (rarely), as *Minōidi*.

3. *quasī, nisī, cūī* (when a dissyllable).

4. *i* is common in *mihī, tibī, sibī, ibī, ubī*.

Observe the compounds : *ibīdem, ibique, ubique, ubīnam, ubīvis, ubīcunque, nēcubī, utīnam, utique, sicutī* ; (but *utī*).

5. *o* is long : *bonō, tūtō*.

EXCEPTIONS :

1. Common in *homō* ; in the Augustan times in *leō* and many proper names ; as *Scipiō* ; in the post-Augustan times in many common substantives : *virgō*. *Nēmō* is found first in OVID, *mentiō* in HORACE.

2. Frequently short in Iambic words in early Latin, especially in verbs, many of which remained common in the Augustan times, as *volō, vetō, sciō, petō, putō, etc.* ; so less often *nesciō, dēsinō, obsecrō, dixerō, oderō*. From SENECA on, the Gerund may be shortened : *amandō*.

3. *o* is usually short in *modō, citō, octō, egō, licō, immō, duō, ambō* (post-classical) ; and in many other words in later poetry.

6. *u* is always long : *cornū, fructū, auditū*.



**708. RULE VII.**—All final syllables that end in a simple consonant other than **s** are short.

EXCEPTIONS :

1. **āllēc, liēn**, and many Greek substantives.
2. The adverbs and oblique cases of **illic, illūc, istīc, istūc**, can hardly be considered exceptions, as **-c** is for **-ce**, and is merely enclitic.
3. Compounds of **pār** : **dispār, impār**.
4. **iit, petiit**, and their compounds.
5. Final **-at, -et, -it**, were originally long, and as such often occur in early Latin, and occasionally before a pause in the classical poets.

**709. RULE VIII.**—Of final syllables in **s** : **as, es, os**, are long ; **is, us, ys**, short.

1. **as** is long : **Aenēās, servās, amās**.

EXCEPTIONS :

1. Greek substantives in **ās, ādis** : **Arcās, Arcādīs**.
2. Greek Acc. Pl., Third Declension : **hērōās, Arcadās**.
3. **anās, anātis**.

2. **es** is long : **rēgēs, diēs, monēs**.

EXCEPTIONS :

1. Nom. and Voc. Sing., Third Declension, when the Gen. has **ētis, Itis, idis** : **segēs, milēs, obsēs** ; but **abiēs, ariēs, pariēs**.
2. Compounds of **ēs, be** (long syllable in **PLAUTUS**) : **adēs, potēs**.
3. **penēs** (Preposition).
4. Greek words in **ēs (ες)** : Nom. Pl., as **Arcadēs** ; Voc., as **Dēmos-thenēs** ; Neuter, as **cacoēthēs**.
5. Iambic verbal forms in Second Person Sing. in early Latin.

3. **os** is long : **deōs, nepōs**.

EXCEPTIONS :

1. **Compōs, impōs, exōs** ; and as the Nom. ending in the Second Declension.
2. Greek words in **ōs (ος)** : **melōs**.
4. **is** is short : **canīs, legīs**.

EXCEPTIONS :

1. Dat. and Abl. Plural : **terrīs, bonīs**.
2. Acc. Pl. of the Third Declension : **omnīs = omnēs**.
3. In the Nom. of sundry Proper Names, increasing long in the Genitive : **Quirīs, Quirītis**.
4. Second Person Sing. Pr. Indic. active, Fourth Conjugation : **audīs**.

5. In the verbal forms from **vīs**, **sīs**, **fīs**, and **velīs** : **nō-līs**, **mā-līs**, **ad-sīs**, **cale-fīs**.

6. In the Second Person Sing. Fut. Pf. Indic. and Pl. Subjv., **is** is common : **vīderīs**.

7. **Pulvīs**, **cinīs**, **sanguīs**, occasionally in early Latin.

5. **us** is short : **servūs**, **currūs**.

EXCEPTIONS :

1. Gen. Sing., Nom. and Acc. Pl., Fourth Declension : **currūs**.

2. Nom. Third Declension, when the Gen. has a long **u** : **virtūs**, **virtūtis**; **incūs**, **incūdis**; **tellūs**, **tellūris**.

3. In Greek words with **ū** (*ους*) : **tripūs**, **Sapphūs**; but **Oedipūs** and **polypūs**.

4. Occasionally the Dat. and Abl. Pl. of the Third Declension, the First Person Pl. active of verbs, seem to be long in early Latin.

6. **ys** is short ; **chlamŷs**.

## B. MONOSYLLABLES.

**710. RULE IX.**—All monosyllables that end in a vowel are long : **ā**, **dā**, **mē**, **dē**, **hī**, **sī**, **ō**, **dō**, **tū**.

Except the enclitics : **-quē**, **-vē**, **-né**, **-cē**, **-tē**, **-psē**, **ptē**.

**711. RULE X.**—Declined or conjugated monosyllables that end in a consonant follow the rules given : **dās**, **fēs**, **scīs**, **dāt**, **fēt**, **īs**, **īd**, **quis**, **hīs**, **quīs**, **quōs**.

**hic**, *this one*, is sometimes short ; **dīc** and **dūc** have the quantity of their verbs ; **es**, *be*, is short in classical Latin, long in early Latin.

**712. RULE XI.**—Monosyllabic Nominatives of substantives and adjectives are long when they end in a consonant, even if the stem-syllable be short : **ōs**, **mōs**, **vēr**, **sōl**, **fūr**, **plūs**; **lār** (**lāris**), **pēs** (**pēdis**), **bōs** (**bōvis**), **pār** (**paris**).

EXCEPTIONS :

**vir** and **lac**, **os** (**ossis**), **mel**;

Also **cor**, **vas** (**vadis**), **fel**. Also **quot**, **tot**.

**713. RULE XII.**—Monosyllabic particles that end in a consonant are short : **án**, **cís**, **in**, **nēc**, **pér**, **ter**.

Excepting **ēn** and **nōn** and **quín**;

And also **crās** and **cūr** and **sín**;

Also the Adverbs in **c** : **hic**, **hūc**, **hāc**, **sic**; and **āc** (**atque**).

## Quantity of Stem-Syllables.

**714. RULE XIII.**—The quantity of stem-syllables, when not determined by the general rules, is fixed by the usage of the poets (long or short *by authority*).

REMARKS.—1. The changes of quantity in the formation of tense-stems have been set forth in the conjugation of the verb (153, 2).

2. The occasional differences in the quantity of the stem-syllables which spring from the same radical can only be explained by reference to the history of each word, and cannot be given here. Some examples are :

pācīscor,	pāx, pācis.	sēdeō,	sēdēs.
mācer,	mācerō.	fīdēs,	fīdō (feido).
lēgo,	lēx, lēgis.	dux, dūcis,	dūcō (doucō).
rēgo,	rēx, rēgis.	vōcō,	vōx.
tēgo,	tēgula.	lūcerna,	lūceō (louceō).
ācer,	ācerbus.	suspīcor,	suspīciō.
mōlēs,	mōlestus.	mōveō,	mōbilis (= movbilis).

## Quantity in Compounds.

**715. RULE XIV.**—Compounds generally keep the quantity of their constituent parts: (cēdō) ante-cēdō, dē-cēdō, prō-cēdō; (caedō), occīdō; (cādō), occīdō.

REMARKS.—1. Of the inseparable prefixes, *di*, *sē*, and *vē* are long, *rē* short: didūcō, sēdūcō, vēcors, rēdūcō; *di*, in *dīsertus*, is shortened for *dis*, and in *dirimo*, *dīr* stands for *dis*.

2. *Nē* is short, except in *nēdum*, *nēmō* (*ne-hemō*), *nēquam*, *nēquīquam*, *nēquāquam*, *nēquitia*, *nēve*.

3. *Rē* comes from *red*, which in the forms *redd*, *recc*, *repp*, *rell*, *rett*, occurs principally in poetry before many consonantal verb forms; but this doubling varies at different periods, and is found throughout only in *reddō*. *Rē* by compensation for the loss of the *d* is found, occasionally, principally in Perfect stems and in dactylic poetry, especially in *rēicere*, *rēligiō* (also *relligiō* and *religiō*), *rēdūcō* (once in *PLAUT.*).

4. *Prō* is shortened before vowels, and in many words before consonants, especially before *f*: *prōavos*, *prōhibeō*, *prōinde*, *prōfugiō*, *prōfugus*, *prōfundus*, *prōfiteor*, *prōfārī*, *prōfānus*, *prōficiō*, *prōcella*, *prōcul*, *prōnepōs*. The older language shortens less frequently than the later. In Greek words *pro* (πρό) is generally short: *prōphēta*; but *prōlogus*.

5. The second part of the compound is sometimes shortened: *dēiōrō*,

(from *iūrō*), *cognītus*, *agnītus* (from *nōtus*). Notice the quantity in the compounds of *-dicus*: *fātidicus*, *vēridicus* (*dicō*), and *innūba*, *prōnūba* (*nūbō*).

6. Mechanical rules, more minute than those given above, might be multiplied indefinitely, but they are all open to so many exceptions as to be of little practical value. A correct pronunciation of Latin cannot be acquired except by constant practice, under the direction of a competent teacher, or by a diligent study of the Latin poets, and consequently of Latin versification.

### Peculiarities of Quantity in Early Latin.

**716.** The *Iambic* (734) *Law*. Any combination of short and long, having an accent on the short, or immediately preceding or following an accented syllable, may be scanned as a Pyrrhic. This applies to

(a) Iambic words, especially imperatives, as : *rogō*, *vidē*, *manē* ;

(b) Words beginning with an Iambus, when the second syllable is long by position, and the third syllable is accented, as : *senēctūtem*, *volūntātis* ;

(c) Two monosyllables closely connected, or a monosyllable closely connected with a following long initial syllable, as : *quis hīc est*, *ut occēpi*. The monosyllable may have become so by elision.

(d) Trochaic words following a short accented syllable, as : *quid istuc*.

(e) Cretic words, but more often in anapaestic measure, or at the beginning of a hemistich, as *vēnerānt*.

NOTES.—1. Before *quidem* a monosyllable is shortened : *tū quidem*.

2. A combination like *volūptās mea* is looked upon as a single word.

3. Authorities are not agreed as to the shortening : in polysyllabic words, when the second syllable is long by nature and the third syllable accented ; in trisyllables which have become Iambic by elision ; in Cretics at Trochaic and Iambic close ; in polysyllables like *simillumae*.

**717.** Personal pronouns and similar words of common occurrence forming Trochees (734) may shorten the initial syllable when followed by a long syllable or its equivalent, even in the oblique cases : *ille mē*, *ōmnium mē*, *unde tibi*.

NOTES.—1. The words involved are *ille*, *illic*, *iste*, *istic*, *ipse*, *ecquis*, *omnis*, *nempe*, *inde*, *unde*, *quippe*, *immo*, and a few others that are disputed, such as some dissyllabic imperatives like *mitte*, *redde*, and monosyllables followed by *-que*, *-ne*, *-ve*, and the like.

2. *Nempe*, *inde*, *unde*, *quippe*, *ille*, *iste*, may perhaps suffer *syncope* and be scanned as monosyllables.

3. *Nempe* never forms a whole foot. *Proin*, *dein*, *exin* are used only before consonants : *proinde* only before vowels ; *deinde* usually before vowels, rarely before consonants.

4. Trochees also come under the operation of the *Iambic Law* when they follow a short accented syllable.

## FIGURES OF PROSODY.

**718.** Poetry often preserves the older forms of language, and perpetuates peculiarities of pronunciation, both of which are too frequently set down to poetic license.

**719. 1. Elision.**—When one word ends with a vowel and another begins with a vowel, or **h**, the first vowel is *elided*. Elision is not a total omission, but rather a hurried half-pronunciation, similar to Grace notes in music.

**Ō** fēlix ūn<sup>a</sup>(a) ant<sup>e</sup>(e) aliās Priamēia virgō.—VERG.

**2. Ecclipsis.**—In like manner **m** final (a faint nasal sound) is elided with its short vowel before a vowel or **h**.

Mōnstr<sup>u</sup>(um), horrend<sup>u</sup>(um), infōrm<sup>e</sup>(e) ingēns cui lūmen adēptum.—VERG.

EXCEPTION.—After a vowel or **m** final, the word *est*, *is*, drops its *e* and joins the preceding syllable (*Aphæresis*).

**Sī** rixast ubi tū pulsās ego vāpulō tantum.—JUV.

**Aeternās** quoniam poenās in morte timendumst.—LUCR.

**720. Hiatus.**—Hiatus is the meeting of two vowels in separate syllables, which meeting produces an almost continuous opening (yawning) of the vocal tube. In the body of a word this hiatus, or yawning, is avoided sometimes by contraction, often by shortening the first vowel (13).

REMARKS.—**1.** The Hiatus is sometimes allowed : *a*, in the Thesis (729), chiefly when the first vowel is long ; *b*, in an Arsis (729), or resolved Thesis, when a long vowel is shortened (Semi-hiatus) ; *c*, before a pause, chiefly in the principal Caesura (750) ; *d*, in early Latin, in the principal Caesura, before a change of speakers, and occasionally elsewhere.

(a) **Stant et iūniperī** (*h*) **et castaneae** (*h*) **hīrsūtæ**.—VERG.

(b) **Crēdimus ? an quī** (*h*) **amant ipsī sibi somnia fingunt ?**—VERG.

(c) **Prōmissam ēripui generō.** (*h*) **Arma impia sūmpsī**.—VERG.

(d) **A. Abī.** **B. Quid abeam ?** **A. St ! abī** (*h*). **B. Abeam** (*h*) ? **A. Abī**.—

PLAUT.

**2.** Monosyllabic interjections are not elided.

**3.** On the elision of *e* in *-ne* ? see 456, R. 2.

**721. Diastolé.**—Many final syllables, which were originally long, are restored to their rights by the weight of the Thesis.



**Uxōr**, heus uxor, quamquam tū irāta's mihi.—PLAUT.

**Dummodō mōrāta rēctē veniat dōtātast satis**.—PLAUT.

**Perrūpīt Acheronta Hercules labor**.—HOR.

Sometimes, however, Diastolē arises from the necessities of the verse (as in proper names), or is owing to a pause (Punctuation).

**Nec quās Prīamidēs in aquōsis vallibus Īdae**.—OV.

**Dē sine plūra pu'r—et quod nunc instat agāmus**.—VERG.

**Pectorib⁹s inhiāns spirantia cōsultat exta**.—VERG.

NOTE.—The extent to which diastolē is allowable is a matter of dispute, especially in early Latin.

On **quē**, see 707, 2, Ex. 5.

**722. Systolē**.—Long syllables which had begun to shorten in prose, are shortened (Systolē).

**Obstupui steteruntque comae vōx faucibus haesit**.—VERG.

**Ē terrā māgn(um) alter⁹us spectāre labōrem**.—LUCR.

**Ūnus ad certam fōrmam primōrdia rērum**.—LUCR.

**Nūll⁹us addictus iūrāre in verba magistrī**.—HOR.

NOTE.—The short penult of the Pf. in **steterunt**, **dedērunt**, was probably original (DEDRO in inscriptions). See 131, 4, b, 5 and 6.

**723. Hardening**.—The vowels **i** and **u** assert their half-consonant nature (Hardening): **abiēte** (ābietē), **genā** (genuā), **tenēiā** (tēnūiā).

**Flūviōrum rēx Ēridanus campōsque per omnēs**.—VERG.

**Nam quae tēnēia sunt hiscendist nūlla potestās**.—LUCR.

**724. Dialysis**.—The consonants **i** and **v** assert their half-vowel nature: **dissolūō** (dissolvō), **Gāi⁹us** (Gāius, from Gāvius).

**Adulterētur et columba mīluō**.—HOR.

**Stāmina nōn ūllī dissoluenda deō**.—TIB.

**725. Syncope**.—Short vowels are dropped between consonants, as often in prose: **calfaciō** for **calefaciō**.

**Templōrum positor templōrum sāncte repostor**.—OV.

**Quiddam māgnū addēns ūnū mē surpite** (= surripite) **mortī**.—HOR.

**726. Thesis**.—Compound words are separated into their parts.

**Quō mē cunque** (= quōcumque mē) **rapit tempestās dēferor hospes**.—HOR.

NOTE.—The earlier poets carry Thesis much further, in unwise emulation of the Greek. Celebrated is: **Saxō cere comminuit brum**.—ENNIVS.

**727. Synizēsis.**—Vowels are connected by a slur, as often in the living language : *dēinde, dēinceps*.

*Quid faciam roger anne rogem ? quid dēinde rogābō ?*—Ov.

So even when *h* intervenes, as *dehinc* :

*Eurum ad sē Zephyrumque vocat, dehinc tālia fātur.*—VERG.

REMARK.—Synizēsis (*settling together*) is also called Synaerēsis (*taking together*), as opposed to Diaeresis (5) ; but Synaeresis properly means *contraction*, as in *cōgō* (for *coagō*), and *nēmō* (for *nehemō*). Syna-loepha is a general term embracing all methods of avoiding Hiatus.

NOTE.—1. Synizesis is very common in early Latin, especially in pronominal forms : *mī* (*mihi*), *mēus*, and its forms, dissyllabic forms like *ēō*, *ēūm*, etc.

**728. Synapheia.**—A line ends in a short vowel, which is elided before the initial vowel of a following line, or a word is divided between two lines, *i. e.*, the two lines are joined together.

*Sors exitūra et nōs in aetern(um)*

*Exilium impositūra cumbae.*—HOR., O., II. 3. 27.

*Gallicum Rhēn(um), horrible aequor, ūlti-  
mōsque Britannōs.*—CAT., II. II.

## VERSIFICATION.

**729. Rhythm.**—Rhythm means harmonious movement. In language, Rhythm is marked by the stress of voice (*Accent*). The accented part is called the Thesis ;\* the unaccented, the Arsis. The Rhythmical Accent is called the Ictus (*blow, beat*).

REMARK.—Besides the dominant Ictus, there is a subordinate or secondary Ictus, just as there is a dominant and a secondary Accent in words.

**730. Metre.**—Rhythm, when represented in language, is embodied in Metre (*Measure*). A Metre is a system of syllables standing in a determined order.

---

\* Thesis and Arsis are Greek terms, meaning the *putting down* and the *raising* of the foot in marching. The Roman Grammarians, misunderstanding the Greek, applied the terms to the *lowering* and *raising* of the voice, and thus reversed the significations. Modern scholars up to recent times followed the Roman habit, but at present the tendency is to use the terms in their original signification, as above.

**731. Unit of Measure.**—The Unit of Measure is the short syllable, (◡), and is called **Mora, Tempus** (*Time*).

The value in music is  =  $\frac{1}{4}$ .

The long (—) is the double of the short.

The value in music is  =  $\frac{1}{2}$ .

REMARK.—An irrational syllable is one which is not an exact multiple of the standard unit. Feet containing such quantities are called irrational.

**732. Resolution and Contraction.**—In some verses, two short syllables may be used instead of a long (Resolution), or a long instead of two short (Contraction).

Resolution   Contraction,  








**733. Feet.**—As elements of musical strains, Metres are called Bars. As elements of verses, they are called Feet.

As musical strains are composed of equal bars, so verses are composed of equal feet, marked as in music, thus | .








REMARK.—Theoretically, the number of metres is unrestricted; practically, only those metres are important that serve to embody the principal rhythms.

**734. Names of the Feet.**—The feet in use are the following :

#### Feet of Three Times.

Trochee,	—◡	lēgīt.	 
Iambus,	◡—	lēgunt.	 
Tribrach,	◡◡◡	lēgītō.	  

#### Feet of Four Times.

Dactyl,	—◡◡	lēgīmūs.	 
Anapaest,	◡◡—	lēgērent.	 
Spondee,	— —	lēgī.	 
Proceleusmaticus,	◡◡◡◡	relegitur.	   

## Feet of Five Times.

<b>Cretic,</b>	— ∪ —	lëgërint.	
<b>First Paeōn,</b>	— ∪ ∪ ∪	lëgëritīs.	
<b>Fourth Paeōn,</b>	∪ ∪ ∪ —	lëgimīnī.	
<b>Bacchius,</b>	∪ — —	lëgëbant.	
<b>Antibacchius,</b>	— — ∪	lëgistīs.	

## Feet of Six Times.

<b>Iōnicus ā māiōre,</b>	— — ∪ ∪	collëgimūs.	
<b>Iōnicus ā minōre,</b>	∪ ∪ — —	rëlëgëbant.	
<b>Choriambus,</b>	— ∪ ∪ —	collëgërant.	
<b>Ditrochee,</b>	— ∪ — ∪	colliguntūr.	
<b>Diāmbus,</b>	∪ — ∪ —	lëgāmīnī.	

REMARKS.—I. Other feet are put down in Latin Grammars, but they do not occur in Latin verse, if in any, such as :

<b>Pyrrhic,</b>	∪ ∪	lëgit.	<b>Antispast,</b>	∪ — — ∪	lëgëbārīs.
<b>First Epitrite,</b>	∪ — — —	rëlëgërunť.	<b>Dispondee,</b>	— — — —	sëlëgërunť.
<b>Second Epitrite,</b>	— ∪ — —	ëligëbant.	<b>Second Paeōn,</b>	∪ — ∪ ∪	lëgentībūs.
<b>Third Epitrite,</b>	— — ∪ —	sëlëgërint.	<b>Third Paeōn,</b>	∪ ∪ — ∪	lëgitôtë.
<b>Fourth Epitrite,</b>	— — — ∪	collëgistīs.	<b>Molossus,</b>	— — —	lëgërunť.

2. For *Irrational Feet* see 743 and 744.

**735. Ascending and Descending Rhythms.**—Rhythms are divided into ascending and descending. If the Thesis follows, the Rhythm is called *ascending* ; if it precedes, *descending*. So the Trochee has a descending, the Iambus an ascending, rhythm.

**736. Names of Rhythms.**—Rhythms are commonly called after their principal metrical representative. So the Trochaic Rhythm, the Anapaestic Rhythm, the Iambic Rhythm, the Dactylic Rhythm, the Ionic Rhythm.

**737. Classes of Rhythms.**—In Latin, the musical element

of versification is subordinate, and the principles of Greek rhythm have but a limited application.

The Greek classes are based on the relation of Thesis to Arsis.

I. *Equal Class*, in which the Thesis is equal to the Arsis (*γένος ἴσον*). This may be called the Dactylico-Anapaestic class.

II. *Unequal Class*, in which the Thesis is double of the Arsis (*γένος διπλάσιον*). This may be called the Trochaico-Iambic class.

III. *Quinquepartite or Paeonian Class (Five-eighths class)*, of which the Cretic and Bacchius are the chief representatives (*γένος μινιόλιον*).

**738. Rhythmical Series.**—A Rhythmical Series is an uninterrupted succession of rhythmical feet, and takes its name from the number of feet that compose it.

Dipody = two feet.

Pentapody = five feet.

Tripody = three feet.

Hexapody = six feet.

Tetrapody = four feet.

REMARKS. — 1. The Dipody is the ordinary unit of measure (-meter) in Trochaic, Iambic, and Anapaestic verse. In these rhythms a monometer contains two feet, a dimeter four, a trimeter six, a tetrameter eight.

2. The single foot is the ordinary unit of measure (-meter) in Dactylic verse. Thus, a verse of one Dactyl is called a Monometer; of two, a Dimeter; of three, a Trimeter; of four, a Tetrameter; of five, a Pentameter; of six, a Hexameter.

3. There are limits to the extension of series. Four feet (in Greek, five) is the limit of the Dactylic and Anapaestic, six of the Trochaic and Iambic series. All beyond these are compounds.

**739. The Anacrustic Scheme.**—Ancient Metric discussed the colon, whether in Ascending or Descending Rhythm, according to the feet of which it was composed. Most modern critics, since the time of BESTLEY, regard the first Arsis in an ascending rhythm as taking the place of an upward beat in music (called by HERMANN *Anacrūsis*; i. e., *upward stroke, signal-beat*), whereby all rhythms become descending.

In this way the Iambus is regarded as an Anacrustic Trochee, the Anapaest as an Anacrustic Dactyl, the Iōnicus a minōre as an Anacrustic Iōnicus ā māiōre. The sign of the Anacrūsis is :

**740. Equality of the Feet.**—Every rhythmical series is composed of equal parts. To restore this equality, when it is violated by language, there are four methods :

1. *Syllaba Anceps.*

3. *Protraction.*

2. *Catalēxis.*

4. *Correption.*



**741. *Syllaba Anceps.***—The final syllable of an independent series or verse may be short or long indifferently. It may be short when the metre demands a long; long when the metre demands a short. Such a syllable is called a *Syllaba Anceps*.

**742. *Catalēxis and Pause.***—A complete series is called *Acatalectic*; an incomplete series is called *Catalectic*. A series or verse is said to be *Catalectic in syllabam, in dissyllabum, in trisyllabum*, according to the number of syllables in the catalectic foot.

⌒ ⌒ ⌒ | ⌒ ⌒ ⌒ | ⌒ *Trimeter dactylicus catalēcticus in syllabam.*

⌒ ⌒ ⌒ | ⌒ ⌒ ⌒ | ⌒ ⌒ *Trimeter dactylicus catalēcticus in dissyllabum.*

The time is made up by *Pause*.

The omission of one mora is marked  $\wedge$ ; of two  $\overline{\wedge}$

**743. *Protraction and Syncopé.***—*Protraction* ( $\tau\omicron\nu\acute{\eta}$ ) consists in drawing out a long syllable beyond its normal quantity. It occurs in the body of a verse, and serves to make up for the omission of one or more *Arses*, which omission is called *Syncopé*.

⌒ = 3 =  $\text{♩}$ . (triseme long); ⌒ = 4 =  $\text{♩}$  (tetraseme long).

**744. *Correption.***—*Correption* is the shortening of a syllable to suit the measure.

1. So a long syllable sometimes takes the place of a short, and is marked  $>$ ; similarly, two short syllables often seem to take the place of one, and may be marked  $\sim$ .

2. When a *Dactyl* is used as a substitute for a *Trochee*, the approximate value is often  $1\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2} + 1 = 3 = \text{♩}$ ; which may be indicated by  $\sim\sim$  (cyclic *Dactyl*).

The following line illustrates all the points mentioned :

$\begin{array}{ccccccc} a & & b & & c & & b & & c & & b & & d & e \\ - > & | & \sim\sim & | & \text{⌒} \parallel & | & \sim\sim & | & \text{⌒} \parallel & | & \sim\sim & | & -\sim & | & -\wedge \\ \text{Nūllam} & | & \text{Vāre sa-} & | & \text{crā} & \parallel & \text{vīte pri-} & | & \text{us} & \parallel & \text{sēveris} & | & \text{arbo} & | & \text{-rem.} \end{array}$ —HOR.

(a) Irrational trochee (irrational long). (b) Cyclic dactyl. (c) Syncopé and Protraction (triseme long). (d) *Syllaba anceps*. (e) *Catalēxis*.

REMARK.—Under this head, notice the frequent use of the irrational long in Anacrusis.

**745. Verse.**—A Simple Rhythm is one that consists of a simple series; a Compound Rhythm is one that consists of two or more series.

A Verse is a simple or compound rhythmical series, which forms a distinct and separate unit. The end of a verse is marked

1. By closing with a full word. Two verses cannot divide a word between them, except very rarely by Synapheia (728).
2. By the *Syllaba Anceps*, which can stand unconditionally.
3. By the Hiatus, *i. e.*, the verse may end with a vowel, though the next verse begin with one. Occasionally such verses are joined by Synapheia (V., A., I. 332-3, 448-9; II. 745-6).

**746. Methods of Combining Verses.**—The same verse may be repeated throughout without recurring groups (Stichic Composition); such as the Septenarius and Octonarius, the Trochaic Septenarius, the Heroic Hexameter, the Iambic Senarius (Trimeter). Or the same verse or different verses may be grouped in pairs (distichs), triplets (tristichs), fours (tetrastichs). Beyond these simple stanzas Latin versification seldom ventured.

Larger groups of series are called Systems.

Larger groups of verses are called Strophes, a name sometimes attached to the Horatian stanzas.

**747. Cantica and Diverbia.**—In the Drama there is a broad division between that part of the play which was simply spoken, and is called *Diverbium*, comprising the scenes in the Iambic Senarius, and that part which was either sung or recited to a musical accompaniment called *Canticum*. The *Canticum* is subdivided into: (1) Those scenes which were merely *recited* to the accompaniment of the flute, and were written in Trochaic and Iambic Septenarii and Iambic Octonarii; and (2) those parts which were written in varying measures (*mutatis modis cantica*) and sung. The latter division is also called "*Cantica* in the narrow sense," and may be divided into monologues, dialogues, etc. The greatest variety of measures is found in the monologues.

**748. Union of Language with Rhythm.**—When embodied

in language, rhythm has to deal with rhythmical groups already in existence. Every full word is a rhythmical group with its accent, is a metrical group with its long or short syllables, is a word-foot. Ictus sometimes conflicts with accent; the unity of the verse-foot breaks up the unity of the word-foot.

**749. Conflict of Ictus and Accent.**—In ordinary Latin verse, at least according to modern pronunciation, the Ictus overrides the Accent; this conflict seems, however, to have been avoided in the second half of the Dactylic Hexameter, and the Ictus made to coincide with the Accent.

NOTE.—The extent to which this conflict was felt by the Romans themselves is a matter of uncertainty, but it seems likely that the dominant accent of a word was not so sharp as in modern pronunciation, and consequently the conflict would not be serious.

**750. Conflict of Word-foot and Verse-foot.**—The conflict of word-foot and verse-foot gives rise to Caesura. Caesura means an incision produced by the end of a word in the middle of a verse-foot, and is marked †.

This incision serves as a pause, partly to rest the voice for a more vigorous effort, partly to prevent monotony by distributing the masses of the verse.

REMARKS.—1. So in the Heroic Hexameter the great Caesura falls *before* the middle of the verse, to give the voice strength for the first Arsis of the second half.

— — — | — — — | — — — | — — — | — — —  
 Ūna salūs victīs † nūllam spērāre salūtem.—VERG.

It does not occur *at* the middle, as in that case the verse would become monotonous.

2. In many treatises any incision in a verse is called a Caesura.

**751. Varieties of Caesura.**—Caesurae have different names to show their position in the foot, as follows:

*Sēmīternāria*, after the third half foot, *i.e.*, in the second foot.

*Sēmiquīnāria*, after the fifth half foot, *i.e.*, in the third foot.

*Sēmīseptēnāria*, after the seventh half foot, *i.e.*, in the fourth foot.

*Sēmīnovēnāria*, after the ninth half foot, *i.e.*, in the fifth foot.

REMARK.—These Caesurae are frequently called after their Greek names, thus: *trihemimeral*, *penthemimeral*, *hepthemimeral*, *etc.*

**752. Masculine and Feminine Caesurae.**—In trisyllabic metres, when the end of the word within the verse-foot falls on a Thesis, it is called a Masculine Caesura; when on an Arsis, a Feminine Caesura.

Ūna sa | lūs <sup>a</sup> | vi | ctis <sup>b</sup> | nūl | lam <sup>c</sup> | spē | rāre <sup>d</sup> | sa | lūtem.

*a, b, c, are Masculine Caesurae; d, a Feminine Caesura.*

Especially noteworthy is the Feminine Caesura of the third foot in the Hexameter, called the Third Trochee (783, R. 2).

**753. Diaeresis.**—When verse-foot and word-foot coincide, Diaeresis arises, marked ||

Īte domum saturae | venit || Hesperus || Ite capellae.—VERG.

REMARKS.—1. Diaeresis, like Caesura, serves to distribute the masses of the verse and prevent monotony. What is Caesura in an ascending rhythm becomes Diaeresis as soon as the rhythm is treated anaeristically.

Suis | et i | psa | Rō | ma | vi | ribus | ruit. Iambic Trimeter.

Su : is et || ipsa || Rōma || vīri | bus | ru | it. Troch. Trimeter Catal., with Anacrusis.

2. Diaeresis at the end of the fourth foot of a Hexameter is called Bucolic Caesura, and has a special effect (783, R. 3).

**754. Recitation.**—When the word-foot runs over into the next verse-foot, a more energetic recitation is required, in order to preserve the sense, and hence the multiplication of Caesurae lends vigour to the verse.

REMARK.—The ordinary mode of scanning, or singing out the elements of a verse, without reference to signification, cannot be too strongly condemned, as,

Unasa, lusvic, tisanul, lamspe, raresa, lutem!

### Numerus Italicus.

**755.** The oldest remains of Italian poetry are found in some fragments of ritualistic and sacred songs, and seem to have had no regard to quantity. No definite theory can be formed of this so-called *Numerus Italicus* in which they were composed, but they seem to have been in series of four Theses, usually united in pairs or triplets, but sometimes separate. An example is the prayer to Mars, from CATO, *Agr.*, 141.

Mārs pāter tē prēcor | quāesōque ūti sīs | vōlēns propitiūs  
Mihī dōmō | fāmiliāeque nōstrāe, etc.

## Saturnian Verse.

**756.** The Saturnian verse is an old Italian rhythm which occurs in the earlier monuments of Latin literature. It divides itself into two parts, with three Theses in each ; but the exact metrical composition has been a matter of much dispute, the remains not being sufficient to admit of any dogmatism. The two principal theories are :

1. *The Quantitative Theory.*—The Saturnian is a six-foot verse with Anacrusis, and a Caesura after the third Arsis, or more rarely after the third Thesis.

**Dabunt malum Metelli | Naevio poetae.  
Cornélius Lūcius | Scipiō Barbātus.  
Quōius fōrma virtūtei | parīsumā fūit.  
Eōrum sectām sequōntur | mūlti mōrtālēs.**

NOTES.—1. The Thesis is formed by a long or two shorts ; the Arsis by a short, a long, or two shorts (not immediately before the Caesura). The Arsis may be wholly suppressed, most often the second Arsis of the second hemistich. Short syllables under the Ictus may be scanned long. Hiatus occurs everywhere, but usually in Caesura.

2. This theory is held by many scholars, but with various modifications. Thus, some do not accept the lengthening of the short syllables, others would scan by protraction four feet in each half verse, etc.

**Dabunt malum Metelli | Naevio poetae, etc.**

2. *The Accentual Theory.*—The Saturnian verse falls into two halves, the first of which has three Theses, the second usually three, sometimes two, in which case there is usually Anacrusis in the second hemistich. Quantity is not considered.

**Dabunt malum Metelli | Naevio poetae.  
Quōius fōrma virtūtei | parīsuma fūit.**

NOTES.—1. Two accented syllables are regularly divided by a single unaccented syllable, except that between the second and third there are always two. Hiatus allowed only at Caesura.

2. A modification of this theory would scan

**Dabunt malum Metelli | Naevio poetae.**

3. Very recently a modification of the Accentual Theory has been proposed, which has much in its favor :

(a) The accent must fall on the beginning of each line, though it may be a secondary accent ; the first hemistich has three, the second has but two Theses.

(b) The first hemistich has normally seven syllables, the second six ; but an extra short syllable may be admitted where it would be wholly or partially suppressed in current pronunciation.

(c) After the first two feet there is an alternation between words accented on the first and those accented on the second syllable.

(d) A final short vowel is elided, otherwise semi-hiatus is the rule ; but there may be full Hiatus at the Caesura.

**Dabunt malum Metelli | Naevio poetae.  
Prīm(a) incēdit Céris | Prosérpina puer.**



## Iambic Rhythms.

**757.** The Iambic Rhythm is an ascending rhythm, in which the Thesis is double of the Arsis. It is represented

By the Iambus :  $\cup \text{—}$  ;  
 By the Tribrach :  $\cup \cup \cup$  ;  
 By the Spondee :  $\text{—} \text{—}$  ;  
 By the Dactyl :  $\text{—} \cup \cup$  ;  
 By the Anapaest :  $\cup \cup \text{—}$  ; and  
 By the Proceleusmaticus :  $\cup \cup \cup \cup$ .

REMARK.—The Spondee, Dactyl, Anapaest, and Proceleusmaticus are all irrational, and are consequently marked on the schemes thus:  $> \text{—}$ ,  $> \cup \cup$ ,  $\cup \text{—}$ ,  $\cup \cup \cup$  ; see 744.

**758.** *Iambic Octōnārius (Tetrameter Acatalectic).*

Iūss(I) ádparārī prándium || amf-

c(a) expectat mē, sciō, PL.,

Men., 599.

$> \text{—} \cup \cup \text{—} > \text{—} \cup \cup \cup || \cup \text{—} > \text{—} > \text{—} \cup \cup \text{—}$

Hic fñis est iámbe salvē † víndi-

cis doctōr mali, SERVIUS.

$> \text{—} \cup \cup \text{—} \cup \text{—} \cup \cup \text{—} > \text{—} \cup \cup \text{—} > \text{—} \cup \cup \text{—}$

*Anacrustic Scheme :*

$\cup : \text{—} (>) | \text{—} \cup | \text{—} (>) | \text{—} \cup | \text{—} (>) | \text{—} \cup | \text{—} \cup | \text{—} \Lambda$

NOTE. This verse is predominantly a comic verse, occurring most frequently in TERENCE, who shows five hundred lines, while PLAUTUS shows but three hundred. The substitutions are the same as in the Senarius (761, s. 1). There are two varieties :

(a) That which is divided into two equal halves by Dieresis at the end of the fourth foot. In this case the fourth foot as well as the eighth has all the privileges of the final foot of the Senarius (Hiatus, Syllaba Ancepe), and conforms also to its rules, so that the line is practically a distich of two Quaternarii ; but Hiatus after the fourth foot is denied for TERENCE.

(b) That which is divided into two unequal halves by a Cæsura after the fifth Arsis. Here the rules of the final foot apply only to the eighth, and the fourth may be a Spondee. The principle which governs the choice of words after the *semiquintaria* in the Senarius applies here after the dividing Cæsura. The Hiatus comes under the general rules. From the earliest period there is a tendency to keep the even feet pure. This variety is preferred by TERENCE to the former. Examples of the two forms are :

Ō Trōia, Ō patria, Ō Pergamum, Ō Priame, periistī senex, PLAUT.

Is porrō m(ē) autem verberāt incursat pūgnis calcibus, PLAUT.

Facile omnēs quom valēmus rēcta cōsilia aegrōtis damus, TER.

**759.** *Iambic Septēnārius (Tetrameter Catalectic).*

Remitte palliū mihi || meūm quod

involāsti, CAT.

$\cup \text{—} \cup \cup \text{—} \cup \text{—} || \cup \text{—} \cup \cup \text{—} \cup \text{—} \Lambda$

### Anacrustic Scheme :

[illegible]

NOTES.—1. This verse is confined principally to PLAUTUS and TERENCE ; it is to be regarded as a compound of Dimeter + Dimeter Catalectic : hence regular Diæresis after the fourth foot, which is treated as a final foot. The same rules, in regard to the various word-feet allowable, apply here as in the case of the Senarius (761, n. 6). Substitutions are allowable in every foot except in the fourth, when followed by a Diæresis.

With Syllaba Anceps :

**Sī abdūxerīs cēlābitūr || itidem ut cēlāta adhūc est, PLAUT.**

With Hiatus :

Sed sī tibi vigintī minae || argentī prōferuntur, PLAUT.

2. Exceptionally in *PLAUTUS*, more often in *TERENCE*, the line is cut by *Cæsura* after the fifth *Arsis*. In this case the fourth foot has no exceptional laws except that if the seventh foot is not pure the fourth should be, though this is not absolutely necessary.

**760.** *The Iambic Sēnārius (a Stichic measure).* This is an imitation of the Iambic Trimeter of the Greeks, but differs from it in that it is a line of six separate feet and not of three dipodies. In the early Latin there is no distinction between the odd and even feet, such as prevails in the Greek Trimeter, but the same substitutions were allowable in the one as in the other. This distinction is regained in HORACE and SENECA, who follow the Greek treatment closely, and with whom the line may be with some degree of justice called the Iambic Trimeter, but it is very doubtful whether the Roman felt the Iambic Trimeter as did the Greek. In both Senarius and Trimeter the *last foot is always pure.*

761. The Early Use (*Sēnārius*).

Any substitution is allowed in any foot except the last.

Quamvis sermōnēs possunt longi

téxier, PL., *Trin.*, 797.

$$| \psi_1 \rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} (| \uparrow \downarrow \rangle + | \downarrow \uparrow \rangle)$$

Qui scire possis † aut ingenium

nōscere, TER., *And.*, 53.

[illegible]

S(i) uxōris † propter amōrem † nō-

lit dúcere, TER., *And.*, 155.

$$\langle \mathcal{L} | \mathcal{L} \rangle = \langle \mathcal{M} | \mathcal{L} \rangle = \langle \mathcal{L} | \mathcal{M} \rangle = \langle \mathcal{M} | \mathcal{M} \rangle = 0$$

**Dī fōrtūnābunt+vōstra cōnsili(a).**

Íta volð, PL., *Trin.*, 576.

$$> \angle | > - | > \angle | \cup - | \cup \cup \cup | \cup -$$

Eī r(eī) óperam dare tē†fúerat ali-

quant(ō) aéquius, PL., *Trin.*,

119.

> 00 | > 00 | > 00 | 000 | > 4 | 0 -

NOTES.—1. In the Iambic measure two shorts at the end of a polysyllabic word cannot stand in either Thesis or Arsis ; hence such feet as **genēra, ma | teriā**, would not be allowable. But a Dactyl is sometimes found in the first foot (TER., *Eun.*, 348). The two shorts of a Thesis cannot be divided between two words, when the second word is a polysyllable with the accent on the second syllable ; hence **finġit amōrem** is

faulty. The two shorts of an Arsis should not be divided between two words if the first short ends a word ; but there are sundry exceptions ; especially the case where two words are closely connected, as, for instance, a preposition and its case ; **propter amōrem**.

2. The most frequent Cæsura is the *sēniquindāria*. Next comes the *sēmisplēnāria*, which is usually accompanied by the *sēmitemnāria* or by Dieresis after second foot. Examples above.

3. Elision is more frequent in the Iambic Senarius than in the Dactylic Hexameter, and occurs especially before the first and fifth Theses ; also not unfrequently in the fourth foot. The proportion of elision varies between **TERENCE** (four elisions in every three verses) and **HORACE** (one in five stichic verses, and one in seven in distichs).

4. Semi-hiatus (720), also called *Gracchianus* or *Lægitimus*, is very common both in Thesis and Arsis ; Hiatus is also admitted at a change of speaker ; whether it is admissible before proper names, foreign words, and in the principal Cæsura, is still a matter of dispute.

5. If the line is divided by the *sēniquindāria* Cæsura, and the fifth foot is formed by a single word, the second half of the third foot, together with the fourth, may be formed by a single word only when that is a Cretic or a Fourth Pæon ; as, **filius bonān fidē dēpinxtī probē** (Pl., *Most.*, 670). Thus **dēpinxtī verbis probē** would not be allowable for **verbis dēpinxtī probē** (Pl., *Poen.*, 1114).

6. To close the line with two Iambic feet was not allowable, except as follows : (1) When the line ends with a word of four syllables or more. (2) When the line ends with a Cretic. (3) When the line ends with an Iambic word preceded by an anapaest or Fourth Pæon. (4) When a change of person precedes the sixth foot. (5) When elision occurs in the fifth or sixth foot.

## 762. The Later Use (*Trimeter*).

<b>Sūs et ipsa † Rōma vīribūs ruit</b>	○	○	○	—		○	○	○	—		○	○	○	—
<b>Heu mē per urbem † nām pudet</b>														
<b>tantī mali</b>														
<b>Dēripere lūnam † vōcibus possīm</b>														
<b>mels</b>														
<b>Infāmis Helenae † Cāstor offēnsus</b>														
<b>vicem</b>														
<b>Optāt quiētem † Pélolis infidī pater</b>														
<b>Alitibus atque † cánibus homici-</b>														
<b>d(am) Héctorem</b>														
<b>Vectābor humeris † tūc eg(o) ini-</b>														
<b>miols eques</b>														
<b>Pavidūmque lepor(em) et † ādve-</b>														
<b>nam laqueō gruem, HOR.</b>														

*Anacrustic Scheme :*      ○ : — ○ | — > | — ○ | — > | — ○ | — ^

NOTES. 1. The Iambic Trimeter, when kept pure, has a rapid aggressive movement. Hence, it is thus used in lampoons and invectives. It admits the Spondee in the odd places (first, third, fifth feet); the Tribach in any but the last, though in Horace; it is excluded from the fifth foot; the Dactyl in the first and third. The Anapaest is rare. The Proceleusmaticus occurs only in **SENECA** and **TERENTIUS**. When carefully handled, the closing part of the verse is kept light, so as to preserve the character. The

**Ast** égo vicissim rfserō, HOR. > 0 0 0 — > 4 0 —

*Anacrustic Scheme :*

$$\underset{\cup}{\text{>}} : - \underset{\cup}{\text{>}} | - \underset{\cup}{\text{>}} | - \cup | - \wedge$$

NOTE.—This verse is constructed according to the principles which govern the Senarius and Octonarius. It is rare in systems until the time of SENECA, and is usually employed as a Clausula in connection with Octonarii and Septenarii (PLAUTUS, TERENCE), Senarii (HORACE), or Dactylic Hexameter (HORACE).

**766. Iambic Ternārius (Dimeter Catalectic).**

**Id répperí i(am) exéplum** > ∪ — > ∪ — or > : ∪ ∪ ∪ > ∪ — ∪

NOTE. This verse is found mainly in PLAUTUS and TERENCE, and used as a Clausula to Bacchiac Tetrameters (PLAUTUS), Iambic Septenarii (PLAUTUS); but twice in TERENCE (*And.*, 485; *Ilec.*, 731). It is found in systems first in PETRONIUS.

**767. The Iambic Tripody Catalectic and the Dipody Acatalectic** are found here and there.

**Inóps amātor, Trin.**, 256.

**Bonu(s) síť bonís, B.**, 660.

**Trochaic Rhythms.**

**768. The Trochaic Rhythm** is a descending rhythm, in which the Thesis is double of the Arsis. It is represented,

By the Trochee : ∪ ∪ ;

By the Tribrach : ∪ ∪ ∪ ;

By the Spondee : ∪ — ;

By the Anapaest : ∪ ∪ — ;

By the Dactyl : ∪ ∪ ∪ .

By the Proceleusmaticus : ∪ ∪ ∪ ∪ .

REMARK.—The Spondee, Anapaest, Dactyl, and Proceleusmaticus are all irrational and are accordingly measured — >, ∪ ∪ ∪, ∪ ∪ or — ∪, ∪ ∪ ∪ ; see 744.

**769. Trochaic Octōnārius (Tetrameter Acatalectic).**

*Scheme :* ∪ > — ∪ > ∪ > — ∪ ∪ ∪ ∪ ∪ ∪ ∪ ∪

**Párce iam camoéna vāti || párcē iam sacró furōrī.**—SERVIUS.

**Dáte viam quā fúgere liceat, | fácite, tōtae pláteae pateant,** PL., *Aul.*, 407.

NOTE. This verse belongs to the cantica of early Comedy. It is properly a compound of two quaternarii. Hence Hiatus and Syllaba Anceps are admitted in the Diæresis. A fourth or sixth Thesis, formed by the last syllable of a word forming or ending in a Spondee or Anapaest, was avoided, as was also a monosyllabic close. The Substitutions were allowed in all feet except the eighth, where the Tribrach is rare.

**770. Trochaic Septēnārius (Tetrameter Catalectic).**

*Scheme :* ∪ > — ∪ > ∪ > — ∪ ∪ ∪ ∪ ∪ ∪ ∪



**Crās amet qui nūmqu(am) amāvit || quīqu(e) amāvit crās amet.**—PERVIG.  
VEN.

**Tū m(ē) amōris māgi' qu(am) honōris || sērvāvisti grātiā.**—ENNIUS.

**Vāpulār(e) ego tē vehementer || iūbeō: nē mē tērritēs.**—PLAUT.

NOTES.—1. This is usually divided by a Diæresis after the fourth Arsis into two halves, with the license of a closing verse before the Diæresis; this is often supported by Diæresis after the second foot. Not unfrequently the line is divided by Cæsura after the fourth Thesis, which may in this case be Anceps or have Hiatus, though not in TERENCE; but other critics refuse to admit such a division, and prefer Diæresis after the fifth foot. The substitutions are allowable in any foot except the seventh, which is regularly kept pure, though occasionally in early Latin a Tribrach or a Dactyl occurs even here. But the Dactyl is rare in the fourth foot.

2. The rule for the words allowable after the *semiquinarius* Cæsura in the Senarius (761, N. 5) apply here after the Diæresis, with the necessary modifications; that is, the second hemistich cannot be formed by a word occupying the fifth and the Thesis of the sixth foot, followed by a word occupying the two succeeding half feet, unless the first word is a Cretic or a Fourth Pæon.

3. In regard to the close the same rules apply as in the case of the Iambic Senarius (761, N. 6); in regard to the fourth and sixth Theses the rules are the same as for the Octonarius (769, N.).

4. The strict Septenarius of the later poets keeps the odd feet pure, and rigidly observes the Diæresis.

### 771. *Trochaic Tetrameter Claudus.*

**Hūc Cerēs, cibī ministra, frūgibus suis**

**pórcet,** VARRO.

— — — — —

NOTE.—This verse is found only in the *Menippean Satires* of VARRO, and is formed, like the Iambic Senarius Claudus, by reversing the last two quantities.

### 772. *Trochaic Quaternarius with Anacrūsis.*

**Si fractus illābātur orbis,** HOR. — — — — —

NOTE.—This occurs only in the *Alcaic Strophe* of HORACE.

### 773. *Trochaic Ternarius (Dimeter Catalectic).*

**Réspice vērō Théspriō,** PL., *Ep.*, 3. — — — — —

**Nón ebur nequ(e) aúreum,** HOR. — — — — —

NOTE.—An uncommon measure, confined mainly to early poetry and to HORACE; it is used as a Clausula between Tetrameters (PLAUTUS) and Iambic Senarii Catalectic (HORACE), or in series. The third foot was kept pure; also the others in the strict measure.

### 774. *The Trochaic Tripody Acatalectic (Ithyphallic).*

**Qu(om) úsus est ut púdeat,** PLAUT., — — — — —

NOTE.—This is rare, and appears only in early Latin and as a Clausula, usually with Cretics. Substitutions were allowable in every foot.

775. *Trochaic Tripody Catalectic.*

Êheu, qu(am) égo malís || pérdidí modís,

PL., *Ps.*, 259.

— > ∪ ∪ ∪ — || — ∪ ∪ ∪ —

NOTE. This is found occasionally in early Latin; usually two at a time, otherwise as a Clausula. When the first word is a Cretic the line may end in two Iambi.

776. *Trochaic Dipody (Monometer).*

Nímis inépta's, PL., *Rud.*, 681.

— ∪ ∪ — >

NOTE. This is found occasionally as a Clausula with Cretic Tetrameters.

## Anapaestic Rhythms.

777. The Anapaestic Rhythm is an ascending rhythm, in which the Thesis is to the Arsis as 2 to 2. It is represented,

By the Anapaest : ∪ ∪ —;

By the Spondee : — —;

By the Dactyl : — ∪ ∪;

By the Proceleusmaticus : ∪ ∪ ∪ ∪.

NOTES. 1. The Anapaestic measure is not uncommon in the Cantica of PLAUTUS; but it is the metre most subject to license of all the early metres. Notice especially the operation of the Iambic Law (716, 717); the common occurrence of Synizesis, of Diastolé, and less often of Syncopé, etc.

2. Strict Anapaestic lines after the model of the Greek are found only in VARRO, SENECA, and later authors.

778. *Anapaestic Octônārius (Tetrameter Acatalectic), and Anapaestic Septēnārius (Tetrameter Catalectic).*

Hostībūs victís, civībūs salvís || rē plā-

cidā, pācībūs pérfectís, *Pers.*, 753.

Septúmās ess(e) aedis ā portā † || ub(i)

ill(e) hábitat lēnō quoi iussit, *Ps.*, 597.

Ait illam miseram, crúciār(I) et lacru-

mántem(sē)adffictāre, PL., *M. G.*, 1032.

Erit ét tib(i) exoptāt(um) óbtinget || bo-

n(um) hab(e) ánimum nē formídā, PL.,

*M. G.*, 1011.

NOTES. 1. These have regularly the Dieresis after the fourth foot, dividing the line into Quaternarii. Before the Dieresis, the licenses of a closing foot (Hiatus and Syllaba anceps) are occasionally found.

2. In the Septenarius the seventh Thesis may be resolved, but the resolution of the eighth in the Octonarius is avoided.

779. *Anapaestic Trimeter Catalectic.*

Perspiciō nihili meām vōs grātīām fácere,

PL., *Curc.*, 155.

— ∪ ∪ — ∪ ∪ — — — — ∪ ∪ — ^

NOTE. This verse is very rare, and is denied by some critics; it has the same treatment as the Septenarius.

**780. Anapaestic Quaternārius (Dimeter Acatalectic).**

Veniént annis    saecúla sēris	υ υ ˘ — — — υ — —
Quibus Ōceanus    vincúla rērum	υ υ ˘ υ υ — — υ — —
Laxét et ingēns    pateát tellūs	— υ υ — — υ υ ˘ — —
Tēthýsque novós    dētégat orbēs	— ˘ υ υ — — — υ — —
Nec sít terris    últíma Thūlē.—SEN. TRAG.	— ˘ — — — — υ — —

NOTE.—This verse avoids resolution of the fourth Thesis: Syllaba Anceps and Hiatus are rare.

**781. Anapaestic Dimeter Catalectic (Paroemiac).**

Volucér pede corpore púlcher	υ υ ˘ υ υ — υ υ ˘ υ
Lingúá catus óre canórus	— ˘ υ υ — υ υ ˘ υ
Vērúm memoráre magís quam	— ˘ υ υ — υ υ ˘ υ
Fūctúm laudáre decébit.—AUSON.	— ˘ — — — υ υ ˘ υ

NOTES.—1. This verse is not common except as the close of a system of Anapaestic Acatalectic Dimeters. It allows in early Latin resolution of the third Thesis.

2. Latin Anapaests, as found in later writers, are mere metrical imitations of the Greek Anapaests, and do not correspond to their original in contents. The Greek Anapaest was an anacrusic dactylic measure or march (in  $\frac{1}{2}$  time). Hence the use of Pause to bring out the four bars.

Paroemiacus: *Anacrusic Scheme.*

Volucer pede corpore pulcher	υ υ : — υ υ   — υ υ   — —   —
	Λ

Dimeter Acatalectic: *Anacrusic Scheme.*

Quibus Ōceanus vincula rērum	υ υ : — υ υ   — —   υ υ —   —
------------------------------	-------------------------------

The Arses of the last feet are supplied by the Anacrusis of the following verse.

**782. Anapaestic Dipody (Monometer Acatalectic).**

Omné parátúrst, PL., <i>Min.</i> , 365	— υ υ — ˘
--	-----------

NOTE.—This verse is found in anapaestic systems between Anapaestic Dimeters.

**Dactylic Rhythms.**

**783.** The Dactylic Rhythm is a descending rhythm, in which the Thesis is equal to the Arsis ( $2 = 2$ ).

The Dactylic Rhythm is represented by the Dactyl: ˘ υ υ.  
Often, also, by the Spondee: ˘ —.

**784. Dactylic (Heroic) Hexameter.**—The Heroic Hexameter is composed of two Dactylic tripodies, the second of which ends in a Spondee. Spondees may be substituted for the Dactyl in the first four feet; in the fifth foot, only when a special effect is to be produced. Such verses are called Spondaic. The longest Hexameter contains five Dactyls and one Spondee (or Trochee)—in all, seventeen syllables; the shortest in use, five Spondees and one Dactyl—in all, thirteen syllables.



In verses with several *Cæsurae*, the *sēmiseptēnāria* outranks the *sēmiquināria*, if it precedes a period, and the latter does not, or if it is perfect and the latter is imperfect (*i.e.*, formed by thesis or by elision); it also as a masculine *Cæsura* outranks the Third Trochee as a feminine. In other cases there may be doubt as to the principal *Cæsura*.

3. The Diæresis which is most carefully avoided is the one after the third foot, especially if that foot ends in a Spondee, and the verse is thereby split in half.

Examples are found occasionally, and if the regular *Cæsura* precedes, the verse is not positively faulty.

**His lacrimis vitam † damus † — et miserescimus ūltrō.**—VERG.

It is abominable when no other *Cæsura* proper is combined with it.

**Poeni † pervortentēs † omnia † circumcursant.**—ENNIUS.

On the other hand the Diæresis at the end of the fourth foot divides the verse into proportionate parts (sixteen and eight *morae*, or two to one), and gives a graceful trochaic movement to the hexameter. This is called the Bucolic *Cæsura*, and while common in Greek, is not so in Latin even in bucolic poetry. JUVENAL, however, is fond of it, showing one in every fifteen verses.

**Ite domum saturae | venit Hesperus ‖ ite capellae.**—VERG.

4. Verses without *Cæsura* are very rare; a few are found in ENNIUS (see No. 23) and LUCILIUS. HORACE uses one designedly in *A.P.*, 262.

5. Elision is found most often in VERGIL (one case in every two verses) and least often in LUCAN (leaving out ENNIUS and CLAUDIAN). CATULLUS, JUVENAL, HORACE, OVID stand about midway between these two extremes. It is very rare in the Thesis of the first foot, and is found oftenest in the following order: the Thesis of the second foot, the Arsis of the fourth, the Arsis of the first, the Thesis of the third.

6. Simple Hiatus is very rare in lines composed wholly of Latin words, except at the principal *Cæsura*; it is found after a final short syllable (excluding *-m*) but twice (*V.*, *Ec.*, II. 53; *A.*, I. 405); after a long monosyllable (omitting Interjections *o* and *ā*) but once (*V.*, *A.*, IV. 235). But before the principal *Cæsura*, or if the line contains a Greek word, examples are not very uncommon. VERGIL has altogether about forty cases; HORACE shows two cases (*S.*, I. 1, 108; *Epol.*, 13, 3); CATULLUS two in the Hexameter of the Elegiac Distich (66, 11; 107, 1); PROPERTIUS one (III. 7, 49).

7. Of Semi-hiatus VERGIL shows some ten examples at the close of the Dactyl, but all of Greek words except *A.*, III. 211; *Ec.*, 3, 79; there are occasional examples elsewhere, as in PROPERTIUS, HORACE, *etc.* There are also several examples of Semi-hiatus after a monosyllable in the first short of the Dactyl, as: CAT., xcvi. 1; *V.*, *A.*, VI. 507; HOR., *S.*, I. 9, 38. Hiatus after *num* occurs in HOR., *S.*, II. 2, 28.

8. VERGIL is fond of Diastolé, showing fifty-seven cases, all except three (*A.*, III. 464, 702; XII. 648) of syllables ending in a consonant; HORACE, in *Satires* and *Epistles*, has eleven, once only of a vowel (*S.*, II. 3, 22); CATULLUS, three; PROPERTIUS, three; TIBULLUS, four; MARTIAL (in the Distich), two; VERGIL also lengthens *que* sixteen times, but only when *que* is repeated in the verse, and before two consonants or a double consonant (except *A.*, III. 91); OVID exercises no such care.

9. A short syllable formed by a final short vowel remains short before two consonants, of which the second is not a liquid (mainly *sc*, *sp*, *st*), especially in the fifth foot, less often in the first. LUCILIUS, LUCRETIUS, and ENNIUS have numerous examples of this; VERGIL but one case (*A.*, XI. 309), except before *z*; HORACE has eight cases in the *Satires*; PROPERTIUS six; TIBULLUS two cases, one before *smaragdus*.

10. A Hexameter should close (*a*) with a disyllable preceded by a polysyllable of at least three syllables, or (*b*) with a trisyllable preceded by a word of at least two syllables. The preposition is proclitic to its case. Exceptions to this rule are common in early Latin, but decrease later. Thus ENNIUS shows fourteen per cent. of exceptional lines. In later times artistic reasons sometimes caused the employment even of a monosyllable at the end (see *exs.* 18, 19).

11. Spondaic lines are exceptional in ENNIUS and LUCRETIUS, more common in





The Elegiac Pentameter occurs only as a Clausula to the Heroic Hexameter, with which it forms the Elegiac Distich. Consequently the sense should not run into the following Hexameter (exceptions rare) :

**Saep(e) ego tentāvi cūrās dēpellere vīnō**

**At dolor in lacrimās || verterat omne merum, TIB.**

**Ingenium quondam fuerat pretiōsius aurō**

**At nunc barbariēs || grandis habēre nihil, Ov.**

**Pār erat inferior versus : risisse Cupidō**

**Dicitur atque ūnum || surripuisse pedem, Ov.**

**Saep(e) ego cum dominae dulcēs ā limine dūrō**

**Āgnōscō vōcēs || haec negat esse domī, TIB.**

NOTES.—1. In the first two feet of the Pentameter, which alone can suffer variation, the forms are as follows : ds, 46 per cent. ; dd, 24.5 per cent. ; ss, 16 per cent. ; sd, 13.5 per cent. CATULLUS, however, has ss, 34.5 per cent.

2. Elision is rare, especially in the second hemistich. When it occurs it is generally in the first Arsis or second Thesis, and usually affects a short vowel or **-m**. CATULLUS shows the greatest proportion of examples, OVID the smallest. Except in CATULLUS and LYGDAMUS there are fewer cases of Elision in the Pentameter than in the Hexameter.

3. Elision and Diastolé in the Dieresis are rare. CATULLUS especially, and PROPERTIUS occasionally, have Elision. PROPERTIUS and MARTIAL show each two cases of Diastolé (PROP., II. 8, 8 ; II. 24, 4 ; MART., IX. 101, 4 ; XIV. 77, 2).

4. A final short vowel before two consonants, one of which is a liquid or **s**, is lengthened twice in TIBULLUS, and remains short once in PROPERTIUS (TIB., I. 5, 28 ; I. 6, 34 ; PROP., IV. 4, 48).

5. Dialysis occurs in compounds of **solvō** and **volvō** ; as, CAT., 66, 74 ; TIB., I. 7, 2, etc.

6. In the strict handling of the Pentameter by OVID, the rule was that it should close with a dissyllable. So in his *Amores*, OVID shows no example of any other ending ; and in his *Tristia* the proportion is one in one hundred and forty lines. In earlier times, however, there was no especial avoidance of polysyllabic endings, though more are found in CATULLUS than in any other author. Peculiar is PROPERTIUS, who, while almost equalling CATULLUS in his disregard of the law of the dissyllabic ending in the first book, equals the *Tristia* of OVID in the observance of it in his fourth. With dissyllabic ending the prevailing forms of the second Hemistich are —○○, —○, ○—, and —○, ○—○, ○—, but TIBULLUS and OVID, and in less degree CATULLUS, employ quite often —○○—○, ○— and —, ○○, —○, ○—.

### 786. *Dactylic Tetrameter Acat. (metrum Alcmānium).*

**Nūnc decet aut viridī nitidūm caput**

— — — — — — — — — —

**Pāllida mōrs aequō pulsāt pede**

— — — — — — — — — —

**Vītāe sūmma brevis spem nōs vetat**

— — — — — — — — — —

This verse occurs mainly in combination with an *Ithyphallic* to form the *Greater Archilochian* verse ; occasionally in stichic composition in SENECA ; also in TER., *And.*, 625.

### 787. *Dactylic Tetrameter Cat. in Dissyllabum (Archilochium).*

**Aut Ephesōn bimarīsve Corīnθi**

— — — — — — — — — —

**Ō fortēs pēiōraque pāsī**

— — — — — — — — — —

**Mēnsōrēm cohibēt Archēta, Hor**

— — — — — — — — — —

NOTE.—This line, which only occurs in the *Alemanian System*, may also be looked upon as an Acatalectic Tetrameter with a spondaic close.

**788. Dactylic Trimeter Catalectic in Syllabam (Lesser Archilochian).**

Pálvis et úmbra sumús, HOR.

— — — — —

NOTE.—This line occurs mainly in the first three *Archilochian* Strophes.

**789. Dactylic Dimeter Catalectic in Dissyllabum (Adōnic).**

Térruit úrbem, HOR.

— — — — —

NOTE.—Though generally measured thus, this verse is properly logaædic, and will recur under that head (792). It occurs mainly in the *Sapphic* stanza, and at the close of series of *Sapphic Hendecasyllabics* in *SENECA*.

## Logaædic Rhythms.

**790.** The Logaædic Rhythm is a peculiar form of the Trochaic rhythm, in which the Arsis has a stronger secondary ictus than the ordinary Trochee.

Instead of the Trochee, the cyclic Dactyl or the irrational Trochee may be employed. This cyclic Dactyl is represented in morae by  $1\frac{1}{2}$ ,  $\frac{1}{2}$ , 1; in music, by  $\text{♩} = \frac{3}{16}, \frac{1}{16}, \frac{1}{8}$ .

When Dactyls are employed, the Trochee preceding is called a Basis, or *Tread*, commonly marked  $\times$ . If the basis is double, the second is almost always irrational in Latin poetry. Instead of the Trochee, an Iambus is sometimes prefixed. Anacrusis and Syncopé are also found.

REMARKS.—1. Logaædic comes from *λόγος*, *prose*, and *ᾠδή*, *song*, perhaps because the rhythms seem to vary as in prose.

2. Dactyls are usually, but not necessarily, employed.

### No Dactyl.

**791. Alcaic Enneasyllabic.**

Sí fractus illābātur orbis, HOR.

— : — — — — —

NOTE.—The Anacrusis should be long. HORACE shows no exceptions in the fourth book and very few in the first three. The regular Cæsura is the *semiquinaria*.

### One Dactyl.

**792. Adōnic.**

Térruit úrbem, HOR.

— — — — —

NOTE.—Elision is not allowed in this verse. As far as its formation is concerned, it should consist either of a dissyllable + a trisyllable, or the reverse. Proclitics and enclitics go with their principals.

793. *Aristophanic (Choriambic).*

Lýdia díc per ómnēs, HOR.

40 | 20 | 10 | 5

NOTE.—This verse occurs mainly in the lesser *Sapphic* Strophe of HORACE.

One Dactyl, with Basis.

794. *Pherecratēan.*

Nígrīs aéquora véntīs, HOR.

$$\frac{x}{1} > |40| - 1 = 39$$

NOTE.—This verse occurs in the fourth *Asclepiadæan* Strophe of HORACE; also in CATULLUS (XVII.) and the *Præpæa*. No Elision is allowed by HORACE, and there is no regular Cæsura.

795. *Glycônica*.

Ēmīrábitur ínsoléns, HOR.

$$\frac{x}{2} > |20| \quad 20| - \Delta$$

NOTE.—This occurs in the second, third, and fourth *Asclēpiadēan* strophes of HORACE; also in CATULLUS (xvii.) and the *Priāpēa*. There is generally the *sēmīternāria* Cæsura; occasionally instead of it a Second Trochee. Elision of long syllables is very rare in HORACE; Elision of a short before the Dactyl more often. HORACE also shows occasional liberties, such as Diastolé (*O.*, III. 24, 5), Dialysis (*O.*, I. 23, 4), and lines ending with monosyllables (*O.*, I. 3, 19; I. 19, 13; IV. 1, 33).

796. *Phalacēan* (*Hendecasyllabic*).

Pásser mórtuus ést meae puéllae.

Āridā modo pūmic(e) éxpólītum

**Tuaé Lésbia sint satis superque.** CAT. ♀ : ♀

$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{V} \\ \text{C} \\ \text{x} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} 2 \\ 5 \\ 1 \\ 4 \\ 5 \\ 1 \\ 4 \\ 5 \\ 1 \\ 4 \\ 5 \end{array}$

NOTES. 1. This verse, introduced into Latin by LAEVIUS, was used very often by CATULLUS, MARTIAL, PLINY MINOR, PETRONIUS, and STATIUS, as well as in the *Priæneæ* and elsewhere.

2. In Greek the Basis was not unfrequently an Iambus. So, too, in CATULLUS, but the tendency in Latin was to make it a Spondee; thus, in the *Præpæ*, PETRONIUS, and MARTIAL it is always so, while STATIUS has but one case of a Trochee, and AUSONIUS but one of an Iambus.

3. The principal Cæsura is the *semiquinaria*; but CATULLUS uses also almost as frequently Diæresis after the second foot. Occasionally there is a Diæresis after the third foot, supplemented by a Second Trochee Cæsura.

4. Elision is very common in CATULLUS; in the *Prīāpēa*, MARTIAL, and later it is very rare, if we exclude Aphaeresis from consideration. Hardening (723) is occasional, and CATULLUS shows a few cases of Semi-hiatus. A monosyllabic ending is very rare, with the exception of *es* and *est*.

5. CATULLUS, in 55, apparently shows a mixture of regular Phalaeceans and spurious Phalaeceans in which the Dactyl is supplanted by a Spondee. The poem is still under discussion.

One Dactyl, with Double Basis.

797. *Sapphic* (*Hendecasyllabic*).

Aúdiét cívés † acuísse férrum, HOR.  $\overset{x}{-} \overset{x}{\cup} \mid - \overset{x}{\cup} \mid - \overset{x}{\cup} \mid - \overset{x}{\cup} \mid - \overset{x}{\cup} \mid - \overset{x}{\cup}$

NOTES.—1. In the Greek measure, often retained in CATULLUS, the Dactyl is measured  $\sim \cup$ ; in HORACE, owing to a strong Cæsura after the long it is regularly  $— \cup$ .

Further, CATULLUS, like the Greeks, employed occasionally a Trochee in the second foot ; HORACE made it a rule to employ only a Spondee there.

2. The regular Cæsura in Latin is the *semiquintaria* ; but the *Third Trochee* (784, N. 2) is found not unfrequently in CATULLUS and HORACE, but not later. The usage of HORACE is peculiar in this respect : In the first and second books there are seven cases in two hundred and eighty-five verses ; in the third none at all ; in the fourth twenty-two in one hundred and five verses ; in the *Carmen Saeculare* nineteen in fifty-seven verses.

3. Elision is very common in CATULLUS, but occurs in HORACE only in about one verse in ten. Later usage tends to restrict Elision. Licenses are extremely rare in the classical period. So HORACE shows one example of Diastolé (*O.*, II. 6, 14). Monosyllabic endings are not common, but the word is usually attached closely with what precedes. The last syllable is regularly long.

4. SENECA shows some peculiarities : occasionally a Dactyl in the second foot, or a Spondee in the third ; occasionally also Dialysis.

### One Dactyl with Double Basis and Anacrusis.

#### 798. *Alcaic (Greater) Hendecasyllabic.*

Vidēs ut áltā || stēt nive cándidūm     ∪ ×     ×  
 > : ∪ ∪ | ∪ > | ∪ ∪ | ∪ ∪ | ∪ ∪  
 Sōrācte nēc iam || sústineánt onūs, HOR.

NOTES.—1. The second Basis is always a Spondee ; the few exceptions having been emended. The Anacrusis is regularly long ; HORACE shows no exception in the fourth book and very few in the first three. The last syllable may be long or short.

2. The regular Cæsura is a Diæresis after the second foot ; HORACE shows but two exceptions in six hundred and thirty-four verses (*O.*, I. 37, 14 ; IV. 14, 17). A few others show imperfect Cæsurae, as *O.*, I. 16, 21 ; I. 37, 5 ; II. 17, 21.

3. In regard to Elision, the facts are the same as in the case of the Sapphic.

4. Licenses are not common ; Diastolé occurs in H., *O.*, III. 5, 17 ; Hardening (723) occurs in H., *O.*, III. 4, 41 ; III. 6, 6. Tmesis is not unfrequent in forms of *quicumque* (H., *O.*, I. 9, 14 ; I. 16, 2 ; I. 27, 14).

### Two Dactyls.

#### 799. *Alcaic (Lesser) or Decasyllabic.*

Vértete fūneribús triúmphōs, HOR.     ∪ ∪ | ∪ ∪ | ∪ ∪ | ∪ >

NOTE.—The Cæsura is regularly the *semitemiaria*, occasionally the Second Trochee. Elision occurs a little less often in this measure than in the Hendecasyllabic. The last syllable is usually long. Diastolé occurs in H., *O.*, II. 13, 16.

In all these, the Dactyl has a diminished value. More questionable is the logædic character of the Greater Archilochian :

#### 800. *Archilochian (Greater) = Dactylic Tetrameter and Trochaic Tripody.*

∪ ∪ | ∪ ∪ | ∪ ∪ | ∪ ∪ || ∪ ∪ | ∪ ∪ | ∪ ∪  
 Sólvitur ácris hiems grātá vice || v̄ris ét Favóni, HOR.



If measured logacœdically, the two shorts of the Dactyl must be reduced in value to one ( $\omega = \upsilon$ ), and the logacœdic scheme is

$$-\omega | -\omega | -\omega | -\omega || -\upsilon | -\upsilon | - | -\wedge$$

Logacœdic tetrapody + Logacœdic tetrapody with Syncopé.

NOTE.—Diaeresis is always found after the fourth foot, which is always Dactylic. The principal Cæsura is the *sēmiquivnāria*. In the third foot a Spondee is preferred, whereas the Greek model has more often the Dactyl.

**801. Choriambic Rhythms.**—When a logacœdic series is syncopated, apparent choriambi arise. What is  $| \sim \upsilon | - |$  seems to be  $-\upsilon \upsilon -$ . Genuine choriambi do not exist in Latin, except, perhaps, in the single line PL., *Men.*, 110.

**802. Asclēpiadēan (Lesser).**

This verse is formed by a Catalectic Pherecratean followed by a Catalectic Aristophanic.

$$\begin{array}{l} \text{Máecēnās atavís || ēdite régibús,} \quad \times \\ \text{HOR.} \quad \quad \quad - > | \sim \upsilon | - || \sim \upsilon | \sim \upsilon | - \wedge \end{array}$$

NOTES.—1. There should be Diaeresis, complete or incomplete (*i.e.*, weakened by Elision), between the two halves. Only two exceptions are cited (H., *O.*, II. 12, 25; IV. 8, 17). The Cæsura is regularly the *sēmilernāria* in HORACE, less often the Second Trochee.

2. Elision occurs about as often as in the Elegiac Pentameter. It occurs most often in the first Dactyl and in the stichic measure. The final syllable may be short or long; but a monosyllable is rare. Licenses are likewise rare, as Diastolé (H., *O.*, I. 3, 86).

**803. Asclēpiadēan (Greater).**

$$\begin{array}{l} \text{Núllam Váre sacrá || víte priús || séveris árborem, HOR.} \\ \times \quad \times \\ \sim \upsilon > | \sim \upsilon | - || \sim \upsilon | - || \sim \upsilon | \sim \upsilon | - \wedge \end{array}$$

NOTE.—This verse differs from the preceding by having a Catalectic Adonic (792) inserted between the two halves. Diaeresis always separates the parts in HORACE. The rules of Elision are the same as in the preceding verse.

**804. Sapphic (Greater).**

$$\begin{array}{l} \text{Té deús óró Sybarín || cúr properás amándō, HOR.} \\ \times \quad \times \\ \sim \upsilon | \sim \upsilon > | \sim \upsilon | - || \sim \upsilon | \sim \upsilon | - | - \wedge \end{array}$$

NOTE.—This verse differs from the lesser Sapphic by the insertion of a catalectic Adonic. It is found only in HORACE (*O.*, I. 8). Diaeresis always occurs after the fourth foot, and there is also a *sēmiquivnāria* Cæsura.

805. *Priōpēan* (*Glyconic* + *Pherecratēan*).

Hūnc lūcūm tibi dēdicō || cōnsecrōque Priāpe, CAT.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} \times & & & & \times & & \\ \text{—} > | \text{—} \cup & | & \text{—} \cup & | & \text{—} & | & \text{—} \cup & | & \text{—} \end{array}$$

NOTE.—Diæresis always follows the Glyconic, but neither Hiatus nor Syllaba Anceps is allowable. The verse occurs in CAT. 17 and *Priap.* 85.

## Cretic and Bacchic Rhythms.

806. These passionate rhythms are found not unfrequently in PLAUTUS and occasionally elsewhere. They both belong to the Quinquepartite or Five-Eighths class.

The distribution of the Crēticus is 3 + 2 morae.

The metrical value of the Crēticus is — ∪ — (Amphimacer).

For it may be substituted the First Pæon, — ∪ ∪ ∪, or the Fourth Pæon, ∪ ∪ ∪ —.

NOTE.—Double resolution in the same foot is not allowable, and there is rarely more than one resolution in a verse. Instead of the middle short an irrational long is sometimes found.

807. *Tetrameter Acatalectic.*

$$\text{—} \cup \text{—} | \text{—} \cup \text{—} | \text{—} \cup \text{—} | \text{—} \cup \text{—}$$

Ēx bonīs pēssum(ī) ét frauḍuléntissumī, PL., *Capt.*, 235.

NOTE.—Resolution is not allowed at the end nor in the second foot immediately before a Cæsura. The Arsis immediately preceding (i.e., of the second and fourth foot) is regularly pure.

808. *Tetrameter Catalectic.*

$$\text{—} \cup \text{—} | \text{—} \cup \text{—} | \text{—} \cup \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—}$$

Dā mi(hi) hōc mēl meūm sí m(ē) amās s(ī) aūdēs, PL., *Trin.*, 244.

NOTE.—The existence of such lines is disputed, but the balance of authority seems to be in favor of recognising them.

809. *Dimeter Acatalectic.*

Nōsce sált(em) hūnc quis ést, PL., *Ps.*, 262.

$$\text{—} \cup \text{—} | \text{—} \cup \text{—}$$

NOTE.—This verse is found usually at the close of a Cretic system, or with Trochaic Septenarii. It follows the same rules as the Tetrameter, that is, the last long is not resolved and the second Arsis is kept pure.

810. *Acatalectic Cretic Trimeters* are rare and not always certain.

Compare PL., *Trin.*, 267, 269, 271; *Ps.*, 1119; *Most.*, 335; *Catalectic Trimeters* and *Dimeters* are even more uncertain. Compare PL., *Trin.*, 275; *Truc.*, 121.

811. The Bacchiūs has the following measure: ∪ — —, = 1 + 2 + 2 morae (♩♩♩), or if the descending form — ∪ ∪ be regarded as the normal one 2 + 2 + 1 morae (♩♩♩).

For the long two shorts are sometimes substituted. On the other hand, an irrational long may be used for the short, and occasionally two shorts are also thus used.

### 812. *Bacchic Tetrameter.*

Quibús née locúst ūllu' née spēs parātā ◡ ◡ ◡ | ◡ ◡ ◡ | ◡ ◡ ◡ | ◡ ◡ ◡  
Miséricórdiōr nūlla mést fēminārūm ◡ ◡ ◡ ◡ | ◡ ◡ ◡ | ◡ ◡ ◡ | ◡ ◡ ◡

NOTE.—In this verse there is usually a Cæsura after either the second or third Iambus; rarely Diæresis after the second Bacchius. The Arsis is kept pure in the second and fourth feet if the following long closes a word. Not more than one dissyllabic Arsis is allowable. Usually there is only one resolved Thesis, very rarely two, never more than three.

### 813. *Dimeter Acatalectic.*

Ad aetāt(em) agūdām, PL., *Trin.*, 232. ◡ ◡ ◡ | ◡ ◡ ◡

NOTE.—This is rare except at the close of a Bacchic series, to form the transition to another rhythm.

814. *Bacchic Hexameter* occurs in nine lines in a monologue in PL., *Am.*, 633–642. Hypermetric combination into systems is found in PL., *Men.*, 571 ff, and VARRO, *Sat.*, p. 195 (R.).

## Ionic Rhythm.

815. The Ionic Rhythm is represented by Iōnicus ā māiōre —◡◡ ◡◡◡ For the Iōnicus ā māiōre may be substituted the Ditrochaeus —◡◡◡. This is called Anáclasis (*breaking-up*).

The verse is commonly anacrustic, so that it begins with the thesis ◡◡ : —◡. Such verses are called Iōnicī ā minōre.

The second long has a strong secondary ictus.

In the early Latin, beginning with ENNIUS, the verse was used with much license. Resolution of the long syllables was common as well as the use of irrational long, and the contraction of two short syllables into a long. HORACE alone shows the pure Ionic.

The Iōnicus is an excited measure, and serves to express the frenzy of distress as well as the madness of triumph.

### 816. *Tetrameter Catalectic Ionic ā māiōre (Sōtadēan).*

This measure, introduced by ENNIUS, was used with great freedom by the earlier poets; but a stricter handling is found in later Latin poets, as PETRONIUS, MARTIAL, *etc.*

Nám quam varia sînt genera

poëmatōrum, Baébi, ˘ — ˘ ˘ ˘ ˘ | ˘ ˘ ˘ ˘ ˘ ˘ | ˘ ˘ — > | ˘ —

Quámque longē díscinct(a) ali(a)·

áb aliis, sic nōsce.—ACCUS. ˘ ˘ — > | ˘ — ˘ ˘ | ˘ ˘ ˘ — > | ˘ —

Later Latin :

The most common scheme is the pure Ionic with Anacalasis, especially in the third foot. Irrational longs are not used, and there is rarely more than one resolution, as : ˘ ˘ — ˘ ˘ or — ˘ ˘ ˘ ˘.

Móllēs veterēs Dēliací manū recísí

˘ — ˘ ˘ ˘ ˘ — ˘ ˘ ˘ ˘ ˘ ˘ —

tér corripuí terribílēm manū bipénnem,

˘ — ˘ ˘ ˘ — ˘ ˘ ˘ ˘ ˘ ˘ —

—PROP.

**817.** A combination of the *Ionic ā maiōre* into systems is found in LAEVIUS, who has a system of ten followed by a system of nine. Some traces of similar arrangement have been observed in the *Satires* of VARRO.

**818.** *Tetrameter Catalectic Ionic ā minōre (Galliambic).*

This verse was introduced by VARRO in his *Menippēan Satires*, and appears also in CATULLUS, 63, and in some fragments of MAECIUS.

In CATULLUS the two short syllables may be contracted (ten times in the first foot, six times in the third), and the long may be resolved, but not twice in the same Dimeter (except 63), and very rarely in the first foot of the second Dimeter (once in 91), but almost regularly in the penultimate long. Diæresis between the two Dimeters is regular. Anacalasis is found in the majority of the lines ; regularly in the first Dimeter (except 18, 54, 75).

The frequent resolutions and conversions give this verse a peculiarly wild character.

*Ordinary Scheme :*

Without Anacalasis : ˘ ˘ ˘ — ˘ ˘ ˘ — ˘ ˘ ˘ — ˘ ˘ ˘

With Anacalasis : ˘ ˘ ˘ ˘ — ˘ ˘ ˘ — ˘ ˘ ˘ ˘ — ˘ ˘.

*Anacrastic Scheme :*

Without Anacalasis : ˘ ˘ : ˘ — ˘ ˘ | ˘ — † ˘ ˘ | ˘ — ˘ ˘ | ˘ — ||

With Anacalasis : ˘ ˘ : ˘ ˘ — ˘ | ˘ — † ˘ ˘ | ˘ ˘ — ˘ | ˘ — ||  
^

Et eār(um) omni(a) adírem furi-

búnda latibulá

˘ ˘ ˘ — ˘ ˘ ˘ — ˘ ˘ ˘ — ˘ ˘ ˘ —

Quō nōs decet citátis celeráre tri-

pudís

— ˘ ˘ — ˘ ˘ — ˘ ˘ — ˘ ˘ — ˘ ˘ —

Itaqu(e) út domum Cybábēs teti-

gère lassuláe

˘ ˘ ˘ ˘ — ˘ ˘ — ˘ ˘ ˘ — ˘ ˘ — ˘ ˘ —





2. Some authorities consider verses like *Pl., Most., 693, Rud., 209*, compounded of a Cretic Dimeter and a Clausula. Others regard them as Catalectic Cretic Tetrameters.

## The Cantica of Early Latin.

A Trochaic Iambic Canticum is TER., *Ph.*, 153-163. A. 153-157: 2 Troch. Octon.; 1 Troch. Sept.; 1 Iamb. Octon. B. 158-163: 1 Troch. Octon.; 2 Troch. Sept.; 3 Iamb. Octon.; 1 Iamb. Quater. (Clausula).

## The Cantica of Later Latin.

2. Iambic Dimeters, occasionally alternating with Trimeters, but usually stichic, are found occasionally ; as *Med.*, 771-786.

3. Peculiar to SENECA is the use of a large variety of Logædic measures in his Cantica. So we find not unfrequently the following in stichic repetition: Lesser Asclepiadæans, Glyconics, Sapphic Hendecasyllabics, Adonics, and other imitations of Horatian measures; but there are few traces of antistrophic arrangement.

### Lyric Metres of Horace.

826. In the schemes that follow, the Roman numerals refer to periods, the Arabic to the number of feet or bars, the dots indicate the end of a line.

I. *Asclēpiadēan* Strophe No. 1. Lesser Asclepiadean Verse (802) repeated in tetrastichs.

x	—>   ~ ~   —    ~ ~   — ~   — ^	3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3
	—>   ~ ~   —    ~ ~   — ~   — ^	
	—>   ~ ~   —    ~ ~   — ~   — ^	
	—>   ~ ~   —    ~ ~   — ~   — ^	

O., I. 1; III. 30; IV. 8.

II. *Asclēpiadēan* Strophe No. 2. Glyconics (795) and Lesser Asclepiadean (802) alternating, and so forming tetrastichs.

x	—>   ~ ~   — ~   — ^	4 3 3 4 3 3
	—>   ~ ~   —    ~ ~   — ~   — ^	
	—>   ~ ~   — ~   — ^	
	~>   ~ ~   —    ~ ~   — ~   — ^	

O., I. 3, 13, 19, 36; III. 9, 15, 19, 24, 25, 28; IV. 1, 3.

III. *Asclēpiadēan* Strophe No. 3. Three Lesser Asclepiadean Verses (802) followed by a Glyconic (795).

x	—>   ~ ~   —    ~ ~   — ~   — ^	3 3 3 3 3 3 4
	—>   ~ ~   —    ~ ~   — ~   — ^	
	—>   ~ ~   —    ~ ~   — ~   — ^	
	—>   ~ ~   — ~   — ^	

O., I. 6, 15, 24, 33; II. 12; III. 10, 16; IV. 5, 12.

IV. *Asclēpiadēan* Strophe No. 4. Two Lesser Asclepiadean Verses (802), a Pherecratean (794), and a Glyconic (795).

I.	$\overset{x}{-}>   \sim \cup   \_    \sim \cup   - \cup   - \wedge   $	I.	$\begin{smallmatrix} \cdot \\ 3 \\ 3 \end{smallmatrix}$
	$->   \sim \cup   \_    \sim \cup   - \cup   - \wedge   $		$\begin{smallmatrix} \cdot \\ 3 \\ 3 \end{smallmatrix}$
II.	$->   \sim \cup   \_   - \wedge   $	II.	$\begin{smallmatrix} \cdot \\ 3 \\ 4 \end{smallmatrix}$
	$->   \sim \cup   - \cup   - \wedge   $		$\begin{smallmatrix} \cdot \\ 4 \end{smallmatrix}$

O., I. 5, 14, 21, 23; III. 7, 13; IV. 13.

V. *Asclēpiadēan* Strophe No. 5. Greater Asclepiadean (803), repeated in fours.

$\overset{x}{-}>   \sim \cup   \_    \sim \cup   \_    \sim \cup   - \cup   - \wedge   $	$\begin{smallmatrix} \cdot \\ 3 \\ 2 \\ 3 \\ 3 \\ 2 \\ 3 \\ 3 \\ 2 \\ 3 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{smallmatrix}$
$->   \sim \cup   \_    \sim \cup   \_    \sim \cup   - \cup   - \wedge   $	
$->   \sim \cup   \_    \sim \cup   \_    \sim \cup   - \cup   - \wedge   $	
$->   \sim \cup   \_    \sim \cup   \_    \sim \cup   - \cup   - \wedge   $	

O., I. 11, 18; IV. 10.

VI. *Sapphic* Strophe. Three Lesser Sapphics (797), and an Adonic (792), which is merely a Clausula. In the Sapphic HORACE regularly breaks the Dactyl.

$\overset{x}{-} \cup   \overset{x}{-}>   - \dagger \cup   - \cup   - \cup   $	$\begin{smallmatrix} \cdot \\ 5 \end{smallmatrix}$
$\overset{x}{-} \cup   \overset{x}{-}>   - \dagger \cup   - \cup   - \cup   $	$\begin{smallmatrix} \cdot \\ 5 \end{smallmatrix}$
$\overset{x}{-} \cup   \overset{x}{-}>   - \dagger \cup   - \cup   - \cup   $	$\begin{smallmatrix} \cdot \\ 5 \end{smallmatrix}$
$\sim \cup   - \cup   $	$\begin{smallmatrix} \cdot \\ 2 \end{smallmatrix}$

O., I. 2, 10, 12, 20, 22, 25, 30, 32, 38; II. 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 16; III. 8, 11, 14, 18, 20, 22, 27; IV. 2, 6, 11; *Carmen Saeculāre*.

NOTE.—In Greek the third and fourth verses run together to form a single verse. In Latin this is rare; one case is found in CATULLUS, II. 11, and three in HORACE, O., I. 2, 19; 25, 11; II. 16, 7; but the occurrence of Hiatus between the two lines in HORACE (O., I. 2, 47; 12, 7; 12, 31; 22, 15, *etc.*) may be considered as indicating that the verses were conceived as separate. Elision and Hiatus are also occasionally found in the lines. Elision, second and third: CAT., II. 22; H., O., II. 2, 18; 16, 31; IV. 2, 22; third and fourth: CAT., II. 19; H., O., IV. 2, 23; C.S., 47. Hiatus, first and second: H., O., I. 2, 41; 12, 25; II. 16, 5; III. 11, 29; 27, 33; second and third: H., O., I. 2, 6; 12, 6; 25, 18; 30, 6; II. 2, 6; 4, 6; III. 11, 50; 27, 10.

VII. *Lesser Sapphic Strophe*. Aristophanic (793), and Greater Sapphic (804). Two pairs are combined into a tetrastich.

~	~		-	~		-	~		-	^		4
x			x									.
-	~		-	>		~	~		-	~		4
												4
~	~		-	~		-	~		-	^		4
												.
x			x									4
-	~		-	>		~	~		-	~		4

O., I. 8.

VIII. *Alcaic Strophe*. Two Alcaic verses of eleven syllables (798), a Trochaic Quaternarius with Anacrusis (772), and one Alcaic verse of ten (799).

			x			x							I. 5	
I.	>	:	-	~		-	>		~	~		-	^	
			x			x							5	
	>	:	-	~		-	>		~	~		-	^	
II.	>	:	-	~		-	>		-	~		-	^	
	>	:	-	~		-	>		-	~		-	^	
	~	~		~	~		-	~		-	>		4	
	~	~		~	~		-	~		-	>		4	

O., I. 9, 16, 17, 26, 27, 29, 31, 34, 35, 37; II. I, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 19, 20; III. I, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 17, 21, 23, 26, 29; IV. 4, 9, 15, 17.

NOTE.—Elision between the verses is much more rare than in the Sapphic strophe; it occurs but twice: O., II. 3, 27; III. 29, 35. Hiatus, on the other hand, is very common.

IX. *Archilochian Strophe No. 1*. A Dactylic Hexameter (784), and a Lesser Archilochian (788), two pairs to a tetrastich.

-	~	~		-	~	~		-	+	~	~		-	~	~		-	~	~		-	-		3		
-	~	~		-	~	~		-	~	~		-	~	~		-	~	~		-	~	~		-	3	
																									.	
																									3	
-	~	~		-	~	~		-	+	~	~		-	~	~		-	~	~		-	~	~		-	3
-	~	~		-	~	~		-	~	~		-	~	~		-	~	~		-	~	~		-	3	
																									.	
																									3	
																									3	

O., IV. 7.

X. *Archilochian Strophe No. 2*. A Dactylic Hexameter (784), and an Iambelegus (820).

-	~	~		-	~	~		-	~	~		-	~	~		-	~	~		-	~	~		-	-	
>	:	-	~		-	>		-	~		-	~		-	^											
-	~	~		-	~	~		-	~	~		-	~	~		-	~	~		-	~	~		-	~	

*Epod.*, 13.





XVI. *Pythiambic* Strophe No. 1. A Dactylic Hexameter (784), or Versus Pythius, and an Iambic Dimeter (765).

$\overline{\text{—}} \overline{\text{—}} \overline{\text{—}} \text{—} \overline{\text{—}} \overline{\text{—}} \text{—} \overline{\text{—}} \overline{\text{—}} \text{—} \overline{\text{—}} \overline{\text{—}} \text{—} \overline{\text{—}} \overline{\text{—}} \text{—}$   
 $\overline{\text{—}} \text{—} \overline{\text{—}} \text{—} \overline{\text{—}} \text{—} \overline{\text{—}} \text{—}$

*Epod.*, 14, 15.

XVII. *Pythiambic* Strophe No. 2. A Dactylic Hexameter (784), and an Iambic Trimeter (760).

$\overline{\text{—}} \overline{\text{—}} \overline{\text{—}} \text{—} \overline{\text{—}} \overline{\text{—}} \text{—} \overline{\text{—}} \overline{\text{—}} \text{—} \overline{\text{—}} \overline{\text{—}} \text{—} \overline{\text{—}} \overline{\text{—}} \text{—}$   
 $\overline{\text{—}} \text{—} \overline{\text{—}} \text{—} \overline{\text{—}} \text{—} \overline{\text{—}} \text{—} \overline{\text{—}} \text{—}$

*Epod.*, 16.

XVIII. *Trochaic* Strophe. A Catalectic Trochaic Dimeter (772), and a Catalectic Iambic Trimeter (763). Two pairs make a tetra-stich.

$\overline{\text{—}} \text{—} \overline{\text{—}} \text{—} \overline{\text{—}} \text{—}$   
 $\overline{\text{—}} \overline{\text{—}} \text{—} \overline{\text{—}} \overline{\text{—}} \text{—} \overline{\text{—}} \text{—}$

*O.*, II. 18.

XIX. The *Ionic* System is found once in HORACE ; it consists of ten *Iōnicī ā minōre* feet, variously arranged by metrists. Some regard the system as composed of ten Tetrameters followed by a Dimeter. Others, with more probability, divide into two Dimeters followed by two Trimeters. The scheme may be made *ā māiōre* by Anacrusis.

*Iōnicus ā minōre scheme :*

Miserārum(e)st neque amōrī	$\overline{\text{—}} \overline{\text{—}} \overline{\text{—}} \text{—} \overline{\text{—}} \overline{\text{—}} \text{—} \parallel$
dare lūdum neque dulcī	$\overline{\text{—}} \overline{\text{—}} \overline{\text{—}} \text{—} \overline{\text{—}} \overline{\text{—}} \text{—} \parallel$
mala vīnō laver(e) aut exanimārī	$\overline{\text{—}} \overline{\text{—}} \overline{\text{—}} \text{—} \overline{\text{—}} \overline{\text{—}} \text{—} \overline{\text{—}} \overline{\text{—}} \text{—} \parallel$
metuentēs patrue verbera lingue	$\overline{\text{—}} \overline{\text{—}} \overline{\text{—}} \text{—} \overline{\text{—}} \overline{\text{—}} \text{—} \overline{\text{—}} \overline{\text{—}} \text{—} \parallel$

*Iōnicus ā māiōre scheme :*

$\overline{\text{—}} \overline{\text{—}} : \text{—} \text{—} \overline{\text{—}} \overline{\text{—}}   \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \parallel$	I. $\dot{2}$
$\overline{\text{—}} \overline{\text{—}} : \text{—} \text{—} \overline{\text{—}} \overline{\text{—}}   \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \parallel$	.
$\overline{\text{—}} \overline{\text{—}} : \text{—} \text{—} \overline{\text{—}} \overline{\text{—}}   \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \parallel$	2
$\overline{\text{—}} \overline{\text{—}} : \text{—} \text{—} \overline{\text{—}} \overline{\text{—}}   \text{—} \text{—} \overline{\text{—}} \overline{\text{—}}   \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \parallel$	II. $\dot{3}$
$\overline{\text{—}} \overline{\text{—}} : \text{—} \text{—} \overline{\text{—}} \overline{\text{—}}   \text{—} \text{—} \overline{\text{—}} \overline{\text{—}}   \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \parallel$	.
$\overline{\text{—}} \overline{\text{—}} : \text{—} \text{—} \overline{\text{—}} \overline{\text{—}}   \text{—} \text{—} \overline{\text{—}} \overline{\text{—}}   \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \parallel$	3
$\overline{\text{—}} \overline{\text{—}} : \text{—} \text{—} \overline{\text{—}} \overline{\text{—}}   \text{—} \text{—} \overline{\text{—}} \overline{\text{—}}   \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \parallel$	.

*O.*, III. 12.

## 827. INDEX OF HORATIAN ODES AND METRES.

BOOK.	ODE.	METRE.	BOOK.	ODE.	METRE.	BOOK.	ODE.	METRE.
I.	1.....	i.	II.	1.....	viii.	III.	18.....	vi.
	2.....	vi.		2.....	vi.		19.....	ii.
	3.....	ii.		3.....	viii.		20.....	vi.
	4.....	x.		4.....	vi.		21.....	viii.
	5.....	iv.		5.....	viii.		22.....	vi.
	6.....	iii.		6.....	vi.		23.....	viii.
	7.....	xiii.		7.....	viii.		24.....	ii.
	8.....	vii.		8.....	vi.		25.....	ii.
	9.....	viii.		9.....	viii.		26.....	viii.
	10.....	vi.		10.....	vi.		27.....	vi.
	11.....	v.		11.....	viii.		28.....	ii.
	12.....	vi.		12.....	iii.		29.....	viii.
	13.....	ii.		13.....	viii.		30.....	i.
	14.....	iv.		14.....	viii.	IV.	1.....	ii.
	15.....	iii.		15.....	viii.		2.....	vi.
	16.....	viii.		16.....	vi.		3.....	ii.
	17.....	viii.		17.....	viii.		4.....	viii.
	18.....	v.		18.....	xviii.		5.....	iii.
	19.....	ii.		19.....	viii.		6.....	vi.
	20.....	vi.		20.....	viii.		7.....	ix.
	21.....	iv.	III.	1.....	viii.		8.....	i.
	22.....	vi.		2.....	viii.		9.....	viii.
	23.....	iv.		3.....	viii.		10.....	v.
	24.....	iii.		4.....	viii.		11.....	vi.
	25.....	vi.		5.....	viii.		12.....	iii.
	26.....	viii.		6.....	viii.		13.....	iv.
	27.....	viii.		7.....	iv.		14.....	viii.
	28.....	xiii.		8.....	vi.		15.....	viii.
	29.....	viii.		9.....	ii.		Carmen Sæculære	vi.
	30.....	vi.		10.....	iii.		Epod. 1-10	xv.
	31.....	viii.		11.....	vi.		11.....	xi.
	32.....	vi.		12.....	xix.		12.....	xiii.
	33.....	iii.		13.....	iv.		13.....	x.
	34.....	viii.		14.....	vi.		14.....	xvi.
	35.....	viii.		15.....	ii.		15.....	xvi.
	36.....	ii.		16.....	iii.		16.....	xvii.
	37.....	viii.		17.....	viii.		17.....	xiv.
	38.....	vi.						

## APPENDIX.

### ROMAN CALENDAR.

The names of the Roman months were originally adjectives. The substantive *mēnsis*, *month*, may or may not be expressed : (*mēnsis*) *Iānuārius*, *Februārius*, and so on. Before Augustus, the months July and August were called, not *Iūlius* and *Augustus*, but *Quintilis* and *Sextilis*.

The Romans counted backward from three points in the month, Calends (*Kalendae*), Nones (*Nōnae*), and Ides (*Īdūs*), to which the names of the months are added as adjectives : *Kalendae Iānuāriæ*, *Nōnae Februāriæ*, *Īdūs Mārtiæ*. The Calends are the first day, the Nones the fifth, the Ides the thirteenth. In March, May, July, and October the Nones and Ides are two days later. Or thus:

In March, July, October, May,  
The Ides are on the fifteenth day,  
The Nones the seventh; but all besides  
Have two days less for Nones and Ides.

In counting backward ("come next Calends, next Nones, next Ides") the Romans used for "the day before" *pridīs* with the Acc. : *pridīs Kalendās Iānuāriās*, Dec. 31; *pridīs Nōnās Iān.* = Jan. 4; *pridīs Īdūs Iān.* = Jan. 12.

The longer intervals are expressed by *ante diem tertium*, *quārtum*, *etc.*, before the Accusative, so that *ante diem tertium Kal. Iān.* means "two days before the Calends of January;" *ante diem quārtum*, or *a. d. iv.*, or *iv. Kal. Iān.*, "three days before," and so on. This remarkable combination is treated as one word, so that it can be used with the prepositions *ex* and *in* : *ex ante diem iii. Nōnās Iūniās usque ad pridīs Kal. Septembrēs*, from June 3 to August 31; *differre aliquid in ante diem xv. Kal. Nov.*, to postpone a matter to the 18th of October.

LEAP YEAR.—In leap year the intercalary day was counted between *a. d. vi. Kal. Mārt.* and *a. d. vii. Kal. Mārt.* It was called *a. d. bis sextum Kal. Mārt.*, so that *a. d. vii. Kal. Mārt.* corresponded to our February 23, just as in the ordinary year.

#### To turn Roman Dates into English.

*For Nones and Ides.*—I. Add one to the date of the Nones and Ides, and subtract the given number.

*For Calends.*—II. Add two to the days of the preceding month, and subtract the given number.

EXAMPLES: a. d. viii. Īd. Iān. ( $13 + 1 - 8$ ) = Jan. 6 ; a. d. iv. Nōn. Apr. ( $5 + 1 - 4$ ) = Apr. 2 ; a. d. xiv. Kal. Oct. ( $30 + 2 - 14$ ) = Sept. 18.

*Year.*—To obtain the year B.C., subtract the given date from 754 (753 B.C. being the assumed date of the founding of Rome, *annō urbis conditae*). To obtain the year A.D., subtract 753.

Thus : *Cicero was born* 648, a. u. c. = 106 B.C.

*Augustus died* 767, a. u. c. = 14 A.D.

NOTE.—Before the reform of the Calendar by Julius Cæsar in B.C. 46, the year consisted of 355 days, divided into twelve months, of which March, May, Quintilis (July), and October had 31 days, February 28, the remainder 29. To rectify the Calendar, every second year, at the discretion of the Pontifices, a month of varying length, called *mēnsis intercalāris*, was inserted after the 23d of February.

## ROMAN SYSTEMS OF MEASUREMENT.

### LONG MEASURE.

4 digiti	= 1 palmus.
4 palmi	= 1 pēs (11.65 in.).
6 palmi, }	= 1 cubitus.
1½ pedēs }	
2½ pedēs	= 1 gradus.
2 gradūs, }	= 1 passus.
5 pedēs }	
125 passus	= 1 stadium.
8 stadia	= 1 mille passuum (mile).

### SQUARE MEASURE.

100 pedēs, }	= 1 scrīpulum.
quadrāti }	
36 scrīpula	= 1 clima.
4 climata	= 1 āctus.
2 āctūs	= 1 iūgerum (acre).

The iūgerum contains 28,800 sq. ft. Rom.;

Eng. acre = 43,560 sq. ft.

### DRY MEASURE.

1½ cyathi	= 1 acētābulum.
2 acētābula	= 1 quārtārius.
2 quārtārii	= 1 hēmīna.
2 hēmīnae	= 1 sextārius.
8 sextārii	= 1 sēmōdius.
2 sēmōdii	= 1 modius (peck).

### LIQUID MEASURE.

1½ cyathi	= 1 acētābulum.
2 acētābula	= 1 quārtārius.
2 quārtārii	= 1 hēmīna.
2 hēmīnae	= 1 sextārius (pint).
6 sextārii	= 1 congius.
4 congii	= 1 ūrna.
2 ūrnæ	= 1 amphora.
20 amphoræ	= 1 culleus.

## ROMAN WEIGHTS.

3 siliquæ	= 1 obolus.	2 sicilici	= 1 sēmūncia.
2 oboli	= 1 scrīpulum.	2 sēmūnciæ	= 1 ūncia.
2 scrīpula	= 1 drachma.	12 ūnciæ	= 1 libra (pound).
2 drachmæ	= 1 sicilicus.		

NOTES.—1. The multiples of the *ūncia* were *sēscūncia* ( $1\frac{1}{2}$ ), *sextāns* (2), *quadrāns* (3), *triēns* (4), *quincūnx* (5), *sēmis* (6), *septūnx* (7), *bēs* (8), *dodrāns* (9), *dextāns* (10), *deūnx* (11).

2. The *libra* was also called *ās* (see below), which latter is taken as the unit in all measures, and the foregoing divisions applied to it. Hence, by substituting *ās* for *iūgerum*, we have *deūnx* as  $\frac{1}{11}$  of a *iūgerum*, *dextāns* as  $\frac{1}{10}$ , etc.

## ROMAN MONEY.

The unit was originally the *ās* (which was about a pound of copper), with its fractional divisions. This gradually depreciated, until, after the second Punic war, the unit had become a *sēstertius*, which was nominally  $2\frac{1}{2}$  *assēs*.

$2\frac{1}{2}$ <i>assēs</i>	= 1 <i>sēstertius</i> (about	25 <i>dēnārii</i>	= 1 <i>aureus</i> (nummus).
	4 cts.).	1000 <i>sēstertiī</i>	= 1 <i>sēstertium</i>
2 <i>sēstertiī</i>	= 1 <i>quinārius</i> .		(\$42.94 to Augustus's time).
2 <i>quinārii</i>	= 1 <i>dēnārius</i> .		

NOTE.—*Sēstertium* (which may be a fossilised Gen. Pl. = *sēstertiōrum*) was modified by distributives (rarely by cardinals), thus: *bīna sēstertia*, 2000 sesterces. But in multiples of a million (*deciēns centēna milia sēstertium*, i. e., *sēstertiōrum*), *centēna milia* was regularly omitted, and *sēstertium* declined as a neuter singular. HS stands as well for *sēstertius* as *sēstertium*; and the meaning is regulated by the form of the numeral; thus HS *vīginti* (XX) = 20 *sēstertiī*; HS *vicēna* (XX) = 20 *sēstertia*, i. e., 20,000 *sestertiī*.

## ROMAN NAMES.

The Roman usually had three names; a *nōmen*, indicating the *gēns*, a *cōgnōmen*, indicating the *familia* in the *gēns*, and the *praenōmen*, indicating the individual in the *familia*.

The *nōmina* all end in *ius*. The *cōgnōmina* have various forms, in accordance with their derivation. For example: Q. *Mūcius Scaevola* (from *scaevos*, *left hand*).

The *praenōmina* are as follows, with their abbreviations:

Aulus,	A.	Lūcius,	L.	Quīntus,	Q.
Appius,	App.	Mārcus,	M.	Servius,	Ser.
Gāius,	C.	Mānius,	M'.	Sextus,	Sex.
Gnaeus,	Cn.	Māmercus,	Mam.	Spurius,	Sp.
Decimus,	D.	Numerius,	Num.	Titus,	T.
Kaesō,	K.	Pūblius.	P.	Tiberius,	Ti., Tib.

NOTES.—1. Adoption from one *gēns* into another was indicated by the termination *-iānus*. From the fourth century A.D. a second *cōgnōmen* was also called an *āgnōmen*.

2. Daughters had no peculiar *praenōmina*, but were called by the name of the *gēns* in which they were born. If there were two, they were distinguished as *māior* and *minor*; if more than two, by the numerals *tertia*, *quārta*, etc.





at-texō, ere, -texuī, -textum, 152, 3.  
 at-tineō (TENEŌ), ēre, uī, -tentum,  
 135, 1. *a.*  
 at-tingō (TANGŌ), ere, attigī, attāc-  
 tum, 155.  
 at-tollō, ere, *to raise up.*  
 audeō, ēre, ausus sum, 167.  
 audiō, īre, ivī, itum. *See* 127.  
 au-ferō, -ferre, abstulī, ablātum,  
 171.  
 augeō, ēre, auxī, auctum, 147, 1.  
 avē, 175, 4.

Balbūtiō, īre, *to stutter.*  
 batuō, ere, uī, 162.  
 bibō, ere, bibī, (bibitum), 154, 2.

Cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsum, 153.  
 caecūtiō, īre, *to be blind.*  
 caedō, ere, cecidī, caesum, 153.  
 calefaciō, ere, -fēcī, -factum, 160,  
 3; 173, N. 2.  
 calēscō, ere, caluī, *to get warm.*  
 calleō, ēre, uī, *to be skilled.*  
 calveō, ēre, *to be bald.*  
 candeō, ēre, uī, *to shine.*  
 cāneō, ēre, *to be gray.*  
 canō, ere, cecinī, cantum, 153.  
 capessō, ere, ivī, itum, 137, *c.*  
 capiō, ere, cēpī, captum, 126;  
 160, 3.  
 carpō, ere, carpsī, carptum, 147, 2.  
 caveō, ēre, cāvī, cautum, 159.  
 cedo, 175, 6.  
 cēdō, ere, cēssī, cēssum, 147, 2.  
 cēnātus, 167, N. 1.  
 cēnseō, ēre, uī, cēnsus, 135, 1. *a.*  
 (cēnsitus),  
 cernō, ere, crēvī, (crētum), 139.  
 cieō } ciēre, cīvī, cītum, 137, *b.*  
 ciō } cīre,  
 cingō, ere, cinxī, cinctum, 149, *b.*  
 circum-dō, -dare, -dedī, -datum,  
 151, 1.  
 circum-sistō, ere, steti, 154, 1.  
 circum-stō, stāre, steti, 151, 2.  
 claudō, ere, clausī, clausum, 147, 2.  
 clepō, ere, clepsī, cleptum, 147, 2.  
 (clēpī),  
 co-alēscō, ere, -aluī, (-alitur), 140,  
 145.  
 co-arguō, ere, uī, 162.  
 co-emō, ere, -ēmī, -ēm(p)tum,  
 160, 1.  
 coepī, coepisse, 175, 5, *a.*

cō-gnōscō, ere, -gnōvī, -gnitum,  
 140.  
 cō-gō (AGO), ere, co-ēgī, co-āctum,  
 160, 1.  
 col-lidō (LAEDŌ), ere, -līsī, līsum,  
 147, 2.  
 col-ligō (LEGŌ), ere, -lēgī, -lectum,  
 160, 1.  
 col-lūceō, ēre, -lūxī, 157, 1.  
 colō, ere, coluī, cultum, 142, 3.  
 com-būrō, ere, -ūssī, -ūstum, 147, 2.  
 com-edō, ere, -ēdī, -ēsum (ēstum),  
 172.  
 comitātus, 167, N. 1.  
 comminiscor, ī, commentus sum,  
 165.  
 com-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum,  
 159.  
 cō-mō (EMO), ere, cōmpsī, cōmp-  
 tum, 147, 2.  
 com-parcō, ere, -parsī, -parsum, 153.  
 com-pellō, ere, com-pulī, -pulsum,  
 155.  
 com-periō (PARIŌ), īre, com-perī,  
 com-per-tum, 161, 166.  
 compēscō, ere, uī, 145.  
 com-pingō, ere, -pēgī, -pāctum,  
 160, 2.  
 com-plector, ī, com-plexus, 165.  
 com-pleō, ēre, ēvī, ētum, 147.  
 com-primō (PREMŌ), ere, -pressī,  
 -pressum, 147, 2.  
 com-pungō, ere, -punxī, -punctum,  
 155.  
 con-cidō (CADŌ), ere, -cidī, 153, *a.*  
 con-cidō (CAEDŌ), ere, -cīdī, -cīsum,  
 153, *a.*  
 con-cinō (CANŌ), ere, -cinuī, 142, 3.  
 concitus (CIEŌ), 137, *b.*  
 con-clūdō (CLAUDŌ), ere, -clūsī,  
 -clūsum, 147, 2.  
 con-cumbō, ere, -cubuī, -cubitum,  
 144.  
 con-cupiscō, ere, -cupīvī, cupītum,  
 140.  
 con-cutiō (QUATIŌ), ere, -cussi, -cus-  
 sum, 147, 2.  
 con-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, 151, 1.  
 con-dormiscō, -ere, -īvī, itum, 140.  
 cōn-ferciō (FARCIŌ), īre (fersī), fer-  
 tum, 150, 2.  
 cōn-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, collātum,  
 171.  
 cōn-ficiō (FACIŌ), ere, -fēcī, -fectum,  
 160, 3.

- cōn-fiteor (FATEOR), ērī, -fessus, 164.  
 con-flīgō, ere, -flīxī, -flictum, 147, 2.  
 cōn-fringō (FRANGŌ), ere, -frēgī, -frāctum, 160, 2.  
 con-gruō, ere, congruī, 162.  
 con-iciō (IACIŌ), ere, -iēcī, -iectum, 160, 3.  
 coniūrātus, 167, N. 1.  
 co-nīvēō, ēre, <sup>connixī,</sup> (connivī), 147, 1.  
 con-quirō (QUAERŌ), ere, -quisivī, -quisitum, 137, c.  
 cōn-serō, ere, -seruī, -sertum, 152, 3.  
 cōn-serō, ere, -sēvī, -situm, 138.  
 cōn-siderātus, 167, N. 1.  
 cōn-sidō, ere, consēdī, -sessum, 160, 1.  
 cōn-sistō, ere, -stitī, -stitum, 154, 1.  
 cōn-spergō, ere, -spersī, -spersum, 147, 2.  
 cōn-spiciō, ere, -spexī, -spectum, 150, 1.  
 cōn-stituō (STATUŌ), ere, uī, -stitūtum, 162.  
 cōn-stō, -stāre, -stitī, (constātūrus), 151, 2.  
 cōn-suēscō, ere, -suēvī, suētum, 140; 175, 5.  
 cōnsulō, ere, cōnsuluī, -sultum, 142, 3.  
 con-temnō, ere, -tem(p)sī, -tem(p)-tum, 149, c.  
 con-tendō, ere, -tendī, -tentum, 155.  
 con-texō, ere, -texuī, -textum, 152, 3.  
 con-tineō (TENEŌ), ēre, uī, -tentum, 135, 1. a.  
 con-tingō (TANGŌ), ere, contigī, contāctum, 155.  
 convalēscō, ere, -valuī, -valitum, 145.  
 coquō, ere, coxī, coctum, 147, 2, 168, 1.  
 cor-ripiō (RAPIŌ), ere, -ripuī, -reptum, 146.  
 cor-ruō, ere, corruī, 162.  
 crēbrēscō, ere, crēbruī, *to get frequent.*  
 crē-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, 151, 1.  
 crepō, āre, crepuī, crepitum, 142, 2.  
 crēscō, ere, crēvī, crētum, 140.  
 cubō, āre, cubuī, cubitum, 142, 2.
- cūdō, ere, cūdī, cūsum, 160, 1.  
 cupiō, ere, cupivī, cupitum, 141.  
 currō, ere, cucurī, cursum, 155.  
 Dē-cernō, ere, -crēvī, -crētum, 139.  
 dē-cerpō (CARPŌ), ere, sī, tum, 147, 2.  
 dē-dō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditum, 151, 1.  
 dē-fendō, ere, -fendī, -fēsum, 160, 2.  
 dēfetīscor, 1, *to be worn out.*  
 dē-gō (AGO), ere, 160, 1.  
 dēlēō. *See Paradigm*, 123, 124.  
 dē-libuō, uēre, uī, ūtum, 162.  
 dē-ligō, ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, 160, 1.  
 dē-mō (EMO), ere, dēmpsī, dēmp-tum, 147, 2.  
 dēpellō, ere, dēpulī, dēpulsum, 155.  
 dē-primō (PREMŌ), ere, -pressī, pressum, 147, 2.  
 depsō, ere, depsuī, depstum, 142, 3.  
 dē-scendō (SCANDŌ), ere, -scendī, -scēsum, 160, 2.  
 dē-serō, ere, -seruī, -sertum, 142, 3.  
 dē-siliō (SALIŌ), ire, <sup>uī,</sup> (dēsultum), 142, 4.  
 dē-sinō, ere, <sup>dēsivī,</sup> dēsī, dēsītum, 139.  
 dē-sipiō (SAPIŌ), -ere, 141.  
 dē-sistō, ere, -stitī, -stitum, 154, 1.  
 dē-spiciō, ere, -spexī, -spectum, 150, 1.  
 dē-suēscō, -ere, -ēvī, -ētum, 140.  
 dē-sum, -esse, -fuī, 117.  
 dē-tendō, ere, -tendī, -tentum, 155.  
 dē-tineō (TENEŌ), ēre, -uī, -tentum, 135, 1. a.  
 dē-vertor, -I, 167.  
 dicō, ere, dixī, dictum, 147, 2.  
 dif-ferō, -ferre, distulī, dilātum, 171.  
 dī-gnōscō (NŌSCŌ), ere, -gnōvī, 140.  
 dī-ligō, ere, -lēxī, -lēctum, 147, 2.  
 dī-micō, āre, āvī, ātum, 142, 2.  
 dī-rigō, ere, -rēxī, -rēctum, 147, 2.  
 dir-imō (EMO), ere, -ēmī, -ēmp-tum, 160, 1.  
 discō, ere, didicī, 156.  
 dis-crepō, āre, -crepuī (āvī), 142, 2.  
 dis-cumbō, ere, -cubuī, -cubitum, 144.  
 dis-pēscō, ere, -pēscuī, *to divide*, 145.  
 dis-sideō (SEDEŌ), ēre, -sedī, 159.

dī-stinguō, ere, -stinxi, -stinctum, 149, *b*.

dī-stō, -stāre, 151, 2.

dītēscō, ere, *to grow rich*.

dividō, ere, divisi, divisum, 147, 2.

dō, dare, dedi, datum, 151, 1.

doceō, ēre, docui, doctum, 135, 1, *a*.

domō, āre, ui, itum, 142, 2.

dūcō, ere, dūxi, ductum, 147, 2

dulcēscō, ere, *to grow sweet*.

dūrēscō, ere, dūruī, *to grow hard*.

Edō, ere, ēdi, ēsum, 160, 1, 172.

ē-dō (dō), ēdere, ēdidi, ēditum, 151, 1.

ē-dormiscō, -ere, -īvi, -itum, 140.

ef-ferō, -ferre, extuli, elātum, 171.

egeō, ēre, egui, *to want*.

ē-liciō, ere, -licui, -licitum, 150, 1.

ē-ligō (lēgō), ere, -lēgi, -lēctum, 160, 1.

ē-micō, āre, ui (ātūrus), 142, 2.

ēmīneō, ēre, ui, *to stand out*.

emo, ere, ēmi, emptum, 160, 1.

ēmungō, ēre, ēmunxi, ēmunctum, 149, *b*.

ē-necō, āre, ēnecui, ēnectum, 142, 2.

eo, īre, īvi, itum, 169, 2.

ē-vādō, ere, ēvāsī, ēvāsum, 147, 2.

ē-vānēscō, ere, ēvānuī, 145.

ex-ārdēscō, ere, exārsī, exārsūm, 147, 1.

ex-cellō, ere, ui (excelsus), 144.

excitus, 137.

ex-clūdō (CLAUDō), ere, -sī, -sum, 147, 2.

ex-currō, ere, ex(cu)curri, -cursum, 155.

ex-imō, ere, ēmi, -emptum, 160, 1.

ex-olēscō, ere, -olēvi, -olētum, 140.

ex-pellō, ere, -puli, -pulsum, 155.

expērgiscor, ī, experrēctus sum, 165.

ex-perior, īri, -pertus sum, 166.

ex-pleō, ēre, ēvi, ētum, 124, 137, *b*.

ex-plicō, āre, ui (āvi), itum (ātum), 142.

ex-plōdō (PLAUDō), ere, -sī, -sum, 147, 2.

exsecrātus, 167, N. 2.

ex-stinguō, ere, -stinxi, -stinctum, 149, *b*.

ex-sistō, ere, -stiti, -stitum, 154, 1.

ex-stō, āre (exstātūrus), 151, 2.

ex-tendō, ere, di, -sum (-tum), 155.

ex-tollō, ere, 155.

ex-uō, ere, -ui, -ūtum, 162.

Facessō, ere, īvi (-i), itum, 137, *c*.

faciō, ere, feci, factum, 160, 3.

fallō, ere, fefelli, falsum, 155.

farcio, īre, farsī, fartum, 150, 2.

fārī, 175, 3.

fateor, ēri, fassus sum, 164.

fatiscō, ere, *to fall apart*.

fatiscor, ī (fessus, *adj.*).

faveō, ere, fāvi, fautum, 159.

feriō, īre, *to strike*.

ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum, 171.

ferveō, ēre, fervi (ferui), 159.

fidō, ere, fisis sum, 167.

figō, ere, fixi, fixum, 147, 2.

findō, ere, fidi, fissum, 160, 3.

ingō, ere, ingxi, fictum, 149, *a*.

fiō, fieri, factus sum, 173.

flectō, ere, flexi, flexum, 148.

fleō, ēre, ēvi, ētum, 137, *b*.

fligō, ere, flixi, flictum, 147, 2.

flōreō, āre, ui, *to bloom*.

fluō, ere, fluxi (fluxus, *adj.*), 147, 2.

fodiō, ere, fodi, fossūm, 160, 3.

forem, 116.

foveō, ēre, fōvi, fōtum, 159.

frangō, ere, frēgi, frāctum, 160, 2.

fremō, ere, ui, 142, 3.

frendō (eo), ere (ui), frēsūm, frēs sum, 144.

frioō, āre, ui, frictum (ātum), 142, 2.

frigeō, ēre (frixi), 147, 1.

frigō, ere, frixi, frictum, 147, 2.

frondeō, ēre, ui, *to be leafy*.

fruor, ī, fructus (fruitus) sum, 165.

fugio, ere, fugi, fugitum, 160, 3.

fulciō, īre, fulsi, fultum, 150, 2.

fulgeō, ēre, fulsi, 147, 1.

fundō, ere, fūdi, fūsum, 160, 2.

fungor, ī, fūctus sum, 165.

(furō, *def.*), furere, *to rave*.

Ganniō, īre, *to yelp*.

gaudeō, ēre, gāvīsus sum, 167.

gemō, ere, ui, 142, 3.

gerō, ere, gessi, gestum, 147, 2.

gignō, ere, genui, genitum, 143.

gliscō, ere, *to swell*.

gradior, ī, gressus sum, 165.

Haereō, ēre, haesī, (haesum), 147, 1.  
 hauriō, ire, hausī, haustum (hauris, haustus), 150, 2.  
 havē, 175, 4.  
 hīscō, ere, *to yawn*.  
 horreō, ēre, uī, *to stand on end*  
 hortor, ārī, ātus sum, 128.

Iaceō, ēre, iacui, *to lie*.  
 iaciō, ere, iēcī, iactum, 160, 3.  
 icō, ere, icī, ictum, 160, 1.  
 ī-gnōscō, ere, -gnōvī, -gnōtum, 140.  
 il-liciō, ere, -lexī, -lectum, 150, 1.  
 il-lidō (LAEDŌ), ere, -līsī, -līsum, 147, 2.  
 imbuō, ere, uī, ūtum, 162.  
 imitātus, 167, N. 2.  
 immineō, ēre, *to overhang*.  
 im-pingō (PANGŌ), ere, pēgī, pāctum, 160, 2.  
 in-calēscō, ere, -caluī, 145.  
 in-cendō, ere, -cendī, -cēsum, 160, 2.  
 incessō, ere, ivī (I), 137, c.  
 in-cidō (CADŌ), ere, -cidī, -cāsum, 152.  
 in-cidō (CAEDŌ), ere, -cidī, cīsum, 153.  
 in-cipiō (CAPIŌ), ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, 160, 3.  
 in-crepō, āre, uī, itum, 142, 2.  
 in-cumbō, ere, -cubuī, -cubitum, 144.  
 in-cutiō (QUATIŌ), ere, -cussī, -cussum, 147, 2.  
 ind-igeō (EGEŌ), ēre, uī, *to want*.  
 ind-ipīscor, ī, indeptus sum, 165.  
 in-dō, ere, -didi, -dītum, 151, 1.  
 indulgē, ēre, indulī (indultum), 147, 1.  
 in-duō, ere, -duī, -dūtum, 162.  
 ineptiō, ire, *to be silly*.  
 in-fligō, ere, -flixi, -flictum, 147, 2.  
 ingemiscō, ere, ingemuī, 145.  
 ingruō, ere, uī. *See congruo*, 162.  
 in-nōtēscō, ere, nōtū, 145.  
 in-olēscō, ere, -olēvī, 140.  
 inquam, 175, 2.  
 in-sideō (SEDEŌ), ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, 159.  
 in-sistō, ere, -stitī, 154, 1.  
 in-spiciō, ere, -spexī, -spectum, 150, 1.

inter-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, 160, 3; 173, N. 2.  
 in-stō, āre, -stitī (instātūrus), 151, 2.  
 in-sum, -esse, -fuī, 117.  
 intel-legō, ere, -lēxī, -lēctum, 147, 2.  
 inter-imō (EMŌ), ere, -ēmī, -ēmp-tum, 160, 1.  
 inter-pungō, ere, -punxī, -punctum, 155.  
 inter-stō, āre, -stetī, 151, 2.  
 inter-sum, -esse, -fuī, 117.  
 inveterāscō, ere, -āvī, 140.  
 in-vādō, ere, invāsī, -vāsum, 147, 2.  
 irāscor, ī, irātus sum, *to get angry*.  
 iubeō, ēre, iūssī, iūssum, 147, 1.  
 iungō, ere, iūnxī, iunctum, 149, b.  
 iūrātus, 167, N. 1.  
 iuvō, āre, iūvī, iūtum (iuvātūrus), 158.

Lābor, ī, lāpsus sum, 165.  
 lacessō, ere, lacessivī, -itum, 137, c.  
 laciō, 150.  
 laedō, ere, laesī, laesum, 147, 2.  
 lambō, ere, ī, 160, 2.  
 languē, ēre, ī, *to be languid*.  
 largior, irī, itus sum, 166.  
 lateō, ēre, uī, *to lie hid*.  
 lavō, āre (ere), lāvī, lautum, lō-tum, lavātum, 158.  
 lego, ere, lēgī, lēctum, 160, 1.  
 libet, libere, libuit (libitum est), *it pleases*.  
 liceor, ērī, itus sum, 164.  
 licet, licere, licuit (licitum est), *it is permitted*.  
 lingō, ere, linxī, linctum, 149, b.  
 linō, ere, lēvī (līvī), litum, 139.  
 linqū, ere, liquī, 160, 2.  
 liqueō, ere, licuī, *to be clear*.  
 liveō, ēre, *to be livid*.  
 loquor, ī, locūtus sum, 128, 2; 165.  
 lūceō, ēre, lūxī, 147, 1.  
 lūdō, ere, lūsī, lūsum, 147, 2.  
 lūgeō, ēre, lūxī, 147, 1.  
 luō, ere, luī, { lūtum, *to wash*,  
 { luitum, *to atone for*,  
 { 162.

Maereō, ēre, *to grieve*.  
 mālō, mālī, mālū, 142, 3; 174.  
 mandō, ere, mandī, mānsum, 160, 2.  
 maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsum, 147, 1.  
 mānsuēscō, -ere, -ēvī, -ētum, 140.



medeor, ēri, *to heal*.  
 meminī, 175, 5, *b*.  
 mentior, īri, ītus, 128, 2; 166.  
 mereor, ēri, meritus sum, 164.  
 mergō, ere, mersī, mersum, 147, 2.  
 mētior, īri, mēnsus sum, 166.  
 metō, ere, messuī (rare), messum, 142, 3.  
 metuō, ere, uī, 162.  
 micō, āre, uī, 142, 2.  
 mingō, ere, minxī, mictum, 149, *a*.  
 minuō, ere, minuī, minūtum, 162.  
 mīsceō, ēre, uī, mīxtum (mīstum).  
 misereor, ēri, miseritus (misertus) sum, 164.  
 mittō, ere, mīsī, missum, 147, 2.  
 molō, ere, moluī, molitum, 142, 3.  
 moneō, ēre, uī, itum, 131.  
 mordeō, ēre, momordī, morsum, 152.  
 morior, morī, mortuus sum (mori-tūrus), 165.  
 moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtum, 159.  
 mulceō, ēre, mulsī, mulsum, 147, 1.  
 mulgeō, ēre, mulsī, mulsum (ctum), 157, 1.  
 mungō, ere, munxī, munctum, 160.  
  
 Nancīscor, ī, nactus (nactus), 165.  
 nāscor, ī, nātus sum (nāscitūrus), 165.  
 necō, āre, āvī, ātum, 142, 2.  
 nectō, ere, nexī (nexuī), nexum, 148.  
 neg-legō, ere, -lēxī, -lēctum, 147, 2.  
 necopinātus, 167, *N*. 2.  
 neō, nēre, nēvī, nētum, 137, *b*.  
 nequeō, īre, 170.  
 ningō, ere, ninxī, 149, *b*.  
 niteō, ēre, uī, *to shine*.  
 nītor, ī, nīxus (nīsus) sum, 165.  
 nōlo, nōlle, nōluī, 142, 3; 174.  
 noceō, ēre, uī (nocitūrus), *to be hurtful*.  
 nōscō, ere, nōvī, nōtum, 140; 175, 5, *d*.  
 nōtēscō, ere, nōtuī, 145.  
 nūbō, ere, nūpsī, nūptum, 147, 2.  
  
 Ob-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, 151, 1.  
 ob-dormiscō, ere, -dormīvī, -dormītum, 140.  
 oblivīscor, ī, oblītus sum, 165,

ob-sideō (SEDEō), ēre, -sēdī, -ses-sum, 159.  
 ob-sistō, ere, -stitī, -stitum, 154, 1.  
 obs-olēscō, ere, -olēvī, -olētum, 140.  
 ob-stō, stāre, stitī (obstātūrus), 151, 2.  
 obtineō (TENEō), ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, 135, 1, *a*.  
 oc-cidō (CADō), ere, -cidī, -cāsum, 153.  
 oc-cidō (CAEDō), ere, -cidī, -cīsum, 153.  
 oc-cinō (CANō), ere, -cinuī, 142, 3; 153.  
 oc-cipiō (CAPIō), ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, 160, 3.  
 ocellō, ere, ocelluī, occultum, 142, 3.  
 ōdī, *def.*, 175, 5, *a*.  
 of-fendō, ere, -fendī, -fēsum, 160, 2.  
 of-ferō, -ferre, obtulī, oblātum, 171.  
 oleō, ēre, uī, *to smell*.  
 operiō, īre, operuī, opertum, 142, 4.  
 opīnātus, 167, *N*. 2.  
 opperior, īri, oppertus (*or* ītus), 166.  
 ōrdior, īri, ōrsus sum, 166.  
 orior, īri, ortus sum (oritūrus), 166.  
 os-tendō, ere, -tendī, -tēsum (-tentus), 155.  
  
 Pacīscor, ī, pactus sum, 165, 167, *N*. 2.  
 palleō, -ēre, -uī, *to be pale*.  
 pandō, ere, pandī, passum (pāsum), 160, 2.  
 pangō, ere { pepigī, 155, } pāc-  
 { panxī, 149, *b*, } tum.  
 parcō, ere, pepercī (parsī), par-sūrus, 153.  
 pariō, ere, peperī, partum (pari-tūrus), 157.  
 partior, īri, ītus, 166.  
 pāscō, ere, pāvī, pāstum, 140.  
 pate-facio, ere, -fēcī, -factum, 173, *N*. 2.  
 pateō, ēre, uī, *to be open*.  
 patior, ī, passus sum, 165.  
 paveō, ēre, pāvī, 159.  
 pectō, ere, pexī, pexum, 148.  
 pel-liciō, -licere, -lexī, -lectum. (licuī), 150, 1.

pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsum, 155.  
 pendeō, ēre, pependī, 152.  
 pendō, ere, pependī, pēnsum, 155.  
 per-cellō, ere, perculī, perculsum, 144.  
 percēnseō (CENSEŌ), ēre, -cēnsuī, -cēnsum, 135, 1, *a*.  
 pereitus (CIEŌ), 137.  
 per-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, 169, 2, *R. I*; 151, 1.  
 per-eō, īre, perīī, itum, 169, 2, *R. I*.  
 per-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, 160, 3.  
 per-fringō, ere, -frēgī, -frāctum, 160, 2.  
 pergō (REGO), ere, perrēxī, perrēc-tum, 147, 2.  
 per-petior (PATIOR), ī, perpersus sum, 165.  
 per-spiciō, ere, -spexī, -spectum, 150, 1.  
 per-stō, -stāre, -stitī, 151, 2.  
 per-tineō (TENEŌ), ēre, uī, 135, 1, *a*.  
 pessum-dō, -dare, -dedī, -datum, 151, 1.  
 petō, ere, ivī (ii), itum, 137, *c*.  
 piget, pigēre, piguit, pigitum est, *it irks*.  
 pingō, ere, pinxi, pictum, 149, *a*.  
 pīnsō, ere, uī (i), pīnsitum (pīstum, pīnsum), 142, 3.  
 plangō, ere, planxī, planetum, 149, *b*.  
 plaudō, ere, plausī, plausum, 147, 2.  
 plectō, ere, (plexī), plexum, 148.  
 plector, ī, *to be punished*.  
 -pleō, 137, *b*.  
 plicō, āre, uī (āvī), itum (ātum), 142, 2.  
 pluō, ere, pluit, 162.  
 polleō, ēre, *to be potent*.  
 polliceor, ērī, itus sum, 164.  
 pōnō, ere, posuī, positum, 139.  
 pōscō, ere, popōscī, 156.  
 pos-sideō (SEDEŌ), ere, -sēdī, -ses-sum, 159.  
 pos-sum, posse, potuī, 119.  
 potior, īrī, itus sum, 166.  
 pōtō, āre, āvī, pōtum, pōtātum, 136, 4, *c*.  
 pōtus, 167, *n. 1*.  
 prae-cellō, ere, -celluī, 144.  
 prae-cinō, ere, -cinuī, 142, 3.  
 prae-currō, ere, -cucurrī, -cursum, 155.

prae-sideō (SEDEŌ), ēre, -sēdī, 159.  
 prae-sum, -esse, -fuī, 117.  
 prae-stō, -stāre, -stitī (-stātūrus), 151, 2.  
 prandeō, ēre, prandī, prānsum, 159.  
 prehendō, ere, prehendi, prehēn-sum, 160, 2.  
 premō, ere, pressī, pressum, 147, 2.  
 prōd-igō (AGO), ere, -ēgī, 160, 1.  
 prō-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, 151, 1.  
 pro-ficiscor, ī, profectus sum, 165.  
 pro-fiteor (FATEOR), ērī, -fessus sum, 164.  
 prōmō (EMO), ere, prōmpsi, prōmp-tum, 147, 2.  
 prō-sum, prōdesse, prōfuī, 118.  
 prō-tendō (TENŌ), ere, -tendī, -tentum, tēnsum, 155.  
 psallō, ere, ī, 160, 2.  
 pudet, ēre, puduit, puditum est, *it shames*.  
 puerāscō, ere, *to become a boy*.  
 pungō, ere, pupugī, punctum, 155.  
 pūnior, īrī, itus sum, 166.  
 Quaerō, ere, quaesivī, quaesitum, 137, *c*.  
 quaesō, 175, 6.  
 quatiō, ere, (quassī), quassum, 147, 2.  
 queō, quire, 170.  
 queror, querī, questus sum, 167.  
 quiēscō, ere, quiēvī, quiētum, 140.  
 Rādo, ere, rāsī, rāsum, 147, 2.  
 rapiō, ere, rapuī, raptum, 146.  
 rauciō, īre, rausī, rausum, 150, 2.  
 re-cēnseō (CENSEŌ), ēre, -cēnsuī, -cēnsum (recēnsitum), 135, 1, *a*.  
 re-cidō, ere, reccidī, recāsum, 153.  
 recrūdēscō, ere, -crūdūī, *to get raw again*.  
 re-cumbō, ere, -cubuī, 144.  
 red-arguō, ere, -arguī, 162.  
 red-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, 151, 1.  
 red-igō (AGO), ere, -ēgī, -actum, 160, 1.  
 red-imō, -ēre, 160, 1.  
 re-fellō (FALLŌ), ere, refellī, 155.  
 re-ferō, -ferre, -tullī, -lātum, 171.  
 rego, ere, rēxī, rēctum, 147, 2.  
 re-linguō, ere, -liquī, -lictum, 160, 2.  
 reminiscor, ī, *to recollect*.

renīdeō, ēre, *to glitter*.

reor, rēri, ratus sum, 164.

re-pellō, ere, reppulī, pulsum, 155.

re-periō, ire, repperī, repertum, 157, 161.

rēpō, ere, rēpsī, rēptum, 147, 2.

re-sipiscō, ere, -sipivī (sipuī), 140.

re-sistō, ere, -stitī, -stitum, 154, 1.

re-spondeō, ere, -spondī, -spōnsum, 152.

re-stō, stāre, -stitī, 151, 2.

re-stinguō, ere, -stinxi, -stinctum, 149, *b*.

re-tineō (TENEŌ), ere, uī, -tentum, 135, 1, *a*.

re-vertor, ī, revertī, reversum, 160, 1; 167.

re-viviscō, ere, vixī, victum, *to revive*.

rīdeō, ēre, rīsī, rīsum, 147, 1.

rigeō, ēre, uī, *to be stiff*.

rōdō, ere, rōsī, rōsum, 147, 2.

rubeō, ēre, uī, *to be red*.

rudō, ere, rudivī, itum, 137, *c*.

rumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptum, 160, 2.

ruō, ere, ruī, rutum (ruitūrus), 162.

Saepiō, ire, saepsī, saeptum, 150, 2.

saliō, ire, (salīi,) saltum, 142, 4.

sallō, ere, (sallī), salsum, 160, 2.

salvē, *def.*, 175, 4.

sanciō, ire, sānxi, (sancitum), 150, 2.

sapiō, ere (sapivī), sapuī, 141.

sarciō, ire, sarsī, sartum, 150, 2.

satis-dō, -dare, -dedi, -datum, 151, 1.

scabō, ere, scābī, *to scratch*, 160, 1.

scalpō, ere, scalpsi, scalptum, 147, 2.

scandō, ere, scandī, scānsum, 160, 2.

scateō, ēre, *to gush forth*.

scindō, ere, scidī, scissum, 160, 3.

sciscō, ere, scivī, scitum, 140.

scribō, ere, scripsi, scriptum, 147, 2.

sculpō, ere, sculpsi, sculptum, 147, 2.

secō, āre, secuī, sectum, 142, 2.

sedeō, ēre, sedī, sessum, 159.

sēligō (LEGO), ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, 160, 1.

sentiō, ire, sēnsī, sēnsum, 150, 2.

sepliō, ire, ivī, sepultum, 137, *a*.

sequor, ī, secūtus sum, 165.

serō, ere, 142, 3.

serō, ere, sēvi, satum, 138.

serpō, ere, serpsi, serptum, 147, 2.

sīdō, ere, sidi, 160, 1.

sileō, ēre, uī, *to be silent*.

sinō, ere, sivi, situm, 139.

sistō, ēre, (stiti), statum, 154, 1.

sitiō, ire, ivi, *to thirst*.

soleō, ēre, solitus sum, 167.

solvō, ere, solvi, solūtum, 160, 1.

sonō, āre, sonui, sonitum, 142, 2.

sorbeō, ēre (sorp-sī), sorbuī, 142, 1.

sordeō, ēre, uī, *to be dirty*.

sortior, iri, sortitus sum, 166.

spargō, ere, sparsi, sparsum, 147, 2.

spernō, ere, sprēvi, sprētum, 139.

-spiciō, 150, 1.

splendeō, ēre, uī, *to shine*.

spondeō, ēre, spopondi, spōnsum, 152.

spuō, ere, spuī, spūtum, 162.

squāleō, ēre, *to be rough, foul*.

statuō, ere, statui, statūtum, 162.

sternō, ere, strāvi, strātum, 139.

sternuō, ere, sternui, 162.

stertō, ere, stertui, 142, 3.

-stinguō, ere, 149, *b*.

stō, stāre, steti, stātum, 151, 2.

strepō, ere, strepuī, strepitum, 142, 3.

strideō, ēre (ere), stridī, 159.

stringō, ere, striuxī, strictum, 149, *a*.

struō, ere, strūxi, strūctum, 147, 2.

studeō, ēre, uī, *to be zealous*.

stupeō, ēre, uī, *to be astounded*.

suādeō, ēre, suāsī, suāsūm, 147, 1.

sub-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, 151, 1.

sub-igō (AGO), ere, -ēgī, -āctum, 160, 1.

suc-cēdō (CĒDŌ), ere, -cēssī, -cēs-sum, 147.

suc-cendō, ere, -cendī, -cēnsum, 160, 2.

suc-cēnseō, ēre, uī, -cēnsum, 135, 1, *a*.

suc-currō, ere, -curri, -cursum, 155.

suēscō, ere, suēvi, suētum, 140.

suf-ferō, -ferre, sus-tinuī, 171, *n*, 2.

suf-ficiō (FACIŌ), ere, -fēcī, -fectum, 160, 3.

suf-fodiō, ere, -fōdī, -fossūm, 160, 3.

sug-gerō, ere, -gessī, -gestum, 147, 2.

sūgō, ere, sūxī, sūctum, 147, 2. sum, esse, fui, 116.

sūmō (emo), ere, sūmpsī, sūmp-tum, 147, 2.

suō, ere, suī, sūtum, 162.

superbiō, ire, *to be haughty*.

super-stō, -stāre, -stetī, 151, 2.

super-sum, -esse, -fui, 117.

sup-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum, 139, 1.

surgō (REGO), ere, surrēxī, surrēc-tum, 147, 2.

surripio, ere, uī (surpuī), -reptum, 146.

Taedet, pertaesum est, *it tires*.

tangō, ere, tetigī, tāctum, 155.

tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctum, 147, 2.

temnō, ere, 149, c.

tendō, ere, tetendī, tēnsūm (-tum), 155.

teneō, ēre, tenuī, (tentum), 135, 1, a.

tergeō, ēre, tersī, tersum, 147, 1.

terō, ere, trīvī, trītum, 137, c.

texō, ere, texuī, textum, 142, 3.

timeō, ēre, uī, *to fear*.

ting(u)ō, ere, tinxī, tinctum, 149, b.

tollō, ere (sustulī, sublātum), 155.

tondeō, ēre, totondī, tonsum, 152.

tonō, āre, uī, 142, 2.

torpeō, ēre, uī, *to be torpid*.

torqueō, ēre, torsī, tortum, 147, 1.

torreō, ēre, torruī, tōstum, 135, 1, a.

trā-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, 151, 1.

traho, ere, trāxī, trāctum, 147, 2.

tremō, ere, uī, *to tremble*.

tribuō, ere, uī, tribūtum, 162.

trūdō, ere, trūsī, trūsūm, 147, 2.

tueor, ērī (tuitus) tūtātus sum, 164.

tumeō, ēre, uī, *to swell*.

tundō, ere, tutudī, tūnsūm, tū-sum, 155.

turgeō, ēre, tursī, 147, 1.

Ulcīseor, ī, ultus sum, 165.

ungō, ere, ūnxī, ūnctum 149, b.

urgeō, ēre, ursī, 147, 1.

ūrō, ere, ūssī, ūstum, 147, 2.

ūtor, ī, ūsus sum, 165.

Vādō, ere, 147, 2.

valē, 175, 4.

vehō, ere, vexī, vectum, 147, 2; 165.

vellō, ere, velli (vulsī), vulsum, 160, 2.

vēn-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, 151, 1; 169, 2, R. 1.

vēn-eō, īre, ivī (ii), 169, 2, R. 1.

veniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, 161.

vēnum-dō, -dare, -dedī, -datum, 151, 1.

vereor, ērī, veritus sum, 164.

verrō, ere, verri, versum, 160, 1.

vertō, ere, vertī, versum, 160, 1.

vescor, ī, 165.

vesperāscō, ere, āvī, 140.

vetō, āre, vetuī, vetitum, 142, 2.

videō, ēre, vīdī, vīsum, 159.

vieō, ēre, ētum, *to plait*. See 137, b.

vigeō, ēre, uī, *to flourish*.

vinciō, ēre, vīnxī, vinctum, 150, 2.

vineō, ere, vīcī, victum, 160, 2.

vīsō, ere, vīsī, 160, 1.

vīvō, ere, vīxī, victum, 147, 2.

volō, velle, voluī, 142, 3; 174.

volvō, ere, volvī, volūtum, 160, 1.

vomō, ere, vomuī, vomitum, 142, 3.

voveō, ēre, vōvī, vōtum, 159.

## GENERAL INDEX.

ABBREVIATIONS.—Abl., ablative; Abs., absolute; Acc., accusative; act., active; adj., adjective; adv., adverb; attrib., attributive, attribution; app., appositive, apposition; Comp., comparison, comparative; constr., construction; cop., copula, copulative; cpd., compound, compounded; Dat., dative; decl., declension; def., definite; dem., demonstrative; fem., feminine; Fut., future; Fut. Prf., future perfect; Gen., genitive; Ger., gerund, gerundive; Impf., imperfect; Impv., imperative; indef., indefinite; Indic., indicative; Inf., infinitive; interrog., interrogative; Loc., locative; masc., masculine; neg., negative; neut., neuter; Nom., nominative; obj., object; Part., partitive; part., participle; pass., passive; Pl., plural; poss., possessive, possession; pred., predicate; prep., preposition; pron., pronoun; rel., relative; Sg., singular; subj., subject; Subjv., subjunctive; subst., substantive; Sup., supine; vb., verb; Voc., vocative.

A—Sound of, 3; weakening of, 8,1; length of final, 707,1. See **ab**.

**ab** (**ā**)—In composition, 9,4; varies with **ā** as prep., 9,4; syntax of as prep., 417,1; position of, 413, R.1; Dat. after vbs. cpd. with, 347, R.5; gives Point of Reference, 335, N.; with Abl. takes place of second Acc., 339, N.2; with Abl. of Separation, 390; with Abl. of Point of View, *ib.* 2, N.6; with Towns, 391, R.1; with Abl. of Origin, 395; with Abl. of Respect, 397, N.1; with Abl. of Agent, 401; to express Cause, 408, N.3; with Abl. Ger., 433.

**abdicāre**—with **sē** and Abl., 390, N.3.

**abesse**—with Acc. of Extent, or **ā** and Abl., 335, R.2; with Dat., 349, R.4; with Abl. of Measure, 403, N.1; of Place, 390, N.3; **tantum abest ut**,—*ut*, 552, R.1.

**abhinc**—with Acc., 336, R.3.

**abhorrēre**—with Abl. of Place, 390, N.3.

**ability**—adjs. of, with Inf., 423, N.1, c.

**abire**—with Abl. of Place, 390, N.3.

ABLATIVE—defined, 23, 6; 1st decl. Sg. in **ād**, Pl. in **ēis**, 29, N.4; Pl. in **ābus**, 29, R.4; 2d decl. Sg. in **ōd**, 33, N.3; Pl. in **ēis**, 33, N.5; 3d decl. Sg. in **ēi**, **i**, **e**, 37, 4; mute stems with **i**, 54; sporadic cases in **i**, 54, N.2; vowel stems in **i**, 57, R.2; adjs. used as substs. in **i**, 57, R.2, N.; 4th decl. in **ubus**, 61, R.1; adjs. in **d**, 75, N.3; Pl. in **is** (for **iis**) and **ābus**, 75, N.6; adjs. of three endings in **e**, 79, R.1; adjs. and parts. in **i** and **e**, 82; adjs. in **e** and **i**,

83; Comp. of part., 89, R.1; forms advs., 91, 2.

With act. vb. cannot be subj. of pass., 217, R.1; with vbs. involving comparison, 296, N.1; prepositional uses instead, *ib.* N.3; with **prō** of Disproportion, 298; for inner obj., 333, 2, N.4; with **abesse** and **distāre**, 335, R.2; of Point of Reference, *ib.* N.; with Acc. after vbs. of Giving and Putting, 348; with preps. instead of Part. Gen., 372, R.2. Scheme of Syntax, 384; of Place where, 385; of Towns, 386; of Place whence, 390; with vbs. of Abstaining, 390, 2; with Adjs., 390, 3; of Towns, 391; preps. with Towns, *ib.* R.1; of Attendance, 392; of Time, 393; preps., 394; of Origin, 395; preps., *ib.* N.2; of Material, 396; of Respect, 397; with words of Eminence, *ib.* N.2; with Comp., 398, 296, and RR.1, 2; of Manner, 399; of Quality, 400, and R.1; with **cum** of unnatural productions, *ib.* N.2; of Instrument, 401; of Agent, 314, and R.2, 401 and RR.1, 2; with special vbs., 401, NN.1-7; of Standard, 402; of Difference, 403; of Price, 404; with vbs. of Plenty and Want, 405; with **opus** and **ūsus**, 406; with **ūtor**, **fruor**, *etc.*, 407; of Cause, 408 and NN.2-6; of Ger., 431; of Ger. with preps., 433; of Sup., 436.

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE—concord with two subjs., 285, N.3; syntax of, 409, 10; with Interrog., 469, N.; of part., 665, N.2.



- abrumperē**—with Abl. of Place, 390, n.3.  
**absiste**—with Inf. for Impv., 271, 2, n.2.  
**absolvere**—with Abl. of Place, 390, n.3.  
**absonus**—with Abl., 359, n.2.  
 Absorption of Correlative—619.  
**absque**—417, 2; with Subjv., 597, n.  
*abstaining*—vbs. of, with Abl., 390, 2.  
**abstinēre**—with Abl. of Place, 390, n.3.  
 abstract—relations expressed by Indic., 254, n.1; substs. become concrete in Pl., 204, n.5; formation of, 181, 2, b.  
*abundantia*—84.  
**abundāre**—with Gen., 383, 1, n.2.  
**abunde**—very, 439, n.3.  
**abūti**—with Abl., 407 and n.2, a.  
**āc**—see **atque**; **āc sī** with Subjv. of Comparison, 602; **āc sī** = **quasi**, *ib.* n.5.  
**accēdere**—with Dat., *etc.*, 347, n.2; with **quod**, 525; with **ut**, 553, 4.  
 accent—in early Latin, 701, n.2; in music, 729; conflict with Ictus, 749  
 accentuation 15; effect of enclitics, *ib.* n.1; in cpds., *ib.* n.2; in Voc., *ib.* n.3; early, *ib.* n.  
**accidit**—with Dat., 346, n.2; sequence after, 513, n.2; with **ut**, 553, 3.  
**accipere**—with Inf., 527, n.1.  
**accommodātus**—with Dat. Ger., 429, n.1.  
**accumbere**—with Dat., *etc.*, 347, n.2.  
 ACCUSATIVE—definition, 23, 4. 3d decl. 36; in **im**, 37, 3; 54, n.1; in **ōis**, 38, 3; of vowel stems, 57, n.1 and 5; Pl. in **is** and **ēs**, 57, n.5; in Greek substs., 66, nn. 3 and 4; of adjs. of three endings in **is**, **ōis**, 79, n.2; in **is**, 83, n.1; of Comp. in **is**, **ōis**, 89, n.2; forms advs., 91, 1.  
 Becomes subj. of pass., 216; syntax of, 328 343; general view, 328, 329; direct obj., 330; with vbs. of Emotion, *ib.* n. and n.2; 333, 1, n.1; with verbal substs., 330, n.3; with adjs. in **undus**, *ib.* n.4; with cpd. vbs., 331. Inner obj., 332, 333; neut. pron. and adj., 333, 1; Cognate, *ib.* 2; Abl. instead, *ib.* 2, n.4; with vbs. of Taste and Smell, *ib.* 2, n.5; extension of Cognate idea, *ib.* 2, nn. 2 and 6. Double Acc., 333, 1; of Extent, 334–336; in Degree, 334, in Space, 335, in Time, 336; with **abesse** and **distāre**, 335, n.2; with **abhinc**, 336, n.3; with **nātus**, *ib.* n.4; with adjs., *ib.* n.1; of Extent as subj. of pass., *ib.* n.3; of Local Object, 337; prep. with Large Towns, *ib.* nn. 1 and 2; **domum** and in **domum**, *ib.* n.3; force of **ad**, *ib.* n.4; with **ūsq̄ue**, *ib.* n.4; with verbal substs., *ib.* n.5; of Respect, 338; with vbs. of Clothing, *etc.*, and passives, *ib.* n.2; Greek Acc. or Abl. instead, *ib.* n.1. Double Acc., 339–342; with vbs. of Inquiring, *etc.*, 339; special vbs., *ib.* nn., nn.; pass. form, *ib.* n.4; with vbs. of Naming, Making, *etc.*, 340; pass. form, *ib.* n.1; End by **ad** or Dat., *ib.* n.2; one Acc. is cognate, 341 and n.2; one Acc. forms a phrase, 342; as a general objective case, 343; with Interjections, *ib.* 1; Acc. and Inf., *ib.* 2; and Dat. with vbs. of Giving and Putting, 348; with preps. for Part. Gen., 372, n.2; for Abl. of Standard, 403, n.2; subj. of Inf., 203, n.1; 420; after impersonal Ger., 427, n.2; of Ger., 430; of Ger. with preps., 432; of Sup., 435; with Inf. as object clause, 526 535; with Inf. as subj., 535; with Inf. after vbs. of Emotion, 542, n.; with Inf. in rel. clause, 635; with Inf. in dependent comparative clause, 641.  
*accusing*—vbs. of, with Gen., 378; with other constr., *ib.* nn. 2 and 5.  
**acquiēscere**—with Abl., 401, n.6.  
*acquitting*—vbs. of, with Gen., 378; with other constr., *ib.* nn. 2 and 3.  
 action, activity—suffixes for, 181, 2; 182, 1.  
 active voice—112, 2; 213; Inf. as pass., 532, n.2; of something caused to be done, 219; periphrastic, 247.  
**ad**—in composition, 9, 4; vbs. cpd. with, take Acc., 331; with Towns and Countries, 337, nn. 1 and 4; with Acc. of End after vbs. of Taking, *etc.*, 340, n.2; with Acc. for Dat., 345, n.2; vbs. cpd. with, take Dat., 347; in the neighbourhood of, 386, n.2; hence, 403, n.4, c; position of, 413, n.1; as adv., 415; as prep., 416, 1; with Acc. Ger., 429, 2; 428, n.2; 432 and n.; after vbs. of Hindering, 432, n.; with Ger. for Abl. Sup., 436, n.3; **ad id quod**, 525, 2, n.2.  
**adaequū**—with Abl., 296, n.1; 398, n.2.  
*adaptation*—words of, with Dat. Ger., 429, 2.  
**addere**—with **operam** and Dat. Ger., 429, 1; with **quod**, 525, 1, n.1; with **ut**, 553, 4.  
*adding*—vbs. of, with **quod**, 525, 1; list of, *ib.* n.1; with **ut**, *ib.* n.5; 553, 4.  
**adductus**—with Abl. of Cause, 408, n.2  
**adeō**—with **ut**, 552.  
**adesse**—with Dat., *etc.*, 347, n.2.

- adfati**m—*very*, 439, N.3.  
**adferre**—with *ut*, 553,1.  
**adhaerescere**—with *Dat.*, *etc.*, 347, R.2.  
**adhortārī**—with *ut*, 546, N.1.  
**adhūc**—strengthens *Comp.*, 301; *as yet*, *still*, 478, N.1.  
**adicere**—with *quod*, 525,1, N.1.  
**adigere**—with *ut*, 553,1.  
**adipisci**—with *ut*, 553,1.  
**adire**—with *Acc.* or *ad*, 331, R.3.  
**adiuvāre**—with *ut*, 553,1.  
**ADJECTIVE**—16,2; and *subst.*, *ib.* R.1, N.1; decl. of, 17; defined, 72; 1st and 2d decl., 73; *Gen.* and *Voc.*, 73; stems in *ro*, 74; with *Nom.* wanting, 74, R.2; *Pronominal*, 76; 3d decl., 77; two endings, 78; stems in *ri*, 78,2; in *āli* and *ārī*, 78, R.; one ending, 80; case peculiarities, 83; abundance, 84; varying decl., 84,2; defective and indeclinable, 85; comparison of, 86; correlative, 109; formation of, 182.  
*As subst.*, 204, NN.1-4; agreement of *pred.*, 211; exceptions, *ib.* RR.; attrib. agrees in *Gender*, 286; *neut.* with *fem.*, *ib.* 3; concord of, 289; with two *subjs.*, 290; position, 290, N.2, 291; meaning varies with position, *ib.* R.1; 676; superlatives of *Order* and *Sequence*, 291,1, R.2; numerals, 292-295; comparatives, 296-301; superlatives, 302, 303; of *Inclination*, *Knowledge*, *etc.*, in *pred.*, 325, R.6; verbal with *Acc.*, 330, N.3, *neut.* in *Cognate Acc.*, 333,1; of *Extent* in *Degree*, 334 and R.1; or *Time*, 336, N.1; with *Gen.* of *Quality*, 365, R.2; of 3d decl. as *pred.*, 366, R.2; with *Abl.* of *Separation*, 390,3; with *Abl.* of *Attendance*, 392, R.1; with *Abl.* of *Quality*, 400; in *Abl. Abs.*, 410, NN.4,5; with *Inf.*, 421, N.1, c; with *Inf.* for *Gen.* of *Ger.*, 428, N.3; with *Abl. Ger.*, 431, N.1; with *Abl. Sup.*, 436, N.2; *neut.* with *ut*, 553,4, and R.2.  
**adligāre**—with *sē* and *Gen.*, 378, R.1.  
**admirārī**—with *Inf.*, 533, R.1.  
**admodum**—*very*, 439, N.3; with *quam* and *Indic.*, 467, N.; *yes*, 471,1.  
**admonēre**—with two *Accs.*, 341, N.2; with *ut*, 546, N.1.  
**Adonic**—measure, 789, 792.  
**adorīri**—with *Inf.*, 423,2, N.2.  
*adorning*—*vbs.* of, with *Abl.*, 401, N.1.  
**adstringere**—with *sē* and *Gen.*, 378, R.1.  
**adulēscēns**—437, N.1.  
*advantage*—*vbs.* of, with *Dat.*, 346.  
**ADVERB**—defined, 16,5, and R.3; discussion of, 91, 92; from *Acc.*, 91,1; from *Abl.*, *ib.* 2; from *Loc.*, *ib.* 3; uncertain, *ib.* 4; by terminations, 92,1-5; syntactical and miscellaneous, 92,6; comparison of, 93; numeral, 98; *pron.*, 110; with *Dat.*, 359, N.7; with *Part. Gen.*, 372, N.3; general use of, 439; position of, 440; for *rel.* with *prep.*, 611, R.1; position of, 677.  
**adversārī**—with *Dat.*, 346, R.2.  
*adversative*—sentences, 483-491; particles, 483; *cum*, 580, NN.1 and 2, 587; *quī*, 634.  
**adversus**—gives *obj.* toward which, 359, R.2; as *adv.*, 415; as *prep.*, 416,2.  
**advertere**—*animum*, with *Acc.*, 342.  
*ae*—pronunciation of, 4 and N.; weakening of, 8,1.  
**aedēs**—omitted, with *Gen.*, 362, R.3.  
**aequālis**—with *Gen.* or *Dat.*, 359, R.1.  
**aequāre**—with *Dat.*, 346, N.3.  
**aequum**—with *est* instead of *sit*, 254, R.1; *aequē* with *Abl.*, 296, N.1; *aequō* after *Comp.*, 398, N.1; with *atque*, 643, N.3; *aequē*—*aequē*, 482,3.  
**aes**—decl. of, 47,6.  
**aestimāre**—with *Gen.*, 379; with *Abl.*, 380, N.1; with *Abl.* and *ex*, 402, R.2.  
**aetās**—in *Abl.* of *Time*, 393, R.5; *id aetātis*, 336, N.2.  
**aeternum**—as *adv.*, 336, N.1.  
**afficere**—with *Abl.* of *Means*, 401, N.3.  
**affinis**—with *Dat.* or *Acc.*, 359, R.1; with *Gen.*, 374, N.2.  
**affirmāre**—with *Inf.*, 527, R.2.  
**age**—with *Pl.*, 211, N.2; with *Impv.*, 269; *age vērō*, 487, N.3; *id ago*, with *ut*, 546, N.1.  
*agency*—suffixes for, 181,1.  
*agent*—in *Abl.* with *ab*, 214, 401; in *Abl.*, 214, R.2; in *Dat.*, 215, 354, 355; and *Instrument*, 401, R.1.  
**aggredi**—with *Inf.*, 423,2, N.2.  
**āiō**—175,1; supplied from *negō*, 447, R.; introduces *Ō.R.*, 648, R.2; with *Inf.*, 527, R.2.  
**ālāris**—and *ālārius*, 84,2.  
**Alcaic**—measure, 791, 799.  
**Alcmanian**—measure, 786.  
**ali**—forms *indef. prons.*, 111,1.  
**aliēnus**—*poss.* of *alius*, 108; with *Gen.* or *Dat.*, 359, R.1 and N.2.  
**aliquandō**—*aliquandō*, 482, N.1.  
**aliquantum**—with *ante*, 403, N.4.

- aliquis** and **aliqui**—107; with Pl. vrb., 211, n.2; syntax of, 314; with numerals, 314, n.2; for **quis** and **qui**, 107, n.1, and 315, n.1; with two negs., 315, n.1; **per aliquem stāre**, with **nō**, **quōminus**, 548, n.1.
- alius**—decl. of, 76, 108; reciprocal **alius alium**, 221, n.1; with Abl., 319; for **alter**, **ceteri**, *ib.* n.1; *besides*, *ib.* n.2; **alia** as Acc. of Respect, 338, 2; **aliter** with Abl. of Measure, 403, n.3; **alius atque alius**, 477, n.9; **aliās—aliās**, 482, 1; **tum—aliās, aliās—plērumque, interdum—aliās**, *ib.* n.2; **aliō—aliō, alibi—alibi**, *ib.* 2; **aliter—aliter**, *ib.* 3; **aliter** strengthens **sīn**, 592; followed by **quam, nisi, praeter**, 643, n.4; with **atque**, 643, n.3.
- allēc**—decl. of, 68, 12.
- alphabet**—1. Sounds of letters, *ib.* n. n. 1-3; names of letters, *ib.* n.
- alter**—decl. of, 76, 108; for **secundus**, 96, 5; **alter alterum**, reciprocal, 221, n. 1; and **alius**, 319.
- alteruter**—decl. of, 76, 108.
- altitūdō**—with Acc. of Extent, 335, n.1.
- altus**—with Acc. of Extent, 335, n.1.
- amāre**—122; **amābō**, with Impv., 269; **amāns**, 437, n.1; with Gen., 375, n.2.
- amb**—in composition, 9, 4.
- ambire**—conj. of, 189, 2, n.1.
- ambō**—decl. of, 73, n. 95, 108; and **uterque**, 292.
- amicus**—with Gen. or Dat., 359, n.1.
- amplius**—with **quam** omitted, 296, n.4.
- an**—in disjunctive questions, 457, 1; in phrases, *ib.* 2; strengthened by **ne**, *ib.* 1, n.2; as a simple interrog. particle, *ib.* 1, n.3; in second part of a disjunctive question, 458; **anne**, *ib.*; and **aut**, *ib.* n.4; **annōn** and **necne**, 459; for **num** or **ne** in indirect question, 460, 1, n.1; or 497.
- anacoluthon**—697.
- Anacreontic**—measure, 819.
- anacrusis** and **anacrusistic scheme**, 739
- anapaestic**—foot, 734; rhythm, 736; varieties of, 777-782; substitutes for, 777.
- anaphora**—485, n.2; 636, n.4; 682.
- angi**—with Acc. and Inf., 533, n.1.
- angiportus**—decl. of, 68, 5.
- animadvertere**—with Inf., 527, n.1.
- animals**—as instruments or agents, 214, n.2.
- animus**—with **ut**, 546, n.2; **animus advertere**, with Acc., 342; **animi** as Loc., 374, n.7; in **animō esse**, with Inf., 422, n.5.
- Aniō**—decl. of, 41, 4.
- annuere**—with Dat., *etc.*, 347, n.2.
- ante**—in composition, 9, 4; vbs. opd. will take Acc. or Dat., 331, 347; with Abl. of Standard or Acc. of Extent, 403, n.4; position of, 413, n.1 and n.3; as adv., 415; as prep., 416, 3; with Acc. Ger., 432 and n.1; with part., 437, n.2.
- anteāquam**—see **antequam**.
- antecedent**—action, 561-567; definite, 613; repetition of, 615; incorporation of, 616; indefinite, 621; def. or indef. with Indic. or Subjv., 631, 1, and 2.
- antecēdere**—with Dat., *etc.*, 347, n.2.
- antecellere**—with Dat., *etc.*, 347, n.2; with Abl. of Respect, 397, n.2.
- anteire**—with Dat., *etc.*, 347, n.2.
- antepenult**—11.
- antequam**—with Indic., 574-576; with Pr., 575; with Pf. and Fut. Pf., 576; with Subjv., 577.
- anterior**—87, 8.
- aorist**—forms on **sō, sim**, 131, 4, b.; definition, 224; Pure Pf. as Aor., 236, n.; Hist. Pf., 239; Plupf., 241, n.1; Pf. as Potential of Past, 258, n.2.
- apodosis**—589; omission of, 601; in comparative sentences, 602; in Indic. in Unreal Conditions, 597, n.3; after vrb. requiring Subjv., *ib.* n.5.
- aposiopesis**—691.
- appārere**—as cop. vb., 206, n.1; with Nom. and Inf., 528, n.2; with **ut**, 553, 4.
- appellāre**—with two Accs., 340; with two Noms., 206.
- appointing**—vbs. of, with Dat. of Ger., 429, 2.
- apposition**—320; concord in, 321; exceptions, *ib.* n. n. n. n.; Partitive, 322, 323; Restrictive, 322; Distributive, 323; whole and part, *ib.* n.2; to sentence, 324; predicate, 325; Gen. of, 361; to names of Towns, 386, n.1; to Loc., 411, n.3; pron. incorporated, 614, n.4; subat. incorporated, 616, 2.
- appropinquāre**—with Dat., 346, n.2.
- appurtenance**—suffix of, 182, 6.
- aptus**—constr., 552, n.2; with **qui** and Subjv., 631, 1.
- apud**—416, 4.

- arbitrārī**—with Inf., 527,R.2.  
**arbitratū**—as Abl. of Cause, 408,N.1.  
**arbor**—decl. of, 45,N.  
**arcēre**—with Abl. of Separation, 390,2,N.2.  
**Archilochian**—measure, 788, 800.  
**arcus**—decl. of, 68,5.  
**ārdēre**—with Inf., 423,2,N.2; **ārdēns**, to express cause, 408,N.2.  
**ārdor**—with **ut**, 546,N.2.  
**arguere**—with Gen., 378,R.1; with Inf., 528,N.1.  
**Aristophanic**—measure, 793.  
**arrangement**—of words, 671-683; of clauses, 684-687; grammatical or rhetorical, 672; ascending and descending, 673; of simple sentences, 674; of interrog. sentences, 675; of adj. and Gen., 676; of advs., 677; of preps., 678; of particles, 679; of attributes, 680; of opposites, 681; of pairs, 682; anaphoric and chiasmic, 682; poetical, 683; periods, 685; historical and oratorical, 687.  
**arridēre**—with Dat., *etc.*, 347,R.2.  
**artisan**—suffixes for, 181,3.  
**ās**—decl. of, 48,R.  
**Asclepiadean**—measure, 802, 803.  
**asking**—vbs. of, with two Accs., 339 and R.1,N.1; with Inf. or **ut**, 546 and R.3.  
**aspergere**—with Dat. and Acc., or Acc. and Abl., 348,R.1.  
**aspicere**—with Inf., 527,R.1; **aspectū**, 436,N.1.  
**aspirates**—6,2,B.  
**assentiri**—with Dat., 346,R.2; 347,R.2.  
**assequi**—with **ut**, 553,1.  
**-assere**—as Inf. ending, 131,4,b.4.  
**asseverations**—in Subjv., 262; in Fut. Indic., *ib.* N.; with **nisi**, 591,b.2.  
**assidēre**—with Dat., *etc.*, 347,R.2.  
**assimilations**—of vowels, 8,4; of consonants, 9,1,2,3; of preps., 9,4; of Voc., 211,R.3.  
**assuēfacere**—with Abl. or Dat., 401,N.2; with Inf., 423,2,N.2.  
**assuēscere**—with Abl. or Dat., 401,N.2; with Inf., 423,2,N.2.  
**astū**—in Abl. of Manner, 399,N.1.  
**asyndeton**—after demonstrative, 307, R.4; in coördination, 473,N., 474,N., 483, N., 492,N.  
**at**—use of, 488 and NN.; **ast**, 488,N.1.  
**atque**—for **quam**, 296,N.4; syntax of, 477 and notes; adds a third member, 481,N.; with adjs. of Likeness, *etc.*, 643; for **quam** after neg. Comp., 644,N.2.  
**atqui**—489; **atquin**, *ib.* N.1.  
**attendance**—Abl. of, 392; with **cum**, *ib.* R.1; instrumental, *ib.* R.2.  
**attinet**—with Inf., 422,N.4; restrictions with, 627,R.2.  
**attraction**—in Gender, 211,R.5; in mood, 508,4, 629; of vb. of Saying into Subjv., 541,N.3, 585,N.3, 630,N.3; of Rel., 617; inverse, 617,N.2; of mood in general, 662, 663.  
**attributive**—288; concord of adj., 289; with two or more substs., 290; position of, 291; superlatives of Order and Sequence, 291,1,R.2; pred., 325; various peculiarities of, *ib.* RE.; omitted with cognate Acc., 333,2,N.1; with Abl. of Time, 393,R.5; omitted with Abl. of Manner, 399,N.1; with Inf., 421,N.2; with part., 437,R.  
**au**—pronunciation of, 4; weakening of, 8,1.  
**auctorem -esse**, with Dat., 346,N.5; with Inf., 527,R.2; with **ut**, 546,N.1.  
**auctōritās**—with **ut**, 546,N.1; **auctōritāte** as Abl. of Cause, 408,N.1.  
**audēre**—with Inf., 423,2,N.2.  
**audire**—like Gr. ἀκούειν, 206,N.2; **audiēns**, with Dat., 346,N.5; with **cum** and Subjv., 580,R.2; with Inf. and part., 527,R.1, and N.1; with rel. and Indic., 467,N.; **audītū**, 436,N.1.  
**auscultāre**—with Dat., 346,R.2.  
**aut**—distinguished from **an**, 438,N.4; use of, 493 and notes; **aut**—**aut** with Pl., 285,N.1; subdivides a neg., 445.  
**autem**—position of, 413,N.3, 484,R.; syntax of, 484; in lively questions, *ib.* N.1; strengthens **sed**, 485,N.3, 592.  
**auxiliārī**—with Dat., 346,R.2.  
**auxiliāris**—and **auxiliārius**, 84,2.  
**auxiliary**—vbs. with Inf., 280,1,b.  
**avēre**—with Inf., 423,2,N.2.  
**āversus**—with Dat., 359,R.5.  
**Baccar**—68,12.  
**Bacchic**—foot, 734; measures, 811-814.  
**balneum**—68,3.  
**becoming**—vbs. of, with two Noms., 206.  
**beginning**—vbs. of, with Inf., 423, and N.2.  
**believing**—vbs. of, with Acc. and Inf., 526 and 527; with Nom., 528.  
**bellāre**—with Dat., 346,N.6.

**bellum**—in Abl. of Time, 394,n; **belli** as Loc., 411,r.2.  
**belonging**—suffixes for, 182,5.  
**benevolus**—compared, 87,4.  
*beseeking*—vbs. of, with **ut**, 546.  
*bewaring*—vbs. of, with **nē**, 548.  
**bibere**—with **dare**, 421,n.1,b.  
*bidding*—vbs. of, with **Dat.**, 346.  
**biugus**—and **biugis**, 84,1.  
**bimātris** 85,1.  
**binī**—for **duo**, 346,n.2.  
**blandiri**—with **Dat.**, 346,n.2.  
**boards**—with **Dat. Ger.**, 429,1.  
**bonus**—comparison, 90; **cui bonō**, 356, r.1; **hene**, as adv. of Degree, 439,n.2, and 3.  
**books**—omit **in** with **Abl.**, 387.  
**bōs**—decl. of, 52,7.  
**brachylogy**—689.  
**breathings**—6,2,A.  
*buying*—vbs. of, with **Gen.** or **Abl.**, 379, 380.  
**C**—sound of, 1,r.1; name of, 1,N.  
**cadere**—with **Abl.** of Separation, 390,2,n.2.  
**cæsura**—defined, 750; varieties, 751; masc. and fem., 752; bucolic, 753,r.2; in Iamb. Sen., 759,n.2; in Iam. Trim. Cat., 761,n.; in Iam. Trim. Claud., 762, n.4; in Iam. Oct., 763,n.b.; in Iam. Sept., 764,n.2; in Troch. Sept., 770,n.2; in Dac. Hex., 784,n.2; in alcaic, 791, 798, 799,n.1; in Glyconic, 795; in Phalæcean, 798,n.3; in Sapphic, 797,n.2, 804; in Archilochian, 800,n.; in Asclepiadean, 802,n.1.  
*calling*—vbs. of, with two Accs., 340; with two Noms., 206.  
**calx**—decl. of, 70,D.  
**campi**—as Loc., 411,r.2.  
**cantica**—defined, 747; in early Latin, 824; in later Latin, 825.  
*capability*—adjs. of, with **Inf.**, 421,n.1,c.  
*capacity*—adjs. of, with **Dat. Ger.**, 429,2; suffixes for, 182,2.  
**capī**—with **Gen.** of Charge, 378,r.1.  
**capital**—decl. of, 78,n.  
**caput**—decl. of, 53,8; **est** with **Inf.**, 422, n.2.  
**cardinal numbers**—94; **Gen. Pl.** of, 95, n.2; collective **Sg.** of, *ib.*; **duo** and **ambō**, 292; with **singuli**, 295; for Distributive, 295,n.; position of, 676,n.2.

**carēre**—with **Abl.**, 405; with **Gen.**, 383,1, n.2.  
**carō**—decl. of, 41,4; gender of, 43,1.  
**Carthāgini**—as Loc., 411,r.1.  
**cārus**—with **Abl.** of Price, 404,n.2.  
**cases**—defined, 23; strong and weak, **rēcti** and **obliqui**, 24; case-forms, 25; endings, 25,2.  
**cassis**—decl. of, 68,12.  
**cāsū**—as **Abl.** of Manner, 399,n.1.  
**catalexis**—742.  
**causā**—with **Gen.**, 373; with poss. pron., *ib.* n.2; with **Gen. Ger.**, 428,n.2; **causa**, in phrases with **ut**, 546,n.2; **causam vincere**, 333,2,n.  
**CAUSAL SENTENCES**—coördinate, 498; particles, 498; syntax of subordinate, 538-542; general division, 538, 539; with **quod**, *etc.*, and **Indic.**, 540; with **quod**, *etc.*, and **Subjv.**, 541; with **quia**, *ib.* n.1; rejected reason, *ib.* n.2; with **quandōque**, *ib.* n.5; with vbs. of Emotion, 542; **si** for **quod**, *ib.* n.1; with **cum**, 580,r.1 and 2, 586; with **tamquam**, *etc.*, 541,n.4, 602,n.4; relative, 634; clauses in **O.O.**, 655.  
*causation*—vbs. of, with **part.**, 537; with **ut**, 553,1; pass. with **ut**, *ib.* 3.  
**causative verbs**—formation of, 191,4.  
**cause**—**Abl.** of, 408; various expressions for, *ib.* nn.; preventing, *ib.* n.4; external, *ib.* n.6; represented by **part.**, 666, 670,2.  
**cavēre**—with **Subjv.** for **Impv.**, 271,2; with **Dat.**, 346,n.2; constructions with, 548,nn. 1 and 3.  
**ce**—appended to **iste**, 104,3,n.2; to **ille**, *ib.* n.3.  
**cēdere**—with **Dat.**, 346,n.2; with **Abl.** of Separation, 390,2,n.2.  
**cedo**—defective, 175,6.  
**cēlāre**—with two Accs., or **dē**, 339 and n.1 and 3,n.1.  
**celer**—comparison of, 87,1, and n.  
**cēnsōre**—with **Inf.**, 527,n.2; with **ut**, 546, n.1; **cēnsēō**, *yes*, 471,2.  
**centimanus**—defective, 85,2.  
**cernere**—with **Inf.**, 527,n.1.  
**certāre**—with **Dat.**, 346,n.6; **rem certāre**, 333,2,n.  
**certus**—strengthens **quidam**, 313,n.3; with **Gen.**, 374,n.9; **certō**, **certōs**, *yes*, 471,1; **certō**, strengthens **at**, 488,n.2; **certius** (**quam**), with **Inf.**, 422,n.8;



- certum est**, with Inf., 423,2,N.2; **certiorem facere**, with Inf., 527,R.2.
- cēssāre**—with Inf., 423,2,N.2.
- (cēterus)**—Nom. masc. wanting, 74,R.2, 85,1; use of **cēterum**, 491; **cētera** used partitively, 291,R.2; **alius** instead, 319, N.1: as Acc. of Respect, 338,2.
- charge**—in Gen. with Judicial verbs, 378; with **nōmine**, *ib.* R.2; in Abl., *ib.* R.3.
- chiasmus**—682 and R.
- choosing**—vbs. of, with two Noms., 206; with two Accs., 340; End with Dat. or **ad**, *ib.* R.2; vbs. of, with Final Dat., 356,N.2.
- choriambic**—feet, 734; rhythms, 801.
- cingi**—with Acc., 338,N.2.
- circā**—position of, 413,R.1; as adv., 415; as prep., 416,5; with Acc. Ger., 432 and N.1.
- circiter**—as prep., 416,6.
- circum**—in composition, 9,4; vbs. cpd. with, take Acc., 331; never repeated, *ib.* R.2; as adv., 415; as prep., 416,5.
- circumdare**—with Dat. and Acc., or Acc. and Abl., 348,R.1.
- circumfundere**—with Acc. and Dat., or Acc. and Abl., 348,R.1.
- circumspice**—with direct question, 467, N.
- circumstantial cum**—585-588.
- cis**—as prep., 416,7.
- citerior**—87,2 and 7.
- citius quam**—constr. after, 644,R.3.
- citrā**—as adv., 415; as prep., 416,7.
- civitās**—concord of, in pred., 211,R.6.
- clam**—as adv., 415; as prep., 416,8.
- clanculum**—as prep., 416,8.
- clivus**—decl. of, 67,2.
- clothing**—vbs. of, with Acc. of Respect, 338,N.2; with Abl. of Means, 401,N.1.
- cluēre**—with Nom. and Inf., 528,N.1.
- coepti**—175,5,α, and N.; with Inf., 423, N.3.
- cōgere**—with Inf., 423,2,N.2; with **ut**, 553, 2; *conclude*, with Inf., 546,R.1, 553,2,N.
- cōgitāre**—with Inf., 423,2,N.2.
- cōgitātiō**—in phrases with **ut**, 557,R.
- Cognate Accusative**—333,2; similar phrases, *ib.* R.; with second Acc., 341; with **prohibēre**, **iubēre**, *ib.* N.2.
- cōgnātus**—with Gen. or Dat., 359,R.1.
- cōgnitiō**—in phrases with **ut**, 557,R.
- cōgnōmen esse**—with Dat., 349,R.5.
- cōgnōscere**—with Inf., 527,R.1; **cōgnitū** as Sup., 436,N.1.
- coincidence**—constr. with, 513,N.3.
- coire**—with Dat., 346,N.6.
- colligere**—with Inf., 527,R.2.
- collocāre**—with **in** and Abl., 385,R.1; with **in** and Acc., *ib.* N.2.
- colus**—decl. of, 61,N.5.
- comitārī**—with Dat., 346,N.2.
- comitiīs**—as Abl. of Time, 393,R.5.
- commiserārī**—with Acc., 377,N.2.
- committere**—with Acc. Ger., 430,N.1; with **ut**, 548,N.1.
- commovēre**—with **ut**, 553,2; **commōtus**, to express cause, 408,N.2.
- commūne**—as subst., 211,R.4; in phrases with **ut**, 557,R.; **commūnis**, with Gen. or Dat., 359,R.1.
- comparative**—in **ior**, 86; in **entior**, 87,4,5; lacking, 87,9; with **quam** or Abl., 296 and RR.; omission of **quam**, *ib.* R.4; age with **nātus**, *ib.* R.5; with **opiniōne**, *ib.* R.6; of Disproportion, 298; omission of **ut** after **quam**, *ib.* R.2; restriction of, 300; strengthened, 301; doubled, *ib.*; with Part. Gen., 372 and R.2; with Abl. of Respect, 398 and R.; with Abl. of Measure, 403,N.1; with Abl. Ger., 431,N.2; with **quam quī**, 631,3.
- COMPARATIVE SENTENCES**—638-644; division of, 638; moods in, 639; vb. omitted in, 640; in dependent clauses, 641; cor-relatives in, 642; *the more—the more*, *ib.* R.2; with **atque**, 643; with **quam**, 644.
- comparison**—of adjectives, 86; peculiarities, 87; by **magis** and **māximē**, *ib.* 6; by **plūs** and **plūrimum**, *ib.* 6,N.2; defective, 87,2,7,9; of participles, 88,89; of advs., 93; irregular, 90; standard of, omitted, 297; of qualities, 299; conditional sentences of, 602.
- compelling**—vbs. of, with **ut**, 553,2.
- compensatory lengthening**—9,6,α.
- comperce**—with Inf. for Impv., 271,2,N.2.
- comperire**—with Gen., 378,R.1; with Inf., 527,R.1.
- compēsce**—with Inf. for Impv., 271,2, N.2.
- complēre**—with Gen., 383,1.
- complexus**—as a Present, 282,N.
- compos**—with Gen., 374,N.3.
- composition**—of words, 193-200; divisions, 193; of substs., 194-198; of vbs., 199-200.

compounds—attrib., 197,1; dependent, *ib.* 2; poss., 198; quantity in, 715.

con—see cum.

cōnārī—with Inf., 423,2,N.2.

cōnātus—defective, 68,5.

concēdere—used personally in pass., 217, N.2; with Dat., 346,N.2; with Inf., 423,2, N.2; 532,N.1; with Acc. Ger., 430,N.1; with *ut*, 548,N.1.

conceiving—vbs. of, with obj. clause, 523.

concessive—Subjv., 264; cum, 580,NN.1 and 2, 587; *quī*, 634; part., 609,667,670,4.

CONCESSIVE SENTENCES—603-609; with *etsi*, etc., 604; with *quamquam*, 605; with *quamvis*, etc., 606; with *licet*, 607; with *ut*, 608; representatives of, 609.

conclūdere—with Inf., 527,N.2.

concord—210; pred. with subj., 211; violations of, *ib.* RR.1-6,NN.1-3; of subj. and pred. multiplied, 285 287; of app., 321; neut. for persons, 323,N.2; of rel., 614.

concupiēns—with Gen., 375,N.2.

concurrere—with Dat., 346,N.6.

condecet—with Inf., 422,N.4.

condemning—vbs. of, with Gen., 378; with other constrs., *ib.* N.2; with Abl., *ib.* N. 3; enforced destination, *ib.* N.4.

condiciō—in phrases with *ut*, 546,N.2.

condition—suffixes for, 181,8; indicated by a question, 453,N.3; represented by part., 667,670,4.

conditional cum—583.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES—589 602; division of, 589; sign, 590; negatives, 591; two excluding, 592; equivalents of Protasis, 593; classification of, 594. LOGICAL, 595; in *Ō.O.*, *ib.* N.1; with Subjv., *ib.* RR. 2,3; *sive*—*sive*, *ib.* N.4; *siquidem*, *ib.* N. 5; *simoao*, *ib.* N.6; phrases, *ib.* N.1; range of tenses, *ib.* N.2. IDEAL, 596; for unreal, *ib.* N.1; shift to unreal, *ib.* N.2; after *nōn possum*, *ib.* N.3; in *Ō.O.*, *ib.* N.5. UNREAL, 597; Impf. of Past, *ib.* N.1; Indic. in Apodosis, *ib.* RR.2,3; in *Ō.O.*, *ib.* N.4; after a vb. requiring Subjv., *ib.* N. 5; *absque*, *ib.* N.1. INCOMPLETE, 598-601; omission of sign, 598; of vb. of Prot., 599; of Prot., 600; of Apod., 601; of Comparison, 602; in *Ō.O.* general consideration, 656; Logical, 657; Ideal, 658; Unreal, 659; Pf. Inf. and *potuisse*, *ib.* N. 1.

conducit—with Dat., 346,N.2; with Gen., 379; with Acc. Ger., 430,N.1.

cōnfici—with Inf., 533,N.1; with *tu*, 553,3.

cōnfidere—with Dat., 346,N.2 and N.2; with Abl., 401,N.6; with Inf., 527,N.2.

cōnfirmāre—with Inf., 527,N.2.

congruere—with Dat., etc., 347,N.2.

conjugation—defined, 17; systems of, 120; first, 122; second, 123; irregular second, 124; third, 125; third in *iō*, 126; fourth, 127; deponents, 128; periphrastic, 129; notes on; 130,131; change in, 136.

conjunction—defined, 16,7. and N.3.

cōniungere—with Dat. or cum, 359,N.3.

CONSEQUENT SENTENCES—exceptional sequence in, 513; syntax of, 551 558; general division, 551; Pure, 552; *tantum abest ut*, *ib.* N.1; with *dignus*, etc., *ib.* N.2; with idea of Design, *ib.* N.3; *ut nōn*, without, *ib.* N.4; Complementary, 553; vbs. of Effecting, 553; vbs. of Causation, *ib.* 1; of Compelling, etc., *ib.* 2; Happening, etc., *ib.* 3; impersonals, *ib.* 4; vbs. of Hindering, 554 556; *quān* with vbs. of Preventing, 555,1; with vbs. of Doubt, *ib.* 2; *quān* = *ut nōn*, 556; *nōn dubitō quān*, *ib.* RR.1,2; Explanatory *ut*, 557; Exclamatory question, 558; rel. sentences, 631; with def. antecedent, *ib.* 1; with indef. antecedent, *ib.* 2; with Comp., *ib.* 3; with adj., *ib.* 4; with *quān*, 632; Indic. for Subjv., *ib.* 2,RR.1,2.

cōnsentāneum—with Inf., 422,N.3.

cōnsentire—with Dat., etc., 347,N.2.

cōnsequi—and cōnsequēns, with *ut*, 553, 1 and 4.

cōnsidere—with in and Abl., 385,N.1.

cōnsilium—in Abl. of Cause, 408,N.1; in phrases, with Inf., 422,N.2 and 428,N.2; with *dare* and *ut*, 546,NN.1 and 2.

cōnsistere—with Abl. of Material, 396, N.1.

consonants—6; double, *ib.* 3; sounds of, 7; phonetic variations in, 9; combinations of, 10,N.1.

cōnsors—with Gen., 374,N.2.

cōnspiciārī—with Inf., 527,N.1.

cōnspicere—with Inf., 527,N.1.

cōnstāre—with Dat., etc., 347,N.2; with Gen., 379; with Abl. of Material, 396,N. 1; with Nom. and Inf., 528,N.2.

cōnstituere—with in and Abl., 385,N.1; with Inf., 423,2,N.2; with *ut*, 546,N.1.

cōnstrūctiō—ad sūmum, 211,N.1,N.3; *prae-gnāns*, 699

- cōnsuēscere**—with *Inf.*, 423,2,N.2; **cōnsuētus**, with *Inf.*, 421,N.1,c.  
**cōnsuētūdō**—in Abl. of Manner, 399,N.1; in phrases, with *Inf.*, 422,N.2, or *ut*, 557, R.  
**cōnsulere**—with two Accs., 339 and N.1; with *Dat.*, 346,R.2 and N.2; **bonī cōnsulere**, 380,N.2.  
contemporaneous action—538-573: in Extent, 569,570; in Limit, 571-573.  
**contendere**—with *Dat.*, 346,N.6; with *Inf.*, 423,2,N.2; with *ut*, 546,N.1.  
**continēri**—with Abl. of Material, 396,N.1; **contentus**, with Abl., 401,N.6.  
**contingit**—with *ut*, 553,3; **contigit**, with *Dat.*, 346,R.2; sequence after, 513, N.2; attraction of pred. after, 535,R.3.  
**continuance**—vbs. of, with *Inf.*, 423, and N.2.  
**contrā**—position of, 413,R.1; as adv., 415; as prep., 416,9; with **atque**, 643,N.3.  
**contracting**—vbs. of, with Acc. Ger., 430.  
contraction—of shorts, 732.  
**contrārius**—with Gen. or *Dat.*, 359,R.1; with **atque**, 643,N.3.  
contrasts—with **hic—ille**, 307,RR.1,2; with **ipse**, 311,R.1; with **aliquis**, 314; **alter—alter**, etc., 323.  
**convenire**—Indic. for Subjv., 254,R.1; with *Dat.*, 346,N.2, 347,R.2.  
**convicting**—vbs. of, with Gen., 378; other constr., *ib.* R.2.  
**coördination**—defined, 472; without conjunction, 472,R.; syntax of, 473-503; copulative, 474-482; adversative, 483-491; disjunctive, 492-497; causal and illative, 498-503.  
**cōpia**—with *Inf.*, 428,N.2.  
**copula**—with pred., 205; itself a pred., *ib.* N.; omitted, 209; agrees with pred., 211,R.1,EX.c.  
**copulative**—vbs., 206; with Nom. and *Inf.*, *ib.* R.3. Particles. 474; omitted, *ib.* N., 481. Sentences, 474-482; use of neg. to connect, 480.  
**cor**—decl. of, 53,8; **cordī est**, with *Inf.*, 422,N.5.  
**cōram**—as adv., 415; as prep., 417,3.  
**cornus**—decl. of, 68,5.  
**corpus**—decl. of, 48.  
correlatives—109-111; pronominal adjs., 109; advs., 110; cpds., 111; coördinating particles, as **tum—tum**, **aliās—aliās**, etc., 482; of Rel., 618; absorption of, 619, 621; position of, 620; in comparative sentences, 642; omitted, 642,3.  
correction—744.  
**cōs**—defective, 70,D.  
countries—in Acc., with prep., 337,R.1; without, *ib.* N.1; in Abl., 391,N.  
**crassitūdō**—with Acc. of Extent, 335,R.1.  
**crassus**—with Acc. of Extent, 335,R.1.  
**crāstinī**—as Loc., 411,N.1.  
**creāre**—with two Accs., 340; with two Noms., 206.  
**creation**—vbs. of, with *Inf.*, 280,1,b.  
**crēdere**—personal in pass., 217,N.1; with *Dat.*, 346,R.2; with *Inf.*, 527,R.2; **crēditur**, with *Inf.*, 528,R.2.  
cretic—foot, 734; substitutions for, 806; rhythms, 806-810.  
**cruciārī**—with *Inf.*, 533,R.1.  
**cūius**—as poss. pron., 106,N.4.  
**culpa**—with Epexegetical Gen., 361,2.  
**cum**—and **quom**, 7; in composition, 9,4; with subst. to form cpd. subj., 285,N.2; vbs. cpd. with take Acc., or *Dat.*, 331, 347; with Abl. of Attendance, 392, and R.1; to indicate Time, 394,N.2; with Abl. of Manner, 399; with unnatural productions, 400,R.2; position of, 413,R.1; with Abl. Ger., 433; as prep., 417,4; with **eō** and **quod**, 525,2,N.2; (**primum**), as soon as, 561-563; Causal, 564,N.2; with Iterative action, 566, 567; with Subjv., *ib.* N.; derivation of, 578; general view of, 579; Temporal, 580; **fuit cum**, *ib.* R.1; **meminī cum**, *ib.* R.2; with Lapses of Time, *ib.* R.3; in early Latin, *ib.* N.1; Inverse, 581; Explicative, 582; Conditional, 583, 590,N.3; Iterative, 584; with Subjv., *ib.* R.; Circumstantial, 585-588; Historical, 585; Causal, 586; Concessive and Adversative, 587; **cum nōn** = *without*, *ib.* R.2; **cum—tum**, 588; mood, *ib.* 2; **cum interim**, with *Inf.*, 635,N.2; with Indic. retained in O.O., 655,R.3.  
**-cumque**—makes general relatives, 111,2.  
**cūncta**—Acc. of Respect, 338,2; may omit in with Abl. of Place, 388.  
**cunctārī**—with *Inf.*, 423,2,N.2.  
**cupere**—with Pf. *Inf.*, 280,2,e,N.; with *Dat.*, 346,R.2; **cupienti est**, 353,N.2; with *Inf.*, 423,2,N.2; 538,N.1; **cupiēns**, with Gen., 375,N.2.  
**cupiditās**—with *ut*, 546,N.2.  
**cupidus**—with Gen., 374,N.5.  
**cupressus**—decl. of, 68,5.

- cūra**—with **ut**, 546.N.2; **cūrae est**, with **Inf.**, 422.N.5.
- cūrāre**—with **Inf.**, 423.2.N.2; with **Acc. Ger.**, 430.N.1; with **part.**, 537.N.2; with **ut**, 546.N.1; **cūrā ut** for **Impv.**, 271.1, and 2.N.2.
- curriculō**—as **Abl.** of **Manner**, 399.N.1.
- Dactylic**—foot, 734; substitutions, 783; rhythm, 736; rhythms, 783-789.
- damnās**—indeclinable, 85.C.
- daps**—defective, 70.D.
- dare**—**Pf.** **dedrot**, 131.6; **Pr.** **danunt**, 133.IV., N.2; with **ad** or **Dat.**, 345.N.2; with **Final Dat.**, 356.N.2; **operam**, with **Dat. Ger.**, 429.N.1, or **ut**, 546.N.1; with **Acc. Ger.**, 430.N.1; **nūptum**, etc., 435.N.1; with **Pf. part.**, 537.N.2; **permiit**, with **ut**, 553.2.
- DATIVE**—defined, 23.3; 1st decl. in **āi, ā, ābus, ās, ēis**, 29.NN.3.4; 3d decl. in **ēi, e**, 37.2; 4th decl. in **ubus, uēi, ū, ūi**, 61.N., and N.2; 5th decl., uncommon, 63.N.1; in **ē, ī, ib**, N.2; in **Greek substs.**, 66.N.2; in **adjs.** in **āi, ā, ābus, is** (for **ils**), 75.NN.2.6; in **ī** of **pron. adjs.**, 76.2; with **act. vb.** unchanged in **pass.**, 217, 346.N.1; gives **End** with **vbs.** of **Taking**, etc., 340.N.2; with **ei** and **vae**, 343.I.N.2; of **Indirect Obj.**, 344; with **trans. vbs.**, 345; with **vbs.** of **Taking Away**, **ib**, N.1; and **prō**, **ib**, N.2; with **intrans. vbs.**, 346; with **cpd. vbs.**, 347; with **vbs. cpd.** with **dē, ex, ab**, **ib**, N.5; and **Acc.** with **vbs.** of **Giving** and **Putting**, 348; of **Possessor**, 349; of **Personal Interest**, 350; **Ethical**, 351; of **Reference**, 352, 353; with **participles**, 353; of **Agent**, 215, 354; **Double**, 356; with **substs.**, 357; **Local**, 358; with **adjs.**, 359; with **cpds.** of **dī, dis**, 390.2.N.5; of **Ger.**, 429.
- dē**—with **Abl.** for **second Acc.**, 339.NN.2.3; **vbs. cpd.** with **take Dat.**, 347.N.5; with **Abl.** of **Separation**, 390.1, and 2; to **indicate Time**, 394.N.2; with **Abl.** of **Origin**, 395, and N.2; with **Abl.** of **Respect**, 397, N.1; with **Abl.** of **Cause**, 408.N.3; **position** of, 413.N.1; as **prep.**, 418.5; with **Abl. Ger.**, 433; with **part.**, 437.N.2; **dē eō quod**, 525.2.N.2.
- death**—deponent **vb.** of **as act.** in **Abl. Abs.**, 410.N.1.
- dēbēre**—**Indic.** for **Subjv.**, 254, N.1; **Impf.** as **tense** of **Disappointment**, **ib**, N.2; with **Pf. Inf.**, 280.2.b, and N.3; with **Inf.**, 423.2.N.2.
- decēre**—with **Pf. Inf.**, 280.2.b.N.1; with **Dat.**, 346.N.3; with **Abl.** of **Respect**, 397.N.2.
- dēcernere**—with **Inf.**, 423.2.N.2, and 546.N.1; with **ut**, 546.N.1.
- declension**—defined, 17; varieties of, 27; rules for, 28; 1st, 29-30; 2d, 31-33; stems in **-ro** and **-ero**, 32; 3d, 35-60; stems of, 35; formation of **Nom. Sg.**, 36; liquid stems, 39-46; sibilant, 47-49; mute, 50-55; vowel, 56-59; 4th, 61, 62; 5th, 63, 64; vary between 5th and 3d, 63.N.2; of **Greek substs.**, 65; **adjs.** of 1st and 2d, 73; of **pron. adjs.**, 76; **parts.**, 80.
- decōrus**—with **Abl.**, 397.N.2.
- decrever**—**vbs.** of, with **Dat. Ger.**, 429.2.
- dēdecet**—with **Inf.**, 422.N.4.
- dēesse**—with **Dat.**, 349.N.4.
- dēferre**—with **Gen.** of **Charge**, 378.N.1.
- dēfessus**—with **Inf.**, 421.N.1.c.
- dēficere**—with **Acc.**, 346.N.3.
- dēfigere**—with **in** and **Abl.**, 385.N.1.
- degree**—**advs.** of, modify other **advs.**, 459.N.2.
- dēicere**—with **Abl.**, 390.2.N.3.
- dēlectārī**—with **Acc.**, 346.N.3.
- deliberative questions**—265; **Subjv.** in **Ō.O.**, 651.N.2.
- dēliberātum est**—with **Inf.**, 423.2.N.2.
- dēlicium**—decl. of, 68.3.
- dēligere**—with two **Accs.**, 340; with two **Noms.**, 206.
- demanding**—**vbs.** of, with **ut**, 546.
- dēmergere**—with **in** and **Abl.**, 385.N.1.
- dēmīrārī**—with **Inf.**, 533.N.1.
- dēmōnstrāre**—with **Inf.**, 527.N.2.
- demonstratives**—104; attracted in **Gender**, 211.N.5, and N.3; **syntax** of, 305-307; **hic**, 305; **iste**, 306; **ille**, 307; **hic —ille**, **ib**, NN.1.2; **advs.** similarly used, **ib**, N.3; strengthened by **quidem**, **ib**, N.4; reflexive of, 521.N.5; followed by **quod**, 525.2; continue a **rel. clause**, 636.N.1; **position** of, 676.N.1.
- dēmōvēre**—with **Abl.**, 390.2.N.3.
- denominative**—179.2, and N.; **Pf.** of **vbs.**, 134.V.; formation of **vbs.**, 192.
- dense growths**—**suffixes** for, 181.11.
- dentals**—6.1; **suffixes** with, 186.
- dēpellere**—with **Abl.**, 390.2.N.3.
- deponent**—113; conjugation, 128; list of, 163-166; **semi**, 167; how used, 220.

- dēprecārī**—with **nē**, 548,N.1.  
**dēprehendī**—with Gen. of Charge, 378, R.1.  
*depriving*—vbs. of, with Abl., 405,N.  
 derivative words—179,2.  
 descent—suffixes for, 182,11.  
**dēsiderāre**—with Inf., 423,2,N.2.  
 desiderative verbs—formation of, 191,3.  
**dēsinerē**—with Inf., 423,2,NN.2,3.  
*desire*—adjs. of, with Gen., 374; vbs. of, with Inf., 281,C.; 423,2,NN.2,4; sequence after, 515,R.3; with Acc. and Inf., 532; with **ut**, *ib.* N.1-4; with part., 537,N.1; with complementary Final clause, 546.  
**dēsistere**—with Abl., 390,2,N.3.  
**dēspērāre**—with Dat., 346,R.2; with Inf., 527,R.2.  
 determinative pronouns—103; syntax of, 308.  
**dētterrēre**—with Inf., 423,2,N.2; with **nē**, 548,N.1; with **quōminus**, 549,N.1.  
**dēturbāre**—with Abl., 390,2,N.3.  
**deus**—decl. of, 33,R.6.  
**dexter**—decl. of, 74,R.1; Comp. of, 87,1, R.1; *ib.* 2 and 7,  
 diæresis—5, 753.  
 dialysis—724.  
 diastolé—721.  
**dica**—defective, 70,D.  
**dicere**—with two Noms. in pass., 206; omission of, 209,N.5; **dixerat** as Aor., 241,N.1; **dicat**, **dixerit** aliquis, 257,2; with Acc. and Inf., 527,R.1; with Nom. and Inf., 528, and N.1; **dicitur** and **dictum est**, *ib.* R.2; not confined to 3d person, *ib.* N.4; with **ut**, 546,N.1; **dic**, with Indic. question, 467,N.; **dictū**, in Sup., 436,N.  
**[diciō]**—defective, 70,D.  
**diē**—as Loc., 91,3; as Abl. of Time, 393, R.5; **diū**, *by day*, 91,2,f.  
 difference—measure of, 403; vbs. of, with Abl., *ib.* N.1.  
**differre**—with Dat., 346,N.6.  
**difficile**—comparison of, 87,3; with **est** for Subjv., 254,R.1; with Inf., 421,N.1,c.  
*difficulty*—adjs. of, with Abl. Sup., 436,N.2.  
**diffidere**—with Dat., 346,R.2, and N.2; not Abl., 401,N.6.  
**dignārī**—with Abl. of Respect, 397,N.2.  
**dignus**—with Gen., 374,N.10; with Abl. of Respect, 397,N.2; constr. after, 552, R.2; **quī** or **ut**, with Subjv., 631,1, and R.2.  
**diluvium**—heteroclitē, 68,6.  
 diminutive—suffixes for, 181,12, 182,12; vbs., 192,2.  
 diphthongs—4 and N.; length of, 14; quantity of, 705.  
**dis**—in composition, 9,4.  
*disagreement*—vbs. of, with Dat., 346,N.6.  
**discere**—pass. of **docēre**, 339,N.4; with Inf., 527,R.1.  
**discrepāre**—with Dat., 346,N.6.  
**discrucīārī**—with Inf., 533,R.1.  
*disgust*—adjs. of, with Gen., 374.  
*disinclination*—adj. of, for advs., 325,R.6.  
 disjunctive—particles, 492; sentences, 492-497; particles omitted, 492,N.; questions, 452; forms of, 458; indirect, 460,2.  
*displeasure*—vbs. of, with Dat., 346; adjs. of, with Abl. Sup., 436,N.2.  
**displicēre**—with Dat., 346,R.2; **displacet**, with Inf., 422,N.4.  
 disproportion—by **quam prō**, **quī**, **ut**, *etc.*, 298; by positive, with preps., *ib.* R.; omission of **ut** after **quam**, *ib.* N.2.  
**dispudet**—with Gen., 377,N.1; with Inf., 422,N.4.  
**dissentīre**—with Dat., 346,N.6.  
 dissimilation—of Consonants, 9,5.  
**dissimilis**—Comp. of, 87,3.  
**dissimulāre**—with Inf., 527,R.2.  
**distaedet**—with Gen., 377,N.1.  
**distāre**—with Acc., or **ā** and Abl., 335,R.2; with Dat., 346,N.6; with Abl. of Measure, 403,N.1.  
 distributives—97; with **plūrālia tantum**, *ib.* R.3; for cardinals, *ib.* N.1, 295, N.; syntax of, 295; in apposition, 323.  
*diverbiū*—747.  
**dives**—Comp. of, 87,10.  
**divinam rem facere**—with Abl. of Means, 401,N.4.  
**docēre**—with two Accs., or **dē**, 339, and R.1; with **ab**, *ib.* R.2; **doctus**, *ib.* R.2, and N.4; **discere** as pass., *ib.* N.4; constr. after, 423,N.6.  
*doing*—vbs. of, take obj. clause, 523, and 525,1, and N.4.  
**dolēre**—with Inf., 533,R.1; **dolet**, with Dat., 346,N.1; with Dat. and Inf., 533, R.1.  
**dolō**—as Abl. of Manner, 399,N.1.  
**domus**—decl., 61,R.2, 68,5; Acc. as Limit of Motion, 337; Abl. of Separation, 390, 2; **domī**, 411,R.2; with Gen. of poss. pron., 411,R.4.



**dōnāre**—with Dat. and Acc., or Acc. and Abl., 348, R.1.

**dōneo**—derivation, 568 and R.; of complete coextension, with Indic., 569; *until*, with Indic., 571; inverse, *ib.* N.6; with Subjv., 572; to express subordination, *ib.* R.

**dōnicum**—568; range of, 571, N.4.

**dōnique**—range of, 571, N.4.

**doubt**—vbs. of, with **quīn**, 555, 2.

**dropping**—vbs. of, with **quod** clause, 525, 1; with **ut**, *ib.* N.4.

**dubitāre**—**an**, 457, 2; with Inf., 423, 2, N.2; **nōn dubitō**, with **quīn**, 555, 2, R.1; with Interrog., *ib.* R.2; with Inf., *ib.* R.3, and N.

**dubium**—with **an** and Subjv., 457, 2.

**dūcere**—with pred. Nom. or phrase, 206, R.1; with Final Dat., 356, R.2; with Gen. of Price, 379; **pēnsī dūcere**, 380, 1, N.2; *deem*, with Acc. and Inf., 527, R.2; *lead*, with **ut**, 553, 2.

**dum**—enclitic, with Impv., 269; with Pr. Indic., 229, R.; force of, 568, R.; of complete coextension, 569; of partial coextension, 570. *until*, with Indic., 571; with Subjv., 572; to express subordination, *ib.* R.; *provided that*, 573; with **modo**, *ib.*; with Pr. for participle, 570, N.1 and 2; causal, *ib.*; retained, with Indic. in *Ō.O.*, 655, R.3, 663, 1, N.1.

**dummodo**—*provided that*, 573.

**duo**—decl. of, 73, R., 95, and **ambō**, *utroque*, 292.

**dūritia**—heteroclitc, 68, 2.

**duty**—vbs. of, with Inf., 423 and N.2.

**E**—sound of, 3; weakening of, 8, 1; length of final, 707, 2; **ē** and **ex** in comp., 9, 4.

**ease**—adjs. of, with Abl. Sup., 436, N.2.

**ebur**—decl. of, 44, 5.

**ēcastor**—strengthens **atque**, 477, N.2.

**ecce**—with Acc. and Nom., 343, 1, N.2.

**ecquis**—106 and N.5.

**ecthipsis**—719, 2.

**edere**—conjugation of, 172, N.

**ēdicere**—with Inf., 527, R.2; with **ut**, 546, N.1.

**ēducere**—with Abl., 390, 2, N.3.

**effecting**—vbs. of, have Final Sequence, 543, N.1, and N.2; constr. of, 553.

**efferre**—with Abl., 390, 2, N.3.

**efficere**—with Subjv. and **ut**, 553, 1 and 3; with Inf., 527, R.2, 553, 2, N.

**egēnus**—Comp. of, 87, 5; with Gen. or Abl., 405, N.3.

**egēre**—with Gen. or Acc., 383, 1, 405, N.2.

**ego**—decl. of, 100; Gen. Pl. **nostrum**, **nostrī**, 100, R.2, 304, 2 and 3; poss. pron. instead, *ib.* 2, N.2; **nōs** in *Ō.O.*, 660, 4.

**ēgredi**—with Abl., 390, 2, N.3.

**ēgrediē**—adv. of Degree, 439, N.2.

**ei**—with Dat. in exclamations, 343, 1, N.2.

**ēicere**—with Abl., 390, 2, N.3.

**ēlabi**—with Abl., 390, 2, N.3.

**Elegiambus**—821.

**elision**—719, 1; in *Iam. Sen.*, 759, N.3; in *Dac. Hex.*, 784, N.5; in *Pent.*, 786, N.2; in *Sapphic*, 797, N.3; in *Asclepiadean*, 802, N.2.

**ellipsis**—688; see *Omission*.

**em**—with Acc. of Exclamation, 343, 1, N.2.

**emere**—with Gen., 379; **bene emere**, 380, 2, R.

**eminence**—words of, with Abl., 397, N.2.

**ēmittere**—with Abl., 390, 2, N.3.

**emotion**—vbs. of, with Acc., 330, R. and N.2, 333, 1, N.1; vbs. of, with Abl. of Cause, 408; with Acc. and Inf., 533; in Nom. of Part., 536, N.2; Causal sentences after, 542 and R.; perplexing, with indirect question or **si**, 542, N.1.

**emphasis**—in arrangement, 672, 2, a.

**ēn**—in exclamations, 343, 1, N.2.

**enallage**—693.

**enclitics**—effect of, on pronunciation, 15, R.1.

**endeavour**—vbs. of, with **ut**, 546, 1.

**ending**—vbs. of, with Inf., 423, 2 and N.2.

**endings**—of cases, 26, 2, 27.

**endowing**—vbs. of, with Abl. of Means, 401, N.1.

**enim**—position of, 413, N.3, 484, R., 498, N.1; *yes for*, 471, R.; strengthens **sed**, 485, N.3, 498; asseverative, 498, N.2; combinations of, *ib.* N.6; after **quia**, *ib.* N.7.

**enimvērō**—strengthens **sed**, 485, N.3.

**ēniti**—with Inf., 423, 2, N.2.

**enumerations**—in Abl. without **in**, 387.

**epanorthosis**—484, R.1.

**epenthesis**—of vowels, 8, 3; of consonants, 9, 7.

**epicene substantives**—21, 3.

**epulum**—heteroclitc, 68, 3.

**ergā**—use of, 416, 10; with Acc. Ger., 432, N.1.

- ergō**—with Gen., 373; as adv., 399,N.1; with Gen. Ger., 428,R.2; usage of, 502 and N.1; position of, *ib.* N.2; combinations of, *ib.* N.3.
- ēripere**—with Abl., 390,2,N.3.
- ērudire**—with Abl. or *dē*, 339,R.2 and N.3; with *in* or Abl., 401,N.1.
- esse**—conjugation of, 116; early forms, *ib.* NN.; cpds., 117; as copula, 205; **esse prō**, **in numerō**, *etc.*, 206,R.1; omitted, 209 and NN., 280,2,b,R.2 and c; with Fut. part. to form periphrastic, 247; cpd. tenses with **fui**, *etc.*, *ib.* R.1; **forem** for **essem**, *ib.* N.1, 250,N.2, 251,N.2; with Pr. part., 247,N.2; **futūrum esse ut**, 248; other forms, *ib.* NN.; in **eō est ut**, 249; with Pf. part., 250; variations, *ib.* RR., NN.; with Ger., 251,1; with Final Dat., 356,R.2; with Double Dat., *ib.* R.3; with Gen., 379; with *in* and Acc., 385,N.3; with Abl., 401,N.7; with Gen. Ger., 428,R.2; with Dat. Ger., 429,1; **futūrus** as adj., 437,N.; **esse quod**, 525,1,N.2; **est**, *it is the case*, with *ut*, 553,3; **fuit cum**, with Subjv., 580, R.1; restrictions with, 627,R.2; **sunt qui**, with Subjv., 631,2.
- esseda**—heteroclitē, 68,1.
- et**—in numerals, 96,4, 97,4; **et—et**, with Pl., 285,N.; usage of, 475; = **et tamen**, *ib.* N.1; for **etiam**, *ib.* N.2, 482,5,N.2; omitted, 481,2,N. and 3; with adjs. of Likeness and Unlikeness, 643,N.2.
- etenim**—use of, 498 and NN.
- Ethical Dative—351.
- etiam**—strengthens comparative, 301; syntax of, 478 and NN.; *yes*, 471,1; and *quoque*, 479 R. and N.1; with *tum*, 478, N.1; after *sed*, *vērūm*, 482,5, and N.1.
- etiāmsī**—603 and N.; syntax of, 604 and RR.
- etsī**—603; with Indic. or Subjv., 604; and *yet*, *ib.* R.2; with part., 609,N.1, 667,N.; with adj. or adv., *ib.* N.2; with Inf., 635, N.2.
- ēvādere**—with two Noms., 206.
- ēvenit**—with Dat., 346,R.2; with *ut*, 553,3.
- event—suffixes for, 181,2.
- ēvertere**—with Abl., 390,2,N.3.
- ex**—in comp., 9,4; vbs. cpd. with, take Dat., 347,R.5; with Abl. of Separation, 390,1 and 2; with Towns, 391,R.1; with Abl. of Origin, 395 and N.2; with Abl. of Material, 396; with Abl. of Respect, 397, N.1; with Abl. of Measure, 402,R.2; with Abl. of Cause, 408,N.3, 413,R.1; use as prep., 417,6; with Abl. Ger., 433; **ex eō quod**, 525,2,N.2.
- exadversus**—use of, 416,2.
- excēdere**—with Abl., 390,2,N.3.
- excellere**—with Dat., 347,R.4; with Abl. of Respect, 397,N.2; with Abl. of Measure, 403,N.1.
- exceptō**—with *quod*, 525,2,N.2.
- exclamations—in Acc., 343,1; in Gen., 383,3; in Acc. and Inf., 534; exclamatory questions, 558.
- exclūdere**—with Abl., 390,2,N.3.
- excluding*—vbs. of, with Abl., 390,2.
- exemplum**—in phrases with *ut*, 546,N.2.
- exigere**—with ordinal, 294; with two Accs., 339 and N.1.
- exire**—with Abl., 390,2,N.3.
- existimāre**—with Gen., 379; with *ex* and Abl., 402,R.2; with Nom. and Inf., 528, N.1; with Acc. and Inf., 527,R.2.
- exlēx**—defective, 85,2.
- exōrāre**—with *ut*, 553,2.
- exōrdiri**—with Inf., 423,2,N.2.
- expedit**—with Dat., 346,R.2.
- expellere**—with Abl., 390,2,N.3.
- expers**—with Gen., 374,N.2; with Abl., 390,3,N.1.
- expetere**—with Pf. Inf. pass., 280,2,c,N.
- explēre**—with Gen., 383,1,N.2; **explēnunt**, 133,IV,N.2.
- explicative cum**—580,NN.1,2, 582.
- expōnere**—with *in* and Acc., 385,N.2.
- expōscere**—with two Accs., 339 and N.1.
- exprimere**—with *ut*, 553,1.
- expūgnāre**—with *ut*, 553,1.
- exsequiās**—with *ire*, 333,2,R.
- exsistere**—with Abl., 390,2,N.3.
- exsolvere**—with Abl., 390,2,N.3.
- expectāre**—constr. of, 572.
- expectātiōne**—as Abl. of Respect, 398, N.1.
- expēs**—defective, 85,2.
- extent—in Degree, 334; in Space, 335; in Time, 336; Acc. of, as subj. of pass., 336,N.3.
- exterior**—Comp. of, 87,2 and 7.
- extorquēre**—with *ut*, 553,1.
- extrā**—as adv., 415; as prep., 416,11.
- extrēmum**—Comp. of, 87,2; with masc. subj., 211,R.4; with *ut*, 553,4.
- exturbāre**—with Abl., 390,2,N.3.

**exul**—with Acc. of Respect, 338, N.2; with Dat. and Acc., or Acc. and Abl., 348, R.1.

**facere**—early Pf., *fēced*, 131, 6; omission of, 209, N.5; *mīrum factum*, 209, N.2; **fac** (**ut**) for Impv., 271, 1; *lūdōs* and second Acc., 342; with pred. Gen., 366, R.1; *nihil reliquī*, 339, R.2; *quod facere possum*, 372, N.3; with *reum* and Gen., 378, R.1; with Gen. of Price, 379; *bonī*, *ib.* 1, N.2; (*sacrum*) **facere**, with Abl., 401, NN.4, 7; *finem facere*, with Dat. Ger., 429, N.1; *represent*, with Acc. and Inf., 527, R.2; with Pf. part., 537, N.2; with consecutive clause, 553, 1; with Inf., 553, 2, N.; **facere** (*faxō*) **ut** as periphrasis, *ib.* 1; *nōn possum* (**facere**) *quīn*, 556; Sup. of, 436, N.

**facilis**—comparison of, 87, 3; with Inf., 421, N.1, C.

**facinus**—with *est* and Inf., 422, N.2.

**faex**—decl. of, 52, 7, 70, C.

**fāgus**—heteroclitē, 68, 5.

**falsus**—without Comp., 87, 9; with *ut*, 553, 4.

**fāma**—with *est* and Inf., 527, R.2.

**fames**—heteroclitē, 68, 8.

**fāri**—conj. of, 175, 3, and N.

**fās**—70, B.; with Inf., 422, N.2, 428, N.2; with Abl. Sup., 436, N.2.

**fastening**—vbs. of, with *ex*, *ab*, *dē*, 385, R.2.

**fāstidiōsus**—with Gen., 374, N.5.

**fatēri**—with Acc. and Inf., 527, R.2.

**fātum**—with *est* and Inf., 422, N.2, and 428, N.2.

[**faux**]—decl. of, 52, 7.

**favēre**—with Dat., 346, N.2.

**fear**—sequence after vbs. of, 515, N.3; clauses of, and Final Clauses, 543, R.3; syntax of clause of, 550; Inf. or Indirect question after, *ib.* NN.4, 5.

**femur**—decl. of, 44, 5, 68, 12.

**ferē**—position of, 677, R.1.

**ferire**—with *foedus*, 333, 2, R.

**ferōx**—with *est* and Inf., 533, R.1.

**ferre**—conj. of, 171; *lēgem* with *ut*, 546, N.1; in phrases with *ut*, 553, 1 and 2.

**fēstināre**—with Inf., 423, 2, N.2.

**ficus**—heteroclitē, 68, 5.

**fidem**—*habēre* with Dat., 346, N.5.

**fidere**—with Dat., 346, R.2 and N.2; with Abl., 401, N.6.

**fieri**—conjugation of, 173 and NN.; with two Noms., 206, 304, R.1; with Gen. of Price, 379; with *ex* or *dē*, 396, N.2; = *to be sacrificed*, with Abl., 401, NN.5, 7; with *ut*, 553, 3; *fieri potis est ut*, *ib.* N.

**figure**—Whole and Part, 323, N.2; Figures of Syntax and Rhetoric, 688 700; of Prosody, 718 728.

**filia**—decl. of, 29, R.4.

**filling**—vbs. of, with Abl., 405.

**filum**—heterogeneous, 67, 2, b.

**FINAL SENTENCES**—with Interrogative particle, 470; general view, 543, 544; Pure, 545; *ut nē*, or *ut nōn*, *ib.* RR.1, 2; Complementary, 546 549; with vbs. of Will and Desire, 546; Inf. instead, *ib.* R.1; with vbs. of Hindering, 547 549; Subjv. without *ut*, *ib.* R.2; *ut nē*, *ib.* R.3; with Substantives, *ib.* N.2; Inf. instead, *ib.* N.3; *nē* with vbs. of Preventing, 548; *quōminus*, 549; with vbs. of Fear, 550; eight circumlocutions for, 544, N.2; sequence in, 512.

**final syllables**—quantity of, 711 713.

**fine**—in Gen. or Abl., 378, R.3.

**fine**(1)—as prep., 417, 7.

**fitness**—adjs. of, with Dat., 359; with Dat. Ger., 429.

**flāgitāre**—with Abl. or *ē*, 339, R.1, and N.1; with *ut*, 546, NN.1, 3.

**flāgitium hominis** 369, N.1, 361, N.3.

**flāmen**—defective, 70, D.

**floccl**—as Gen. of Price, 380, 1.

**fluere**—with Abl. of Means, 401, N.5.

**flūmen**—with Gen. of App., 361, N.1.

**foedus**—with *ferire*, 333, 2, R.; in phrases with *ut*, 546, N.2.

**following**—vbs. of, with *ut*, 553, 3.

**foot**—in Metre, 733; names of, 734; equality of, 740; conflict of Word and Verse, 750.

**forās**—91, 1, d.

**forbidding**—vbs. of, with Dat., 346; with *nē*, 548.

**forgetting**—vbs. of, with Gen. or Acc., 376 and R.2.

**FORMATION OF WORDS**—176 200; simple words, 179 192; primitives and derivatives, 179; suffixes, 180; formation of substs., 181; of adjs., 182; with suffixes, 183. Suffixes in detail—vowels, 184; gutturals, 185; dentals, 186; labials, 187; *s*, 188; liquids, 189; formation of vbs., 190; *verbālia*, 191;

- frequentatives or intensives, *ib.* 1; inchoatives, *ib.* 2; desideratives, *ib.* 3; causatives, *ib.* 4; meditatives, *ib.* 5; *dēnōminātīva*, 192; cpd. words, 193-200; substs., 191-198; vbs., 199, 200; see compounds.
- formidāre**—with Inf., 423,2,N.2, and 533, R.1.
- fōrsitan**—457,2,N.
- forte nisi**—591,R.4, and N.3.
- fortiter**—*very*, 439,N.3.
- forum**—defective, 70,D.
- fraude**—as Abl. of Manner, 399,N.1.
- fremere**—with Acc. and Inf., 533,R.1.
- frequēns**—in pred. attribution, 325,R.6; with Abl., 405,N.3.
- frequentative verbs—formation of, 191,1.
- fretum**—heteroclite, 68,5.
- frētus**—with Abl., 401,N.6.
- friendliness*—adjs. of, with Dat., 359.
- frūgi**—85,C.; Comp. of, 90.
- frui**—with Abl., 407, and N.2,b; personal Ger., 427,N.5.
- frūnisci**—with Abl., 407,N.2,b.
- [**frux**]—defective, 70,D.
- fugere**—with Inf. for Impv., 271,2,N.2; *fugit mē*, with Pr. Inf., 281,2,N.
- fugitāns**—with Gen., 375,N.2.
- fulmentum**—heteroclite, 68,3.
- fulness—suffixes for, 182,10.
- fulness*—adjs. of, with Gen., 374; vbs. of, with Gen., 383,1.
- function—suffixes for, 181,9; in Dat. Ger., 429.
- fungi**—with Abl., 406 and N.2,c; personal Ger., 427,N.5.
- fūstis**—heteroclite, 68,5.
- FUTURE**—112,3; formation of, 114,115; early forms, 130,3; part. in *ūrum* for fem., 211,N.1; definition of, 223; usage of, 243; of *volō* and *possum*, *ib.* R.2; as gnomic, *ib.* N.1; in Impv. sense, 243; periphrasticact., 247; Indic. for Deliberative Subjv., 254,N.2; part. act., 283; part. as subst., 437,N.1; part. as an adj., 438,N.; representation of in Ō. O., 514, 515; periphrastic in Unreal Cond., *ib.* R.1; Inf., 530; in rel. sentences, 622; syntax of part., 669, 670.
- FUTURE PERFECT**—112,3; formation of, 114,115; in *sō*, 131,4,b.1; defined, 223; syntax of, 244; as Fut., *ib.* R.1; with *nōlō*, *volō*, *possum*, etc., *ib.* R.3; in both clauses, *ib.* R.4; independent use of, *ib.* N.1; periphrastic, with *habēō*, *ib.* N.2; as Impv., 245; Representation of, in Ō. O., 514,515; Pf. and Plupf. periphrastic in Unreal Condition, 515,R.1; in rel. sentences, 622.
- Galliambic Verse—818.
- gaudēre**—with *sī*, 542,N.1; *gāvīsus* as Pr., 282,N.
- gender—19; common, 21,1; epicene, *ib.* 3; *substantīva mōbilia*, *ib.* 2; of 1st Decl., 30; of 2d Decl., 34; of 3d Decl., 39, 43,46,49,55,58; of 4th Decl., 62; of 5th Decl., 64; concord in, 286; neut. Pl. with feminines, *ib.* 3.
- GENITIVE**—defined, 23,2; of 1st Decl. in *ās*, *āī*, *um*, 28,RR.,NN.; of 2d Decl. in *ī* (from stems in *io*), in *um*, in *ēī*, 33,RR.,NN.; of 3d Decl. in *us*, *es*, 37,1; in *um*, *ium*, 38,2, 54, 57,R.3; of 4th Decl. in *os*, *is*, *ī*, *uum*, 61,N.1; of 5th Decl. in *ēs*, *ēī*, *ē*, 63,N.1; of Greek substs. in *ōn*, *eōn*, 65,R.1; *oes*, 66,N.1; of adjs., 73; in *ī*, *āī*, *aes*, *es*, *um*, 75,NN.; of pron. adjs. in *ius*, 76,1; of adjs. of three endings in *um*, *ium*, 79,R.2, 82, 83,N.2; of Comp. of part., 89,R.3; of Cardinals, 95,R.2; of Distributives, 97,R.1.
- not subj. of pass., 217,R.1; with *mille*, 293 and N.; with Comp. for Abl., 296,N.2; *meī*, etc., as objective, 304,2; *nostrum* as Part., *ib.* 3; poss. pron. for Gen., 304,2,N.2; in app. to poss. pron., 321,R.2; Part. Gen. for Part. App., 323,R.; with *nōmen est*, 349,R.6; general view, 360; translated by abstract subst., *ib.* R.2; Adnominal, Appositive, 361; Epexegetical, 361; Possessive, 362; *flāgitium hominis*, 361, N.1; Family, 362,N.1; Chorographic, *ib.* N.2; Subjective and Objective, 363; two with one subst., *ib.* R.2; 1st and 3d persons as possessive, 364; of Quality, 365; as Pred., 366; with *facere*, *ib.* R.1; *auctōris*, *ib.*; *generis*, 368,R.; with prepositional subst., 373; with adjs., 374 and NN.; with participles and verbals, 375; with vbs. of Memory, 376; with vbs. of Emotion, 377; with Judicial vbs., 378; with vbs. of Rating and Buying, 379,380; with interest and *refert*, 381; with vbs. of Fulness, 383,1; with vbs. of Separation, *ib.* 2; in Exclamations, *ib.* 3; pred. with Inf., 422,N.5; Ger., 428; with *esse*, *causā*, etc., *ib.* R.

- 2; Ger. with Pl. subst., *ib.* N.1; Ger. with vb., *ib.* N.4; position of, 676 and NN.1.2.
- genus**—decl. of, 48; id genus, 336, N.2; with Epexegetical Gen., 361, 2.
- gerēns**—with Gen., 375, N.2.
- GERUND and GERUNDIVE**—112, 5; formation of, 115, 3; early forms, 130, 8; Agent of, in Dat., 215, 2; with *esse* to form periphrasis, 251; force of Gerundive, *ib.* N.1; syntax of, 425-433; and Inf., 425; and vb., 426; Gerundive for Gerund, 427; impersonal Gerundive, *ib.* N.2; from intrans. vbs., *ib.* N.4; Gen. of, 428; Inf. instead, *ib.* N.2; depending on vb., *ib.* N.4; Dat. instead, *ib.* N.5; Dat. of, 429; Acc. of, 430; Abl. of, 431; paralleled by part., *ib.* N.3; Acc. of, with preps., 432; with *ad* after vbs. of Hindering, *ib.* R.1; Abl. of, with preps., 433.
- gestire**—with Inf., 423, 2, N.2, 533, R.1.
- gignere**—(genitus), with Abl. of Origin, 395, N.1.
- giving**—vbs. of, with Dat. and Acc., or Acc. and Abl., 348; with Inf., 423, N.1, b.; with Acc. Ger., 430.
- glōriārī**—with Acc. and Inf., 527, R.2.
- glōriōsum**—with *est* and Inf., 422, N.3.
- Glyconic verse**—795.
- gracilis**—Comp. of, 87, 3.
- grātiā**—with Gen., 373; with poss. pron., *ib.* N.2; with Gen. Ger., 428, R.2; **grātīs**, as Abl. of Manner, 399, N.1.
- grātificārī**—with Dat., 346, R.2.
- grātulārī**—with Dat., 346, R.2.
- gravārī**—with Inf., 423, 2, N.2.
- Greek substantives**—decl. of, 65; Greek Acc., 338.
- growth**—vbs. of, in Abl. Abs., 410, N.1.
- guttural**—vowels, 2, 1; consonants, 6, 1; suffixes with, 185.
- habēre**—with two Noms. in pass., 206; with Pf. part. to denote Maintenance of the Result, 238, 241, N.2, 244, N.2; first Impv. wanting, 267, R.; with two Accs., 340, R.1; with *prō*, *locō*, *numerō*, and a second Acc., *ib.*; with Final Dat., 356, R.2; with Gen. of Price, 379; *pēnsī habēre*, *ib.* I. N.2; with *in* and Acc., 385, N.3; with Acc. Ger., 430, N.1; **habēō dicendum**, *ib.* N.2; *be able*, with Inf., 423, 2, N.2.
- habit**—vbs. of, with Inf., 423 and N.2.
- haerēre**—with Dat., 346, N.6.
- hanging**—vbs. of, with *ex*, *ab*, *dē*, 385, R.2.
- happening**—sequence after vbs. of, 513, R.2; vbs. of, with *quod* clause, 525, 1; *ut* instead, *ib.* N.5; vbs. of, with consecutive clause, 553, 3.
- hardening**—in a verse, 723.
- haud**—441 and 443, with NN.; **sciō an**, 457, 2.
- (h)avēre**—175, 4.
- helluārī**—with Abl., 407, N.2, c.
- hendiadys**—698.
- heteroclitēs**—68.
- heterogeneous substantives**—67.
- heterologa**—69, c.
- hiatus**—defined, 720; in Iam. Oct., 763, N.; in Anap. Oct., 778, N.1; in Dact. Hex., 784, NN.6, 7; in Sapphic, 726, N.
- hic**—104, 1 and NN.; syntax of, 305; contemptuous character of, 306, N.; and *ille*, 307, RR.1, 2; strengthened by *quidem*, *ib.* R.4; two forms of, refer to different substs., *ib.* N.3; **hic**—*illīc*, *hinc*—*hinc*, *hinc*—*inde*, *hinc*—*illinc*, *illinc*—*hinc*, *inde*—*hinc*, 482, 2; *hōc* with *ut*, 557, R.; *hūius*, in Gen. of Price, 380, 1; with Abl. of Time, 393, R.4; in Ō. O., 660, 3; **hinc** as coördinating conjunction, 503.
- hiems**—decl. of, 40; in Abl. of Time, 393, R.5.
- hindering**—sequence after vbs. of, 543, R.2 and N.2; vbs. of, with *nō*, 548; with *quin*, 554-556; and vbs. of Preventing, 555; and vbs. of Doubt, *ib.* 2.
- Historical cum**—585 and NN.
- HISTORICAL INFINITIVE**—parallel with Impf., 254, R.; syntax of, 647; conjunctions with, *ib.* N.2.
- HISTORICAL PERFECT**—224; force of, 239; and Pure Pf., 235; and Impf., 231, 240; for Plupf., 239, N.; as Potential of Past, 258, N.2.
- HISTORICAL PRESENT**—224 and 229; with *dum*, 229, N., 570.
- historical tenses**—225.
- hodiernus**—in pred. Attrib., 325, R.6.
- homō**—in early Latin, 42, N.
- honor**—and *honōs*, 45, N.
- hope**—const. of, vbs. of, 423, N.5; sequence after, vbs. of, 515, R.3; vbs. of, with Acc. and Inf., 527, R.4.
- HORACE**—Lyric Metres of, 826.



- horrēre**—with Inf., 423,2,N.2.  
**horrēscere**—with Inf., 423,2,N.2.  
**hortārī**—with Inf., 423,2,N.2; with *ut*, 546,N.1; *hortātus*, as Pr., 282,N.; *hortātū*, as Abl. of Cause, 408,N.1.  
**humilis**—Comp. of, 87,3.  
**humus**—in Abl. of Separation, 390,2,N.4; *humī*, as Loc., 411,R.2.  
**hypallagē**—693.  
**hyperbaton**—696.  
**hypotaxis**—472.
- I**—and **J**., 1,R.2; sound of, 3; weakening of, 8,1; effect of, on preceding vowel, 12,R.2; I-class of vb. stems, 133,VI.; length of final, 707,4.
- iam**—with Pr. Indic., 230; *iam diū*, *iam pridem*, *ib.*; with Impf. Indic., 234; *iam—iam*, 482,1, and N.1; *iam vērō*, 487,N.3; *iam dūdum*, with Impv., 269.  
**Iambelegus** verse—820.  
**Iambic**—law, 716, 717; foot, 734; rhythm, 736; rhythms, 757-767.  
**ictus**—conflict of, with Accent, 749.
- IDEAL CONDITION**—from present point of view, 596,1; from past point of view, *ib.* 2; = Unreal, *ib.* R.1; shift to Unreal, *ib.* R.2; after *nōn possum*, *ib.* R.3; in *Ō. O.*, *ib.* R.5, 658.
- idem**—decl. of, 103,2, and NN.; syntax of, 310; with *que*, *et*, *atque*, *ib.* R.1; *the same as*, with *quī*, *ut*, *atque*, *cum*, or Dat., 310,R.3, 359,N.6, 642,R.1; not used with *is*, 310,R.3; in pred. attrib., 325,R.2.
- idōneus**—constrs. with, 552,R.2; with *quī* and Subjv., 631,1.
- iecur**—decl. of, 44,5, 68,12.
- iēiūnus**—with Gen., 374,N.1.
- igitur**—position of, 484,R.; usage of, 501; with *ergō*, 502,N.3; correl. of *sī*, 590,N.1.
- ignorance**—adjs. of, in pred. app., 325, R. 6; with Gen., 374.
- ignōrāre**—with Inf., 527,R.1.
- ignōscere**—with Dat., 346,R.2.
- ILLATIVE SENTENCES**—499, 500.
- ille**—decl. of, 104,3, and NN.; forms from *ollo*, *ib.* N.1; Syntax of, 307; and *hic*, *ib.* RR.1,2; *et ille*, *ib.* R.2; strengthened by *quidem*, *ib.* R.4; repeats a subst., *ib.* N.2: two forms with different antecedents, *ib.* N.3; refers to oblique case of *is*, *ib.* N.4; with Abl. of Time, 393,R.4; *illinc—hinc*, *hinc—illinc*,
- hic—illuc*, 482,2; *illud* with *ut*, 557,R.; in *Ō. O.*, 660,2.
- illūdere**—with Dat., *etc.*, 347,R.2.
- illūstris**—with Abl. of Respect, 397,N.2.
- imbēcillus**—and *imbēcillis*, 84,1.
- imber**—decl. of, 44,2, 45,R.1.
- imberbis**—and *imberbus*, 84,2.
- immāne**—with *quantum* and Indic., 467,N.
- immēnsum**—with *quantum* and Indic., 467,N.
- immo**—use of, 471,c; scansion of, 717,N.1.
- immolāre**—with Abl. of Means, 401,N.4.
- immūnis**—with Abl. of Sep., 390,3,N.1.
- impedimentō**—with *esse* and *nē*, 548, N.1.
- impedire**—with Inf., 423,2,N.2; with *nē*, 548,N.1; with *quōminus*, 549,N.1.
- impellere**—with *ut*, 553,2; *impulsus*, *impulsū*, of Cause, 408, NN. 1 and 2.
- impendiō**—*very*, 439,N.3.
- impendēre**—with Dat., *etc.*, 347,R.2.
- impēnsē**—*very*, 439,N.3.
- imperāre**—with Dat., 346,R.2; with Inf., 423,2,N.2, 532,N.1; with *ut*, 546,N.1.
- IMPERATIVE**—112,4; early forms, 130,5; Subjv. for, 263; answers deliberative question, 265,N.; usage, 266-275; First and Second, 267; strengthening words, 269; negative of, 270; pronouns with, 267,N.; concord with, 211,N.2; periphrases of, 271; representatives of, 272: of Past, 272,3; tenses of, 278; for Prothesis, 593,4; in Subjv. with *Ō. O.*, 652 and R.1.
- IMPERFECT**—112,3; early forms, 130,2; force of, 223, 231; and Hist. Pf., 232; of Endeavor, Disappointment, and Resistance to Pressure, 233; a tense of Evolution, *ib.* N.1; overlapping, *ib.* N.2 562; of Awakening, *ib.* N.3; with *iam*, *etc.*, 234; of opposition to Present, 254,R.2; in Apodosis of Action begun, *ib.* R.3, 597,R.2; as Potential of Past, 258; in Wish, 260; with *vellem*, *ib.* R.; Subjv. as Concessive, 264; Subjv. as Impv. of Past, 272,3; tense relations of Subjv., 277; in Sequence, 510,R.; in Coincidence, 513,N.3; Subjv. as Principal Tense, 517, R.2.
- impersonal verbs**—208,1 and 2; divine Agt. expressed, *ib.* 1,N.; vbs. of Saying, *etc.*, 208,2,N.2, 528; in Ger. constr., 427, N.4; with *ut*, 553,4.

*impertire*—with *Dat.* and *Acc.*, or *Acc.* and *Abl.*, 348,n.1; *labōrem*, with *Dat.* *Ger.*, 429,1.

*impetrāre*—with *ut*, 553.1.

*implēre*—with *Gen.*, 383.1.

*implōrāre*—with *ut* only, 546.N.3.

*impōnere*—with *in* and *Acc.*, 385,n.2.

*impos*—with *Gen.*, 374,n.3.

*imprimere*—with *in* and *Abl.*, 385,n.1.

*imprūdēns*—in *pred. attrib.*, 325,n.6.

*impulsū*—as *Abl.* of *Cause*, 408,n.1.

*in*—in *composition*, 9,4; *vbs. cpd.* with *take Acc.* or *Dat.*, 331,347; with *Countries* and *Towns*, 337,n.1; with *Acc.* for *Dat.*, 345,n.2; with *app.* to *Towns*, 386,n.1; with *books*, 387; *throughout*, 388,n.; with *recipere*, 389; with *Abl.* of *Time*, 394,n. and n.2; with *Abl.* of *Cause*, 408,n.3; *position* of, 413,n.1; as *prep.*, 418,1; with *Acc.* *Ger.*, 432, and n.1; with *Abl.* *Ger.*, 433 and n.1; with *part.*, 437,n.2; *in eō quod*, 525,2,n.2.

*inānis*—with *Gen.*, 374,n.1.

*incēdere*—with *Dat.*, *etc.*, 347,n.2.

*incendī*—with *Irā* and *Inf.*, 533,n.1; *incēnsus*, of *Moving Cause*, 408,n.2.

*incertum*—with *an* and *Subjv.*, 457,2.

*inchoative verbs*—133,v., 191,2.

*incidere*—with *Dat.*, *etc.*, 347,n.2.

*incidere*—with *in* and *Abl.*, 385,n.1.

*incipere*—with *Inf.*, 423,2,n.2; with *Ordinal*, 294,n.

*incitātus*—of *Moving Cause*, 408,n.2.

*inclination*—*suffixes* for, 182,2.

*inclination*—*adjs.* of, in *pred. attr.*, 325,n.6; *vbs.* of, with *Inf.*, 423 and n.2.

*inclūdere*—with *in* and *Abl.*, 385,n.1.

*incommodāre*—with *Dat.*, 346,n.1.

*incorporation*—of *antecedent*, 616; *quā prūdentiā* *es*, 616,1,n.2; of *correlative*, 619.

*incrēdibile*—with *Inf.*, 422,n.3; with *quantum* and *Indic.*, 467,n.

*increpāre*—*charge*, with *Gen.*, 378,n.1.

*increpitāre*—*charge*, with *Gen.*, 378,n.1.

*incubāre*—with *Dat.*, *etc.*, 347,n.2.

*incumbere*—with *Dat.*, *etc.*, 347,n.2.

[*indāgo*]—*defective*, 70,D.

*inde*—as *coördinating conj.*, 503; in *contrast* with *hinc*, 482,2.

*indecōrus*—and *indecoris*, 84,1.

*indefinite pronouns*—107; *syntax* of, 313

319; *quidam*, 313; *aliquis*, 314; *quis*, 315; *quispiam*, 316; *quisquam* and

*ullus*, 317; *quisque*, 318; *alter* and *alius*, 319; *rel.* with *Indic.*, 254,n.4, 625.

*INDICATIVE*—112,4; *early forms* of, 130,1-4; *meaning* of, 254; in *Apodosis*, 254,n.3; with *indef. rel.*, *ib.* n.4; *Pr.* for *Deliberative Subjv.*, *ib.* n.2; *tenue relations* of, 276; *neg.* of, 257; in *questions*, 463, 464; after *nesciō quis*, *etc.*, 467,n.1; in *Relative Sentences*, *ib.* n.2; in *Temporal Sentences*, 560,1; to *express Design*, 630,n.2.

*indigere*—with *Gen.*, 383,1, 405,n.2.

*indignārī*—with *Inf.*, 533,n.1; with *si*, 542,n.1.

*indignus*—with *Gen.*, 374,n.10; with *qui*, *ut*, or *Inf.*, 552,n.2; with *qui*—and *Subjv.*, 631,1 and n.1.

*indigus*—with *Abl.* or *Gen.*, 405,n.3.

*induere*—with *Dat.* and *Acc.*, or *Acc.* and *Abl.*, 348,n.1; *indui*, with *Acc.* of *Respect*, 338,n.2.

*indulgere*—with *Dat.*, 346,n.2 and n.2.

*inermis*—and *inermus*, 84,2.

*inesso*—with *Dat.*, *etc.*, 347,n.2.

*Inferior*—87,2; with *Dat.*, 296,n.3.

*INFINITIVE*—112,5; *formation* of, 115,3; *early forms*, 130,6; *aor.* in *-xe*, *etc.*, 131,4,6,4; *Fut.* in *asserte*, *ib.*; *act.* for *pass.*, 213,n.c.; *usage* of, 279; *assubst.*, 280; after *dēbeō*, *ib.* 2,b,n.3; after *deciit*, *oportuit*, *ib.* 2,b,n.1 and 2; as *representative* of *Indic.*, 281; after *memini*, *etc.*, *ib.* 2,n.; *syntax* of, 419-424; with *Acc.* as *subj.*, 420; as *subst.*, 421; *traces* of *Locative nature*, *ib.* n.1; as *subj.*, 422; as *obj.*, 423; *ut* instead, *ib.* n.4; as *pred.* with *esse*, 425; with *preps.*, *ib.* n.3; *Fut. pass.*, 435,n.4; *sequence* after, 518; *Acc.* and *Inf.* after *vbs.* of *Saying* and *Thinking*, 527; *part.* instead, *ib.* n.1; *tenses* after *these vbs.*, 529-531; after *posse*, *velle*, *ib.* n.3; after *spērāre*, *ib.* n.4; with *vbs.* of *Will* and *Desire*, 532; with *vbs.* of *Emotion*, 533; *ut* instead, 532,nn.3,4; in *Exclamations*, 534; and *quod*, *ib.* n.1; *Acc.* and *Inf.* as *subj.*, 535; *Acc.* and *Inf.* after *vbs.* of *Emotion*, 542; with *vbs.* of *Will* and *Desire*, 546,n.3; with *vbs.* of *Fear*, 550,n.5; with *dignus*, *etc.*, 552,n.2; *Acc.* and *Inf.* in *Relative Sentences*, 635; after *potius*, *etc.*, 644,n.3, 646; in *Ō. O.*, 650. See *Hist. Inf.*

**Infinitum**—with *est* instead of *sit*, 254, R.1; with *quantum* and Indic., 467, N.  
**Infitiās**—70, A.; *ire*, 333, 2, R.  
 inflection—17.  
**Infra**—with Abl. of Measure, 403, N.1; as adv., 415; as prep., 416, 12.  
**Infrēnus**—and **Infrēnis**, 84, 1.  
**Ingrātīis**—as Abl. of Manner, 399, N.1.  
**Ingenii**—as Loc., with adjs., 374, N.7.  
**ingredi**—with Inf., 423, 2, N.2.  
**inhaerēre**—with Dat., etc., 347, R.2.  
**inhiāre**—with Dat., etc., 347, R.2.  
**inicare manum**—with Acc., 342.  
**iniūriā**—as Abl. of Manner, 399, N.1.  
**innātus**—with Dat., 347, R.2.  
 Inner Object—Acc. of, 328, 330, 332; Abl. instead, 333, 2, N.4; after vbs. of Taste and Smell, *ib.* 2, N.5.  
**inops**—with Gen., 374, N.1; with Abl., 405, N.3.  
**inquam**—175, 2; **inquit**, impersonal, 208, 2, N.2; in citing *Ō. R.*, 648, R.2; lacking forms supplied by *dicere*, *ib.* R.3.  
*inquiring*—vbs. of, with two Accs., 339, and R.1, NN.1 and 2.  
**Inscribere**—with *in* and Abl., 385, R.1.  
**insculpere**—with *in* and Abl., 385, R.1.  
**inservire**—with Dat., 347, R.2.  
**insignis**—with Abl. of Respect, 397, N.2; **insigniter** as adv. of Degree, 439, N.2.  
**insidiārī**—with Dat., 346, R.2.  
**insinuāre**—with Dat., 347, R.2.  
**insistere**—with Dat., 347, R.2.  
**instar**—70, B.; with Gen., 373.  
**instāre**—with Dat., 347, R.2; with Inf., 423, 2, N.2.  
**Instruere**—with *dē*, 339, N.3.  
 instrument—suffixes for, 181, 6; in Abl., 214, 401; with *ab*, 214, R.2; Abl. of contrasted with Abl. of Attendance, 392, R.2.  
 INSTRUMENTAL—case, 23, N.  
**insuētus**—with Gen., 374, N.4.  
**integrum**—with Inf., 422, N.3.  
**intelligere**—with Inf., 527, R.1; **intellectū** as Sup., 436, N.  
**intendere**—with Inf., 423, 2, N.2; **intensus**, with Abl., etc., 359, N.5.  
 intensive verbs—formation of, 191, 1.  
**inter**—with reflexive to express reciprocal action, 221; vbs. cpd. with, take Acc. or Dat., 331, 347; to designate Time, 394, N.2; position of, 413, R.1; as prep., 416, 13; with Acc. Ger., 432 and N.1; with part., 437, N.2.

**intercalāris**—and **intercalārius**, 84, 2.  
**intercedere**—with Dat., 347, R.2; with *nē*, 548, N.1; with *quīn*, 555, 1.  
**interclūdere**—with Dat. and Acc., or Acc. and Abl., 348, R.1; with Abl., 390, 2, N.3; with *nē*, 548, N.1; with *quīn*, 555, 1.  
**intercurrere**—with Dat., 347, R.2.  
**interdicere**—with Abl., 390, 2, N.3; with *nē*, 548, N.1; with *quīn*, 555, 1.  
**interdum**—coördinates with *aliās*, 482, 1, N.1.  
**interesse**—with Dat., 347, R.2; **interest**, with Gen. and Abl., 381; with Nom., *ib.* N.3; constr. of Object of Concern, 382, 1 and 2; constr. of Thing Involved, *ib.* 3; with *ut*, 553, 4.  
 Interest—Dat. of Personal, 350.  
**interior**—87, 2 and 8.  
 interjection—16, R.2; no syntax, 201, R.1.  
**intermittere**—with Inf., 423, 2, N.2.  
**interneciō**—defective, 70, B.  
**interpellāre**—with *nē*, 548, N.1.  
**interpōnere**—with *nē*, 548, N.1.  
**interrogāre**—with two Accs., or *dē*, 339, R.1 and N.1; with Indic., 467, N.  
 interrogative pronouns—106; distinguished from rel., 467, R.2; with part., 469; in Final Sentence, 470; doubling of, *ib.* R.  
 INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES—450–470; simple and cpd., 452; particles in, 454–457; moods in, 462–467; Indic., 463, 464; Subjv., 465, 466; after vb. of Wonder, 542, N.1; after vb. of Fear, 550, N.4; for Protasis, 593, 4; in *Ō. O.*, 651 and RR.  
**intervenire**—with Dat., 347, R.2.  
**intrā**—to designate Time, 394, N.2; position of, 413, R.1; as adv., 415; as prep., 416, 14.  
 intransitive verbs—used impersonally, 208, 2; used transitively, 213, R.6; construed as pass., 214, R.1; with neut. subj. in pass., 217; with personal Ger., 217, R.2; with Pf. part. pass. used actively, 220, N.1; Gerund of, used impersonally, 251, 2.  
**inūsitātum**—with *ut*, 553, 4.  
**invādere**—with Dat., 347, R.2.  
**invēniri**—with Nom. and Inf., 528, N.1; **inventū** in Sup., 436, N.  
 inverse—*dōnec*, 571, N.6; *cum*, 531; attraction of rel., 617, N.2.  
**invicem**—to indicate reciprocity, 221 R.2.

- invidēre**—with personal pass., 217, n.1; with Dat., 346, n.2 and n.2; with Inf., 533, n.1.
- invidus**—constr. of, 359, n.5.
- invitus**—in pred. app., 325, n.6; **invitō** est, 353, n.2.
- ioculō**—as Abl. of Manner, 399, n.1.
- iocus**—heterogeneous, 67, 2.
- ionic**—foot, 734; rhythm, 736; rhythms, 815-819; substitutions for, 815.
- ipse**—decl. of, 103, 3 and n.; **ipsus**, *ib.* n.2; syntax of, 311; **et ipse**, *ib.* 1, n.2; emphasises reflexive, *ib.* 2; used indeclinably, *ib.* 2, n.; in *Ō. O.*, 660, 5.
- irā**—of Moving Cause, 408, n.2; **incendor irā** with Inf., 533, n.1.
- irāsci**—with Dat., 346, n.2.
- ire**—169, 2; omission of, 209, n.5; with Dat., 358, n.2; with Sup., 435, n.1; with *infitiās*, etc., 333, 2, n.
- is**—decl. of, 103, 1 and n.; strengthened by **quidam**, 307, n.4; taken up by **ille**, *ib.* n.4; two forms with different antecedent, *ib.* n.3; syntax of, 308; = **tālis**, *ib.* n.1; with **et, atque, que**, *ib.* n.2; for reflexive, 309, n.1; **id temporis, aetātis**, 336, n.2; **eō** as coördinating conj., 503; **ideō, idcirco**, *ib.*; with **qui** and Subjv., 631, 1; with **ut**, *ib.* n.1, 557, n.; in *Ō. O.*, 660, 2.
- islands**—in Local Acc., 337; with **in**, *ib.* n.1 and n.3; prep. omitted with Large Islands, *ib.* n.1.
- iste**—decl. of, 104, II. and n.; syntax of, 306; contemptuous character of, *ib.* n.; strengthened by **quidem**, 307, n.4; in *Ō. O.*, 660, 3.
- ita**—with **ut**, 482, 4; correlative of **si**, 590, n.1; *yes*, 471, a.1.
- Italicus Numerus*—756.
- itaque**—usage of, 500; position of, *ib.* n.; with **ergō**, 502, n.3.
- iter**—decl. of, 44, 5.
- iterative action**—566, 567; Subjv. in, *ib.* n.; with **cum**, 584; in Relative Sentences, 623.
- Ithyphallic**—verse, 774.
- iubōre**—with two Accs., 341, n.2; with Acc. and Dat., 346, n.3; constr. after, 423, n.6; with Acc. and Inf., 528 and n.1; with Inf., 423, 2, n.2, 532, n.1, 2; with Subjv., 546, n.2; **iussū**, defective, 68, 5; **iussū** as Abl. of Cause, 408, n.1.
- iudicare**—with Inf., 423, 2, n.2.
- [**iūger**]**—decl. of, 68, 7.**
- iunctus**—with Dat., etc., 359, n.3.
- iūs**—with Inf., 422, n.2, 428, n.2; with **respondēre**, 333, 2, n.; in phrases with **ut**, 546, n.2; **iūre**, 399, n.1; **iūre** in Abl. of Respect, 397.
- iūstō**—as Abl. of Respect, 398, n.1.
- iuvāre**—with Acc., 346, n.3.
- iuvenis**—Comp. of, 87, 9.
- iūxtā**—as adv., 415; as prep., 416, 15.
- Judgment*—vbs. of, with Abl. of Standard, 402.
- K**—sounds of, 1, n.1; name of, *ib.* n.
- knowledge*—adjs. of, in pred. attrib., 325, n.6; adjs. of, with Gen., 374.
- Labials**—6, 1; suffixes with, 187.
- labōrem**—with **impertirē** and Dat. Ger., 429, 1.
- labōrāre**—with Inf., 423, 2, n.2; with **ut**, 546, n.1.
- lāc**—decl. of, 53, 8; 68, 12.
- laedere**—with Acc., 346, n.3.
- laetārī**—with Acc. and Inf., 533, n.1.
- lāmentārī**—with Acc. and Inf., 533, n.1.
- largirī**—with **ut**, 553, 2.
- later**—defective, 70, D.
- lātītūdine**—with Acc. of Extent, 335, n.1.
- lātus**—with Acc. of Extent, 335, n.1.
- laurus**—heteroclite, 68, 5.
- leaving**—vbs. of, with Acc. Ger., 430.
- lectus**—heteroclite, 68, 5.
- length**—by nature, 12, 1, and n.; by position, *ib.* 2; representation of long vowels, *ib.* n.
- lengthening**—compensatory, 9, 6, a.
- letters**—tenses in, 252; advs. in, *ib.*; dated from a place, 391, n.3.
- letting**—vbs. of, with Acc. Ger., 430.
- levāre**—with Abl., 390, 2, n.2.
- lēx**—in phrases with **ut**, 546, n.1 and 2; **lēge**, 397 and n.1, 399, n.1.
- liberālis**—with Gen., 374, n.1.
- liberāre**—with Abl., 390, 2, n.2.
- libet**—added to rels., 111, 3; exact use of **libuerit**, 244, n.3; **libens**, in pred. attrib., 325, n.6; with Dat., 346, n.2.
- licēre**—exact use of Fut. Pl., 244, n.3; with Dat., 346, n.2; with Gen., 379; **licet**, although, 603-607; with **quamvis**, *ib.* n. 2; with Indic., *ib.* n.3.
- likeness**—suffixes for, 182, 4.

- likeness*—adjs. of, with *Dat.*, 349; with *atque*(*ac*), 643.  
*linguals*—6,1,N.  
*linter*—decl. of, 44,2, 45,R.1.  
*liquids*—6,2,A; 3d Decl. stems in, 39-46; suffixes with, 189.  
*litāre*—with Abl. of Means, 401,N.4.  
*litotes*—644,N.1, 700.  
*litterae*—in phrases with *ut*, 546,N.2.  
*living*—vbs. of, with Abl., 401,N.1.  
*Local Dative*—358.  
*locality*—suffixes for, 181,5, 182,9.  
*locāre*—with Gen., 379; with *in* and Abl., 386,R.1; with Acc. Gen., 430.  
*LOCATIVE*—23,N.; of 1st Decl., 29,R.2; of 2d Decl., 33,RR.3,5; 3d Decl., 37,5; forms advs., 91,3; syntax of, 411; in 3d Decl., *ib.* R.1; other Locs., *ib.* R.2; app. to, in Abl., *ib.* R.3; *domī*, with poss. pron., *ib.* R.4.  
*locus*—67,2; in *locō habēre*, 340,R.1; Abl. without *in*, 385,N.1.  
*logacædic rhythms*—790-805.  
*LOGICAL CONDITION*—595; with Subjv. by Attraction, *ib.* R.2; with Ideal 2d Person, *ib.* R.3; *sive*—*sive*, *ib.* R.4; *sī quidem*, *ib.* R.5; *sī modo*, *vērō*, *tamen*, *ib.* R.6; tenses in, *ib.* N.2; in *Ō. O.*, 657, 595, R.1.  
*longinquus*—Comp. of, 87,9.  
*longitūdine*—with Acc. of Extent, 335, R.1.  
*longum*—with *est* for Subjv., 254,R.1; *longē* strengthens Comp. or Superlative, 301, 303; with Acc., 335,R.1.  
*loqui*—with Acc. and Inf., 527,R.2; with Indic. question, 467,N.  
*lubidō*—in phrases with Inf., 422,N.2.  
*lūdōs facere*—with Acc., 342.  
*lūgere*—with Inf., 533,R.1.  
*lūx*—70,D; in Abl. of Time, 393,R.5.  
**M**—final omitted, 27,N.  
*macte*—85,C, 325,R.1.  
*maerere*—with Inf., 533,R.1.  
*māgnificus*—Comp. of, 87,4.  
*māgnitūdine*—with Acc. of Extent, 335, R.1.  
*māgnus*—comparison of, 90; constr. with *māior*, 296,R.5; *magis*, in comparison of Qualities, 299; *māgnī*, as Gen. of Price, 380,1; *māius*, with Inf., 422,N.3; *māximī*, as Gen. of Price, 380, 1; *nōn magis quam*, 644,N.1.  
*making*—vbs. of, with two Noms., 206; with two Accs., 340.  
*maledicere*—with *Dat.*, 346,R.2.  
*maledicus*—Comp. of, 87,4.  
*mālle*—conj. of, 174 and N.3; *mālueram*, *could have preferred*, 254,N.1; *mālim*, *māllem*, as Potential, 257,2, 258,N.1; in Unreal Wish, 261,R.; with Abl., 296, N.1; with Abl. of Measure, 403,N.1; with Inf. or *ut*, 423,2,N.2, 538 and N.3, 546,N.1.  
*malus*—comparison of, 90; *male* as neg., 439,N.2.  
*mānāre*—with Abl. of Means, 401,N.5.  
*mandāre*—with *ut*, 546,N.1.  
*manere*—as copulative vb., 206,N.1; with Abl., 401,N.6.  
*mānī*—as Loc., 411,N.1.  
*manifestus*—with Gen., 374,N.2; with Inf., 421,N.1,c.  
*Manner*—Abl. of, 399 and NN.  
*manūs inicere*—with Acc., 342.  
*mare*—in Abl. without *in*, 385,N.1.  
*margarita*—heteroclitc, 68,1.  
*māteria*—heteroclitc, 68,2.  
*Material*—Abl. of, 396; indicated by *adj.*, *ib.*; suffixes for, 182,4.  
*mātūrāre*—with Inf., 423,2,N.2.  
*mātūrus*—Comp. of, 87,1,R.2.  
*mātūtīnus*—in pred. Attr., 325,R.6.  
*Means*—Abl. of, 401, and RR., NN.; suffixes for, 181,6.  
*measure*—vbs. of, take Abl., 402.  
*Measure*—Abl. of, 402; of Difference, 403; Abl. of, with vbs. involving Difference, *ib.* N.1; with *ante* and *post*, *ib.* N.4.  
*mederi*—with *Dat.*, 346,R.2 and N.4.  
*medioximus*—87,9,N.  
*meditārī*—with Inf., 423,2,N.2.  
*meditative verbs*—formation, 191,5.  
*medium*—suffixes for, 182,6.  
*medius*—in pred. attrib., 325,R.6; used partitively, 291,R.2; Abl. used without *in*, 388.  
*memini*—175,5,b; First Impv. wanting, 267,R.; with Pr. Inf., 281,2,N.; with Acc., 376,R.2; with Inf., 423,2,N.2, 527,R.2; with *cum* and Indic., 580,R.2.  
*memorātū*—as Abl. Sup., 436,N.  
*memoriā teneō*—with Pr. Inf., 281,2,N.  
*memundum*—heteroclitc, 68,3.  
*mēns*—in phrases with *ut*, 557,R.; in *mentem venīre*, with Gen., 376,R.3; in *mentem venīre*, with Inf., 422,N.5.



- meritus**—Comp. of, 87,9 : **meritō** as Abl. of Manner, 399,n.1.
- met**—added to personal pron., 102,n.2; to **ipse**, 103,3,n.5.
- metaplasts**—68.
- metathesis**—of consonants, 9,8.
- metre**—730; unit of, 731.
- metuere**—with Dat., 346,n.2; with **ut**, **nē**, or Inf., 550 and n.1; with Inf., 423, 2,n.2.
- metus**—with Inf., 550,n.5.
- meus**—73,n.76 : Voc. of, 100,n.1; early forms of, *ib.* n.2; synizesis in, *ib.* n.3, 727, N.; **mea mihi**, 309,n.2; **mei** with Gen., 428,n.1; with **ut**, 557,n.
- middle voice**—212,n.218; with Acc. of Respect, 338,n.2.
- militia**—in Abl. of Time, 393,n.5; in Loc., 411,n.2.
- mille**—a subst. in Pl., 95,n.3; inscriptional forms of, *ib.* n.4; **milia**, with masc. vb., 211,n.1, Ex.6; use of, in Sg. and Pl., 293; as subst. with Part. Gen., 293,n.; **milia** for distributive, 295,n.
- mināri**, **minitāri**—with Dat., 346,n.2; with Inf., 527,n.2.
- minor**—**quam** omitted with, 296,n.4; with vbs. of Rating and Buying, 380,1; **minōris**, **minimī**, as Gen. of Price, *ib.*; **minus**, *no*, 471,b.1; **minimē**, *no*, *ib.*; **sin minus**, 592; **si minus**, *ib.* n.; **nōn minus quam**, 644,n.1.
- mirāri**—with Inf., 423, 2,n.2, 533,n.1; with **quod**, 542; with **si**, *ib.* n.1.
- mirum**—with **factum** and **nī**, **quantum**, **quā**, 209,n.2, 467,n.; with **quod**, 542; with **si**, 542,n.1; with **nī**, *ib.* n.2; with Inf., 422,n.3; with **quam** and Indic., 467,n.; with **ut**, 553,4.
- miscēre**—**sē**, with Dat., 346,n.6; with Dat. and Acc., or Acc. and Abl., 348,n.1.
- miserāri** with Acc., 377,n.2.
- miserēre**—with Gen., 377,n.1; **miseret**, with Gen., 377; **miserēor**, with Gen., *ib.*; **miserēscō**, with Gen., *ib.* n.1.
- mittere**—**mitte**, with Inf. for Impv., 271,2,n.2; with Inf., 422,n.3; with **quod**, 525,1,n.1; followed by Impf. Indic. to give Design, 630,n.2; **missū**, of Moving Cause, 408,n.1.
- mixed class of Verbs**—133,vii.
- moderāri**—with Dat., 346,n.2 and n.2.
- modo**—strengthens Impv., 269; **modo**—**modo**, 482,1; contrasted with **tam**, **vicissim**, 482,1,n.2; **nōn modo**—**sed etiam**, 482,5; **nōn modo nōn**, **sed nē**—**quidem**, *ib.* n.1; *provided only*, 573; **modo nē**, *ib.* n.2.
- mōliri**—with Inf., 423, 2,n.2.
- monēre**—with Gen. or Acc., 376 and n.1; with Inf., 423, 2,n.2; with **ut**, 546,n.1.
- mood**—112,4, 253; Indic., 254; Subjv., 255 265; Impv., 266 275; Inf., 279 281; attraction of, 508,4; in Temporal Clauses, 560; in Relative Sentences, 624 635; in Comparative Sentences, 639; in Ō. O., 650 652.
- morāri**—with **nē**, 548, n.1.
- mōrigerāri**—with Dat., 346,n.2.
- mōs** (**mōris**) with Inf., 422,nn.2 and 5; with **ut**, 557,n.; **mōribus**, 399,n.1.
- motion**—vb. of, with Inf., 421,n.1,a; vb. of, with Supl., 435; vb. of, with Fut. part., 438,n.; vb. of, with **quod**, 525,1,n.6; end of, conceived as Rest, 412,n.1.
- movēre**—syncope in Pf., 131,3; with Abl. of Separation, 390,n.1; with **ut**, 553,2; **mōtus**, of Moving Cause, 408,n.2.
- Mulciber**—heteroclitc, 68,4.
- mutāre**—with Abl., 378,n.3.
- multitude**—substs. of, with Pl., 211,n.1, Ex.a.
- multitūdō**—with Pl. vb., 211,n.1, Ex.a.
- multum**—for Abl. of Measure, 403,n.2; *very*, 439,n.3; **multō** with Comp., 301; with Superl., 303.
- mūnus**—with Inf., 422,n.2; with **ut**, 546, n.2.
- mūtāre**—with Abl., 404,n.1.
- mutos**—6,2,B.
- mūtuō**—of reciprocal action, 221,n.2.
- myrtus**—heteroclitc, 68,5.
- Nam**—usage of, 498 and nn.; position of, *ib.*, n.1; asseverative, *ib.* n.2; *yes for*, 471,n.
- naming**—vbs. of, with two Accus., 340.
- namque** 498; position of, *ib.* n.1.
- nārrāre**—with Inf., 527,n.2.
- nasals**—6,2,A.; nasal class of vbs., 133,iv.
- nāsci**—with two Noms., 206; **nātus**, constr. of, 296,n.5; with Acc., 336,n.4; with Abl. of Origin, 395,nn.1,3; **nātū** in Abl. Supl., 436,n.
- nātūra**—in phrases with **ut**, 557,n.
- naucum**—defective, 70,B.; **nauci**, as Gen. of Price, 380,1.
- nē**—neg. of Opt. Subjv., 260; of Impv.,

- 270; continued by *neque*, 260; by *nēve*, 270, 444,2; with Pf. Subjv., 270, R.2; syntax of, 441, 444; = *nōn*, 444,1, N.2; *nē—quidem*, *ib.* 1,N.2, 445,448,N.2, 482,5 and R.1; in Final Sentences, 543, 4; *ut nē*, 545,R.1; *quō nē*, *ib.*; parenthetical, *ib.* R.3; after vbs. of Hindering, 548; after vbs. of Fear, 550; *nē nōn*, *ib.* N.1; with *dum*, 573; as Concessive, 608.
- ne**—added to *hic*, 104,1,N.3; to *iste*, *ib.* 2,N.3; to *ille*, 103,3,N.4; as interrogative, 454; asseverative, *ib.* N.2; added to interrogatives, *ib.* N.3; = *nōnne*, *ib.* N.5; added to *num*, 456,N.; strengthens *an*, 457,1,N.2; to introduce double questions, 458; *necne* or *annōn*, 459; to introduce second member of an indirect question, 460,2.
- nearness**—adjs. of, with *Dat.*, 359.
- nec** = *nōn*, 442,N.3; see *neque*.
- necessarium**—with *ut*, 553,4.
- neceſe**—85,C.; with *est* instead of Subjv., 254,R.1; with *Inf.*, 538; with *ut* omitted, 538,R.2, 553,4,R.1; with pred. attracted, 538,R.3; with *ut*, 553,4; with *habeō* and *Inf.*, 423,2,N.2.
- necessity**—adjs. of, with *Inf.*, 421,N.1,c; expressed by *Indic.*, 254,R.1, 255,R.
- nēdum**—482,5,R.2.
- nefas**—70,B.; with *Inf.*, 428,N.2; with *Abl. Sup.*, 436,N.2; with *Inf.*, 422,N.2.
- negāre**—use of, 444,1,N.2; continued by *neque—neque*, 445,N.; = *dīcō nōn*, 447; with *Inf.*, 527,R.2.
- negative**—of Potential, 257; of Opt., 260; of Impv., 270; *nōn* with Opt., 260; *nōn* with Impv., 270,R.1; *nōlī* with *Inf.*, 270,R.2; advs., 441–449; *nōn*, 442; *haud*, 443; *nec* = *nōn*, 442,N.3; *nē*, 444; subdivision of, 445; combinations, 446; resolution of, *ib.* N.2; positive supplied from, 447,R.; position of, 448, 449; two, 449; *nec nōn* for *et*, *ib.* R.3; in Copulative Sentences, 480; in Final and Consecutive Sentences, 543,4.
- negōtium**—in phrases with *ut*, 546,N.2; with *Inf.*, 422,N.5.
- nēmō**—decl. of, 70,D.; and *nūllus*, 108; with Pl. vb., 211,R.1,Ex.a; with Impv. Subjv., 270,N.; and *quisquam*, 317,2; as adj., *ib.*; *et nēmō*, *ib.* 2,N.1; strengthened by *ūnus*; = *nēquis*, 446, N.3.
- nequam**—85,C.; comparison of, 90.
- neque**—with Opt. Subjv. for *nē*, 260; adds Impv., 270,N.; *neque—neque* with Pl., 285,N.1; subdivides a general neg., or *negō*, 445 and N.1; *nec nōn*, 449,R.3; for *et nōn*, 480 and R.1; for *nec tamen*, *ib.* R.3; for *nē—quidem*, *ib.* N.1; compared with *nec*, *ib.* N.2; for *nōn*, *ib.* N.4; for *nēve*, 543,N.3.
- nequire**—conj. of, 170,b; *nequīnont*, 133,IV,N.2; with *Inf.*, 423,2,N.2.
- Nēriō**—decl. of, 41,4.
- nesciō—an**, 457,2; *quis*, 467,R.1; *quōmodo*, *ib.* N.; with *Inf.*, 423,2,N.2, 527,R.1.
- neu**, *nēve*—444,2; adds Final Clause, 543,4; *neque* instead, *ib.* N.3.
- neuter**—decl. of, 76, 108; *neutiquam*, 442,N.2.
- neuter**—adj. with masc. subj., 211,R.4; demonstrative when subst. is expected, *ib.* N.3; Sg. sums up Pl. *ib.*; Pl. pred. to two fems., 286,3; in app. to persons, 321,N.2; pron. and adj. in Cognate Acc., 333,1, 341,N.2; pron. and adj. with Part. Gen., 369; pron. and adj. not attracted to Ger., 427,N.3.
- nēve**—see *neu*.
- nī**—with *mīrum*, 209,N.2; range of, 591, N.2.
- nihil**—for *nūllus*, 108; with Impv. Subjv., 270,N.; neg. of *quisquam*, 317,2; *no*, 471,b,1; *nihilī* as Gen. of Price, 380,1; for *nōn*, 442,N.2.
- nihilōminus**—490,R.
- nimis**—with *quam* and *Indic.*, 467,N.
- nīmium**—with *quantum*, 209,N.2, 467,N.; *very*, 439,N.3; *nīmīō* as *Abl.* of Standard, 403,N.3.
- nisi**—with *quod*, 525,2,N.2, 591,b,R.3; with *ut*, 557,N.2, 591,b,R.4; and *sī nōn*, 591,b; *but, except*, *ib.* R.2; *sī*, *ib.*; *nisi forte*, *vērō*, *ib.* R.4; *nisi tamen*, *ib.* N.1; in asseverations, 591,b,2; with *Inf.*, 635, N.2; with participle, 667,N.
- nīti**—with *Abl.*, 401,N.6; with *Inf.*, 423,2, N.2; with *ut*, 546,N.1.
- nix**—decl. of, 52,7.
- no**—how translated, 470,b and c.
- nocēre**—with *Dat.*, 346.
- nōlle**—conj. of, 174; exact use of *nōluerit*, 244,R.3; *nōlim*, *nōllem*, as Potential, 257,2, 258; not in Unreal Wish, 261, R.; *nōlī*, with *Inf.* for Impv., 270,N.2, 271,2; *nōlim*, with Subjv. for Impv.,

- 271,2,N.2; with Pf. Inf. pass., 280,2,C.N.; **nōlēs**, in pred. app., 325,R.6; with Inf., 423,2,N.2; with **ut**, 546,N.1; with Inf. or **ut**, 538 and N.3.
- nōmen**—with **esse** and Dat., 349,R.5; with Appositional Gen., 361,1; with Gen. of Charge, 378,R.2.
- nōminārī**—with two Noms., 206.
- NOMINATIVE**—defined, 23,1; of 1st Decl., 29 and N.1; of 2d Decl., 31,33,N.4; of 3d Decl., 36,1 and 2, 38,1, 57,R.4; of Greek substantives, 66,N.4; of adjs., 75,N.4, 79, N.1; of Participles, 89,N.2; for Voc., 201, R.2; syntax of, 203; two Noms., 206; with Inf. after copulative vb., *ib.* R.3; for Voc. in app., 321,N.1; with **ō** and **ēn**, or **ecce**, 343,1,N.1; with Inf. by attraction, 527,N.2; after pass. vbs. of Saying and Thinking, 528; *nōminativus pendens*, 627,N.2.
- nōn**—neg. of Potential, 257; neg. of Wish, 260; with Impv., 270,R.1; syntax of, 441, 442; with **ūllus** for **nūllus**, 446,N.2; **nōn possum nōn**, 449,R.1; **nec nōn** = **et**, *ib.* R.3; *no*, 471,b.1; **nōn modo**—**sed etiam**, 482,5 and N.1; **nōn modo**—**sed nē quidem**, *ib.* R.1; for **nē**, 573,N.2.
- nōnne**—syntax of, 455; with indirect question, 460,1,N.2; with rhetorical question, 464,R.
- nōnnūllus**—108.
- nōscere**—syncope in Pf., 131,3; **novi**, 175,5,d.
- nostrī**—with Gen. Ger., 428,R.1.
- noun**—defined, 16; inflection of, 17; and pronoun, 16,N.2.
- nourishing*—vbs. of, with Abl., 401,N.1.
- novus**—Comp. of, 87,3; with Inf., 422,N.3; with **ut**, 553,4.
- nox**—decl. of, 53,8; with Abl. of Time, 393,R.5.
- nūbere**—with Dat., 346,R.2 and N.4.
- nūdus**—with Gen., 374,N.8.
- nūllus**—decl. of, 76,90; and **nēmō**, 108; with Impv. Subjv., 270,N.; and **ūllus**, 317,2; for **nōn**, *ib.* N.2.
- num**—456; with **ne** and **nam**, *ib.* N.; in indirect questions, 460,1,a; in rhetorical questions, 464,R.
- number**—Sg. and Pl., 22; Dual, *ib.* R. and 112,1; concord of, 285 and N.N.; violation of Concord in app., 321,R.1; substs. of, with Gen., 368; definite numbers in Abl. of Time, 393,R.2.
- numerals**—cardinals, 94; ordinals, 95 and 294; cpd., 96; omission of **centēna milia**, *ib.* 6; insertion of **et**, *ib.* 5; fractions, *ib.* 7; signs, 96,ii.; distributives, 97 and 295; multiplicatives, 97; proportionals, 97; advs., 98; **duo**, **ambō**, **uterque**, 292; **mille**, 293; **singulī**, 295; distributives for cardinals, *ib.* N.; **aliquis** with, 314,R.2; **quisque** with, 318, 2; with Part. Gen., 370.
- numerō**—as adv., 399,N.1; (in) **numerō habēre**, 340,N.1.
- nunc**—strengthens **etiam**, 478,N.1; **nunc**—**nunc**, 482,1 and N.1.
- nūntiāre**—with Inf., 527,N.2; with Nom. and Inf., 528,N.1.
- nūperum**—defective, 85,1.
- O**—sound of, 3; weakening of, 8,1; as interjection, 201,R.2, 343,N.1; **ō si** in Wishes, 261; length of final, 707,5.
- ob**—in composition, 9,4; vbs. cpd. with, take Acc. or Dat., 331,347; to give the Cause, 408,N.3; as prep., 416,16; with Acc. Ger., 428,R.2, 432 and N.1.
- obesse**—with Dat., 346,R.2, 347,R.2; with Inf., 422,N.4.
- obicere**—with Acc. Ger., 430,N.1.
- object**—direct, becomes subj. of pass., 216; indirect retained in pass., 217; direct, 330; inner, 330,332,333; outer, 338; indirect, 344; of Ger., 427,2; after Dat. Ger., 429,N.2; after Acc. Sup., 435, N.3; after Abl. Sup., 436.
- OBJECT SENTENCES**—523 537; with **quod**, 524,525; with Acc. and Inf., 526,527; with Nom. and Inf., 528; after vbs. of Will and Desire, 532; after vbs. of Emotion, 533; in exclamations, 534; as subj., 535; in part., 536, 537; in **Ō. O.**, 655.
- Objective Genitive**—363; of pers. pron., 364,N.2.
- obligāre**—with **sē** and Gen. of Charge, 378,R.1.
- obligation**—expressed by Indic., 254,N.1, 255,N.
- oboedire**—with Dat., 346,R.2.
- obrēpere**—with Dat., 347,R.2.
- obsaturāre**—with Gen., 383,1,N.2.
- obsecrō**—strengthens Impv., 269; without Inf., 546,N.3; with **ut**, 546,N.1.
- obsequi**—with Dat., 346,R.2.
- obsistere**—with Dat., 347,R.2; with **nē**, 549,N.1; with **quān**, 555,1.

- obstāre**—with *Dat.*, 347,R.2; with *nē*, 548,N.1; with *quīn*, 555.1.
- obstrepere**—with *Dat.*, 347,R.2.
- obtemperāre**—with *Dat.*, 346,R.2.
- obtestor**—with *Inf.*, 546,N.3.
- obtingere**—with *Dat.*, 347,R.2.
- obtrektāre**—with *Dat.*, 346,R.2 and N.2.
- obvenire**—with *Dat.*, 347,R.2.
- obversāri**—with *Dat.*, 347,R.2.
- occurrere**—with *Dat.*, 347,R.2.
- occurrere**—with *Dat.*, 347,R.2.
- ōcior**—87,7.
- ōdī**—conjugation of, 175,5,c; **odiō esse** as pass. of, *ib.* N.
- office**—suffixes for, 181,10.
- officere**—with *Dat.*, 346,R.2.
- officium**—in phrases with *Inf.*, 422,N.2; with *ut*, 546,N.2.
- olle**—for *ille*, 104,3,N.1.
- omission**—of vowels, 8,2, 701,R.2,a; of consonants, 9,6; of subj., 207; of copula, 209; of other vbs., *ib.* N.5; of *esse* in *Pf. Inf. pass.*, 280,2,a,R.2 and c; of conjunction, 474,N., 481,483,N., 492,N.; of *nōn*, 482,5,R.1; of vb. of Saying, 545,R.3; of vb. with *gīn*, 592,R.; of *gī*, 598; of vb. of Protasis, 599; of Protasis, 600; of Apodosis, 601; of vb. after *quasi* and *tamquam*, 602,N.1; of vb. of comparative clause, 640.
- omittere**—with *quod*, 525,1,N.1; with *Inf.*, 423,2,N.2; **omitte**, with *Inf.* for *Impv.*, 271,2,N.2.
- omitting**—vbs. of, with *quod*, 555,1; vbs. of, with *Inf.*, 423,2.
- omnīnō**—yes, 471,a,1.
- omnis**—in *Abl.*, without *in*, 388; *omnia*, as *Acc.* of *Respect*, 338,2.
- onus**—with *Inf.*, 422,N.2.
- onustus**—with *Gen.*, 374,N.1; with *Abl.*, 405,N.3.
- operam**—in phrases with *Dat. Ger.*, 429,1 and N.1; with *Inf.*, 422,N.5; with *ut*, 546,N.N.1 and 2.
- opiniō**—in phrases with *Inf.*, 527,R.2; with *ut*, 557,R.; **opiniōne** as *Abl.* of *Respect*, 398,N.1.
- opitulāri**—with *Dat.*, 346,R.2.
- oportet**—*Indic.* for *Subjv.*, 254,R.1; with *Pf. part. pass.*, 280,2,b,R.2; with *Inf.* or *Subjv.*, 535,R.2; with *ut*, 553,4,R.1.
- oppidō**—very, 439,N.3; with *quantum*, 467,N.
- oppidum**—has pred. adj. in agreement, 211,R.6; requires prep., 337,R.1; with *Epeexegetical Gen.*, 336,N.1; in app. to *Town* in *Abl.*, 356,R.1, 391,R.1; in app. to *Loc.*, 411,R.3.
- [**ops**]—defective, 70,D.
- optāre**—with *Inf.*, 423,2,N.2; with *ut*, *ib.* N.4, 546,N.1; **optātō**, as *Abl.* of *Manner*, 399,N.1.
- OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE**—260-265; in *Wishes*, 260; particles with, 261; in *Asseverations*, 262; as *Impv.*, 263; as concessive, 264; in *Deliberative Questions*, 265.
- optimum**—with *Inf.*, 422,N.3.
- opus**—with *Abl.*, 406; with *Gen.*, *ib.* N.3; with *Nom.*, *ib.* N.4; with *part.*, 437,N.2; with *Inf.*, 422,N.2; with *ut*, 557,R.; with *Nom.* and *Inf.*, 528,N.2.
- ōrāre**—with two *Accs.*, 339 and N.1; with *Inf.*, 546,N.3; with *ut*, *ib.* N.1.
- ŌRATIO OBLIQUA**—508,2; partial, *ib.* 3, *ib.* 4; sequence in, 516; in *Relative Sentences*, 625,R., 628,R., 629,R., 648,649; comes in without notice, 649,N.2; shift to, *ib.* N.3; moods in, 650-652; interrogative in, 651; *Impv.* in, 652; tenses in, 653-655; in *Causal Sentences*, 655; *Conditional Sentences* in, 656-659; *Logical*, 595,R.1, 657; *Ideal*, 596,R.5,658; *Unreal*, 597,R.4, 659; pronouns in, 660; by *Attraction*, 508,4,662; partial, 508,3,663; *Representation*, 654 and N.
- orbis**—with *Abl.*, 405,N.3.
- order**—adjs. of, in pred. attrib., 325,R.6.
- ordinals**—94; early forms, 95,N.5; alter for *secundus*, 96,5; in dates, 294; for cardinals, *ib.* and 336,R.1; with *quisque*, *ib.* N., 318,2; position of, 676,R.2.
- ordine**—as *Abl.* of *Manner*, 399,N.1.
- Origin**—*Abl.* of, 395; preps. with *Abl.* of, *ib.* N.N.2 and 3; suffixes of, 182,7.
- oriri**—166,169,1; **ortus**, with *Abl.* of *Origin*, 395,N.1.
- oriundus**—with *Abl.* of *Origin*, 395,N.1.
- ōs**—bone, decl. of, 48,R.; mouth, defective, 70,D.
- ostendere**—with *Acc.* and *Inf.*, 527,R.2.
- ostrea**—heteroclit, 68,1.
- overlapping action—562,571,N.1.
- oxymoron**—694.
- Paene**—with *Indic.* in *Apod.* of *Unreal Condition*, 597,R.3; position of, 677,R.1.
- paenitet**—with *Gen.*, 377; with neut.

- subj., *ib.* n.2; with Inf., 422,n.4; with *quod*, 542.
- palam**—as prep., 417,8.
- palatals**—vowels, 2; consonants, 6,1,n.
- palumbes**—heteroclite, 68,7.
- pānis**—heteroclite, 68,12.
- pār**—with *est* instead of Subjv., 254,n.1; with Gen. or Dat., 359,n.1; with Dat. Ger., 429,n.1.
- parāre**—with Inf., 423,2,n.2; **parātus**, with Inf., 421,n.1,c.
- parataxis**—472.
- parcere**—with Dat., 346,n.2; **parce**, with Inf. for Impv., 271,2,n.2.
- parenthetical ut** and **nō**—545,n.3.
- pārēre**—with Dat., 346,n.2.
- pariter**—**pariter**, 482,3.
- pars**—with Pl. vb., 211,n.1,Ex.α; in Abl. without *in*, 385,n.1; **tuam partem**, 334,n.2.
- Part Affected**—in Acc., 338,1.
- partial obliquity**—508,3, 663.
- particeps**—with Gen., 374,n.2.
- participation**—adjs. of, with Gen., 374.
- PARTICIPIAL SENTENCES**—664-670: to express Time, 665; Cause, 666; Condition and Concession, 667; relative clauses, 668; Future similarly used, 669,670.
- PARTICIPLE**—decl. of, 80,82; Abl. of, 83; Nom. and Acc. Pl. of, *ib.* n.1; comparison of, 88,89; Abl. of Comp., *ib.* n.1; Nom. Pl. of, *ib.* n.2; Gen. Pl. of, *ib.* n.3; defined, 112,5; formation of, 115,3; early forms of, 130,7; Pf. pass., 135,1; Fut. Act., *ib.* II.; Pf. pass. of Deponents as act., 167,n.1; Pf. pass. of intrans. vbs. used as act., 220,n.1; Pf. with **habere** and **teneo**, 238; Fut. periphrastic, 247; Pr. periphrastic with *esse*, *ib.* n.2; Pf. with **ful**, 250; as adj., *ib.* n.2; as pred., 251,n.1; usage of Pr. and Pf., 282; usage of Fut. act., 283; concord with two subs. in Abl. Abs., 285,n.3; Pr. with Gen., 375; contrasted with adj., *ib.* n.1; Comp. of, with Gen., *ib.* n.2; of Birth with Abl., 395; Pf. pass. with **opus** and **usus**, 406; in Abl. Abs., 409, 410, and nn.; Pf. pass. parallel with Ger., 426,n.2, 427,n.1; as subst., 437; Fut. as subst., *ib.* n.1; as adj., 438; Fut. as adj., *ib.* n.1; parallel with rel. and Subjv., *ib.* n.; with interrog., 469; sequence after, 518; after vbs. of Perception, etc., 527,n.1, 536; after vbs. of Causation, etc., 537; equiv. to *cum*, 585, n.; for Prot., 593,2; for Prot. in Comparative Sentence, 602,n.3; Concessive, 609; for rel., 637.
- particles**—copulative, 474; adversative, 483; disjunctive, 492; causal, 498; illative, 499; position of, 679.
- partitive apposition**—322.
- Partitive Genitive**—367-372: with substs. of Quantity, etc., 368; with neut. Sg., 369; with numerals, 370; with pronouns, 371; with comparatives and superlatives, 372; preps. instead, *ib.* n.2; with **uterque**, 371,n.1; extensions of, 372, nn.; contrasted with Gen. of Characteristic, 369,n.1.
- parts of speech**—16.
- parvus**—Comp. of, 90; in Gen. of Price, 380,1.
- passive**—voice, 112,2; vbs. with two Noms., 206; vb. agrees with pred., 211, n.1, Ex. b; defined, 214; Pf. with Dat. of Agent, 215,1; as reflexive, 218; of something endured, 219; periphrastic forms of, 248-251; with Acc. of Respect, 338,n.2; impersonal, 346,n.1.
- pati**—with *ut*, 553,2; with Inf., *ib.* n.
- patronyms**—182,11.
- paulo, paulum**—with *ante* and *post*, 403,n.4,b.
- pause**—in Verse, 742.
- pavore**—constr. of, 550 and n.1.
- pax**—decl. of, 70,D; in Abl. of Time, 393, n.5, 394,n.1.
- peculiāris**—with Gen. or Dat., 359,n.1.
- pecus**—heteroclite, 68,12.
- pellere**—with Abl. of Separation, 390, n.1.
- pendere**—with Gen., 379.
- penes**—position of, 413,n.1; use of, as prep., 416,17.
- pentameter**—elegiac, 785; Pf. Inf. in, 280, 2,b,n.2; position of words in, 683.
- penult**—11.
- penus**—heteroclite, 68,11.
- per**—vbs. cpd. with take Acc., 331; with Acc. of Extent, 335, 336; to express Time Within Which, *ib.* n.2, 393,n.1; *here* and *there in*, 385,n.3; for Abl. of Manner, 399,n.1; with Person Through Whom, 401; position of, 413,n.1, and n.2; use as prep., 416,18.
- perceiving**—vbs. of, with Object Clause, 523; with Acc. and Inf., 526, 527; with



- Nom., 528; with part., 527,N.1, 536;  
Nom. after, 536,N.2.
- percentārī**—with two Accs., 339 and N.1.
- perdius**—defective, 85,2.
- PERFECT**—defined, 112,3; System, 114,2  
and 3,b; formation of, 114, 115, 121,2;  
syncopated forms of, 131, 1-3; early  
forms of, 131,4; Stem, 134; part. pass.,  
135,I.; part. as subst., 167,N.1; pass.  
with Dat. of Agent, 215,1; part. used as  
act., 220,N.1; defined, 223; Historical,  
225; Pure and Historical, 235; force of,  
236; trans. by Eng. Pr., *ib.* R.; with  
Aor. force, *ib.*; Gnostic, *ib.* N.; for Fut.  
Pf., 237; part. with **habēō** and **teneō**,  
238; pass. with **fuī**, 250; Subjv. as  
Potential, 257,2 and N.1; in wishes,  
260; Subjv. as Impv., 263,2,b, 270,R.2;  
tense relations in Subjv., 277; Inf.  
as subj. or obj., 280,2; after **deciit**,  
*ib.* A, R.1; Emotional, *ib.*; after  
**oportuit**, *ib.* R.2; after **velle**, 280,  
2,b and N.1; after **posse**, *ib.*; after  
**debeō**, *ib.* N.3; after vbs. of Will and  
Desire, 280,2,c; use of part., 282 and  
N.; part. as subj., 437,N.1; Sequence  
after, 511,RR.3,4; Subjv. in Final  
Sentences, 512,N.1; in Consecutive Sen-  
tences, 513 and NN.; Inf., 530; Inf. in  
O.O., 659,N.
- perficere**—with **ut**, 553,1.
- pergere**—with Inf., 423,2,N.2.
- perhibere**—as copulative vb., 206,  
N.1; with Nom. and Inf., 528 and  
N.1.
- period**—Responsive and Apodotic, 685;  
forms distinguished by Nögelsbach,  
686; Historical and Oratorical, 687.
- periphrasis**—for Impv., 271; for Fut.  
periphrastic, 515,R.2; for Fut., 531 and  
N.1; for Apod. in Unreal Condition,  
597,R.5.
- PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION**—129: act.,  
247; pass., 251; with **fuī**, 247,R.1; with  
**forem**, *ib.* N.1; Pr. part. with **esse**, *ib.*  
N.2; with **futūrum esse ut**, 248; with  
**in eō est**, 249; with **posse**, **velle**, 248,  
R.; Pf. part. with **sum** and **fuī**, 250 and  
R.1; with **forem** for **essem**, *ib.* N.2;  
with Ger., 251; Fut. act., 283.
- perire**—pass. of **perdere**, 169,2,R.1.
- peritus**—with Gen., 374,N.4.
- permanere**—with two Noms., 206,N.1.
- permittere**—used personally in pass.,  
217,N.2; with Inf., 423,2,N.2, 532,N.1  
553,2,N.; with **ut**, 553,2.
- permitting**—vbs. of, with Consecutive  
Clause, 553,2.
- pernox**—defective, 85,2.
- perperum**—defective, 85,1.
- perpetuus**—and **perpes**, 84,1; **per-**  
**petuum**, as adv. Acc., 336,N.1.
- perquam**—with Indic., 467,N.
- persequēns**—with Gen., 375,N.2.
- perseverāre**—with Inf., 423,2,N.2.
- persons**—in conjugation of vb., 112,1;  
concord of, 287; order of, *ib.* R.
- personal endings**—114.
- personal pronouns**—304; omitted, *ib.* 1;  
Gen. of, as objective, *ib.* 2, 364,N.2; poss.  
for, *ib.* 2,N.2; Gen. of, as Partitive, *ib.* 3;  
for poss., *ib.* 3,N.1; circumlocution for  
third personal pronoun, *ib.* 3,N.2.
- perspicere**—with Acc. and Inf., 527,R.1.
- perstāre**—with Inf., 423,2,N.2.
- persuādere**—used personally in pass.,  
217,N.1; with Dat., 346,R.2, and NN.2,4;  
with Inf., 423,2,N.2, 527,R.2, 546,R.1;  
with **ut**, 546,N.1.
- pertaesum est**—with Gen., 377.
- petsum**—defective, 70,A; with **ire**, 435,  
N.1.
- petere**—with **ā** and Abl., 339,R.1 and N.1;  
with Acc. Ger., 430,N.1; with Inf., 423,  
2,N.2; with **ut**, 546,N.1.
- Phalaecean**—verse, 796.
- Pherecratean**—verse, 794.
- phonetic variations**—in vowels, 8; in con-  
sonants, 9; in consonant stem-charac-  
teristic, 121,R.
- piget**—with Gen., 377; with subj., *ib.* R.2.
- pili**—as Gen. of Price, 380,1.
- pinus**—heteroclit, 68,5.
- pius**—Comp. of, 87,6,N.
- place**—*where*, in Abl., 385; with vbs. of  
Placing, *ib.* R.1; with Towns, 386; as  
Cause, Means, etc., 389; with Books,  
etc., 387; with **tōtus**, etc., 388; in Loc.,  
411: *whence*, in Abl., 390, 391; with  
Towns, 391; of origin, 395,N.2; *whither*,  
in Acc., 337.
- placere**—with Dat., 346,R.2; use of Fut.  
Pf., 244,R.3.
- pleasure**—vbs. of, with Dat., 346; adjs. of,  
with Abl. Sup., 436,N.2.
- plēbs**—decl. of, 63,N.1, 68,8.
- plenty**—vbs. of, with Abl., 405; adjs. of,  
with Gen. or Abl., *ib.* N.3.

**plēnus**—with Gen., 374.N.1; with Abl., 405.N.3.  
**pleonasm**—692.  
**plēraque**—as Acc. of Respect, 338.2.  
**pluere**—with Abl. of Means, 401.N.5.  
**PLUPERFECT**—112.3; formation of, 114, 115; Aor. forms of, 131.4, b, 3; defined, 223; force of, 241; translated by Impf., *ib.* N.; used as Aor., *ib.* N.1; periphrastic, with **habeō**, *ib.* N.2; Subjv. as Potential of Past, 258.N.2; in Wish, 260; with **vellem**, 261.N.; Subjv. as Concessive, *ib.* N.; Subjv. as Impv. of Past, 273.3; tense force in Subjv., 277; in Final Sentences, 512.N.1; to express Resulting Condition, 563.1; Indic. in Apod. of Unreal Condition, 597.N.2.  
**plural**—of abstracts, 204.N.5; used for Sg., *ib.* NN.6, 7; pred. with two subjs., 285; neut. pred. to two fems., 286.3.  
**plūs**—**quam** omitted with, 296.N.4; **plūris**, with vbs. of Rating and Buying, 380.1; **plūrimum**, with **quantum**, 467.N.; **plūrimī**, as Gen. of Price, 380.1.  
**poëma**—heteroclit, 68.7.  
**pollēre**—with Inf., 423.2, N.2.  
**pollicēri**—with Inf., 527.N.2, 531.N.4.  
**pollis**—decl. of, 41.4.  
**pondō**—defective, 70.A.  
**pōne**—usage of, 416.19.  
**pōnere**—with **in** and Abl., 386.N.1 and N.2; *suppose*, with Inf., 527.N.2.  
**pōscere**—with two Accs., 339 and N.1; with **ā** and Abl., *ib.* N.1; with Inf. or **ut**, 546, NN.1, 3.  
**position**—adjs. of, in pred. attrib., 325.N.6; of advs., 440; of neg., 448 and NN.; of rel., 612; of correlative clause, 620; poetical peculiarities in, 683.  
**positive**—degree lacking, 87, 2, 7, 8, and 9; with prep. to express disproportion, 298.N.; in comparing qualities, 299; with **quam** after Comp., 299.N.2; with Part. Gen., 372.N.2; supplied from neg., 447, N.  
**posse**—conj. of, 119; **potis** for **posse**, 209.N.2; use of Fut. and Fut. Pf. of, 242.N.2, 244.N.3; needs no periphrasis, 248.N.; Indic. for Subjv., 254.N.1; Impf. Indic. of Disappointment, *ib.* N.2; with Pf. Inf. act., 280, 2, b, and N.1; with **quam**, *etc.*, to strengthen superlative, 303; omitted, with **quam**, *ib.* N.1; with Inf., 423.2, N.2; **nōn possum nōn**, 449.N.1;

in simple questions, 453.N.1; for periphrastic, 513.N.3, 531.N.3 and 4; in Apod. of Unreal Condition, 597.N.5.c; restrictions with, 627.N.2; in Logical Condition, 657.N.; in Unreal Condition in **Ō.O.** 659.N.

**Possession**—Dat. of, 349; compared with Gen., *ib.* N.2; of qualities, *ib.* N.3; Gen. of, 362; in 1st and 2d person, *ib.* N.1; omission of governing word, *ib.* N.3.

**possessive pronouns**—100 102, 106.N.4; usage of **suus**, 309, 4 and NN.; syntax of, 312; intense use of, *ib.* N.1; for Gen. of personal pron., 304, 2, N.2; with Gen. in app., 321.N.2; for 1st and 2d persons in Subjective Gen., 364; as pred., 366.N.3; with **interest** and **rēfert**, 381; with **domī**, 411.N.4; position of, 676.N.1.

**possibility**—in Indic. rather than Subjv., 254.N.1, 255.N.

**post**—vbs. cpd. with, take Dat., 347; with Abl. or Acc. of Measure, 403.N.4; position of, 403.N.4, b, 413.N.1; omission of, with rel., 403.N.4; as adv., 415; as prep., 416, 20; with Pf. part. pass., 437, N.2.

**posteaquam**—see **postquam**.

**posterum**—defective, 74.N.2; Comp. of, 87, 2 and 7.

**postquam**—with Hist. Pf. or Pr., 561; with Impf., 562; with Plupf., 563; range of tenses with, *ib.* NN.1-3; with Subjv., *ib.* N.4; Causal with Pr. and Pf., 564 and N.1; in Iterative action, 566, 567.

**postridiē quam**—577.N.5.

**pōstulāre**—with **ā** and Abl., 339.N.1 and N.1; with Inf., 423, 2, N.2, 546.N.3; with **ut**, *ib.* N.3.

**potēns**—with Gen., 374.N.3.

**POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE**—257-259; for Pr. and Fut., 257; for Past, 258; in questions, 259; for Indic., 257.N.3; not conditional, 257.N.2, 600, 2; of Past coincides with Unreal of Present, 258.N.2.

**potiri**—with Abl., 407 and N.2, d; with personal Ger., 427.N.5.

**potis**, e—85.C; **potior**, 87.7; **potius** strengthens comparative, 301; **potius quam**, with Subjv. or Inf., 577.N.6, 631, 3, N.2, 644.N.3; see **posse**.

**power**—adjs. of, with Gen., 374; vbs. of, with Inf., 423 and N.2; sequence after vb. of, 515.N.3; in Indic. rather than Subjv., 254.N.1, 255.N.

- prae**—to express disproportion, 296, N.3; vbs. cpd. with take Dat., 347; gives Preventing Cause, 408, N.4; as adv., 415; as prep., 417, 9; **prae quod**, 525, 2, N.2.
- prae cellere**—with Abl. of Respect, 397, N.2.
- prae cipere**—with Inf., 423, 2, N.2; with **ut**, 546, N.1; used personally in pass., 217, N.2; **praeceptum**, with **ut**, 546, N.2.
- prae cipitäre**—with Abl., 390, 2, N.3.
- prae cipuum**—with **ut**, 557, R.
- prae sesse**—with Dat. Ger., 429, 1.
- prae ficere**—with Dat. Ger., 429, 1.
- prae gestire**—with Inf., 423, 2, N.2.
- (in) **prae sentiä**—for the present, 394, R.
- prae sidere**—with Dat., 347, R.2.
- prae stäre**—with Dat., 347, R.2; with Abl. of Respect, 397, N.2; with Abl. of Measure, 403, N.1; with **ut**, 553, 1.
- prae stöläri**—with Dat., 346, N.2.
- praeter**—to express disproportion, 296, N.3; vbs. cpd. with take Acc., 331; position of, 413, N.3; use as prep., 416, 21; with Pf. part. pass., 437, N.2; **id quod**, **quam quod**, **quod**, 525, 2, N.2.
- praeter ire**—with **quod**, 525, 1, N.1.
- precäri**—with **ut**, 546, N.1.
- predicate**—and copula, 205; with copulative vbs., 206; concord of, 211; violation of concord of, *ib.* RR.1-6, NN.1-3; in Pl. with two subjs., 285; in Pl. with **neque**—**neque**, *ib.* N.1; concord of, in Gender, 286; in Person, 287; Attribution, 325; Apposition, *ib.* and R.6; with Abl. Abs., 410, N.6; after Inf., 538.
- prepositions**—assimilation of in composition, 9, 4; defined, 16, 6; repeated with cpd. vbs., 331, RR.2, 3; with Countries and Towns, 337, RR.1-4; with **domum**, *ib.* R.3; omitted with Countries and Towns, 337, NN.1-3; instead of Dat., 347, R.1; omitted with vbs. and adjs. of Separation, 390, 2 and 3; with Abl. of Origin, 395, NN.2, 3; syntax of, 412-416; origin of, 412; position of, 413, 678; repetition and omission of, 414; as advs., 415; with Acc., 416; with Abl., 417; with Acc. and Abl., 418; two with same case, 414, R.4; improper, 412, N.; with participles for abstract substantives, 437, N.2.
- PRESENT**—112, 3; System, 114, 3,  $\alpha$ ; rules for formation of, 121, 1; notes on System, 130; formation of Stem, 133; defined, 223; Historical, 224, 229; Specific or Universal, 227; Progressive, *ib.* N.1; of Endeavor, *ib.* N.2; of Resistance to Pressure, *ib.* N.3; anticipates Fut., 228; with **iam**, etc., 230; contrasted with Pf. to give Effect in VERGIL, *ib.* N.3; part. with **esse**, 247, N.2; Indic. for Deliberative Subjv., 264, N.2; Subjv. as Potential, 287, 2; Subjv. in Wishes, 260; Subjv. as Impv., 263, 270, N.2; Subjv. as Concessive, 264; tense relations in Subjv., 277; Inf. as subj. or obj., 280, 1; Inf. after **memini**, 281, 2, N.; part., 282; part. as subst., 437, N.1; Hist. sequence after, 511, R.1; Inf. after vbs. of Saying and Thinking, 530; Inf. for Fut., 531, NN.3 and 4.
- preventing**—vbs. of, with **nē**, **quōminus**, or **quā**, 548, 549, 555, 1.
- previous condition—given by **ex** or **ab**, and Abl., 206, R.2, 396, N.2.
- Priapean**—verse, 805.
- Price**—Gen. of, 379; Abl. of, 404.
- pridiēquam**—usage of, 577, N.5.
- primitive words—179, 1.
- primōris**—defective, 85, 1.
- primus**—with **quisque**, 318, N.3; **primō**, **primum**, 325, R.7; in pred. attrib., 325, R.6; used partitively, 291; **prior**, 87, 8.
- principal parts—120.
- principal tenses—225.
- priusquam**—with Indic., 574, 576; with Pr., 575; with pure Pf., *ib.* N.1; with Pf. or Fut., 576; **nōn priusquam** = **dum**, *ib.* R.; with Subjv., 577; with **ut** or Inf., 644, R.3.
- prō**—to express disproportion, 298; with **habēre**, 340, R.1; with Nom. or Acc. in Exclamations, 343, 1, N.1; for, compared with Dat., 345, R.2; position of, 413, R.1; as prep., 417, 10; with Abl. Ger., 433; **prō eō quod**, 525, 2, N.2; **prō eō ut**, 642, R.4.
- probäre**—with Inf., 527, R.2.
- prōcreātus**—with Abl. of Origin, 395, N.1.
- procul**—with Abl. of Separation, 390, 3, N.2; as prep., 417, 11.
- prōdesse**—conj. of, 118; with Dat., 346, R.2; with Inf., 422, N.4.
- prōdigus**—with Gen., 374, N.1.
- profectō**—strengthens **atque**, 477, N.2.
- prōficere**—with **ut**, 553, 1.
- profundus**—never with Acc., 335, R.1.

- profusus**—with Gen., 374, n. 1.  
**prōgnātus**—with Abl. of Origin, 395, n. 1.  
**prohibēre**—with two Accs., 341, n. 2; with Abl., 390, 2, n. 3; with Inf., 423, 2, n. 2; with **nō**, 548, and n. 1; with **quōminus**, 549, and n. 1; with Inf., 532, n. 1. 549, n. 1.  
**prohibiting**—vbs. of, with Dat., 345, n. 1.  
**proinde**—strengthens Impv., 269; as coördinating conj., 503; and **proin**, *ib.*  
**prolepsis**—of subj. of leading clause, 468.  
**promising**—vbs. of, with Inf., 423, n. 5, 527, n. 4; 531, n. 4.  
**prōmittere**—with Pr. Inf., 527, n. 2, 531, n. 4.  
**PRONOUNS**—defined, 16, 3; compared with nouns, *ib.* n. 2; decl. of, 17; Personal, 100 102; Determinative, 103; Demonstrative, 104; Relative, 105; Interrogative, 106; Indefinite, 107; Pronominal Adjectives, 108; Possessive, 100 102; omitted, 207; with Impv., 267, n.; syntax of, 304 319; Personal, 304; Demonstrative, 305-307; **hic**, 305; **iste**, 306; **ille**, 307; Determinative **is**, 308; Reflexive, 309; **idem**, 310; **ipse**, 311; Possessive, 312; Indefinite, 313-319; **quisdam**, 313; **aliquis**, 314; **quis**, 315; **quispiam**, 316; **quisquam** and **ullus**, 317; **quisque**, 318; **alter** and **alius**, 319; with Part. Gen., 371; in Ū. O., 660.  
**prōnūtiāre**—used personally in pass., 217, n. 2.  
**prōnus**—constr. of, 359, n. 5.  
**prope**—as adv., 415; as prep., 416, 22; position of, 678, n. 1; **propior** and **proximus**, 87, 8; with Acc. or **ab**, 359, n. 1.  
**properāre**—with Inf., 423, 2, n. 2.  
**prōpīnāre**—with Acc. Ger., 430, n. 1.  
**propinquus**—Comp. of, 87, 9.  
**prōpnēre**—with Acc. Ger., 430, n. 1.  
**prōpositum**—est, with Inf., 423, 2, n. 2; with **ut**, 546, n. 2.  
**proprius**—with Gen. or Dat., 359, n. 1; with **ut**, 557, n.  
**propter**—compared with Abl. of Cause, 408, n. 3; position of, 413, n. 1; as adv., 415; as prep., 416, 23; with Acc. Ger., 432 and n. 1.  
**propterea**—503.  
**prosody**—701-823.  
**prōspicere**—with Dat., 346, n. 2; with Inf., 527, n. 1; with **ut**, 546, n. 1.  
**prōstāre**—with Gen. of Price, 379.  
**protasis**—defined, 589; equivalents of, 593; omission of vb. of, 599; total omission of, 600.  
**protraction**—743.  
**prōvidēre**—with **ut**, 546, n. 1.  
**providing**—vbs. of, with Abl., 401, n. 1.  
**prōvidus**—Comp. of, 87, 5.  
**proximum**—in phrases with **ut**, 557, n.  
**prūdēs**—in pred. attrib., 325, n. 6; with Gen., 374, n. 4.  
**-pte**—added to personal pronouns, 102, n. 3.  
**pudet**—with Gen., 377 and n. 1; with subj., *ib.* n. 2.  
**puer**—Voc. of, 33, n. 2.  
**pūgnāre**—with Dat., 346, n. 6; with **ut**, 546, n. 1.  
**purpose**—in Inf., 423, n. 1; in Dat. Ger., 429, 2; in Sup., 435; in Fut. part., 438, n.; sequence in clauses of, 512; reflexive in clauses of, 521; rel. clauses of, 630; see Final Sentences.  
**pūrus**—with Abl. of Sep., 390, 3, n.  
**putāre**—with Gen. of Price, 379; with two Noms. in pass., 206; (**nōn**) **putāveram**, 254, n. 1; **puta, ut puta**, for example, 274; with Inf., 527, n. 2.  
**putting**—vbs. of, with Dat. and Acc., or Acc. and Abl., 348.  
**Quā—quā**, 482, 3.  
**quaerere**—with **ā, dē, ex**, 339, n. 1; with Inf., 423, 2, n. 2; with Direct Question, 467, n.  
**quaesō**—175, 0; with Impv., 269; without Inf., 546, n. 3.  
**quālis**—in phrases instead of Comparative, 296, n. 3.  
**Quality**—possession of, 349, n. 3; Gen. of, 365 and n. 1; Gen. and Abl. of, *ib.* n. 2, 400, n. 1; Gen. of, as pred., 366; Abl. of, 400; personified quality as person, *ib.* n. 2; Comparison of qualities, 299.  
**quam**—after comparatives, 296 and n. 1; omission of, *ib.* n. 4; preps. instead, *ib.* n. 3; **atque** instead, *ib.* n. 4; with **prō, ut, qui**, to express disproportion, 298; with positive for comparative, 299, n. 2; in comparison of qualities, 299; with **potuit** and superlative, 303; with **qui** and superlative, *ib.* n. 2; **magis, nōn aliter, quam ut**, 557, n. 2; **quam si**, with Subjv. of Comparison, 602; with **qui** or **ut** after comparatives, 631, 3; with **quam qui** and superlative, 642, n. 5;

- after *alius* or *secus*, 643, N.4; with Comparative Sentences, 644; with *potius*, *prius*, etc., R.3.
- quamdiū*—568; with Indic., 569; range of, *ib.* N.1.
- quamlibet*—606.
- quamquam*—603 and N.; with Indic., 605; with Subjv., *ib.* RR.1,2, and N; and *yet*, *ib.* R.3; with part., 609, N.1, 667, N.; with Inf., 635, N.2.
- quamvis*—603 and N.; with Subjv., 606; with Indic., *ib.* N.1; inflection of vb. of, *ib.* N.2; with *licet*, 607, N.2; with part., 609, N.1, 667, N.; with adj. or adv., 609, N.2.
- quandō*—with Causal Indic., 540; with Subjv., 541; early use, 538, N.3, 580, N.3; conditional use, 590, N.3.
- quandōque*—with causal clause, 541, N.5; *quandōque*—*quandōque*, 482, I, N.1.
- quantity—rules for, 702-706; of final syllables, 707-713; of polysyllables, 707-709; of monosyllables, 710-713; of stem syllables, 714; of cpds., 715; in early Latin, 716, 717.
- quantity*—12; subst. of, with Gen., 368.
- quantum*—with *mīrum*, *nīmium*, etc., 209, N.2, 467, N.; with *māximus* and *potuit* to strengthen superlative, 303; *quantum quī*, with superlative, *ib.* R.2; *quantī*, with vbs. of Rating and Buying, 380; with advs. and Indic., 467, N.
- quantumvis*—603 and N., 606.
- quasi*—with subst., 439, N.4; with Subjv. of Comparison, 602; with Indic., *ib.* N.1; to apologize, *ib.* N.2; to give an Assumed Reason, *ib.* N.4, 666, N.
- quātenus*—as a Causal particle, 538, N.5.
- quattuor*—early forms of, 95, N.3.
- que*—added to rels., 111, 2; syntax of, 476 and NN.; for *quoque*, 479, N.2; adds third member, 481, N.
- quemadmodum*—*sic*, 482, 3, N.
- querī*—with Acc. and Inf., 533, R.1.
- questions—with Potential Subjv., 259; deliberative, 265, 465; passionate equiv. to command, 273, 453, N.2; predicate and nominal, 451; rhetorical, 265, 451, R.2, 464, 466; direct simple, 453-457; equiv. to Condition, 453, N.3; with *ne*, 454; with *nōnne*, 455; with *num*, 456; with *an*, 457; direct disjunctive, 458; neg. of, 459; particles in indirect, 460; moods in, 462-467; Indic. in, 463, 464; Subjv. in, 465, 466; indirect, 467; genuine, 463; disconnected, 467, N.; exclamatory, 558.
- quī* interrogative—106 and R.
- quī* relative—105 and NN.; with *quam* and Subjv. to express disproportion, 298; after *dignus*, etc., 552, R.2; equiv. to *si quis*, 625, 2; explicative, 626; strengthened by *ut*, *utpote*, *quippe*, *ib.* N.1; *quod sciam*, 627, R.1; equiv. to *cum* is, 628, R., 633, 634; equiv. to *ut is*, 630, 631; after comparatives with *quam*, 631, 3; equiv. to adj., *ib.* 4; *sed quī*, *quī tamen*, 636, N.2; *quō quisque*, with comparative, 642, R.2; see *quō* and *quā*.
- quia*—after vbs. of Doing and Happening, 525, I, N.4; origin of and, correlatives with, 538, NN.1, 2; with Causal Indic., 540; with Subjv., 541; after vbs. of Emotion, 542, R.; with Inf., 635, N.2.
- quicumque*—105 and N.5; with Indic., 254, 4, 625.
- quidam*—107, 2; syntax of, 313; with *quasi*, 319, R.2; strengthened by *certus*, *ūnus*, 313, R.3.
- quidem*—with demonstrative pron., 307, R.4; position of, 413, N.3, 679; *yes*, with *sānō*, 471, a., 1.
- quilibet*—107 and N.
- quīn*—with *mīrum*, 209, N.2; strengthens Impv., 269; *nōn quīn* as Causal, 541, N.2; force of, 547; in Consecutive Sentences, 552, 3; with vbs. of Preventing, 555, 1; with vbs. of Doubt and Uncertainty, *ib.* 2; after *nōn dubitō*, *ib.* 2, R.1; equiv. to *ut nōn*, 556; after vbs. of Saying, etc., 555, 2; in Relative Sentences of Character, 632 and R.; *facere nōn possum quīn*, 556.
- quippe*—498, N.8; with *quī*, 628, N.1.
- quīquī*—105 and N.4.
- quire*—conjugation of, 170, a; with Inf., 433, 2, N.2.
- quis* indefinite—and *quī*, 107, 1; for *aliquis*, *ib.* R. and N.1; syntax of, 315; *aliquis* instead, *ib.* N.1; familiar usage of, 317, 2, N.2.
- quis* interrogative—106; and *quī*, *ib.* R.; old forms of, *ib.* NN.1, 2; *quī* in Wishes, 261; for *uter*, 300, N.
- quisnam*—106 and N.5.
- quispiam*—107, 3, and N.1; syntax of, 316.



**quisquam**—107,3, and N.2; syntax of, 317; strengthened by *ūnus*, *ib.* 1,N.1; negative of, *ib.* 2; as adj., *ib.* 1,N.3.

**quisque**—107,5, and N.; **quisquis** instead, 105,N.4; with Pl. vb., 211,R.1, Ex.a; with ordinal, 294,N., 318,2; syntax of, 318; with superlatives, *ib.* 2; with reflexives, *ib.* 3; attraction of, *ib.* N.2; **suum quisque**, *ib.* N.4; with **quō** and comparative, 642,N.2; **ut quisque**, with superlative, *ib.*

**quisquis**—105; as adj., *ib.* N.4; with Indic., 254,4, 625.

**quivis**—107,4 and N.

**quō**—as Causal conjunction, 541,N.2; **nōn quō** in Final Clauses, 545,2; **quōnē**, *ib.* R.1; **quō setius**, 549,N.4.

**quoad**—force of, 568; of complete coextension, 569; *until*, with Indic., 571; with Subjv., 572; *until*, with Subjv., *ib.* N.5.

**quod**—in Inner Obj., 333 1,N.1; introduces Object Sentences, 524; after vbs. of Adding and Dropping, 525,1; after demonstratives, *ib.* 2; and **ut**, *ib.* 1,N.5; **quid est quod**, *ib.* 1,N.2; after **verba sentiendi**, *ib.* N.7; after demonstratives, with preps., *ib.* 2,N.2; as to the fact that, with Subjv., *ib.* 2,N.3; with Subjv. in O. O., *ib.* 3; after vbs. of Motion, *ib.* 1,N.6; gives Ground in Exclamations, 534, R.1; with Causal Sentence in Indic., 540; with Causal Sentence in Subjv., 541; after vbs. of Emotion, 542; with **diceret**, *ib.* N.3; **nōn quod**, *ib.* N.2; **magis quod**, 541,N.2; correlatives of, 538,N.1; and **quia**, *ib.* N.2; **nisi quod**, 591,R.3; **quod si**, 610,R.2.

**quom**—see **cum**.

**quōminus**—force of, 547; with vbs. of Preventing, *etc.*, 549; for **nē**, 548,N.2; and **quin**, 549,N.3.

**quōmodo**—with Direct Question, 467,N.

**quoniam**—with Causal Indic., 540; with Subjv., 541; original force of, 538,N.3; early usage of, 580,N.3.

**quoque**—syntax of, 479; and **etiam**, 479, R. and N.1; **que** instead, *ib.* N.2; with **sed** and **verum**, 482,5 and N.1.

**Rating**—vbs. of, with Gen. and Abl., 379, 380.

**ratio**—in Abl. of Manner, 399,N.1; with **ut**, 546,N.2.

**recōns**—with Abl., 390,3,N.1.

**recipere**—with Abl. or in, 389.

reciprocal relations—given by **inter sē**, 221; by **alter alterum**, *etc.*, *ib.* N.1; by **invicem**, **mūtuō**, *etc.*, *ib.* N.2.

recitation of verses—754.

**recordārī**—with Pr. Inf., 281,2,N.; with Acc., 376,R.2.

**rēctum**—with Inf., 422,N.3.

**recūsare**—with Inf., 423,2,N.2; with **nē**, 548,N.1; with **quōminus**, 549 and N.1; constr. with, 549,N.1.

**red**—in composition, 9,4, 715,R.3.

**reddere**—with Pf. part., 537,N.2; **reddi** and **fieri**, 206,N.1, 340,R.1.

reduplication—in Pr. stem, 133,II.; in Pf. stem, 134,III.; omitted in Pf. of cpd. vbs., *ib.*

Reference—Dat. of, 352.

**rēfert**—with Gen. and Abl., 381,382; Nom. with, 381,N.3; origin of, *ib.* N.5; expression of Degree of Concern, 382,1 and 2; expression of Thing Involved, *ib.* 3.

**refertus**—with Gen., 374,N.1.

reflexive—218; passive used for, 218; approaches deponent, 218,R.; pronouns, 309; **is** retained instead of reflexive, *ib.* N.1; strengthened, *ib.* N.2; **suum quisque**, 318,N.3; with **ipse**, 311,2; with Acc. of Respect, 338,N.2; in subordinate clauses, 520 522; not in Consecutive Sentences, 521,R.1; refers to real subj., 309,2, 521,R.2; free use of, *ib.* R.3; Indic. Relative Sentences, *ib.* R.4; ambiguity in, *ib.* N.3; demonstrative instead of, *ib.* R.1,N.3.

**reformidāre**—with Inf., 423,2,N.2.

**refrāgārī**—with Dat., 346,R.2.

**refraining**—vbs. of, with **quin**, 555,1.

**refusing**—vbs. of, with **nē**, 548; with **quōminus**, 549; with Inf., 548,R.2; with **quin**, 555,1.

*Rriziānus Versus*—822.

**regiō**—in Abl. without in, 385,N.1.

relation—suffixes for, 181,8.

relationship—suffixes for, 181,7,182,11.

relative pronouns—105; made indefinite, 111,1; or universal, *ib.* 2; in Inner Obj., 333,1,N.2; instead of app. with **rēfert**, 381,N.2; contrasted with interrogative, 467,R.2, 611,N.2; indefinite with Indic., 354,R.4; with Subjv., 567,N.; advs. instead, 611,N.1; continued by demonstrative, 636,N.1; repetition of, 615.

- RELATIVE SENTENCES**—610-637; for Pro-  
tasis, 593,1; general consideration of,  
610; how introduced, 611; position of,  
612; antecedent in, 613; concord in, 614  
and *RR.*; *id quod, etc.*, in app. to a sen-  
tence, *ib.* R.2; incorporation of app., *ib.*  
R.4; repetition of antecedent, 615; in-  
corporation of antecedent, 616; attrac-  
tion of, 617; correlative of, 618; absorp-  
tion of correlative, 619; position of  
correlative, 620; indefinite antecedent,  
621; tenses in, 622,623; in Iterative  
action, 623; moods in, 624-635; indefi-  
nite and generic relatives with Indic.,  
254,R.4, 625,1; or Subjv., *ib.* R.; condi-  
tional, 625,2; explanatory, 626; Subjv.  
in explanatory, 627; *quod sciam, etc.*,  
*ib.* R.1; restrictions with *esse, posse,*  
*attinet, ib.* R.2; with Subjv. by Partial  
Obliquity, 628; with Subjv. by Attrac-  
tion, 629; Final, 630; attraction of  
*diceret, ib.* N.3; Consecutive, 631; after  
definite antecedent, *ib.* 1; after indefi-  
nite antecedent, *ib.* 2; after compara-  
tive, *ib.* 3; parallel to adj., *ib.* 4; with  
*quā, ib.* 632; Causal, 633; Concessive and  
Adversative, 634; in Inf., 635; combina-  
tion of, 636; participle instead, 637,668;  
in *Ō. O.*, 655 and *RR.*
- relātū**—as Sup., 436,N.
- relieving**—vbs. of, with Abl., 390,2.
- relinquere**—with Acc. Ger., 430,N.1.
- reliquum est**—with ut, 553,4.
- reliquus**—used partitively with Subst.,  
291,R.2; *alius* for, 319,N.1; *reliqua,*  
as Acc. of Respect, 338,2.
- remembering**—vbs. of, with Gen., 376;  
with Acc., *ib.* R.2.
- rēmex**—defective, 70, D.
- reminding**—vbs. of, with Gen., 376; with  
Abl. or Acc., *ib.* *RR.* 1,2.
- removing**—vbs. of, with Abl., 390,2.
- rendering**—vbs. of, with Inf., 421,N.1,6.
- reperiri**—with Nom. and Inf., 528,N.1.  
repetition of relative, 615.
- replētus**—with Gen., 374,N.1.
- repōnere**—with in and Acc., 385,N.2.
- repōscere**—with two Accs., 339 and N.1.
- representātio**—654 and N., 656,N.1.
- representation**—vbs. of, with Acc. and Inf.,  
526, 527; with part., 527,N.1, 536.
- reprimere**—with *nē*, 548,N.1.
- repūgnāre**—with Dat., 346,R.2; with *nē*,  
548,N.1.
- requiēs**—heteroclit, 68,8.
- requiring**—vbs. of, with two Accs., 339  
and R.1,N.1; with *ab, ib.* N.2.
- rēri**—part. of, with Pr. force, 282,N.
- rēs**—for neut., 204,N.4; construed like  
neut., 211,N.2; with Appositional Gen.,  
361,1; in phrases with Inf., 422,N.2;  
*divinam rem facere, with Abl.* 401,N.  
4; *rem certāre, 333,2,R.*
- resistere**—with Dat., 346,R.2; with *nē*,  
548,N.1; with *quā, 555,1.*
- resisting**—vbs. of, with Dat., 346.
- resolution**—of long syllable, 732.
- resolving**—vbs. of, with Inf., 423 and N.2;  
with *ut, 546.*
- Respect**—Acc. of, 338; with vbs. of Cloth-  
ing, *etc., ib.* N.2; Abl. of, 397; Abl. of,  
with comparatives, 398; Abl. of, with  
words of Eminence or Superiority, 397,  
N.2; preps. instead, *ib.* N.1.
- respicere**—with Direct Question, 467,N.
- responde**—with Direct Question, 467,N.;  
*iūs respondēre, 333,2,R.*
- rest**—conceived as end of Motion, 412,  
R.2.
- restat**—with *ut, 553,4.*
- restrictions**—in Relative Sentences, 627,  
*RR.* 1,2.
- result**—for Sentences of, see Consecutive  
Sentences.
- rētē**—heteroclit, 68,12.
- retinēre**—with *nē, 548,N.1.*
- reus**—with Gen., 374,N.2; 378,R.1.
- ridēre**—with Acc. and Inf., 533,R.1.
- rhacism**—47.
- rhythm**—in arrangement, 627,2,6; de-  
fined, 739; ascending or descending,  
735; names of, 736; classes of, 737;  
rhythmical series, 738; union of lan-  
guage with, 748.
- rōbur**—decl. of, 44,5, 45,R.2.
- rogāre**—with two Accs., 339, and N.1; with  
Acc. Ger., 430,N.1; with *ut, 546,N.1*;  
with Direct Question, 467,N.; *rogātū,*  
of Moving Cause, 408,N.1; with Inf. or  
*ut, 546,N.3.*
- root**—defined, 25,1,N., 177.
- rudis**—with Gen., 374,N.4.
- rūs**—as limit of Motion, 337; in Abl.  
of Separation, 390,2; *rūri* in Loc., 411,  
R.2.
- S**—final omitted, 27,N., 703,R.3; suffixes  
with, 188.

- sacer**—with Gen. or Dat., 359, n.1; **sacrum facere**, with Abl., 401, n.4.
- sacramentō**—as Abl. of Manner, 399, n.1.
- sacrificāre**—with Abl., 401, n.4.
- sacrificing**—vbs. of, with Abl., 401, n.4.
- saepe**—as attrib. to subst., 439, n.4.
- saltem**—strengthens **at**, 488, n.2.
- salūtāris** has no superlative, 87, 9.
- salvēre**—conjugation of, 175, 4.
- sānē**—strengthens Impv., 269; *very*, 439, n.3; with concessive **nē**, 608; with **quam** and Indic., 467, n.; *yes*, 471, a.
- sanguis**—decl. of, 41, 4.
- sapiēns**—as subst., 437, n.1.
- sapientia**—in phrases with Inf., 422, n.2; with **ut**, 557, n.
- Sapphic**—verse, 797, 804.
- satiās**—heteroclitc, 68, 8 and 12.
- satis**—*very*, 439, n.3; attraction of pred. after **satus est**, 535, n.3.
- saturāre**—with Gen., 383, 1, n.2.
- Saturnian**—verse, 755.
- satus**—with Abl. of Origin, 395, n.1.
- saying**—vbs. of, with Object Clause, 523; vbs. of, with **quod**, 525, 1, n.7; vbs. of, with Acc. and Inf., 526, 527; vbs. of, with Nom. in pass., 528; vbs. of, attracted into Subjv. after **quod**, 541, n.3; vbs. of, omitted, 545, n.3; vbs. of, with **quā**, 555, 2.
- scatēre**—with Gen., 383, 1, n.2.
- scazon**—verse, 762.
- scientia**—in phrases with **ut**, 557, n.
- scilicet**—*yes*, 471, a.2.
- scire**—first Impv. wanting, 267, n.; **sciēns** in pred. attrib., 325, n.6; **quod sciam**, **quantum sciō**, 627, n.1; with Inf., 423, 2, n.2, 527, n.1; followed by direct question, 467, n.; **sciēns**, with Gen., 375, n.2; **scitū** as Sup., 436, n.
- scribere**—with Acc. and Inf., 527, n.2; with **ut**, 546, n.1.
- season**—adjs. of, in pred. attrib., 325, n.6.
- secondary words**—see Derivatives.
- secundum** as prep., 416, 24; alter for **secundus**.
- secus**—70, B; **sequius**, 87, 8; strengthens **sī**, 594; with **quam**, 643, n.4.
- sēd**—in composition, 9, 4, 715, n.1.
- sed**—introduces contrast to demonstrative, 307, n.4; with **etiam**, **quoque**, after **nōn modo**, 482, 5 and n.1; with **nē** **quidem**, *ib.* n.1; omitted, *ib.* n.2; with **et**, *ib.* n.2; syntax of, 485; repeated, *ib.* n.2; strengthened, *ib.* n.3.
- seeking**—vbs. of, with Final Dat., 356, n.2.
- seeming**—vbs. of, with two Noms., 206.
- semi-deponents**—167.
- semi-hiatus** 720, n.1.
- semi-vowels**—6, 2, A.
- sempiternum**—as adv. Acc., 336, n.1.
- senātus**—decl. of, 61, 68, 5.
- sending**—vbs. of, with Acc. Ger., 430.
- senex**—decl. of, 56, 5; Comp. of, 87, 9.
- sentence**—simple or cpd., 201; syntax of simple, 202, ff.; simplest form of, 202; simple expanded, 284, ff.; incomplete, 450 470; coördination of, 473; Copulative, 474–482; Adversative, 483 491; Disjunctive, 492 497; Causal and Illative, 498 503; Object, 523 537; Causal, 538–542; Final, 543 550; Consecutive, 551–558; Temporal, 559 588; Conditional, 589 602; Concessive, 603 609; Relative, 610 637; Abridged, 645 663; Participial, 664 670.
- sententia**—in phrases with **ut**, 546, n.2, 557, n.
- sentire** with Acc. and Inf., 527, n.2.
- Separation**—Gen. of, 374, n.8, 383, 2; Abl. of, 390.
- SEQUENCE OF TENSES**—509 519; rule and modifications, 509; general considerations, 510; shift from primary to secondary sequence, 511, n.2; in sentences of Design, 512; in sentences of Result, 513; in coincident sentences, *ib.* n.3; representation of Subjv. in, 514. 515; in Ō. O., 516; after other moods, 517; after Inf. or part., 518; original Subjvs. in, 519; derangement of, *ib.* n.; in Comparative Sentences, 602, n.1; after Hist. Pr., 511, n.1; after Pure Pf., *ib.* n.3, 513, n.1; after Hist. Pf., 511, n.4; after **accidit**, *etc.*, *ib.* n.2; after vb. with future character, 515, n.3.
- sequester**—heteroclitc, 68, 4.
- sequitur**—with **ut**, 553, 3.
- sertum**—heteroclitc, 68, 3.
- servire** with Dat., 346, n.2.
- servus**—omitted, 362, n.1.
- shortening** of penult, 701, n.2, b; of vowels, 716, 717.
- showing** vbs. of, with two Noms., 206; with two Accs., 340; with Acc. and Inf., 526, 527; with Nom. and Inf., 528.
- sī**—with ō in Wishes, 261 and n.1; with-

- out **ō** in Wishes, *ib.* n.1; **sīs**, **sōdēs**, **sultis**, with Impv., 269; in Indirect Question after vbs. of Trial, 460,1,b; in Iterative action, 566, 567; sign of Condition, 590 and n.1; **sīquidem**, *ib.* n.2, 595, r.5; **sī nōn** and **nīsī**, 591; **sīn**, 592; **sī modo**, **tamen**, **vērō**, 595, r.6; **sī forte**, *ib.* n.1; Concessive, 604, r.1; with Inf., 635, n.2.
- sibilants—6,2,A; suffixes with, 188.
- sic**—coordinate with other particles, 482, 4,n.; correlative of **sī**, 590, n.1.
- sicut**—gives Assumed Reason, 602, n.4.
- significāre**—with Inf., 527, r.2.
- signum**—in phrases with **ut**, 546, n.2.
- silentiō**—as Abl. of Manner, 399, n.1.
- similis**—compared, 87,3; with Gen. or Dat., 359, r.1 and n.4.
- simul**—as prep., 417,12; **simul**—**simul**, 482,1 and n.1; Temporal, with **atque** (**āc**), as soon as, 561-563; Causal with Pr. and Pf., 564 and n.; with Fut. and Fut. Pf., 565 and n.
- simulāre**—with Inf., 527, r.2.
- sīn**—use of, 592; strengthened by **minus**, *etc.*, *ib.* r.
- sine**—position of, 413, r.1; as prep., 417, 13; with Abl. Ger., 433, n.2.
- sinere**—with Inf., 423, n.6, 553,2,n.; with **ut**, 532, n.1, 553,2.
- singular—in collective sense for Pl., 204, n.8; Voc. with Pl. vb., 211, n.2; neut. sums up preceding Pl., *ib.* n.3; as a subj., combined with **cum** and another word, 285, n.2.
- singulāre**—in phrases with Inf., 422, n.3; in phrases with **ut**, 553,4.
- singulus**—with numerals, 295.
- sīquidem**—590, n.2, 595, r.5.
- sinister**—Comp. of, 87,1, r.1.
- sīs**—strengthens Impv., 269.
- sistī**—as copulative vb., 206, n.1.
- sive**—use of, 496; **sive**—**sive**, *ib.* 2,595, r.4; or *ib.* n.1; and **seu**, *ib.* n.3.
- smell**—vbs. of, with Inner Object, 333,2, n.5.
- socer**—and **socerus**, 32,1,n.
- sōdēs**—strengthens Impv., 269.
- solēre**—with Inf., 423,2,n.2; **solitō**, as Abl. of Respect, 398, n.1.
- sollicitārī**—with Acc. and Inf., 533, r.1.
- sōlus**—decl. of., 76; in pred. attrib., 325, r.6; **nōn solum sed**, *etc.*, 482,5, and r.1; with **quī** and Subjv., 631,1.
- solvere**—with Abl., 390,2,n.2.
- sonniāre**—with Acc. and Inf., 527, r.1.
- sonants—6,2,B.
- sortitō**—as Abl. of Manner, 399, n.1.
- Sotadean—verse, 816.
- sound**—vbs. of, with neut. Acc. of Inner Object, 333,2,n.6.
- Specification—Gen. of, 361.
- spectāre**—with **ex** and Abl., 402, r.2.
- specus**—heteroclite, 68,9.
- spērāre**—with Inf., 527, r.2; with Pr. Inf., 531, n.4.
- spēs**—with **est** and Pr. Inf., 531, n.4; in phrases with Inf., 527, r.2; with **ut**, 546, n.2; in Abl. of Respect, 398, n.1.
- spīnter**—defective, 70,B.
- sponte**—defective, 70,A.
- Standard—Abl. of, 402, 403; **ex** and Abl. instead of Abl., 402, r.2; Abl. of, with **ante** or **post**, 403, n.4; Acc. of Extent for Abl., *ib.* n.3; of comparison omitted, 297.
- stāre**—with Gen. of Price, 379; *to abide by* with Abl., 401, n.6; *to persist in*, with Inf., 423,2,n.2.
- statuere**—with **in** and Abl., 385, r.1; with Inf., 423,2,n.2; with **ut**, 546, n.1.
- status**—in phrases with **ut**, 557,r.
- stem—25,1, 132; Present, 114,3,a, 133; Perfect, 114,3,b, 134; Supine, 114,3,c, 135; Formation of Verb stem, 132 135; varies between Conjugations, 136; quantity of stem syllables, 714.
- stem-characteristic—28, 120; euphonic changes in, 121,r.
- stillāre**—with Abl., 401, n.5.
- studēre**—with Dat., 346, r.2; with Dat. Ger., 429,1 and n.1; with Inf., 423,2,n.2; with **ut**, 546, n.1.
- studiōsus**—with Gen., 374,n.5.
- stultitia**—in phrases with Inf., 422, n.2.
- suādēre**—with Dat., 346, r.2, and n.2; with Inf., 423,2,n.2; with **ut**, 546, n.1.
- sub**—in composition, 9,4; vbs. cpd. with, take Acc. or Dat., 331, 347; with **condiciōne**, *etc.*, 399, n.3; usage of, as prep., 418,2.
- subesse**—with Dat., 347, r.2; **timōrem**, with Acc. and Inf., 533, r.1.
- subject—201; in Nom., 203; in Acc. with Inf., *ib.* r.1; forms of, 204; omitted, 207; of impersonal vbs., 208,1,n. and 2,n.1; Multiplication of, 285,ff.; Qualification of, 288,ff.; prolepsis of subj. of

- dependent clause, 468; of Inf. omitted, 527, R.3, 532, R.2 and N.2; Acc. and Inf. as, 535; attraction of pred. after Acc. and Inf., *ib.* R.3.
- Subjective—Genitive, 363, 364; poss. pron. instead, 364.
- SUBJUNCTIVE—112, 4; early forms of, 130, 4; Aorist forms of Pf. and Plupf., 131, 4, 6, 2, 3; Indic. for Deliberative, 254, N.2; with generic relatives, *ib.* R.6, 625, R.; force of, 255; Indic. with vbs. of Possibility, *etc.*, *ib.* R.; Ideal and Unreal, 256, 1; Potential and Opt., *ib.* 2 Potential of Pr. and Fut., 257-259; Potential for Indic., *ib.* N.3; Potential of Past, 258; Potential of Past with *vellem*, *etc.*, *ib.* N.1; Opt., 260; negs. of Opt., *ib.*, particles with Opt., 261; Impf. for Unreal wish, *ib.* N.2; in Asseverations, 262; as Impv., 263, 267, 270, R., 272; as concessive, 264 and N.; tense relations of, 277; with *quam ut* or *quam qui* to express disproportion, 298; in Deliberative or Rhetorical questions, 265, 465, 466; in Indirect questions, 467; after vb. with Fut. character, 515, R.3; Original in dependence, 519; with *quod*, as to the fact that, 525, 2, N.3; in Final and Consecutive Sentences, 543, 4; with *ut* for Inf., 557, N.1; in Temporal Clauses, 560, 2, 563, NN.4, 5; in Iterative action, 587, N.; in Contemporaneous action, 572, 573; in Subsequent action, 577; with *cum*, 585, 588; in Relative Sentences, 627, 628; by Attraction, 509, 4, 629; after *potius*, 644, R.3; in *Ō. O.*, 650-652.
- sublimis—in pred. attrib., 325, R.6.
- subolet—with Inf., 422, N.4.
- subordination—defined, 472; syntax of Subordinate Clauses, 504, ff.; division of, 505-507; moods in, 508; Sequence of Tenses in, 509-519.
- subsequent action—syntax of Sentences of, 574-577; with Indic., 574-576; with Subjv., 577.
- substantives—defined, 16, 1, and R.1, N.1; inflection of, 17; division of, 18; gender of, 19, 20; *mōbilia*, 21, 2; epicene, *ib.* 3; irregular, 67-71; heterogeneous, 67; heteroclitics, 68; metaplasts, *ib.*; defective, 69; *singulāria tantum*, *ib.* A; *plūrālia tantum*, *ib.* B; heterologs, *ib.* C; formation of, 180, 181; without suffixes, 183; adjs. and parts. used as, 204, NN.; Pl. of abstracts, *ib.* NN.5, 6; agreement of pred., 211 and RR., NN.; with several adjs. in Sg., 290, R.2; common surname in Pl., 290, N.1; verbal with Acc., 330, N.3, 337, N.5; verbal with Dat., 356, N.3, 357, 358, N.2; in Abl. Abs., 410, N.5; with Dat. Ger., 428, N.5; with Inf. for Gen. Ger., *ib.* N. 4; in phrases with Final Sentence, 546, R.2; in phrases with Consecutive Sentence, 557 and R.
- subter—vbs. cpd. with take Acc., 331; as adv., 415; as prep., 418, 2.
- subvenire—with Dat., 347, R.2.
- succedere—with Dat., 347, R.2.
- succrescere—with Dat., 347, R.2.
- succumbere—with Dat., 347, R.2.
- succurrere—with Dat., 347, R.2.
- sūdāre—with Abl. of Means, 401, N.6.
- sufferre—Pf. of, 171, N.2.
- suffixes—180; primary and secondary, *ib.* N.1; of substantives, 181; of adjs., 182; forming diminutives, 181, 12, 182, 12; in detail, 184-189; with vowels, 184; with gutturals, 185; with dentals, 186; with labials, 187; with *s*, 188; with liquids, 189.
- suffragāri—with Dat., 346, R.2.
- sui—decl. of, 102 and N.1; with *-met*, *ib.* N.2; with *-pte*, *ib.* N.3; circumlocution for Part. Gen., 304, 3, N.2; usage of, 309, 520-522; complement of Inf., 309, 3; *is* instead, *ib.* N.1; with *suus*, *ib.* N.2.
- sultis—strengthens Impv., 269.
- sum—see *esse*.
- summus—comparison of, 87, 2; used comparatively, 291, N.2.
- supellōx—decl. of, 44, 5.
- super—vbs. cpd. with take Acc. or Dat., 331, 347; as adv., 415; as prep., 418, 4; with Acc. Ger., 432, N.1; with Abl. Ger., 433; *id quod*, *quam quod*, 525, 2, N.2.
- superare—with Acc. of Respect, 397, N.2.
- superesse—with Dat., 347, R.2.
- superior—87, 2 and 7.
- superiority—vbs. of, with Acc. of Respect, 397, N.2.
- superlative—in *issimus*, 86; in *rimus*, 87, 1; in *limus*, *ib.* 3; in *entissimus*, *ib.* 4 and 5; lacking, *ib.* 9; of parts., 89; of advs., 93; meaning of, varies with position, 291, R.2, 302; strengthened, 303; with *quam*, *quantum*, *qui*, *ib.* N.2, 642,



- R.5; with **quisque**, 318,2; with Part. Gen., 372; with preps., *ib.* R.2; with **ut**, 642,R.2.
- supersedere**—with Abl., 390,2,N.3.
- superstes**—with Gen. or Dat., 359,R.1.
- SUPINE**—112,5; system, 114,3,c; formation of, 115,3, 121,3; stem, 135; in Abl. of Sep., 390,3,N.3, 436,N.4; in Abl. of Respect, 397,1; with **opus**, 406,N.5; defined, 434; Acc. of, 435; Abl. of, 436.
- suppetiæ**—defective, 70,B.
- supplex**—with Dat., 346,N.5.
- supplicare**—with Dat., 346,R.2 and N.4.
- suprâ**—with **quam** after a comparative, 296,N.3; with Abl. of Measure, 403,N.1; as adv., 415; as prep., 416,25.
- surd**—6,2,B.
- surname**—common, in Pl., 290,N.1.
- sûs**—decl. of, 59.
- suscensere**—with Dat., 346,R.2.
- suscipere**—with Acc. Ger., 430,N.1.
- sûspiciârî**—with Acc. and Inf., 527,R.2.
- sûspicere**—with Acc. and Inf., 527,R.1.
- sûspirare**—with Acc. and Inf., 533,R.1.
- sustinere**—with Inf., 423,2,N.2.
- suus (os)**—102; syntax of, 309; emphatic, *ib.* 2; with prep. phrases, *ib.* 4; **is** instead, *ib.* N.1; **suum quisque**, *ib.* N.3; **suô tempore**, *ib.* 4; with Gen. Ger., 428,R.1; in dependent clauses, 521; **suom** with **ut**, 557,R.
- syllaba anceps**—741.
- syllables**—division of, 10; names for, 11; open, 11,R.; close, *ib.*; length of, 12; common, 13; quantity of final, 707-713; of polysyllables, 707-709; of monosyllables, 710-713.
- syllipsis**—690.
- synapheia**—728.
- syncope**—725-743; in Pf. forms, 131, ff.
- synecdoche**—695.
- synizesis**—727.
- syntax**—defined, 201.
- systole**—722.
- T**—sound of, 7; **t**-class of vbs., 133,III.
- tâbes**—heteroclit, 68,8.
- tâbô**—defective, 70,A.
- taedet**—with Gen., 377; with pronoun as subj., 377, R.2.
- taking**—vbs. of, with two Accs., 340; End For Which given by Dat. or **ad**, *ib.* R.2; vbs. of Taking Away, with Dat., 347,R.5; with Acc. Ger., 430.
- tâlâris**—and **tâlârius**, 84,2.
- tâlis**—with **quî** or **ut** and Subjv., 631,1 and R.1.
- tam**—with **quam**, **quantum**, **quî**, and superlative, 303,R.2; with **quî** or **ut** and Subjv., 631,1 and R.1.
- tamen**—introduces contrast, 307,R.4; position of, 413,N.3; with **sed**, 485,N.3; syntax of, 490; with **at**, 488,N.2; emphasises adversative relation, 587,R.1; with **tametsî**, 604,R.3.
- tametsî**—form, 603 and N.; usage, 604 and RR.
- tamquam**—with subst., 439,N.4; with Subjv. of Comparison, 602; with Indic., *ib.* N.1; to give an Assumed Reason, *ib.* N.4; with part., 666,N.; **tamquam sî**, 602,N.4; coördinate with **sic**, 482,3,N.
- tanti**—as Gen. of Price, 380,1.
- tantidem**—as Gen. of Price 380,1.
- tantus**—with **quî** or **ut** and Subjv., 631,1 and R.1; **tanti**, with vbs. of Rating and Buying, 380; **tanti est**, *it is worth while*, *ib.* R.1; **tantum**, with **quam**, **quantum**, **quî**, and superlative, 303,R.2; **tantum**, for Abl. of Measure, 413,N.2; **nôn tantum sed**, *etc.*, 482,5; **tantum quod**, 525,2,N.2; **tantum abest ut**, 552,R.1.
- taste**—vbs. of, with Inner Obj., 333,2,N.5.
- teaching**—vbs. of, with two Accs., 339 and NN.2,3.
- temperare**—with Dat., 346,R.2 and N.2; with **nô**, 548,N.1; **temperâns**, with Gen., 375,N.2.
- templum**—omitted, 362,R.3.
- TEMPORAL SENTENCES**—559-588; division of, 559; moods in, 560; Antecedent Action, 561-567; Iterative Action, 566,567; Contemporaneous Action, 568-573; Subsequent Action, 574-577; with **cum**, 578-588; general view of, 579; Temporal **cum**, 580; **cum inversum**, 581, Explicative **cum**, 582; Conditional **cum**, 583; Iterative **cum**, 584; Circumstantial **cum**, 585-588; Historical **cum**, 585; Causal **cum**, 586; Concessive **cum**, 587; **cum**—**tum**, 588; in *Ô. O.*, 655.
- temptare**—with Inf., 423,2,N.2.
- tempus**—with Inf. or Ger., 428,N.2; **tempore** or **in tempore**, 394,R.; **id temporis**, 336,N.2; with Inf., 422,N.2; **temperi**, 411,N.1.
- tendency**—suffixes for, 182,3.

- tendere manūs**—with *Dat.*, 358, n.3.
- tenēre**—with *Pf.* part. to denote Maintenance of Result, 238; *memoriā teneō*, with *Pr. Inf.*, 281, 2, n.; (*sē*) with *nō*, 548, n.1; with *quōminus*, 549; with *quīn*, 555, 1; with *ut*, 553, 1; *tenēri*, with *Gen. of Charge*, 378, n.1.
- tenses**—112, 3; signs of, 114, 2; formation of, 114, 115, 121; syntax of, 222-252; definitions, 223; of continuance, attainment, or completion, 224; *Pr.*, 227-230; *Impf.*, 231-234; *Pure Pf.*, 235-238; *Ilist. Pf.*, 239, 240; *Plupf.*, 241; *Fut.*, 242, 243; *Fut. Pf.*, 244, 245; periphrastic, 246-251; in *Letters*, 252; of *Indic.*, 276; of *Impv.*, 278; Sequence of, 509; in *Final and Consecutive Sentences*, 543, 3; in *Relative Sentences*, 622, 623; in *Ō. O.*, 653-655; in *Inf.*, 279, 653; of *Subjv.*, 277, 654, 655; *Representatiō*, 654, n.
- tenuis**—position of, 413, n.1; usage of, as prep., 417, 14.
- terminations of cases**—27.
- terra**—in *Abl.* without *in*, 386, n.1; *terrae* as *Loc.*, 411, n.2.
- tertium—est** with *ut*, 553, 4.
- tēstis est**—with *Acc.* and *Inf.*, 527, n.2.
- thematic class of verbs**—133, 1.
- thickness**—how expressed, 335, n.1.
- thinking**—*vbs.* of, with two *Noms.*, 206; with *Object Sentence* and *quod*, 523, 525, 1, n.7; with *Inf.*, 527; *vbs.* of, attracted into *Subjv.* after *quod*, 541, n.3; *vbs.* of, with *quīn*, 555, 2.
- threat**—*vbs.* of, with *Inf.*, 423, n.5.
- Tiburī**—as *Loc.*, 411, n.1.
- time**—*adjs.* of, in *pred. attrib.*, 325, n.6; suffixes for, 182, 8; *when*, in *Abl.*, 393; *how long*, in *Acc.*, 336; *within which*, in *Abl.*, 393; with *per*, 336, 393, n.1; with *tōtus*, *ib.* n.2; *when = for which*, *ib.* n.3; with *hic*, *ille*, *ib.* n.4; preps. for *Abl.*, 394; lapses of, with *cum*, 580, n.3; given by part., 665, 670, 1.
- timēre**—*constr.* of, 550 and n.1; with *Inf.*, 423, 2, n.2.
- timor—est**, with *Inf.*, 550, n.5; *timōrem subesse*, with *Inf.*, 533, n.1.
- titles**—position of, 676, n.4.
- tnesis**—726.
- tōtus**—*decl.* of, 76; in *pred. attrib.*, 325, n.6; with *Abl. of Place Where*, 388; with *Time How Long*, 393, n.2.
- towns**—with *Acc.*, 337; in *Abl. of Place Where*, 386; in *Abl. of Place Whence*, 391; in *Loc.*, 411; with preps., 337, n.3, 391, n.1; with appositives, 337, n.2, 386, n.1, 391, n.1, 411, n.3.
- trāctātū**—as *Sup.*, 436, n.
- trade**—suffixes for, 181, 4.
- trādere**—with *Acc. Ger.*, 430, n.1; with *Acc.* and *Inf.*, 527, n.2.
- tradesman**—suffixes for, 181, 3.
- training**—*vbs.* of, with *Abl.*, 401, n.1.
- trajection**—696.
- trāns**—in composition, 9, 4; *vbs.* *cpd.* with *take Acc.*, 331; as prep., 416, 26.
- transitive verb**—defined, 213; used intrans., *ib.* n.a.
- transposition**—of consonants, 9, 8.
- trēs**—*decl.* of, 95.
- trial**—*vbs.* of, with *si*, 460, 1, b; with *implied protasis*, 601.
- tribes**—in *Abl. of Origin*, 395, n.2.
- tribuere**—with *ut*, 553, 2.
- tribūtum**—heteroclite, 68, 5.
- tricornis**—defective, 85, 1.
- trīni**—97, n.3.
- tritum**—with *Inf.*, 422, n.3.
- trochee**—shortened by *Iambic Law*, 717; *trochaic foot*, 734; *rhythm*, 736; *rhythms*, 768-776.
- tū**—*decl.* of, 101 and n.1; *synizesis* in, *ib.* n.4; with *met* and *-pte*, 102, nn.2, 3; *vestri* and *vestrum*, 304, 2 and 3, 364, n.; *poss. pron.* for, 304, 2, n.2; *tui*, *vestri*, with *Ger.*, 428, n.1.
- tuērī**—with *Acc.* and *Inf.*, 527, n.1.
- tum**—with *subst.*, 439, n.4; with *etiam*, 478, n.1; as *coordinating particle*, 482, 1 and n.1; *tum—tum*, 482, 1 and n.1; *cum—tum*, 588; *correlative of si*, 590, n.1.
- tuus (os)**—101 and n.3; *tuum* with *ut*, 557, n.; *tui* with *Gen. Ger.*, 428, n.1.
- U**—length of *Final*—707, 6.
- ubi**—as *soon as*, with *Indic.*, 561-563; *Causal*, with *Indic.*, 564, n.1, 565 and n.1; with *Iterative action*, 566, 567; with *Subjv.*, 567, n.; *Conditional*, 590, n.3.
- ullus**—*decl.* of, 76; and *quisquam*, 107, 3, n.2, 108; *syntax* of, 317.
- uls**—416, 27.
- ulterior**—87, n.; *ultimus* in *pred. attrib.*, 325, n.6.
- ultimate**—defined, 11.

**ultrā**—with Abl. of Measure, 403, N.1; position of, 413, R.1; as adv., 415; as prep., 416, 27.

**uncertainty**—vbs. of, with **quīn**, 555, 2.

**understatement**—definition of, 700.

**undertaking**—vbs. of, with Acc. Ger., 430.

**ūnimanus**—defective, 85, 2.

**unlikeness**—adjs. of, with **atque** (**ac**), 643.

**UNREAL CONDITION**—597; with Impf. of opposition to Past, *ib.* R.1; with Indic. in Apod., *ib.* RR.2,3; in *Ō. O.*, *ib.* R.4, 659; Apod. in, after vb. requiring Subjv., 597, R.5; with **absque**, *ib.* N.

**ūnus**—decl. of, 76, 95, N.1; Pl. with **plūrālia tantum**, 95, R.1; as distributive, 97, R.3; with superlative, 303; with **quīdam**, 313, R.3; with **quisquam**, 317, 1, N.1; with **nēmō**, **nūllus**, 317, 2, N.3; in pred. attrib., 325, R.6; with prep. for Part. Gen., 372, R.2; with **quī** and Subjv., 631, 1.

**ūnusquisque**—107, 5.

**urbs**—with name of Town, requires prep., 337, R.2, 386, R.1, 391, R.1, 411, R.3; with Appositional Gen., 361, N.1.

**urgēri**—with Gen. of Charge, 378, R.1.

**urging**—vbs. of, with **ut**, 546.

**usque**—with Acc. of Motion Whither, 337, N.4; usage of, as prep., 416, 28.

**ūsus**—with Abl., 406; with other constr., *ib.* N.5; as pred., *ib.*; with Pf. part., 406, 437, N.2; in phrases with **ut**, 557, R.; **ūsū venit**, with **ut**, 553, 3.

**ut**—in wishes, 261; with **quam**, to express disproportion, 298, 631, 3, R.1; omitted, 298, R.2; with **potuit**, to strengthen superlative, 303; **ut—ita**, 482, 4; after vbs. of Adding and Happening, 525, 1, N.5; in Final and Consecutive Sentences, 543; **ut nōn**, *ib.* 4, 545, R.2, 552; parenthetical, *ib.* R.3; **ut nē**, 545, R.1, 546, R.3; after vbs. of Fear, 550 and N.1; to add restriction, 552, R.3; after vb. of Causation, 553, 1; after vbs. of Compelling and Permitting, *ib.* 2; after vbs. of Happening, *ib.* 3; after impersonals, *ib.* 4; Explanatory, 557; Exclamatory, 558; with **magis quam**, 557, N.2; **ut primum**, as *soon as*, with Indic., 561–563; Causal, 564, N.; with Iterative sentences, 566, 567; **nisi ut**, 557, N.2, 591, R.3; with **sī** and Subjv., 602; with Subjv., to give an Assumed Reason, *ib.* N.4; Conces-

sive, 608 and R.1; with **quī**, 626, R.1; after comparatives, 631, 3, R.1; with **quisque** and superlative, 642, R.2; **prō eō ut**, as Causal, *ib.* R.4; **ut quī**, with superlative, *ib.* R.5; introduces *Ō. O.* after vbs. of Will and Desire, 652, R.1; with part. to give Assumed Reason, 666, N.

**ūter**, *bag*—decl. of, 44, 2, 45, R.1.

**uter**, *which*—decl. of, 76, 106; **quis for**, 300, N.; **utrum** as interrogative particle, 458; in Indirect Question, 460, 2, N. 3; **utrum**, *whether or no*, 459, N.2.

**uterlibet**—108.

**uterque**—decl. of, 108; with Pl. vb., 211, R.1, Ex. a, 292, R.; to express reciprocal action, 221, R.1 and 2; force of, 292; with Part. Gen., 371, R.1.

**uterum**—heterogeneous, 32, 1, N.

**utervis**—108.

**ūtī**—with Abl., 407 and N.2, a; other constrs. of, *ib.* N.3; with personal Ger., 427, N.5.

**utinam**—in wishes, 261 and N. 1.

**utpote**—with **quī**, 626, N.1.

**V**—and **u**, 1, R.2; pronunciation of, 7.

**vacāre**—with Dat., 346, N.2; attraction of pred. after, 535, R.3.

**vacuus**—with Gen., 374, N.8.

**vae**—with Dat., 343, 1, N.1.

**valdē**—*very*, 439, N.3; with **quam** and Indic., 467, N.

**valēre**—with Inf., 423, 2, N.2; with **ut**, 553, 1.

**validus**—with Abl. or Gen., 405, N.3.

**vās**—heteroclitc, 68, 7.

**ve**—usage of, 495; **ve—ve**, *ib.* N.2.

**vehementer**—*very*, 439, N.3.

**vel**—with superlative, 303; usage of, 494; **vel—vel**, *ib.* 2; *for example*, *ib.* N.1; as *well as*, *ib.* N.3.

**velle**—conjugation of, 174; exact use of Fut. or Fut. Pf., 242, N.2 and R.3; has no periphrasis, 248, R., 531, N.3; **velim**, 257, 2; **vellem**, as Potential, 258, N. 1; **vellem**, as Unreal, 261, R.; with Subjv. for Impv., 270, N.2; with Pf. Inf. act., 280, 2, b, and N.1; with Pf. Inf. pass., 280, 2, c, N.; **volēns** in pred. attrib., 325, R.6; **sibi velle**, 351, N.2; **volenti est**, 353, N.2; with Inf. or **ut**, 532, and N.3, 546, R.1; with Inf., 423, 2, N.2; with **ut**, 546, N.1.

- velut**—with Subjv., 602; with part. to give Assumed Reason, 666, N.
- velutſi**—with Subjv., 602.
- vēnālis**—with Abl., 404, N.4.
- vēndere**—with Gen. of Price, 379; *bene vēndere*, 380, 2, N.
- venire**—omitted, 209, N.5; *venit mihi in mentem*, with Gen., 376, R.3; with Sup., 435, N.1; *ventūrus* as adj., 438, N.; in *suspiciōnem*, with Nom. and Inf., 528, N.2; with Inf., 422, N.5; *ſuū venit*, with *ut*, 553, 3.
- vēnre**—pass. of *vēndere*, 169, 2, R.1; with Gen. of Price, 379.
- venter**—decl. of, 44, 2, 45, N.1.
- verbals**—defined, 179, 1; pred. agreement of, 211; subst. with Acc., 330, N.3, 337, N.5; adj. with Acc., *ib.* N.4; in *bilis*, with Dat., 355, N.; in *āx*, with Gen., 375; formation of *verbālia*, 191.
- VERBS**—defined, 16, 4; conjugation of, 17; inflection of, 114; deponents, 113; personal endings, 114; regular, 120, ff.; classes of, 133; Stem or Thematic class, 133, 1.; Reduplicated Class, *ib.* II.; T-class, *ib.* III.; Nasal class, *ib.* IV.; Inchoative class, *ib.* V.; i-class, *ib.* VI.; mixed class, *ib.* VII.; list of, 137-162; Deponents, 163-166; Semi-deponents, 167; Irregular, 168-174; Defective, 175; formation of, 190-200; division of, 190; Verbalia, 191; Denominative, 192; composition of, 199, 200; Impersonal, 208; intrans. used personally, *ib.* 2; Concord of, 210, 211, 285-287; trans. and intrans., 213; trans. used as intrans., *ib.* R.a; intrans. used as trans., *ib.* R.b.
- verbum**—with Appositional Gen., 361, 1; in phrases with *ut*, 546, N.2.
- verēri**—constr. with, 550 and N.1; *veritus* as Pr., 282, N.; with Inf., 423, 2, N.2, 533, N.1.
- vērīsimile**—in phrases with Inf., 422, N.3; in phrases with *ut*, 553, 4.
- vērō**—position of, 413, N.3; *yes*, 471, a, 1; with *atque*, 477, N.2; with *sed*, 485, N.3; syntax of, 487; with *nisi*, 591, R.4; with *ſin*, 592.
- verse**—745; methods of combining, 746; Italic, 755; Saturnian, 756; compound, 820, 823.
- versification**—729-823; anacrustic scheme of, 739.
- versus**—position of, 413, R.1; usage as prep., 416, 29; *versus Italicus*—755.
- vertere**—with Final Dat., 356, R.2.
- vērūm**—introduces contrast to demonstrative, 307, R.4; *yes*, 471, a, 1; with *etiam*, 482, 5 and N.1; syntax of, 486; with Inf., 422, N.3; with *ut*, 553, 4.
- very**—translations of, 439, N.3.
- vesci**—with Abl., 407 and N.2, c; with personal Ger., 427, N.5.
- vesper**—decl. of, 68, 10; in Abl. of Time, 393, R.5; *vesperi*—37, 5, 411, N.1.
- vester**—101 and N.3.
- vetāre**—with Acc., 346, N.3; with Inf., 423, 2, NN.3 and 6, 532, N.1 and 2.
- vetus**—decl. of, 82, 2; comp. of, 87, 1, N.2.
- viā**—as Abl. of Manner, 399, N.1.
- vicissim**—gives reciprocal relation, 221, R.2; as coördinating particle, 482, 1, N.2.
- vidēre**—with Acc. and Inf., 527, R.2; with *ut*, 546, N.1; with *nō*, 548, N.1; with Direct Question, 467, N.; with two Noms. in pass., 206; *vidēri*, and *vidētur*, 528, R.2; *vidē*, with Subjv. for Impv., 271, N.2, 548, N.3; *videris*, as Impv., 245, N.
- vilis**—with Abl. of Price, 404, N.2.
- vincere**—with Abl. of Respect, 397, N.2; *causam*, 333, 2, R.
- violentus**—and *violēns*, 84, 1.
- vīrus**—defective, 70, C.
- vīs**—70, D; with Pl. vb., 211, R.1, Ex. a; *vī*, as Abl. of Manner, 399, N.1.
- vīs**—with relatives, 111, 3.
- vitium**—with Epexegetical Gen., 361, 2; with Inf., 422, N.2; *vitiō* as Abl. of Manner, 399, N.1.
- vivere**—with Abl., 407, N.2, c.
- [vix]**—70, D; *tuam vicem*, 334, R.2.
- VOCATIVE**—defined, 23, 5; in I, 33, R.2; in adjs. of 1st and 2d Decl., 73; no syntax of, 201, R.1; Nom. instead, *ib.* R.2; in app., *ib.* R.3; in pred., 211, R.3; Sg. with Pl. vb., *ib.* N.2; Nom. instead, 321, N.1; in pred. app., 325, R.1; with *ō* or *prō*, 343, 1, N.1.
- voice**—112, 2, 212; act., 213; pass., 214; middle, 212, N.
- voluntās**—in phrases with *ut*, 546, N.2; *voluntāte* as Abl. of Manner, 399, N.1.
- volup**—Indeclinable, 85, C.
- vōmer**—decl. of, 45, N.2.
- vowels**—2; sounds of, 3; phonetic varia-

- tions in, 8; weakening of, *ib.* 1; omission of, *ib.* 2; epenthesis of, *ib.* 3; assimilation of, *ib.* 4; quantity of final, 707; suffixes with, 184.
- vōx**—with Appositional Gen., 361.1.
- vulgō**—as Abl. of Manner, 399, N.1.
- vultus**—heteroclite, 68, 5.
- Want*—vbs. of, with Abl., 405; adjs. of, with Gen. and Abl., *ib.* N.3.
- warning*—vbs. of, with *ut*, 546.
- weakening of vowels—8,1, 701, R.2.
- weight*—substs. of, with Gen., 389.
- will*—vbs. of, with Inf., 280, 2, c, 423, 2, 532; sequence after vbs. of, 515, R.3; *ut* instead of Inf. after, 532, N.1-4; with Final sentence, 546; with Inf. instead, *ib.* R.1; with simple Subjv., *ib.* R.2.
- wishes—in Subjv., 260, 261; apodosis omitted with, 601.
- without*—translated by *ut nōn*, 552, R.4; *quīn*, 556; *cum nōn*, 587, R.2.
- wonder*—constr. with vbs. of, 542, N.1.
- words—Formation of, 176-200.
- Y—1, R.3; length of final, 707, 3.
- yes*—trans. of, 471, a and c.
- yielding*—vbs. of, with Dat., 346.
- Z—when introduced, 1, R.3; sound of, *ib.* N.
- zeugma—690.

## SYNTAX OF INDIVIDUAL AUTHORS.

The syntactical usage of individual authors is treated as follows:

- ACCIUS**—358, N.1; 525, 1, N.1.
- AFRANIUS**—498, N.1.
- APULEIUS**—336, N.1; 365, N.; 406, N.3; 498, N.1; 591, N.3; 607, N.3; 626, N.1.
- CAELIUS**—574, N.
- CAESAR**—208, 2, N.2; 209, N.5; 228, N.1; 239, N.; 250, N.1 and 2; 260; 280, 2, c, N.; 285, N.2; 286, 3, N.; 311, 1, R.2; 323, N.1; 324; 335, N.; 336, N.2; 337, N.1; 341, N.2; 349, R.5; 354, N.2; 356, N.2 and 3; 358, N.3; 359, N.1; 369, N.2; 372, N.2 and 3; 374, N.1 and 9; 375, N.2; 381, N.4; 386, N.; 391, N.; 395, N.2; 401, N.7; 407, N.2, d; 410, N.4; 413, R.1; 415; 416, 2, 3, 8, 15, 16, 19, 22, and 24; 418, 2; 422, N.2; 423, N.2 and 3; 427, N.2; 429, N.1; 432, N.1; 435, N.2; 436, N.1; 443, N.3; 458, N.1; 460, 2, N.1 and 2; 467, N.; 475, N.3; 476, N.5; 478, N.2; 480, N.2 and 3; 482, 3; 482, 5, R.2 and N.1; 496, N.1; 503; 512, N.1; 513, N.1 and 2; 525, 2, N.3; 527, R.3; 528, N.1; 538, N.4; 541, N.1 and 3; 542, N.1; 545, R.1; 549, N.1 and 2; 563, N.2 and 3; 567, N.; 569, N.1; 571, N.3; 591, R.2 and N.2; 602, N.5; 615, N.; 616, 1, N.1; 626, N.1; 627, R.2; 636, N.1; 644, R.3; 647, N.2; 650, N.; 666, N.
- B. Hisp.*—407, N.2, d; 416, 8.
- B. Afr.*—407, N.2, d; 417, 7.
- CATO**—285, N.2; 394, 3, N.1; 401, N.7; 407, N.2; 417, 7; 418, 4; 437, N.2; 477, N.5; 548, N.3; 574, N.
- CATULLUS**—207, N.; 236, N.; 380; 417, 3; 454, N.2; 455, N.; 458, N.1; 477, N.5; 480, N.3; 546, N.3; 567, N.; 644, N.2.
- CELSUS**—602, N.4.
- CICERO**—204, N.7; 206, N.1; 209, N.3 and 5; 211, R.4 and N.3; 214, R.2; 228, N.1; 239, N.; 242, R.3; 245, N.; 250, N.1 and 2; 252, N.; 254, R.6 and NN.1, 2; 257, N.1; 261; 269; 271, 2, N.2; 280, 2, c, N.; 285, N.2; 293, N.; 298, N.1; 299, N.1; 301; 311, 1, R.2; 318, N.1; 319, N.2; 323, N.1; 324; 336, N.2; 337, N.1, 2, and 4; 341, N.2; 343, N.1; 346, N.1 and 2; 347, R.2; 349,



R.5; 351.N.1; 352.N.; 354.N.2; 358.R.3 and N.3; 357; 358.N.3 and 5; 361.N.1; 362.N.1; 364.N.1; 369.N.2; 372.N.2 and 3; 374.N.1,2,4, and 5; 375.N.2 and 3; 376.R.1,2, and 3; 380.1.N.1 and 4; 383.N.1; 385.N.1; 386.N.; 390.2.N.2 and 3; 391.N.; 395.N.1 and 2; 396.N.1; 398.N.1; 403.N.4; 406.N.5; 407.N.2,d; 410.N.4; 411.R.1 and 2, and N.1; 413.R.1; 416.1,2,3,5,7,13,14,15, 16,19,24,25,28, and 29; 417.1.N.3 and 14; 418.4; 422.N.2,3, and 5; 423.N.2 and 3; 427.N.2 and 5; 428.R.2 and N.1; 429.N.1; 432.N.1; 435.N.1; 436.N.1; 438.N.; 439.N.2,3 and 4; 443.N.3; 453.N.1; 457.1.N.1 and 2,2 and N.; 458.N.1; 459.N.1; 460.1.N.2; 467.N.; 476.N.5; 477.N.4 and 5; 478.N.2; 480.R.1 and N.3; 481.N.; 482.1.N.1 and 2,2,3, and 5, N.2 and N.1; 484.N.1 and 2; 485.N.1 and 2; 486.N.; 488.N.1 and 2; 489.N.1; 491.N.; 493.N.1; 494.N.1; 495; 496.N.1; 497; 498.N.3,4,6 and 8; 501; 503; 511.R.4; 513.R.1 and N.1,2; 525.1.N.1 and 4, 2.N.2 and 3; 527.R.1 and 3, and N.2; 528.N.1 and 2; 532.N.1 and 3; 533.R.1; 536.N.1; 538.N.4; 541.N.1,2,3 and 5; 542.R. and N.1; 543.N.3; 548.N.3; 549.N.1,2 and 4; 550.N.1,2 and 5; 553.1; 555.R.1; 563.N.2,3,4 and 5; 567.N.; 569.N.1; 571.N.2 and 3; 573.N.2; 574.N.; 576.N.1; 577.N.4 and 5; 580.N.3; 590.N.1; 591.R.4 and N.2; 602.N.5; 604.R.2; 605.N.; 606.N.1; 608; 615.N.; 616.1.N.2, and 2, N.; 617.N.1; 626.N.1; 627.R.1 and 2; 635.N.1 and 2; 636.N.1; 643.N.4; 644.R.3; 647.N.2; 666.N.; 677.N.

COLUMELLA—592.N.

CORNIFICIUS—439.N.3; 500.R.; 549.N.4.

CURTIUS—416,16; 532.N.1.

DICIUS—545.R.1.

ENNIUS—411.R.2; 476.N.5.

FLORUS—467.N.; 525,2.N.2.

FRONTO—525,2.N.3.

GAIUS—525,2.N.3.

GELLIUS—580.N.3.

HIRTIUS—423.N.2; 532.N.1.

HORACE—211.R.1, Ex.a.N.; 271,2.N.2; 301; 346.N.2; 351.N.1; 416,5,17,19, and 21; 417,8; 418.4; 421.N.1,c; 422.N.4; 427.N.2; 439.N.3; 454.N.2; 457.N.2; 458.N.1

and 2; 460,2.N.3; 477.N.8; 480.N.1; 482.3; 498.N.1; 500.R.; 525.1.N.1, 2.N.2; 533.R.1; 536.N.1; 538.N.5; 541.N.5; 563.N.3; 569.N.1; 591.R.2; 592.N.; 616.1.N.2; 644.N.2.

JUVENAL—602.N.4; 605.N.

LIVY—204.N.8; 209.N.3; 211.R.1, Ex.a.N.; 247.N.1; 249.N.; 250.N.1 and 2; 285, Ex.3 and N.2; 293.N.; 311.1.R.2, 2.N.; 317.N.1; 319.N.1; 323.N.1; 335.N.; 337.N.4; 338.N.1; 346.N.2; 347.R.2; 350.1.N.; 351.N.1; 353.N.2; 356.N.2; 359.N.1 and 4; 363.R.1; 366.R.1; 371.N.; 372.N.1 and 4; 373.R.1; 374.N.2 and 3; 383.N.1; 385.N.1; 390.2.N.3; 391.R.1 and N.; 395.N.1; 399.N.1 and 3; 401.N.2 and 6; 403.N.3; 406.N.3; 410.N.2,3, and 4; 411.R.1 and N.1; 413.N.1; 415; 416,2,7,15,16,22,23, 24, and 28; 417.1,8,10,11, and 14; 418.2, and 4; 423.N.2; 427.N.2; 429.2 and N.1; 430.N.1; 435.N.2; 436.N.1; 437.N.2; 438.N.; 439.N.3 and 4; 442.N.3; 443.N.4; 457.1.N.3; 458.N.1; 460.2.N.3; 467.N.; 477.N.4,5 and 9; 478.N.1 and 2; 480.N.3; 482.1.N.1,2 and 5, R.2 and N.1; 497; 498.N.1,3, and 8; 502.N.3; 503; 513.N.1 and 2; 525.1.N.1 and 7 and 2.N.2; 532.N.1; 536.N.1; 541.N.2 and 5; 542.R. and N.2; 543.N.3; 545.R.1; 549.N.1; 550.N.5; 555, 2.N.; 557.R. and N.2; 563.N.2, 3, and 5; 567.N.; 569.N.1; 570.N.4; 571.N.6; 576.N.2; 577.N.3,4, and 5; 597.R.5; 602.N.5; 615.N.; 616.1.N.1 and 2, and 2.N.; 626.N.1; 635.N.2; 636.N.1; 644.R.3; 651.R.1; 666.N.; 687.

LUCAN—254.N.1; 458.N.1.

LUCILIUS—383.1.N.2; 496.N.1.

LUCRETIUS—372.N.2; 383.1.N.2; 405.N.3; 406.N.6; 422.N.4; 459.N.1; 480.N.2; 482.1.N.1; 496.N.1; 500.R.; 525.1.N.1; 533.R.1; 564.N.1; 571.N.4; 606.N.1; 636.N.1.

MARTIAL—280,2,b.N.1.

NAEVIUS—533.N.1.

NEPOS—249.N.; 250.N.2; 356.R.3; 408.N.2, c; 416,10; 513.N.1; 536.N.1; 555,2.N.; 571.N.4; 605.N.; 606.N.1; 687.

OVID—270.N.; 280,2,b.N.1; 349.R.5; 384.N.1; 401.N.7; 411.R.2; 416,7; 417,7; 427.N.2; 494.N.3; 525.1.N.; 545.R.1; 616.N.2

PETRONIUS—207,N.; 525,1,N.1.

PLAUTUS—206,N.1; 211,R.1, *Ex.a.N.*; 270,N.1; 330,N.3; 336,N.1; 347,R.2; 357,N.; 358,N.1; 361,N.1; 374,N.1,2,3, and 5; 375,N.3; 383,1,N.2, and 3; 398,N.2; 406,N.6; 407,N.2; 411,R.1; 415; 416,6,7,16, 19,21, and 24; 417,7; 418,4; 422,N.2; 439,N.3; 454,N.2; 455,N.; 467,N.; 476,N.3 and 5; 477,N.1 and 6; 478,N.2; 487,N.1; 494,N.1 and 6; 496,N.1; 498,N.3; 502,N.3; 525,1,N.4 and 2,N.2; 533,R.1; 538,N.1 and 3; 541,N.1; 545,R.1; 546,N.3; 548,N.3; 549,N.2; 563,N.3; 569,N.1; 571,N.5; 576,N.1; 577,N.5; 580,N.1 and 3; 597,N.; 602,N.5; 610,N.1; 615,N.; 626,N.1; 643,N.3; 677,N.

PLINY MAIOR—381,N.3; 398,N.2; 460,2,N.3; 467,N.; 482,2; 498,1,N.1; 592,N.

PLINY MINOR—209,N.5; 252,N.; 418,4; 460,2,N.3; 538,N.5; 548,N.3; 602,N.4; 605,N.; 616,1,N.2.

POLLIO—410,N.3.

PROPERTIUS—406,N.3; 421,N.1,*c*; 457,1,N.2; 458,N.1; 480,N.2 and 3; 498,N.1.

QUADRIGARIUS—407,N.2,*b*.

QUINTILIAN—359,N.5; 406,N.3; 512,N.1; 525,2,N.2; 538,N.5; 602,N.4; 604,R.2; 627,R.1.

SALLUST—207,N.; 208,2,N.2; 247,N.1; 250,N.1; 280,2,*c.N.*; 285,N.2; 286,3,N.; 311,1,R.2; 323,N.1; 338,N.1; 347,R.2; 349,R.4; 353,N.2; 356,N.3; 359,N.1 and 5; 369,N.2; 372,N.2 and 3; 374,N.1,3, and 8; 390,3,N.1; 391,N.; 407,N.2,*d*; 410,N.1,2 and 4; 416,2,4,7,16,20 and 24; 417,7; 418,4; 423,N.2; 428,R.2; 435,N.2; 436,N.1; 437,N.2; 439,N.3; 460,2,N.1; 467,N.; 475,N.3; 476,N.5; 478,N.2; 480,N.3; 482,3 and 5,R.2 and N.1; 488,N.2; 491,N.; 496,N.1; 501; 503; 512,N.1; 513,N.1; 525,2,N.2; 532,N.1; 536,N.1; 538,N.1; 541,N.2 and 3; 542,N.1; 545,R.1; 548,N.3; 563,N.2; 569,N.1; 591,R.2; 604,R.2; 616,1,N.1 and 2; 626,N.1; 636,N.1.

SENECA—374,N.3; 616,1,N.2; 635,N.2.

SENECA RHETOR—445,N.

SUETONIUS—349,R.5; 407,N.2,*c*; 416,22; 513,N.1; 542,R.; 546,N.3; 577,N.5; 602,N.4; 665,N.2.

TACITUS—208,2,N.2; 209,N.3; 211,R.1,*Ex.a.N.*; 254,N.1; 285,*Ex.3* and *N.2*; 346,N.

3; 353,N.2; 354,N.2; 356,N.2; 359,N.5; 364,N.1; 372,N.2; 376,R.1; 390,3,N.1; 401,N.6 and 7; 407,N.2,*a*; 410,N.2 and 4; 411,N.1; 416,10,16,23 and 24; 417,3 and 12; 423,N.3; 428,R.2 and N.4; 432,N.1; 437,N.2; 442,N.3; 443,N.4; 460,2,N.3; 475,N.1; 476,N.5; 477,N.4; 480,N.3; 482,2,3 and 5,N.1; 484,N.2; 493,N.2; 496,N.1; 497; 513,N.1; 525,1,N.7, and 2,N.2 and 3; 532,N.1; 538,N.5; 542,R. and N.1; 546,N.3; 563,N.2,3 and 5; 567,N.; 569,N.1; 571,N.1 and 3; 573,N.1; 575,N.2; 576,N.1; 602,N.4; 604,R.2; 605,N.; 616,1,N.2; 635,N.2; 647,N.2; 666,N.; 687.

TERENCE—211,R.1,*Ex.a.N.*; 271,N.2; 285,N.2; 337,N.4; 358,N.1; 361,N.1; 383,1,N.2; 399,N.1; 407,N.2; 411,R.2; 415; 416,1,8, and 28; 423,N.2; 428,R.2; 439,R.3; 454,N.2; 455,N.; 482,5,R.2; 487,N.1; 489,N.; 494,N.1; 496,N.1 and 2; 498,N.3; 502,N.3; 525,1,N.1; 533,R.1; 541,N.1; 545,R.1; 549,N.2; 569,N.1; 571,N.4; 574,N.; 576,N.1; 578,N.; 580,N.1 and 3; 597,N.; 610,N.1; 615,N.; 626,N.1; 644,N.2; 677,N.

TIBULLUS—455,N.; 457,1,N.2; 458,N.1; 498,N.1.

VALERIUS MAXIMUS—285,N.2; 432,N.1; 460,2,N.3; 538,N.5; 577,N.5.

VARRO—416,7,15, and 23; 422,N.4; 427,N.2; 437,N.2; 449,R.3; 574,N.; 606,N.1.

VATINIUS—606,N.1.

VELLEIUS—209,N.5; 285,N.2; 349,R.5; 391,N.; 460,2,N.3; 513,N.2.

VERGIL—211,R.1,*Ex.a.N.*; 230,N.2; 269; 276,2,N.2; 301; 336,N.1; 346,N.2; 374,N.3; 383,1,N.2 and 3; 390,2,N.4; 411,R.2; 417,3; 421,N.1,*c*; 422,N.4; 442,N.3; 443,N.1; 458,N.3; 477,N.5; 480,N.2; 482,1,N.1 and 2; 485,N.3; 525,1,N.1; 542,N.1; 546,N.3; 563,N.2; 591,R.2; 644,N.2.

VITRUVIUS—353,N.1; 386,N.; 416,5 and 25; 418,3; 439,N.3; 536,N.1; 549,N.2; 571,N.4.

THE HISTORIANS—209,N.5; 211,R.1,*Ex.b*; 214,R.2; 363,R.1; 391,N.; 484,N.2; 485,N.1; 487,N.1; 491; 501,N.; 567,N.; 628,R.

THE POETS—211,R.1,*Ex.a.N.* and *R.4*; 217,N.1 and 2; 230,N.2; 241,N.1; 261; 269; 270; 271,2,N.2; 280,2,*b* and *N.2*; 290,N.2; 295,N.; 296,N.1,3, and 4; 321,N.1; 332,2,N.2 and 3; 333,2,N.6; 336,N.3; 337,N.

- 1 and 2; 338.N.1 and 2; 346.N.6; 350.1, N.; 351.N.1; 352.N.; 354.N.2; 358; 361, N.1; 362.N.1; 373.R.1; 374.N.1, 3, 6, 8, and 10; 375; 383.1, N.1; 385.N.1; 386.N.; 390, 3, N.1 and 2; 391.N.; 394.3, N.1; 396, N.1 and 3; 397.N.2; 401.N.4 and 6; 404, N.1; 407, N.2, e; 413, R.1 and 3, and N.1; 416, 14, and 20; 417.5, 12, and 24; 418.3 and 4; 421, N.1; 427, N.5; 428, N.2 and 3; 435, N.1; 436, N.1 and 3; 437, N.1; 439, N.2; 440, R.; 446, N.2; 449, R.3; 454, N.3; 457.1, N.3; 460.2, N.2; 467, N.; 476, N.2, 3, and 5; 477, N.4; 482.3; 488, N.1 and 2; 495, N.2; 496, N.1; 498, N.1 and 5; 502, N.1; 525.1, N.7; 527, N.2; 532, N.1 and 6; 535, R.3; 536, N.2; 538, N.5; 546, R.2 and N.3; 552, R.2; 591, N.2; 604, R.2; 617, N.2; 631.2, N.1; 683.
- THE COMIC POETS—211, R.1, Ex. a, N.; 228, N.1; 242, N.2; 243; 244, N.1; 247, N.2; 263.2, N.; 267, N.; 269; 280.2, C, N.; 346, N.1; 351, N.1; 406, N.2; 416, 4; 443, N.4; 453, N.1 and 2; 467, N.; 468, N.; 477, N.3; 553.1; 617, N.2.
- LATER PROSE—211, R.1, Ex. a, N.; 217, N.1 and 2; 221, N.2; 269; 361, N.1; 372, N.3; 374, N.1 and 3; 375; 386, N.; 390.2, N.3; 404, N.1; 413, N.1; 415; 416, 20, 23, 25, and 27; 417.5; 427, N.5; 428, N.1, 2, and 3; 449, R.3; 460.1, a; 467, N.; 476, N.5; 477, N.4; 528, R.2 and N.4; 535, R.3; 538, N.5; 546, R.2; 555.2, N.; 569, N.1.
- ANTECLASSICAL LATIN—211, N.1 and 2; 220, N.2; 221, R.2; 241, N.1; 248, N.1; 254, N.2; 257, N.1; 260; 261, N.2; 271.1, N.1 and 2, and 2, N.1 and 2; 272.3, N.; 280.2, a, R.2; 293, N.; 296, N.1; 301; 303; 309, N.2; 319, N.1; 330, N.2; 339, N.1; 341, N.2; 346, N.2; 347, R.1; 350.1, N.; 373, R.1; 374, N.4; 375, N.2; 383.1, N.2; 385, N.2; 390.2, N.1; 390, N.3; 391, R.2 and N.; 395, N.2; 397, N.2; 399, N.1; 403, N.3; 407, N.2; 408, N.6; 410, N.1, 4, and 5; 413, N.1; 416, 10, 12, 16, 23, 24, and 27; 417.2, 9, and 10; 421, N.1; 422, N.2 and 4; 423, N.2 and 3; 427, N.2; 428, N.1; 429, N.1; 430, N.1; 432, N.1; 433, N.2; 436, N.1 and 4; 437, N.2; 439, N.3; 442, N.3; 443, N.1 and 4; 444.1, N.2; 454, N.1 and 5; 456, N.; 457.1, N.1, 2, and 3, and 2, N.; 459, N.2; 475, N.1; 476, N.1, 2, and 5; 479, N.1; 480, N.1; 482.1, N.1, and 5, N.1; 487, N.2; 488, N.1; 495, N.1; 498, N.5, 6, and 7; 500; 503; 513, N.1; 525.1, N.2, 6, and 7, and 2, N.2, and 3; 527, R.3; 528, N.1; 536, N.1; 537, N.2; 541, N.5; 542, R. and N.2; 546, N.3; 549, N.4; 550, N.1 and 2; 553.3, N.; 557, R.; 563, N.1, 2, and 5; 564, N.1; 571, N.2, 3, and 5; 574, N.; 576, N.1; 577, N.1; 580, N.3; 581, R.2 and N.2; 602, N.5; 614, N.; 617, N.1 and 2; 626, N.1 and 2; 627, R.1; 634, N.; 636, N.1; 651, R.1.
- CLASSICAL LATIN—220, N.1; 241, N.1; 260; 263.2, N.; 269; 270, N.; 282, N.; 285, Ex. 3; 301; 303; 309, N.2; 318, N.2; 830, N.2; 339, N.1 and 4; 342; 343, N.1; 346, N.2; 347, R.1; 348, R.2; 356, R.2; 359, N.4; 363, N.; 374, N.1, 2, 3, 4, 5, and 9; 381, N.1; 383.1; 385, R.1 and N.1, 2, and 3; 390.2, N.1, and 2; 391, R.1; 393, R.5; 394, N.1; 398; 399, N.1; 401, N.2 and 6; 403, N.3 and 4; 407, N.2; 408, N.6; 410, N.1, 2, 5 and 6; 413, R.3; 416, 9, 12, 16, 23, and 29; 417.9 and 11; 421, N.1 and 2; 422, N.4; 423, N.4; 429, 1 and 2; 430, N.1; 432, N.1; 437.1; 438, N.; 439, N.3; 442, N.3; 444.1, N.2; 449, R.3; 460.1, N.1, and 2, N.3; 467, N.; 475, N.2; 477, N.8; 479, N.1; 482.4, N.; 494, N.2 and 3; 498, N.3 and 4; 500, R.; 501, N.; 502, N.1; 503; 511, R.1; 525.1, N.1; 528, R.2, and N.1; 532, N.1, 3, and 4; 535, R.3; 537, N.2; 538, N.2 and 3; 541, N.1 and 2; 545, R.1; 546, N.3; 549, N.1; 556; 571, N.2; 602, N.1; 610, N.1; 631.3, R.1; 643, N.3; 644, R.3; 651, R.1.
- POST-CLASSICAL LATIN—211, R.2; 239, N.; 241, N.2; 247, N.1; 251, N.2; 254, R.6, and N.2; 257, N.1; 271.2, N.1; 282, N.; 292, N.; 296, N.1 and 2; 298, N.1; 299, N.2; 301; 309, N.2; 319, N.1; 330, N.4; 333.2, N.6; 337, N.1 and 2; 338, N.2; 339, N.1 and 3; 346, N.2; 349, R.5; 355, N.; 356, R.3; 362, N.1 and 2; 366, R.2; 374, N.2 and 3; 378, R.4; 380.1, N.2; 390.3, N.1; 391, N.; 393, R.5; 397, N.2; 398, N.1; 399, N.2; 403, N.4; 405, N.3; 407, N.2; 408, N.6; 410, N.1, 2, 3, and 5; 411, R.1; 415; 416.7, 10, 12, 14, 16, 17, 18, and 22; 417.7; 418.4; 422, N.2, 4, and 5; 423, N.2 and 3; 431, N.1 and 3; 432, N.1; 433; 435, N.1; 436, N.1; 437, N.1; 438, N.; 439, N.2 and 3; 479, N.1 and 2; 480, N.1; 482.1, N.1 and 2, 3, 4, N., and 5, N.1 and 2; 494, N.2; 498, N.1, 3, 6, and 8; 503; 513, N.2; 525.1, N.7, and 2, N.2; 528, R.2; 532, N.1; 541, N.1; 543, N.3; 545, R.1; 546, N.3; 549, N.2; 553.2, N. and 4, N.2; 557, N.2; 563, N.4 and 5; 573, N.2; 576, N.2; 590, N.1; 595, R.6; 602, N.5; 605, N.; 606, N.1; 616.2, N.; 625.1, N. and 2, N.; 626, N.1; 669; 677, N.

# WORKS ON LATIN GRAMMAR AND COMPOSITION

## GRAMMAR

- A New Latin Course.** By H. E. GOULD, M.A., and J. L. WHITELEY, M.A. Crown 8vo. Part I. 3s. Part II. 3s. Part III. Latin Prose Composition. 3s. 4d.
- School Certificate Latin Papers.** By H. E. GOULD, M.A., and J. L. WHITELEY, M.A. Crown 8vo. 2s. 6d.
- Latin for Juniors.** A Second Year Latin Book. By R. E. BURNS, LL.B., and A. E. BURNS, B.A. Crown 8vo. 3s.
- Decursus Primus.** A First Latin Grammar with Exercises. By Professor T. G. TUCKER, Litt.D. Globe 8vo. 3s.
- First Latin Grammar.** By M. C. MACMILLAN, M.A. Fcap. 8vo. 1s. 9d.
- School Latin Grammar.** By H. J. ROBY, M.A. Crown 8vo. 6s.

## TRANSLATION

- School Certificate Latin Papers.** By H. E. GOULD and J. L. WHITELEY. *See under Grammar.*
- Extracts from Latin Authors for Unseen Translation.** By A. E. JACKSON, B.A. Crown 8vo. 4s.
- Exercises in Unseen Translation in Latin.** By W. WELCH and C. G. DUFFIELD. Pott 8vo. 2s.
- Latin Passages for Translation.** For the use of Higher Forms in Schools and of Students working for Pass Degrees. Selected by M. ALFORD. Globe 8vo. 3s. 6d.
- Versions of Latin Passages for Translation.** By M. ALFORD. Globe 8vo. 6s. 6d.

## PROSE AND VERSE COMPOSITION

- School Certificate Latin Papers.** By H. E. GOULD and J. L. WHITELEY. *See under Grammar.*
- Latin Prose Composition for Schools and Colleges.** By P. ROBERTSON, M.A. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.
- Macmillan's Latin Course :—**
- FIRST PART.** By A. M. COOK, M.A., Assistant Master at St. Paul's School. Globe 8vo. 3s. 6d.
- SECOND PART.** By A. M. COOK, M.A., and W. E. P. PANTIN, M.A. Globe 8vo. 4s. 6d.
- THIRD PART.** By W. E. P. PANTIN, M.A. Globe 8vo. 3s. KEY, for Teachers only. 5s. 6d.

MACMILLAN AND CO. LTD., LONDON

# WORKS ON LATIN GRAMMAR AND COMPOSITION

## PROSE AND VERSE COMPOSITION—*continued*

### Macmillan's Shorter Latin Course:—

FIRST PART. By A. M. COOK, M.A. Globe 8vo. 2s. 6d. KEY, for Teachers only. 5s. 6d.

SECOND PART. By A. M. COOK, M.A., and W. E. P. PANTIN, M.A. Globe 8vo. 2s. 9d. KEY, for Teachers only. 5s. 6d.

The Third Part of the LATIN COURSE is also intended to form the concluding volume of the SHORTER LATIN COURSE.

Introduction to Continuous Latin Prose for Upper Forms. By A. H. NASH-WILLIAMS, M.A. Globe 8vo. 2s. 6d. KEY, 2s. 6d.

Easy Exercises in Latin Prose. By T. S. MORTON, M.A. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

Latin Exercises for the Middle School. By MAUD REED, M.A. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

Short Exercises in Latin Prose Composition and Examination Papers in Latin Grammar. By Rev. H. BELCHER, LL.D.

PART I. Pott 8vo. 2s. KEY, for Teachers only. 4s. 6d.

Easy Exercises in Continuous Latin Prose. By W. E. P. PANTIN, M.A. Globe 8vo. 3s. KEY, 5s. 6d.

Sermo Latinus. A Short Guide to Latin Prose Composition. By Prof. J. P. POSTGATE, Litt.D. Fourth Edition. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d. KEY, 6s.

Hints towards Latin Prose Composition. By A. W. POTTS, M.A., LL.D., late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. Extra fcap. 8vo. 3s. 6d.

Latin Phrase Book. By C. MEISSNER. Translated by H. W. ARDEN, M.A. Globe 8vo. 5s.

A Book of Latin Prose and Latin Verse: from Cato and Plautus to Bacon and Milton. With Introduction and Notes by Prof. F. A. WRIGHT, M.A. 8vo. 5s.

Elegeia. Passages for Latin Elegiac Verse. By C. H. ST. L. RUSSELL, M.A. With Hints and English-Latin Gradus. Globe 8vo. 4s.

A First Latin Verse Book. By W. E. P. PANTIN, M.A. Globe 8vo. 2s.

An Introduction to Latin Elegiac Verse Composition. By J. H. LUTON, Sur-Master of St. Paul's School. Globe 8vo. 3s.

A First Book of Latin Poetry. By H. W. FLEWETT and W. E. P. PANTIN. Crown 8vo. 3s.

## DICTIONARIES

Macmillan's Elementary Latin-English Dictionary. By Rev. G. H. NALL, M.A. Crown 8vo. 5s. 6d.

MACMILLAN AND CO. LTD. LONDON





Currebat celerius quam ut sequi  
possem.

mātrēs | atquē vīrī defūctāquē  
| corpōrā | vitā  
5 6

mātrēs | atquē vīrī defūctā  
quē | corpōrā |  
441  
309  
132 pp.

MCMLXIX

